METHOD
OF
PHISICK
—
BARROUGH

1596

A xxix. Bar
683 16
S.T.C. 1510
Sig b 1. wanting

20 C 4558

THE METHOD OF PHISICK, CONTAINING THE CAVSES, SIGNES, AND CVRES OF INWARD DISEASES IN MANS BODY FROM THE HEAD TO THE FOOTE.

Whereunto is added, the forme and rule of making remedies and medicines, *which our Phyſitions commonly* vſe at this day, with the proportion, quantitie, and names of each medicine.

By Philip Barrough.

The third Edition corrected and augmented, with two other bookes newly added by the Author.

Imprinted at London by Richard Field, and are to be ſold in Paules Church yard at the ſigne of the braſen Serpent. 1596.

George Cayley, M.D
Ripon. 18[illegible]
Given to him by
Mr Edward Coates

TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE AND HIS SINGVLAR GOOD LORD AND MASTER THE LORD Burghley, high Treasurer of England, Knight of the most Noble order of the Garter, and one of the Queenes Maiesties most honorable priuie counsell. P. B. wisheth all health, with long life and encrease of honor.

THE chiefest thing (Right Honorable and my singular good Lord) that emboldneth men to dedicate their labours vnto any personage, is the affinitie betwene the matter of the vvorke vvhich they offer, and the mind of him to vvhom it is presented. And as the ancient comicall Poets vvere vvont to pen such Enterludes, as they thought would be plausibly heard of their auditorie: so our common vvriters doe fashion and shape the subiect of vvhich they entreat, according to the affection of him, vvhose patronage they require in countenancing their writings: this (I say) though it be practised of all writers now a dayes, and might haue serued as a fit president for me to haue followed: yet haue I swarued and digressed from so generall a custome, in preferring this labour of mine to the view of your Honor (the matter so farre dissenting from your Honors dispositions) so that as it may perhaps not without some colour be obiected, that I might haue prouided farre better (had I beene any way sufficient) both for the acceptation of my labour, and also for the fit answering of your Honors affection, if I had treated of the politike gouernment of our countrie,

and of the weilding of a common wealth: to the neceſſitie of vvhich calling, not Fortune the Queene of the olde Philoſophers, but God himſelfe hath called, or rather enforced you, if that opinion of Plato be true, that euery good Magiſtrate taketh vpon him his office vnwillingly. But that obiection vvill ſoone be taken away, if vve conſider how fooliſh a thing it vvere to inſtruct him vvith his imaginarie precepts, vvhom (beſides a great light of nature) moſt happie experience hath made a perfect and abſolute gouernour. Plato that moſt graue and vviſe deemer of the ſtate tyrannicall, vvas ſo many times conuicted of follie, how often he aduentured in the preſence of kings to diſcourſe of the regiment of a common wealth. Dionyſius (of whom it was doubted, whether he did more harme by his extreme crueltie, or good by his prouident vviſedome, which both he left a like to his ſucceſſors to imitate) called that notable Philoſopher (whom I euen now named) into Scicilia of purpoſe to heare him, & vvith great patience liſtned to him, as he diſputed of mans felicitie, and admired him as he handled thoſe morall vertues, vvhich Socrates his maſter vvas feigned to haue brought from heauen, and as he treated of the frame and machine of the world: but on a time (taking aduantage by the kings attention) vvhen he had ſtolne into the diſcourſe of pollicie, Dionyſius felt himſelfe ſo moued, that he had exerciſed his tyrannie againſt him alſo, if Dion and Ariſtomanes had not recouered him out of his iawes, and ſo ridde him out of the land, by ſelling him to Polis the Lacedemonian Marchant. And this was the verdict, that the wiſe king (vvhen his furie vvas ſomewhat calmed) gaue of that moſt learned Philoſopher for his holeſome counſell (as he thought) namely, that his diſcourſes ſeemed vnto him to be the prattles of idle old men: ſo much experience diſdaineth to be controlled by arte, and ſo impatient is he of inſtitution, vvhoſe knowledge is acquired Vſu & Memoria (the two ancient parents of wiſedome.) What a great argument of follie therefore ſhall he giue, that ſhall go about to lay a plot for your Honor, from whence you may deriue an example of gouernment, vvho haue ſo many yeares in ſo troubleſome a common wealth, and to the moſt wiſe and vertuous Princeſſe in the world, beene retained as a moſt honourable and graue counſeller? I will not ſay, as Zopyrus vnto Darius, or as Cineas vnto his Pyrrhus, or as Creſus vnto his Cyrus, the one of which by pollicie aduiſed his king to circumuent his enemies, the other allured them to

his

his subiection by his eloquence, and the third by his owne vnfortunate experience directed him how to conuey any daungerous enterprise. All which serued their Princes to none other vse, but to helpe them to purchase the worst part of glorie by bloudie oppression: but rather as a Nestor vnto his Agamemnon, as a Zenophon vnto his Cyrus, and as a Plutarch vnto his Traian, vvhich thought it not so glorious to tie their enemies to them by forced feare, as their friends and neighbours by peaceable amitie, the strongest guard that Princes can trust vnto. I must needes confesse that these comparisons doe faile in representing so much as I doe conceiue, for that I may not feare the suspition of flatterie in so manifest a truth, can the whole Scene of mans life so gorgiously and stately set foorth by the Historians of seuerall ages, shew vs at one time, on one stage two such notable actors, namely, so redoubted, so peereleſſe, and so vertuous a Princesse holding the scepter, so graue, so wise, and so prouident a counseller sustaining the person of Eubolus? I would I might (my credit saued with your Honor) persue your praises yet farther, but I know very well, that you (who with an vnwearied affection doe not cease continually to commit such vertuous deedes as deserue to be eternized for euer) are soone tyred, when you heare them remembred by another. And truely I would not haue spoken so much for feare of offence, but that I know for a certainetie, that you ascribe the being of your vertues to God the giuer of all good things, before vvhom to extenuate our graces, I know not whether it be more blame worthie, then shamelesly to assume vnto our selues, vvhatsoeuer is wrongfully attributed vnto vs by our flattering friends. But to what end (will you say) are all these words? namely to this: to excuse my selfe, in that I haue not laboured to fit your affection in the presentment of this my labour, vvhich is so impossible, in respect of your singular knowledge in all kind of good learning, that there is no man so selfewise or loftie, which feareth not to come vnder your learned cēsure. Whoh excellencie of yours when I had looked into, and had found my selfe altogether vnable to answere: I purposed (as I thought) more politikely to assay your humanitie, vvhich (indeede) graceth all the rest of your vertues, which (I thought) I might soone abuse in offering such a subiect, in which some studie and industrie (besides many yeares) had made me in part able to iudge, and such a one, as the earnest affaires of the common wealth, in which you are alwayes busied,

together with the inconuenient vneasinesse of the studie hath kept your Honor from being acquainted with. Which bold attempt of mine, your wisedome shall so much the easier be brought to pardon, by how much the more earnestly your rare clemencie encouraged me to enterprise it: for I do plainely confesse, that I haue not thought this Booke of mine worthy to be perused of your Honor, as well because of mine owne vnabilitie, who am altogether insufficient to performe any thing that your Honor may like of, as also in respect of those manifold graces, vvherwith the Lord hath filled you: by the vertue of which you could in a tongue (farre more eloquent then this of ours) discerne and know the secrets of Phisicke which I haue now in part reuealed: If the commonweale of vs all did not rather carrie you away, than that delight vvhich is otherwise reaped by priuate studie. And yet neuertheless, when I consider with my selfe, that it was not the affection of any popular praise, but an honest zeale to benefite my countriemen, vvhich begot in me this desire to publish this worke, and also (if I may without the suspect of vaine glorie seeme to diuine of the issue of my labours) perceiuing that they might bring some commoditie vnto the more ignorant sort of our common Practitioners and Æmperiques (if they vvere with diligence perused:) and thirdly, vvhen I perceiued in my selfe a certaine earnest willingnes vvhich I haue alwaies had (though of late it hath beene more vehemently inflamed) to commend some peece of seruice vnto your Honor: (I say) these causes meeting thus together did especially adduce me (though many doubts stept afore me in mine enterprise, offring to reinforce my ouer presumptuous determination) vvith such a bold confidencie as it were to rush into your presence, and to demaund vvithout any shew of merite, your Honours most fauourable Protection, that this booke of mine (vnable of it selfe) may runne vnder your Patronage, vvhich as it were Gorgon his buckler, I will obuert and turne against all the venimous bytings of slanderous tongues. The Lord God, (who hath made you a notable instrumẽt to worke the aduancement of his glorie, the furtherance and propagation of good learning) lengthen & protract your life beyond your fatall period, and giue you a will to liue, a desire still to beare vp that burthen vvhich her Maiestie hath laid vpon your shoulders, & with these, all good successe in this world, and eternall happinesse in his kingdome.

Your Honors most humble seruant,

PHILIP BARROVGH.

The

The Preface to the Reader.

WHen God had perfited the wonderful work of his (I meane the frame of the world) and had aſcribed to euerie parte thereof his ſpeciall dutie: namely to the water to harbour fiſhes, to the aire to vphold all fethered foules, to the earth to foſter beaſtes, and to produce and bring forth good and wholeſome herbes and trees: and ouer all theſe, as regent and gouernour, had appointed man his laſt and nobleſt creature: he demanded of his Angels who were preſent with him at this worke, what might be deſired in this ſo rare and ſtrange a workmanſhip: who anſwered, nothing but a tongue to vnfold the ſecretes of his labours, to talke and commune of them, with the which alſo, he, as workeman of all, might be extolled and magnified, who partly moued with this ſuggeſtion, perceiuing it to be a notable meanes to aduaunce his glorie, as before he had infuſed into man a conceiueable minde, apt to vnderſtand his myſteries: ſo now he gaue him a tongue, able to vtter the ſundrie conceptions of the heart, whatſoeuer it imagined. This fable proceeding (I know not from what braine) is remembred of *Philo* the Iewe in his treatiſe of the world, which ſeemeth to imply thus much, that as there is nothing within this mortall circuite, that God hath, as it were kept to himſelfe, and not made ſubiect to the induſtrious capacitie of man: ſo there is no meanes by which a man can approch nearer vnto the perfection of that nature which he firſt enioyed, and then loſt by his fall, then by the painefull indagation of the ſecretes of nature, or any way, whereby he may more truly glorifie his maker, then in his life-time with his tongue to communicate that knowledge which he hath by his induſtrie atchieued, and to haue a care alſo, that it may be faithfully commended to his poſteritie. And doubtleſſe this was the conſideration, that moued the wiſe king *Salomon* to wade ſo farre in the ſearching of the cauſes of things, who abandoning all thoſe gliſtering ſhewes which his riches and kingdome profered him, applyed his mind to the ſtudie of nature, and compiled a great volume, wherein he largely diſcourſed not onely of birds and beaſts, but of all herbes & trees, euen from the cedar of Libanon, to hyſope that groweth out of the wall. And the ſelfe ſame opinion of the excellencie of that kinde of life, hath from time to time inuaded the mindes of many kings and noble perſonages, vowing to themſelues without anie light of their forefathers, to go through the cloudie darkeneſſe of nature. And although they ſometime ſtumbled, yet are they to be pardoned, if we conſider both the obſcuritie and the length of the way they went in. *Zoroaſtes* the reputed ſonne of *Noah* was the firſt, that of many confuſed experiments, began to faſhion out and as it were to delineate the beginning of an art, by ſetting downe certaine

precepts of the same, and after him *Osiris* the King of Ægypt, and *Zesostris* also King of the same countrie (though rudely) layed the foundation of Astronomy by demonstration of the course of the heauens, and of phisicke, by opening the nature of many herbs, and also the secrets of their water of *Nilus*. To the worthinesse of which secret, *Plato* that great Philosopher did willingly subscribe, when falling into a grieuous maladie in Ægypt, and being not able by his own experiments (though he had assayed many) to cure himselfe, he was preserued by the Priestes of that countrie, who taught him the vertue of their water, wheras after, in remembrance of this benefit, he wrote this verse rehearsed by *Laertius*: *Mare vniuersa proluit hominum mala*: the sea doth wash away all the infirmities of man. So that by this we may see, that this noble and learned Philosopher had neuer brought vs newes out of Ægypt, either of their policie and gouernment of their countrie, or of the rare and exquisit knowledge in Astronomie, if he had not tasted of the benefite which the phisicke of that time afforded him. But we will remember some of those Kings, who had an especiall fantasie to this Art, whose names are deuolued and brought vnto vs by the succession of ages, though their workes haue not escaped the wracke, but haue perished in the seagulfe of antiquity, which hath swallowed the doings of many men. And *Mithridates* the King of Pontus shall be the first, who at one time vndertooke two mightie battels, the one with the Romanes, the other with nature. In the last of which, the more dangerous, he preuailed like a conqueror, and in the first he dealt so valiantly, that the glorie of his forepassed victories suppressed and killed the remembrance of his last ouerthrow. The which (as *Plinie* remembreth) was a like profitable to the common wealth, and to mans life: for in his manour where he lay, there were found many bookes written by his owne hands, both of the vertues of herbes, and of the constitution of mans body, with remedies of many infirmities of the same. *Euax* also the king of Arabia wrote a booke of the effects of simples, which he dedicated to *Nero* the Emperour. But what should I reckon particularly the names of euery one, when in former ages there was no king, either of Æthiopia, Ægypt, or Arabia, who did not himselfe either write somewhat concerning this Arte of phisicke, or else by his liberalitie encouraged others to employ their time in the same? which may make much (no doubt) to the credite of the Arte, when as Kings haue appropriated it to themselues, and haue thought themselues honoured by the profession of the same. And as many arguments do induce me to beleeue besides the witnesse of the Historians, that phisicke is the Arte, wherein many Kings haue trauelled and delighted: so nothing more strongly then this, that whereas other gods were tyed to their seuerall places, as *Iupiter* to Elis, *Diana* to Ephesus, *Apollo* to Delos, & so forth. *Æsculapius* the son of *Apollo* by the daughter of *Phlegias* made a god for his cunning in phisicke, hath his temple & altars euery where, in Corinth, in Lacædemon, in Athens, in Thebes, in Epidaure, in Arcadia, Messenia, and in many other countries (as *Pausanias* remembreth) all which honors which were done to him (no doubt) were instituted by the Kings and rulers of those countries, who especially fauoured that Art, thinking it great reason, that he who inuented an art so generally auailable for mankind, should be generally honoured of all men. And (I pray you) how much

much inferiour was the renowne of *Hippocrates*, who descended of his lyne, sauing that the one was placed amongst the Gods in heauen, and the other reuerenced as a mortall god vpon earth? Did not he make Coos, the place where he was borne, of an inglorious Iland, a famous countrie, onely by the accesse of other nations, who were brought thither by the report of his wonderful skil in Physicke? what familiaritie had he with Kings? what estimation among the Philosophers of that time, as *Democrates* and others? and to conclude, how was his fame spread vniuersally throughout all Greece? I will not tarry vpon the recitall of the famous Physitions, who haue liued before vs in seuerall ages, as *Dioscorides*, *Galen*, *Paulus Aetius*, *Ægineta* and others. For it will easily appeare of what credit this noble science of physicke was in times past, if you consider the insolencie and pride of ancient Physitions, whereof many of them disdained the fellowship of Kings, and some of them emboldned onely by the credit of their science purchased amongst men, grew to such impudēcie, that they wold haue ceremonies and rites performed vnto them as vnto gods. One such was *Themison Ciprius* the daintie of *Antiochus*, another was *Thessalus* whom *Galen* maketh mention of, who went about to innouate and change the method of Physicke set downe by *Hippocrates* and others. But the most famous of all was *Menecrates* the Syracusan, who foolishly vsurped the name of *Iupiter*, oftentimes boasting, that by his Arte he could breath life into mortall men, after the manner of *Iupiter*: which arrogant title the people neuer went about to derogate from him, but rather supposed that it was deserued on his part, because he cured many of the falling euill, which disease especially raigned in his time. This *Menecrates* in a certaine epistle which he wrote to *Philip* the King of Macedonie, vseth these wordes: Thou art King of Macedon, and I of Physicke, it lyeth in thy power at thy pleasure, to destroy men which enioy their health, and in mine to preserue sicke men, and restore dead men to life, and to keepe the health of men vnspotted, euen vnto their old age, if they will obey me. Vnreasonable surely and monstrous was the pride of this man, and it was so fedde with the applause and approbation of his citizens, who wondred at his rare cunning, that he marched in the citie with a trayne of goddes after him: one in the habite of *Hercules*, another in the shape of *Mercurie*: another tooke vppon him the forme of *Apollo*, and he himselfe supereminent in the middest resembling *Iupiter*, woare a purple robe, and a crowne of golde vppon his head, and helde in his hand a mightie scepter. The opinion of this science did so possesse the mindes of the people in those dayes, that they imagined the professor of the same to be sent immediatly from heauen, for the commoditie of the whole countrey, and for the preseruation of mankinde: which made them not to doubt to do vnto them all superstitious reuerence that might be, whereof grew this excessiue pride, which hath arested as it were the mindes of many Physitions. I would not wish that the Physitions of our time should draw this vnto an example, but rather with all lowlinesse to visite euen the poorest, when their helpe is required, for seeing that the life of the most miserable vassall is as deare in the sight of God, as the life of the most renowmed Monarch, shall not the Physition looke to haue a shrewd checke at Goddes hande, if he either hath

proudly denied his helpe to the poore, or negligently visited them? I will not descend into this common place, though (to speake the truth) the arrogancie of many of our Physitions might giue me sufficient occasion, wishing them to leaue off to imitate the swelling insolencie of *Menecrates* and the rest, and to tract rather in the steppes of *Hyppocrates* and *Galen*, of whom it is thus written: that they neuer disdained to shroud themselues vnder the simplest roofe in their countrie, to do the poorest man good: and as they themselues said (besides the glorie that they purchased by their courteous benignitie) they added alwaies to their cunning, and by experience confirmed their Arte and knowledge, which might well stagger, if you respect the infinite varietie of diseases, & the strange diuersities of mens dispositions. And truly if nothing else, yet the enriching of their knowledge, which is gathered especially by long experience, might be cause good enough to attract and draw them to lay hold of any occasion to go to the diseased person. And in mine opinion, the neglecting of this, which proceedeth either from couetousnesse or pride, hath bene the onely cause, that euen from the beginning, there haue bene reckoned so few good Physitions: for (exempt only *Hippocrates*, *Galen*, *Auicen*, *Ægineta*, *Aetius* & *Soranus*, though the number of cõmon Phisitions hath bene great) you shal not find any that haue climed vp to the perfection of their science: nay farre from that, which might chalenge the fift or sixt place. Which although some men will ascribe to the laborious difficultie and confused vastenesse of this Arte especially: yet I dare boldly affirme, that there hath not bene nor is, any such blocke or stay, which hath impeached so much their endeuours, as the defect of experience. And truly I can not more fitly compare our Æmpiriques and practitioners, then to him that purposeth to be a sea-man and traueller, who though he studiously striueth to attaine to the perfection of his Art, though he carefully busieth him selfe about the cosmographicall mappes, though he industriously peruseth the books of Nauigation, nay (that which is more) though he diligently conferreth with verie expert saylers: yet when he hath forsaken the quiet hauen, and launched out into the rough seas, and hath taken vpon him the gouernment of the ship, when he shal behold so many horrible mountaines of water, the roaring of so many huge waues, and the outraging surges of the disquieted monster, he will then confesse that he onely dreamed before, when he imagined of the course of the seas, that his bookes were lame schole-maisters, that the tales of his companions were a great deale lesse then the things themselues: when he shall cast vp his eyes, and thinke that euery starre which he had hoped to haue vsed as guides and directions, had threatned his ruine and destruction, when he shall looke downe and tremble at the rising of euerie waue, when he shall turne him about, and with great feare seeke to eschue those rockes, which he had read were couched in that part of the sea, and to conclude, when he shall consider the hugenesse of the Ocean sea, and the smallnesse of his barke, he will thinke sure the least perrie or gale were of force to ouerwhelme him, notwithstanding his great cunning he had thought he had gained on the land. Euen so fareth it with our common Phisitions, who while they containe themselues within the compasse of their litle studie, where they do as it were, *è tabula pictos edisce e mundos*, where

they

they perceiue their ſcience redacted into a method, where they ſee *Galen* reaching his hand to them to lead them throughout the whole bodie of phyſicke, by whom they are taught the conſtitution of the bodie, the diuerſitie of temperature, the varietie of diſeaſes: the cauſes, ſignes, and ſymptomates of the ſame, they ſtraight way imagine, that they haue runne the race, and that they haue acquired as much knowledge as becommeth an Æmerique. But after that, when they ſhall go into the common wealth to practiſe, when they ſhall meet with diſeaſes which *Galen* neuer dreamed of, when they ſhall view the maruellous and ſecret affections and properties of mens bodies, the ſudden and momentanie changes of the ſame (which a man can ſcarcely follow with his mind) when they ſhal perceiue, that in reſpect of the ſtrange temperature of the bodie, & the violent alteration of the ſame, they ſcarſly can aime at the diſeaſe, when they ſhall ſtrike vpon ſo many rocks: beſides their great paines & watchfull induſtrie: will it not (thinke we) amaze them? will they not confeſſe then that their Art is vnperfect? will they not acknowledge (thinke you) that as experience was the ancient beginner of Phyſicke, ſo that now it is the true & ſincere accõpliſher of the perfection of the ſame? Since therfore the caſe ſo ſtandeth, that Arte is weake without practiſe, and that (as *Galen* ſaith) experience is gotten *longo rerum vſu*: let the Phyſition (if he doth not preferre lying fame and vile lucre before true and abſolute knowledge) let him (I ſay) that his minde may be enriched, not leaue the pooreſt houſe vnfrequented. But to ſay the truth, there is nothing derogateth ſo much from the excelling in their ſcience, as doth the opinion of perfection, which is eſpecially gotten by the iudgement of the multitude, the peruerſe determiner of things. For, when a man knoweth his name to flie amongſt them, he ſitteth ſtill and admireth himſelfe: thinking then, that he hath ſtudied enough both for himſelfe and his countrie, when he hath gotten his name enrolled amongeſt the number of excellent Phyſitions by that ignorant and vnaduiſed regiſter. I haue ſpoken this by the way, and the interiection of theſe few lines hath not made me to forget (good Reader) that I before diſcourſed of the glorie of this ſcience, and how it hath bene accounted of in times paſt: the dignitie whereof, though it be ſomething leſſened and empaired (which whether it hath happened by the ignorance of our Phyſitions, or by the ſiniſter opinion of the world, I will not now diſcuſſe) yet if we will vprightly wey with our ſelues, we may perceiue that the iudgement of men hath not any whit detracted from the true dignitie of the thing it ſelfe. For truly, what can be more noble then to preſerue the bodie of a man in a good eſtate, which of the Philoſophers is termed, a litle world, in reſpect of the varietie of his ſeuerall functions? What can be more excellent then to be able to maintaine and keepe in order that beſt workmanſhip of God, and (that which is more) to correct, reforme, and amend it, and as it were a cunning Pylot, to gouerne and rule it as a litle veſſell caſt out into the great Ocean, ſubiect (I do not know) to how many rockes and dangers, if it be not vprightly weilded? And ſeeing there is nothing giuen vnto vs of God, more acceptable then the health of the bodie, how honorably muſt we thinke of the meanes, by which it is continued and reſtored if it be loſt? *Pirrhus* the king of Epire did ſacrifice vnto no other god or goddeſſe, but only vnto health,

to whom he erected a famous temple in his owne country, calling it *Templum ſanitatis*. He contemned, or at the leaſt neglected all oracles which other Princes buſily ſought after, as predictions of the euents and ſucceſſes of the battailes which they attempted, or any other the like enterpriſe. He craued nothing at the handes of the Gods, but onely the fruition of his health, thinking that induſtrie & diligẽce, meeting with the health of the body, were able to atchiue any thing, were it beſet with neuer ſo many dangers. And in mine opiniõ (as the Hiſtoriã very grauely diſcourſeth) men do fooliſhly erre, when they cõplaine of nature, for limiting the age of mã within the cõpaſſe of ſo few yeares, as three or four ſcore: whẽ as truly, if the matter were well expended, we would confeſſe, *Induſtriã potius quàm tempus deeſſe* (as he ſaith) and that there is no arte or ſcience, be it neuer ſo difficult, but might be perfitly knowne within that ſhort precinct, if the greater part of our life did not paſſe and vaniſh away in darkeneſſe (ſlouth and ignorance drowning and ouerwhelming in vs all light of nature) or if the courſe thereof were interrupted and cut off by vntimely death, which is haſtened on our partes by our inordinate and heedleſſe liuing. The young man flouriſhing as it were in the April of his age, cockereth in himſelfe a fooliſh imagination of his owne luſtineſſe, and reputeth it as a diſcredite to him to ſeeme to feare the approch of any diſeaſe, leauing the prouident gouernment of the body to decrepite and withered old age. In the meane time he layeth the reyne vpon his affections, and expoſeth himſelfe to anie inconuenience: either he weltereth in idleneſſe, or is tyred with immoderate exerciſe, or (that which is incident ſpecially to that part of our age) he admitteth vnſeaſonable watchings, ſurfetting bankets, and the vnſatiate executing of the follies of *Venus*, thinking indeede that there is nothing leſſe agreeing vnto youth and adoleſcencie, then to be pliant and obedient to any commendable and wholeſome method of life: yea many of them are of this minde, that the time of their youth is infamouſly ouerſlipped, whẽ they do not ruſh in their voluptuous & inordinat demeanour at what time the luſty prime of their age do ſomwhat enable & ſupport them: & if at any time they be ouertakẽ with any infirmitie (which often happeneth) as vnwilling to be beholding to the ſcience of phiſick, they leaue it to be worn away by the ſtrength of their body, which in deed I confeſſe hideth many diſeaſes, and for the time taketh away the ſence of them, but it neuer vtterly extinguiſheth any: for although in the infancie of the infirmitie, in reſpect of the weakeneſſe of it, it be eaſily depreſſed and ouermaiſtred by the valure of the body (which in youth is ſomething puiſſant and forcible) yet when age comming on with his ſtealing ſteps, or elſe reckleſſe life doth detract from the force of the one, and maketh way for the other to ſpread & gather power, the diſeaſe being as it were the ſuruiuour poſſeſſeth the whole body, and at the laſt procureth his vtter ſubuerſion. And many times it happeneth that a diſeaſe breaketh out in olde age, the cauſe whereof perhappes was giuen in our youth. And it fareth with vs, as it doeth with them which are bitten with that little Serpent of Arabia, which ſtriketh a man, but ſo ſecretly, that he neuer feeleth it, neither doth he know it but by the woũd which ſheweth it ſelfe a long time after the foundation thereof was layed. The opinion that the auncient Phyſitions had of the effect of ſnow water is of force to

perſwade

perſwade this, who haue written, that if ſnow reſolued into water be drunken of a young childe, it will as it were maintaine warre againſt naturall heate, and that with ſuch continuance, as it will not ſhew his effect, vntill he hath attained vnto extreme old age. I do not altogether beleeue this, although the great cold which is naturally in that water, may lead me to thinke, that it is of a mightie operation. But there is nothing more certaine then this, that many men repoſing too much truſt in the ſtrength of their bodies, & ſo being careleſſe in gain-ſtanding & reſiſting the beginnings of maladies (which their diſſolute order of life hath begotten and engendred) haue bene yoked by olde age before the courſe of their yeares did require it, and haue brought it ſo to paſſe, that their bodies haue bene nothing elſe, but ſtorehouſes & manſions of diſeaſes. Which kind of men I may well compare to an euill and negligent tenant, who being ſetled in a faire dwelling houſe by his land-Lord, ſuffereth it to ruinate, and in the end, to fall vpon his owne head for want of repairing: ſo they, when God hath beſtowed their bodies vpon them as gorgeous palaces or manſion houſes, wherein the minde may dwell with pleaſure and delight, do firſt by this euill demeanour ſhake, and diſcraſe them, and then being altogether careleſſe of repairing them, do ſuffer them to run to deſtruction, or elſe while they go about too late to vnderprop thē declining to ruine, (as he that is lodged in an old cabbin feareth, leſt with euery puffe of wind it ſhould be ouerturned) ſo they quake at the leaſt alteration of their body, & at euerie litle paine, do expect a final diſſolution: then they will confeſſe vnto you, that while they rioted vnaduiſedly in their youth, they did but build matter for repentance in age. And what do they elſe but by their examples giue vs to learne, that as the interception & præſciſion of diſeaſes is verie auailable, which carieth a man throughout his raee with pleaſure and delight, (ſo that nothing commeth more nere vnto the goodneſſe thereof, then (if by chance when we be plunged into any diſeaſe) carefully to prouide that the beginning therof may be impeached: the which that thou mayeſt the better do, I haue (good Reader) for thy benefit, collected out of ſundry Authors, as it were a breuiary or abridgement of phyſick, & together with thoſe deductions, I haue interlaced experiments of mine own, which by long vſe & practiſe I haue obſerued to be true. Throughout the whole booke I haue bin more curions in preſcribing the ſundrie curations & waies to helpe the diſeaſes, then in explaning the nature of them: my reaſon was, becauſe if my books ſhould come to the hands of the vnlearned a litle would ſuffice (the former being more neceſſarie.) Againe I knew, that the learned would not be contented or ſatisfied with it, though it had bene neuer ſo great: and yet I haue not omitted any neceſſarie ſigne, that the diſeaſe may appeare eaſily to any capable braine. I ſhall ſeeme boldly to haue aduentured the edition of this labour, ſeeing that I ſhall runne into the babble of our countrey Phyſitions, who thinke their Arte to be diſeredited, when it is publiſhed in a baſe tongue, and againe, are loth to haue the ſecrets of their ſcience reuealed to euerie man. Indeed I know that vnder ſome colour they may obiect ſomwhat, but yet they may vnderſtand, that I haue followed the example of many learned Phiſitions both of our Engliſhmen and other countrymen alſo, who publiſhed their practiſes in their mother tong, & in other countries,

especially it is so rife and common, that in Italie and France you shall not find any learned Physition, that hath not written as much, (nay rather more) in his owne countrie language, then in Latine: yea we haue many bookes in phisicke, that haue first bene set out in French and Italian, and afterward for the commoditie of other nations, haue bene translated into Latine, and so made generall, which before the writer had as it were bequeathed to his countriemen. And no doubt they were all touched with an especiall care to profite their owne countrie, being willing that all men (as indeed it concerneth all) should reape the commodities of their labours. For I cannot see, how that saying of *Quintilian* can be verified in this one Art (which is this) that then all Artes should be truely happie, when the professors of the same should onely iudge of them: but I haue alwaies bene of this mind, that it behoueth euerie man to be cunning in his owne constitution, and to knowe so much as may serue to forestall the comming of many ordinarie diseases, which commonly light vpon the ignorant: yea and sometime to be able to chase away a malady when it hath alreadie caught hold of the bodie: my reason is, both because euerie man may iudge best of his owne bodie, and perceiue the declinings and alterations of the same. And againe we know, how many haue died, and do die continually for want of helpe, (the Physition being not alwaies at their elbowe) whereas in the beginning of their sicknesse, a litle knowledge might haue stopped the passage of the infirmitie. In the old time when Physicke was brought vnder no forme, but consisted onely of a few experiments which passed from hand to hand, young children together with other Artes did receiue certaine precepts and rules, how to order and gouerne the bodie, and learned also preseruaties against poyson, and the receipt of salues to cure any greene wound, and the meanes to helpe certaine ordinarie diseases, which (in deed) were but fewe (the age of man being then farre more strong. We reade how *Linus*, who was schoole maister to *Hercules* when he had instructed him in the Art of wrestling, (which then was honoured especially) and in musicke, that he gaue him the receipt of a certaine balme, which he often vsed in many of his aduentures. And what was it, that gaue matter to the fable of *Achilles*, how his mother *Thetis* had made his bodie impenitrable: but that knowledge of his which he had learned of his maister *Chyron* the Centaure, who taught him the vertue of an herbe, which to this day beareth his name, by which he healed all his wounds he receiued in battell? What an honorable mention doth *Homer* make of *Machao* and *Podalirius* the sonnes of *Æsculapius*, in that they could cure themselues when they were at any time hurt of the enemie? This cunning also had *Mithridates*, and *Fabricius* the Romaine he that vanquished *Pirrhus*, and also *Marcus Curius* and many other who are recorded by histories, whose names I would remember, if I did not see the enlarging of this common place by examples to be altogether vnnecessarie, when there is no man which so farre swarueth from common sense, that will not confesse it to be very expedient and needfull for all to know the estate of their owne bodies. I will therefore forsake the prooving of so manifest a thing, and returne vnto thee (good Reader) whom I haue alreadie offended in exceeding the iust length of a Preface, like vnto that wayfaring man, who when he had purposed to vndertake

take a long iourney, ſtumbled euen in the verie threſhold of his dore. But if it be an offence, I did voluntarily runne into it, chuſing rather to be carped at of the Rethorician for vſing too many words, then to be worthily reprehended of the readers for being too ſparing in vttering the reaſons whereby I was firſt adduced to publiſh this my labour. For I knowe not how it commeth to paſſe, yet we ſee it daily, that ridiculous toies and abſurd pamphlets being put forth without any colour, be neuertheleſſe plauſibly and pleaſingly accepted: whereas a man mooued with an honeſt care to profite his countrie, being willing to leaue a teſtimonie of the ſame behind him, when he offereth any work, if it hath not a delectable ſubiect, it behoueth him to ſhew many graue and ſubſtantiall reaſons of his doings, or elſe they will not yeeld their hoped for benefit, which is to be benignely conſtrued and peruſed with humanitie, ſo that if a man couet to haue his books fauorably accepted and read, he muſt behaue himſelfe ſo in writing, as *Solon* did in framing his lawes, who (as *Plutarch* ſaith) did not faſhion them according to the true line of equity, but ſet down ſuch as he thought the people wold willingly obſerue: euen ſo the iniquity of the time hath brought to paſſe, that thoſe books which are generally peruſed and read throughout, muſt not ſerue the time, but muſt ſatisfie the opinion of men. A man may eaſily diſcourſe of this, but the fantaſies of men are too variant to preuaile a whit in diſſwading them. For mine owne part (that I may now end) I haue not ſought nor hunted after any vaine glorie by the edition of this my labour, but onely I haue endeuored by this meanes (being vnable any way elſe) to do ſome good to my countrie men: which deſire of mine ſhall ſufficiently comfort me, though I want the outward probation of the world. And yet this one thing I would craue at the handes of the learned, that if by chance my books come vnder their cenſure, they will either giue them their good word, or elſe ſuffer themſelues to be iudged of by performing the like labour. And as *Martial* pretily ſung;

Cum tua non edas, carpis mea carmina Leli,
Carpere vel noli noſtra, vel ede tua,

though indeede this ſupplication of mine may rather more fitly be preferred vnto the vnlearned, who think they haue gotten a goodly meanes to purchaſe their owne credit, when they can vnder ſome colour maligne the doings of any man, as though others well doings were as impeachments to their eſtimations, or the errours of other men the ſubiect of their praiſes. Thoſe kinds of ſerpents (I ſay) which do nothing elſe but picke quarrels with Authors, I would aduiſe them either to ſpeake themſelues, or (if their ignorance will not let the) to lay their fingers on their mouth till other men tell their tale, and not to make their harueſt of other mens offences vnwillingly committed, whilſt they themſelues reſt vnable to do any whit of good. And thus (good Reader) I will abruptly end, expecting the fauourable acceptation of theſe my labours, which expectation of mine (if it be not deluded) I ſhall be further encoraged to conſecrate the reſidue of my ſtudies to thy commoditie.

Philip Barrough.

OF VVEIGHTES.

A briefe declaration of the notes of all those kindes of weightes, which are generally vsed and contained throughout this whole booke, and of the quantitie of them.

FOrasmuch as the true and perfect knowledge in compounding of medicines cannot be attained vnto without the knowledge of the quantitie of weightes, which are at this present day most commonly vsed in making of medicines: I will therefore here briefly declare the vse of them: for seeing that the weights of some medicines be so iustly and certainly ordained and made, that if any man do chance rashly to erre in the true quantitie thereof, he doth much hurt to the bodie, and many times putteth the life in ieopardy: you must therefore diligently endeuour, and applie your minde to studie and consider of the medicines, that so you may haue the more full and perfect knowledge thereof. The notes which I (following the order of other Physitions) haue vsed in this my booke in writing of weightes, be these, as followeth.

1. Grana.	haue this note.	G.
2. Scrupuli.		℈.
3. Drachmæ.		ʒ.
4. Vnciæ.		℥.
5. Quar.		qr.
6. Libræ.		℔.
7. Semis.		ß.
8. Manipuli.		*M.*
9. Pugilli.		p.
10. Ana.		ana.

A Graine is a barley corne taken in the middest of the eare.
A Scruple is twentie barley cornes.
Three Scruples containe a Drachme.
Eight Drachmes containe one Ounce.
Quart, signifieth a quart of any thing.
Libra is a Pound.
Semis, is the halfe of euerie weight.
Manipulus, is a great handfull.
Pugillus, is a small handfull.
Ana, signifieth of euerie one a like much.

THE

heate of the Sunne in Sommer, when any body hath taried long in it. Also it is sometime causèd of immoderate mouing, or by hote bathes, or by being long nigh the flame of the fire, or through anger, or furiousnes, or last of all through hote diseases, or hote sauours of outward things. The signes which declare headach by burning heate of the Sunne, are, that besides vehement paine, you shall feele their head hote assoone as you touch it, and their skinne drier then it was wont to be, their eyes do looke redde, and they are delighted with the sprinckling or annointing of cold things, and do feele great ease by them. As for the other causes, they may be knowne by relation of the sicke. For the cure of this kind of headach, you must first prouide, that the ayre and the chamber wherein the sicke abideth, be very cold of nature, or else it must be made so by your diligence, as by strowing in the house, flowers, & branches of cold things (as roses, violets, water lillie flowers, and vine leaues, bryer boughes, willow, and such like.) Also it will coole the ayre well to sprinckle cold water in the house, or to poure it out of one vessell into another. Great respect must be had to his sleeping, for he must sleepe longer then he was wont to do, he must altogether eschue long watching, and keepe him selfe quiet: he must not retaine his excrements, but auoyd them by and by after sleepe if he can, or let nature be helped to expell them by a lenitiue clister, for their retention increase paine in the head. Let him eschue carnall copulation, exercises, and bathes. Let him eschue all perturbations of the mind, especially anger and furie. Let him haue but litle meate, of good digestion: and let it be cold in operation, as is bread dipped in cold water, iuyce of ptisan, lettuce, endiue, purselaine, flesh of chickens, hennes, or pigeons, with veriuyce made of grapes. Fishes are good that come out of stonie riuers, and that are tender. Also almond milke, pomgranates, raisins, and ripe peares may be giuen to him. He must abstaine from milke, and meates that fume into the head, or that be hard of digestion. For his drinke, let him vse water altogether, if his stomacke will beare it, if not, seeth a litle cynamon in it, or coriander seed preparate, or mixe with the water, iuyce of sower pomegranates, or syrupe of Endiue, or *Syrupus acetosus simplex* or *oxysaccharum*: or if they can not abide that, you may giue them small wine well allayed with water. The paine of the head causèd of heate, is cured with such things as do coole without manifest restriction, especially if they be of thinne & piercing substance. Therefore in the beginning nothing is better then to powre vpon the head good oyle of roses, made of vnripe oyle, and if a litle vineger be added to it, it will pierce the faster & the deeper. The places that you must powre or annoint it on, is the fore part of the head, where the seame goeth ouerthwart, for it is the thinnest place of the scull, and the seames haue pores in them: also you must vse it on the toppe of the forehead, where the haire leaueth growing, and on the sides of the temples, where the haire groweth towards the eares. The best thing next oyle of roses, is oyle of cammomill to be vsed in like wise, especially in those bodies, that we would not coole too much, as womens, eunuches, children and other that haue soft flesh, and are white in colour. If there be need of greater cooling, you may adde to the oyle of roses iuyce of houselike, or purselaine, or knotgrasse, or of vnripe grapes, or nightshade, or sorrell, or psillium, or such like. Vse not iuyce of pop-

Signes.

Diet.

Ayre.

Sleepe.

Meate.

Drinke.

Cure.

Oyle of roses.

Oyle of cammomill.

pye, or of mandrage in this cause, for they doe hurt: you may make medicines of the former things, or such like, in this sort. ℞. oyle of roses. ℥.ij. rose water. ℥.j. strong vineger. ℥.ß. or iuyce of houselike, or purselaine, or lettuse, ℥ j. and so commixe them. Or thus, ℞. distilled water of houselike, lettuse, and nightshade. ana. ℥. ij. water of cammomill. ℥. j.ß. vineger. ℥. j. commixe them and dip a cloth in it, and lay it all ouer the forehead, and the temples where the haire groweth not. But let not this medicine touch the hinder part of the head, for that part cannot suffer cooling without hurt, because the marrowe of the backe bone beginneth there. Those medicines which you will vse for cooling, especially in sommer, must stand a while in very cold water. This also is good for abundance of humours, and vapours, that be lifted vp into the head. In like manner also you may vse other oyles that haue vertue to coole, as oyles of quinces, violets, water lillies, and gourds. Neither will it be vnprofitable to vse a liniment made in this sort. ℞. Of the mucilage of the seeds of quinces, and great mallowes, or of psilium, ana. ℥. iij. iuyce of purselaine ℥.j.ß. iuyce of nightshade. ℥.ß. oyle of roses ℥. j: commixe them, and make a liniment: or by putting too waxe and other medicines make an ointment in this sort. ℞. *Vnguenti populeon.* ℥. j. oyles of violets and roses, of ech ℥. iij. drie flowers of white water lillies, and of red roses. ana. ℈.j. waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment, and annoint it vpon the forehead and the temples. It profiteth also to vse embrocations (that is decoctions made of certaine things to poure vpon any member by litle and litle, or to let it drop downe) they may be made of roses, violets, floures of water lillies, willow leaues, vine leaues, purselaine, barley & such like. You must not apply stupefactiue things to the griefe, because they coole not without hurt, and therefore opium, iuyce of popie, and mandragora are to be eschued. Iuyce of nightshade also because of his stupefaction is not to be vsed at all, or very litle of it at once, as we doe vse in the liniment aforesaid. Also those things that haue manifest astriction and binding with their cooling, are to be refused, except necessitie require it, and therefore the iuyces of sweete pomgranates, quinces, and medlers, are to be auoyded, but iuyce of sower pomgranates is good, because it cooleth more. Hitherto we haue declared what medicines are to be vsed in the beginning of this griefe. Afterward you may vse to mixe with the medicines that do coole and driue backe, such things as do mitigate and digest. Make therefore an embrocation after this sort, ℞. flours of roses and violets. ana. M.ß. leaues of willow, cammomill, and melilot, ana. M.j. seede of mallowes. ℥.iij. barley husked ℥.j. seeth these in two pound of water, til the third part be consumed, and make an embrocation. Or thus, ℞. mallow leaues, violets, roses, ana. pug.ß. the flours of water lillies. ℥.iij. vine leaues, or the wreathes that they wind about things withall, purselaine, or housike, of each, M.j. cammomill, melilot, and fenugreeke, ana. ℥.ij. seeth them as is aboue said, and make an embrocha, adding to a litle vineger, especially if the paine be within the scull. Last of all, you may vse most of the discussiue medicines; withdrawing the aforesayd repelling things, such be, Althæa, dill, sothernwood, butter, cammomill, barley meale, fenugreeke, lineseed, lupines, &c. Of these and such like things you may make quilts, or embrocations, or oyntments as you list. For inward medicines (especially

A Liniment.

Vnguentum.

Embrochæ.

Stupefacientia

Note.

Embrochæ.

Alia.

cially if the headach be caused of exercise, anger, or such like) minister Iulep of violets or roses, or their conserues, or manus Christi, or giue the sicke ij. or iij. houres before meate in the morning. ℥.j. and ß. of syrupe of infusion of roses, or of syrupe of water lillies with ℥.ij. or iij. of water of borage or cychorie. It is good for the sicke to smell rose water, mixed with a litle vineger: also it is good to snuffe it vp in the nose. *Inward medicines.* *Odours.*

CHAP. III.

Of headach caused of cold.

By cold is meant in this Chapter, a cold distempure simply without the fluxe of any cold humour. This paine in the head is caused of outward cold, as when the ayre is very cold, especially when anie bodie tarieth in it long time bare headed, as also it may be caused by the sodaine applying of any cold thing to the head. The signes of headach caused of cold, are contrary to those signes that are caused of hote distempure. For in this, though the paine be vehemēt, yet the head when it is felt, is not hote, nor the face and eyes do not looke redde, nor their face is not drie and shruncke, but contrariwise full & pale, and their eyes are swollen and swart. Also they neither desire cold things, nor do feele ease by them. Concerning the diet of those that haue this kind of headach, they must eschue cold ayer, and abide altogether in hote ayer. They must sleepe moderately, but not longer then they were wont. They must vse mouing of the whole body, especially walking and riding. Let their bodies be soluble, rather then costiue, so that they may ech day haue a siege either by nature or by art, as by a suppositarie or a clister. Let them eschue sadnesse, and deepe cogitations, and other immoderate affections of the minde. Let them eschue all meates and drinkes that be cold in operation, as milke, fish, and such like. Let them eate reare egges, and flesh of hennes, chicken, partrich, and fesants, and such like. For their drinke, let them vse wine that is thinne of substance, for that doth moderatly extenuate & heate. For the same cause also hote bathes are to be vsed; and generally for the cure hereof, you must vse things that be hote in operation. But yet in applying medicines to the head, you must diligētly consider the natural temperature of the braine, for it is such a thing, as cannot suffer medicines vehement hote, nor yet vehement cold. Therfore (as Galen affirmeth) if oyle of rewe be powred hote vpon the fore part of the head, it healeth the patient perfectly. But if there be need of greater heating, you may put pepper, or euphorbium into the oyle, or you may mixe some oyle of pepper, or oyle of euphorbium with the oyle of rew, or in the steed of oyle of rewe, you may vse oyles of laurell, yreos, dill, or cammomill, of spiknarde, serpillum, marioram, and such like. Herewith you may annoint the forehead also, & the nosthrils, & the holes of the eares. Of the aforesaid medicines you may make an ointment after this fort. ℞. Oyles of yreos, & rew. ana. ℥. ß. marioram, betonie, pepper, ana. ℈.j. of *Euphorbium*, gra.v. waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment, and annoint therewith the forehead and the nosthrils, or make an oyntment thus. ℞. of oyle of rewe, cammomill, and nardinum. ana. ℥.j hysope, lauender, and floures of stœchas, ana. ℥. ß. masticke and frankensense, of ech. ℥. j. waxe a litle, & make an ointment. You may sometime adde to it, if you will, *Castoreum*. ℈.j. Also embrocations profit much, if they be made *Causæ.* *Signa.* *Victus ratio.* *Cura.* *Vnguentum.* *Aliud.* *Embrocha.*

of flowers, of melilot, and cammomill, marioram, origan, betonie, ſage, laurell leaues, ſtæchas, and ſuch like, ſodden in water. It is good for the ſicke to draw vp the vapours of ſuch decoctions by his noſthrils. Alſo a quilt made in this ſort profiteth much. ℞. leaues of laurell, ſerpillum, and marioram. ana. M. ß. floures of roſemarie. M. j. rew. M. ß. cloues and ſtæchas ana. ℥. j. peniroyall and calamint ana. ℥. j. ß. beate theſe to powder, & ſew them in ſilke, or fine linnen cloth, & make a quilt, which muſt be layd to the head warme, & firſt ſprinkled with vineger. It is good alſo to vſe a pomander made in this ſort; ℞. of ſtorax calamitæ ℥. ij. cloues, maces, wood of aloes, ana. ℥. ß. lauender ℥. ij. gallia moſchata ℥. j ß. of muske and amber, ana. gra. iii. powder them & ſerce them, and with water of marioram, and ſtorax liquida as much as ſhall ſuffiſe, make pomanders.

Saculus.

Pomum odoriferum.

CHAP. IIII.

Of headach cauſed by drineſſe or moyſture.

BY drineſſe is meant in this place a drie diſtempure of the qualitie alone, & by moiſture, a moiſt diſtempure of the bare qualitie. Neither of theſe qualities alone, except heate or cold be ioyned with them, do cauſe any headach at all (as Galen teacheth in the 5. Chap. of his firſt booke *de ſymptomatum cauſis.*) Therefore we do not make mention here of theſe diſtẽpures, as though headach might be cauſed of thẽ alone, but that the ſtudious in phiſicke might haue ſtore of medicines, when headach cometh of heate and drineſſe, or moiſture with heat, or whẽ cold mixed with drines, or moiſture cauſeth headach. Headach through drynes is cauſed through drynes of the aire, or by dry medicines, by hunger, exerciſe, lecherie, and perturbations of the mind. And headach of moiſture is cauſed by moiſtneſſe of the aire, or by moiſtening medicines, by bathes, hote waters, & other things that moiſten ouermuch. Drineſſe is known by theſe ſignes, if there come few excrements, or none at all out of the noſe, if the eyes be hollow, and the patient haue watched much before. Theſe be ſignes of headach of drineſſe: alſo in it the ſkinne of the head is drier when it is felt, then it is wonted to be, and ſome drie diet hath bene vſed. Alſo in this kind drie medicines do not eaſe the paine, but rather increaſe it. Moiſtneſſe is knowen by theſe ſignes, much filth cometh out at the noſe, the eyes be puffed vp and ſwolne, & the patient ſleepeth much: but of this diſtempure alone there doeth no headach enſue. Thoſe that haue headach cauſed of drineſſe, let them remaine in a moiſt ayer, and let them eate meates that do moiſten, and that be of good iuyce, as the yolkes of egges, cocks ſtones, and the brothes of them, pheſants, partrich, and ſuch like things, that do nouriſh much and moiſten. Let them drinke thinne wine alayed with water. Let them ſleepe largely. Let them eſchue motion of the body and exerciſe, and vſe quietneſſe and reſt. Let them eſchue carnall copulation, hunger, thirſt, and all things that do drye. Let them vſe bathes of ſweet waters that are warme. Let them be merrie, and eſchue all other perturbations of the mind. If headach be cauſed of moiſture, you muſt vſe the contrary diet to this that is before preſcribed (that is, all ſuch things as do drie, which you may eaſily know by that which hath bene ſayd before.) For paine of the head cauſed of drineſſe, you muſt annoint the former ſeame.

Cauſæ.

Signa.

Victus.

Curatio.

seame of the head with oyle of sweete almonds, or with oyle of gourds, or with oyles of violets, and cammomill mixed together. It is also good to drop some of these oyles into the nosthrils. You may also mixe verie well with the sayd oyles goose grease, hennes grease, calues grease, or fresh butter after this sort; R. oyles of violets, and water lillies, ana. ℥ iii. calues suit, hennes grease, & fresh butter, ana ℥ ii. commixe them, and make a liniment, and therewith annoint the head. Furthermore embrocations profit not a litle, if they be made of violets, mallowes, & other herbes that haue vertue to moisten. Against headach caused of moisture, you must vse medicines cleane contrarie to the aforenamed, which must differ according to the heate or cold which is ioyned to the moisture. You may finde sufficient store of such remedies out of the former Chapters. *Linimentum.*

CHAP. V.

Of Headach caused of bloud.

Hitherto we haue spoken of the cure of headach, which commeth through alteration and distempure of the bare qualitie, but now we will speake of that which is caused of fulnesse, and abundance of bloud: we call plenitude in this place that which the Greeks call in their tongue *plethora*, it chanceth whē all the foure humours be increased in their proportion, or when bloud alone doth abound. This kind of headach is caused of all such things as do ingender great abundance of humours in the bodie, as meates and drinks of great nourishment being plētifully taken, as also the neglecting & omitting of exercises, bathes, sweatings, & other natural & artificiall vacuations be causes of the said plenitude. The signes be these. The face and the eyes be ruddie, the vaines are swolne, so that the least & smallest may easily be seene, the pulse is great & vehement, the vrine reddish & thick, the vaines of the temples beate, the paine in the head is a heauinesse. Concerning diet, let the sicke be in a cold & dry aire: let him eschue flesh, reare egges, and such things as nourish plentifully: let him vse ptisan made of barley, or alica made of barley: let him vse cold herbes, as endiue, scarioll, purcelaine, lettuce, and such like: let him eschue wine, and let him drinke water wherein a litle cinamon or barley hath bene sodden: let him vse meane exercise: let him be rubbed: let him also vse bathing often, but so that his bodie be first emptied, and the patient free from a feuer. Let his sleepe be meane: let him be merie and ioyfull: and let him abstaine from all other perturbations of the mind. The cure must be begun with bloudletting as soone as can be. You must open the vttermost veine, which in the arme is called *humeralis*, or *Cephalica*, it must be on the arme which is of that side, that the griefe is most vehement. For this veine is so annexed to the head, that not only by it you shal pull backe bloud into a contrarie part, but also you shall empty out that bloud by it, as Hippocrates, & after him Galen, and Rhases do teach. But if age or weakenesse do prohibit bloudletting, you must vse boxing, not to the head it selfe, but to the parts adioyning, as the shoulders and breast, to the intent to pull backe the bloud. These being done, you must apply to the head, medicines that be cold and astringent, whereof we haue made mention before sufficiently in the second chapter, so that they need not here to be repeated.

what is meant by plenitude. πλήθωρα.

Causæ.

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Venæ sectio.

Cucurbitæ.

Ventosæ.

Localia.

Decoctum purgans.

Furthermore the Phisitiō must haue special regard in this case, that the patiēt be kept soluble. Therfore if the patient be any thing costiue, you may minister this decoction or some such like. ℞. floures of bugloſſe, borage, roſes, & violets, ana. M. ß the foure great cold ſeeds husked, ana. ℥ ij. ſebeſtē, damask proines, of each in number xij. great raiſins, tamarindes, ana ℥. j. barks of mirabolanes, citrinorum, indorum, chebulorum, emblicorum, belliricorum, ana. ℥. iij. liquorice. ℥. j. fumitorie, maidenhaire, ana. M. j. tamariſcus, harts toung, ana. ℥ iij. ſene, and polipodie, of each, ℥ ß. agaricke choſen. ℥. ij ß. ginger, ℥. ß. Seeth all theſe in a ſufficient quantitie of water, vntill halfe be conſumed, then ſtraine it and preſſe it hard. Adde to that decoction ſuger ſufficient to make it ſweet, purifie it with the white of egges, and make a potion, whereof the patient ſhall drinke each morning, ℥. iiij. faſting. And if ſo be that the patients costiueneſſe require a ſtronger medicine, then you may adde to foure ounces of the aforeſaid decoction, ℥. j. ß. of fine reubarbe beaten to powder, and ſpicknard, ℥. ß. or you may diſſolue it in *caſia fiſtula*. ℥. j. ß. newly drawen, or ℥ j of manna, or of diaphenicon. ℥. iij. For the ſame purpoſe alſo it is good to miniſter vnto the patient ſyrupe of violets, and *Aceroſus ſimplex*. After this you muſt apply ſuch medicines to the head, as be able to diſperſe the remnant of the paine & diſeaſe; as is, ſeedes of mallowes, fenugreeke, cammomill, and melilot floures. Alſo oyles of cammomil, dill, and ſuch like, whereof the Phiſition may at his choiſe make liniments, ointments, or emplaiſters in maner aforeſaid. Note here further, that if much bloud abound after you haue let bloud of the *Cephalica*, you may alſo ſtrike the vaine in the forehead: as alſo for that purpoſe it is good to vſe clyſters ſometime very ſtrong, and you may vſe frictions and bindings of the neather parts to pull backe the humours. Moreouer gargariſing & ſneeſing may be vſed in time conuenient, & boxing in the hinder part of the head, with ſcarificatiō, at the diſcretion of the Phiſition, as occaſiō & time ſhal ſerue.

Diſcutientia.

CHAP. VI.

Of headach cauſed of choler.

Cauſa.

HEadach comming of cholericke humors is cauſed of all ſuch things as do heat and dry the whole body, and eſpecially the head vnnaturally, that is, ſuch things as do ingender choler: (to wit, care, anger, paine, labour, exerciſe,

Signa.

watching, abſtinence, famine, and eating of meates that be cholericke, as garlike, onions, and ſuch like. The ſignes be theſe: the paine is like theirs that haue headach cauſed of burning heat of the ſunne, but they haue a more ſharp and pricking paine, their head is moderatly hote, their face is pale and wanne. Sometime there followeth bitterneſſe of the mouth, drineſſe of the eyes, noſe, and tong. Moreouer this euill chanceth moſt of all to floriſhing yeares, a hote complexion, and to them that take ouermuch buſineſſe in hand, and ſuch like.

Victus ratio.

Let the patient abide in a cold & moiſt aire, which may be the rather procured by arte, as is taught before in the ſecond chap. by ſprinkling the floore of the chamber continually with water, or by ſtrewing about of floures and branches that are cold & moiſt in operatiō. Let his whole diet be moiſt, let him eat moiſt meats that be of good iuyce, giue him lettuce, & purſlaine, and ſmall fiſhes of freſh waters. Let his drinke be water alone, or water wherein a litle cynamon hath.

hath bin sodden. Let him altogether abstaine from wine. Let him be quiet, and vse long sleepes, bathes that be temperate, vnctions are good for him, let him be merrie, and refraine from all perturbations of the mind. The cure must be begun with purging of the cholericke humour straight way, because choler is thinne & moueable, & therfore will easily purge out. But if it chance, that the cholericke humor doth rest quietly in some part of the body, and so doth waxe hote, and burne that part, and by that meanes doth prohibite hote medicines (as purging things be) then before the purgatiō, you must minister such things as do quench and concoct the heat and burning of choler, that is such things as do alter it. For digestion that we speake of now is nothing else but an alteration of the humour that causeth the disease. Therfore such medicines must be ministred each morning fasting before you do purge, vntil good cōcoction appeare in the vrine: For by this meanes choler being concoct, and as it were tamed & made milde, is made so obedient vnto nature, that it will soone without any griefe be drawen of the purging medicine to conuenient places, that it should auoid by. You shall therfore for a preparatiue vse this or such like medicines. ℞. Syrupe of violets, ℥.j. syrupe of water Lillies, ℥.ß. distilled waters of Endiue, succorie and roses. ana. ℥ j. commixe them, & let them be drunke in the morning fasting. For this purpose also you may minister Iulep of Roses and violets, or *Syrupus acetosus*, or the decoction of seeds of cucumbers, gourds, purcelaine, endiue, rootes also of endiue and succorie, roses, violets, water lillies, lettuce, damaske proynes, Sebesten, Iuiubes, and such like. You may purge the cholericke humour either by infusion of wormewood, or of Aloes, or with *Hierapicra* ministred alone, or a little scammonie mixed with it, or with pilles made of Aloes. Or you shall not doe amisse to take of the purging decoction prescribed in the former chapter. ℥iiij. and to dissolue therein ℥.iii. of *Electuarium de succo rosarum*, or as much of *Electuarium de Psillio*, & so minister it. It is good also to minister infusion of reubarbe made after this sort. ℞. fine Reubarbe. ℥. ij. Spikenard. ℈. j. cut them small, and infuse them in distilled waters of endiue, doddir, and bugloss, ana. ℥.j. pure ale. ℥. ß. the space of 12. houres, then straine it hard, and put thereto of Electuaries *de succo Rosarum* and *Psillio*, ana. ℥ j.ß. commixe them and make a purging potion. Also you may vse *Pilulæ aureæ*, and *Alephangine*, or pilles of reubarbe, or of *Hiera simplex*, and such like, or else *Diacatholicon*, or *Diaprunes solutiue*. For them that are delicate, you may vse this bole, ℞. of *Diagridium* ℈. ß. of Maces, cynnamon, and Masticke, ana. gr. 2. conserue of violets, and water lillies, ana. ℥. j. suger as much as sufficeth, and make a bole. Further it profiteth now and then to vse clisters made in this or like sort: ℞. Mallowes, Althea, Endiue, Succorie, Violets, ana. M.ß. whole barley, ℥. i. the fower common small colde seedes (that is) Lettuce, purcelaine, endiue, and scarioll, ana. ℥. iij. Seeth all these in running water to the third part, straine them, take of that decoction ℔ j. of the pulpe of *Cassia fistula* ℥ j. of *Hierapicra* ℥.ß. of oyle of violets ℥.ij. oyle of roses. ℥.j. of *mel rosarum* ℥ j. of salt ℥.i ß. commixe all together, and make a clister. After purging of the cholericke humour, you must apply medicines outwardly, which can coole and strenthen the head, wherof you shal find store in the secōd chapter. If the sick can not sleepe, annoint the fore part of the head with oyle of water

Curatio.

Zulapium.

Purgatio.

Dilutum Rhabarbari.

Bolus purgans.

Clyster.

Localia.

Sleepe

lillies,and oyle of poppie: to them you may for a need adde a litle opium,that sleepe thereby may be prouoked. Note, that boxing without scarification and frictions of the armes and legges may be well vsed in times conuenient.

CHAP. VII.

Of headach causèd of fleume.

Causæ. HEadach cõming of fleume, is causèd of all such things as ingender fleume in the head, as a cold and moyst aire, meates that be cold and moist, as fishes, milke, rawe herbes,fruite,idlenesse,and sleeping vpon a full stomake & *Signa.* such other like. The signes hereof be fulnesse & heauinesse of the head,whitenesse,and moistnesse of the face. Moreouer the sicke will easily fall a sleepe,he is slow, his sences are dull, and his head aboundeth with excrements, as also *Victus ratio.* the signes declared in the 3.Chapter agree with this kind of headach. Let the sick remaine in an aire that is hote and dry by nature,or if that cannot be had, let the ayre be made such by certaine odoriferous things, as with cynamon, frankensence, cloues, wood of Aloes, and such like. Let his meate that he eateth for the most part be rosted,and let him eat spices with it.For his drinke let him vse thinne and small wine, let his exercise be meane; to be short, let him *Curatio.* vse such diet as is prescribed in the third chapter of this booke. The cure must be begun with extenuation & digestion of the flegmaticke humour. Therefore you must minister such medicines as are able to extenuate, make thinne, cut, and deuide humours; such be mel rosarum, oximel simplex and compositum, and scilliticum, syrupe of stæchades, distilled waters of hysope, betonie, marioram,sage,and such like,minister therefore vnto him a medicine made in this *Zulapium.* sort. ℞. Of *oximel scylliticum* ℥. j. of syrupe of stæchades ℥. ß. of distilled waters of hysope, percely and marioram ana. ℥. j. commixe them and make a potion. Or if the vsing of syrupes & distilled waters do not like you, you may minister *Decoctum extenuans pituitam.* this or such like decoction. ℞. of the rootes of fenell, percely & asparagus.ana. ℥. j. rootes of pionie ℥. ij. seedes of annise,fenell,siler montanum ana. ℥. iij. stichados,origan,serpillum, marioram,calamint,betonie, sage. ana. M. ß. fine cinamon,maces,ana. ℥. j. ß. Seeth all these in sufficient quantitie of water vntill halfe be consumed,then straine it,and adde suger sufficient to make it sweete, clarifie it with the whites of egges,then put thereto syrupe of hysope,& oximel *Purgatio.* simplex ana. ℥. iij. commixe them all together and make a potion. When the humours are extenuate,& made thinne and prepared to be purged,then must *Pilulæ.* such medicines be ministred, as are able to purge fleume,for the which cause let the sicke haue these pilles ministred vnto him ℞. *pilularum cochiarum* ℥. j. ß. *pilularũ è hiera composita.* ℥. j. *pil. alephanginarũ.* ℥. ß. agaricke made into trochists ℈. ij. *Mirabolanorum,chebulorum.* ℈. j. fine turbith ℈. ß. stichados and ginger.ana. gr. v. masticke gr. vij. seeds of pionie in number iij. Castorei g. iiij. with lauender water make pilles. It is good for them that are thus affected, to be purged not once onely, but twise or thrise, because the grosse and clammie humours will not straight follow a suddaine purgation, but they must be drawne out by litle and litle with often purging. Also clisters are good, not only because they emptie out such things as are contained in the intestines, but also for that they *Clyster.* pull backe such humours and vapours as ascend to the head. For clisters therfore

fore the decoction before prescribed is good if you take thereof ℥. xij. and dissolue therin *benedictæ laxatiuæ* ℥ ß. *Electuarij indi maioris* ℥.iij. diaphœnicon. ℥. ij, *mel rosarum* ℥. j. oyles of laurell and rewe. ana. ℥. j. ß. sal gemme. ℥. j. commixe them together and make a cliſter. After the whole bodie is purged, you muſt miniſter ſuch medicines as can purge the head, as be gargariſes made in this ſort: ℞. long pepper and nutmegs, ana. ℥. ß. ſeed of ſtauiſacre and pellitorie, ana. ℈.ij. muſtard ſeed, origan, ana ℈. j. beate them to powder, and put thereof in a linnen cloth, and chew it, or with maſticke or honie make trochiskes like lupines, and let the ſicke chewe one of them almoſt halfe an houre. Alſo the head may be purged by iuyce of marioram, blitum, colewortes, and ſuch like. You may alſo for this purpoſe miniſter gargariſes made of the diſtilled waters of hyſope, betony, origan, with *hierapicræ* and *oximel compoſitum*, or in this ſort; ℞. pellitorie, long pepper, of each, ℥. j. ß. ſeed of ſtauiſacre, ℥. ß. marioram, peniroyall, hyſope, origan, betonie, ana. M. ß. ſeeth all theſe in ſufficient quantitie of water vnto the third part, ſtraine it, and adde to the licour *mel roſarum*. ℥ j. ß. *oximel ſcilliticum*. ℥. ß. commixe all and make a gargariſe. Alſo medicins to prouoke ſneeſing are good in this caſe. You may make them after this ſort; ℞. marioram ℥. j. nigella, ℥. ß. cloues, white pepper, cubebs, ana. ℈. j. nutmegs, graines, caſtoreum, heleborus albus, ana. ℈. ß. beate them into very fine powder, and prouoke ſneeſing therewith. For them which are rich you may adde muske and amber, ana. gr. ij. It profiteth alſo to hold hote and ſweet odors to the noſe of the patient, or a pomander artificially made, ſuch a one as we preſcribed in the end of the third Chapter. Further you may take *naſalia* (as they call them) things to put into the noſe, ſharpe at one end and great at the other like a ſteeple, after this ſort; ℞. ſtauiſacre, pellitory and white pepper, ana. ℥ ß. nigella, nutmegs, ana ℈. ij. heleborus albus, ℈. ß. powder them, and with roſin & waxe make naſales. After the purging of the head, you may vſe ointments, embrocations, drie quilts, and ſuch like other medicines to diſperſe the remnant of the humour remaining in the head, whereof there be examples ſufficient in the third Chapter before. You may commodiouſly miniſter inwardly, cubebs condite, or diambra, diamoſcha, aromaticum roſaceum, diacuminum, dianthos, theriaca, mithridatum, diacorum, conſerue of marioram, roſemary, betonie, with ſyrupe of ſtichados. Or miniſter theſe lozenges which are ſpecially good. ℞. powder of *Electuarium de gemmis, dianthos*, ana. ℈. j. cubebs, maces, of each, ℥. ß. woods of Aloes, cloues, and fenell ſeed, ana. ℈. ß. fine cinamon, ℈. ij. ſtichados, ℈. ß. with ſuger molten in the diſtilled waters of pionie floures and lauender make lozenges. And thus much for the cure of headach cauſed of flegmaticke humours. But if ſo be that headach be cauſed of a melancholie humour, then you muſt preſcribe ſuch diet, and vſe ſuch cure as ſhalbe declared in the Chapter of melancholy, or madneſſe. And therefore it ſhould be ſuperfluous to intreate hereof in this place: repaire therefore for cure of headach comming of melancholie vnto the 28 chapter in this booke following.

Gargariſe.

Gargariſmus.

Sternutamentum.

Naſalia.

Localia.

Lozenges.

Of headach comming of melancholy.

CHAP. VIII.

Of headach cauſed of windineſſe.

Cauſe.

IF headach be cauſed of windineſſe, the diet vſed before was ſuch as did ingender wind beſides the nature of the body, & other circumſtances were ſuch as

Signa. were apt to ingender wind. The signes be these, if there be felt distention and stretching in the head without heauinesse & beating, & if there be a sound and
Victus ratio. noyse in the eares, then doth it betoken windines in the head. The diet of the
Cura. patient must altogether be such as doth not ingender windines. For the cure, if the windinesse be not only bred in the head, but doth ascend from som part beneath, first of all you must vse such medicines, as do repell and driue backe, such be vineger, pomgranate rindes and floures, wormewood, melilot, mints, plantaine, walwort, bursa pastoris, nutmegges, purcelaine, houslike, lawrell leaues, and such like. Which being moderatly vsed a while, you must then adde to those repulsiue things, some such medicines as do mitigate, concoct, and digest, as be fenugreeke, lineseed, cammomill, yolkes of egges, saffron, hennes grease, goose grease, &c. Last of all ad discussiue medicines, oyles of dill, & rew, barley meale, lupines, lillie rootes, nigella, &c. It is good therfore first of all to
Clyster. empty the belly with a strong clister, but that must be made of a decoction that doth dissolue windines, by seething in water anise seeds, & caraway seeds, fenel seed, comin, dry figges, branne, and such like: herein you must dissolue *benedicta laxatiua* ℥. iiij. or *Electuarium nidum* in like quantity, or *Diaphenicon* ℥.iiij. or *Diacatholicon*, or *hierapicra* ℥.vij. Such kind of clisters do not onely purge the intestines, & the parts about the liuer, but do also pull backe such things as ascend to the head. Afterward you must strengthen the affected member, that it do ingender wind no more, whether it be the stomacke, the liuer, the splene, the intestines, or any other member: which being done, if heat abound in the head together with the windines, then apply oile of roses, which is both repulsiue, di-
Localia. gestiue, & discussiue, & adde to it vineger which is both repulsiue & discussiue also, & doth extenuat besides. Also rose water or iuice of purcelaine, knotgrasse or nightshade may be vsed & applied with a litle vineger. If there be cold in the head with the windines, the vse oiles of cammomil or dill, mixed with a litle vineger: or if the grief increase, apply the iuyce of rew with vineger & oile mixed together, or apply the iuyce of the root of floure de-luce with vineger: or iuyce of laurel berries & rew mixed with vineger is good to be applied. Likewise bitter almonds beaten with vineger & oile, & applied to the forehead in a linnen cloth, are very good when the grief doth first begin to increase. And if you had rather vse drie quilts, you may make them at the first of milium, roses, willow leaues, knotgrasse, nightshade, & purcelaine, & so apply the to the forehead, & forepart of the head. Afterward you may ad to th'aforesaid marioram, serpillū, hisope, rewe, tender leaues of lawrell, ciperns & such like. It is good also to vse odors & smels, as castoreū, musk, amber, & such like. To prouoke sneesing, & to minister inwardly to the sicke is good, either *Diacuminum*, or *Dianisum* ℥.j. or as much triacle, or *Mithridatum* profiteth. But if the windines be caused through imbecillitie of some parts of the head it selfe, then you shall not neede to vse repulsiue medicines, but rather concoctiue and discussiue medicins, such as are before declared. As for inward medicins they auaile or profit litle in this case

CHAP. IX.

Of Headach caused of the stomacke.

HItherto we haue declared the causes, signes, and cures of headach caused principally in it self, now it remaineth that we intreat of paine in the head, which

which commeth by consent. And first of that headach which cõmeth through euill affection of the stomacke. And that is caused most commonly when some sharpe humour aboundeth in the stomacke, especially in the mouth of it, from whence corrupt vapours arising do ascend to the head. It may be knowen by the gnawing and byting paine that they feele which haue that headach, and by the desire to vomit that the patient hath. Especially if the mouth of the stomacke be affected. Moreouer in this kind of headach, if the sicke fast, and suffer hunger long, the paine is more vehement, for through long abstinence the malice of the humour increaseth. You must cure those that are thus grieued, not by applying remedies to the head, but to the humours in the stomacke, which raise vp vapours to trouble the head. Therefore you must with speede purge the noysome humours that are in the mouth of the stomacke. They may be purged out by drinking of warme water, if so be the patient can easily vomit: if not, he must thrust his finger or a fether into his throte, and so prouoke the stomacke to vomit. Note that yellow, or pale choler, because of his naturall lightnesse, doth readily ascend to the mouth of the stomack. But the humours that be flegmatique, or soure, or salt, do rather remaine in the middest of the stomacke, then in the mouth of it. It is best when such humours are in the bottome of the stomacke, for then they will easily auoid the stomacke & passe into the guts. It is worst of all when noysome humours do cleaue so fast to the filmes & tunicles of the stomacke, and doth so furre them, that they can scarcely be scoured out. Therfore if any humour doth furre the tunicles of the stomacke, minister *Hierapicra*, which is a soueraigne medecine therfore. And after purging, let the patient haue good meates easie of digestion, and wholsome for the stomacke. And for as much as lacke of good digestion, and weaknes of the mouth of the stomacke, be the greatest causes of increase of noysome humours in the stomacke, it must be prouided that good digestion be procured, and that the mouth of the stomacke may be strengthened by such medicines, as be astrictiue, and haue vertue to strengthen, whereof you shall find plenty hereafter in the third booke, and therefore it were superfluous to recite them here. As we haue in this Chapter spoken of headach caused of the stomacke, and referred the cure to the third booke, so vnderstand likewise if headach be caused of the disease of the liuer or splene, or any other member: for the affects of those members being cured, ceaseth the headach.

Causæ.

Signa.

Curatio.

Hierapicra.

Note.

CHAP. X.

Of headach caused by drunkennesse.

THe causes and signes of drunkennesse are euident inough, chiefly hote wines, & strong drinks are causes thereof, for that they fill the braine with vapours, and that so much the more (as Galen sayd) if the braine be hote by nature: sometime also hote humours ascending to the head, do cause drunkennesse. The cure of drunkennesse generally consisteth in two points: that is in euacuation and refrigeratiõ. Therfore if the wine be yet vndigest, & do flow in the stomacke, cause him that hath the headach to vomit by drinking of hote water. But and if the headach do remaine after digestion, you must vse medicines, that do refrigerate, and driue backe vapours which ascend to the

Causæ.

Curatio.

Warme water, and a litle syr. acetose commixed, causeth vomit.

head. As is oyle of roſes alone, or mixed with vineger, or with iuyce of iuye, or coleworts. Alſo the leaues of coleworts ſteeped in warme water, and bound about the head do naturally reſiſt drunkenneſſe. Moreouer the broth of coleworts being eaten, is good for that purpoſe. To preſerue one frō drunkennes (as *Aetius* ſaith) let him eat v. or vij. bitter almonds faſting, or let him drinke wormwood wine firſt of all. But to take away drunkenneſſe that is preſent, giue the decoction of centory the leſſe to drinke, or harts horne, or the ſeed of veruaine boyled in water. You muſt haue a ſpeciall regard, and procure that the patient do ſleepe and reſt, which being done all day, at night bath him in a bath of ſweet water, & when thou haſt waſhed him, let him eate meats of good iuyce, but not ouer hote. Let therefore his food be ptiſan broth, ſouppings made of *alica*, bread dipped in water, reare egges, and ſuch like. For pot herbes lettuce is of good iuyce and cooleth, and coleworts drieth vp vapours. For drinke let him vſe water only, if he hath bene accuſtomed therto, and can well beare it, otherwiſe giue him ſmall drinke, or a litle ſmall white wine. After his meate, giue vnto him of a pomgranate, or a peare, or a quince, or raiſins. To conclude, let all his diet be meats of good iuyce, pleaſant to the ſtomack, and that driue away vapours. Let him abſtaine from dates, for their property is to cauſe headach. And if it chance that of the vapours and humours aſcending to the head, there remaine part of them impact and ſtuffed in the thinne pores, and ſo do cauſe headach after two or three dayes, then leaue oyle of roſes, & vſe firſt in ſteed of it, oyle of cammomill moderately warme. Afterward apply oyle of ireos. After that, if need require, you may apply things that heat more, commixing with the oyle of ireos, oyle of nard, or *oleum coſtinum*: or other oyles and ointments of that ſort.

Preſeruatio.

Victus ratio.

Dates.

Irium.
Nardinum.

CHAP. XI.

Of headach cauſed by feauers.

Cauſe.

IF headach do moleſt thoſe that haue a feuer, you muſt diligently examine and conſider, whether the ſame began at the firſt beginning of the feuer, or whether it ſprong the feuer increaſing, for if the headach began not with the firſt fit of the feuer, but afterward while the feuer increaſed, and came nigh to the Criſis: then ſeeke not to remedie it, for it portendeth & foretelleth that vomit, or a decretorie fluxe of bloud at the noſe will follow ſhortly, as *Hippocrates* declareth in his booke of predictions, and Galen in his third booke *de Criſibus*, and in his firſt booke *ad Glauconem Cap. vltimo*: if the headach began at the firſt with the feuer, it commeth of vapours or humours diſperſed abroad through the greatnes of the feuer, and as it were boiling hot eleuate vp to the head, & partly alſo through weakeneſſe of the braine. Therfore if the paine do come of abundance of humours, you muſt let him bloud after the firſt or ſecond fit (if nothing prohibit it) eſpecially in luſtie bodies, & in ſuch as abound with bloud. Alſo you muſt draw the humours a contrarie way, and pull them backe by ſharpe clyſters, ſuch as ſhall be preſcribed in the Chap. of *Apoplexia*, & by often binding and much frication in the neather parts. Moreouer you may ſet cupping glaſſes to the hinder part of the head, or to the necke. You muſt apply to the head irrigations and ointments, that haue vertue to repell & driue backe

Cura.

backe from it, and afterward you must vse discussiue medicines: last of all, such things as do strengthen the braine. To repell and driue backe, vse oyle of Roses, and other such like as are rehearsed before in the 2. Chapter. Vse them in Sommer time, and in hote complexions, cold and mixed with a little vineger; but in winter season, and in cold complexions, apply them bloud warme. If the feuer be vehement, and ouermuch watching do trouble the sicke, vse irrigations made of Poppie heads, Housleeke, and such like medicines as haue vertue to coole and prouoke sleep, in this sort: ℞. flowers of Violets Waterlillies, and Roses, ana M. j. hulled barley, ℥. j. heads of Poppie, ℥. ß. Housleeke, M. ß. seeth all these in sufficient quantity of water, vntill the third part be consumed, and make an embrocation. Or if the paine continue vehement, take greene leaues of Henbane or Poppie, with oyle of Roses, a little vineger and crummes of bread; commixe thē, & apply them to the forepart of of the head, and to the forehead. When the braine is sufficiently cooled, then apply those things which can heate the head againe, and so auoyd and disperse the humours that remaine. And therefore you may vse oyles of Cammomill, Dill, or Ireos, or decoctions of Cammomill, or Althæa, or such like. And if the humours be grosse and tough, you may boyle with the aforesaid things *Serpillum*, Peniroyall, Calamint, Mints, or such like. Last of all the head must be strengthened by oyle of Roses, and such like, that is, Betony, Cammomill, Melilot, &c. The rest of the cure of headach caused through the vehemencie of the feuer, is to be sought out in the treatise of Feuers.

Embrocha.

Note.

CHAP. XII.

Of inueterate headach.

Cephalea both in Greeke and Latine is the name of headach which is exceeding painfull, continuing long and hard to ceasse, which vpon light occasions hath very sharpe and great fits, so that the patient can neither abide noise, nor loud speech, nor cleare light, nor drinking of wine, nor sauours that fill the braine, nor mouing, but desireth for the greatnesse of the paine to sit or lie quiet in the darke, supposing that his head were stroken with a hammer. Also some of them do feele those things that are about their head, as though they were brused or racked. In many the paine proceedeth vnto the rootes of the eyes. This disease sometime doth continue painfull alwaies, sometime it hath fits and intermissions, either ordinate or inordinate. For in some there is intermission in the fits, as in the falling sickenesse, so that for a time they seeme to be perfectly whole. This disease doth vexe women more then men, because of their long haire. In some of them the filmes that couer the braine are pained: but in some, onely the filme that coupleth the scull is grieued. It is caused of abundance of bloud and other humours, or by the sharpnesse of humours or vapours contained within or without the scull, and inflaming the head, or it is caused through weakenesse of the head. The paine that inuadeth the sicke with grauity and heauinesse, declareth plenitude and abundance of humours; if it come with pricking, gnawing and shooting, it betokeneth sharpnes of humors or vapours: if it beate like the pulses, it betokeneth inflammation: if there be felt distension and bolning in the head without heauinesse or beating, it declareth

Signa.

Causa.

Signa.

windines. But if there be beating with it, there is inflãmation in the filmes of the head: and if there be heauineſſe with the diſtenſion, then it declareth abundance of humours within the filmes. And if the paine be felt ſuperficially, as it were outward, then it betokeneth that the filme which couereth the ſcull is grieued. But if it be felt deepe within, the filmes of the braine are vexed. Note that thoſe that haue paine within the ſcull, they feele griefe at the rootes of their eyes, becauſe that the tunicles of the eyes haue their beginning, of the filmes of the braine. And if ſo be that a putrified humour in the head do waxe hotter and hotter, then there is a feuer ioyned with the headach. They alſo are vexed with a feuer, which haue headach cauſed by inflammation. As for diet to be vſed in this griefe, you may eaſily preſcribe it out of the former Chapters, according to the diuerſitie of the cauſes thereof: and therefore I omit it here willingly, leſt I ſhould vſe a fond repetition of one thing often. The cure doth differ according to the diuerſity of the cauſe. For if you finde abundance of humours or vapours to be the cauſe, if it be ingendred of plenitude of the whole body, you muſt begin with euacuation of the whole body. And therefore you muſt let him bloud on the *Cephalica* on the ſame ſide, if his ſtrength will ſuffer it, and no other thing let it. But if the head doth receiue the humours and vapours that do aſcend, for that it is weake, then you muſt pull backe the matter vnto the whole body, and ſo remedie the part affected. Therefore you muſt vſe very ſharpe cliſters, and b..dings of the armes and legges, and many frictions of the neather parts: and ſometime alſo in this caſe you may let bloud in the arme. And if after that, bloud do ſeeme ſtill to abound, you may open a veine in the noſthrils, and draw bloud from thence, as much as ſhall be requiſite. Shortly after you muſt purge the body with *Hierapicra*, or other thinges that are preſcribed in the former Chapters. After purging of the whole body, you may ſafely come to purging of the head, and in the end vſe medicines to ſtrengthen it. The head is to be purged with Gargariſmes, and with medicines put into the noſe, as iuyce of Leekes or of *Cyclaminus*, or ſuch like, which be rehearſed before in the ſeuenth Chapter. To the head it ſelfe you muſt firſt apply things that do repell and driue backe: ſuch be, oyle made of vnripe Oliues, and oyle of Roſes alone, or applyed with vineger, alſo oyle made of Poppy heads and of Iuie berries, and of greene Mints, and ſuch like, whereof we haue ſpoken before. But note, if the humours that abound in the head be cold and crude, then apply the former medicines warme; but if the humours abounding be hote and cholericke, then apply thoſe medicines cold. Afterward you muſt apply thoſe medicines that do diſcuſſe and diſperſe humours, as be oyles of Cammomill and Dill, and ſuch like before rehearſed; but if the humors abounding be thicke and tough, boyle Serpillum, or Peniroyall, or Calamint, or Mints in oyle, and thou ſhalt extenuate them by applying thereof. Beſides, theſe things do ſtrengthen the part affected, and therefore they are to be vſed vntill the cure be finiſhed. Aboue all other things Veruaine doth diſperſe humours, and mightily corroborate the head, eſpecially being greene. Alſo being drie, and boyled in Ale, rootes and all together, with Serpillum, it doth the like; if the head be annointed therewith. Moreouer if you boile Veruaine alone in oyle, & do ſprinkle the head therewith; it helpeth all paine of the head of long continuance, if it were

Note.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Venæ ſectio.

Reuulſio.

Localia.

Note.

Verbenaca recta.

were cauſed of cold, or of groſſe and viſcous humors, as *Galen* witneſſeth. Lib. 2. *de comp. medicam. ſecundum Locos.* Alſo for the ſame it profiteth much to vſe oile, wherein ſowes, called in Latine *Millipedæ* be boyled. And thus much of the cure of *Cephalæa* comming of plenitude. As for the cure thereof comming of other cauſes, you may gather it out of the former Chapter.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the Migrime.

HEmicrania is a painefull euill remaining in one halfe of the head, either on the right half or on the left, and is diſtinguiſhed by the ſeame that runneth a long in the skull, from the midde forehead to the hinder part of the head, this griefe in Engliſh is called the Migrime. This paine commeth often by fits, and in ſome the griefe is felt without the skull, in ſome within deepe in the braine, and in ſome other nigh to the temples in the muſcles there. This paine is cauſed by aſcending and flowing of many vapours or humours either hote or cold, either by the vaines, or by the arteries, or by both. Somtime they only proceed from the partes contained in the skull, that is, from the braine and his filmes, which thruſt out their excrements and ſuperfluities from them, and ſometime from the partes of the body beneath the head, which ſend vp corrupt vapours & humors from them ſelues to the braine. The ſignes wherby you ſhould know whether vapours or humors doe abound, and whether they be hot, or cold, are to be gathered out of the former chapters. As alſo to know in what part of the head the griefe is, whether within the skull or without, read the former chapter of *Cephalæa*. Only this I adde here, that if in this diſeaſe, the filme that couereth the skull be affected, then is their paine ſo vehement, that they cannot ſuffer to be touched with ones hand, ſo that it ſeemeth the skinne it ſelfe is affected in this euill. As for their diet what they ſhould vſe, and what they ſhould eſchue, may readily be gathered and preſcribed out of the former Chapters, according to the diuerſity of cauſes: but ſpecially let the patient refraine from ſuch thinges as doe ſend aboundance of ſharpe vapours vp to the head, as be garlicke, oynions, muſtard, radiſh rootes and ſuch like. The cure is diuerſe according to the diuerſity of cauſes. And therfore when you wil cure the migrime, conſider diligétly firſt whether the patient needeth bloudletting or purging. For if the griefe come through plenitude and abundance of bloud and humors, then cut the *Cephalica* in the arme on the ſame ſide that the grief is: but if the Migrime be cauſed of aboundance of one humor, then purge that humor by conuenient medicins, which are preſcribed in the former chapters. The whole body being purged, you may come to local & outward medicins, & firſt cauſe the patient either with his owne fingers, or with a linnen cloth, to rubbe and chafe the halfe of his forehead which is grieued, and ſpecially about the muſcles of his temples, vntil it be red and hote, and this muſt be done before the fit of paine commeth. After the fit (as *Galen* teacheth in the end of his ſecond book *De compoſitione medicamẽtorum ſecundum locos*) you muſt apply medicins which of the old Phiſitiãs were called *Hemicrania*, for that they were vſed for the migrime: noting this alwaies, that if with the paine there were much heat felt, then you ought to apply ſuch things as would ſomewhat coole. But

Cauſæ.

Signa.

Curatio.

Localia.

if there were no euident heat felt, then vse those things that are very hot. But you must commixe with either of these, somewhat that is restrictiue, and hath
Vnguentum. vertue to corroborate and strengthen. This ointment following is a very good remedy in a cold affect. ℞. of oiles of dill and Ireos. ana ℥.ß. of white pepper, and serpillum. ana. ℈ j ß. of *Castoreum.* ℈ j. of *Euphorbium.* ℈. ß. of waxe. q ß. and make an ointment to be applied vpon the halfe of the forehead and the muscle of the temples. Also in this case it profiteth much to poure this oile following into the eare. ℞. Sweete oyle oliue. ℥. j. *Euphorbium.* ℈. j. commixe them
Oleum. and droppe one droppe into the eare warme. You may put in more *Euphorbium* or lesse according as the body is quicke or dull in sense: but beware you vse not this medicine in those that haue the migrime engendred of hote vapours or humours. *AEtius* saith that *Euphorbium* dissolued in vineger, and applied to the left side of the head, if the right side be grieued, or contrariwise on the right side when the paine is on the left side, doth of a certaine hid propertie helpe the migrime. The same author also saith, that earth wormes beaten to powder, and applied to the griefe, as also the flesh of snailes bruised and applied doth profite much. The kernels of peaches bruised and applied vppon the griefe (as report hath bene) doth profit much. *Marcellus* saith that the dung of a goat stamped and commixed with vineger squilliticke, if the forehead and temples be annointed therewith, it ceaseth the paine of the migrime for euer. Also his counsell is, if there be sodaine paine of the migrime, take frankensceence, mirrhe, and an egge, beat them together and apply that to the forehead and temples. If the migrime be caused of hote humours or vapours, then vse those remedies which we prescribed before in the cure of headach cõming
Note. of heate or of cholericke humours. Here I thinke it requisite to prescribe certaine pilles, good to be vsed against inueterate headach and the migrime. First
Pilulæ. if choller abound ℞. powder of *Hiera simplex Galeni.* ℥.ij. *pilularum arabicarum.* ℥.iij. trochiskes of *mirabolanes citrine.* ℥.j.ß. reubarbe. ℥.j. spicknard. ℈.j. cõmixe them with sirupe of violets, and reserue the composition. When neede requireth minister. ℥.j. or. ℈.iiij. fiue or sixe houres after supper, and let the patient sleepe vpon it. This you may do once in ten daies, or once in fifteene daies at all times (sommer excepted.) But if fleume aboundeth, make your pilles thus. ℞. of Agaricke trochiscate. ℥.iiij. *pilulæ arabicæ*, and *Hiera simplex. Gal.* ana ℥.j.ß. floures of stæchados, and trochiskes of mirabolanes chebulorum. ana. ℥.j. with sirupe of stæchados and oximel, commixe them, and when occasion serueth, minister ℥.j. or. ℈.iiij. at each time in forme abouesaied. But if melancholy be cause of the migrime. ℞. of the aforesaid *Pilulæ arabicæ.* ℥.ij. of powder of sene and *Epithimum.* ana. ℥.ij.ß. of *Hiera simplex. Gal.* ℥.j.ß. of trochiskes of *Mirabolanes indorum.* ℈. iiij. with sirupe of fumitory and balme water make pilles, and when neede requireth, minister them in forme aforesaid.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of Vertigo and swimming in the head.

THat which the Latines call Vertigo, is a disease, wherein the patient doth imagine that his head is turned roũd about. There is another disease somwhat like vnto this, which in Latin is called, *Tenebricosa Vertigo*, & that is when the

the patient doth think that all that he seeth turneth about, and so dainly with it, his sight faileth him, he supposing that he is compassed about with mist and darknes. It is commonly of the Phisitians called *Scotoma*. *Fuschius* doth think that they erre greatly, that make a difference betweene the former kinds, but it may be confirmed out of good authors Hippocrates, Galen and others. Both the aforesaid kinds be engendred after one sort, and that is through the inordinate mouing of windy vapours and spirites, contained in certaine partes of the braine. This disease is caused either of the braine it selfe being distẽpured and euill affected, or of the mouth of the stomacke offending the braine. *Cause.* The braine it selfe is affected euill, when a grosse and tough humor is contained in it, from whence a vaporous and windy spirit being resolued by weake heat, is moued inordinatly about in the braine. The mouth of the stomacke doth affect the braine, when through corrupt humours being gathered abundantly in it, vapours and windy exhalations are caried vp to the braine, and so turne about the animall spirits contained in it. Those that are troubled with this dis- *Signa.* ease, a darknes and mist appeareth before the eyes vpon euery light occasion, specially if they turne about. For it chanceth to them by turning once about, as it doth to other when they turne often, & therefore the patient many times fals downe. Also it doth astonie him, if he see another man, or a wheele, or any such thing turne about, also if he see whirle pooles in the water turne about: for the visuall spirits beholding a wheele that turneth about, or any such like thing, doth also turne about in like sort, and so the mouing of the humour and the spirits are troubled vnequall and inordinate. When this disease doth proceed of the braine being euill affected, then there proceedeth sound of the eares, vehement paine in the head, and heauines therin. Also the smelling and the other senses proceeding from the head are hurt. Their fit is then chiefly, when the Sunne doth heate them, or when their head is hote by some other meanes, and so the humours being dissolued, do turne about in the braine. When the disease proceedeth from the mouth of the stomack, then they feele before it, a gnawing in the stomacke, as it were the hart burne, & a disposition to vomit. This disease may be discerned from the falling sickneſſe, for that this doth neither take away the senses from the patient, nor it causeth not the *Prognostica.* crampe and writhing of members in the fit. This disease is not to be lightly esteemed, for the *Vertigo* (as Galen saith) is nigh to the falling sickneſſe and the *Apoplexie*, and therefore it would be well looked to. For the *Vertigo* and *Scotoma* will quickly be changed into pernitious diseases, for that they are very nigh to them, specially to the falling sickneſſe and the *Apoplexie*. And if those things that the patient doth imagine to see before his eyes, appeare bloudie and reddish, he is apt to fall into madnes, but those that seeme to see purple colours, are disposed to the falling sicknes. The *Scotoma* or darke *Vertigo* becõmeth most vehement in winter, or in the beginning of the spring. Besides in many it is a signe that the falling sickneſſe will follow. And many do vse to call it a litle Epilepsie. As concerning diet: let the patient remaine in an ayer, that is tem- *Victus ratio.* perate, pure, bright, and cleare, and let him eschue grosse & cloudy ayer. Let him eschue winds, especially South winds: let him also auoyd the beames of the Sunne & the Moone: as also let him not behold things that moue swiftly,

as running waters, or things that turne about, as wheeles, and ſuch like, or to looke into deepe pits is euill for him. Let him eate meates of good iuyce, and of eaſy digeſtion, and ſuch as engender no windines, as partrich, capon, pheſant, chicken, veale, ſcaly fiſhes, and ſuch like, that be eaſie of digeſtion. And let him vſe to eate but moderatly of them, for ſatiety, as alſo long faſting is not good for him. He muſt eſchue all things that cauſe vapours to aſcend into the head, as oynions, garlicke, leekes and ſuch like. And therefore if he drinke wine, let it not be very old, ſmal white wine may be permitted him. After meat it is good for him to eate ſome reſtrictiue thing to ſtop the vapours that they aſcend not to the head, & that ſpecially if the ſtomack be cauſe of this diſeaſe. Let his exerciſe be moderate, let him eſchue ſleepe of the day, neither let him ſleepe within two houres after meate. Let not the place be too hote where he ſleepeth, nor let him not keepe his head too hote. In his exerciſes, let him not ſtir his head much. And therfore it is good for him to vſe frictiõs oftẽ, ſpecialy in the morning before he riſeth, begin at the vpper parts, and end with the nether. He muſt refraine from perturbations and affections of the minde, ſpecially from anger, feare, and ſadnes, as alſo from loud crying, and ſinging. Carnall copulation is not good for him. If he hath not a ſtoole once in a day, you

Curatio. muſt helpe nature either by cliſter or ſuppoſitary. For the cure if the fit be preſent, you muſt reuiue the patient againe with ſweete and odoriferous ſmels, & with frictions and ſuch like. At which time alſo if neede be, you may vſe a ſuppoſitary or a cliſter. Afterward if the party be ſtrong, and no other impedimẽt

Venæ ſectio. preſent, let him bloud on the *Cephalica* vaine, whether it be the beginning of the diſeaſe or otherwiſe. But take heed that you draw not much bloud at once, for the patient will quickly fall through euery light occaſion. Therefore you muſt draw away the bloud at ſundry times vntil you haue ſufficient. But if any thing do hinder you from bloud letting, firſt you muſt purge him with a ſharp cliſter, whereof you ſhall haue example afterward in the chap. of *Apoplexy*. Afterward

Localia. miniſter a purgation according as the humour abounding doth require. But forget not firſt to vſe a preparatiue, when the whole body is ſufficiently purged, you muſt vſe locall things to the head, and firſt apply cupping glaſſes to the hinder part of the head with ſcarification. Afterward vſe to miniſter gargariſmes, and ſternutations to draw reume from the head. Poure into the noſe iuyce of chickweed, beets or cyclaminus. Alſo nitrum beaten with nigella and mixed with old oyle, purgeth well by the noſthrils. Alſo odours made of the decoction of marioram, hiſope, & floures of ſtæchados, a litle *Caſtoreum*, muske, and vineger being added is good. After that let the patient enter into a bath, ſpecially a naturall bath that is of alume, and if his head be ouer hote in the bath, you muſt coole it often with oile of roſes and vineger applied in clothes to it, ſpecially on the fore part of the head, and about the forehead and the temples. And if the diſeaſe doe ceaſe by theſe remedies, then vſe no other. But if it continue ſtill, you muſt cut the arteries that be nigh the temples aboue the eares, ſpecially if the diſeaſe come of hote vapours aſcending to the braine by the arteries. And this is not onely the precept of *Galen*, but alſo of *Aetius* and *Paulus Aegineta*. How the arteries ſhould be cut you ſhall learne of the ſaide *Aegineta* in his 6. booke and 4. Chapter. Albeit *Galen* affirmeth that

ſome

some haue not bene helped by cutting of the arteries, partly for that the hote and vaporous spirits doe sometime ascend by deeper arteries into the braine, and partly for that a windy spirit may be engendred by an inequall distemper of the braine. And therfore if the disease be caused by any of these meanes before rehersed, the patient shall feele small ease or none by cutting of the arteries. And therfore be diligent to enquire of the aforesaid causes, before you cut the arteries. It profiteth much to apply this cauterie behind the eares. ℞. of cantarides, their heads, wings and legs being cast away. ℥ j. sharp leauen. ℥. ß. with vineger and *aqua vitæ*, commixe them and apply them. If the vertigo be caused by the consent of the stomak (that is) if humors cõtained in the mouth of the stomacke, doe send vp vapours to the braine, and so cause the vertigo: it must be cured by vomit, which you shall prouoke in this sort. ℞. of dill a handfull, seed of radish and rapes. ana. ℥ ij. roots of radish. ℥ ß. boile them in sufficient quantitie of water, vntill the third part be consumed, then straine it & put therto *oximell scilliticum*. ℥ j. ß. commixe them and make a potion, and minister it blood warm after meat immediatly: & if this suffice not, it is good to purge him with *Hierapicra Galeni*: or with pilles that be good for the stomacke, called *stomachicæ* for that cause, or with decoction of mirabolanes citrine or chebuli, or with manna, or syrup of roses solutiue, according to the diuersity of the humour abounding. Let the patient vse commonly after meat to eat some restrictiue thing that will close the mouth of the stomacke, & hinder the ascending of vapors vp to the head, as is *Diacotoneon sine speciebus*, & quinces or restrictiue peares, or such like. *Marcellus* saith, the iuyce of blacke beetes annointed vpon the temples helpeth the vertigo. Also if sothernwood be boyled in wine, or in oximell, and drunke warme, it is a most effectuall remedie to cure it perfectly.

Cauterium.

Cure of the Vertigo that commeth of the stomacke.

Vomitus.

CHAP. XV.

Of the frenesie.

PHRENETIS in Greeke and in Latine is a disease, wherein the minde is hurt, and doth differ onely from madnesse, which is called in Greeke and Latine *Melancholia*, or *Mania*, for that a feuer is ioyned with the frenesie, and therfore the frenesie may be called a continuall madnes and fury ioyned with a sharp feuer. Galen saith that the frensie is an inflammation of the braine or of the filmes therof. *Aetius* saith that it is an inflammation of the filmes of the braine with an acute feuer, causing raging and vexation of the mind. There be three kinds of frenesies (as Galen doth witnesse in his fourth book *de locis affectis. cap.* 4o.) according to the internall senses, which be three in number, that is imagination, cogitation and memorie, which may seuerally be hurt. Two of those kinds be simple, and the third is compounded of those two. For some be freneticke, which can iudge rightly of those things that they see as touching common sense and imagination, and yet in cogitation and fantasie they erre from naturall iudgement. Some other being freneticke are not deceiued in cogitation and reason, but only in imagination they erre. There be other some frenetick which do erre both in sense and cogitation (that is) both in imagination and reason, and doe therewith also loose their memorie. The frenesie is caused either of abundance of blood, or of choler, occupying the brain or the

Three kindes of frenesies.

Cause.

filmes therof. And if the choller wherof the diſeaſe engendreth be burnt, thē the freneſie is moſt vehement & more pernitious then any other. Thoſe that be frenticke haue a continuall feuer, & be madde, for the moſt part they can not ſleepe. Somtime they haue troubleſome ſleepes, ſo that they riſe vp, and leap, and cry out furiouſly, they babble words without order or ſenſe, being aſked a queſtion, they anſwer not directly, or at the leaſt raſhly, and that with loud voice, eſpecially if you ſpeak gently to them. Their eyes be bloodſhotten and bleared, they rub them often, ſometime they are dry and ſomtime full of ſharp teares. Their tong is rough, and blood will often drop out at their noſe. Moreouer they pull motes & flocks from the bedding & clothes about them. Their pulſes be ſmall & weake, and ſomewhat hard & ſinowy, they fetch their breath but ſeldome. Note that they which haue the freneſy cauſed of bloud, they laugh in their madnes. But thoſe that be frētick through choler, do rage furiouſly, ſo that they cannot be ruled without bands, & ſuch do vſe to forget all things that they doe or ſaye, ſo that ſome of them, when they require the chamber pot, doe forthwith forget to make vrine, or when they haue done it, they remember not to reſtore the veſſell again. As touching the prognoſtication of this diſeaſe, Galen and all other learned Phiſitions do confeſſe that it is moſt ſharp & moſt perilous, and is indeed vncurable & deadly for the moſt part. *Hippocrates* ſaith in his 72, aphoriſme of his fourth booke, that vrine white & cleare in thoſe that do raue, is a very euill and deadly token. Concerning diet let the ſicke be vſed in this ſort. If it be winter, let him lie in a warme place, if it be ſōmer, let his lodging be in a coole place, let the aier & light be moderate, and let there not be diuerſe pictures in the place. And for that ſome be troubled with the light, and ſome with darknes, it is beſt to trie them in both, and to lay him in the light, which is afraid of darknes, and contrary he that is offended at the light let him be in a dark place. But if the ſicke perſon do find no difference in the places, then, if he be ſtrong, let him haue light, if weake, keep him in a darke place. Let his deareſt frends come to him, & let thē ſomtime ſpeake gently & ſoftly vnto him, & ſometime rebuke him ſharply. Let his meate at the firſt be ptiſan broth, or husked barley boiled, or the crumme of bread often dipped in *aqua mulſa* (that is) water and hony ſodden together, or in hony of roſes. Boile in his brothes endiue, ſuccory, lettuſe, mallowes, and ſuch like, which haue vertue to coole and moiſten. When the diſeaſe decreaſeth, you may giue him ſcaly fiſhes, ſuch as liue in grauelly riuers. If he be very hote within, you may giue him pomegranats and cheries. Let his drinke be water, wherin a litle Cinamon or barly hath bene boyled; you may commixe with it ſirupe of violettes, or of roſes or of water lillies. But beware you giue them not too much at once, nor oftentimes, but ſeldome, and litle at once. When ſignes of concoction appeare in the vrine, & the vehemency of the feuer is ſlaked, if then the ſicke do lacke ſtrength, you may giue him ſmall ale. Moreouer let the ſicke be kept quiet without mouing as much as is poſſible; if he be rich let ſeruants hold him, if poore, bind him, for inordinate mouing diminiſheth ſtrength. Alſo a bath of ſweet water is good for him, if the body be dry and rimpled, but he muſt vſe it blood warme. For ſo it cooleth & moiſteneth, and by that meanes it cureth the drines & ouermuch watching, but

Signa.

Prognoſtica.

Victus ratio.

but take heed you vse not bathing before the body be purged. Moreouer perturbations of the mind do hurt frentick persons exceedingly,& therfore you must suffer them to vse nothing that will make them sad, or engender choller in thē. For the cure,if the strength of the patiēt will suffer,let him bleed forthwith,for there is none so present a helpe. You must cut the vttermost veine of the arme called *Cephalica*,and if that appeare not,take the middle veine,and draw out as much blood as strength will suffer. But take heed you let him not bleed vntill he sound,as many rashly doe,for it is better to take lesse then you should doe, the body being much weakened by vehemēt motion. You must take good heed,least the sicke doe priuily take away the band off his arme,or loose it. Afterward also you may strike the veine in the midst of the forehead. But if age or strength doe forbid blood letting, then vse cupping with scarification,behind in the necke or on the backbone, which be profitable,for that they draw back the humors that flow to the braine. For that purpose also clisters are specially to be vsed made in this sort. ℞. Mallow leaues,violet leaues, endiue,& lettuce .ana. *M*.j. of barley decorticate. ℥.j. sebesten.num.11. seeds of gourdes, melons & cucumbers.ana. ℥.iij. seeth all these in sufficiēt quantity of water,vntill the third part be consumed,then straine it & take of the decoction. ℥ xij. of *casia fistula* newly drawen. ℥.j.ß. of *mell rosarum*. ℥.j. of oile of violets. ℥.iij. of salt. ℥.j.ß. con mixe them all & make a clister. If you will haue it purge more strongly,put to it of *Hierapicra*,or of *Electuariū de succo rosarū*. ℥.ß. Binding of the extreme parts of the body profit much to diuert the humors frō the head. Also *Mathiolus* doth greatly cōmend *stubiū* with the conserues of roses,& I my self haue proued it in this order to be most excellēt as followeth ℞.g.12. made in very fine pouder,& put it into claret wine. ℥.iiij. & let it stand hours.30.& euery 6 or 7 houre shake it:and at the 30 hours end,poure it from the pouder,& let him drink it with a litle sugar. This doth mightily purge the superfluous humors frō the head,as also to rub the feet with salt & vineger & such like. You must sprinkle the hed with oile of roses,or vineger of roses being bloud warme. For the braine or his filmes being inflamed,cannot safely abide actuall cold,nor vehement heat. For the same purpose also you may vse iuyce of nightshade, & of plantain, or the distilled waters of thē,or such like herbs. If the euill be very vehement,moistē his face continually with oile of water, wherin the tops of poppy haue bin soddē. You may also vse odors to his nose of roses,violets,water lillies,& such like. Also annoint his nosthrils within and his forhead w̄ the iuyce of the foresaid hearbs. For you must endeuor to astonie & dull the brain, which burneth extremely by cooling it. If the sick watch ouermuch,then you must apply such things as do prouoke sleep,as this ointment following or such like. ℞. *Vnguenti populeō*. ℥.ij. oile of violets. ℥ iij. seed of henbane,& bark of mandrak roots. ana. ℈.ß. of opium g.ij. of saffrō.g.iij. vineger a litle,white wax as much as is sufficient. make an ointment & annoint the temples therwith. Also this embrocation may be vsed blud warme to the head, ℞. flours of violets,red roses, & water lillies.ana. *M*.j. barley decorticate. ℥.j. seeds of white popy. ℥.ij. seeds of letuce. ℥.iij. seeth thē in sufficient quantity of water vnto the third part,& make an embrocatiō. You shall make the decoctiō of more force,if you ad to it leaues of henbane,nightshade, poppy heads,

Curatio.

Venæ sectio.

Cliſter.

A purging potion.

Localia.

Vnguentum.

Embrocha.

mandrak apples, or roots, & a litle vineger. You may also lay vnder his pillow, poppy heades, or mandrake apples. You may also for the same purpose, giue him to drink water wherin poppy or henbane seed hath bene sodden, or some somnoriferous compound, as is regines *Nicolai*, or *philonium*, or such like, in ministring whereof, you must obserue, that you giue them not in the vehemency of the fit, but in the declining therof. Besides note that you must eschue continuall vse of stupefactiue medicines aswell inwardly as outwardly also. For in this disease, by ouermuch cooling you may turne the frenesie into a lethargie, wherby you may cause him to sleepe so, that you can awake him no more. Also if the patient be weake, beware how you minister stupefactiue things to prouoke sleepe, for in such as be weake (as *Trallianus* saith) somnoriferous potions doe no small hurte, and sometime they kill. At the last when the disease is aswaged, and waxeth more gentle, which for the most part chanceth the third day: you may apply discussiue medicins which haue vertue to disperse the remnant of the disease. And for that purpose you may apply the aforesaid embrocation, adding to it before, floures of cammomill, dill, melilote, marsh mallowes and such like. There be some that at that time (the disease declining,) doe apply to the head, hennes or whelpes cut in the middest, or the loungs of a wether hote. But take good heede that no such thing be applied in the beginning of the disease, or in the vehemencie therof, for so you should increase the inflammation and the feuer, and make the sick in more perill. Moreouer if the euill continue long, you may boile in the embrocation *serpillum* that is, wild tyme or sauery. Also in the declination of the inflāmation (as *Galen* teacheth) you may vse *Castoreum*, for that it is of subtil substance, and will worke his force through the scul. When the frentick person is recouered, let him eschue drūkennes, idlenes, variety and corruption of meates, and especially the burning heat of the sunne. Hereby you may learne not onely the cure of the frenesie, but also a remedie against immoderate watching, and rauing in any sorte engendred by feuers, when the patient is so vexed by them, (although they come by consent, and be but accidents of the feuers) that it is necessarie to remedie them least the braine in time be thereby affected.

Discutientia.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Lethargie.

Signa.

Causa.

ἀρχὴ.

λήθη.

LEthargus in Greeke and in Latin also, is a disease contrary to the frenesie for it causeth sluggishnes & an inexpugnable desire of sleeping, some call this disease in Latin *Veternus*. They that be take with this disease, do forget all things, whereupon it hath that name. For *Lethe* in Greeke is forgetfulnes, and *Arges* is slothfull or dull, so that *Lethargus* is nothing else but a dull obliuion, and therefore may be called in Latine *Obliuio iners*. It is caused of fleume, which cooleth the braine ouermuch, and moistneth it, and thereby prouoketh sleep. The fleume doth putrify in the brain, & therby causeth a feuer which is alwaies annexed with this disease (as *Galen* testifieth in his 13. booke de *Methodo medendi*. Also they haue alwayes a profound and dead sleep. Their pulse is great, and striketh seldome, and is watery (that is) it beateth as it were full of water. They fetch their breath seldome & weakly, they are contnually sluggish & sleepy, and can scarcely by any meanes be compelled to answer. They will somtime

open

open their eyes,if you cry loud to them,and shut them again forthwith, they are forgetfull and do raue. They gape and gaspe often, and sometime keepe their mouth open still, as though they had forgotten to shut it. Ofte times being required to make water, & taking the chamber vessell, they forget to make vrine. For the most part their egestions be liquide: but contrariwise many are costiue. Their vrine is like beastes vrine. Some of them do tremble and sweat all ouer. Let the chamber wherin the sicke doth lie be light and warm. Let his meates be such as doe extenuate, cut, and dry, and let them be seasoned with *apium*, anyse, commin, pepper, cinamon cloues, and such like. Let the sick eat birdes that liue vpon mountaines, and chickens, partrich, thrush and such like. For pot herbes let him vse *Asparagus*, fennell, percely, and such like. Also giue him broth made with barley or oatmeale, or *alica*, with oximell or peniroyall. Let his drinke be hidromel (that is) water and hony sodden together, mead or waterie, thin white wine being astringent. After he hath eaten, it is not amisse to bind the extreme partes for a certaine space, that the vapours do not ascend to the head. For the cure (if strength permit, and nothing else doe let) it is good forthwith to let blood. You must cut the middle veine or the inward veine of the arme, and draw out as much blood as strength will permit. But if you may not safely let blud, thē must the bowels be scoured with sharp clisters, wherof you shal find examples in the chapter of Apoplexia. Afterward the humour abounding must be prepared with decoction of Hysop in hony & water, or with time, peneroyall, *mel rosarum*, or oximell commixed with syrupe of borage, or infusion of roses, and waters of hysope, betony, marioram, & borage. And afterward purge him with some medicine that will expell fleume, wherof you shall find examples in the next Chap. following. In the meane season apply to the head *oxyrhodium* (that is) vineger of roses, and that in the beginning, for the humour is to be repelled, & driuen back from the head, whatsoeuer it be. For the which purpose also, it is good to vse frictions with pellitory, pepper, salt & vineger & bindings of the extreme partes. Moreouer apply to his nosethrils odours which will awake him, as be these, *Castoreum*, the snuffe of a candle quenched, tarre, galbanum, sulphur, harts horne, sothernwood, or goates horne burnt a litle, and holden to the nosethrils. You may pricke their legges, and their extreme parts, and pull them by the haire violently to awake them. Also you may boile tyme, peniroyall, and origan in vineger, and hold that decoction to the nose of the sick, that the fume ascending to the braine may cut, & deuide the tough humours. Also annoint the pallat of the mouth with strong and sharp medicins, as with mustard and hony, *mithridatum*, theriaca, powder of pellitory. And you must endeuour to plucke out the fleume that sticketh there with your finger. Somtime also you may prouoke sneesing with *Castoreū*, or pepper, or *Eleborus*, and if they can vse it, let them gargarise. And if by this meanes the disease be not dissolued, then shaue the head, and apply to it bags of salt or, milium, or such like. Or make this decoction following, & let it runne on high vpon the fore part of the head. ℞. wilde tyme, hysope & sauery with a litle *Castoreum*, and boile them in oile & vineger, and vse it. Moreouer it profiteth to apply a sinapismus, made of figges and mustard seed beaten together with vineger. Afterward you must apply to the hinder part of the head cup-

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Localia.

ping glasses with great flame, about the first and second ioint of the neck, partly easily and partly with scarification. Also the head must be annointed with castoreum. (And as *Trallianus* saith) *Castoreum* drunke with oximel an houre before the fit, is exceeding good: for (as he saith) he hath knowne many by that one medicine restored to life and health. You may minister. ℥. j. therof with. ℥. j. of oximel, or with so much white wine astringent, or with *aqua mulsa*. Besides you must often prouoke nature to expell excrementes with clisters and such things that prouoke vrine. You must annoint the share with oile of rew, wherin a litle *Castoreum* is mixed, you must giue him in drinke such things as do extenuat and cut grosse and clammy humors, as be the decoctions of Apium, fennell, maidenhaire and such like. You must admonish the sicke to swallow down such potions often, and therefore you may drop it into his mouth with a suckling boxe. In the lethargy it continueth long; if strength do permit you may minister *Hiera ex colocynthide*, and prouoke him to sneese with the medicines aforenamed. At the last when the disease beginneth to decline, gestation on horsebacke, or in a litter is profitable, and bathing is exceeding good at that time, but the head of the sicke may not be wet by any meanes. And if the sicke for lacke of strength cannot abide the heat of the bath: at the least let him be washed at home in a vessell of warme water. Let him be scoured in the bathe with sharpe sope, as with wine lies burnt, with mustard seed, pellitory, pepper, laurell berries, quicke lime, adding double as much nitrum.

Castoreum.

CHAP. XVII.

Of Memory lost.

Memoria deperdita, the losse of memory chaunceth sometime alone, and sometime reason is hurt with it. It is caused in the lethargy and other soporiferous diseases. It commeth to passe also that the soporiferous diseases being ended, there ensueth forgetfulnes. Which when it chanceth, then a colde distempure is the cause that the memory is perished or grieuously hurt. This coldnes hath sometimes moistnes ioyned with it, and sometime drines: sometime any one of the former distempures may cause this disease alone. Therefore the Phisition must diligētly discerne the causes. The causes of this disease be either external or internal; if they be internal, either abundāce of fleume, or melancholy is cause of it. If there be no signes of those humors abounding, then must it needes come of some externall cause, especially if it come not through extreme old age. The externall causes you may learne by relation of the sicke, and those that are about him, as if any disease be newly passed, and so turned into obliuion, or if medicins were ministred inwardly, or applyed outwardly to the head, which haue vertue to coole extreamely. Or if it came of immoderate labour with study & watching or such like. If the memory be but a little hurt, it betokeneth that the braine is but litle cooled. If reason be lost together with the memory, then the affect is called *Fatuitas* or *stultitia*, (that is) foolishnes or doltishnes, & both these do come of one dispositiō, but that is more vehement where both are hurt. As touching signes, if only a dry distempure occupying the hinder part of the head do cause this euil, then ouermuch watching troubleth the sick. If only a moist distemper be cause of it, then they are heauy and enclined to sleepe, and their sleeps be long and troublesome. If cold

Causa.

Signa.

cold be ioyned with moisture, it ingendreth the lethargy and *Carus*, wherof we will entreate in the next Chapter. Therefore in them that haue lost their memory you must obserue their sleeps, whether they be ouersleepy, or in a mean, or sleepe not at all, for so shall you finde what distempure doth most abound. Besides you must marke whether they auoid any thing at the nose, or whether any thing distill from the head by their mouth, or whether those parts be altogether dry. For by them you may likewise coniecture the distempure abounding. And if fleume be cause of the euil, you shal perceiue it not only by immoderate sleepe, and abundance of excrements descending from the braine (as is aforesaid) but also by the disposition of the sicke, by his age, & his cõplexion, by the time of the yere, the region, the state of the aire, & the diet that he vsed before. For all those or the most part of them encline to cold & moisture. Likewise if melancholy abounding be cause of the disease, you shal know it for that the sicke is not sleepy at all, neither doth he auoid any excrements at all from the braine: besides the state of his body and all other circumstances aboue rehearsed encline to colde & drinesse. His diet must be diuerse according to the diuersity of the causes. But whatsoeuer the cause be, let the aire that the sicke remaineth in, be inclining to heat, and let his lodging be light, let not his windowes be north nor south, for the one cooleth and the other filleth the head. Let him eschue much sleepe, specially in the day time, & vpon a full stomack. But note, if the disease be caused of a cold & moist distempure, then the wholè order of his diet must be hote and dry. But if the cause be cold and dry, then must the diet be altogether such as wil heat and moisten. As touching the cure if losse of memory be caused by vehement purgations, or other immoderat euacuations, or by sounding often, & so ouermuch drines do hurt the memory, then minister no medicines, but onely restore the body by good diet. For the body being corroborat, and strength renued, the memory will come againe. If you require to know what things are requisit for such a diet, you shall find it in the Chapter of the feuer hectike. If the memory be lost by extreme age, then phisick wil nothing auail. But only they must content thẽselues with diet conuenient: but if the memory faile sodainly, the other mẽbers of the body being safe, then the falling sicknes is to be feared, or the palsey, or the *Apoplexy*. And therfore in such a case you must prouide diligently by al meanes, that no such thing chãce as is to be fered. You may preuẽt those diseases by the same remedies that you would vse in the cure of them being present. And if the memory faile by means of other diseases, as through the lethargy or pestilence, thẽ medicins for cure therof are to be vsed. The whole scope of curing the disease, if it come only of a cold distẽper of the braine cõsisteth in heating. You must therfore minister medicins that haue vertue to heat aswel inwardly as outwardly. Outwardly you must annoint the head with warme oile, & that in sommer. In winter annoint it with oil of Ireos cõmixed with sharp vineger, & somtime boil wild time, & calamint, & such like in the oile, & so vse it. Some do ad to it pepper, & laurel beries. Also *Castoreum* is profitable being cõmixed with oile, & annointed vpõ the hinder part of the head. Also this ointmẽt is very good. ℞. of oile made of tile stones, called *Oleũ de Lateribus*, & oile of *Castoreũ*. ana. ℥. ß. roots of accorus, & valerian ana. ℈. j. pellitory & rew of ech. ℈. j. ß. with waxe suffi-

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Vnguentum.

Sacculus. cient make an ointment, and annoint the hinder part of the head therewith being shauen, and apply this quilt vpon it. ℞. floures of rosemary, balme, and lauender. ana. *M.* ß. floures of Elder. *M.* j. stæchas. ℥. iij. nutmegges, wood of aloes, and maces. ana. ℈. j. powder them, and stich them in silke, and make a quilt. You may make many such like medicines by examples in other Chapters. You may minister inwardly conserues of the floures of betony, rosemary, lauender, spicknard & balme, adding to them pepper, Cloues, Cinamon, & such like odoraments. If memory be lost by cold and moistnes ioyned together, minister *Hierapicra*, which wil purge out nothing that is good, but only that which is noisome. Afterwardes let him vse gargarises, sternutations, and whatsoeuer doth purge by the mouth and the nose. Also a sinapismus may profitably be applied to the head. If obliuion be caused of fleume abounding, then you must first prepare, and concoct that humor, with *mel rosarum*, oximel, sirupe of infusion of roses, with decoctions of betony, marioram, hisope, time, and such like: after the administration wherof, the matter being concoct and prepared, you may purge it with decoction of mirabolanes chebulorum, and agaricke trochiscat, to the which you may adde of the sirupe of infusion of roses, or *Diacatholicon*, or *Diaphœnicon*. And if the matter through his grossenes, will not sufficiently purge at once, then you must prepare it againe, & after purge it with pils, *arabicæ*, *aureæ*, or *aggregatiuæ*, commixing some of them with agarick trochiscat and so make pilles with hony of roses, or sirupe of stæchados. After you may particularly purge the head with gargarises & sternutatiõs. After purging it is good to minister vnto them *Castoreum* or shauing of iuory. ℥. j. with *aqua mulsa*, or as much *Confectio anacardina*, or *aurea Alexandrina*, or *diambra*, *diamoscha dulce*, or *mithridatij*, or *theriaca* with *aqua mulsa* or white wine. Afterward you may vse outwardly embrocations, and poure them downe from on high vpon the head being shauen, specially nigh to the seame, where the bone is loosest or thinnest. You may make your embrocation thus. ℞. of hisope, serpillum, and time, ana.

Embrochæ. *M.* ß. betony, marioram, & floures of cammomill, ana pug. ß. floures of stæchados. ℥. iij. make a decoction, and adde thereto of *Castoreum*. ℥. j. of vineger. ℥. j. & make an embrocation. It is good also to annoint the first and second spondil in the necke, and the hinder part of the head, with *Oleum nardinum*, oiles of nut-

Sacculus. megges, of *Castoreum*, of pepper, or *Oleum costinum*. And you may apply thereupon a quilt, made in this sort. ℞. hisope, marioram, and floures of stæchados, ana. ℥. j. *Castoreum*, nutmegs, spiknard, maces. ana. ℈. j. the barks of frãkinsence, masticke, and wood of aloes. ana. ℥. j ß. redde roses dried the waight of al, beat them to powder, and make a quilt. And if the euill cease not by this meanes, then last of all, vse a sinapismus. If memory be lost by aboundance of melancholy, you must first prepare it to expulsion, by sirupe of borage, and fumitory mixed together, and adding sirupe of infusion of roses, and waters of betony, hops and baulme, and such like. Afterward minister this potion following. ℞.

Decoctio. *Mirabolanorum indorum*. ℥. iij. sene, and epithimum. ana. ℥. ij. floures of hoppes, fumitory, & borage. ana. ℥. ij. ß. make a decoction in running water, & hauing strained it, dissolue therein of fine manna. ℥. ij. of *Diacatholicon*. ℥. vij. or *Diasene*. ℥. ß. & make a potion. As touching outward medicins, let them rather encline to moisture thẽ drines. As by adding to the ointments before prescribed, oiles

of

of cammomill, dill, & sweete almondes. Likewise in making embrocations and quiltes, you may withdraw such medicines as dry, & adde moist things in their stead. Hereby a circumspect Phisitian may not onely haue a reasonable Method, to cure ech kind of obliuion, but also to remedy any dulnes or weakenes of the memory. For that it commeth of the same causes that memory lost doth come, although they be not so vehement, where the memory is weakened.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Carus or Subeth.

CAros in Greeke, and *Carus* in Latin is a disease, in which both sense & mouing is altogether take away, and yet their breathing remaineth safe. The *Arabians* call this disease *Subeth*. This disease differeth from the lethargie, for that they will answere to a question demanded, that haue the lethargy, and do not lie altogether downe. But they that haue *Carus*, are occupied with deepe sleepe, and if they be stirred or pricked, although they feele, yet they will say nothing, nor once open their eyes. Besides as *Paulus Aegineta* noteth, a vehement feuer doth vse to go before *Carus*, and in the lethargy it followeth rather. Also *Carus* vseth to succeed other syntomats & accidents. For it commeth often in the fits of feuers, and in the falling sicknes, and in pressing of the braine, as wel when the braine pan is crushed together, as also if the filmes that couer the formost ventricle of the braine, be thrust downe. But the lethargy hath a certaine peculiar consistence of himselfe. Also *Carus* doth differ from the Apoplexy, for that in it the breathing is very straight, so that the sicke can with much a doe scarce breath at all. But he that hath *Carus* (as *Galen* witnesseth in his fourth booke *de Locis affectis*) hath his breath at liberty. *Carus* is caused of a cold, grosse, and viscous flegmaticke humour filling the braine. You may easily know the signes by that which hath bene rehearsed before. For in this disease they are altogether in a dead sleep, and their eies alwaies shut. As for the diet, & the cure of those that haue *Carus*, it agreeth altogether with theirs, that haue the lethargy: whereof we spake before (in the 16. Chapt.) sauing that in this disease you must vse things that be of greater force to extenuate, cut, and deuide the grosse humours. Also you must apply emplasters, and other medicines to the stomacke which haue vertue to heate, and corroborate it, for because it is stuffed with fleume which doth coole it and moisten it. Wherof you shall finde examples in the beginning of the third Booke.

Carus. *Subeth.* *Causæ.* *Signa.* *Victus.* *Cura.*

CHAP. XIX.

Of Congelation or taking.

CAtoche or *Catalepsis* in Greeke, in Latine may be called *Occupatio, Detentio, & deprehensio*. The new writers in phisicke doe call it *Congelatio*, in English it may be called Congelation or taking. It is a sodaine detention and taking both of mind and body, both sense and mouing being lost, the sicke remaining in the same figure of body wherin he was taken, whether he sit or lie, or stand, or whether his eies be open or shut. This disease is a meane betweene the lethargy and the frensy, for it commeth of a melancholy humour for the most part, as shall be declared afterward. Therefore in respect of coldnesse it agreeth with the lethargy, and in respect of drinesse with the frensy. Here-

Congelatio.

vpon it commeth that they which haue this diſeaſe, are neither like the frenetick altogether, nor like them that haue the lethargy. This diſeaſe is cauſed ſometime of aboundance of bloud flowing to the head and repleniſhing it. But for the moſt part (as *Aetius* witneſſeth) it is cauſed of a cold and dry melancholicke humour, troubling the hinder parts of the head and braine. This diſeaſe inuadeth a man ſodainly, and taketh away ſpeach and ſenſe from him, he heareth nothing, hee aunſwereth nothing, his breath is ſcarcely to be perceiued, but he lieth as he were dead. His pulſe is ſmall and weake and very thicke. His egeſtion and vrine are detained, or elſe they come forth in ſmall quantity, and that is not in reſpect of drines, for the ſicke ſometime doth abound with much moiſture, but for lacke of ſenſe. Their face is ſometime red, and that is when the euil is engendred of bloud, and ſomtime it is ſwart, and that is when melancholy cauſeth the diſeaſe. Moreouer the eies in this diſeaſe remaine immoueable, as though they were froſen. This euill differeth from *Carus* (as *Galen* ſaith) for that in it the eye liddes are euer ſhut, but in this diſeaſe they ſometime remaine open. The diet in this euill muſt be diuerſe according to the diuerſity of cauſes. Let his food bee priſan broth, and ſuch like. Let his drinke be *aqua mulſa* well boiled, or barley water or ſmall ale, for ſeeing they fume not into the head, they doe much good. It is hurtful for them to drinke water, for it cauſeth windines, ſwelleth the ſplene, and quencheth not thirſt. As concerning the cure, if the face of the ſicke be ruddy, and bloud ſeeme to abound, if ſtrength permitte and yeares, let him forthwith bleede on the outward moſt vaine of the arme, and let him bleede according to his ſtrength. Afterward if the head be hote, apply thoſe things that coole. For that purpoſe you may boile the ſhelles of poppy heads in oile, and annoint the head therewith. But in other, that haue their face ſwart, and ſo haue tokens of melancholy abounding, you muſt firſt cleanſe the guts with cliſters, made of floures of borage, bugloſſe, fumitory, time, epithimum, rootes of polipody, leaues of ſene, adding to it oiles of cammomill, and dill, and *caſia*, *diacatholicon*, *diaſena*, or *confectio hamech* in conuenient quantity. Whereof you ſhall finde examples afterward in the Chapter of *Melancholia*. And if the belly become not ſoluble by this meanes, then it is not amiſſe to boile in the former decoction rootes of *Eleborus niger*. The head muſt be annointed with oile, wherein wilde time is ſodden, or with oile of lillies or dill, or ſuch like, and that you muſt doe chiefly when the head ſeemeth cold. Moreouer if his vrine appeare groſſe and thicke, you muſt giue him to drinke the decoction of dill, apium, calamint, and ſuch like, as haue vertue to extenuate. It profiteth alſo to annoint all their whole body with oile of dill ſpecially in winter. Alſo they that haue trembling with this diſeaſe may haue ℥ j. of *Caſtoreum* cõmixed with *aqua mulſa*, and poured into their mouth. The reſt that concerne the cure of this diſeaſe may be gathered partly out of the Chapters of the freneſie and lethargy before, and partly out of the Chapter of melancholy following.

Cauſe.

Signa.

Victus.

Curatio.

CHAP. XX.

Of dead ſleepe.

COma in Greeke, *ſopor*, or *grauis & profundus ſomnus* in Latin. It may be called in Engliſh dead ſleepe. It is a diſeaſe wherein the ſicke cannot awake, nor keepe

keepe open his eyes, but doth keepe his eyes continually close shut, and is in a sound sleepe. But there be two kinds hereof, the one whereof we haue already spoken, and that is called simply *coma* or *sopor*, or else *coma somnolentum*. The other is called *Vigilans sopor*, and it is an euill wherein the sicke cannot hold open his eies, though he be awake, but he winketh in hope to get sleepe, and yet is altogether awake. Therefore you must make a difference between these two kindes. The sleeping *coma* (as *Galen* witnesseth) is sometime caused by ouer- *Cause.*
much moistening of the braine, as it chaunceth to many drunken persons. Also in feuers only hote and moist vapours ascending from the inferiour partes, and moistening the braine doe cause this euill. Moreouer somtime only cold, occupying the fore part of the braine is cause of this euill. Somtime profound sleepe is caused of coldnes and moistnes ioyned together. The other euill called *Vigilans sopor*, or *coma* (that is) the watching drowsines, it is caused of fleume mixed with choller, & for the most part it commeth for lacke of strength, that they are not able to keepe open there eyeliddes. The party that is vexed with the soporiferous and sleepy Coma, doth sleepe with his neither iaw open, and *Signa.*
as often as he is awaked, he falleth into a new sleepe forthwith. They that haue the watching Coma, they speake they wote not what, and they lye with their whole body out of order, and they haue partly such signes as appeare in the frenesie, and partly such as in the lethargy. The cure is of two sorts, accor- *Curatio.*
ding to the diuersity of the euils. For in the soporiferous and sleepy Coma, you must vse those remedies that are præscribed in the Chapters of *Carus*, and the lethargy, & to speake briefly after the whole body be purged, if the euil be caused of moistnesse, then you must apply such things as will dry the braine made with sharpe vineger and roses, and cammomill commixed, and you may also let the fume thereof go vp into the nosethrils. If it be caused of cold, then apply oile of dill, and cammomil warmed, and if the cold be great, you may somtime boile in oile, peniroyall and dill and vse it. But if the euil be caused of cold and moisture ioined together: then must it be cured, as the lethargy. If it come of weakenes and lacke of strength, then you must vse restoratiues to recouer it againe. Suppositaries are very good to be vsed in these kindes of diseases, for that they stirre and prouoke nature. For the watching *coma*, since it consisteth of mixed and contrary causes, it must be cured by contrary medicines partly as the frenesie, and partly as the lethargy. And to know which of them you must vse most, you may learne that by the humour most abounding. For if fleum abound more then choler, then you must vse most the remedies against the lethargy: but if contrariwise choller doe most abound then must your remedies be for the most part such as are good against the frenesie. And therefore you may seeke conuenient remedies out of those Chapters, as occasion serueth.

CHAP. XXI.
Of the Apoplexy.

APoplexia in Greeke and Latin is a disease wherein the fountaine and originall of all the sinewes being affected, euery part of the body doth sodainely loose both moouing and sense. Or it is a depriuing both of sense and

mouing throughout the whole body comming ſodainly with let and hurt of all voluntarie functions. If this ſtopping of the braine come in one halfe of the bodie onely, then it is called *Paralyſis* in Greeke, in Engliſh the Palſey, wherof we will ſpeake in the next Chapter. The Apoplexie is cauſed of a flegmaticke humour, that is cold, groſſe and tough, which doth at one time abundantly fill the principall ventricles of the braine, which humour ouermuch crudities, and chiefely drunkenneſſe doth engender. Alſo it is cauſed by a fall or a blow which ſhaketh and bruiſeth the braine, and cauſeth humours to flow thither. Alſo very cold aire which doth thicke and congeale the humidities and excrements of the braine, doth ſometime cauſe this diſeaſe: it may alſo be cauſed of a groſſe melancholy humor. Concerning ſignes, there goeth before this diſeaſe a full and ſharpe paine of the head, and a ſwelling of the vaines in the necke, the *Vertigo*, and brightnes before the eies, alſo cold of the extreme parts without cauſe, panting of the whole body, ſlowneſſe to moue, and gnaſhing of the teeth while they ſleepe. Their vrine is litle in quantity, black, like ruſt and canker in mettall, and hath a reſidence like meale. They that fall into this diſeaſe, do lacke ſenſe altogether, they lye as they were a ſleepe with their eyes ſhur, and doe ſnort. The vehemency and greatneſſe of this diſeaſe may be diſcerned by the impediment that they haue in breathing. For when it is very much differing from naturall order, it betokeneth vehemency of the diſeaſe, and that it is a great and ſtrong Apoplexy. But when there is a litle impediment in the breathing, then you may iudge that there is but litle hurt in the braine, and ſo you may accompt it a ſmall and weake Apoplexie. The worſt and ſtrongeſt Apoplexie is, wherein the breathing is ſo diminiſhed that it can very hardly be perceiued: and that is almoſt as euill, wherein the breath ſtoppeth for a while, and then is fetched with great violence. This diſeaſe for the moſt part doth chance to old men, which be of a flegmatick complexion, and which do vſe ſuch a diet as encreaſeth fleume. But if ſo be it inuade any yong perſon, and that in ſommer ſeaſon, it is moſt perillous. This diſeaſe is vncurable, or at the leaſt is ſeldome cured. And therfore *Hippocrates* writeth in the 24. Apho. of his ſecond booke. It is impoſſible (ſaith he) to cure a vehement Apoplexie, and not eaſie to cure a weake one. For it threatneth ſpeedy death. Beſides if it chance by medicines to be taken away, for the moſt part it departeth leauing the palſey behind it, either in the whole body, or in ſome part thereof. Often alſo it corrupteth the memory, wherupō we may cōclude that remedies are not to be vſed againſt a ſtrong Apoplexie, for that is of nature deadly. But if it be weake, which you may know by the ſignes aforeſaid, although there be ſmall hope to remedy it, yet (as *Galen* teſtifieth) conuenient remedies being miniſtred, it may perhaps be cured, as experience hath proued in ſome. Thoſe therfore whoſe cure is not altogether deſperate if there be ſigns of plenitude & fulnes, & ſtrength permit alſo, muſt be let bloud on both the *Cephalica* veins. But you muſt foretell the perill, for bloudletting doth either kill thē or deliuer thē: ſo that if after bloudletting (as *Aetius* ſaith) both mouing & ſēſe come not vnto him again, there is no more hope. You muſt not draw away much bloud at once, but rather at ſundry times, and you muſt haue regard to his pulſe, the colour of his face, & his breathing. Beſides you muſt prouoke him to the ſtoole with

Cauſæ.

Signa.

Prognoſtica.

Curatio.

with sharpe clisters in this sort. ℞. sage, origan, betony, and rew. ana. M. j. calamint, hysope and penitroyall. ana. *M.* ß. seeds of fenell, seselis, and ammi. ana. ℥. iij. centory the lesse. *M.* j. roots of polipody. ℥. vj. fine agaricke. ℥. iiij. pulpe of *coloquintida*. ℥. ij. boile these in sufficient quantity of water, vntill halfe be consumed: then take of that decoction. ℥. xv. of *Hierapicra*, and *Benedicta laxatiua*. ana. ℥. ß. of *Electuarium nidum*. ℥. iiij. of *Diaphœnicon*. ℥. ij. of *mel rosarum* clarified. ℥. j. ß. of oiles of laurell, rew, and *Castoreum*. ana. ℥ j. of sal gemme. ℥. j. ß. commix them all and make a clister. Also the vse of suppositaries in this disease is very commendable, made of *Coloquintida*, agaricke, blacke hellebore, and such like, after this sort. ℞. of hony boiled to a height ℥ ij. of *Colloquintida*, agaricke and hellebore. ana. ℈. ij. of sall gemme. ℈. j beat them into powder, commixe them with the hony and make suppositaries vj. fingers long, & hang a thrid in them, that you may draw them out when you list. You may also put into the suppositaries *Hieraprica* or pils *Cochie*. Afterward annoint the whole body with a good quantity of warme oile, wherein wilde time, calamint, dill, and such like haue first bene boyled. Also the extreme parts must be bound strongly, and vehemently chafed with the decoction of the root of floure de luce, many cupping glasses must be fastned to the shoulders. The head must be shauen, & annointed with oiles of cammomill, dill and rew, or with oile wherein the aforenamed hearbs haue bene boiled. You must apply to the nosethrils such things as by their odour can stir and raise vp the sicke, as be opoponax, *castoreum*, *sagapenum*, *galbanum*. Also you may vse medicines to prouoke sneesing made of white hellebore, castoreum, and such others rehearsed in the former Chapters. Or it profiteth much to vse embrocations, made of cammomill, melilote, sage, penitroyall, marioram, origan, calamint, sauery, and hysope boiled in equall portions of wine and water. But yet it is better to vse dry medicins to the head, as be *sinapismi*, made after this sort. ℞. *Olei costini*. ℥. j. oils of *Castoreum* and *Euphorbium*. ana. ℥. iij. mustard seed ℥. ij. *Castoreum*. ℥. j. *sagapenum*. ℥. j ß. *Euphorbium*. ℈. j vineger. ℥. ij. with sufficient quantity of wax, make an emplaister. Also you must open their mouth by force, and put into it your finger, or a fether dipped in oile of Ireos to prouoke vomit, and to cause the grosse humors that be in the mouth to be cast out. Also their fundament must be annointed with such medicines as dissolue windines, as be rew, commin, nitrum & hony. When the euill is asswaged, you must giue him meate of easie digestion, for the most part mixed with hony. If his speech come not yet againe, so that his strength permit, you must fasten cupping glasses to the hinder part of the head with scarification. And in like sort vnder the short ribs, if you may. Afterward let the sicke be caried in a wagon or horslitter. Let his drink be mulsa, or oximell Let him drink no wine. After 21. daies be past the sick may enter a bath, but as touching medicins requisit for the rest of the cure, you shal find them abundantly in the Chap. following. And this may suffice for the cure of the Apoplexy, if so be it be curable.

Clysteres acres.

66

Sinapismus.

Vomitus.

Victus.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the Palsey.

Paralysis in Greeke, *Resolutio* in Latine: in English the Palsey. It is a disease wherin the one halfe of the body either the right side or the left doth loose

both sense and mouing. Also sometime the palsey chanceth in one member onely, (as for example) in the hand, the legge, or the tongue. But note here that the palsey which followeth the Apoplexy is particularly called in Greeke Παραπληγία. And therfore the word *Paralysis* is a more generall name then *Paraplegia*. But whereas in the palsey, sometime sense onely is lost, and sometime mouing alone, and sometime both sense and mouing: it is specially called resolution of the sinewes or palsey, when mouing is lost. Why somtime feeling is lost only, and sometime mouing alone, and sometime both together, Galen declareth at large in his first booke *de Symptomatum causis*, cap. 4. & therfore it need not be here rehersed: notwithstanding it shal not be amisse to answer briefly to that question. First note that aswell the faculty of mouing as of sense floweth from the braine as from a fountaine, and is deriued from thence by and in the sinewes to the instruments of motion and sense, & therefore it must needs be, if that faculty of the braine be hindred or stopped by any cause, that it cannot discend to the instruments of mouing or of sense: that they should lose mouing or sense according as the sinewes be affected. And therfore in those members that participate two kinds of sinewes, as the eyes and the tong doe, the former question is easy to be soluted, for that they haue one kind of sinewes for motiō and another kind for sense, & so the one may be hurt, & the other safe, or they may be both hurt, and so both sense and motion perish. But in members that haue but one kind of sinewe, the question is more obscure to answere. In such members therfore, if (the skin being taken away) the muscle lying naked cannot moue at all, and yet feeling remaineth in it, you may know that the hurt is not great. But if the sinewes be much stopped, then hath it lost both sense and mouing, for it is vnpossible that the sense of a muscle should be lost, & the motion remaine still. The reason is, for that lesse of the animal faculty is requisite for feeling, then for mouing, so that there may come sufficient quantity of that faculty to a muscle to cause feeling in it, and yet not enough to cause it to moue also, and therfore a naked muscle, which hath his faculty both of feeling and mouing of one kind of sinewe, can not moue and lacke sense. But either it hath sense and lacketh mouing, & then his hurt is but litle, or it hath lost both, and that is when the hurt is great, and the sinewe is altogether stopped. But where there is a member that hath sinews placed in the muscles to cause mouing, and other sinewes spread in the skinne to cause feeling (for the sinewes that are dispersed in the muscles doe not send out branches to the skinne as some suppose (I say it may come to passe in that member, that somtime it may loose feeling alone, and somtime mouing alone, and sometime both together. For it may be that the skin which couereth the muscle may loose his sense of feeling, the sinewe being affected which is dispersed in it, and yet the sinewe that runneth in the muscle may be safe, and therefore the muscle may moue. But if the sinewe which is spred in the muscle be affected, and the sinewe that commeth to the skinne remaine safe, that member cannot moue, & yet it hath sense and feeling left, & that commeth to passe because the sinewe of the one is hurt, and the other hath his sinewe safe: although they spring both from one place, yet they are deuided in the way as they come to the member. And if both the sinewes be affected, as well that that commeth to the muscle, as that

Why in the palsey sometime sence alone, sometime mouing alone, and sometime both together perish.

that which commeth to the skinne, then both sense of feeling & mouing also perish and are lost, & that is when the common fountaine from whence they do both spring, is affected & hurt. You may discern that, whē you know exactly the cōmon original & spring of euery sinew, in cōsidering diligētly whether the brain it self be affected, or the backe bone at the head of it, or in any of his spondils besides. This is to be knowen by the Anatomie of sinewes, and therfore it behoueth to be well exercised therein, for in the palsey there is not one certaine place affected, but diuerse places. If the braine it selfe be affected (I meane not the whole braine: for then is the Apoplexy engendred) but if the right halfe or the left be affected, you shall know it, for that the palsey or resolution will be aswell on the right or left side of the face, as on the right or left side of the bodie. But if the face be safe, and one halfe of the body be depriued of sence and mouing, then you may know that the place affected is the vpper end and first spondils of the backbone, but the one halfe only of the marrow is affected, and that is it that is next to the side taken with the palsey. But if all the inferior members, (the face onely excepted) be resolued and paraliticke, then is the backbone affected in the same place, euen in the beginning & vpper end of it, but then is the hurt vehement, for the whole marrow is affected. But if it chaunce one onely part to be resolued and taken with the palsey, you must search from whence the sinewes come that be contained in it, which you may easily find, if you be well exercised in Anatomy. For if the marrow of the backe be not affected aboue where his first beginning is, but lower among the spondils, then if the affect and hurt be great, all the inferiour partes beneath those spondils affected, be resolued & taken with the palsey, but if the hurt be but litle, & the marrow but halfe affected, then only the inferiour partes of the one side be resolued. Therefore you must first learne by Anatomie to finde the place affected hauing foreknowledge from what part of the backbone the members resolued haue their sinewes. The palsey and resolution of members is ingendred of abundāce of grosse & clammy humors, which stop the sinews & hinder the animal faculty y it cannot come frō the fountain to the mēbers. It may also be caused of immoderat cold in snow or vehemēt frost. Also it may be caused by an inflāmatiō, or a *Sirrhus* (which is a hard swelling without sense) chācing in the backbone, or in parts nigh adioyning, or in other sinowy parts, wherby the sinewes are crushed & pressed, & so stopped that the animal faculty cannot passe. As also the sinews may be crushed together by some externall cause, as by binding with a cord, or such like meanes & so cause resolution, also whē there is luxation or fracture in any of the spondils of the back, or in other iointes or bones, there may follow resolution by meanes of compression and crushing together of sinews. Also resolution or palsey may be caused by means of a wound, or an vlcer, either in the braine, or in the marrow of the backe, or in any particular sinewes. There neede not many signes to know this disease by: for any may iudge easily, that part or member to haue the palsey which is destitute of mouing: to know of what cause it proceeded, you may partly learn by the relation of the sicke, and partly by the signes rehearsed before in the 7. Chapter fol. 10. where headach caused of fleume is intreated of. The palsey is no acute & sharp disease, but of long cōtinuance, & for the most part curable.

To know if the braine be affected.

To know if the marrow of the backe cause the palsey.

Of mēbers particularly taken with the palsey

Cause.

Prognostica.

It chaunceth for the moſt part in old folke, and in the winter time. The palſey that commeth by a ſinewe ſeperate and cut a ſunder is, (as *Aegineta* ſaith) vncurable, and ſo is that which commeth by ouerthwart inciſions of the back, or by great luxation of it. Moreouer if the member paraliticke do wax leſſe, or chaunge his colour, it is hard to be cured, or rather not curable. For it declareth thoſe parts not onely to be deſtitute of the animal faculty, but alſo of the naturall, and after a ſort of the vitall alſo. Their diet muſt be altogether extenuating and drying. *Victus ratio.* Let the ſicke therfore remaine in an aier, that is hote and drie, and in the firſt three dayes he may vſe altogether abſtinence, or let him content himſelfe with *aqua mulſa*, or a litle ptiſan broth. Afterward giue him meats of good iuice, light of digeſtion, & let thē be roſted, let him eate chiefly birdes of the mountaines, and partrich, reare egges, almondes and pyne nuttes. For pot herbes let him vſe fenell, parcely, hyſop, marioram, ſage and ſauorie. Let him eſchew fiſh, fruite, and all things that be colde and moiſt. Let him drinke but litle, for it is good to ſuſtaine as much thirſt, as he can poſſibly. Let him drinke *mulſa*, wherein ſage or Cinnamon hath bene boyled, or let him vſe to drinke, that which the barbarous Phiſitions at this day call Hippocras: made after this ſorte. ℞. of choſen Cynamon ℥.ij. of ginger. ℥ ß. of *Ippocras.* long pepper, graines, and galingale. ana. ℥. j. of Cardamomes ℥. j. ß. of nutmegges, and cloues and mace. ana. ℥ j. boyle them all in three quartes of running water, vntill a pinte and a halfe be conſumed, then ſtraine it hard, and with halfe a pound of ſugar make it pleaſant to drinke, he may drinke no wine at all, vntill he be perfectly cured, but if the patient can hardly be kept ſo long tyme from wine, giue him but a litle in the declining of the diſeaſe, and let it be thinne and alayed. Mouing and exerciſe if he can vſe them, are *Curatio.* very good for him. Let him eſchue ſleepe on the day. Let his night ſleepe be in a meane. Let him be mery and flye perturbations of the mind. For the cure, if age, ſtate of the body, tyme of the yeare, and ſuch like permit, it is good to beginne with bloud letting, ſpeciallie if there be ſignes of plenitude. But you muſt drawe awaie bloud moderatelie, leaſt the bodie be cooled ouermuch, *Venæ ſectio.* and you muſt let bloud on the whole and ſound ſide. Then a fewe daies after bloudletting, you may cleanſe the inteſtines with cliſters made thus. ℞. of mallowes, holyhockes, mercury, cammomill, ſage, and betony. ana. *M.* j. of ſtæchas ℥ ß. of rewe, and calamint. ana. *M.* ß. of ſeedes of fennell, and ammeos. ana. ℥. ij. boile theſe in ſufficient water vntill the third part be conſumed, then take. of that decoction. ℔ j. of *Benedicta laxatiua.* ℥. ß. of *Electuarium nidum.* ℥. iij. of hony roſes. ℥. ß. of oyles of laurell, Ireos, and rewe. ana. ℥. j. of ſalt gemme. ℥. j. commixe them together and make a cliſter. *Clyſter* Afterward miniſter vnto him decoctions and ſirupes, which haue vertue to extenuate flegmaticke humors, and make them apt to be purged, whereof you ſhall finde examples before in the 7 Chapter. The humours being thus prepared miniſter medicines which doe purge fleume, beginning with gentle ones, aud proceeding by litle and litle to ſtronger. Beſides thoſe purgations which are rehearſed in the ſeuenth Chapter, aforeſaid you may vſe *pilulæ aꝯairet, arabicæ, fætidæ*, with the which you muſt alwaies commixe agaricke. Neither doth it ſuffice to purge the patient once, but you muſt do it ſo oftē, letting 4. or 5. daies paſſe between ech purging.

The

The next day after he is purged, it profiteth much to giue vnto him *theriaca*, or *mithridatum*. The body being well purged, you muſt vſe ſternutations, gargariſmes, odoraments, & ſuch other like, as are reherſed in the 7. chap. And that ſpecially when the braine is principally affected: for if the braine be not affected, you muſt rather miniſter ſuch medicins as may corroborate & ſtrengthē it in this ſort. ℞. of *diambra*, *plicis*, *archoticon*, & *diamoſchu dulce*. ana. ℈. j. of pouder of ſwallowes preparat. ʒ. ß. of coriander ſeeds preparate. ʒ. j. of ſugar roſet. ʒ. iij. with ſugar diſſolued in roſe water make lozenges, and let the patient hold a litle of one of them in his mouth often. It profiteth alſo in this diſeaſe to take ʒ. j. of *Caſtoreum*, or of *opoponax*, or *ſagapenum*, in *aqua mulſa*. Alſo *diatrion pipereon* is good for them. If the braine be chiefly affected, you muſt annoint the head with hot medecins, as with *Caſtoreum*, mints, laurell berries, oile of Ireos boiled with a litle vineger, & ſuch like. Therfore if coldnes of the wether do not let it, you may ſhaue the hed, & annoint it all ouer the forhead. If the marrow of the back be affected at the vpper end, where he beginneth, then after the former purgation you muſt in the nape of the necke where the marrow of the backe ſpringeth forth of the braine, vſe oiles & ointments which haue vertue to diſſolue & diſcuſſe, but you muſt begin with the weakeſt, as with oiles of cāmomil, dill, ſpike, lillies, Ireos, nard, nutmeg, S. Iohns wort, & earth-wormes, wherwith you muſt annoint the nape of the neck, & the reſolued ſide, ſpecially the halfe of the ridge bone: & you muſt wrap the paraliticke members in warme linnen clothes, or in a fox skin, to keepe them warme: or you may bath them with the decoction of ſage, marioram, cammomill, S. Iohns wort, ſtæchas and roſemary. Afterward you may proceed to ſtronger medicins, as be oiles *coſtiuum*, *vulpinum*, oiles of rew, & bayes, oiles of *Caſtoreum*, *Euphorbium*, & oile of tile ſtones, called *Oleum è lateribus*, or *Oleum Philoſophorum*. To theſe you may ad theſe ointments, *vnguentum aregon*, *vnguentum agrippa*, and *vnguentum martiaton*, and hotte ſimples may be added alſo if you will, as be betonie, ſage, roſemary, galingale, cowſlips, rewe, calamint, pellitory, pepper, *caſtoreum*, and *euphorbium*. Of theſe you may make an ointment after this ſorte. ℞. of *vng. aregon*, and *martiaton*. ana. ʒ. j. of *vnguentum agrippa* ʒ. ß. of oiles *coſtiuum* and *vulpinum*. ana ʒ ß. of oile of earth wormes. ʒ ß. of oyle of *Caſtor*. ʒ. j. ß. of powders of betony, pepper, ſage. ana. ℈ j. of *Caſtoreum*, and *euphorbium*. ana. ℈. ß. of galingale, or roots of accorus. ℈. ij. with wax as much as ſufficeth, make an ointment. Or thus. ℞. of *oleum coſtiuum*. ʒ ij. of oile of pepper. ʒ j ß. oile of *Euphorbium*. ʒ ij. of *aqua vitæ* ʒ ij ß. of iuyce of ſage, and cowſlips, ana. ʒ. j. ß. of galingale. ʒ. iij. of ſtæchas and roſemary. ana. ʒ. ij. of pellitory and pepper. ana. ʒ. j. of *Euphorbium*. ʒ. ß. bruſe them and boile them, vntill the *aqua vitæ* & iuices be conſumed, then ſtraine out the oiles & put to the waxe and make a liniment. By example of them you may make a Cerote alſo after this manner. ℞. of bay berries, pellitory & pepper. ana. ʒ ij. of galingale. ʒ. j. of ſtæchas, betony, and elder. ana. ʒ j ß of muſtard ſeed and nigella. ana. ʒ. j. of *Euphorbium* and *Caſtoreum*. ana. ℈. j. of *oleum coſtiuum*. ʒ j. ß. of oile of pepper. ʒ. j. of oile of *Euphorbium*. ʒ. iij. with waxe & roſin ſufficient make a cerote. Alſo you may make a quilt thus. ℞ hiſope, marioram, S. Iohns wort, ſage, rew, and bay leaues, ana. ʒ. ij. ſpike, maſtike, *Caſtoreum* and ſtæchas. ana. ℈ ij. cloues, maces, and nutmegges. ana. ℈. ß. red roſe leaues dried. *M*. ß. beat

Capitis purgatio

Lozeuges.

Vnguentum.

Aliud.

Cerotum.

Sacculus

them all to powder, and make a quilt with them. Also a fomentation may conueniently be made thus. Ry sage, rosemary, S. Iohns wort, cowslips, hysop, marioram, betony, peniroyall & calamint, of ech. M. ß. boile them in white wine, & adde to the decoction of *Castoreum*. ℥. ij. of floures of stæchas, & lauender. ana. ℥. j. ß. wherewith you may often bath the members affected, before you vse the afore said ointments or quilt. Moreouer you may set cupping glasses lightly without scarification to the members affected, that they may draw thither bloud, & heat, & spirits: & if the members themselues cannot aptly haue cuping glasses applied to them, apply thé at the least to the parts next adioyning. After cupping you may vse the aforesaid ointments & cerots, so that the mébers affected be first rubbed & chafed: and if the disease relent not by all these meanes (as *Aetius* doth counsell) you may vse sinapismes or cauterizatiõ by fire where the originall of the affect is. Last of all a hot house or drie bath will profit much, or if they may conueniently come to thé, natural baths which spring from brimstone, alome, & salt, such as be the baths in Germany called *Badeniæ*, *Ferinæ*, *Cellences*, & ours in England at Bath. But it is good for them to vse before bathing, to be caried vp & downe in a wagon or horslitter. And this may suffice for the cure of the palsey, occupying one whole side. But if neither the braine, nor the beginning of the ridge bone be affected, but onely some other parts of the marrow of the backe, then you must search out that part of the back that is affected. And apply such remedies to it, as are before rehearsed. And in like sort if any particular sinew be affected, you must find out his originall where he springeth, and there apply the former medecins or their like. Yet remember you must neuer altogether neglect the braine, although it be not principally affected, if the palsey be caused of extreame cold without humors abounding in the bodie, then the place affected being found out and the medicines before rehearsed being applied vpon it, you shall cure it. But you may not altogether neglect the brain, nor the member that is paraliticke, but vse to them such remedies as are afore taught. Bloodletting, purging, and all other euacuations may be omitted, only vse remedies to alter and strengthen the members. If the palsey be caused by an inflammation or *Scirrhus* of any part, the inflammation or hard swelling being cured, the resolution wil be cured also. If any pinching or binding of the sinewes cause resolution, the bond being remoued, the cure will soone ensue. If the spondils of the ridge or other bones being out of ioynt or broken do cause resolution, if the resolution be curable, it will be remedied by their cure. Likewise if palsey ensue a wound or vlcer in the head, or backe, or in any particular sinew: it will be cured by their Cure, except it be altogether vncurable.

Fomentum.

Balneum.

Gestatio.

Of palsey comming of cold.

Cure of palsey comming of other causes.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of Palsey in one member.

Although any expert man may easily gather out of the former chapter the cure of resolution chancing in any particular member, yet least those that haue lesse skill, should stand in doubt in some causes, it shall not be superfluous to make discourse of certaine particular resolutions. There is an affect of the face called in Greeke *Spasmus Cinicus*, and in Latine *Conuulsio canina*, or of some

Tortura

Tortura oris. The cure of this is like the cure of the palsey that is rehearsed in the former Chapter. For both bloudletting if nothing be against it, and purging, and clisters, and liniments rehearsed in the former Chapter be good for this. Furthermore for the particular cure of this disease you must let the patient bloud in the veines vnder the tongue, & fasten cupping glasses to the shutting of the ioynts, and giue him *Masticatoris* made after this forme. ℞. seeds of stauisacre, masticke, the roote of pellitorie. ana. ℥. j. hysope, origan ana. ℥. j. ß. of mustard seed. ℥. ij. powder them and commixe them with turpentine & wax, and make trochisks to chewe. Also it is good for the patient to looke often in a glasse, that he seeing the writhing of his face, may with all his power intend to amend it. Also to the griefe of the patient (that is) to the sinewes that be sprong you must apply the medicins that are in the former Chapter. Also this following is very good. ℞. *Olibanum*, masticke. ana. ℥. ij. *dragi* aloes. ℥. j. cloues, galingale, cinamon, zodoarie, nutmegges, cububes. ana. ℥. vj. mirrhe, aloes, *labdanum*, *sarcocol*, *Castoreum*. ana. ℥. ß. bay berries, pyne nuttes. ana. ℥. vj. Ireos, *Aristolochie rotunda dictamus consolide maioris*. ana. ℥ j. gumme *elemni*, *opopanacis*, beniomen. ana. ℥. ij. the iuyce of *camepitius*, and the iuyce of cowslips. ana. ℥. iiij. turpentine. ℥. j. powder all that is to be powdered, and put all in a limbeck of glasse, and distil it with a soft fire. And that which commeth first will be like water which you shall keepe. The next will be thicke like oile, which keepe also, & with this oile annoint the place, and let him drink of the water three or foure ounces at once with a litle wine, this is very excellēt good. But you must note in this place that the cheeke is not troubled with the palsey which sheweth peruerse and ouerthwart, but the other. When the tongue hath the palsey, the body being first purged, you must cut the veines vnder it, and apply a cupping glasse to the chinne. Also let him vse *Masticatoris*, and collusions of mustard seeds and such like. Also let him not neglect exercises of the tongue. And the necke and the hinder part of the head, let them be annointed with sharpe ointments and linements. Also the Phisition may apply cerots and sinapismes, and such like as before. When the bladder hath the palsey, somtime the vrine is withholden, and sometime it goeth away against the patient his will. In this case you must apply remedies to the belly and to the priuities, oyle of rewe, nard, spike, or oyle in the which is sodden the roote of *Eringium*, rewe, comin, or dill, or such like. All are very good: and you may well commixe with them butter, *Castoreum*, *Galbanum*, *Opoponax*. And there can be no better remedie, then to put these things into the bladder by the yard with a serenge. First therfore if the patient cannot make water, you must get out the vrine, by a fine pipe made of siluer for that purpose called *Cathetera*. Afterward take those medicins that are rehearsed a litle before, and poure them into the bladder with a Serenge, this will do maruellous much good. Also medicines prouoking vrine giuen to drinke be good for it, and so is *Castoreum* likewise. Also plaisters made of laxatiue things are profitable therfore. The palsy of the yard doth let & hinder the flowing of vrine, & sperme, and carnall copulation, therfore you must vse the same remedies which are rehersed for the palsy in the bladder: but priuatly you must apply to the loins and the ioynts of the huckle bones things that will heat, & ye must vse those medecins that haue power to erect the yard.

Curatio.

Note.

Palsey of the tongue.

Palsey of the bladder.

Palsey of the yard.

And *Castoreū* may effectually be ministred, as well for this as for all other palseyes, the sicke must chiefly eschue meates and drinks that be coole. By these examples you may easily find how to cure other members, that be paralitick.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of the falling sickneſſe.

De Epilepsia.

Morbus comitialis.

Epilepſia in Greeke (as Galen saith) is a conuulsion, drawing and stretching of all the whole parts of the bodie, not continually, but that which chaunceth at sundry times, with hurt of the minde and sense. It is so called because it attacheth both the sense and feeling of the head, & also of the minde. The Latines call this disease, *Morbus comitialis*. There be three differences in this sickneſſe or disease. The first is caused, when this sickeneſſe commeth onely of disease in the braine, as it chanceth when grosse and clammie fleume, or sharp choler doth stop the passage of the spirit in the ventricles of the braine. If this euill cōmeth of a grosse humour, then the disease commeth so dainly, and it is soone gone againe. Secondly it is caused through euill affect in the mouth of the stomacke, (that is) when the braine labourcth to driue away the vapours and humours that ascend vp to it from the stomacke. Thirdly the falling sickneſſe is caused, when as the patient feeleth a thing like vnto a cold ayer, cōming from some member, and creeping vp to the braine, but this chanceth verie seldome. There goeth before this euill an vnwise state of the bodie and mind, sadneſſe, forgetfulneſſe, troublesome dreames, ach of the head, and continuall fulneſſe in it, specially in anger, paleneſſe of the face, inordinate mouing of the tong, & many do bite it. As soone as this euill taketh them, the sicke fall downe, and they are plucked vp together, they snort, & somtime they cry out, many do tremble and turne round about. But the peculiar signe of this disease is foming at the mouth. This disease chanceth most to children. Galen saith, that if it taketh any person after 25. yeares of age, he shall haue it til he die. The perfume or smoke of *Bitumen* or *Lapis gagatis*, or of goats horne, will declare & shew them that haue the Epilepsie. Also the liuer of an he goat eaten, or the sauor of the liuer sodden will do the same. It is profitable for them that haue this disease to vse in their diet, things that will attenuate, cut and deuide. Therefore let the ayer wherin the sicke remaineth be hot and dry, specially if the euill be caused of fleume. He must eschue all flesh except birds that flie on mountaines: also he must auoide all kinde of pulses, fish and wine, especially if it be olde and thicke. Let his drinke be mulsa, or thinne ale: the eating of capers doth maruellously profit. Exercise and frictions are good: but rub the head after all the other members be rubbed. Let him not vse too much lecherie: let him sleepe measurably on nights, and let him eschue exceeding sleeping on the day. He must abstaine from garlicke, onions, mustard, and such like fumous things. He must eschue drinking straight after a bath. If a child haue this disease you need not much to study for remedies, for with a moderat diet oftētimes the disease endeth by it owne accord: you must appoint a diet for the infant & the nurse. Therforeif the child be not yet weaned, let the nurse vse meats of good iuyce, and let her vse exercise before meat, let her eschue carnall copulation, and let her

1 *Causa.*

2

3

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Cure of infants.

her vse for her diet things that be hot and drie, that therby the milke may be hotter and thinner. Annoint the head of the infant continually with oile of dill and Ireos, putting to them the powders of Cipresse, Ireos, maidenhaire, marioram and such like, but neuer wash the head with water whether it be hot or cold. Also giue the child clarified hony to licke. Also this *Ecligma* is praised of many. ℞ fine white sugar. ℥ ij. oile of sweet almonds, as much as is sufficient to make it of the substance of a lohoch, & giue it to the childe to licke. Also it is good to commixe with it miscle of the oke, and vnicornes horne. Also hang about the childs necke the root of piony being greene, for it helpeth maruellously. Moreouer they that fal into this disease after they be past childs age, you must annoint & make straight those members, which are writhed, & plucked out of order in them. Afterward you must opé the mouth, putting a wedge betweene the teeth, and with a fether dipped in oile of Ireos, prouoke vomit to bring out fleume. Also it is good to quicken the senses with odoraments. Also *pencedanum*, or dog fennell, rew, *Bitumen*, and iuyce of *silphium*. The matter continuing very sharply, put into their mouth *Castoreum*, or *laserpitium* with *oximell*. Also when they are raised, you must cast in a sharp clister. They that begin to recouer (their strength being refreshed) purge them with *Hiera Galeni*, or some other conuenient medicine; & this is the cure of a newe and sharpe epilence, therefore now we will treat, how to helpe that which is old. The patient must drinke water long time, or verie small ale, & that in the beginning of the cure, vnlesse any thing do forbid it. Let blood in the veine of the hamme, or the ring, finger, and then three or foure daies after you must comfort the body, & it is good to minister preparatiues to extenuate, as sirupes of wormewood, of hysope, of stæcados, *oximell scilliticum*, decoction of hysope, rootes of piony, and others rehearsed before. Afterward purge with purgations (that is) with *pilulæ cochiæ*, *pilulæ de agarico* and such as purge fleume. Also I iudge *stubium* to be of great force in this kind being vsed as is declared before in the xv. Chap. fol. 21. which doth mightily purge the superfluous humours of the head. And also I haue knowen this to helpe many, oile of exitore, and *oleum de lateribus*: with it annoint the hinder part of the head morning and euening warme. Furthermore make a quilt with three sheets of gray paper, & bast vpon it cotten wool, and let the patient weare it day and night, vj dayes. Then take two frying pans, make them red hot, and hold one of them ouer his head, till it waxeth colde, then take the other and do likewise, do this till the patients head be very hot. And if his griefe take him in thy presence, set the patient on his knees, and let his armes be holden crosse ouer his bodie as may be, and let his head be thus warmed many dayes together, and euerie morning and euening let him take these things. The first daye of the powder of the scull of a man burned, one dramme at once, & the next day of the miscle of the oke, made in pouder. ℥ j. & the third day the powder of piony roots ℥ j. and after those iij dayes, take these powders eth day, till the patient be healed which will be in fortie daies. But if this euill be engendred of melancholie, then seeke medicins to purge it in the Chap. of *Malancholia*: howbeit it is lawfull to take the barke of dry blacke hellebore, and beat it into fine pouder, and to minister one dram at once with *mulsa*, and a litle pepper to it, also you may make pilles therof, and giue them.

Ecligma.

Cure of young folkes.

Cure of Epilece in old folks.

A purging potion of stubium.

And when the sick is purged enough, bring him to a bath, the third day fasten cupping glasses with scarification to the sides and shoulders, and then many dayes after comfort the bodie, and againe purge him with *Hiera Galeni*. After that, fasten cupping glasses to the noddle of the necke. The next day apply to the head like a plaister, bread sodden in *mulsa*, adding to it bitter almonds braied, or *serpillum*, or calamints, or mints, or rewe, and do that three daies. Then shaue the head, and annoint it with iuyce of *pencedanum* infused in vineger, in which serpillum, or Ireos hath bene sodden. Then againe the bodie being refreshed, purge the sicke onely with three drammes of *Hiera*, after those things be done, minister sternutaments, *masticatories*, and such things as do purge by the nose, then afterwardes if you thinke good minister a clister. At the last apply ointments, liniments, and emplaisters, which haue vertue to discusse and driue away, whereof you may find examples plentie in diuerse places.

Hiera Galeni

CHAP. XXV.

Of the Crampe.

De Convvlsione.

Spasmos.

Spasmos in Greeke, in Latine *Conuulsio*, in English the crampe, is a disease in the which the sinewes are drawen and pluckt vp against ones will. There be of it three kinds or differences. The first is called in Greeke τετανος, in Latine *Distentio*. It is when the necke remaineth altogether immoueable, and cannot be turned any way, but must be holden right forth. The second is called in Latine *Tensio ad anteriora*. In this disease the head and the necke be drawn downe to the breast. The third is called in Latin *Tensio ad posteriora*. In this disease the head is drawn downe backward to the back & the shoulders. For the causes of this disease you must note that Hippocrates appointeth but only two (that is) fulnes & emptines of the sinewes in the body, & somtime it commeth with biting or stinging of some venemous beast. If the crampe doth take one that is haild, or by & by assoone as the disease commeth or not long after, then is the disease caused of fulnes, but when the conuulsiō commeth after many sweats, vomits, watchings, or drines, then is it caused of emptines. The diet of them that haue conuulsion, which commeth of fulnes must be hot and drie. But in them which haue the conuulsion caused of emptines, the diet must be moist. Therefore the patient must be nourished with suppings and fat brothes, and flesh that is easie to digest, and that which nourisheth well. For their drinke let them vse wine that is thinne and watery, which may quickely be dispersed into all partes of the bodie, vnlesse a feuer be present: for then iuyce of ptisan is profitable, or in stead of wine minister decoction of Cinamon. Also prouoke sleep. Let them eschue exercises & all things that may emptie the body: to be short let his diet be like vnto theirs which haue the feuer Ethick. The cure of the cramp caused of fulnes, must straight begin with letting of blud, if nothing do prohibit it. It is meet to take away much blood, but it may not be done all at once on heaps, but by litle & litle you must let blood on the middle veine on the arme. If after bloodletting it seemeth that the sicke may suffer it, wash the wombe with a sharpe clister. That part which is drawen must be strongly kept together, and they must altogether eschue inordinate mouings, and the place must be chafed with oyles of rewe, or Ireos, or some other such like, or they must

1

2

3

Causæ.

Victus ratio.

Cure of fulnes.

Bloodletting.

Clister.

must be couered with woolll dipped in the said oiles, or you must lay vpon it a broad bladder filled with oyle. And if the conuulsion commeth of fleume, then the fleume must first be extenuate, and made thinne, and be prepared, that it may be apt to be purged: then by and by minister a purgation to purge fleume. Also apply cupping glasses with scarification, for light ones do hurt. If the legges haue the crampe apply it to the haunches, and to the latter knittings of the ioyntes. If the hands be drawen, apply it to the backe and to the ioyntes of the shoulders. Moreouer the head must be purged with Masticatories, gargarises, and such like medicines. Time proceeding it is good to bath him, and therfore euery day twise or thrice let him descend into water of brimstone or alome, or salt water, but let him not tarry in them, least strength faile him: or if there can not be vsing of naturall bathes, it is lawfull to vse a hot house, or drie bath, or water in which are sodden laurell leaues, sothernwood, peniroyall, wormewood, rewe, sage, S. Iohnswort, marioram & betony, and the places that are drawen ought to be couered with skins of wolues or foxes: also apply the ointments which are rehearsed in the cure of the palsey of the vsing of cold things, but minister often hote medicins, such as be *Theriaca* and *mithridatios*, and such as be hote. But the surest and best of all other is the infusion of *Castoreum* ministred the quantitie of one dram: truly not onely the drinking of it but also the annointing of it outwardly is good. Moreouer the conuulsion which commeth of emptines & drines is such an euill disease, as it is almost vncurable. Those which are so drawen, you must nourish with hot oile or *hidræleum*. Also it is good to bring him to a bath, and soft frictions with oile is good, and all their whole cure must alwayes be like the cure of Ethicks. If the conuulsion chaunceth by the stroke of some venemous beast in the beginning of the cure: you must labour to draw out the poyson, which you may do by making the wound wider, and by scarifying the place round about, setting vpon it cupping glasses: also you may annoint it with leeke seed, braied with salt, or garlike, or oynions, and after the fall of the scurfe, you shall keepe the wound xl. or lx. dayes from a scarre: to the which if it make much haste, you shall open the sore againe with ashes of vrine or of figge tree: and it is good to annoint it with hoarehound or leaues of *Anagallis*. Also nourish the place with the decoction of the roote of Sorrell. Also *Theriaca* infused in oile of roses, and layed to the wound is good, becausse it doth draw out and purge the poyson from the bottome Therefore they erre much, which say that *Theriaca*, being outwardly applyed, doth driue the poyson inwards.

The crampe comming of fleume.

Capitis purgatio.

Balneum.

The crampe comming of emptines and drines.

Cura veneni

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the Mare.

DE INCVBONE.

Phialtes in Greeke, in latine *Incubus* and *Incubo*. It is a disease, whereas one thinketh himself in the night to be oppressed with a great waight, & beleeueth that somthing commeth vpon him, & the patient thinketh himself strangled in this disease. It is called in English the Mare. This vice is caused of excesse of drinking, & continuall rawnes of the stomack, from whence do ascend vapors grosse and cold, filling the ventricles of the braine, letting the faculties

Causæ.

of the braine to be disperſed by the ſinewes. They that haue this diſeaſe can
Signa. ſcarſe moue, being aſtonied, and feeling in ſleepe imagination of ſtrangling, and as it were the holding of ſome thing, that doth violently inuade them. In this the voice is ſuppreſſed, ſome haue ſuch vaine imagination, that they beleeue they heare the thing that doth oppreſſe them. At the laſt with much trouble the vapours being attenuate and driuen away, and the paſſage of the ſpirits being opened, the ſicke is by & by raiſed. It is good to remedie this euill at the firſt: for if it continue, it inducеth and ſheweth before ſome grieuous diſ-
Victus ratio. eaſe, as the *Apoplexia*, the falling ſicknes, or madnes. Let their diet be thin, and ſuch as will not engender windineſſe. Let him vſe no wine, but that which is mixed with water, or none at all but ale. Let him eſchue ſleeping in the day, & let him not go to bed by and by after meat, and to be ſhort, let his whole diet
Curatio. be ſuch as is deſcribed and ſet downe for the falling ſicknes. For the cure if the
Venæ ſectio. whole bodie be full, you muſt beginne with blood letting, and you muſt cut the *Cephalica* veine. But if illiuyce be gathered in the bodie, for lacke of perfect digeſtion, then purge the bodie by purgations: and if fleume abound, you muſt firſt miniſter preparatiues to extenuate the fleume, and then purge it. The whole body being purged, you muſt apply outward medecins, wherof you may find examples before. Black ſeeds of piony doth chiefly helpe them, you may giue them fifteene ſeeds braied with water. And nouriſh the head with oile of dill made hot, and couer the head with a cap, when they go to bed. Miniſter within the body thoſe things which ſtrengthen the head, as *Aromaticum roſatum*, *Diamoſchu dulcis*, *Diamber*, *Diambon*, *Phriſarcotion*, and ſuch other like.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of madneſſe.

De Insania. Et Furore.

Mania in Greeke is a diſeaſe which the Latines call *Inſania* and *furor*: that is madnes and furiouſnes. They that haue this diſeaſe be wood & vnruly like wilde beaſts. It differeth from the frenеſie, becauſe in that there is a feuer, but *Mania* commeth without a feuer. It is cauſed of much blood, flowing vp to
Cauſæ. the braine: ſomtime the blood is temperate, & ſomtime only the abundance of it doth hurt: ſomtime of ſharp and hot cholericke humors, or of a hot diſtemper of the braine. There goeth before madnes debilitie of the head, tinkling of
Signa. the eares, and ſhinings come before their eyes, great watchings, thoughts and ſtrange things approch the mind, and heauines with trembling of the head. If time proceed, there is raiſed in them a rauenous appetite, & a readines to bodily luſt, the eyes wax hollow, and they neither wincke nor becken. But madnes cauſed of blood only, there followeth continuall laughing, there commeth before the ſight (as the ſicke thinketh) things to laugh at. But when choller is mixed with the blood, then the pricking & feruent mouing of the brain maketh them irefull, mouing, angry and bold. But if the choler wax groſſe & doth pricke and pull the braine & his other members, it maketh them wood, wilde,
Victus ratio. and furious, & therfore they are the worſt to cure. Let their diet be thin ſoupings liquide, making a good ſtomacke without fulnes, & ſuch things as do engender no blood, & you muſt forbid them altogether drinking of wine. Where

this

this diſeaſe is cauſed of abundance of bloud, you muſt begin the cure with letting of bloud, it is good to cut the vttermoſt vaine of the arme, or if that doe not appeare, then cut the middle vain. In women cut the vaine on the anckles, for that prouoketh menſtruis, you muſt draw out ſo much bloud as ſtrength will ſuffer. Therefore in letting of bloud you muſt continually feele the pulſes. Moreouer after the letting of bloud, nouriſh the head with oiles of roſes & vineger, or iuice of *Poligonum*, or *oleum melinum*, or *vnguentum infrigdane Galeni*. Then apply moiſt wooll, wet in oile to the hinder part of the head. After bloud letting at night prouoke ſleepe, for if after bloudletting, watching do ſtill continue, the ſicke will appeare to be more outragious. Therefore miniſter boldly with iuice of ptiſan *Diacodion*, or mingle it with water, for ſo ſleep is plentuouſly entiſed. And two daies after that miniſter *Trochiſcies de heſtear* with *Diacodion*. Alſo oile of violets with womãs milke is good. Likewiſe an Embrocation made of dry violets, water lillies, willow leaues, and roſes, leaues of lettuce, ſeede of poppy and ſuch like, and other medicines rehearſed in the next chapter. Furthermore, the belly muſt be made ſoluble with conuenient food with cliſters. Theſe things being done, if ther be need, you muſt draw bloud out of the middeſt of the forehead, ſet horſe leaches round about the head, and ſpecially the forepart of the head. For the cure of them which haue madnes cauſed of choler mixed with bloud, you muſt miniſter purgations of *Hierapicra*, & other medicins that wil purge choller. The iuice of *Eleborus niger* doth maruellous much profite in this griefe, ſo that you miniſter but ten or 12. graines at once. But if they dote and refuſe to drinke a purging medicine, then that you may the eaſilier deceiue them, commixe the purgation with their meats, or with fat figs, or dates. Alſo the only root of wilde fennell helpeth them, and the ſeed drunk with water. The ſickenes declining, bring the ſicke into a bath, and apply diſcuſſiue medicins to driue away that which remaineth. He that will haue more, let him ſeeke the chapter following *De Melancholia*.

Cure if it come of blood onely.
Blood letting.
Externe medicinæ.
Embrochæ.
Cure of it coming of choller mixed with blood.
Balneum.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of Melancholie.

De Melancholia.

Melancholie is an alienation of the mind troubling reaſon, & waxing fooliſh, ſo that one is almoſt beſide himſelf. It commeth without a feuer, and is chiefely engendred of melancholy occupying the minde, and changing the temperature of it. It is cauſed three kind of waies: for ſometime it is cauſed of the common vice of melancholy, bloud being in all the veins of the whole body, which alſo hurteth the braine. But oftentimes onely the bloud which is in the braine is altered, & the bloud in all the reſt of the body is vnhurt, and that chanceth two waies: for either it is deriued from other places, & aſcendeth vp thither, or els it is engendred in the braine it ſelfe. Alſo ſometime it is engendred through inflãmation, & euil affect about the ſtomacke and ſides: & therfore there be three diuerſities of melancholiouſneſſe, according to the three kinds of cauſes. The moſt common ſignes be fearefulnes, ſadnes, hatred, & alſo they that be melancholious, haue ſtrange imaginations, for ſome thinke themſelues brute beaſts, & do counterfait their voice & noiſe, ſome think thẽ ſelues

Cauſe.
1
2
3
Signa.

veſſels of earth, or earthen pots, and therfore they withdraw themſelues from them that they meete, leaſt they ſhould knocke together. Moreouer they deſire death, and do very often behight and determine to kill themſelues, and ſome feare that they ſhould be killed. Many of them do alwaies laugh, and many do weepe, ſome thinke themſelues inſpired with the holy Ghoſt, & do prophecy vpon things to come. But theſe be the peculiar ſigns of them that haue melancholiouſnes cauſed through conſent of the whole body: for in them the ſtate of the body is ſlender, black, rough and altogether melancholious cauſed naturally or through certaine thoughtes, or watchings, or eating of wicked meates, or through Emeroids, or ſuppreſſion of menſtruis. But they which haue *Melancholia* cauſed of vice in the ſides, they haue rawnes, and much windines, ſharpe belkings, burnings, and grieuouſnes of the ſides. Alſo the ſides are plucked vpward, and many times are troubled with imflammation, eſpecially about the beginning of the diſeaſe. Alſo there is coſtiuenes of the wombe, little ſleepe, troublous and naughty dreames, ſwemming of the head, and ſound in the eares Let his diet be ſuch, as doth not engender melancholy. Therefore let them tary in an aire hot and moiſt, and let them vſe meates of good iuice, that be moiſt and temperate, and let their bread be well baked and wrought, let their fleſh be capons, hennes, partriches, feſants, ſtony fiſhes, and ſuch like. Let the ſicke vſe wine that is white, thinne, and not very old, and let them eſchue wine that is thicke and blacke, let their exerciſes be meane, let them ride or walke by places pleaſant and greene, or vſe ſailing on water. Alſo a bath of ſweete water with a moiſt diet, let the ſicke vſe often as one of his remedies, ſleepe is wonderfull good for them, as alſo moderate carnall copulation. Let them be mery as much as may be, and heare muſical inſtruments and ſinging. But when the whole body aboundeth with melancholike bloud, it is beſt to begin the cure with letting of bloud, & you muſt cut the liuer vaine on the arme. But when the melancholicke bloud occupieth onely the braine, the ſicke needeth no bloud letting, vnleſſe there be very much bloud, and therefore let the ſicke vſe often bathings, & moiſt diet of good iuice, which is without windines, and let them vſe delectations of the mind, and let them be cured by theſe without any ſtronger remedies; but if the diſeaſe hath indured long, it requireth ſundry medicins that be ſtrong. Therefore whether the melancholiouſnes be cauſed through vice of the whole body (as is ſaid, the bloud being firſt drawne out) or through the onely euill affect of the braine, you muſt miniſter medicines that wil purge downeward. And a few daies after purging and bloud letting, let the ſicke drinke daily in the morning this decoction. ℞. floures of Borage, Bugloſſe, violets, ana. *M.* j. great Raiſons the ſtones picked out. ℥. j. harts tongue. *M.* j. Fumitory. *M.* ß. Barke of the root of Capers, *Tamariſcus*. ana. ℥. iij. roots of fennell, percely, licorice, ana. ℥. j. Time, *Epithimum*. ana. ℥. ß. ſeeth all theſe in three poundes of water, vntill the third part be conſumed, then ſtraine it, and make the iuice of that decoction ſweete with ſuger, and clarifie it with the white of egges, and adde thereto ſirupe of fumitory, and *Epithimum*, ana. ℥. ij. and make a potion. After that fort at theſe daies they miniſter ſirupe of violets, and Bugloſſe, putting to them the water of harts tongue, hops, endiue, and Borage. But ſeeing it appeareth that the ſtomack cannot beare very much

Victus ratio.

Balneum.

Vene ſectio.

Cure it is come of melancholy bloud.

Purgatio.

Decoctum preparans.

much vsing of distilled waters, it is better to vse decoctions of the aforesaid herbes, commixed with sirupes after this sort. ℞. Sirupe of Borage, ℥ j. sirupe of *Epithimum*. ℥. ß. decoction of harts tongue, fumitory, & endiue ℥. iij. commixe them all and make a potion. After this purge the body with *confectio hamech & diasenæ, pilulæ indæ, pilulæ è lapide armenio*, and such like. Also it is good to vse this purging decoction. ℞. floures of Borage, violets, roses. ana. *M*. j. Raisons the stones picked out, *Tamarindus*. ana. ℥. j. *Mirabolanes citrinæ, nidos, emblicos, belliricos*, ana. ℥ ß. leaues of sene, polipody, ana. ℥. vj. prunes damascene, *numero*. x. seeth them in iust quantity of water vnto the third part: then straine it & make the iuice of that decoction sweet with suger, then minister ℥. iiij. therof in the morning. If this do not sufficiently purge, you may dissolue therein. ℥. ij. of *diasenæ*. Also the infusion of *Epithimum* is maruellously good, being made thus. ℞. *Epithimum*. ℥. ß. infuse it 24. houres in ℥. iiij. of whay made of goates milke, then straine it & wring it hard, & minister it in the morning. Also the infusion of the leaues of sene is good, which may be thus made. ℞. leaues of sene. ℥. ij. prunes damascene *in numero*. xij. bray them and infuse them in whay of goats milke 24. houres, then straine it & presse it, and let it be drunke in the morning. Also it is lawfull to vse this powder. ℞. *Epithimum*. ℥. ß. *lapis armenius*, agarick. ana. ℥. ij. scamony preparate. ℥. j. cloues *in numero* 20. beat them al into pouder, & minister euery weeke. ℥. j. or. ℥. j. ß. Also it is good to mollifie the belly with whay, but let it not be that which is strained out of cheese: for that is better which is separate from the milke by some decoction, and let them vse it, vntill the belly begin to be soluble, you may commixe it with hony. Also it is good a few daies after the purgation to vse clisters, and let them be such as this is. ℞. fumitory, hoppes, time. ana. *M*. j. *Epithimum*. *M*. ß. sene, polipody. ana. ℥. vj. cartami. ℥. ß. seeds of annise, fennell, ammeos, comin. ana. ℥. ij. seeth all in water vntill the third part. Take of the iuice of that decoction ℔ j. *Casia fistularis* newly drawen ℥. j. *diasenæ*. ℥. ß. oiles of violets and cammomill. ana. ℥. j ß. common salt. ℥. j ß. commixe them all & make a clister. Moreouer if the disease be caused through the stopping of *Emeroides* or menstruis, then we must minister medicines which wil driue away the heauines of the minde, restore strength, & engender gladnesse, as is conserues of Borage, endiue, violets, roses, anthos, *letificans Galeni Dianthon*, and such like. Also by no meanes you may forget the vsing of Bathes of sweete water. Also you must apply strong *Embroche* to moisten the head, as this, ℞. mallowes, *althæ*, violets. ana. *M*. j. ß. cammomill, *flechados*. ana. *M*. j. floures of water lillies. *M*. ß. seedes of lettuce. ℥. j. seedes of scarioll. ℥. j. ß. boile them all in iust quantity of water, and sprinckle the head being shauen with the iuice of that decoction. After that sort it is good to vse vnctions of oiles, of violets, water lillies, and such like. Last of all the sicke must labor that the false and wicked imaginations, and great sadnesse may be driuen away by all meanes that can be inuented. But if the griefe bee caused through disease in the sides, they must continually vse to drinke decoction of peniroyall, not onely before purgations, but also after them, and likewise decoction of centory. Afterward also minister continually decoction of wormewood, for it is profitable to the stomacke, and it letteth ingendring of winde in the belly, nor it doth not asswage the bely extremly, but prouoketh vrine, & causeth good

Potio.

Decoctum purgans Melancholiam.

Dilutum Epithini.

Puluis purgatorius.

Clyster.

Embroche.

Cure if it come of disease in the sides.

Absinthij decoctum.

digestion, so that many be healed by this onely remedie. Also you must minister these things that prouoke vrine, as anise, *daucus*, *asarum*, *smirnium*, the seed and roote of wilde fennell, and germaunder, let the water of the decoction of these be ministred, and minister the powder of them strewed in drinke. Also it is good that the Phisitian looke to the cure of the sides. Therfore nourish them with decoction of rew, dill, wormewood, peniroyall, seed of *Agnus castus*, laurell berries, sauery, mugwort and such like. These do ease paine and driue away inflammation, especially if they be sodden in oile and applied to the griefe like a plaister. Against windines in the stomacke with pricking, nourish the stomacke with comin, peniroyall and vineger sodden together, and make emplaisters of annise seeds, *apium*, comin, *smirnium*, and such like, sodden in oile, and suffer the plaister to lie still a good while, as well before meate as after it. And when the plaister is taken away, couer the sides largely with wooll, or with a light lambs skin, the place being first annointed with *oleum nardinum*. Also you must apply cupping glasses lightly without scarification. To those with whom this disease hath taried long, purging by vomits is a present remedie. But you may not vse strong vomites, for they be malicious to the stomacke, and cause griefe in the belly. Therefore prouoke vomit with hot water, commixed with *oximell*. But if the sicke cannot vomit by this meanes, then prouoke it by putting a feather or their finger into the mouth. Also the onely vomit made with *Eleborus albus* is good for them being made after this sort. ℞. *Eleborus albus*. ℥.j. cut in small peeces, and put them in a great radish roote, and after three daies take out the *Eleborus*, and then stamp and wring out the iuice of the radish, take of that iuice ℥.vj. hot water ℥.iiij. oximell ℥.j. commixe them and minister it all at once to the sicke warme. This hath bene proued to be very good. ℞ *stibium*, x. or xij. graines made in fine powder, and put the powder into foure spoonfull of muscadell, or malmesey, and let it stand two daies, and let it be shaked three times on the day, and when you will minister it, poure it out softly, leauing the powder still in the bottom of the glasse, and giue but the very wine: which is an excellent thing for this griefe: there be diuers other which I will omit till time more meete and conuenient.

Diaritica.

Fomenta.

Cataplasmata.

Concurbitule.

Vomitus.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of trembling and shaking.

DE TREMORE.

Tremor in Latin, in English trembling or shaking, it is a disease which is accomplished with two sundry mouings. One is while the member is constrained through heauines and grief to creepe downward. The other, is while the member is caried vpward from his naturall course and faculty. This euill is caused altogether through weakenes of the sinewes, which doth plainly declare old age: but priuately it commeth of other causes, (that is) of very cold temperature of nature, cold drinke taken out of time or season, specially in feuers. Moreouer the aboundance of a cold grosse & clammy humor, and much vsing of wine that is vnmixt and cleare, old age and feare are causes thereof. There neede no signes to know neither the euill nor the causes of it, becausse it may be knowen partly by sight, and partly by the patients words, and the state of

Cause.

Signa.

of the body. Let the diet be so ordained that it may be cleane contrary to the causes of the disease, and let his meate be such as will easily be distributed, first brothes, then birds that flie, & tender fishes. Against abundance of grosse and clammie humours, it is good to vse those things which haue power to deuide, extenuate, and cut, but he must wholly eschue all things, which do hurt the sinewes, and chiefly the drinking of wine that is vnmixt. He must drinke wine alayed with water, or *hidromel*, or ale. For the cure, they which do tremble or shake through some manifest error, they must altogether abstaine from things that be hurtfull. They therefore that tremble through drinking of wine, vntill they be cleane deliuered of the disease, let them drinke in the meane while *hidromel* with the decoction of sage and betonie. If the shaking come of cold and grosse humours, then minister the cure which is ascribed for the palsey, & the crampe comming of fulnesse (letting of blood onely excepted.) You must annoint the outward parts of the body with oyles that will heate, & couer it with soft woolI. Then fasten cupping glasses without scarificatiõ from the first shutting of the ioynts, which may be drawne to the outward part of the skin, and so thereby humours may the easier be discussed and driuen away. Also it is good for the sicke to drinke dayly fiue graines of pepper with ℥. j. ℈. of *Mulsa*. There be moreouer certaine other simple medicines, which being taken doe helpe trembling (that is) *Castoreum*, roote of *Althea*, decoction of Egrimony, & the braine of an hare. But what need many words? for the medicines and specially the ointments which are prescribed in the cure of the palsy are to be vsed as remedies against this disease.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Concurtibulæ

Simplices medicinæ.

CHAP. XXX.

I thought it good in respect of the worthinesse of the member, and the manifold diseases to the which it is subiect, to subnect the discourses of the eye, with the remedies of the infirmities, which by experience I haue found incident vnto it: And the multiplicitie of it is so great, that the treatise thereof stretcheth beyond the bounds of other ordinarie Chapters. But (as I hope) the Reader will not account it as tedious, because of the pleasantnesse and necessitie of the discourse, though it be somewhat long: for God hath as it were packed and bestowed an infinite varietie of maruels in one litle round subiect, which if it be consumed & distributed into his parts, and according to the dignitie of euery one sufficiently treated of, (I suppose) it would fill a great volume, and require both an exquisite Philosopher to conceiue aright of it, and an excellent Orator might seeme also necessary to lay abroad at length such secret and wonderfull notions. But the eye which is wont with curious inspection to prie into all other things, and to finde out the nature and order of them, hath bene vnable to vnfold his own wonderfull constitution, and hath bene alway blind in iudging of it selfe, and in foreseeing the discommodities which attend vpon it, or in curing them when

they haue layed hold of it. For mine owne part I will not promise anie absolute worke, but as learned Phisitians haue thought of it, and (as I my selfe haue by experience learned) so I will frame and fashion my Treatise. An eye therefore is a member, round, whole and hard, as the Ball of a foote, or as the scoured new Basen full of cleare water, set in the well of the head, to minister light to the body, by the influence of the visible spirits, sent from the fantasticall Cell by a sinew, that is called Neruus opticus, *with the helpe of a greater light ministred from without, and very fitly is the place where the eye is set, called the* Well of the head, *for the abundance of watery humours and teares, which often do issue out thereof, sometime of sorow and heauinesse of the hart, sometime of ioy and gladnesse, and sometime of the abundance of watery humours caused of frigiditie and coldnesse: and thus haue the Phisitians described the eye. It shall not be vnnecessary also to distribute it into his parts, and therefore (as* Iohannicus *saith) the eye hath seuen coates, which they call* Tunicæ, *foure colours, & three humours. But his opinion concerning the tunicles, by sundry Anathomists haue bene euicted, making but onely sixe: yea and some there be, that (swaruing from the most receiued opinion) haue made roome for a coniecture of their owne, as they thinke by reason, excluding all those ouer-curious diuisions, (namely,* Iris, Cornea, Aranea, *and* Vuea, *and the residue) and imagin but only two coates, the one whereof they tearme* Saluatrix, *because it saueth and keepeth the humors, and the second they tearme* discoloratа, *that is, hauing no colour: and they maintaine, that in the eye it selfe there is no colour, but that which is caused of the christalline humour, which if it be planted very neare to the tunicles, then the eye seemeth of no colour: if it lye deepe within, it deferreth three visible colours vnto the beholder, and (as they say) the diuerse placing of this christalline humour begetteth the varietie of colours in sundry eyes, which gaue our Anathomists matter to deuise their distributions, while they referred the colour to the nature of the tunicle, which (in deede) is to be imputed to the humours. For mine owne iudgement, if it be lawfull to iudge in so intricate a cause, (I thinke) I could very well maintaine, that the humours be the causers of the diuersity of the colours, though our blind Anathomistes do impugne in their common bookes. But I haue taken vpon me, rather to cure the malady of the eye, then to define the nature of it, although this litle* Præludium *will not seeme altogether vnnecessary.*

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXI.
Of a Cataract.

A Cataract is a corrupt water, congealed like a curde, ingendred of the humours of the eye, distempered betwixt the tunicles, & set before the sight of the eye and the Christalline humour. Of these manner of Cataracts be seuen diuers spices or kinds, whereof foure be curable, and three be vncurable. *Foure kindes of Cataractes curable.* The first kind of the curable cataract, is light, right, bright, like white chalke, or as alabaster well polished, & it is caused by a stroke in the eie, either with a stick or a stone, or any other outward violence. 1 The second kind is somwhat white, and much like vnto a cœlestiall colour, and this proceedeth from the stomake, & is commonly caused of vnwholsome meats, and vnkind nourishment, whereof a grosse fumosity resolueth, & ascendeth vp into the braine, & from thence falleth downe into the eyes. 2 The third kind is also whirish, but it turneth into the colour of ashes, and is commonly engendred of paine in the head, as of the Migrime, or such like diseases, and it is caused sometime of great sorrow and great heauines, whereof commeth immoderate weeping, and somtime of much cold, and much watching, & such other like. 3 The fourth spice is of a Cytrine colour, and is commonly engendred of excessiue meate and drinke indigest, and also of great labour, and sometime of the humour melancholike. 4 These are the foure curable kinds, but they be neuer healed till they be grown and confirmed, & the signe or token of their full perfectiō is, when the patient seeth right nought, vnlesse it be the brightnes of the Sun by day light, or the light of the Moon by night. Many ignorant persons, neither knowing the cause nor the properties of these manner of Cataracts, haue assaied to cure them with purgations, powders, and plaisters, but they haue bene deceiued: for neither inward medicines, nor outward remedies can any whit preuaile, vnlesse you ioyne to them *artem acuariam*, the art of the needle: which because it is vnknowen to many of our practitioners, I will insert a discourse of it in this treatise. Neuertheles, before you vse the needle, it is requisit that the brain should be purged with *pilulæ Ierosolymitanæ*, which you shall make thus. ℞. Turbith. ℥. j. aloes, hepaticke ℥ ß. mace, quibibes, mastick, & saffron. ana. ℥. j. & beat them to powder altogether, & confect them with the iuice of roses, and make pilles therof: and this purgation must be ministred the day before you trie with the needle. And on the next day, while the diseased partie is fasting, about nine of the clock, cause him to sit ouerthwart a stoole in riding fashion, & plant your selfe likewise on the same stoole face to face against him, and bid him holde his sound eye close shut. Encourage him also, and exhort him to be patient, for the tractabilitie of him maketh much to the conuenient dispatch of your labour. Then with your left hand lift vp the ouer eyelid, and with your other hand put in the needle made therefore, on the side farthest off from the nose: and subtillie thirle the tunicle saluatrice, writhing alwayes your fingers to and fro, till you touch the corrupt water (which is the cataract) with the point of the needle; and then beginne by litle and litle to remoue that water from before the sight to the corner of the eye, & there keepe it with the point of your needle, the space of three minutes of an houre, and then remoue your needle

easily from it. And if it happen that it riseth vp againe, bring it back the second time. But this caution you must be sure to haue, that when the needle hath touched the cataract, you do not writh it about with your fingers to and fro, till it be set in his place before named, but that you gently draw it thither: and when you haue brought it thither, thirle the needle about, till it hath gathered the water about it, and then pull it out. (this done) Cause him to shut his eye, and apply thereto a plaister of flaxe and the white of an egge, and cause him to lye in his bed nine dayes together, remouing the plaister three times on the day, and three times on the night without any other stirring of it. Prouided, that he lye in a very darke place, and let his diet be thinne, as rere egs, and white bread. And if he be young and lustie, let his drinke be water, but if his bodie be weake, let him drinke wine well lymphate or small ale. For truly much nourishment would preiudice our cure by engendring much bloud in the eye, which is verie hurtfull now in the beginning of the healing of it. (The ninth day being passed) let him rise & wash his eye well with faire cold water, & he shall enioy his sight by the helpe of God, euen at he did before, although some one of the cataractes be fairer healed then the other, as namely the second kinde and the fourth kind: but that which is caused by a stripe, (though the water be with more ease extracted) yet the eye neuer recouereth his cleareneſſe of sight againe, because it is greatly bruſed and troubled by the force of the stroke. And the third kind also, though it be soone restored to his olde perfection, yet it abideth not long therin, vnlesse it be continued as well by good dyet, as also by this electuarie, which is called *Diaolibanum solarimitanum*, which is thus confected ℞. cloues. ℥. ij. nutmegs of India, and saffron. ana. ℥. j. ß. and of good *Castoreum*. ℥ j. Let all these be beaten into powder and searced, and confect that powder with clarified hony, and let the patient receiue of this electuarie in the morning fasting, the quantity of a chestnut, or walnut, & at euening to bedward as much. And let him vse digestiue nourishing meats, which ingender good blood, but let him beware of beife and goates flesh, and eeles, and raw onyons, for they are often times vsed to ripen the cataract, which must be done before you striue with it. In winter, let the patient drinke hot wines, in the which let him infuse Sage and rewe. Let him also abstaine from the companie of women, neither let him frequent common bathes, for euery strong fume hurteth him greatly. The aforesaid electuarie of *Diaolibanum* is good to drye teares. It availeth also against all manner of paine of the migrime which proceedeth of fleume. After this sort are all the curable cataractes healed, (I meane) by the needle, which must be made of gold, siluer, or of cleane Spanish Latten: for Iron or steele are very brittle and frangible. And if the cataract should proue hard in darwing down, the point may easily break, which if it should abide in the eye, it would in time consume the eye through abundance of teares and greatnes of paine.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of the three kinds of Cataractes vncurable.

THe first of Cataracts vncurable, the Phisitians call *Gutta Serena*, and the signe of the knowing therof is this, when the pupill of the eye is black and cleare,

cleare, as though it had no spot, and the eies are alwaies mouing, and the eielids do tremble as they were full of quicksiluer. This kind of cataract is caused of a corruption in the mothers wombe, and therfore they that haue them, are for the most part borne blind, and therefore they bestow their labor in vaine, that assay to cure them, for the Nerues opticke be oppilate and mortified, so that no medicines can preuaile, although many that haue this kind, do see the light of the Sunne, and the stature of a man euen to their liues end: we call it *Gutta serena*, because it is engendred of a water that falleth from the braine, of the which truely one litle droppe corrupteth and dissolueth all the humors of the eyes, and stoppeth the hollow nerues and sinewes, so that the visible spirites may no more passe through them. The second cataract incurable is that which appeareth in the eye of a greene colour, like water standing in waterie places, not much moued nor remoued: this is the most dangerous kind of all, if there be any degrees in them, and it is procured by the ouermuch coldnesse of the braine, and with great buffeting and beating about the head, with great fasting, and such other like. The third vncurable Cataract is, when the pupill of the eie is dilated and spread so farre, that no circles may be seene within the tunicles of the eyes, and the eie seemeth all blacke, or else all white. And thus are the three kinds of Cataracts vncurable distinguished and knowen: which will forbid the practitioners to deale with them.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of diseases which chance to the eyes, by bloud, choller, fleume, or melancholy, and of their cures.

NOw after the description of Cataracts, and the number of them which be curable, and which be not, and the curing, and knowledge of the curable and the causes of the vncurable, I wil speake of other maladies of the eies caused and occasioned of the foure humors, as bloud, fleume, choler, and melancholy. But first I will treate of bloud, through the aboundance whereof oftentimes there groweth a rednes in the eie, with great burning, and afterward it turneth to great itch: and this disease maketh the haire of the eyelids to fall away, and of many it leaueth not one haire, & if this malady be not cured within one year, it will make the eielids to turne vp, & make the patient blear-eied. But before it commeth to that extremity, it may be cured by this colliry, which they call *Collirium Ieroſolymitanum*, which is made in this wise. ℞. Tutty of *Alexander*. ℥ j. and beate it into small powder, and temper it wel with two pounds of white wine, (that is) a quart, and put thereto, ℥ j. of dry roses, and boile it with a soking fire, til the wine be half wasted, & then clense it through a linnen cloth, and keepe it in a violl glasse, and morning and euening put some of it into the eye, and if it be taken betimes, the patient shalbe cured within a weeke or two at the most. Neuertheless before you apply this colliry, it shalbe good, if the patient be yong, to let him bloud on the vein, that is on the midst of the forehead; or, if he be aged, to purge his braine with these pils. ℞. of the best aloes, red Sanders, *Esula*, and rewbarbe. ana. ℥. ß. Turbith, *Cataputia minor* and agarick ana. ℥. ij confect them with the iuice of mugworte, and minister to the patient according to his strength. And truely these pilles are not onely good for the

itch of the eyes, but also for all manner of itch or scabbe, of what humour so-euer it be caused. There be other diseases also of the eye engendred of blood, as the ophthalmy and pannicles; And these kindes of infirmities are tyed to the season of the yeare, for they commonly happen about the end of August, and so forth to the end of September, and the rather then, because they proceed of the eating of the varietie of frutes. The Ophthalmy is thus described: An Ophthalmy is a corrupt blood ingendred of hot humours, and commonly it standeth and appeareth in the white of the eyes, and round about the tunicles and blacknes of the eye, and it proceedeth of immoderate sorrow and burning, and of abundance of teares, which causeth the eyes to swell & make them so bolne, that from that time forth, the patient may take no rest nor sleepe, for euer it seemeth to him, that his eyes are full of grauel, or of thornes, or of smoke. In this kind of infirmitie it is good to vse this powder, which many, (in respect of the notable vertue thereof) do call *Pulus benedictus*, which is thus made. ℞. white sarcocall, and beat it to very fine powder, and fill the patients eie with it, and let him lie with it wide open til the powder be consumed, and in the meane time make a plaister of flaxen herds, and wash it well in cold water, (which when you haue drained out with your hand) lay it on the patient his eye, which he shall still keepe open, and it will procure him to take his rest verie well. Many ignorant practitioners, while they haue endeuored to cure this infirmitie with many impertinent medicines, haue added sorrow to sorrow, and haue brought the eye without his lids, and so made it vncurable, which by the aforesaid powder might easily haue bene healed. And note that there be some which by the occasion of the Ophthalmie are greatly troubled in their eyes, and haue them fumous & mistie, which proceedeth of euill keeping, or because they eate contrarie meates. Now if such happen, the braine must be purged with these pilles. ℞. polipody, *Esulæ*, *Mirabolani citrini*, and rewbarbe, ana. ℥. j. masticke, Quibibes, Saffron, Spiknard, *nux Indie*, Cinamon, ana-℥. j. confect them with milke or iuyce of Quinces, and minister to the sicke according to his strength, and after this purgation giue him morning and euening of the electuarie of *Diacolibanum solarimitanum* as before. And moreouer put into his eye a powder called *Pulus Nabetu*, the making whereof we will shew in the cure of the third pannicle. But this must be done onely in the morning and euening, put in his eye the powder called *Pulus Alexandrius* as before, and this do till the patient hath recouered his health, keeping him in the meane time from hurtfull meates.

CHAP. XXXIIII.

Of Pannicles.

Cause.

THE pannicles haue the same cause that the Ophthalmy hath, (that is to say) superfluitie of blood. Sometime they are engendred of euill keeping, and sometime by great paines in the head, as the migrim, where the extremity of paine ascending into the temples and so into the browes, maketh the veines to beat, by which painfull beating the eyes are troubled. *There be foure kinds of pannicles.* There be foure kinds of pannicles: the first is, when vpon the tunicle saluatriee there groweth a litle pearle, like the seed or graine of a corne called in latine *millium*. The second is when it appeareth in the aforesaid tunicle in the likenes of a spot or freckle

of

of the face, or like the scale of a fish. The third appeareth on the one side of the eye, like as it were a flake of snow when it snoweth. The fourth is when all the eye appeareth white, & then no blacknes, neither of the tunicle, neither of the light appereth. The first pannicle is neither cured with laxatiues, nor pouders, nor colliries, nor electuaries, nor yet with cauteries, for any of these (if they be ministred) do annoy rather then helpe. But you shall make this pretious oinment for the cure of it, which of many practitioners is proued to be of great credit. ℞. fortie tender crops of the bramble, and stampe them small, & a good handfull of rew, powder of Alabaster. ℔. j. ß powder of fennell seed. ʒ. ß. oile of Roses ℔. j. all these incorporate well together, put into a new earthen pot with a quart of new white wine, and to all these put. ʒ. iiij. of drie flours of cammomill, and of waxe. ʒ. j. and then set the pot on the fire, & let it boile with an easie fire, till the wine be consumed, so far forth that it seemeth to frie in, & then put thereto the whites of sixe egges, and alwaies stirre it well, till it be incorporated together, and then straine it through a faire linnen cloth: with this oinment thus made, annoint the temples of the patient, & the forhead downe to the browes, and it will cure this kind of pannicle. This ointment is not onely tied to this cure, but it hath many vertues: some of the which, I will expresse, though it be impertinēt to this discourse. It is very good against a green woūd for it both purgeth and clenseth it. It is good against the tooth ach or paine in the gums, if the cheeke be annointed therewith. It is good against the paine in the matrice, if it be eaten like an electuarie. It is good for them also who are molested in excesse, if their stomacke be annointed, & their feet together with their hands. It auaileth against the migrime, & generally for euery paine of the eyes, if the patient be annointed therwith vpon the temples as before. The second pānicle must be cured at the very beginning, for if it be incarnate & hardned vpō the tunicle, it may not by any subtility be remoued (the tunicle saued) & therfore it is not safe to aduenture to cure it, whē by continuance of time, it hath vnited it selfe with the saluatrice. But at the first you shall cure it thus: first make a cautery in the temples with a round cautery, (as shalbe shewed afterward whē I speake of cauteries): for fire dissolueth & consumeth the pannicle, & so keepeth it from vniting & incarnating with the tunicle, & maketh the eye fit to be clarified with this medicine following. When the eye is cauterized, put into the eye some of the pouder called *Puluis Nabetus* (which I will teach afterward) & while he lyeth with this pouder in his eye, take four crabs & rost them vnder the embers very well, & then take them, and being pilled and cored, incorporate them with the white of an egge in manner of an ointment, & lay it vpon a cleane flaxen herd, & bind it to the eye with a linnen band, and so renew this plaister morning and euening till you haue absolued your cure. Like as blood begetteth many infirmities of the eye, as namely Ophthalmies and Pannicles: so likewise many maladies are engendred of fleume, but the most notable are foure: the first is procured by ouer abundance of teares, whereby the ouer-eyelids are so softened and mollified, that within there grow haires, which prick the ball of the eye continually, as though there were hogs bristles: which haires though many bold Chirurgions haue plucked out, and so for a time eased them, yet afterward (the haires being hardned with plucking out)

Maladies cōming of fleume

do gail them farre worse then before, and so in the end the patient being destitute of any other aide, leeseth his sight, (the haires fretting and consuming the substance of his eye.) But in deed the best way, which as yet experience hath found out to cure that malady is this. Take two needles of the length of the litle finger, and put a thred through the eyes of both of them, and binde them wel together at both the ends, thē with your fingers lift vp the ouer eyelidde, and with these needles take off the lether where these haires grow, that the patient may shut and open his eye, and let the needles hang till they fal away, together with the lether which was betweene them: which done you shall put no medicine in the wound, for it will heale of it selfe: But if any pannicle be ingendred in the eye by reason of the vehemency of the paine, it shall be cured by *Puluis Nabetus* put into the eye twise a day, till such time, as they be clarified and healed. And this powder is made of sugar Candy of *Alexandria*,
2 which pouder is very auaileable against many sicknesses of the eie. The second infirmity which happeneth to the eie by fleum, is when the eies appeare troubled and full of veines, so closed with a pannicle that the patient cannot well see, nor discerne any thing, and this sickness is called *pannicum vitreum*, which is thus cured: first cause his head to be shauen, & thē cauterise him with a round cautery in the soft of the head, & with a long cautery in his temples, (which so done,) put into his eyes the powder of Candy once in the day, till that he hath receiued againe his full sight, and twise in the moneth purge him with the pils called *Pillulæ Ieroſolymitanæ*, and at his going to bed, let him receiue of the ele-
3 ctuary called *Diaolibanum ſolarimitanum* till he be whole. The third infirmity caused by fleume is, when the eie appeareth carnous or fleshy, the which carnosity (if it be waxen hard by the space of a yere or two) giueth place to no medicine. But in the beginning cauteries (in that manner that I prescribed them before) will heale it, so that after cauterizing you very warily cut away all the carnosity with a sharpe rasor, without offending the tunicle Saluatrice, which whē you haue done, fill the eie full of powder of Candy, & then cause the patient to shut his eie, and then lay to it a plaister of flaxe of the white of an egge, & change the plaister twise on the day xv. daies, & after xv. daies, make this plaister. ℞. a handfull of *Cardus benedictus*, & stampe it well, & mingle it with half the white of an egge, & so make a plaister with flaxen herds, & lay it vpon the eye, remouing it twise on the day, and after three daies leaue all plaisters, & let the patient lie with his eye open, & euery day in the morning put into his eye the pouder called *Puluis benedictus*, & at euening the pouder of Cādy til he be perfectly whole: in the meane time let him abstaine from eeles, onions, beef, and al such meats. The fourth malady caused of fleume is, when the eye appeareth
4 all bolne, and alwaies sheadeth teares, so that the patient may not open his eyes by reason of the heauines of the eye lids, for there is a fatnes on the ouer eye lid, which troubleth the eye very much, and this disease is called the scab of the eie, & it proceedeth from superaboundance of salt fleume, the cure of it is this: you shall first purge the stomack and braine of the patient with this receipt. ℞. Turbith of the best Aloes and rewbarbe. ana. ℥. j. then take of the iuice of the roote of walwort. ℔. j. and the aforesaid things being beaten and resolued in the said iuice, let it stand al night, and in the morning clense it, & let the

patient

patient take thereof a good quantity, and the next day subtilly with your Rasour pare away the aforesaid fatnesse, euen from the one lachrimall to the other. (which done) lay on a plaister of herdes and the white of an egge 9. daies after (euery day changing the plaister twise,) and then let the patient lie with his eie open, and put into it of the Collyry called *Collirium Alexandrinum*, which is taught before in the cure of the third pannicle, and that will heale it very well. I haue heard that women did rub away that fatnes with sugar, but it returned againe afterward, though for a time they were eased. There is an Electuary, very auailable against these teares which is thus made. ℞. *Olibanum Castoreum*, nutmegges, *Nux Indie*, cloues, quibibes. ana. ℥ j. leaues of laurell, spicknard, Saffron, and *Cardamomum*. ana. ℥. ij. seedes of dill, smalladge, basilicon, Alisander, anise, fennell, foure seeds of henbane, white poppy, muske, and champher. ana. ℥. j. all these must be beaten together to powder sauing the *Olibanum*, which must be boiled with clarified hony till it be molten, and then poure it into a faire large wodden platter together with the pouder before made, and incorporate them together by often stirring, and let it abide in the platter still, & when you will minister it, giue as much as a Chestnut at the patients going to bed. It destroieth the teares, together with the fleume, it warmeth the braine, it driueth away the paine of the migrime, it openeth the eies, releueth the eielidds, and clarifieth the sight. It is good for them that haue the goute and the palsey, and for them that haue an impediment in their speach.

CHAP. XXV.

Of the maladies in the eye proceeding of choler.

TWo kind of griefs are incident to the eyes by choler: the first whereof is that which is caused by aboundāce of choler in the stomack, from whence ariseth a corrupt fumosity into the braine, which annoyeth the braine & troubleth the visible spirits, so that the party thus affected, shall imagine an obiect planted betweene him and the light in manner of a darke shadow. We cannot outwardly iudge of this malady for it hath no euident marke either in the eie, or without the eye, but the cause of it abideth in the stomacke, which must be taken away by an electuary mitigatiue, and apparatiue which will asswage the paine, and open the oppilate nerues and sinewes, whereby the visible spirites may haue free passage: you shall make it thus. ℞. rewbarbe, *Esulæ minoris*, red saunders, *mirabolani citrini*. ana. ℥. iiij. the roots of fennell, spinach, bansci, percely, *Apij Sicacellæ*, simory, and maiden haire. ana. *M*. j. polipody of the Oke. ℥. ij. boile all these rootes in faire water till halfe the water be wasted, and then clense it, and take the aforesaid spices well beaten, & put them into the aforesaid licour with two pounds of good sugar, and make thereof a sirupe laxatiue. But you shall boile it but litle the second time, for the spices will soone loose their vertue, and then clense it again the second time, and let the patient take of this twise in the weeke. The second infirmity arising of choler is, when there appeareth before the tunicle as it were a thinne cloude in a cleare aire, & this is brought by an euill diet, but it happeneth but to those that be colericke. For the cure you shal take a saphire, and breake it in a morter, and keepe the powder in a vessel of gold, and once in the day put this powder in the patients eye,

and he shalbe whole in short time. The same effect hath the gall of a hare dried and beaten into powder, and so put into the eye.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of the infirmities of the Eye caused of melancholie.

OF the humor of Melancholie be ingendred in sundrie folks many and diuers sicknesses by reason of the opilation of the spirits visible, which cõmeth by the distẽperature of the braine, which is disquieted by the abundance of melancholy. In these diseases therefore it seemeth to the patient, that there are flies flying in the aier, and that there are three or foure moones, and three or four faces, when he beholdeth but one: but these infirmities happen most commonly to aged persons, which are melancholie, superfluitie of melancholie dimming their eye sight. There must not therfore any medicine be put into the eye of the patient, but make this electuarie mitigatiue & apparatiue which wil open the opilations of the nerues, which did before forclose the way to the visible spirits. The electuary is thus confected. ℞. the iuyce of liquorice, eiebright, *fileris montani*, ana. ℔ß. the seeds of rew basilicon, nettels that commeth frõ beyond the sea, or Ceciliã, or fenel, of alisander, of *apium*, & caraway seed. ana. ℥ij. masticke, cloues, nutmegs, cinamon, Quibibes, *gummi*, almonds, *Cerache pomi gummorum*, *Aragunton*, and saffron. ana. ℥ß. kernels of quince apples ℥j. all these must be beaten together into small powder well searced, and then you must confect them with good sugar, & make an electuarie of it, and of this let him receiue morning and euening, till he be healed. It auaileth also against that dimnes of the eyes which commeth by thought and of much heauines & maketh them to see more cleerely, and of that effect it hath his name (that is) *clarificatum oculorum*. There is also another infirmitie which cõmeth of melancholie, and that is, when the paine suddenly ascendeth into the eyes, & grieueth so extremely, that it seemeth to the patient that his eyes would start out: they appeare also most commonly very bolne. Many which are troubled with this kind of maladie, do loose their sight altogether, and many (though there be some which do see) notwithstanding but very feebly. But the seasonable applying of remedies preuenteth either discommoditie. After this sort then, you shall encounter with this euill. You shall first purge the stomacke & the braine with these pilles. ℞. Aloes *mirabolani citrini*, turbith, saunders citrine, and rew-barbe ana. ℥ ß. scammony, mirrhe, saffron, balsamum, masticke, *lignum aloes*, *olibanum*, white agaricke, *nux Indie*, iuyce of liquorice, seed of apium, lettuce, succorie, basilicon. ana. ℥j. Beat all these to powder, and confect them with the iuyce of roses, and make pilles of them, and giue the patient after his power. The stomake & the braine thus purged, lay vpon the eye this plaister; ℞. foure apples or crabbes, and rost them vnder the embers till they be soft, then core them and pare them, and bruse them wel in a morter, and to foure of them put halfe the white of an egge, and so bray them together till they be well incorporate, and so lay them vpon flaxen herds, and morning and euening apply it to the eye, and you shall find that it will do much good: for it both asswageth the swelling, lesseneth the paine, refresheth the sight, and with all these fixeth also the eye in his place. There is another infirmitie also which proceedeth by

by the abundance of melancholy and that they call *Vngula*: for it is much like the naile of a finger, sometime it breedeth in the corner of the eye to the eare ward, & so spredeth ouer the eye if it be not hindred & resisted betimes: sometime also it happeneth that another vngle ariseth in the other corner, and if they meete, it maketh the cure more vncertaine, yet by heedfull skill and discretion it may be healed by the hand. Take therfore a twich of siluer, & therewith lift up subtilly the vngle frō the tunicle, proceding to the lachrimal where it grew, & there cut it away, and then lay the white of an egge and flaxe vpon it ten daies together, remouing it twise on the day, and at the end of ten daies wash his eye with hot water, & put into it *Puluis Nabetus* before named, till the eye be sufficiently cleared. Let him abstaine from such meates as do feed melancholy. It hapeneth also sometime, that the superfluous abundance of melancholy, seated in the braine, begetteth a drines in the eye lids, which afterward turneth to itching & burning. But this disease is cured by letting the patient blood on the middle veine in the forhead, & after with vsing this colliry. ℞ forty tender croppes of the bramble, and stamp them small, then put them in a new earthen vessell together with a quart of good white wine, and so boile them till the halfe be consumed, and then clense it and preserue it in a glasse to your vse, and twise in the day put some of it into your patient his eye, till it be whole. Of the like superfluitie of melancholy groweth sometime a corrupt humour without the eye vppon the lidde, the which bolneth all the one side of the face with extreame paine, but with no offence to the sight of the eye. The signes of this disease are these: it maketh the eye lids hard and red, and keepeth the eie so shut, that the patient may not open it. For the cure of it, you shal take fine floure of old wheate, & yolks of egs. ana. ℥.j. of saffron. ℥.j. & stamp them well together with womans milke, till it be as an ointment, then make a plaister of it, and apply it, so that none enter into the eye. You may also vse this. ℞. a lillie roote and crabs, and rost them in the embers till they be soft, then taking away the core & the pilles of the crabs, stampe them both of like quantitie with the whites of egges, and so vse it: On the steppe of the wound, where the sore was, lay this oyntment, that it may draw the flesh together, so that no scarre do appeare. ℞. *Aloes*, hennes grease, oyle of bitter almonds, and white waxe, and incorporate them together into an ointment and apply it. It is very good in all the diseases of the eyes, to annoint the temples of the patient, and the forehead with *vnguentum alabastrum* before named, for it asswageth the paine and helpeth the other medecines in their operation. It happeneth manie times in this infirmitie that the patient his eye liddes for want of prouident skill doe reuerse, which is a great bleamish. In this case you must subtillie with the Rasour deuide the eye lid from the wound, and part them with a litle roule made of fine linnen cloth dipped in the white of an egge, which you shall lay betwixt the lid & the sore xv. daies together, changing it daily & then make the ointment of hennes grease & white waxe, and lay of it vpon the roule, and it will consume the wound, so that there shall appeare no Cicatrice. The like cure you shall vse, when the reuersement of the eye liddes is caused of superfluitie of bloud. Of the melancholike humour there is also engendred in many men a sicknes, which groweth betweene the nose & the eye, and it ap-

Signa.
Curatio.

peareth like a peece of lung or light. It is grauelly, and auoideth out alwayes filth. This sore is called *vulgalpus*. For the cure of it, you shall only take a twich, and lift the sore vp subtilly, and with the point of a rasour cut vp the sore by the roote, and cauterize it with a hote iron, and vse the ointment before rehearsed, which they call *vnguentum subtile*, that is, hennes grease and white waxe, & annoint the place with it, till it be whole.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of diseases happening to the eye by outward causes, as by blowes, with stickes, staues, or stones.

THe onely thing generally, that you shall vse when the eye is smitten, is the white of an egge and flaxen herds, to the which God hath giuen three especiall properties. The first is to asswage the paine. The second to purifie and cleare the sight. The third is to let and keepe away all superfluous humours which otherwise would fall into the eie. You shall remoue it foure times in the day, and twise in the night, by the space of xv. dayes together, annointing in the mean time the temples of the patient with ointment of Alablaster, which as I told you before, was an adiuuant and aid to all medicins. Now after the xv. daies be expired, if you shall perceiue the tunicle saluatrice to be hurt and broken, you shall then take xij. streines of the new laid egges of white hens, & put them in a morter, labouring them with a pestill, till they be vnited in maner of an ointment, and so reserue it in a glasse, & twise in the day & once in the night put a litle of it into the eye, & it will knit together, & make so nude againe the tunicle if it be broken or hurt: after this manner I haue cured many wounds in the eye, which haue seemed dangerous, and vncureable to the ignorant beholder. But sometime it will happen, that through the force of the blow, there will grow a cataract, and then in the beginning the tunicle must be saued by this forenamed prescript, and the cataract must grow without let to his full perfection, and so be healed by the needle. Some vnskilfull practitioners vse to lay a plaister made of waxe and commin to the eye, if it be smitten, and other some vse *Olibanum* and wormewood, but both those and all such like hote ointments are passing euill, because they consume & wast the substance of the eye. It followeth now that I speake of watery eies and of corrupt humors like teares, which the Phisitians cal *fistoles*, to discerne betweene the *fistula* and the watery profluence of teares. You shall therefore vse this skill: lay your fore-finger betweene the nose and the corner of the eye, and straining the place a litle, if it be a *fistula*, you shall see the matter of it runne out at the points of the eye liddes: but if none appeare, then iudge it to be a watery humour. Many boisterous fellowes, (seeing the place of the issue of the *fistula*) haue vsed to cauterize it with a hot iron, thinking by that meanes to haue dried vp the matter, which indeede they haue done, but they haue destroied the sight, and deformed also the place. This therefore is the sureste way or course that you can take, to cure the *fistula*. First purge the patient his stomacke with Pilles of Ierusalem, and then with the point of a rasour you shall make a litle incision betwixt the neather eyelidde and the nose so directly that the lidde be not touched: and this incision shall be throughout the skinne in a long wise, & into the same

same put in the graine of a fich binding it on with a litle pillow of linnen, and so let it lye till the next day: then remouing the fiche, you shall in the hole where it lay, put in a litle of some powder Corrasiue. After the powder is put in, lay a plaister of flaxen heardes, and the white of an egge (the patient alwaies shutting his eye for feare of the powder.) In the morning after, you shall apply nothing but cleane swines grease, till the mortified flesh be raised, and when it is raised and remoued, put in a peece of a spunge as much as the fiche, in the hole which the powder made, and it will purge the drines of the wound and when you shall perceiue it throughly dried, leaue the spunge, and binde nothing to it else but faire drie lint of linnen till the patient be whole. Nowe concerning the teares, they issue out of the eye liddes both the vpppr and the neather: but there is difference betweene the causes of their issuing from both places: for they which proceed from the neather eye lidde, come from the hart, by reason of sorrow, dread, or smart, or they be caused by some manner of violence: but the teares which flow out of the hole of the ouer eyelid, proceed from the braine by reason of corruption and abundance of humours, and their course ceaseth not, vnlesse the matter be purged with electuaries and cauteries, as I haue shewed before.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of diseases which come by skipping in of stones or chippes by chaunce into the eyes.

THese diseases happen especially to Masons, Millers, Carpenters, Wrights and smiths: for if any chiue, chip or dust skippe into the eye, and through negligence be left behind, it will incarnate vpon the tunicle saluatrice, & then can you not cure the eye, but by remouing and drawing the said chiue, which you shall do with your needle, deuiding it cunningly from the tunicle. And if it happeneth that there be any pit in the place, where it lay, by reason that it abode long time therein: then put into the eyes the streines of egs, ordered as I declared before, twise in the day and once in the night, and vpon the eye lay a plaister of flaxe, and the white of an egge, & within three dayes it will heale the party diseased. And after this sort you shall also remoue the hawe in the eye. But you shall in drawing out the hawe, bind two needles fast rogether at the toppe, and so take the hawe betweene the two points, & so easily rowling the needles bring it away. Sometime it happeneth that the eye is stung with a Bee or waspe, or some other venemous thing, or blasted with an infected ayre: and if any of these happen, the eye is much disquieted and grieued, so that the patient may take no rest, and it bolneth vp that he may not see. The onely cure for such and the like accidents is this, as I haue by experience often tried. Take a handfull of *Cardus benedictus*, and stampe it small, and temper it well with halfe the white of an egge, and therwith make a plaister laying it on flaxen herds, binding it hard to the eye, where it shall lie till it be dried, and then apply another: and so consequently vse it till your patient be throughly whole. These qualities this herbe hath: it asswageth swelling, and easeth the paine, destroieth the venime, & putteth away blood from the eyes. This is also a present remedy for the eies that are bloudshed, when they burne as though there

were grauell in them. And thus much for the especiall discourses of sundrie diseases, which do most commonly bend to that litle member, the eye, together with their particular cures.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of paine in the eares.

DE AVRIVM DOLORE.

PAine in the eares is caused of some through cold taken in iorneying by cold windes. Also sometime it is caused of cold bathes and medicinable waters. Also it chanceth to many through hot distempure. Sometime of inflammation. And like as inflammation by stretching out the partes that be inflamed, engendreth paine, euen so a windie vapour, or a humour grosse and clammie, for lacke of passage causeth paine. Also humours that be biting, and like whay and matter, do cause paine in the eares. Paine in the eares caused of colde, is soone knowen by the patients words, & because there is continuall great paine without heauines, or distention, or burning. The paine which is caused of hot distempure is knowen, in that there is felt paine and heat without heauines or bolning. But if heauines, distention, and beating heat and paine be felt in the head then the paine in the eare is caused of inflammation. Onely distension without heauines declareth a windie vapour which cannot find passage out. If there be heauines in the head & the hearing: the paine is caused of grosse & clammy humours. If the paine be caused onely of cold, it will soone be cured by hot remedies, that is, with oile of rew, laurell, nard, dill, lillies, of *Euphorbium*, & spike. Also if you seeth rew, & common oile or pepper, or *Castoreum*, it is a good remedy. Also oile in which garlicke is sodden: or an onyon, dropped into the eares is maruellously good. There are some that do cut out the core of a great onion, then they fill it with oile, and they heate it meanely in hot embers, and poure it into the eares, when it is strongly strained. Also a very litle *Euphorbium* commixed with much old oile, is much commended of Galen. Whatsoeuer you do minister, let it be ministred hote. But when some medicinable water is continued in the passage of hearing, you must continually poure in oyle that is very thinne, that it may be washed: then wipe it with soft wooll, and againe poure in more. The white of an egge mitigateth the paine very much. Also womans milke. Also goose grease profiteth much: likewise foxes grease. But to draw out plentie of water, nothing is better then to sucke and to draw it out with a quill or a hollow pipe holden in the mouth. When paine is caused of hot distempure, then oyle of roses is maruellously good for the head, if it be dropped into the eare, and vineger and oile of roses is good, or the white of an egge, or womans milke, or iuyce of nightshade, or this; ℞. oyle of roses. ℥.i. Iuyce of nightshade. ℥.ij. vineger of roses. ℥.j.ß. commix them. If the paine be caused of inflammation, or grosse and viscous humours, you must vse medicins which doe deuide and take away obstructions and stoppings: as be all bitter things which purge and clense without Erosion, as is *yrisillirica*, all kindes of *Aristolochia*, bitter almonds, the roote of *nitisalba*, centory the lesse, *polium* & cinamon. Also oile of almonds and other which do purge, clense, wipe, and vnstoppe the passages without griefe. Therfore of those you may make medicins, and

Cause.

Signa.

Cure of cold.

Of water

Of hem.

and drop thereof into the eares. Among other also the iuyce of leekes dropped into the eare warme is good, or iuyce of leeks mixed with hony. If that the paine be caused of inflammation, you must by and by let bloud on the *Cephalica* veine that is on the same side: and with clisters you must pull backe the humours that do flow. Afterward you must drop in *oxyrhodinum* warme, or goose grease, or hennes grease, with oyle of roses. But if the inflammation be vehement: then to cease paine drop warme into the eare the white of an egge with womans milke. Also this medicine is good; ℞. iuyce of senegreene. ℥.ij. oyle of roses. ℥ ß. vineger. ℥ j. ß. commixe them all, and drop it into the sore eare. Apply those things outwardly which cease paine, and do digest the matter heaped together. If the inflammation be verie vehement, it is necessary to vse those things which do astonie the sense easily, and it is no small danger, lest that the sinewe by which the vertue of hearing is dispersed in the braine, be hurt thereby. But commixe a litle *Opium* with womans milke and the white of an egge. Also temper *Opium* with *Castoreum*: there must be of each a like quantitie, or double as much *Castoreum*. The liquor in which the aforesaid medicins ought to be tempered, being first finely beaten, must be *Sapa*: for it doth cease paine much more then sweet wine. *Sapa* is new wine sodden till it come to the third part. There be somme that commixe *Opium* with oyle of roses, or violets after this sort; ℞. of *Opium*. ℈.j. oyle of roses and violets. ana. ℥ j. ß. Also the Antidote *Philonium* dissolued in womans milke, & dropped in, is good. Without you must nourish the eare continually with common oyle, or with a hote foment, and you must dip wooll in it, and put it into the eare: but in such wise that it may not touch the places that be troubled with inflammation. But whé the paine waxeth old, & turneth to suppuration and impostumation, you shall drop into the eare a medicine of the iuyce of lineseed onely with oile of roses or cammomill mixed with it.

Vene sectio.

Sapa.

CHAP. XL.

Of sound or noyse in the eares.

De Sonitv Avrivm.

Cause.

NOyse and tinckling in the eare, for the most part is ingendred of a windie vapour, or of grosse and clammie humours. Also manie times it is caused through an exquisite tardines of the sense of hearing. It is also caused through weakenesse of the members: when it chaunceth in the recouering of a disease, some humour is taken into the sinewes of the eares: also it is caused of outward things, as of cold, heate, or a blow on the head. If the euill chaunce through outward causes, it is soone knowne by the patients wordes. Nowe because the noyse commeth by litle and litle, or at one time, or suddenly on a heape, that is also conuenient to knowe the disease by. For if the sounding do come, and then rest for a certaine space, it is euident that a windie vapour is shut in, and cannot get out, and so causeth sounding, and specially when the sick hath eaten windy meats. But if such soũd in the eares do not come suddenly, but by litle and litle, and there is felt withall a heauinesse and waight: then it declareth the euill to be caused of grosse and viscous humours. For the cure, if the sound in the eares be caused of grosse and viscous humours, or of vapours: in

Signa.

Of windie vapours.

Of grosse humours.

Cure if it come of grosse humors or vapors

the beginning purge the head with *Pilulæ Cochiæ* & such like. But first minister before them potions and medicins which haue vertue to extenuate & deuide. Then you must vse masticatories and sternutaments. Moreouer you must drop into the eares oyle of bitter almonds, or oyle in which *Castoreum* is brayed. Also let the eare be inclined to the vapour of the water, in the which *Stechas*, wormwood, marioram, mints and origan haue bene sodden. Iuyce of rewe, sodden in the rind of a pomgranate is maruellous good. Also *Sacculi* made of betony, *Stechados*, cammomill, marioram: & other things a litle before rehearsed are very good, if they be applied to the eare warme. If the sound in the eare be caused through sharpnes of the sense of hearing, which is knowen, if when the patient is hungrie it increaseth, & when he is full the noise is lesse. Then you must vse those things which do astonie the senses, but you must take good heed thereof, and therfore begin with the easiest, & if need be, proceed afterward to stronger. Oile of roses is onely commended with a graine or two of *Opium* put to it. Galen in this case praiseth iuice of *Mandragora* and poppy. But if noise in the eares chaunce in feuers, there neede no remedie for it, for commonly it goeth away straight. But if it remaine after a disease or a paine in the head, then you must nourish the eares with decoction of wormwood, pouring in vineger and oyle of roses, or iuyce of raddish with oyle of roses, or the best aloes tempered with *mulsa*: and if this helpe it not, vse blacke hellebore brayed with vineger.

Sacculi.

If it come of sharpnes of hearing.

CHAP. XL.

Of deafnesse and slow hearing

SVRDITAS ET GRAVIS AVDITVS.

THis eare is so afflicted, that it causeth not onely dulnesse of hearing: but also deafnesse, that one can heare nothing at all. Sometime deafnesse beginneth at ones birth, and somtime it chanceth after we be borne, which doth chance, either through cholericke humours flying vpward, or through crude and grosse humours stopping the hearing. If deafnesse come of cholericke humours specially after feuers, then is it wont with sodaine incursions to run to the braine. Also the face and all the state of the bodie will shew a cholericke temperature. But if it come of grosse humors, there is heauines of the head, and other tokens be present which shew flegmaticke humors. They which remaine deafe from their birth, or also soone after they be borne, being perfectly deafe of a long time, are vncurable, neither doth any of them euer speake. They that be not altogether deaf, yet, if it haue long cõtinued, it is very hard to cure. Deafnesse which is caused through cholericke humors flying vpward, is soone driuen away by medicines purging choler. If the deafnesse be engendred of crude and grosse humours, this dull hearing is cured by bloudletting, or onely by purgation of *Hiera* or *Pilulæ cochiæ*, and other such like. But minister before *Oximel*, and other medicins that haue power to deuide grosse and clammy humours. The whole bodie being purged, you must draw fleume out of the head by Masticatories, sternutaments, and *Errhinis*. Furthermore, they must be dried and by all meanes strengthened. Also he must vse a bath that floweth of it self, or salt water. You must put into the eare medicines that deuide and cut grosse and viscous humours, whereof there be many declared in the chapter against sound

Causa.

Signa.

If of cholericke humours.

If of grosse humors.

sound of the eares. But priuately iuyce of rew with hony, or *Castoreum* with oile of dill is good. Also you must vse foments, and leane your eare vpon a quill or reede, hauing one end made fit for the eare, and the other for the hole in the couer of the pot being euery where fast stopped. Let there be in the pot wormwood, mints, marioram, origan, stæchas, or such like sodden in water, that the vapour that commeth from thence, may passe into the course of hearing. Also this medicine dropped into the eare is good; ℞. oile of *Castoreum*. ʒ.ß. comin seed. ʒ.ij. powder of *Castoreum*, ʒ.j. a great onion the core taken out, put in the powders of comin and *Castoreum*, and put in the oyle, and wind it vp in wet papers, and put it vnder the hot embers, and when it is rosted, straine it hard, and let it be dropped into the eare. Moreouer the vapour of vineger taken with a reede, as is taught before is maruellously good. Let their diet be altogether thinne, and meates of light digestion. 86 *Victus ratio.*

CHAP. XLII.

Of impostumes breeding in the eares.

DE PAROTIDIBVS.

Parotides in Greeke be inflammations which are wont to issue out in the kernels which be by the eares. It is caused of abundant hot bloud which is either mixed with choler, or fleume, or melancholie. And sometime it is caused of humours compact in the head, and sometime of the rest of the bodie by sicknesse, and specially by feuers. *Parotides* which are caused through fulnesse and plentie of hote bloud, they do ingender most vehement paine. They which are caused of cholericke bloud, they seeme much like *Erisipela*, and they vexe the place that is diseased with no griefe. That which is caused of melancholy bloud they be not redde, nor they vexe not with vehement paine, but they be hard. They which be ingendred of flegmaticke bloud, in the swelling they be raised sharpe vpward. Let their diet be such in a maner, as is appointed in other inflammations. The cure (if age and other things will suffer) must be begun by letting of bloud: you must cut the *Cephalica* veine on the same side. Furthermore we vse not in *Parotides* as we do in other inflammations, to apply in the beginning things that represse, but contrariwise things that do draw. And if they be not in effect, fasten cupping glasses, or apply continually foments. To mitigate the paine you must chuse those things which haue heate with moderate moistnesse, mitigating and ceasing paine, meete to ripe and digest; as is, decoctions made of wheate or barley, or the meale of linesed with *mulsa* or fenugreeke, or althea, or cammomil: for the same purpose annoint the place continually with butter, putting to it the whites of egges. Also swines grease with butter melted, with a litle waxe put to it, that it may be a soft cerot, may be wel applied. But in them that be meek, (that is) in gentle *Parotides*, in which there flow not such plentie of humours that they cause vehement paine, nor there is no heate of the humour, such are easily cured with foments of brine, and plaisters and medicines altogether discussiue, as is *Diachrilon*. If the *Parotides* can not be dissolued, you must vse medicines to ripe, and bring the impostume to matter, as is, wheat meale with the decoction of figs and oile. Also the medicin that is made of meale and floure & leuen. When the *Parotides* be riped, either

Causæ. *Signa.* *Victus ratio.* *Curatio.* *Cure of them that be meeke.*

cut the skinne with a knife, that the matter may be let our, or the botch may be broken with a sharpe medicine, as that which is broken with garlicke, and such like, or to proue howe to dissolue it by medicines which haue vertue to draw and extenuate, remouing it twise dayly, and nourishing it vntil the paine be somewhat released, and the more part of the matter dissolued. And if there be hardnesse, that also must be mollified. Therefore you must make medicines that be of mixt qualities, so that you must commixe drawing things with mollifiers, as is calues suet, goats suet, the marrow of a hart, *bdellium*, *storax*, *ammoniacum*, and such other like.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of vlcers in the nose.

De Ozaenis.

Cause. Ozene in Greeke be vlcers in the nose that be deepe and rotten, out of the which is breathed an vnkind and stinking sauor. Through sharpe & rotten humours which flow to the nosthrils, filthinesse is ingendred, which if they be onely sharpe, they ingender vlcers hard to be cured, but yet they stinke not much. Therefore the cure of these vlcers consisteth chiefly in this, that in the beginning the head be dried and strengthened. Because vlcers come through the flowing of corrupt humours, which flow out of the head to the nosthrils, the whole head must be strengthened and dried, that no superfluities do flow from the nosthrils. You shall adde strength to the head after this sort, first you must clip the head, then straight you must lay on it things that do restraine & bind, as is oyle of roses, alume, vnripe galles, willow leaues, vineger, & such like: this must be continually layd and annointed on the head ix. dayes. When with those things the head is made strong, then go about to cure the nosthrils, that you may dry vp the matter, with medicines that be repulsiue and discussiue. Therefore those things that repell and driue backe be things sharpe, & sower, which also are reckened with restrictiue things. Discussiue things must be hot and drie of vertue. Therefore to our *Ozene* you must drop in the iuyce of calamint, or blow in the powder therof being dried with a quill, or drop in hony into the nosthrils. A while after minister sternutaments to bring them to scurfes, which wil fall off in three or foure dayes. When they are fallen off, cure it with goose grease and butter, and oyle of roses. The vlcers in the nosthrils may be annointed with iuyce of a pomgranate boyled in a brasen vessell vnto the half, or a whole pomgranate sodden in sweete wine brayed & dropped in. Also this is good: ℞ drie alume. ℥. j. ß. mirrhe. ℥. j. the rind of a pomgranate, sumach, salt gemme, saffron, frankensence, ana. ℥. ß. beate them, & blow into the nose of the powder. If that after the vlcers there remaine paine, vse this ointment: ℞ oyle of roses, mirtels. ana. ℥. j. burnt lead, litarge. ana. ℈. ij. Ceruse, bolearmenie, *balaustium*. ana. ℈. j. white waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment, and annoint the place.

Sternutamentum.

Vnguentum.

CHAP. XLIIII.

Of bleeding at the nose.

De Sanguinis Ex Naribvs Profluvio.

Causa. Externa. FLuxe of bloud at the nose is caused partly outwardly, and partly inwardly. Outward causes be falling frō a high place, a stripe, vehement exercise, and tarying

tarying in the sunne. Inward causes is plenty of blood or thinnesse of the same. You may know if it come through plenty of blood by heauy paine in the head, much blood in the face, and rednesse of the eyes. Let the diet be thinne, and such that it may coole and make thick the blood. Therfore let the aire be cold, and the meat of good iuyce, and easy to digest. If the blood be verie hot, let the sicke eate lettuce, endiue, peares, quinces, chickens rosted or boiled with veriuice. Let him drinke thicke red wine mixt with water, or cold water, or decoction of cinamon, by which throughout my book, I meane water, in which a litle cinamon is sodden, lest water through his coldnes might hurt a weak stomacke. Let the patient speak litle, and let him eschue mouing, trouble of mind, and chiefly anger. Also it is good to haue the lower parts of the head highest. For the cure you must take heed, that in bleeding at the nose the lower parts ly highest, and the head downward. The cure must be begun with those remedies which turne the blood to other parts of the bodie. First therfore if the bodie be full, and age will suffer it, and if the sicke be not resolued, you must cut the veine in the arme right against the flowing of blood at the nose. When you haue drawen out a litle, then let it alone an houre, then draw out some againe, and afterward againe and againe, as the patientes strength will suffer it. Moreouer friction and rubbing of the inferior partes, as the armes, handes, thighes, share, & feet is verie profitable: and it is maruellously good to put the feet into warme water euer rubbing them vp and downe. Also strong bindings of the extremities is to be accounted among the remedies that pull back. Also great cupping glasses fastened to the sides doe retaine blood breaking out at the nose. If the bloud flowe from the right nosethrill, fasten the cupping glasse vpon the liuer: if at the left nosethrill, vpon the splene. If the blood come from both the nosethrilles, fasten cupping glasses to both places. Also fasten them to the shoulders with scarification. Those being done, minister both within the bodie and without, things which coole and restraine. Outwardlie apply to the forehead an *Epithema* of iuyce of plantaine, lettuce, sorrell, sheepherds purse, knot-grasse, or make it with the waters of them distilled. A linnen cloath wet in colde vineger is maruellous good, being applyed to the forehead and necke againe and againe. Also nourish the forehead with spunges of cold water. Also it is good to vse this *Epithema*, applyed to the forehead & the liuer. ℞. water of roses, nightshade, sorrell, ana. ℥ iij. powders of *Diatrion santalon*, *Diarrhodon abbatis*. ana. ℥.j. bolearmenie, yuorie burnt, *lapis hæmatites* ana. ℥.ß. commixe them all, & make an *Epithema*. Also you must put into the nose, medicines to stop blood, for the which this is very good: ℞. frankencense. ℥.ij. aloes ℥.j. powder them, & mixe therwith the white of an eg, vntill it be as thicke as hony, then commixe the soft haires of an hare with it, and apply it to the nose. Also you may writh a linnen cloth (dipped therein,) in the nosthrils. Also mints brayed, and put into the nosethrilles is thought to be exceeding good. Also a spunge wette in strong and sharpe vineger, may be put into the nose that bleedeth. Also this medicine is good. ℞. egge shelles. ℥.ij. vnripe galles. ℥.j. being braied put them into a writhed linnen cloth wet in water or vineger, and put it into the nosethrils. Also it is good to stoppe the eares strongly with linnen & wax, and to hold in the mouth cold raine water. Also iuyce of the leaues

Interna.
Signa.
Victus ratio.
Potus.
Curatio.
Venæ sectio.
Concurbitulæ.
Epithema
Aliud Epithema.
An excellent medicine to stop blood.

of nettle, hauing linnen dipt into it, and put into the nose, stoppeth bleeding at the nose, also iuyce of horse taile, or the leaues braied and applied are good. The flesh of snailes brayed with vineger or with their shelles burnt and braied are good being applied to the forehead, and nose with vineger. But aboue all, the blood which commeth out at the patientes nose is good, if it be burned in an earthen pot and then beaten, take of it ℥ iij bole armoniacke ℥ j. champhore ℈ j. with the white of an egge and a litle vineger, make it thicke like hony, and lay it to the forehead, and put it into the nose. Necessitie requiring it is lawfull to put to ij. graines or iij. of *opium*. Asses doung dried and made into powder is wonderfully good, and also hogges doung hath the like propertie. Within the bodie minister those things which do coole and restraine, as be sirupes of roses, sorrell and *nymphea*, trochiskes of *terra lemnia*, or their iuyces, and such like medicins. Moreouer if in the meane season any blood flowe into the belly or other places of the bodie, if it be much and plenteous, you must auoid it by medicines which will dissolue and bring forth the cloddie matter.

Optima medicina.

CHAP. XLV.

Of distillation, reume, and hoarsenesse

De Distillatione, Gravedine, Et Raucitate.

Catarros in Greeke, is called *Distillatio* in Latin, and in English Reume. It is whereas an humour falleth downe to the mouth and the iawes. *Grauedo* is when the humour falleth into the nose, and causeth the pose. *Raucedo* is when the humour chaunceth to distill to the sharpe arterie. The cause of flowing of the humour is the braine, the which through cold is brought to a cold tempure, which chaunceth specially to them, which go suddenly about in the cold bare headed. But through heate the braine is warmed and stuffed, the coldnes of humours which be in the braine, wringing hard like as a sponge dipped in water is wrong with ones hand. It causeth the flowing of humours to the lower partes. So often times heate going about in the head dissoluing the humours in the braine, ingendreth distillation. Moreouer all things that replete the head without measure, do cause flowing of humours into the inferiour parts. Also wine immoderatly drunke, and hote bathes, rawe meate remaining in the stomacke, and vaporous things in the head. The signes if the fluxe of humours come of heate are these; the head is hote, and a sharpe and thinne humour distilleth as well by the nose, as by the mouth: also the face and the nose is redde, and for the most part there followeth a feuer. Contrariwise, they that haue the fluxe caused of cold, their head and their forehead is stretched foorth euery where, the passages which be in the bones called *Ethmoidea*, are shut vp, so that the voyce cannot passe downward by the nosethrils. Also a flegmaticke and thicke humour distilleth out of the nose. Let them eschue aire that is verie hote or verie cold, especially from a bath, and from South, and North windes, and all things that can bind or dissolue humours in the braine. Let him vse meates of good iuyce, easie to be digested. Let him eschue those things that send plentie of vapours to the braine, as be onions, garlicke, mustard seed, radish & very hot odoraments. Moreouer they which

Distillatio. Grauedo. Raucedo. Causa.

Colde. Heat.

Repletion of the head.

Signa.

Calor.

Vitium ratio

which haue the distillation must eate lesse at supper then at dinner: let their drinke be *aqua mulsa*, or decoction of Cinamon or barley: let them eschue sleeping in the day, and lying vpright in the night. For the cure when the head is vexed with a hote distempure, you must vse those remedies, which are good for paine in the head ingendred of such a cause. The most present remedy of the head is to sprinckle and poure vppon the head plenty of hote water: that is able to driue out the hote vapours ingendred in the head. Moreouer such must take comfort of warme bathes of sweete water. They which haue their head vehemently hote and burning, and for that are troubled with continuall distillation, it is best for them, in sommer to be annointed with oile of roses. If a cold distempure vexe the head, it must be annointed with hote and thinne oiles, as oiles of Ireos, rewe, and such like. Oile of Ireos is not onely vsed, as an ointment, but dropped into the nose. Also other things may be applied, which are spoken of in the chapter against paine of the head caused of cold. If a hote humour distill from the head together with a feuer, and if there be fulnes of the body, you must let bloud out of the *Cephalica* veine. But if any iust cause be against it, wash the belly with a clister, that it may drawe the humours that doe abound in the head, downward: or minister a medicine purging choler, as is *pilulæ aureæ alephanginæ*, *aZarum* and such like. Also you must turne the humors from the head, by frictions, ligatures, and fastning of cupping glasses to the shoulders. Minister within the body things that haue vertue to alter and quench the burning heat of choler, as is sirupe of violets, *nymphææ*, of *poppy* and there conserues. Also *Embroche* and odoraments rehearsed before in the chap. of headach may be applied. Also a plaister of *terra lemnia* or bole armoniacke, and iuyce of plantaine, made and laid vpon the head being shauen is good. If it be a cold humor which distilleth, you shall empty with those things which purge fleume. For which purpose a strong clister is good: which being done, you must draw and turne away the humour from the head. Then when the humors be digested, purge the head with *Masticatories*. gargarismes, and such like. Moreouer apply to the head *Sacculi* made thus. ℞. flours of cammomill, melilot, betony, origan. ana. *M.* ß. cinamon, cloues. ana. ℥. j. maces. ℥. j. ß. nutmegges. ℥. ij. *gallæ moschatæ*. ℥. j. powder them all, and put them in silke, and make a Sacculus, and lay it to the crowne of the head. It is verie good also to annoint the head with hote oyles, as are the oyles of Ireos, dill, and rewe. All things doe stop distillation, which haue vertue to drie, especially *nigella* parched, and comin burnt or parched put into a linnen cloth, and knit, is a present remedy, if the patient do smell to it. For the same purpose it is good to minister suffuments, as is this: ℞. frankensence, masticke. ana. ℥. j. wood of Aloes. ℈. j. ß. Cinamon, cloues. ana. ℈ ij. *Gallæ moschatæ*. ℥. j. ß. laurell leaues, yellow saunders, ana. ℥. j. muske, amber, ana. g. j. being brayed, commixe them with *storax liquida*, as much as sufficeth, and make trochiskes: whereof put one vppon coles. ℞. sage, marioram, rosemary, ana. ℥. j. maces, cloues, cinamon. ana. ℈. ij. wood of aloes. ℈. j. frankensence, ℥. j. ß. beate them all, and commixe them, and make a grosse powder to strew vpon the coles. As for hoarsenesse, it is cured almost with the same medicins, that the cough is.

Curatio.

Venæ sectio.

Humor frigidus.

Sacculi.

To stop distillation.

Trokiskes of perfume.

CHAP. XLVI.

Of paine in the teeth

DE DENTIVM DOLORE

Toothach (as Galen saith) amongst other paines that are not mortall, is the most cruell and grieuous of them all. It is causèd somtime of hot or colde distemper. Also many times through flowing of humours out of the head vnto the roots of the teeth, which with their sharpnesse either do gnaw about them, or else with their abundance they engender like griefe in the teeth, as if inflammation were about the fleshie parts. Paine in the teeth is somtime without inflammation of the gums, sometime in the sinew wherein the roots be planted. If the paine come through distemper of the bare quality, it will not be grieuous. Hot distemper is knowen by the temper of the whole bodie, because that likewise is hot. Also the face is red, & the diet vsed before was hot. Cold is knowne by the contrarie iudgements. If the paine be causèd of flowing of some humor abundantly, then grieuous paine is not onely felt in the teeth, but also in other parts which it passeth by. A hot humour engendreth vehement paine: a cold humour more meeker. Let the diet be such as may defend that the paine come not and let it be such as is not very hot nor cold. Also eschue all sharpe, sower, and viscous things. Also often vsing of milke doth maruellously hurt the teeth: labor diligently to purifie the teeth. The meats must be good of iuice, and easie to digest. For the cure, if it come of cold, it is good to wash the teeth with warm wine. Let the cheeks be annointed outward with warme oiles, of cammomill, rewe, ireos, and such like. Also to wash the mouth, seeth in vineger, origan, calamint, hyssop, peniroyall, sauory, the root of veruaine and such like. If the teeth do ake through heat, you must seeth in vineger, purslaine, pellitorie, singreene the lesse, and licorice. But if the heat be intollerable, you must vse the seeds of lettuse, endiue, and poppy sodden in vineger. Without you must annoint against the griefe with cold oiles, as of roses, water lillies, & such like. Moreouer if the paine be causèd through flowing of humours, if age, time of the yere, and other things will suffer it, and if the bodie also be full of blood, it is good to cut the *Cephalica* veine or *media* on the same side that the griefe is. That done cut the veine vnder the tong, or fasten cupping glasses to the shoulders. If one only corrupt humor doth abound, then vse conuenient medicines to purge that humour. For the same purpose clisters are very good. The whole bodie being emptied, you must minister those medicines that do represse and stop, as iuice of plantaine, roses, purslaine, both the endiues: either take the decoction of the aforesaid things, or their waters distilled and mixed with a litle vineger. It is onely good to wash the aking with hot sharp vineger, with vnripe gals: or this, ℞. the root of henbane. ℥.j. pellitorie. ℥.ß. staue sacre. ℥.ij. galingale. ℥.ß. Camphore. ℈.ij. alume ℥.j. honie ℥ij. let all be bruséd, and boile all in vineger. ℔.j. rose water. ℥.vj. wash the teeth with this ech morning, and it will preserue the teeth, and keepe them from paine. But if it come of extreme cold, then vse specially this medicine: ℞. pepper, pellitory, melilot. ana. ℥.j. staue sacre. ℥.ß. bruse them and put the powder into a linnen cloth, and lay it on the aking teeth, and keepe it there a quarter of an houre, and it will cease the paine. Also (as is said before) to wash the teeth with warme wine, is verie good.

Cause.

Signe.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

If it come of heat.

If of flowing of humours.

℞

If it come of cold.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLVII.

Of teeth that be blacke and loose.

De Dentibvs Denigratis, Liventibvsqve Et Mollibvs.

SOmetime the teeth be swart and blacke throughout their substance, not vnlike a certaine inflammation of the patients. Through flowing of vicious humours the teeth be loose, sometime through a stripe or fall, sometime through flowing of moistnes, which looseth the sinewes and ligaments, and maketh the teeth loose, or else gnawing and weakenesse of the gummes in the which the teeth are set, causeth them to be lose. The cure of vicious humours must be begunne with purging. Afterward, if the teeth be smart or rustie, you must deuide the corrupt humours which flow to the teeth, with drying medicines, as is, *licium*, frankensence, mints, gals, masticke, mirrhe, *nigella*, and such like. Among many other this is very good: ℞. *nigella*, mirrhe, frankensence, ana. ℥ j. masticke, white pepper ana. ℈ ij. *pistolochiæ*. ℈ j. roch alume. ℥ j. beat them into powder, and rub the teeth therwith: or commixe them with Venice Turpentine and annoint them therewith. The corrupt humours being consumed, vse dentrifices which haue vertue to scoure and drie, as is this. ℞. *nitrum* roch alume, harts horne burnt ana. ℥ j. mirrhe. ℈ j. the roote of Ireos *illiricæ*, frankensence, dry mintes, ana. ℥ j. ß. common salt burnt, *pistolochiæ*. ana ℥ j. pumish, *testarum sepiæ*. ana. ℥ j. ß. pepper, pellitory, dry peniroyall. ana. ℥ ß. beat them, and searce them all, and with this powder rub the teeth dayly. For teeth that be loose you may apply such medicins, as restraine and strengthen loose gummes, and fasten them. Therefore for collutions of the mouth the decoctions of restrictiue things do profit, as is this. ℞. red roses, mintes, plantaine. ana. *M*. ß. the barkes of Cipresse nuttes. ℥ j. seeds of mirtels, sumache. ana. ℥ ß. pomgarnet rindes, gals. ana. ℥ ij. *acatia*. ℈ ij. seeth them all in red restrictiue wine, and with that often wash the mouth. The mouth being washed, it is lawfull to vse this *dentrificium*. ℞. gals, the rindes of sweete pomgarnets. ana. ℥ j. *balaustium*, sumache, mirrhe. ana. ℈ j. redde roses, *sanguis draconis*, *calyculorum glandium*. ana ℥ j. frankencense, harts horne burnt. ana. ℥ j. ß. powder all, and searce them, and rubbe the teeth therewith: or this is maruellous good. ℞. *Balaustium*, nutmegges. ana. ℥ iij. roch alume. ℥ j. ß. powder them, and mixe them with hony. ℥ ij. ß. and incorporate them well together: and with this annoint the teeth twise or thrice in the day.

Causæ.

Curatio.

Dentrificium optimum.

Looſe teeth.

Collutio oris.

Dentrificium.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Of Vlcers in the mouth.

De Aphthis.

THe vlcers which are bredde in the vppermost part of the mouth, and haue a certaine burning heat, in Greeke are called *Aphthæ*, and of the barbarous sort *Acola*: some be whitish, and some reddish, and some blackish, and these be most perillous of all other. They ingender for the most part in infants and sucking children, when either the nurses milke is naught, or the childe cannot well digest it. Also they chance sometime to them that be of perfect age

Aphthæ.

aſwell through great fluxe of vicious and corrupt humors to the mouth, as alſo through ſharpneſſe of thoſe things that are eaten and drunke. The tokens are eaſie, becauſe they be knowen by ſight and feeling: if you touch it, the places will ſeeme hotter then they ought to be, and there is ſwelling. They which be red, do ſhew bloud to haue the maiſtery. Yealowneſſe ſignifieth bitter choler: whiteneſſe, fleume: blackneſſe, melancholy. They which chance to children may eaſily be cured by thoſe things that do meanely reſtraine. And you muſt giue them chiefly in their meates, ſome quinces, and other ſharp things, pears, and meſpilers. vidz. medlers or open arſes. Sometime alſo you muſt cõmixe with their meate ſome lettuce, endiue and purſlaine. If there be inflammation of the vlcers, then take the iuice of purſlaine, lettuce and nightſhade, the powder of alume, and waſh the mouth with a fine cloth, or with a ſering; and if the childe can take no meate, then the nurſe muſt vſe the ſame kinde of diet. Alſo the decoction of galles, *balauſtium*, ſanders, ſumach, *acacia*, & ſuch like, commixed with *Robderibes* or *Diamoron* applied as before is taught. In them that be of perfect age only the nature of the body is to be conſidered, whether it be ſoft or moiſt, or hard, or dry. For in hard and ſtrong bodies you muſt miniſter ſtrong medicins. In weake and ſoft bodies, gentle medicins. For the diet therefore in ſuch ages, they muſt eſchue all things that be ſharpe and ſalt, and that ingender corrupt iuice. For the cure in fulnes of the body, if nothing do let it, firſt cut the *Cephalica* veine, and then thoſe veines vnder the tong. If the body be full of ill iuice, you muſt miniſter a purgation againſt the corrupt humors. The body being purged, apply medicins which haue vertue to reſtraine & ſtop. Moderat remedies againſt vlcers be theſe; *ſumach*, roſes, *Balauſtiũ* diſſolued in wine or *mulſa*. But if the exulcerations begin to putrefie, this decoction is very profitable. ℞. fellerd leaues of ſage, hiſope, rew, peniroyall, cammomil, woodbinde, knotgraſſe, *burſa paſtoris*, brier leaues. ana. *M*. ß. waſh them cleane, and boile them all in ij. ℔. ß. of good ale or beere, and put therein three or foure ſpoonefull of hony, alume. ℥. ij. let it ſeeth to the conſumption of halfe, then ſtraine it, and waſh the mouth therewith foure or fiue times in a day. But if the vlcers be more running and gnawing, annoint the place with *vnguentum Ægyptiacum*, mixt with *mel roſarum* or ſuch like.

Signa.

Curatio infantium.

Cure of them that be of perfect age.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

CHAP. XLIX.
Of a ſtinking mouth.

De Fœtore Oris.

Cauſe.

THere is a grieuous and ſtinking ſauour of the mouth cauſed for the moſt part through putrefaction of the gummes or teeth, or through meat ſticking ſtill in the teeth. Many times it commeth through hote diſtempure of the ſkinne of the mouth: ſometime alſo through corrupt and rotten humors ſticking in the mouth of the ſtomacke. It chanceth alſo many times that exulceration of the mouth or lungs, doth hurt the breath of the mouth or lungs. If ſtinking of the mouth chaunce through putrefaction either of the gummes, or teeth, or of meate ſticking in the teeth: it is ſoone knowen either by ſight, or by the patients tale. If it be cauſed of a hote diſtempure of the mouth, then heate

Signa.

is felt in the mouth, and thirſt troubleth him. If through vice of the ſtomack, then the breath of the mouth is more grieuous and ſtinking before meat then after meate. Vlcerations of the lungs are knowen by extenuation of the body, and by coughing. In the diet the patient muſt auoid all things that do readily engender corruption in the mouth or ſtomack, as is, milk, fiſh, almoſt all fruits, marrow, fat, naughty water, and ſuch like. Let the meats therefore which they vſe be of good iuice, and eaſie to digeſt: but they muſt vſe meates rather roſt then ſodden. In the end of dinner and ſupper they may eate peares, quinces, and ſuch like, eſpecially, if the ſtinking ſauour come from the mouth of the ſtomacke. Let them eſchew ſleeping by and by after meate. If ſtincke of the mouth come through corruption of the gums or teeth, if there be fulneſſe of the body, firſt draw bloud out of the *Cephalica* veine, and then faſten cupping glaſſes to the necke, but if the body be full of euill iuice, purge the humor that doth abound with a conuenient medicine. The body being purged, vſe outward medicines, ſpecially collutions and waſhings, which in this caſe ſeeme to be maruellous good, as this is: ℞. redde roſes, plantain, knotgraſſe. ana. *M.* j. ß. gals, pomegarnet floures, cipreſſe nuttes. ana. ℥ ij. rindes of pomegarnets. ℥. ß. roch alume, ℥. j. ſeeth theſe in iuſt quantity of water vnto the third part, and in the iuice of the decoction being ſtrained, commixe *mel roſarum*, *diacarion*. ana. ℥. ß. *diamoron*. ℥. iij. commixe them al and make a collution, with the which waſh the gums and the teeth euery morning and euening. Alſo often waſhing with water mixed with vineger in the morning and by and by after meate, is good. If the ſtincke in the mouth be without exulceration, , miniſter the root of *ireos* ſteeped in old odoriferous wine, and waſh the teeth often withall. Alſo it is good to hold it in the mouth. Alſo mirrhe ſteepd in pure wine miniſter to waſh the teeth. Alſo it is very good to chew pellitory, *Tamariſcus* and rew. Likewiſe collution of vineger ſquilliticke, or decoction of ſage, or only wine. Alſo decoction of mintes in vineger and water helpeth, if the mouth be often waſhed with it. This cauſeth ſweete breath, and maketh the teeth white. ℞. white ſalt, pumiſes, origan. ana. ℥. ij. roote of *Ireos*. ℥. j. floures of ſquinance. ℥. ß. beate them all, and commixe them, and rub the teeth therewith. If ſtincke of the mouth come of a hot diſtépure cure it with contrary medicines. But if it come of a corrupt humor in the mouth of the ſtomacke, it is healed by thoſe things which doe purge that humor. Thoſe things which be contained in the mouth of the ſtomacke may well be brought out by a vomit. How you ſhall prouoke vomite, it is declared in many places before. After this, miniſter medicines which do ſtrengthen the ſtomacke, as is, *Aromaticum roſaceum*, *Diamber*, *hydromalum*, and ſuch like medicines, which be good in all cauſes, as be cloues, Maſticke, Mace, wood of *Aloes*, Cinamon, roſes, all the Sanders, Nutmegges, *Quibibes*, *Ireos*, and other of the like ſort.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Collutio oris.

For ſweete breath.

Vomitus.

Theſe ſuffice. And how many euils ſo euer there be of the head, whoſe cure is not expreſly named by me in this booke, yet you may find out medicines to cure them by that which is declared in this booke.

The second Booke.

CHAP. I.

Against the inflammation of the Columella.

DE COLVMELLAE INFLAMMATIONE.

THere chanceth in the throate many dangerous inflammatiõs (as *Hippocrates* writeth in his *Prognosticis*) and first of this *Columella* appeareth a certaine fleshie peece, hanging in the vpper part of the mouth. If one doe gape wide, and hold downe his tongue, it may be seene. In old time it was called *Gargulio*, now it is called *Columella*. It is often vexed with inflammations, which is causèd through bloud, and other humours which descend out of the head. The disease may be knowne by sight: and there chanceth in it difficultie in swallowing, paine, swelling, redneſſe of the *Columella*, and a feauer. The diet in a maner, must be such as is ordained in other inflammations, and specially, quietneſſe, rest, silence, and hunger, are good, and to eate litle or nothing at supper. For the cure, if there be fulneſſe of the bodie, you must beginne with bloudletting, and first you must cut the *Cephalica* veine in the arme, and afterward the veine vnder the tongue. Also the belly must be purged by clisters, so that by that meanes, not onely the belly may be soluble, but also that the flowing of humours to the griefe, may be taken away. Also for the same purpose you may fasten cupping glasses to the shoulders, neither must we let passe the remedies which are good to repteſſe and stop fluxe of humours. For as they do in all other diseases caused of the fluxe of humors, so in this behalf, for their first remedie, they stop the fluxe of humours. Therefore such remedies must be of a restrictiue nature and facultie. If that the fluxe of humours be moderate, minister things which restraine moderately, as these be which be called soure. But if it be more vehement, adde to it sharpe things, for both be restrictiue; but soure be weake, and sharpe things strong, as *Galen* doth say in his fourth booke of the vertues of simple medicins, cap. 6. and 7. Therfore vse collutions made of those things, as if they should be moderate, seeth dates sometime in water alone, and sometime with a litle honie put to them. Likewise make decoctions of roses, vine buddes, brambles, cipresse, the first buddes of pomgranate floures, *siligna*, rootes of mulberie, soure apples, and *sorbus*. Those be stronger then these, which be made of the decoction of mirtles, and their berries. Also of sharpe quinces, and young buds of oake, or the mast of oake: also of medlers, & a frute called *Cornus*. The best collutions are made of galles, *sumach*, *acatia*, and the floures of both the pomgranats, and their shels. Among compound

Gurgulio.

Signa.
Victus ratio.

Curatio.
Venæ sectio.

Cucurbitulæ.

compound medicines this doth helpe wonderfully, ℞. the distilled waters of roses, plantaine, sorrell, *prunella*, *solani*, ana. ℥.ij. *Diamoron*, *succi medicati eribes*, ana ℥.ß. *succi medicati ex extocharta*. ℥.ij. ß. vineger, wherein *sumach* is steeped. ℥.j. iuyce of pomgranates. ℥.ß. commix them together, & with it wash the mouth. Another of the same vertue ℞. red roses, brambles, ana. M.j. pomgranat flours and the shels, gals, mast of oake. ana ℥.iij. *sumach*, *hipocisthidis*, *acatia*, ana. ℥.ij. seeds of sorrell, & quinces. ana. ℥.j. seeth them in ℔.j. of well water, vntill halfe remaine; the decoction being strained, put to it of *Diamoron*. ℥.j. *succi medicati eribes*, *diacarion*, ana. ℥.ij.ß. vineger. ℥.vj. commixe them all, and make a gargarisme. You must vse these medicines in the beginning of the disease, & especially when the griefe hath not the greatest cause: nor when the bodie of the sicke is much stopped with humours, nor when the aggrieued place is weake through the nature of the impostume. But if it chance so (as it doth often in the beginning, and often somewhat after) that is, the third day, you must commixe some of the discussiue medicines, as is, lineseed, fenugreeke, mallowes, roote of *ireos* and honie. Moreouer, of what sort soeuer the medicines be, minister them warme: for those that labour of inflammation, may suffer no cold. After the vigor of it, you may safely minister discussiues, vnlesse the *Columella* begin to waxe hard: for then you must minister mollifying medicines: that is, lineseed, fenugreeke, mallowes, *althea tragacanthum*, and such like: of the which you may make gargarismes. After that vse discussiues, as is, hisope, figs, licorice decoct together. If it draw toward rotting, which may be perceiued by his colour, & doth not breake alone by collusions of *Mulsa* and *Oximel scillitticum*, then open it with some instrument. After the breaking, and bursting out of the matter, let him vse medicines cleansing, absterssiue, and glutinatiue, especially the iuyce of enpatorie, and such like.

Gargarismus.

Alia.

CHAP. II.

Of a loose Columella.

De Laxata Colvmella.

OFtentimes it chanceth that a loose *Columella* doth hang vpon the rootes of the tongue and iawes. Of some it is called the *Vuula*. Wherefore in the beginning you must vse such kind of cure as the inflammation thereof requireth. In the beginning the body and the head must be purged by medicins spoken of in the former Chapter. Which being done, you must make collusions and gargarismes of such things as do restraine and drie: after this sort; ℞. red roses, sorrell, enpatorie ana. M.j *gallacum*. ℥.ij alume. ℥.j. mirrhe, frankensense, ana. ℥.ß. flax seed. ℥.ß. seeth them in water to the third part, and adde to the iuyce of that decoction strained of good hony. ℥.ß & make a gargarisme. Also pouders do profit, being blowen in with an instrumẽt for the purpose: as this is, ℞. dry roses, galles, roch alume, ana. ℥.j.ß. pepper, ginger, ana. ℥.ß mirrhe ℥.j. powder it, & fearce it, and put it vp as before. Also, take green nuts, & dry them, and date stones burned sufficiently: take of each of them equall portions, powder them, & vse them as the other. Also vnripe galles, bolearmoniacke, ana. ℥.j. do likewise. If the *Columella* must needs be cut, it is good to empty the belly first, lest the sick be strangled. Whẽ the *Columella* is cut out, bow his head downward, lest the bloud run inward. And afterward wash his mouth with the decoction

Gargarismus.

of sumach, *acatia*, galles, putting to it rosewater and vineger. Afterward minister things to heale it vp.

CHAP. III.

Of inflammation of the tonsilles.

DE TONSILLARVM INFLAMMATIONE.

TONSILLÆ be inflammations of those things which lie betweene the mouth and the throte; some do call them *Amigdalæ* (that is) Almondes.

Causæ. Those tonsils oftentimes be inflamed: for their places be hot and moist. They are most vexed with this euill, which haue aboundance of bloud: and children and infants which do sucke, through drawing of the milke. Also it chanceth often to men and women through drinking of strong wines, and through much greedy deuouring of meate, specially if they be eager and sharpe. They that

Signa. be so afflicted haue difficulty in swallowing, and paine, and also sometime a feuer. Therefore the inflammation beginning, you must take away meate, and

Victus ratio. minister to him water to drinke, or water wherein a litle Cinnamon hath bene sodden, specially if there be a feuer. Let the whole diet be so ordered, as it is in other inflammations. Let his meat be soupings, for otherwise he cannot swal-

Curatio. low it. For the cure, if the inflammation be light, you must vse gargarismes, restrictiues, such as be taken in the beginning of an inflamed *Columella*. But you must beware in the beginning, that you put no hony to the gargarismes, for it hath a sharpnesse in it. If that the inflammation be vehement, so that he be in

Venæsectio. perill of choking, you must cut the *Cephalica* vein in the arme on the same side. And if the belly be not soluble enough, cast in a clister. You must prouoke childrens bellies by putting in a suppositary, and by annointing the tuell. After purging you must vse restrictiue medicines, vntill the vigour of the disease be ceased something. All these things (as we admonished before) must be ministred warme. Outwardly it is best to nourishe it with sponges, laid gently to it. Also lay to it plaisters made of barly meale, seeds of flaxe, fenugreeke, and such like. The inflammation declining, and waxing lesse: it is good to put hony into your gargarismes, which in the beginning and increasing you may not do, lest the sharpnes which is in it doe increase fluxe. Also at this time hotter gargarismes do profite. Outwardly you must put about the necke, soft wooll dipped in oile, and if that by vsing of sharpe collutions, or gargarismes, the inflammations be increased, and biting and gnawing come thereby: you must vse gentler, as is iuice of ptisan: Also gargarise warme milke. When the inflammation and paine ceaseth, annoint with the aforesaid remedies of the mouth, putting it in with your finger: so that by gentle annointing, the partes of the tonsilles which are swelled, may be thrusted, wherby they may put out the matter contained in them. But yet you may not thrust hard, as many vse to doe, whereby they cause the inflammation to be augmented. And therfore if by that means any hurt do chance, we must be content with ministring gentle gargarismes

Signes of suppuration. without any annointing. If that by ministring the remedies aforesaid, the grief be not eased, then looke for rotting of it, which you may know by increasing of the inflammation, and by sharpe exulcerations, exacerbations, and gnawings in the euening when you look for suppuration and rotting: you must help

that

helpe that it may quickely come to paſſe: therefore then you muſt miniſter hotter gargariſmes, as is *aqua mulſa*, and decoction of figges, hyſope and ſeed of *Althæa*. Outwardly lay plaiſters of barley meale and fenugreeke, with decoction of figges, *Althæa* and hony. When it is perfectly rotten, the paine will diminiſh, and the ſwelling and inflammation will be made ſofter, ſo that it will giue place to the finger. Then you muſt miniſter ſharpe collutions, that they may breake the botch. In meates he muſt take great gobbettes of bread ſteeped in water, and likewiſe his meate muſt be eaten by lumps: for vehement rouling of it vp and downe about the tonſils will breake the botches, as well as if they were cut. But if the patient will not do it, then open it with ſome fine inſtrument for the purpoſe. And after it is broken, let the ſicke bow his head downeward, that the matter may the better runne out. And let him gargariſe *aqua mulſa* alone, and afterward commixe with it decoction of lintils and roſes. And with theſe you muſt tarrie, vntill it be healed.

CHAP. IIII.

Of malignant Vlcers of the tonſilles.

DE SERPENTIBVS ET MALIGNIS TONSILLARVM VLCERIBVS.

THERE beginne malignant vlcers of the tonſils, ſometime with a fluxe of them going before: ſometime they are cauſed of an accuſtomed inflammation being augmented. They chance often to children, and alſo to them of perfect age, eſpecially to thoſe which do abound with vitious humours. They chance to children after the *Aphthæ* in the mouth. In colour they be like vnto ſcurfes, which are burnt with iron. Alſo there chanceth to the ſicke drineſſe in ſwallowing, and often choking, eſpecially when redneſſe is vnder the chin. If gnawing and ſharpneſſe of humours hath gone before, there followeth putrefaction. You muſt proceed in the cure ſpeedily, and if he be of perfect age, and no other thing forbidding it, it is good to cut the *Cephalica* veine in the arme, or if that appeare not, the middle veine. If they be maydes, whom, at perfect age, for lacke of purgation of menſtruis, this diſeaſe doth often infect: then in them you muſt cut the *Saphena* veine, letting blood but once onely, and yet at that time, not till the hart faile, leaſt after it, vertue be deſtroyed by ouermuch flux of menſtruis. Furthermore the belly muſt be emptied by cliſters, ſuppoſitaries, and by annointing of the tuell. And you muſt labour by all meanes to turne the humour from the aggrieued place: for the which purpoſe faſten cupping glaſſes nigh to the loynes, and vſe to bind the extreamities as the hands and feet. Afterward it is good to vſe gargariſmes, declared before in the chapter of *Columella*, and in the chapter following. After the beginning of the ſicknes, miniſter *Diamoron*, or a collution mixed with *Mulſa*, then alſo decoction of Ireos, and other things rehearſed in the aboue ſaid places. We muſt take heed that we touch not the vlcerate tonſils with our finger, not ſo much as to touch it ſoftly. For the vnskilfull, to whom with great error men do ſeeke in doubtfull matters: they do annoy it vehemently, alſo they do thruſt the aggrieued place, and pull away the ſcab or roue, which they ought not to do, before they ſee the roue liſted vp, and ſcarce cleauing to the ſore. For if wee intend to pull

Cauſa.

Signa.

Curatio.

away the scabbe, whiles it sticketh fast, the vlceration will pierce more deepe, and inflammation will follow, and the paine will increase, and they will come to venemous vlcers. Therefore it is good to blowe in drie remedies, and to annoint liquid things with a feather. Dogs doung mixed with hony and annointed, taketh away the roues maruellously, which will be the better, if the dog be fedde only with bones two daies before. It helpeth greatly, neither hath it any vnsauorinesse being ministred in meats. Also the ashes of swallowes burnt, and the ashes of Centorie *minor* burnt, with hony mixed is good. After the irritations and chasings made by medicines, you must apease it with decoction of lyquorice, and with a gargarisme, which is made of masticke, mirrhe, *Tragacanthum amylum* & saffron, ministring also while the vlcer feedeth, milke mixed with *terra lemnia* to gargarise. What need many words? You must be diligent and carefull, specially in clensing and purging the vlcers. Many infantes do suffer the cramp in purging of the vlcers. Some be strangled because the way of swallowing is dried vp. It is good to apply outward foments, and emplaisters, with taking heede least he do coole it. For the cure will prosper, if the matter, that is holden within, can be drawne outward. Therefore alwayes after the taking of the plaisters away, couer the parts that be about the chinne, by laying vpon it soft wooll sprinkled with *oleum nardinum*. To conclude, when the skurfes are loosened, and the vlcers purged, vse this remedie following. ℞. floures of red roses. ℥.iij. saffron. ℥.j.ß. *Balaustiæ*. ℥.ß. mirrhe. ℈.j. pine nuttes made cleane. ℥.ij. *Amyli*. ℥ j.. Sumach, roch alume, ana. ℥.j.ß. beate them, commixe them with hony, and vse to annoint it three times on the day.

Gargarisme.

CHAP. V.

Of the Squinancie

De Angina.

Gen. 4.

1
2
3
4

Causæ.
Signa.

Curatio.
Vene humerorum sectio

Angina in latine, squinancie in english, but in greeke *Sinanchi*. It is properly an inflammation which is in the throate, or in the iawes. There be foure kinds of squinancies, one is, when the iawes be inflamed. (by the iawes I mean, the place where the ends of the wesand and the *trachæa arteria* do agree) Another is, when neither the iawes nor other parts of the mouth, nor yet the outward parts do seeme to be inflamed: yet the sicke feeleth perill of choking in the throate. The third is, when the partes about the throat be inflamed both outwardly and inwardly. The fourth is, when the ioynts betweene the bones of the head, and the necke be losened to the former part of the necke: wherby the place appeareth hollowe, and the sicke feeleth paine when it is touched without. The Squinancie is caused through aboundance of hote blood, flowing vnnaturally to the places before rehersed. It is knowen by these signes, the breath is drawen verie hardly, and not without the necke be holden right, and there is difficultie in swallowing. Also in some, a feuer, rednes of the face and necke. There chaunceth also in many, swelling: the sicke yaueth with open mouth & draweth breath. Therfore in the beginning euery squinance requireth a hastie and speedie remedie. Wherefore you must by and by cut the outward veine on the same side of the shoulders, except some greater perill do let it: but you must take awaye the blood by litle and litle, at many times, and not

not all at once, for the bloud being taken away altogether on heaps, the heart soone faileth, and so the perill of choking commeth vpon him. And moreouer also by the refrigeration & fainting of the heart, the matter is quickly caried from the iawes vnto the lungs, and so bringeth ineuitable perill. Take heed also that there be litle deduction of the veine, for thereof commeth much fayling of the mind, and yet it is not good to make a narrow incision of the veine, lest the bloud be, as it were strained, and the grosser part remaineth within still, which is the cause of this disease. It is profitable to them to haue the bloud drawn out again the next day, vnlesse the swelling of the disease let it, or faintnes of the heart. If the sicke be a woman, cut the veine on the anckles, specially if the menstruis be stopped, and the bloud must be drawne out moderatly. If by these he be but litle eased, then it is good to cut those veines which be vnder the tongue, and that by and by, at the first or the second day. And if there be any thing that forbiddeth bloudletting, the belly must be emptied with a sharp clister, such as is described in the chap. of *apoplexia*. After vniuersall euacuatiõs, you must fasten on cupping glasses: and if there be swelling about the cheekes, or vnder the chinne, it is good to fasten cupping glasses to the swelling, & with scarification to draw out much bloud. Also to strew salt vpon the scarifying, and to rub it. And if there appeare no swelling outward, you must fasten a cupping glasse behind in the neck, neere to the shutting of the first ioynt, and you must vse it with constant attraction, pulling away the glasse often. Also the humours must be turned away, lest they flow to the place which is aggrieued & inflamed. For the which purpose you must bath the feete with hote water. Also, bind and rub the hands and feete strongly. The necke must be couered with wooll that is moist, or that is dipped in warme oile, also by and by (at the beginning) you must vse gargarises, which don neither vehemently driue backe, nor yet onely discusse. For those which do altogether repell, and driue backe, they bring perill of choking by thrusting humors to the lungs. Those which be onely discussiue, they draw more then is meet, by reason of their heate. Therefore, when the beginning is with much inflammation, you must minister those things which do restraine gently, as is decoction of roses, lintels, and dates, or els restrictiue gargarismes, declared before in the chap. *de Columellæ inflãmatione*, cõmixing some discussiue medicins with it. Of that sort are roses, or sumach sodden with *aqua mulsa*, and decoction of Sebesten. When the disease is at his strength, and standeth: you must vse those things which haue discussiue vertue only in thẽ, as is decoction of fenugreek, figs, raisons, licorice, or strõger things as the root of ireos, hisope, *nigella*, sothernwood, with *oximell*. Therfore it shall be lawfull at this time to vse a gargarisme made thus. ℞. of licorice scraped, ℥.j. raisons ℥.ß. dry figs, in nũber 6. fenugreek. ℥.ij. hisope, sothernwood. ana. *M*.ß. seeth them in one pound of well water, till halfe be consumed: thẽ put into the licour of that decoction being strained, of *mel rosarum*. ℥.j.ß. *oximel simplex*. ℥.j. commixe them all, and make a gargarisme. Also dogs doong, such as is found amongst herbes, and is very white in colour, being beaten and finely searced and mixed with hony, is a most excellent medicine, being ministred like a *lohoch*, that they may swallow it very softly. Likewise the ashes of swallowes burnt, is very effectuall, being so mixed with hony. Moreouer to the necke

Venarum linguæ sectio.

Clister.

Comurbitulæ.

Auersio humorum.

℞

Gargarismus.

without, you must apply those plaisters in them which be vexed with inflam-
Cataplasmata. mation which can concoct & discusse, as this is, ℞. the meale of lineseed, fenugreeke, and barly. ana. ℥. j. seedes of *althæa*, ℥ iij. mallowes, floures of cammomil and melilot, ana. M. j. leeth them in water vntill they waxe soft, then stampe them in a morter, and make a soft plaister, or put to it oiles of cammomil, and lillies. ana. ℥. j. ß. and being boyled againe, make an emplaister. Neither shall it be vnprofitable, if the necke be annointed with oiles of cammomill, dill, and lillies, or fomented with decoction of fenugreeke, melilot, and cammomill. They which are vexed with the squinancie, let them vse three dayes *aqua mulsa* for their drinke. Afterward iuyce of ptisan by it selfe or with some sweete po-
Potus. tion, for that iuyce hath vertue to extenuate, discusse, nourish, and to coole. When the inflammation is somewhat slaked, and the sicke beginneth to swallow better: giue to him the yolkes of rere egges, and suppings made of *Alica*.
Cibus. To conclude, the eating of the sicke and his meates, must be according to his strength: therefore he must eschue ouermuch feeding. Sleepe must especially be eschued, as well in the squinancie as in all other inflammations. For in sleep (as Hippocrates saith) the bloud creepeth within, and the flowing of humours to the grieued place, doth increase more.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Cough.

De Tvssi.

THere be diuerse causes of the Cough. For as Galen saith *lib.* 1. *ca.* 2. *de simpto. causis*, Cold distemper of the instruments of breathing causeth the cough.
Cause. Also a humour distilling from the head to the *Trachæa arteria*, and sharpnesse
1 onely of the vpper skinne of *trachæa arteria* going about within, doth prouoke
2 the cough. Also wormes troubling the stomake, & raising vp some qualtie, send-
3 ing it to the iawes, doth cause the cough. Moreouer, a humour contained in
4 the lungs & the breast, is the cause of inflammation in the lungs, disease in the
5 sides, consumption and the cough. Those which be outward signes, and may
6 cause the cough, be smoke, dust, and whatsoeuer doth exasperat the *trachæa arteria*.
Signa. The signes of coughing caused onely through cold distemper of the instruments of respiration & breathing are, that those which be so afflicted, they spit out nothing while they cough, nor the cough is not violent nor constraining: but it is so small, that not only it may be suppressed by holding the breath, but also vnlesse it be very great, it may be healed, because through stopping of the breath, the parts vexed with cold, do wax hote. Moreouer they which are vexed with this kind of cough, they are more prouoked to it by often fetching of their breath, because the cold thereby is increased, & made more stronger. Therefore if they breath and fetch their wind easily, and be also in a warme house, they cough litle or nothing at all. They be pale of face, and not thirsty: they are grieued with cold things, and are best with hote things. The coughes which chance with tickling of the partes on either side of the palate, they do openly shew a flowing humour, comming from the head to *trachæa arteria*: and to the lungs which you may well know by difficultie of breathing that followeth. And if that they which be thus afflicted do spit out nothing, it declareth it

to be a thinne reume, which being cut off by expulsion of breath, it is caried no further by reason of his thinnes, but the flowing of it returneth again. The diet is diuerse, according to the diuersitie of causes: for if the cough be caused of cold distempure, occupying the instruments of breathing: you must eschue ayre, wind, and also cold meate and drinke: but if the cough be caused through humours distilling from the head, let the diet be such as is described before in the Chapter of distillation. But vniuersally they which haue the couph, must eschue salt things, sharpe things, and whatsoeuer would exasperate the *trachea arteria*. The cough that is caused through cold of the instruments of breathing, shall be cured by the remedies that can make them hote. Therefore let the necke be wrapped about with warme woll, and let him breath seldome, because that stopping of the breath (as is said before) doth not onely let the cough, but also oftentimes it healeth it. Therefore it is good to haue the sicke conuersant in a hot house, and let him breath very softly. Also let the breast be fomented with hot oyntments, as is oyles of *ireos*, lillies & dill. If a humor that is thin and sharpe, flowing out of the head to the *trachea arteria*, and the breast, do cause a cough, then it shalbe healed specially by meats of good iuyce, & by medicins which do coole, thicken, temper & stop sharpnes and mordacity. For which purpose it is good to minister sirupes of violets, of *Nimphæa*, of poppie, the antidote *Diatragacantha, diapenidion sine speciebus, pilulæ bechicæ*, and such like. Among all other this loch is excellent good. ℞. *Diatragacantha, diapenidion sine speciebus*. ana. ʒ.vj. iuice of licorice. ʒ.ij. *pilulæ bechicæ*. ʒ.j. *storax* calamint. ʒ.ß. mirrhe, drie roses. ana. ʒ.j. *tragacanthæ*, pine nuts. ana. ʒ.ß. sirupe of violets, as much as shall suffise to commixe them, and make an *Ecligma*. Also for that purpose it is good to minister those medicines which are spoken of before in the chap. of distillations. But if a grieuous & viscous humour be cause of the cough, we shall cure it by those things which do deuide & extenuate. Therefore then we must minister to the sicke syrupes of licorice, hisope, horehound, calamint, & such like, or else this decoctiõ, ℞. roots of *ireos*, percely, licorice. ana. ʒ.j. roots of *Ella campana*. ʒ.ß. drie figges in numher vij. of raisins the stones picked out, ʒ.j. seeds of nettle, anise and fennell. ana. ʒ.ij. hysope, maidenhaire, scabios, of iust quantitie, til the third part be consumed: then straine it, and to the iuice of that decoction put sirupe of hisope and horehound. ana. ʒ.ij.ß. and make a potion. Afterward if it seeme conuenient by the state of the patient, you must emptie the bodie with those medicines which do purge grosse and clammie humors. And among other spoken of in the first booke, the infusion of agarick is very good, which is made after this fort, ℞. of elect agarick. ʒ.ij. ginger. ϑ.j. salt gemme ʒ.iij. beate them, and infuse them one night in ʒ.ij. of odoriferous white wine, water of wormewood and fennell. ana. ʒ.j. In the morning straine it, and wring it, & put to it *Electuarium indi maioris*. ʒ.ij.ß. *Oximel scilliticum*. ʒ.ß. & make a potion. The bodie being purged, let him haue a loch sometime commixed with other antidotes, after this sort, ℞. *Loch è pino, loch sani & experti, Loch è scilla*. ana. ʒ.iij. *Diaireos Salomonis*. ʒ.j. powder of *Diapenidion cũ speciebus*. ʒ.j. powder of the rootes of *Enula* and *ireos*. ana. ʒ.ij.ß. iuyce of licorice. ʒ.j.ß. sirupe of horehound, as much as shall suffise to commixe them. Moreouer the breast

Victus ratio.

Cure of the cough caused of cold distempure.

Cure of the cough caused of thinne and sharpe humors.

Ecligma.

Cure of the cough caused of grosse and viscous humours.

Decoctio.

Purgatio.

Infusio agarici.

Ecligma.

must be annointed outwardly with hote oiles of lillies, *Ireos* & ſweet Almonds, putting to them greaſe and other things after this ſort. ℞. oiles of lillies and ſweete Almonds. ana. ℥. iij. of hens greaſe. ℥. j. ß. freſh butter. ℥. ij. the muſcelage of fenugreeke, and rootes of *Althæa*. ana. ℥. ß. *Storax*. ℥. ß. powder of the rootes of *Enula* and *Ireos*. ana. ℥. j. ſaffron. ℈. j. white waxe as much as is ſufficient, make an ointment. The reſidue that is requiſite for the cure of the cough, are to be ſought in the chapter of diſtillation.

Vnguentum.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Aſthma.

DE ASTHMATE.

Cauſæ.

THE *Aſthma* is cauſed whenas groſſe and clammy humors be gotten in abundantly into the griſtles or lappets of the lungs, or that there be ſome ſwelling in it, like vnto a botch. Alſo they do breath difficultly, whereby the *Trachea arteria* is repleat and filled with diſtillations. Theſe euils are eaſy to be knowen a ſunder. For diſtillation doth alſo chance in haile folke by and by through as manifeſt a cauſe in a manner altogether without a feauer, hauing the tokens of a diſtillation following it. If there be ſwelling of the lungs like a botch, there muſt needs follow a feauer, and ſo within few daies after, the inflammation being rotted: the matter of it is caſt out with the cough. If ther be a crude & raw tubercle & botch ingendred, ſuch do not feele any great griefe, nether are they much troubled with difficulty of breathing: but they are much troubled when they eate or drink, becauſe they cannot ſwallow but with much griefe. Thoſe which be properly aſthmatickes, or orthopnickes, they haue no feauer at all, and there chaunceth to them heauines of ſenſe, and they do not ſpit out matter with their ſpittle. Let their diet be altogether hote and dry, therefore he muſt eſchew aire colde and moiſt. He muſt eate the fleſh of partriches, birdes of the mountaines, hennes, capons, and ſuch like. He muſt eſchew, fiſhes, fruite, pulſe, and all other things that can ingender groſſe and clammy humours. Let him vſe often hyſope, percely, and fennell. Vniuerſally let him drinke a ſmall quantity at once which hath a botch riſen, but much drinke muſt be vſed of thoſe, whoſe griſtles and flappes of the lungs are ſtopped with groſſe and clammy humours, which are not eaſie to be caſt out with the ſpittle becauſe of their thicknes, & therfore they haue need of much moiſtning, that it may come out the eaſilier. He muſt vſe exerciſe before meat, but not ſodainly by and by, becauſe many by theſe meanes are dead. Frictions and rubbings of the breaſt do profite. Perturbations of the minde, eſpecially wrath and lamentation are to be eſchewed. But for the cure of the aforeſayd euils generally, you muſt labour that the abundance of that humour, which engendreth theſe euils, may be aboliſhed and conſumed. But before the cure of the euils particularly, if the euill be engendred of groſſe and clammy humours, you muſt cure it by extenuating and clenſing medicines. If it come of ſwelling like a botch, you muſt cure it by extenuating and drying medicins. Againſt groſſe and viſcous humours, thoſe medicines be good, which do extenuate and ſcoure without heat vehement; for groſſe and viſcous humours do waxe more tough & clammy as wel with vehement heat as they do with cold,

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Note.

ſo

so that afterward they can scarce be deuided and pluckt away. Therfore *Oximell squilliticum* or *squilla* rosted and braied with hony is especially to be ministred vnto them. Also sirupes of liquorice, horehound, and hysope; Also the decoction rehersed in the last chapter before is good for purging. If necessity require, before al things cut the middle veine in the arme, or the inner veine and draw out so much blood as strength will suffer. But if the body be not full, (the humour being preparate to purging by the premisses) you must minister often stronger medicines, which may driue out the grosse & clammy humors. Therfore pilles of Agaricke, and *pilulæ cochiæ*, also *Diaturbith* with rewbarbe, *antidotum indi*, and *diaphenicon* are good for this purpose. Also minister the infusion of Agaricke described before in the last chapter. Also the belly must be washed with strong clisters. Also he must vomit now and then, by taking of radish and other things which prouoke vomite, of the which we haue spoken in the first booke of Melancholiousnes. But in the meane season while purgations be ministred, you must minister medicines which can dissolue and extenuate humours contained in the breast by litle & litle, and he must take *Aristolochia rotunda*, the rootes of *Enula* and ireos, nettle seed, hysope, *nigella*, calamint & such like, wherewith you may make decoctions or loches. For which purpose also those *Ecligmata*, which are rehersed in the chapter of the cough, are good. Also *Trochisci Beccij albi* be most excellēt. Outwardly you must lay to the brest, plaisters made of figges, barley meale, or rather meale of fitches, hauing rozin, hony, and waxe commixed with it. Also apply to the breast of Ireos, dill, rew, and such like, as is this: ℞. oiles of dill and rew. ana ℥ß. the grease of hennes and duckes. ana ℥. ij. the rootes of Ireos, *Enula*, and *Dracontij maioris*, ana ℥. j. seede of flaxe ℈. ij. Storax. ℥. iij. waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. But the breast must first of all be rubbed with a rough linnen cloth, that (the pores being opened and vnlocked) the strength of the medicine may more readily pierce to the bottome. Also you must vse those medicines which can exulcerate the skinne, and can drawe out matter and waterie humours as those be which are named *rubefacientia*. For this purpose the brest must be rubbed with nettels, braied or beaten. The places that are blistered are to be cured with warme oile. But in an inueterate euill, and where all medicines are ministred in vaine, we must flie to burning, as *AEtius* teacheth in *lib. 8 cap. 57.* how it should be done. For the cure of that which is like a botch, which hath need of medicines to attenuate and drie, (as is sayed before) you must note that it is cured with Aromaticke things, because they do extenuate, drie, and heat. Therfore then you must giue vnto the Asthmaticks specially Antidotes, compounded of these things, as is *Theriaca*, *Mithridatū*, *Antidotū e moscha dulce*, *Diamber*, *Aromaticum rosaceum*, *Diamargariton callidum*, and many such other like.

Clister.

Vnguentum.

Rubefacientia.

Cure of Abscessus.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the plurisie.

De Plevritide.

Plvrisie, to speake exquisitely & properly, is an inward inflammation of the vpper skinne, girding the ribbes and the sides. In Latine it is called *lateralis dolor*. Neither is it rashly added to speake exquisitely and properly:

for through many torments and through meats grosse and flegmaticke there doe engender humours that be colde, crude, grosse, and viscous in the bodie,

Causæ. which oftentimes do place themselues by & by in the void place of the breast, or in the lungs it selfe, and by reason of their multitude, they stretch out the vpper skin, girding the sides within, and cause paine: but of this we will speake nothing, because the cure of it doth differ litle from the cure of *asthma*, rehearsed in the last chap. The plurisie which is an inflammation of the vpper skin,

Signa. which girdeth the sides within, is caused of abundance of hot blood, flowing vnnatuarlly to the aforesayed vpper skinne within. The signes hereof are difficultie of breathing, the cough, a continuall feuer, vehement pricking paine, a hard pulse, and sharpe like a saw. And if his spittle is redde and bloodie, it signifieth blood to haue dominion: if it be yealow and subpale, choller hath the masterie: if it be white and froathie, fleume ruleth: if it be blackish, it betokeneth blacke choller to haue the masterie, or melancholie. The first two daies

Victus ratio. the sicke must be content with the iuyce of ptisan, for his meate. Afterward make him almond milke with the decoction of ptisan, or the crummes of fine bread mixed with the broth of a chicken or cocke, specially if the patient be weake. He must vniuersally eschewe all things that be sharpe and restrictiue. Let his drink be water wherein cinamon is sodden, and let the patient eschew cold water as a pernitious thing, because it maketh the spittle grosse & thicke. Also let him eschue wine altogether. Let him lie vpon the side that is grieued.

Curatio. Let him auoide wrath, sorrow, and other perturbations of the minde. In the beginning of the cure, the Phisition must diligently consider, whether the bodie of the sicke be grieued with abundance of humours or not: so that he must knowe at the first, whether the paine doth mitigate and dissolue with heating medicines, and when it doth not. For if the bodie be not full of humours, then in the beginning of the plurisie and inflammation the paine must be mitigated and discussed with fomentes and medicines that do heate. But if the bodie do abound with euill humors, or be full of blood, you may not beginne the cure with those things that do heat, for they moue fluxe of humors to the aggrieued place: for the place to the which things that doe heate are layed, draweth more to it then it sendeth out by vapours againe. Therefore

Venæsectio. then you must not vse hote fumentes which cannot dissolue the paine, but all the bodie must be emptied by blood letting, and you must cutte the inner veine of the arme, which they call the liuer veine, or the splene veine, on that arme which is right against the griefe on the same side. For blood letting on the same side, doth not onely drawe blood away from the aggrieued parte, but also it purgeth it quickely, which is greatly requisite in the pleurisie, and in other inward inflammations. After blood letting, if the wombe do not cast out the excrementes of it selfe, as it ought to do, then cast into

Clister. the belly this easie clister. ℞. mallowes, leaues of purple violets, mercurie, spinage, of both the garden endiues. ana. *M.* j. whole barley. ℥ j. seeth these in iust quantitie of water, vntill the third parte be consumed: then take of the iuyce of that decoction. ℔. i. *casia fistula* newly drawen. ℥. j ß. of the oyles of cammomill and violets. ana. ℥. j ß. fresh butter. ℥ ß. common salt. ℥. j. and commixe them all, to make a clister. After the bodie is emptyed you must

apply

apply outwardly foments that doe heat and mitigate paine, such as *facculi* be, which are made of the floures of cammomill, dill, melilote, *tapsus barbatus*, seed of flaxe, fenugreeke, *milium*, and bran mixed together, the decoctions of the herbes aforesaid being put into bladders, or some other deuises. Also you may well apply a great soft sponge, being dipt in the aforesaid decoctions, and applied to the griefe warme. You must couer the foments with clothes, lest their strength do vanish away quickly. Also take an apple, take out the core of it and fill the hole with *olibanum*, and rost it till it be soft, then take off the skinne of the apple, and mix the soft of the apple, and the *olibanum* together, and let the patient make boles of it, & swallow it all at once, which doth remoue the pain very much. This plaister also is good for this purpose. ℞. floures of cammomil, *tapsus barbatus*, and dill ana. *M.* ß. line seede, fenugreeke. ana ℥. iij. annise seede. ℥. j. barley meale. *M.* ß. bray them and put them in water, till they be as thicke as hony, after put to oiles of dill and cammomill ana. ℥ j ß. boile them againe and adde to it the yolkes of two egges, of saffron. ℈. j. and make an emplaister. After the seuenth day, if the paine do continue stil after one sort, fasten a cupping glasse to the side, and scarifie the skinne, for a manifest commodity doth ensue to them that haue the pleurisie, by applying of cupping glasses. The cuts of the scarified places must be strewed with salt if the patient can abide it, if not, lay vpon it a linnen cloth dipped in oile, and sprinkled with salt. The next day after the scarifying is done, it is good to fasten on a cupping glasse againe, that the mattery bloud may be drawen out of the litle wounds. This second extraction is better then the first, for at the secõd time the blond is not drawen away, but the matter. Also the Phisition may not neglect to minister to the sicke such medicines as are good to make the fleume come vp easily (as is) *diapenidion*, *diatragacanthes*, conserues of violets, *Trochisci pectorales*, putting to them other loches rehearsed before in the chap. of the cough. Outwardly you must apply medicines that haue vertue to discusse (as is) fenugreeke, dill, melilot, hisope, and such like. And if there do appeare tokens that wil rot, & turne into matter, you must further it with this or the like ointment. ℞. oiles of cammomill, of sweet almonds, and of lillies. ana. ℥. iij. butter without salt, hens grease. ana. ℥. ij the muscilage of fenugreeke, line seed, and the rootes of *Althea*. ana. ℥. j. waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. The botch being broke, you must minister those things that do clense and purifie matter and filth, (as is) *aqua mellis*, or decoction of barley, or suger roset. The filth being clensed, you may minister glutinatiue medicins, which shall be sufficiently declared in the chapter of the Ptisicke afterward.

Sacculi.

Emplastrum.

Concurbitulæ.

Vnguentum.

CHAP. IX.

Of the inflammation of the lungs.

De Peripneumonia.

Peripneumonia is an inflammation of the lungs with a sharpe feuer. This disease for the most part is caused of strong distillations falling to the lungs, or else of the squinancy, or the *Asthma*, or the pleurisie, or of other diseases. Also sometime onely inflammation is the cause of this disease. They which haue this euill, haue difficult breathing, the lungs lying vppon the

Causæ.

Signa.

heart doth bring choking, they haue a sharpe and burning feauer, and also fulnesse and stretching out of the breast without paine. But if the skins which be ioyned all the length of the brest within be inflammate, then they feele paine at the breast. All the face, and the aggrieued place looke red, the nose is crooked in the top, the veines of the temples doe beate, the eies do swell, the tong is dry, the appetite is lost, the breath is hot, they couet cold water, and rather cold aire, they haue a dry cough, it is froathy and cholericke, or blouddy and red, which be the worst tokens. If the sicke shall die, he shall watch much, and haue fearfull short sleepes, the hands and feet shall be cold, the nailes shall be crooked and swart, and he shall die the fourth or seuenth day at the furthest. But if the sicke shall recouer, there will follow bleeding abundantly, or perturbation of the wombe, by passing forth of many cholericke & froathy humors: and somtime the inflammation is changed into matter, and the matter being filthy is driuen out either with egestion or with the vrine, and the sicke is deliuered from all the griefe by and by. And if it doe flow into the lungs and that abundantly, or do choke him, then it is changed into a Ptisicke. For their diet

Victus ratio. you must minister to them soupings made of the iuice of Ptilan, mixed with hony, origan, or hisope. They haue more neede of extenuatiue meates then those that haue the Pleurisie. Also *alica*, or *aqua mulsa* is good for thē. Let them drink litle, for moistnes hurteth the lungs. You may minister for preseruing of strength (especially if choking constraineth you) *Mulsa* alone, and with pine nuts, or *mulsa* wherein hisope is sodden, the powder of dry Ireos to *aqua mulsa* is good. Generally the diet of those that haue *Peripneumonia* must in a manner be the same, which the pleurisie should haue, specially if they begin to recouer. For the cure, you must eschue letting of bloud in such as haue fallē to this euill out of other diseases, especially if they haue beene long in this case, or if they were let bloud before. You must mollifie the belly with clisters, if he be costiue, or apply cupping glasses to the breast & sides, if nothing do let it, and that great boxings and many, the skin being cut and scarified. But if the *peripneumonia* began first without any other disease going before, thē let him bloud,

Curatio. *Venæsectio.* if strength and other things will suffer it; you must cut the inner veine of the arme, and if strength will suffer it, draw bloud on both the armes, and first but a litle, in no case vntil his heart faile, so that some strength may be kept for the bloud letting of the next arme. But if any thing doth forbid bloud letting, you may fasten cupping glasses to the whole breast, and the sides: and you must get out as much bloud as strength by them wil suffer. Also it is good to mollifie the belly with sharpe clisters, made of the decoctions of hisope, Ireos and rew, putting to it the pulpe of *Coloquintida*, *Salgemme*, & other things necessary for such clisters. After this you must labour and see, that the breast and the lungs be purged by much spitting, which must be made swift and easie. For the which purpose you must vse those Ecligmaes, ointments, and emplaisters, which are declared before in the chapter against the pleurisy, excepting that in this case you must minister the most strong things, and those that haue much strength and vertue in extenuating. Therefore you must minister *loch è scylla*, *loch è pulmone vulpis*, the decoction of the roote of Ireos and *Enula*. And you must make a cerote of oile of rew & *nardinum*, putting to it the marrowe of a hart, of ireos, hisope,

hisope, and horehound beaten very fine, and commixed with Venice turpentine, and lay it all ouer the breast, and the sides.

CHAP. X.

Of spitting of bloud.

De Sangvinis Reiectatione.

SPitting of bloud is caused many times of an outward manifest cause, as of falling frō an high place, or a stroke giuen to one outwardly, or with vehement striking, or leaping, or if any heauy things haue fallen vppon the breast, either else with great crying, or immoderate cold: for cold (as *Hippocrates* witnesseth) breaketh veines. Also spitting of bloud may be caused through heate. Also sometime spitting of bloud is caused of inward and secret causes, as fulnesse and abundance of naughty bloud, gnawing a sunder the veines, and bursting open the heads of them. The gnawing a sunder of those veines is caused of sharpe humors either falling from the head to the lungs, or else engendred in the lungs it selfe. Moreouer the bloud that is spit out, sometime commeth from the breast and the lungs, or from the *Trachea arteria*, and sometime from other places of the mouth or gummes, or the iawes, or from the stomack, vnto the which doth fall bloud out of the veines and members adioyning (that is to say) from the liuer and the spleene. The outward causes are knowen thus: if the spitting of bloud be caused of abundance of bloud, then the bloud commeth out gushing all at once, & after it is out, the sicke is better and lighter. But if it be caused through bursting of the mouths of the veines, then hote perturbations haue gone before it, as though the patient had vsed many hot baths, & had dwelt in a hot region, vsing hot diet in a hote season. If spitting of bloud be caused through gnawing and eating a sunder the veines, then the bloud is not spitted forth all on a heape, but by litle and litle with the cough; and they are alwaies worse. Also if the bloud which is spitted, be froathy and palish, and commeth foorth now and then with the cough without any paine, it is a sure token, that the bloud commeth out of the lungs. If flegmatick bloud be spitted out with easie coughings & reaching, then the bloud commeth from the *Trachea arteria*. If bloud be spitted forth being black and clodded together, hauing also the cough and paine in the aggrieued place, then it is a toké that it commeth from the breast. For the diet, let him vse meates which haue a moderate adstriction, as be rice, hulled wheat called *Alica*, & such other like, mixing with them the iuices of pomegranates or peares. For flesh, let him eate wild doues, turtles, and partriches, if they be boiled with veriuice, or iuice of soure grapes, or with Sumach. Also he must vse quinces, peares, restrictiue apples, medlers, and mulberies, and such like rehearsed before in the chapter against bleeding at the nose. He must drinke thicke redde wine, or in stead of it, water wherein steele is quenched. He must eschue great noises, often speaking, all mouing of the body, and anger. As for the cure, it differeth according to the diuersity of causes: for if the bloud come out of the head, it needeth but a simple and easie cure: for restrictiue things applied cold to the palat of the mouth by collutions & gargarises do performe the cure. What things they be, you may seeke in the beginning of this second booke the first chap. But if there do flow much

Causa.

Externa.
Interna.

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Vene sectio. bloud from the head, thé you must let him bloud on some veine. Those which spit bloud through distillation, you must by and by in the beginning let them bloud on some veine, vnlesse a sharpe humor doth distill vehemently. Also afterward minister a sharpe clister, and empty the wombe. Also rub the hands, the armes, and the legs very much with a medicine that will heat and extenuate, and bind the outward parts. After that, if the disease endure longer, shaue the head, and apply thereto a medicine which hath vertue to dry, and discusse (as is) that, which is made of the dung of wilde doues, and after three houres space, bring them into a bath, so that the head be annointed with no fat thing. Afterward couer them meanly, and nourish them with sowre soupings. When they go to sleepe, minister to them *Theriaca*. The next day all the whole bodie (the head being excepted only) being rubbed, keepe him in quiet, and againe at night minister to him *Theriaca*. And if through these the distillation be not stopped, then the third day in the morning minister a litle hony sodden, and rub all the body, and suffer him to rest. The fourth day, after the taking of the *Theriaca*, minister againe much hony, and lay to the head a medicine of doues dung. And if the euill do endure longer, fasten a cupping glasse to the hinder part of the head. Last of all minister those things which are able to purge the humours that are flowen into the lungs. But if it be a very sharpe humour, which distilleth out of the head you must beware of bloud letting, & you must rather vse purgations, and you must vse the nourishments and remedies hereafter declared, and also before in the chapter against distillations. They which do spit bloud comming from the lungs, by reason of breaking of some veins in it, or by bursting open of their heades, those you must first of all charge, that they do not breath much and make a noise, and that they speake but litle, and in a manner not at all. Let them sit in open aire hauing a stedfast bed, and of a good height. For such you must by and by cut the inner veine of the arme: and you must draw bloud twise or thrise a litle at once, for such haue no neede of much bloud letting. Also for the same purpose (that is to say) that the bloud may be drawen another way, you must rubbe the extremities, and vse to binde them hard with broad linnen cloths. These so done, you must minister to him a drinke made of vineger and water infused and warmed, and let him drinke it, so that if any clod of bloud do cleaue on the flesh, it may (being therby dissolued) be cast out, neither doth any thing let, but that you may minister this potion twise or thrise in three hours. After those you may minister both within the body and without, medicines which be restrictiue, and haue power to stoppe the pores. For things taken inwardly it profiteth to eate purslaine, albeit that his iuice drunken is of more effect, the iuice of knotgrasse, sharpe grapes, decoction of sumach, gals, the shels of acorns, the roote of bremble, *balaustia*, seed of sorrell, the rootes of horsetaile and such like, which are declared in the chapter against bleeding at the nose. But these are better & of more effect, then the aforesaid things (that is to say) *terra lemnia* beaten into verie fine powder, and ministred with the iuice of pomegranates, or of knotgrasse, or *lapis hæmatitis* at once. ℈. j. in the like iuice. Among compounds you must vse this *lohoch*. ℞. of old conserue of roses, of *robde ribes*. ana. ℥. j. of *diatragacanth frigidum*, and *diacotoneon simplex*, ana. ℥. ß. of the powders of coral *lapis hæmatitis*

Concubitula.

Cure of spitting of bloud from the lungs.

Potio.

Emplastica.

Ecligma.

matitis and *terra lemnia*, ana. ℈.ij. bole armoniack. ℥.j. dragons bloud. ℥.ß. pomgranate floures. ℥ j frankensence, the roote of *consolida maior*. ana. ℥.j.ß. sirupe of mirtels, as much as is sufficient to commixe them, and make an *Ecligma*. Afterward you must sprinckle the breast outwardly with restrictiue wine, and the oiles of roses, quinces, and myrtilles. But if there be much eruption of bloud (especially being sommer) and the spitting therof comming without a cough, and the sicke not being weake, but strong and fleshie; then you may take vineger for wine, & apply it to with sponges. It is good to put to the aforesaid oiles, bole armoniacke, *terra lemnia*, corall, and such like, and to make an ointment thereof with waxe. Also apply thereunto a soft plaister made of dates, *acatia*, the root of *consolida maior*, the barkes of pomegranats, and the meale of lintels. Also a cerote made of the meat of pomegranats, frankensence, red corall, *balaustia*, bole armoniacke, *terra lemnia*, & such like is good of effect. But you must specially take heed, that by and by after the rupture of the vessels, it may grow together againe, before it take inflammation: for if there come inflammation before it be growen together, there is but litle hope of the conglutination of the wombe, for it keepeth it stretched out many daies: and you must washe away aswell the matter, as the waterie bloud out of the vlcer, after that the inflammation is gone. But here the reader must be admonished, that he take heed that he do not apply outwardly against that place where the bloud runneth out, neither restrictiue things, nor cold things without restriction: vnlesse the matter be first turned another way, and drawen from that place; for else it would driue the bloud inward, and stop the veins full that be within. Therfore first alwaies you must draw the bloud to the contrarie part, & after that applie restrictiue things outwardly. Those which spit bloud through erosion & gnawing of sharpe humours, you must first of all minister those things vnto them which haue vertue to purge sharpe humours, distilling into the lungs, such as be spoken of before in the chap. of distillation. After that, minister those things which can alter and make thicke the thinne and sharpe humors, and so haue vertue to stop the distillation, as is, sirupe of violets, roses, mirtles, hidromalon *diacotoneorum*, and such like. For the same purpose somtime minister sirupes of poppie and other somnoriferous medicins. The distillation being ceased, you must restore the gnawen parts with meates of good iuice, and with medicines that do engender flesh. Moreouer they which vomit bloud must vse the same diet and cure, which is before rehearsed, that is, if the bloud flowe from the liuer, cut the veine on the arme: But if the bloud be caried from the splene, into the belly, cut the veine on the left hand, which is betweene the litle finger, and the ring finger, and minister to them restrictiue meats and drinks, adding this to the cure, that they do not take meate and drinke often: for they may easily be cured, if the remedies which be receiued in, be applied to those parts that shedde bloud. And for bloud congealed in the stomacke like a hillocke, let him drinke creame, and especially of a hart, or let it be auoided with sauory mixed with vineger or with *aloes*. Those which spitte bloud from the palate of their mouth, they must gargarise with restrictiue things, and apply to the forehead, and to the head, those things which are applied vnto the nose when it bleedeth. Furthermore to conclude, after that all things be done, and that the

Note.

Cure of spitting of bloud caused of sharp humours.

Cure of vomiting bloud.

fluxe of bloud is ſtopped, then the ſtrength muſt be cheriſhed and reſtored againe: and ſpecially he muſt beware of the often vſing of bathes, of drinking of wine, of wrath, of Venus.

CHAP. XI.

Of ſpitting of matter.

De Empiemate.

Cauſe. Empiema in Greeke, ſignifieth a mattery ſpitting: In latin it is called *Suppuratio*. It is cauſed when an impoſtume, or botch being in the vpper skinne of them which girdeth the ribs inwardly, or elſe in ſome other vpper skin of the breſt, is broken all at once, & ſhed and powred into the empty place of the breaſt, which is betweene the lungs & the vpper skin that girdeth in the ribs. It is cauſed ſomtime through burſting out of bloud (an vlcer not being broght to his ſcar, and perfect ſhutting vp.) Alſo ſometime through fluxe of the head, and other vpper parts falling thither, which is wont often to change into the *Signa.* ſquinancy. The ſignes be theſe, heauineſſe is felt in the bottome of the breaſt, a ſtrong cough and a dry without paine: and alſo ſometime with moiſtneſſe, for the which they ſeem to be eaſed. In the beginning there chanceth to them feauers, faint, inordinate and hard to be iudged. When the impoſtume draweth neare to a rupture, then they haue a feauer more vehemēt with quaking, and they are troubled in their ſpeach. Being broken, there appeareth ſomewhat to flowe into the breaſts bottome, according to the often chaunging of their lying, and ſpecially when they change lying from one ſide to an other, then ſurely the multitude of matter is euident, and oftentimes a certain noiſe of the flowing may perfectly be heard when they turne them. Alſo the matter that commeth out is ſometimes cleare, ſometime thicke and dreggy. Some impoſtumes do burſt out vpward, that is, vnto the voide place of the breaſt, & theſe be moſt perillous. Some impoſtumes do flow out downward vnto the paunch, and the bowels, and alſo the bladder. They alwaies labour of the feuer ethicke, vntill all things be brought out vpward. Thoſe that be vexed with *Victus ratio.* this diſeaſe of ſpitting of matter; let them remaine in a dry aire, let them vſe meates of good iuice eaſie to digeſt, brothes of cockes, the fleſh of hens, chickens, birds of mountains. Alſo vſe decoctions and brothes of cicers with herbs (as is) hiſope, and parcely. Let his drinke be *aqua mulſa*, and thin white wine. *Curatio.* For the cure in this diſeaſe, except diligent ſpeede be made by and by, the gathering together of matter cauſeth the ptiſicke, the lungs drawing vlceration. Therfore firſt you muſt helpe the concoction of the impoſtume with foments by ſponges or bladders, with cataplaſmes or emplaiſters, made of the meales of barley, fenugreeke, and line ſeeds, of figs, doues dung, mallowes, *Althæa*, and a litle roſen. Alſo you muſt apply to it cerots, made of butter, ireos, laurell berries, rew, and other things, which can ripe and diſſolue the impoſtume, wherof thou ſhalt find many in the chapter of *Aſthma* before, and if the euill be not diſſolued, you muſt apply to it, things that will breake the botch. The breaking of the botch is procured by lying on the whole ſide, eating of ſalt meats, and theſe pils giuen vnto him when he entendeth to ſleepe. ℞. of the powder of *Hierapicra Galeni*. ℥. j. of the pulpe of *Coloquintida*. ℈. j. with the iuice of wormwood

wood as much as is sufficient to commixe them, and make pilles, whereof let him hold one at once in his mouth. By this meanes it shall come to passe, that the sicke shall couet to spit often, and so by ouermuch spitting the impostume may breake. The rupture being made, you must take diligent heede, whither the matter runneth, and you must helpe his auoiding, for if it creepe into the belly, you must minister most of all mollifications. If it fall to the bladder, you must minister most those things which prouoke vrine. If the matter commeth out by a cough, then nothing is more meet to be ministred then ptisan, mixed with good hony. Also absterſiue & scouring things do profit, which are partly declared in the chapter against the pleurisie, and part of them shall be spoken of in the next chapter. But you may commodiously commix with their meat, those things which prouoke vrine, howsoeuer the matter intendeth to flowe. As for the purging & driuing out of the matter, *aqua mulsa* decoct with ireos, & much licorice is maruellous profitable. Moreouer the decoction of hisope, ireos, horehound and such like is good, whereof you may seeke more in the chapter of *asthma*. The rest that seemeth to be necessary for the cure of this disease shall be spoken of in the next chapter.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Ptisicke.

De Tabe.

PTISIS in Greeke, *Tabes* in Latine, it is properly an exulceration of the lungs till there followeth spitting of bloud withall. It is caused for the most part through a sharpe and gnawing humour, flowing from the head into the lungs. Also it is caused through the bloud & matter that remaineth, after the bursting out of it in them that haue the pleurisie, the *Peripneumonia*, or *Empiena*. They which labour of this disease, they are knowen by wasting the whole body and the flesh. Also their nosthrils be sharpe, their temples be slidden down, their eies be hollow, and their shoulders sticke out like birds wings. Moreouer they cough, and be vexed with the feuer Ethicke, they breath difficultly, their cheeke bals waxe swart, their nailes doe crooke and seeme pale. Also the euill ouercomming, the belly is troubled, and thirst doth vexe them more, their haire doth shedde, and that which they doe spitte out, is of a vehement stinking sauour. As for vlcers of the lungs, they are very hard to be cured, because they cannot be purged and clensed without the cough, and in them that cough, the vlcer is broken, & so the euill returneth as it were by a certaine circuit. Also the lungs among the other inward members, because of respiration and breathing, are alway in mouing, and also are rent with coughing. But the vlcers, which are to be healed, would require quiet and rest. Moreouer the strength of medicins cannot come to the vlcers, before it be altered in the stomacke, in the body, and in the liuer. Neuertheless although the causes before reherſed, make the cure to seeme hard, yet we may go about to cure that vlceration. Therefore in the beginning you must ascribe to those that be ptisicke, a conuenient diet after this sort. Let them dwell in a dry aire temperate between heat & coldnes, let their meat be ptisan, almond milke, rere egs, flesh of the birdes of mountaines, of partrich, of phesants, of owsils, of blacke birdes,

Cause.

Signa.

Looke Hippocrates in his aphorisme. 5. the 14. & the 13. & the 11.

The causes why the cure is hard.

Victus ratio.

of hennes, of capons, of calues, of ſucking kiddes. Alſo ſcaly fiſhes in ſtonie waters, crabs of the freſh riuer. But among all meates, milke is beſt for them that be ptiſicke, ſpecially womās milke, after that aſſes milke, & goats milke, which would be ſucked out of the dugges, if it might be, or let it be drunke by and by after the milking of it while it is hot. But you muſt beware, that they take no meate by and by after their milke, and ſpecially no wine, for then it would be corrupted with it in the ſtomacke. But if they be very much feuerous, ſpecially of a rotten feuer, then it is not good to take milke. Among fruites, it is good to eate raiſons, ſweet almonds, pine nuttes, figges, dates, piſtax. Let them eſchue exerciſes and mouings that be vehement. It is not vnprofitable to walke eaſily before meate: and after meat they muſt altogether reſt: let them vſe to ſleepe on nights meanly: let them eſchue wrath and ſadneſſe, vnmeaſurable watchings, hunger, thirſt, lecherie, hot houſes, and whatſoeuer may empty the body. Let his drinke be but ſmall and thin, or if his feuer be vehement, let him drink water, wherein a litle Cinamon hath bene ſodden, or the drinke that is called *Hippocras*, whoſe making is declared in the firſt booke, in the chapter againſt the palſey. If the euill be cauſed through the flowing of a ſharpe humor out of the head, you muſt begin the cure by remouing of the diſtillation, which we haue taught before in his proper chapter. Therefore now we will ſhew the exulceration of the lungs, how it is to be cured And firſt for the cure thereof, we muſt miniſter thoſe things which haue an abſterſiue and ſcouring vertue, and that which will cauſe that the matter may eaſily be brought vpward: for the which purpoſe *Hydromel* is ſpecially good, & alſo decoction of barley with ſugar and hony; alſo decoction of ireos, figges, maiden haire, hiſope, horehound and licorice. If there come a feuer, you may cōmixe with the aforeſaid things, the foure great cold ſeedes. Outwardly you muſt apply emplaiſters, and cataplaſmes, made of line ſeed, fenugreeke, and ſuch like declared in the laſt chapter *de Empiemate*. Alſo for the ſame purpoſe you may ſeeke many remedies in the chap. againſt the *Aſthma*. The lungs being cleanſed and purged from matter: you muſt miniſter thoſe medicines which will glutinate and heale vp the vlcer. For this purpoſe conſerue of roſes is commended almoſt of all Phiſitions, for this hath not only the vertue to glutinate, but alſo to clenſe & ſcoure, but the newer it is, the more it ſcoureth, and the older it is the more it glutinateth. Alſo theſe are maruellous good, bole armoniacke, dragons bloud, amber, corall, purſlaine ſeede, and ſuch like which haue vertue to ſcoure and ioine together. Alſo theſe things are good *loch de pulmone vulpis*, *loch è pino*, conſerues of *conſolida maior*, and maiden haire. Therfore of theſe you muſt make this compound medicin. ℞. conſerues of *conſolida maior*, and of maiden haire. ana ℥ ß. conſerues of roſes. ℥ j. *loch è pulmone vulpis*. ℥ j. ß. *loch è pino*. ℥ ij. powder of *diatragacanthos frigidum*. ℥ iij. bole armoniack. ℥ j. ß. ſirupe of poppy as much as will ſuffice to commixe it, & make a loch. Alſo this powder daily miniſtred cauſeth much eaſe. ℞. of the ſeeds of white poppy. ℥. ß. gumme arabicke, *Amylum* and gumme tragacant. ana. ℥ j. ß. ſeedes of cucumbers, citrons, gourdes, melons, quinces. ana. ℥ iij. burnt Iuory, iuice of licorice. ana. ℥ j. ß. *penidies*, as much in weight as all the reſt, and make a powder, of the which miniſter daily euery morning. ℥ ij. with ſirupe of poppy or roſes. At that time alſo, that the vlcer

Curatio.

Ecligma.

Pulvis.

is closed, you must annoint the breast without, with oile of quinces, mirtels or roses, adding thereto sometime sumach, *Hipociſchides*, pomgarnet rindes, *acatia*, galles and such like. In the end the bodie being extenuate and wasted, it is good to restore with a conuenient diet, vsing all those meates which be of good iuyce easie to digest, and nourish much, at which time also you may minister this medicine. ℞. of the pulpe of a capon. ℥. j. cockes stone, pine nuttes, pistax, sweete almonds. ana. ℥. ß. of the powder of the *Antidoti de gemmis*. ℥. ß. powder of *Diarrhodon abbatis*, *dianthon*, *& aromaticum resarum*. ana. ℈. j. white sanders and cinamon. ana. ℥ ß. maces. ℈. j. white sugar of the finest. ℔. j. dissolue the sugar in water of bugloſſe, and roses, and make lozenges, or an electuarie, of the which minister euery day.

Morsuli refectorij

CHAP. XIII.

Of panting of the hart.

DE CORDIS PALPITATIONE.

Palpitatio & tremor cordis in Latine, is in English panting and trembling of the hart, it is a corrupt motion of the hart, or a stretching out of it against nature. The new sort of Phisitions do wrongfully call it *Cardiaca*. It is caused of all such things as do trouble and affect the hart aboue nature (as is) euery distempure, or the multitude of an humour, contained in the outward skin that goeth about the hart, or else of swelling contrarie to nature and such like. The disease is easily knowen by the words of the patient, who doth easily feele the beating and panting. And also you may know it by the pulse: for in a hot distémpure there commeth a feuer, & the pulse is swift & great, in a cold distempure, the contrary. If plentie of an humor contained in the vpper skin of the hart do cause beating thereof, then the pulse is soft and feeble. The diet must be ordained diuersely according to the diuersitie of causes: for in a hot distempure of the hart, the aire ought to be meanely cold, but in a cold distempure it ought to be meanly warme. But vniuersally whatsoeuer the cause be, you must eschue any thing that doth trouble or resolue the vitall spirits, (as be) ouermuch heat anger, hunger, watching, letcherie, vnmeasurable colde, meate of euill iuyce. If abundance of any humor contained in the vpper skin, that goeth about the hart, do engender panting of the hart: let their whole diet be extenuatiue, let their drinke in a hote distempure be thinne and small, or a iulep of violets or roses, or decoction of bugloſſe. In a colde distempure they may drinke pure wine, or other strong drinke. Those that be vexed with beating of the heart caused of hot distemper, they must haue remedie by cold medicins, which can correct the hot distempure, and ad strength to the hart. (As these be among simples) roses, violets, floures of water lillies, saunders, corall, camphire and such like. Among compounds be these, *Diamargariton frigidum*, *diarrhodon abbatis*, conserues of roses, of violets, of bugloſſe, and their plants, iuices and sirupes. Therfore of the aforesaid things there may be made potions, electuaries, and lozenges as you thinke good. Outwardly appoint ointments and emplaisters, specially epithemes *faculi*, and other like, whatsoeuer is able to alter the hot distempure of the liuer. And first among ointments this is good. ℞. the oyles of roses, violets, and *nimphea*. ana. ℥. ij. of redde corall, and redde saunders, and

Cauſe.

Signa.

Victus ratio

Cure of panting of the hart caused by hote distempure.

Vnguentum.

red roſes, ana. ℈.j. camphire, gr.ij. white wax as much as is ſufficiēt, & make an ointment, wherwith annoint the region of the hart & the backe bone. Among epithemes, let this eſpecially be laid to the hart. ℞. the waters of roſes, ſorrell, & bugloſſe. ana. ℥.iij. water of balme. ℥.j. powder of the cordiall medicine. ℥.j. red ſanders, red corrall. ana. ℥.ß. purcelaine. gr.iij. ſaffron, gr.iiij. commixe all togethe and make an epitheme. Alſo among the ſorts of drie bags this is beſt. ℞. floures of bugloſſe, violets, red roſes. ana. M ß. all the ſaunders, of ech. ℥.j. red corall & white, of ech. ℥.j.ß. of pearles. ℈ j. being firſt powdred, put them in ſilke and make a *Sacculus*. But thoſe that be aggrieued with a colde diſtempure of the hart, to ſuch among ſimple medicines, theſe be profitable (that is) amber, muske, ſaffron, wood of aloes, *ſtorax*, cloues, maces zedoary, baulmes, and ſuch like: among compounds theſe are good: the electuary, *plirifar*, *hoticon*, *diamber*, *dianthos*, *aromaticum roſarum*, and ſuch like, of the which may be made kindes of medicines, like as we did againſt hote diſtimpure of the hart. For ointments may be made after this ſort. ℞. the oiles of lillies, of ſpike, and of ſaffron. ana. ℥. ij.ß. *gallia moſchata*, cloues ana. ℈ i. wood of aloes. ℈ ß. maces. ℈.j. ſaffron. gr. iij. waxe as much as is ſufficient, make an ointment. Alſo you may make this epitheme thus. ℞. waters of balme, marioram, bugloſſe. ana ℥.iiij. powders of the electuaries, *diamber* and *diamoſchæ*. ana. ℥.ß. maces, wood of aloes. ana. ℈.j. amber. gr.j. of the beſt wine. ℥.j. commixe them together and, make an epitheme. An example of *ſacculus* is thus. ℞. floures of balme, & bugloſſe, ana. M.j. ß. choſen cinamon, cloues, maces. ana. ℥.j. wood of aloes. ℈.j. barcke of the citrine apple. ℥.j.ß. ſaffron. ℈.j. amber. gr.j. braie all together, and make a *ſacculus* of ſilk to lay to the hart. And if there be panting of the hart engendred through ſome humour contained in the vpper skin that compaſſeth the hart: it muſt be cured (as Galen witneſſeth) with a diet which will extenuate, & by cutting of a veine in the arme. Therfore you muſt cut the inner veine of the arme, or the middle veine. And afterward one muſt miniſter and apply as well inwardly as outwardly, medicins that haue vertue to extenuat and ſtrengthen the hart by applying of ointnents, and epithemes and *ſaculi*, and ſuch like. Of the which things to make priuat examples, we think it in vaine, ſeeing it is eaſie to any man by examples now declared heere, and in other places, to make medicines for this purpoſe of whatſoeuer ſort he will.

Epithema

Sacculus.

Cure of diſtempure of the hart cauſed through cold making it to beat and pant.

Vnguentum.

Epithema.

Sacculus.

Cure of panting of the hart cauſed of an humour.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of Sownding.

De Sincope.

Sincope is a ſwift falling of the ſtrength (as Galen ſaith) it is cauſed through much excretion and auoiding of blood, or through vnmeaſurable emptying of the belly, or vehement mouing, or through great paine, or much and often waſhings. Alſo through abundant ſweates, and all other immoderate vacuations, alſo feare, dread, and all ſuch like perturbations of the mind. Moreouer through abounding of crude and raw humours, through great inflammation, or through vicious and thinne humours, or elſe by taking breath in a ſtinking ayer. The *ſincope* is knowon by theſe tokens, the pulſe is rare and obſcure, the extreame parts, as the hands and feet be cold, ſweat about the face, the taking away

Cauſe.

Signa.

away of the brightnes of the skin that is in it, & as it were a palsey of the whole body. Moreouer of these three commeth desperation, vexation of the mind, and shaking of the bodie. And moreouer there chaunceth sometime with the sownding of the hart, a vice (that is) when the hart is vehemently distempured. Also sometime it chaunceth to the stomacke (that is) when humours abounding, or heaped together, or crude, either elsé sharpe and gnawing be in it: that kind of *syncope* is called *stomachica*. They which fall in a sownd through plentie of raw humours contained in the mouth of the stomacke, in such the sides are inflate and puffed vp, and the whole body seemeth to be of a greater bignes then it should naturally be: also their color changeth whiter then it was wont to do & to conclude, their body is like to them that haue the dropsy; also to many their colour waxeth swarter and blacker like lead, but the pulses of the sinewes be least of all other, moreouer they be obscure and vnequall. Those which are vexed with sownding through aboundance of sharpe humours, they feele continuall pulling, twitching and gnawing in the mouth of the stomacke. They which through thin vices (which do swiftly exhalate & flye vp) do suffer sownding, in them their face appeareth by and by as though it were dead, their nose is sharpe, their eyes be hollowe, and such like. The other causes of *Syncope* are knowen by the talke of them that stand by without any great businesse. It is easie to know, that the cure must be diuerse according to the diuersitie of the causes. If sownding do inuade one through excretion and auoiding of blood, or through any other vnmeasurable or sudden emptying, you must sprinkle their face with cold things or with rose water, which hath a maruellous good effect in this case. The extreme parts of the bodie, must be bound vehemently with bands, and must be rubbed a litle with sharpe linnen clothes. If the emptying be vpward, you must rubbe the legges: if it be downeward, rubbe and bind the hands. Also cupping glasses are to be fastened lightly, diuersely, according to the places where the euacuations, or where the blood bursteth out. Moreouer the mouth must be opened, by putting in your fingers or a wedge, or some other thing, but the passage of hearing, and of the nosethrils would be thrust together, that the ayer that is breathed in, might stirre and comfort the spirits. Also it is good by and by for to comfort the spirits with sundrie odoraments. For as Hippocrates saith in his booke *de alimentis*, there is nothing that calleth the strength againe sooner then odours. Therfore it is good to apply to the nose of the sicke, chickens rosted & parted asunder in the middest. Also roses, violets, quinces, citrons and such like be good. You must minister wine to him that is thinne, and alaied. Let the aire of the chamber be cold, but let not the chamber be verie full of light: let their counter points be taken away that lie vpon them, and let the couerings wherwith they be couered be soft, and strew the floores with leaues of mirtels, vines, okes, briars, and roses themselues, and sprinckle it with water. In vnmeasurable sweats annoint the sweating parts with oile of mirtels, roses & quinces: but specially the neck, the breast, the places vnder the arme holes and the share. For this purpose also it is good to annoint with *amilum*, and powders of frankensence, mixed with the white of an egge, and other restrictiue medicins. Also you must hold to his nose diuerse odoraments, as roses, sanders, quinces, floures of water lillies, and

Syncope cordis.

Syncope stomachica.

Cure of sownding through vnmeasurable emptying.

Stoppers of great sweats.

Cure of sounding caused of paine.

camphir, but you may not then bind the extreme parts of the body. If sounding be caused through paine, you must diligently enquire the cause: for if it come of an outward cause, the ceasing of the paine cureth the sounding. But if the pain be caused of no outward cause, you must find out some inward cause which causeth paine. If fulnesse with retching and stretching out do cause the paine, by and by, if strength will suffer it, let him bloud on the veine that is nigheſt to the aggrieued part, but if strength be feeble, then you must only pull it back, or you must driue it vpward, or downeward, or both wayes, or vse frictions. But whereas the paine is caused of vicious humours, you must rather purge it. If both the aforesaid causes come together, then you must vse euacuations both wayes: but bloudletting must first be vsed before any of them. Afterward if the corrupt humours be fastened, and do sticke fast in some onely place, you must begin your cure with dissoluing and discussiue medicines. As for curing of other paines, they may be sought in their owne proper chapters, and especially in the chapter against the cholicke. Those which do sound through great sorrow, feare, and other perturbations of the mind, they are fully cured by vsing of their contraries. Neither let passe to minister vnto them that do sound for great sorow, odoriferous things, and other things which being taken inwardly may comfort the spirites. They which be troubled with sounding through plenty of crude humours, they may neither suffer letting of bloud nor purging. Therefore you must cure such by frictions. And you must by and by in the beginning of the euill begin, & you must rub the legges first from the vpper part, and so downward with linnen clothes not very soft, but somewhat sharp: afterward likewise the armes from the shoulders to the fingers. And when all the arteries and veines be sufficiently heat, & that ye doubt that some wearinesse will come to the senses through ouermuch rubbing: you must vse oyle solutiue and loosing, as is oyle of dill, and cammomill: and you must beware especially of restrictiue things. And when you haue annointed the parts of the body, and rubbed them well, then you must come to the backe, and that you must likewise first rub with a linnen cloth, and then with oyle: from that you must go againe to the legs, and then to the armes, & so againe to the backe, and so you must do all, and that in a bright chamber without moisture, whose aire must be temperat. Moreouer *mulsa*, wherin hisope is sodden is most meet for them: and you must beware that you minister not to them, neither meate nor brothes, nor water, nor to suffer him to drinke liberally, but onely *mulsa* the three first dayes, and to rub him by course continually, graunting him onely but time to sleepe, which must be in a meane. But if their pulse be very small and feeble, or also besides that, wonderfull inequall, you may know that there is extreme perill: but yet you must do as it is taught before, and go about none other thing. But if the pulse be indifferently strong and great, and be not cut off, nor thrust together, then you must consider the state of the belly, & if it auoyd not ordure sufficiently of it selfe, you may boldly powre in somwhat beneath. For it chanceth after the taking of *aqua mulsa*, that the superfluities which are wont to be gathered in the principall veines (that is) they which be about the liuer, & the bowell which ioyneth with the midrife vnto the backe, by that thing they are well cast out. And if a heape of superfluities do violently prouoke the bellie a-

Cure of sounding by affections of the mind.

Cure of sounding through abundance of crude humors.

boue

boue reason, first you must seeth your *mulsa* more higher, for so it doth make the belly lesse soluble, and it nourisheth more. After this, if the superfluities do descend more largely, the belly may not be stopped so, but you must minister for *aqua mulsa*, the iuice of ptisan. And if they continue still to flow, nourish him with soupings of *alica*, taking heed to the working of the pulses in the meane season: for sometime they are changed to imbecilitie, or vnequalnes or smalnes: at which time it is good to minister bread infused in wine, & that, if neither the belly nor the liuer be troubled with an impostume; for if they be vexed with it (the bodie being stuffed with crude and raw iuices) the sicke is desperat of all health. Therfore in such a case of the sick, thou shewest thy selfe without blame, if thou say before that he will die, and vse no better medicines. But if there be at any time found abundance of clammy humors, by and by minister *Oximel* in stead of *mulsa*. Therfore if it be sommer, and the sicke vsed to cold potions, giue him the *Oximel* cold, but if it be winter, minister it hote. Also these things are very euill for them, aswell bathings, as also the open aier, as often as it is ouer hot or ouer cold. But if thou art called to them which be presently vexed with sounding, where the belly and the liuer be without impostumation, thou shalt minister a litle bread, and that with some wine, because it causeth swift distribution into the other parts of the body: and thou shalt come straight to frictions and rubbings, and thou shalt do according to the order before prescribed. But if it be sommer, or the region naturally hot & burning, or the state of the heauen vehemently hot: then let them drinke no wine but small ale cold. But the drinke that shalbe giuen the second and third time, thou shalt minister it altogether hot. For in the whole cure, where we vse frictions, heat is best, as a helper of the concoction of crude humours. But to those which haue sounding caused of choler, which troubled the mouth of the stomacke, to them you must minister cold potions. But yet it is good to minister to all that haue the *syncope*, wine that is hot by nature, yelowish in colour, thin in substance, cold, and that which prouoketh distribution in the body: for we would haue the food that is receiued, to be distributed about the body, & not to tarrie in the stomack. They that are vexed with sounding through vice of thin humours, those you must emptie by litle and litle, and continually, because they cannot suffer much emptying at once: those also must we nourish by litle & litle, and often. The outward part of the skin must be thickned: and you must make the aire of the chamber cold and restrictiue. Also you must annoint them with restrictiue medicins and ointments, and you must giue them meats that do not readily disperse and flow: therfore giue neither *aqua mulsa*, nor *ptisan*, but bread and soupings of *alica*, and foure frutes which will not easily be corrupted. You shall also giue sometimes to them egges, specially their yolkes, for their whites be hard to digest. Moreouer the stones of cocks which be nourished with milke. Also swines braine, but let it either be diligently rosted, or well sodden in water with leeks, and dill. To conclude you must labour by all meanes, that you may make the substance of the iuices more thick, and thicken the skinne, and to stop the exhalations. Watery wine is necessarie to them after meat in the beginning of sickenesse, if they haue bene vsed onely to wine, but if they haue not vsed themselues to wine, then ale is best for them, or

Phlegmon.

Cure of sounding now present.

Cure of syncope caused of thin humours.

beere. And if all follow your mind, you may also after other things giue them nourishment by flesh specially after the fourth day, (the iuices comming now to concoction.) If sounding come through vehement inflammtion, the members and parts of the body are to be rubbed and nourished, and the hands and feet must be bound. You must command him to watch, because the bloud in sleepe creepeth to the inward members. You must driue them cleane frō meat and drinke. Whosoeuer hath the *sincope*, through vicious humors gnawing the mouth of the stomake, they must be cured by prouoking of vomit: or if that take no place to moue the bellie, do other things which are expounded in the chapter of paine in the stomake. They that begin to sound in a bath, you must bring them quickly out, nor you must not moisten them with much powring in of water. They that be already in a sound, must be caried out verie quickly, and the rest of the bodie must be couered with a light couering. Let the face be wet with a spunge dipped in cold water, or sprinckle it with rose water. Also the face, the stomake, and feet must be rubbed. Also the mouth must be opened by putting in of quils, or ones finger. And you must go about by all meanes that the humours that cause the sounding may be vomited out, by powring in of warme water at the mouth. They that be of perfect age, pull off their haires, and the loud calling of one is profitable, but many at once is hurtfull.

Cure of sounding through inflammation.

Cure of sounding through humours in the stomach.

CHAP. XV.

Of lacke of milke.

De Lactis Defectv.

THE want of milke, doth chance through dry distempure of the pappes, or of the whole bodie. Also through small quantity of good bloud, or because the child is so weake, that he cannot sucke well of the paps: for looke the more that he draweth out by sucking of thē, the more draweth to them againe. The tokens wherby the diuersities of causes are knowne, are euident enough by things before spokē, but yet I wil rehearse thē againe. A dry distēper is known by the disposition of the whole body, and by leanesse & drinesse of the body, & pappes & such like. Small quantitie of good bloud is known by the ill state of the body, & by the euill colour of it. Also vnmeasurable euacuations comming out of the bodie before, (that is to say) by menstruis, by fluxes, by extreame exercises, by hunger & such like. For the cure of lacking of milke, which is caused of a drie distempure, we will teach nothing in this place, because it may easily be cured by that which is declared before in other chapters, and shall also be declared afterward in the chap. against the feuer Ethick. Therfore here we wil only treat of the cure of lack of milke, caused of the litle quātity of good bloud. In this cure first you must behold the bloud, for either there is lesse then there ought to be, or it is worse then it should be. Therfore when there is lesse then there should be, a diet must be assigned with moist and heate meanely: for whatsoeuer doth heate more then is conuenient, either else do drie or coole, those partly by corrupting the bloud that remaineth, & partly by diminishing of it, they do forbid the milke to come. Therfore it is good to giue them pure bread, milke, veale, chickens, partriches, birdes, rere egs, fishes scaly, & raisons the stones taken out, sweet almōnds, lettuse, bugloss, balme, gourdes, & such like

Cause.

Signa.

Cure of lacke of milke in a distempure.

Litle bloud.

Victus ratio.

like. They must drinke wine that is thinne and waterie, they must eschue immoderate exercises, anger, sorrow, and all things that may diminish the bloud. But if the bloud be worse, (as if it be cholericke) first purging of the cholericke humours is requisite, and then vse the diet before prescribed: but if it be flegmaticke bloud, it requireth medicines that do heat in the first or second degree, but they may not drie vp, for such by heating of the flegmaticke humours do turne them into bloud: but among such (which are not onely medicines, but also nourishments) the strongest are, rocket, fennell, dill, parcely, and those things greene before they be dried, for being dried, they do heat and drie more then they ought to do: and those things which do drie, they make the humour which feedeth the bloud, the more grosse, and more small in quantity. The bloud ought to be meanely hot and not grosse, that the milke may be engendred thereof. Moreouer those things that do meanly heat, and haue no great drinesse ioyned with them, they haue vertue to engender milk: among which, besides those which are spoken of before, is *Sesamum* boiled in wine. Also fresh butter, the weight of one ounce drunke with wine. Also sweet almonds, *pistax*, pine nuttes beaten, and eaten with butter. Also this thing is specially praised. ℞. Rice ten times washed and dried againe, and beat it to powder, then seeth it in good milke vpon burning coales: while it doth seeth, put to as much of white sugar as is sufficient, and make a potage. It is made the better, if you adde to it sweet almonds, *pistax*, pine nuttes, barley meale, cycers, and such like: but you must labour also, that by gentle rubbing of the breast, and by hot medicines, which haue an attractiue vertue, the milke may be drawen, and entised to the pappes. *Euill bloud.*

CHAP. XVI.

Of abundance of milke.

DE LACTIS REDVNDANTIA.

IT chanceth sometime that through abundance of milke, the pappes are so filled and swollen, and so stretched out with it, that they are scarce able to hold the abundance of it. It is caused through abundance of good bloud. *Cause.* The euill is knowen by sight and feeling. You must helpe this by and by, for else it is to be feared, least the paps be taken with inflammation. Therefore at *Signa.* the beginning cut the veine of the arme, or the middle veine which is in the arme. After that vse those things which do lightly represse and driue backe, *Curatio.* lest that the bloud be thrust into the lungs by a certen violence. For this purpose it is good to apply a soft spunge dipped in warme *Posca*, & to bind it with bands to the pappes, or apply dates braid with bread and *Posca*. Also it is good *Posca is vineger and water mixed together and wine and water.* to apply an emplaister made of oile of roses, of saunders, corianders, *Psillium*, purcelaine, beane meale, lintels, iuice of plantaine, and of vineger, after this sort. ℞. of beane meale and of lintels, ana. ℥. j. seed of purcelaine. ℥. j. seedes of flaxe and *Althea*, ana. ℥ ij. ß. of plantaine. *M.* j. seed of Coriander. ℥. ij. boile them together in water, vntill it come to the thicknes of hony; after that, put to it oile of roses. ℥. j. ß. boile them againe, and adde therto the yolkes of two egges, and make an emplaister: or make a cerote after this sort. ℞. of the oile of roses and mirtelles, ana. ℥. j. ß. the meales of beanes and lintels, ana. ℥. j. ß. *Emplastrum.* *Cerotum.*

of mintes and rew. ana. ℥. ß. with waxe and Venice turpentine, as much as is sufficient, and make a cerot to apply to the pappes. Also wilde rapes do profit maruellously being annointed with water and hony. Moreouer, it is verie profitable to annoint the place with the iuice of *Cherua* and greene percelie. Likewise, the stone *pyrites* powdred and applied with oile of roses and vineger, doth shew a maruellous effect against abundance of milke. And let their whole diet be such, that thereby but litle bloud may be engendred. Therfore hunger in this euill aboue other things is maruellous good.

CHAP. XVII.

Of milke that is curded.

DE LACTE IN GRVMOS CONVERSO.

Cause.

MANY times the milke curdeth in the pappes, and turneth into the forme of cheese curds. It is caused through abundance of milke, that is, when it is kept long time together on heapes in the pappes, and is not sucked out. It is caused also of a hot distempure, when that through ouermuch heat, the thinne part of the milke is digested and dissolued, and the rest groweth together, and turneth into curdes. Also the like may chance of cold, which may cause milke to curd and congeale as well as other licours. Also somtime milke of his owne nature is grosse and clammie inough, and for that cause doth easily turne to curdes. There need no tokens to know this euill: for it is known by & by, both by touching & by the patients words. The diet in this euill is diuerse according to the diuersitie of causes. For in a hote distempure of the pappes, let the diet decline to cold things, but in a cold distempure contrarywise to hote things. If this euill come through grosseneſſe of the milke, she must vse altogether an extenuate diet. For the cure, if there be abundance of milke, not being as yet curded in the pappes of them that be of lawfull age, and being skilfull women, let it be easily sucked out by litle and litle. Let the pappes be outwardly annointed with iuice of greene parcely, mintes, fenugreek, & other things rehearsed before in the chapter of abundance of milke. Also the creame of a hare beaten with water, if it be annointed is good against all swellings of the paps, especially caused of the corrupt abundance of milk Also lintels sodden in brine is maruellous good, if the pappes be washed with the decoction, & annointed with the lintels being stamped. Also the decoction of fenugreeke and *althea* doth great pleasure. But if ouermuch heat doth cause the milke to curd in the pappes, then annoint them with iuice of purcelaine, and garden nightshade. Also apply oyle of roses with vineger. Also mouse-eare annointed is of good effect. Also the earth called *cimolia* annointed with vineger or with water & oile of roses doth good. Moreouer lintels sodden in vineger, & applied as is aforsaid, is good against cold distēpure of the paps. Vse decoctions of cammomill, fenell, dill, lineseed, and fenugreeke, & therwith foment the paps. Also annoint them with oiles of cammomill, dill, lillies, and such like, but beware they touch not the nipple. Oxes gall annointed is good. Crummes of bread are good with vineger annointed, but you may put to it mintes or parcely, and make the medicine the stronger. This plaister is excellent good. ℞. of hony ℥. ß. of *storax calamita.* ℥ iij. of oxes gall. ℥. ij. of oile of cammomill

Signa. Victus ratio.

Curatio.

chammomill. ℥.ij. mirrhe and frankensence. ana. ℥.ij.ß. commixe them together, and make an emplaister to lay on the pappes.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of inflammation of the pappes.

DE INFLAMMATIONE MAMMARVM.

IT is caused sometime, (as other inflammations be) of plentie of hot bloud flowing to the pappes. Also sometime through milke (that is) when it turneth to suppuration and matter. The aforesaid causes are easie to discerne a sunder. For the first cause of inflammation chanceth to them that be not with child, nor brought in bed: the other cause chanceth onely to such. For the cure in the first cause, you must see bloud drawne from the inward veine of the arme, or the middle veine on the same side, vnlesse the menstruis be stopped: for then it were better to cut the veine of the hamme or ancle. After this you must come to restrictiue medicines, which may not be strong, least that the humours do violently thrust inwardly to the noble parts of the body: or else you may mixe with them some discussiue things. Therfore for that purpose it is verie good to take oile of roses, with the iuice of water of nightshad, vineger, and the decoction of cammomill: in this dip and wet linnen clothes, and apply it to the pappes. Also an emplaister made of barley meale, lineseed, saunders, bole armoniake, grease and oile of roses are good. And if the Phisition doth see that repercussiue medicins do not much good, he must straight proceed to my booke of the cure of impostumes in the breasts. But if inflammation be caused of curded milke, in the beginning you must apply a softe spunge dipped in warme *posca*, and bind it to it. Also apply dates brayed with bread and *posca*. Also apply crummes of bread with mirrhe, saffron, and mints, and such like. But if the inflammation endure still, proceed to the chapter of impostumes in the breasts, as hereafter shall proceed.

Causæ.

Curatio.

Venæ sectio.

Emplastrum.

The third booke.

CAAP. I

Of weakenesse of the stomach.

DE IMBECILLITATE VENTRICVLI.

WEAKNES of the stomake is sometime caused through distempure of the effectrix and working qualities without any flowing of humours. For as *Galen* saith *in lib. 3. de simp. causis. cap. 10.* All vehement distempure doth ouerthrowe and cast downe the strength. Also sometime it is caused of an humour, being contained in the bosome, and large space of the stomacke,

Causæ.

Signa.

which hath power and vertue either to heat, or coole, or to moiſten or dry, or two of theſe qualities mixed together: ſometime it is cauſed of an humour ſtuffed and drowned in the filmes, and cotes of the ſtomake. Vehement thirſt, abhorring of meat, and vnſauorie belkings, do betoken diſtempure onely of a hote qualitie. Contrariwiſe litle thirſt, vnmeaſurable appetite, and foure belkings, betoken diſtempure of a cold qualitie. And to be ſhort, if the ſtomach be greeued with hote or cold diſtempure, it changeth the meats that be eaten into the nature of the diſtempure: ſo that the meates may be perceiued to be chaunged into the ſauour of roaſting or ſowerneſſe, without the commixing of any humour. Moreouer if the diſtempure be hote, you ſhall ſee the patient by and by eaſed with taking of medicines, or meates, or drinkes that be cold. But if the diſtempure be cold, the patient feeleth eaſe in hote meates or medicines, but he feeleth hurt with cold things. In a moiſt deſtempure, the patient feeleth no thirſt, or verie litle; he hath abundance of ſpittle, and doth deſire moiſt meates. In a dry diſtempure there is drineſſe of the tongue, extenuation of the bodie, litle ſpittle, and vehement thirſt. Moreouer vomiting & deſire thereto, heauineſſe of the ſtomacke, and belking, ſpecially after meat, betokeneth abundance of naughtie and corrupt humors. And if yealow choler do abound, there followeth bitterneſſe of the mouth, vomiting vp of choler, thirſt, belkings, with ſauour roaſted, and gnawing of the ſtomacke; but if fleume do abound, it doth cauſe no gnawing in the ſtomacke, vnleſſe it be ſalt fleume: there are preſent ſowre belkings, no thirſt and ſtretching out of the ſtomacke. If melancholy abound, it cauſeth ſadneſſe and feare, ſtinking belkings, and ſpittings, and ſauour of filth, ſleepe with fits of ſtrange imaginations, contraction and paine of the hammes and calues of the legs. Euery diſtempure is corrected and amended by his contrarie. Therfore you muſt coole a hot diſtempure, and heate a cold diſtempure; alſo moiſten a dry, and dry a moiſt diſtempure: likewiſe muſt you do in compound diſtempures, either heat and dry, or heate and moiſten, or elſe coole and moiſten, or coole and drie.

Curatio.

Cure of a hote diſtempure.

Thoſe that be vexed with hot diſtempure of the ſtomak, are cured with a cooling diet, but ſpecially if they take cold things with vineger. Therfore let their bread be mixed or dipped in *poſca*. For fleſh, let him vſe chickens, partrich, vele ſodden with vineger or verivice. For pot-herbs, lettuſe and purcelaine are verie good. Alſo apples and ſharpe peares. The ſicke muſt drinke ſmall ale or beere, if he hath bene vſed to it, but if not, let him drinke the decoction of cinnamon, or wine that is thin and watery. You muſt apply and lay vpon the ſtomacke outwardly ſuch medicines as do meanely reſtraine and coole. They which be vexed with a cold diſtempure of the ſtomacke, muſt be healed with the contraries to the aforeſayed things, as with the decoction of anniſe ſeed, rew, and parcely ſeed. Let the meats which they eate be condite and dreſſed with cinnamon, *calamus aromaticus*, cloues, pepper, and ſuch like odoraments. Alſo giue vnto them *Diatrion piperion*, *diacalaminthes*, and *theriaca*. Annoint the ſtomacke outwardly with thoſe ointments which haue power to heate, and let them vſe to drinke wine that is old and ſomewhat aſtringent. A moiſt diſtempure is helped with meates that do drie without any ſtrong heat or coldneſſe. Moreouer, vſing of leſſe drinke then he is accuſtomed to do. A drie diſtempure

Poſca is a ſauce made with vineger & water

Cold diſtempure.

Moiſt diſtempure.

Dry diſtempure.

pure muſt be cured as the feuer Ethicke is cured, of which we will treat in the fourth booke. But if ſome humour hauing power to heate or coole, do cauſe weakeneſſe of the ſtomach, you muſt marke and conſider diligently whether that humor do ſwim in the boſome and largeneſſe of the ſtomach, or whether it be ſtuffed in the filmes and cotes of the ſtomach. If the humor be contained in the boſome of the ſtomach, and be a cholericke humour, it muſt be purged ſtraight by vomite: warme water or thinne *mulſa* drunke doeth cauſe an eaſie vomit. It wilbe better if you miniſter before it things that do moiſten, as is the broth of ptiſan, or elſe the yolke of an egge. But if the cholericke humour be ſtuffed in the filmes of the ſtomach, purge him with *hierapicra*, for as *Gal.* ſaith, there can no better medicine be found againſt vicious humors, being ſtuffed in the filmes of the ſtomach. The humor being purged let them vſe the ſame diet, that they do which are vexed with a hot diſtemper, as is taught before. Miniſter within the body conſerues, which haue vertue to coole and moiſten. Alſo miniſter electuaries hauing like vertues. Apply outwardly to the ſtomach things that do coole, and meanely reſtraine, as is oile of roſes, oile of quinces, putting to ſaunders, balauſtie, corall, and purſlaine; but yet vſe things that do coole in a meane, according to the contrarietie of the diſtempure. For ouermuch vſe of cold things doth not only not profit, but alſo oftentimes it cauſeth an incurable diſeaſe, becauſe of the great heat that is requiſite for concoction and digeſtion. If humors being flegmaticke, groſſe and tough, do ſwim in the breadth of the ſtomach, he muſt vſe *oximel*, wherin hath bene ſodden medicines which haue vertue to extenuate and cut, as is, hiſop, the root of *ireos*, origan, ſauory and horehound. But if the flegmalicke humors be drowned in the filmes and cotes of the ſtomach, then firſt you muſt miniſter thoſe things which do cut and deuide clãmie humors & groſſe fleume, but afterward you muſt purge him. If you will know what medicines do purge tough fleume, looke before in the firſt booke, chap. 12. Alſo *hierapicra* is good to purge groſſe humours. Let him alſo vſe a diet which doth extenuate: and let him vſe electuaries that do heate, as *diatrion piperion*, *diagalanges*, *diacinnamomum*, *diamber*, ginger condit, *diacorus*, and ſuch like. Apply outwardly to the ſtomach ſuch things as do heat, as is, oile of *nardinum*, oile of mints, oile of wormwood, and oile of maſtick, and other things hauing the like vertue. For this purpoſe alſo cerotes are commended, which the Phiſitions commonly call, *ſcutum ſtomachale*, ſuch as is this, ℞. choſen cinnamon, cloues, long pepper. ana. ℥. j. *gallie moſchate*, maces. ana. ℥. ß. *calamus aromaticus* frankenſence. ana. ℥. j. ß. wood of aloës. ℈. j. ſowne mints. ℥. ij. maſticke, lapdanum. ana. ℥. ij. oiles of maſticke and narde. ana. ℥. ß. with waxe and turpentine as much as will ſuffice, make a cerot to lay vpon the ſtomach, and couer it with purple ſilke; or vſe this medicine. ℞. maſtick beaten to powder. ℥. j. ß then ſtrew it vpon lether being cut like a buckler, and poure vpon it *oleum nardinum*, then hold it to the fire till it be molten together, and ſtrew vpõ it choſen cinamon, nutmegs, and cloues. ana. ℥. j beaten into powder, and apply it to the ſtoamach. To be ſhort, theſe & other things which do ſtrengthen and heate the ſtomach, are to be applyed, as is, mints, wormewood, frankenſence, maſticke, cinnamon, galingale, ginger, maces, wood of aloës, *calamus odoratus*, and ſuch like rehearſed in our ſeuenth booke of making medicines, of which one may make diuerſe kinds of remedies as he ſeeth cauſe.

Cure of weakneſſe of the ſtomach cauſed of an humour.

Choler.

Victus ratio.

Fleume.

Diet.

Scutum Stomachi.

Aliud.

Medicines which ſtrengthen and heate the ſtomach.

CHAP. II.

Of yelking and vomiting.

De Nausea Et Vomitv.

Cause Nausea.

Dispositiõ to vomit (called *Nausea*) which is a naughtie and wicked motion of the expulsiue vertue of the stomach, is caused of a vicious humour contained in the stomach, being either hot or cold, which humor either swimmeth in the concauitie and hollownesse of the stomach, or it is stuffed in the filmes of the stomach, cleauing like birdlime, & can scarce be drawn away: or the humour being more watery, it is drowned in the cotes of the stomach, like water in a spunge. And such humors are oftentimes engendred through distẽper of the stomach aswell hot as cold: somtimes such humors do flow from the whole bodie, as from other parts (being first euil affected) into the stomak as it were the excremẽts: as frõ the liuer or the splene, or the head, or frõ the whole bodie. If those humours be engendred through the distemper, you may easily perceiue it by the signes declared in the last chapter before this. But whether that humor swim in the hollownesse of the stomach, or be stuffed in his cotes, thus shalt thou know it. If the vicious humor do swim in the stomach, & cause *nausea* (that is) disposition to vomit, then for the most part vomiting followeth, & the stomach corrupting the meats, it doth manifestly infect it with that humor, and changeth it into his nature; but if a tough humour be drowned in the cotes of the stomach, it causeth disposition to vomit, but yet such a disposition as bringeth forth nothing, although the patient do prouoke and straine himselfe as though he coud vomit: but if that humor be watery and wheyish, then it causeth vomiting, not only before meat, but also after meat, and especially if that humor swim in the breadth of the stomach: for if it be stuffed and cleaue to the rop of the stomach, it doth moue vomiting without bringing any thing vp before meate; but when other parts (from which do flow excrements into the stomach) be euill affected, the sicke himselfe doth first feele the griefe of the member that is diseased: for either he feeleth heat, or cold, or heauinesse nigh about the place that is diseased, or also he cannot suffer to let the place be touched hard. But if the whole bodie be full of vicious humours, you may know that by the colour, and by breaking out of wheales & pushes in the skin, and also by the vrine you may discerne it. For the cure, you must diligently consider which griefe it is, whether it be a disease caused only of the stomach, or of the whole body, or of some other member. For if humors do flow into the stomach from some other member, or from the whole body, you must first take care for the whole body, or for that member that is diseased, but yet you may not neglect the stomach altogether: for vnlesse the whole body be first purged of vicious humors, he laboureth in vaine that goeth about to resist the flowing of humors into some one place. So also he that doth cure the member that is first diseased, he cutteth off as it were the fountaine of al flowings into the stomach. If you will know how those members are to be cured that do send excrements into the stomach, you must learne that in their proper chapters before or after. But if humours be ingendred in the stomach causing disposition to vomit, you must marke whether those humors be thin, cholerick and wheyish, and being contained in the hollownes of the stomach: for then you must giue him

Signa.

Curatio Nausea.

him very thinne iuice of ptisan, or hot water, and the sicke must prouoke vomit with his finger, or with a feather being put downe into his throate. But if the humors be stuffed within vpon the top of the stomack, you must minister one dram of aloes to drinke being dissolued in water. For against hot humors which be in the stomacke, Aloes is the best medicine, so that often it hath healed euill stomacks in one day. After the humors be purged, and other medicines ministred, which do stop or make temperate the sharpnesse of choler, then you must cure the hote distempure of the stomacke, as is taught in the last Chapter before this. If they be flegmaticke, grosse and tough humours, which do swim in the breadth of the stomacke, you must cure them after that sort that is taught of vs in the former chapter, and then you must get away the cold distépure of the stomack, as is afore taught. Now, for vomiting you must note that in the beginning it ought not to be stopped, if the sicke be the better for it, according to *Hippocrates* saying. In vomiting which commeth by it selfe, if such things be purged as ought to be, it is good, and may be suffered; but if not, then contrariwise it is euill. Therefore you may not stoppe that vomit which is decretory, or where humours do flow from the whole body into the stomacke, or when humours be engendred in the stomacke through distempure. But then you must rather helpe the motion of the expulsiue vertue in a hot cause, by ministring hot water with oile of violets to drinke: but in a cold cause, minister oximell and other things before rehersed. But if the vomiting be immoderate, & do begin to weaken the strength of the sicke, then you must goe about to stop and restraine it. Therefore first let the sicke lie vpward in a conuenient house, and contrary to the disease: (that is) let the house be cold, if the disease be hot: and contrari wise let it be hote, if the disease be cold; let the extreme parts of the body be rubbed, & let thé be felt with warme hands, and also binde them strongly with bands: also put the feete and hands in luke warme water. Also hold odoraments of good sauor to the nose for to smell, as roses, quinces, peniroyall, mints, fennell, spickenarde. Annoint the stomacke outwardly with oiles of wormewood and roses. Emplaisters made of Dates, quinces, and wormwood be good. Also Cerotes made of them and such like, as mints, darnell meale, frankensence, mastick, be good being laid vpon the stomacke. Also you must stampe well, dates that haue bin steeped in old wine; afterward you must put to it mastick & frankensence, ech of them finely poudred by it selfe afore, & then bray them together. To this place also you must call the remedies, that are spoken of hereafter, partly in the chapter of *cholera*, and partly in the chapter of fluxe *dysenteria*. Furthermore that euill continuing long, if the meate cannot tary in the stomacke, you must fasten a cupping glasse to the mouth of the stomacke with great flame, vntill the place wax red: and you must giue the patient meat, while the glasse hangeth on still.

Of vomiting.

1. *Apho.* 2.

Cure of immoderate vomiting.

CHAP. III.

Of immoderate thirst.

De Siti Immensa.

Cause.

THirst, as *Galen* witnesseth *in lib.* 1. *de simpli. med. facultate, cap.* 30. is caused two manner of waies: partly through want of moisture, and partly through abundance of heat. The stomacke is heat many & sundry waies; that is, either

through hot distempure of the bare quality simple or compound, or through hot and cholericke humors engendred in the stomacke, or else flowing to it. Also through abundant drinking of old wine. The stomacke is dried either through the dry distempure that is in it, or through salt humours, or drinking of salt water. Also oftentimes it is dried through consent of the whole body, as it chanceth in burning feuers, and feuer Ethicks. The diuersity of causes may easily be knowen by the patients wordes, and by those signes which we haue spoken of in the second chap. next before. Therefore the cause being known, you must remedy each of them according to their causes diuersly. Therefore you must remedy thirst comming of heate, by ministring things that do coole. Therefore both the drawing in of cold aire, and water or watery wine being drunken are good. Also cucumberseed chewed, or if it be hulled & beaten, and drunke with water, it helpeth greatly against thirst engendred through heate of the stomacke. Likewise lettuce seed chewed and drunke profiteth. Also purcelaine seed likewise. The best thing to quench thirst is this. ℞. of the seeds of sowen cucumbers husked. ℥. j. *diatragacanthæ*. ℥. ß. gumme tragacantham beaten to powder, & serced. ℥. ij. and beat the seeds, and put those powders to the whites of egs being raw, and beating them altogether, make pils and dry them in the shadow. Of these pils minister one at once to be holden vnder the tong, that it may dissolue by litle and litle, and so be swallowed. They that haue had burning and heat in the stomacke long time, the iuice of the sweete roote being drunke, doth helpe them, and also the roote it selfe with water & the iuice of purcelain. But those which are vexed with thirst caused of heat & drinesse, as it chanceth in all burning and very dry feuers, and to those which labor in sommer, or in great heat, such are best healed with *oxicratum* (that is) a drinke made with vineger and water sodden together. For vineger doth coole mightily, and doth pierce euery place quickly, and the water (besides the coolnesse that it hath) is moistest of any thing: for nothing (as *Galen* saith in the place before rehearsed) is moister then water. Also the thirst which engendreth in feuers, may be mittigated in sprinkling the head with the coldest oiles, as oile of roses being sprinckled aloft on the fore part of the head. Also the best remedy for drinesse is sleepe, where heat and moisture are commixt together, as it chanceth in that kind of dropsie, in which plenty of salt humors be heaped in the stomacke and belly, or in those which haue their stomake stuffed with salt fleume, then vineger is the best remedy. It is also good for them to soupe the iuice of quinces or peares, or veriuice with water. If humors cholericke or salt swimming in the stomake, or drowned and stuffed in it do prouoke thirst, then you must minister medicines which can purge out those humors. Afterward you must vse medicines which doe restraine and comfort the stomacke and strengthen it. Examples whereof you must seeke before. They which thirst through drinking of much old wine, are holpen with drinking of cold water & other things rehearsed in *lib. 1. cap. 14.*

Signa.

Curatio.

Pilles to hold vnder the tong.

Oxicratum seu posca.

CHAP. IIII.

Of paine in the stomake.

Dolor in stomachi causa. Καρδιαλγια.

PAine of the stomacke is caused when naughty, venimous, & gnawing humors be kept in the stomake, whereby it chanceth that through intollerable

ble gnawing, they cause sounding, which they call *stomachica*. This disease is knowen by the continuall pricking & gnawing of the mouth of the stomacke. *Signa.*
In this euill you must giue him meates that doe coole, and which may bring strength to the stomacke (as is) lettuce and purcelaine taken with vineger. Also pomegranates, and orenges, peares, sharpe grapes, and such like. Also bread being steeped in very cold water is good. Also let his other meates be such that will easily digest, and yet not easie to corrupt (as be) chickens, partrich, birds of mountaines, & such like sodden with veriuice. Also fishes bred among stones, sodden with vineger, limons, and the sharpe iuice of Cytrons. Likewise let the sicke drinke water wherein hath bene sodden a litle cynamon, or giue him thin watery wine. For the cure, in the beginning you must prouoke vomit by the remedies aforesaid. Then after that also he must purge downward, by taking *H. erapicra*. Which things being done, you must vse remedies to strengthen the stomacke both inwardly and outwardly, as is taught in the second chapter, and in other places also. *Diet.* *Curatio.*

CHAP. V.

Of inflammation of the stomacke.

De Inflammatione Ventriculi.

INflammation of the stomake is caused no otherwise then the inflammation of other parts of the body: that is to say, through the flowing together of abundance of hot bloud. Signes hereof, is exceeding great paine continual ly, which cannot be mitigated with any medicines that be applied to it. Moreouer there is swelling and burning which you may feele. Also a feuer, heauinesse, and appetite to meate. The diet (like as it is in other inflammations) must be thinne, small, and exquisite. Therefore he must vse iuice of ptisan, and he must abstaine from flesh and wine, and from other hot meats. Let the sicke drinke water, wherein hath bene sodden a litle cinnamon, or iuice of foure pomegranats, or of some other fruit that is cold and restringent. Let him sleep little, and let him not talke much. Let him eschew sadnes as much as he can, and let him remaine in an aire meanely cold. You must beginne the cure with letting of bloud, if there be fulnesse of the whole body, & strength of the sicke. You must cut the inward veine of the arme, and you must draw bloud according to the strength of the patient. After this you must apply outwardly those things that do represse & restraine, specially vppon the place where the paine & swelling do most appeare. For the stomacke (specially the mouth of it) hath euer neede of the commixing of those things that do restraine, but most of all when it hath an inflammation. Therefore those which do attempt the cure with loosening remedies onely, without the commixing of those things that do strengthen the stomacke, they cause perill of death; therfore alwaies whether it be an oile that the inflamed member be nourished withall; or a soft plaister laid vppon that member, you must commixe some restringent thing with thē. Therfore for this purpose it is good to apply to it oile wherin wormwood or quinces hath bene sodden, commixed together with mastick. Also the iuice of quinces, or peares, putting to it red roses, barley meale, sanders, bole armoniack, & such like. Also you may vse this cerot. ℞. barley meale. ℥. ß. white *Causa.* *Signa.* *Victus ratio.* *Curatio.* *Cerotum.*

ſanders, and red roſes. ana. ℥.ij. bole armoniacke. ℥.j.ß. aloes, maſticke. ana. ℥.j. wormwood, nutmegs, *balauſtiæ*. ana. ℥.ß. oiles of maſticke, and roſes. ana. ℥.j.ß. with waxe and turpentine as much as is ſufficient, make a cerote to lay vpon the ſtomack. But if there be need of great reſtriction (as it chanceth then, when the ſtomack is ſo weake that it cannot hold and retaine meate) you may commixe with the ſaid things veriuice, iuice of wormwood, or *hipociſchidos*, and *ſumach*, and ſuch like. All theſe things (if the inflammation be vehement) muſt be applied to the griefe cold. And if the belly doth ſend forth nothing, you muſt prouoke it with eaſie cliſters. Nor he worketh not vnwiſely, that doth miniſter. ℥.ß. of *caſſia fiſtula* diſſolued in endiue water, after that the burning heate is ſomewhat abated. Alſo at that time you may commix with the reſtrictiue medicins, which you apply outwardly, many things that do diſcuſſe and diſſolue, as is, fenugreeke meale, floures of cammomill, and Althæa, and lineſeed; you muſt neuer (as we warned you before, no not at that time, when there floweth no more to the griefe, and that cannot be driuen backe, which is contained in the diſeaſed member) you muſt not I ſay at that time, neither vſe onely looſening medicines, or onely diſſoluing medicines: but alwaies you muſt commix with them reſtrictiue things which haue power to preſerue and keepe the ſtrength of the ſtomacke; therefore at that time you muſt vſe this

Emplaſtrum. emplaiſter. ℞. the meale of lineſeed and fenugreeke. ana. ℥.ß. ſeed of dill. ℥.ij. floures of cammomill and melilote. ana ℥.ß wormwood, balauſtie, red roſes. ana. ℥.ij. *hypociſchidis*. ℈.ij oiles of cammomill, lillies, roſes, maſticke. ana. ℥.ß. hennes greaſe, and gooſe greaſe. ana. ℥.ij. commixe them altogether, & make an emplaiſter: but before it be applied, it is not in vaine to annoint the ſtomacke with this ointment. ℞. oiles of cammomill, dill, and quinces. ana. ℥iij.

Vnguentum. powder of the roote of *Althæa*, wormewood, lineſeed. ana. ℈.j. waxe ſufficient, and make an ointment.

CHAP. VI.

Of abhorring of meate.

De Cibi Fastidio.

Cauſe. ABhorring of meat, or looſing of appetite, doth chance either through looſing of the ſenſe of ſucking of the veines, which is naturall hunger, as *Galen* witneſſeth, *libro primo, de ſympt. cauſis, cap. 7.* or becauſe there is no ſucking out or becauſe the body is not emptied. Alſo ſometime it chanceth through ſome hote diſtempure, ſpecially of the ſtomacke, which diſtempure doth diſſolue the hard and ſound members by looſing of them, and maketh them weaker in drawing: but the moiſt members, it ſtretcheth out vnmeaſurably by ſhedding. Sometime it is cauſed through abundance of vicious humours contained in the ſtomacke, and through immoderate fluxe of the belly and bowelles: alſo through ouer much bloudletting. Alſo the ſicke doth abhorre meate in continuall and vehement feuers, alſo in inflammations of the ſtomacke, the liuer & the matrice, and for many other cauſes which need not to be reherſed here.

Signa. The ſignes which betoken a hot diſtempure, are rehearſed before in the firſt Chapter. Thoſe which abhorre meat, through the vice of cholericke humors, are troubled with gnawing of the ſtomacke, & with appetite to vomite, & with thirſt.

thirſt. Thoſe that haue humours that be rotten, they haue ſometime a feuer: but thoſe which haue loathing of meat through groſſe and clammy humors, they neither feele gnawing of the ſtamacke, nor thirſt, but commonly to all there commeth diſpoſition to vomit. If loathing of meat doth come about the beginning of this diſeaſe, or about the vigour & ſtrength of it, which the patients ſtrength may yet ſuffer, it cauſeth no perill; for the ſicke neede but litle nouriſhment. But if loſſe of appetite do come in the declination of the whole diſeaſe, or in long weakneſſe, or in lacke of ſtrength, or of vnmeaſurable purging, it is not without perill and daunger. This euill is encreaſed of age: for children are vnluckily troubled with this diſeaſe: that is to ſay, ſuch as are deuourers by nature, and haue neede of continuall nouriſhment; therefore if children haue this diſeaſe, great exceſſe aboue nature is ſignified by it. For cure of this diſeaſe, if the loſſe of appetite be cauſed through weakneſſe of the ſtomake, you muſt marke what diſtempure doth weaken the ſtrength, and you muſt cure it by contraries to that diſtempure, as is before taught. If the preſence of vitious humours doe cauſe loathing of meat, if thoſe humours be thin and gnawing, you muſt firſt beginne before any other thing be miniſtred, to purge the humours contained in the ſtomacke, by vomit. And if the patient doth vomite vneaſily, miniſter vnto him ſoupings, and other nouriſhments which do moiſten, that they may driue thoſe humours downe into the bellie, and driue them out beneath; or purge the womb with *hierapicra*. Then we muſt bring the bodie to a good temper, with ſuch things as be meet for that purpoſe. Thoſe that do abhorre meat through groſſe and clammie humours, you ſhall cure them by extenuating and cutting the humours, aſwell with *Oximell*, as alſo with thoſe medicines, that are made of this and other ſawces, as with Capers, Oliues, muſterd ſeed, and ſuch like, declared in the firſt chapter. If loathing of meate happen through inflammation, or ſtopping of any other part of the bodie, then you muſt go about the curing of that member or part. And you muſt go about to prouoke appetite againe, onely by odoraments, either by odour and ſmelling of wine infuſed, or decoction of quinces, or peares. Alſo you ſhall go about the ſame thing with ſoft annointings with oiles; as oiles of roſes, maſticke, and ſuch like, and moderate frictions and rubbings of the bodie: alſo inceſſions to be applied to the loines and ſhare. Alſo let meats be prepared of diuerſe and ſundrie kinds, and after the daintieſt faſhion, that beſides their ſweetneſſe, they may entice and prouoke their appetite: firſt of the beſt kind of corne, and ſuch as doth nouriſh much, as is *Alica* waſhed with the decoction of dates & damaſcene prunes, rere egs, birds of the mountaines that be leane and of no ſtrong ſauour, and ſwines feete much conſumed in ſeething. For if he onely taſt ſuch meates, they nouriſh the bodie ſufficiently. Whatſoeuer you miniſter, ought to be of ſuch ſort, that it may eaſily be deuoured and ſwallowed: for thoſe things that require much chewing do cauſe vnpleaſantneſſe, and put away appetite. Nor you may not neglect to apply outwardly vpon the ſtomake beſides the ointmentes, emplaiſters made of dates, quinces, wormewood, and ſuch like. Alſo cerotes made of the ſame things, examples whereof you muſt ſeeke before.

Curatio.

Alica is made of wheat ſteeped in water beaten & dried in the ſun, & then broken groſſely.

CHAP. VII.

Of a doglike appetite.

De Appetitv Canino.

A Doglike appetite is contrary to losse of appetite. For they that are thus diseased, they desire much meat: and when they cannot refraine their appetite, they deuoure in meat without measure; then they being heauie with the multitude of meate, and their stomake not being able to beare the meates that are in it without hurt, they turne to vomiting. Then afterward they fill themselues with meate, and againe they returne to vomiting like dogges. It is caused through cold distempure of the stomake, or through vicious & sharpe humours which do gnaw and pricke the mouth of the stomake: for cold vicious humours do cause a gnawing much like the proportion of sucking, and do raise appetite of meat. Also sometime it chanceth through vnmeasurable dissipation and spreading abroad of the whole bodie, which do follow either the violence of heat, or the weakenesse of the vertue retentiue. Cold distempure of the stomake is knowen by euill digestion, windinesse, rombling, and many egestions of seiges, and by other tokens declared before in the first Chapter. Sharpe humours are knowne by soure belkins, and much egestion, and verie thinne. If it be caused of vnmeasurable dissipation and spreading abroad, and that through heate which consumeth the meate like fire, and rarefieth the skinne: then the egestions sent out by the bellie, be lesse in quantitie then the meate that is eaten, and also the egestions be drier: But if that dissipation come through weakenesse of the retentiue vertue, which cannot master the meates, then there is much deiection and casting out of those things that are eaten. For the cure, colde distempure must be healed as is taught in the first chap. of this booke. If doglike and vnmeasurable appetite be caused of sharpe humours stuffed in the mouth of the stomake, and as it were water soked into a spunge, you must minister in the beginning, *Hierapicra Galeni*: for this doth not onely heat, but also doth cut off and make cleane, and draw out from the depth of the mouth of the stomake, humours that be stuffed in it, and it causeth them to auoid downwardes, and yet it addeth strength to the stomacke, that afterward it will not easily receiue any hurtfull humour: therefore that is the best remedie for vitious humours stuffed in the stomacke, to bring them forth, it is ministred the weight of ℥.iiij. with wine infused with warme water. If a child doth labor of this disease, which cannot drink the medicin for bitternes, make ℥.j. or ij. of it in pilles, & annoint it outwardly with hony, & let them swallowe them downe, seeing that for the most parte, this euill chanceth of sharpe and sowre fleume, you must vse such meates and medicines, as haue power to cut, deuide, scoure, and heate: as be garlicke, leekes, time, sauorie, origan, peniroiall, and such like. Therefore the humours that be vicious being purged in the beginning, you must let the vse this diet. Let not their bread be new, nor wel leauened, with the which also you must mixe things that prouoke vrine, as is, anise seed, caraway seed, cõmin, parsley, & such like. Let his meats be fat & oily. Also soupings are good, that do destroy appetite, as be pottage made with much honny, and much oile, or goose grease, hennes grease,

Cause.

Signa.

Curatio.

Cure if it be of sharp humors.

Victus ratio.

or

or swines greaſe. Let his pot herbes be mallowes. Alſo giue him the brains and fatteſt partes of birdes, and of fiſhes likewiſe, and thoſe things that do altogether deſtroy appetite, and cauſe fulneſſe, and that doe nouriſh but litle, although they be eaten in great quantity. You may well giue them great plenty of wine, euen as much as they can drinke, and ſuch wine as doth heat greatly, as thoſe doe that be yellow in colour, thinne in ſubſtance, ſweete in ſmelling, and without reſtriction. For this doth heate the ſtomacke, and deſtroy the ſharpneſſe of humours, ſo that often ſuch wine with oily and fat meates, ſufficeth for the perfect cure. As *Hyppocrates* ſayth, drinking of wine ceaſeth hunger: and you muſt giue wine, as well to them that be faſting, as to them alſo which haue eaten meate, although they be not as yet a thirſt. But you muſt giue it to them that be faſting, hote, or warme at the leaſt. He muſt abſtaine from all ſower and reſtrictiue meates and drinkes, but ſpecially from fruite. Let their banquetting meates be *piſtacium*, almondes, pine nuttes, and oliues, with hony. Miniſter alſo vnto them milke, as well alone, as alſo with wine called *Paſſum*, or with hony: ſo that, neuertheleſſe you muſt take heede that you giue it not to thoſe, that are wont to haue it waxe ſower in their ſtomacke, for to thoſe it doth more hurt then good. But if it be well digeſted, it doth not only ſtop the appetite, but it ſofteneth the belly being ſtopped, and ſtoppeth his fluxes. Alſo you muſt make potions and fine cakes with milke, and giue them to him, as be, marchpaines, and rice ſodden with milke. Alſo hee muſt waſh now and then, and make fat their skinne largely. This kinde of cure you muſt vſe as long as the ſicke is diſeaſed, and till he be cleane whole. If the dog-like appetite come through vnmeaſurable ſcattering abroad, opening, and diſſipation, then in ſuch a diſeaſe it is good to thicken the skinne, and make it groſſer with oile made with vnripe oliues, or oiles of roſes, or of mirtles, or any other wherein any reſtrictiue thing hath bene ſodden with a ſoft fire. Let the ſicke remaine in an ayre, that is cold and perſpirable. Let him eſchue hot ayre and hot bathes. Alſo let him eſchue wine and all things as well outwardly as inwardly that doe heate. Let his drinke be cold water, or decoction of Cinnamon. Put the ſicke in a cold bath, if nothing do let it, or ſlendernes and leaneneſſe of the body, or the coldnes of ſome member of the body, as the breaſt or ſome other. You muſt giue vnto them meats that be ſtable, durable, & hard to corrupt, as be periwincles, and all kinds of ſhell fiſh, if they be ſodden with water twiſe changed. Alſo ſwines fleſh being in full ſtrength, and ſpecially the bellie. Alſo fat beefe, and all things that be all fat, and that do ſwimme in the ſtomach, and be hard to be digeſted and diſtributed. For there be ſome that haue this diſeaſe, which by reaſon of a ſharpe and biting heate, and as it were a feuerous heate in them, which doe digeſt and conſume beefe and other things hard of digeſtion, with leſſe labour then fiſhes of ſtonie places, and ſuch like things which be eaſie of digeſtion. Of egges thoſe are good for them, which be ſodden till they be hard, or fried in a frying pan. Giue them manchet made of fat broths without honie. Alſo rice ſodden with butter, and vnleauened bread. Looke how much the cuill is abated, and ſo much you muſt abate of the groſſe meats that you are wont to giue, & you muſt miniſh the reſtrictiue things alſo that you lay without. For ſomtime the vehemẽcy of the appetite being abated,

2. *Aph.* 21.

Cure if it come of immoderate diſſipation.

when the bodie is filled with crude and groſſe humours, it turneth into ſome other worſe diſeaſe. Among reſtrictiue medicines beſides thoſe things which are aforeſaid, you muſt vſe this ointment. ℞. oiles of mirtles, and quinces. ana. ℥.ß. oile of roſes. ℥.j. iuice of plantaine. ℥.ij. red ſanders, maſticke, biſtorta, red roſes. ana. ℥.j. bole armoniake. ℈.ij. *Hipociſtidos, acatia, ſanguis draconis.* ana. ℈.j. waxe as much as is ſufficient, and make an ointment.

Vnguentum. aſtringens.

CHAP. VIII.

Of great famine.

De Bvlimo.

Bvlimus. *Cauſa.*

Bvlimos in Greeke, is nothing elſe but great and vehement famine or hunger. It is cauſed through coldneſſe of the ſtomake, and for want and weaknes of ſtrength, and in a man it taketh his beginning altogether of outward cold: for long iournies (eſpecially when there in ſnow) cauſeth this diſeaſe. It is knowne thus. In the beginning there is felt much hunger, which for all that, doth not long endure: for afterward the heart of the patient beginneth to faile him, with coldneſſe of the extreame parts, and want of ſpirit and breath.

Signa.

Curatio.

You muſt apply remedies for this diſeaſe by and by, becauſe there be that in deſert places, or in bathes, being ſuddenly taken with this diſeaſe, do periſh for lacke of helpe. Therefore they that are troubled with great hunger, in a iourney without a feuer, or any other wayes, you muſt recomfort them with vineger, or peniroiall, giuen them to ſmell vnto, or earth whatſoeuer it be, ſprinckled with vineger, or apples, or peares, or ſuch other like frute which is next hand. Alſo new bread holden to the noſe doth helpe, and cheeſe of good ſauour. Alſo porke roſted or ſodden, and vniuerſally all that doth nouriſh much: but eſpecially that which hath ſauour of roſted meate, and is well ſeaſoned, & hath a ſufficient ſauour: for by ſuch odours and ſauours, they that haue this diſeaſe, are for the moſt part refreſhed, ſeeing there is nothing (as we ſaid before in the ſecond booke, the fourteenth chapter) that doth refreſh and renew the ſtrength ſooner then odours. Moreouer you muſt bind the extreme parts of them with bands, and you muſt put the tippes of their hands and feete in verie hote water, and you muſt raiſe them and ſtirre them, as well by pricking of the cheekes, as alſo by pulling of the haire and eares. And when he is ſomewhat come againe to himſelfe, you ſhall miniſter vnto him bread infuſed in wine, or ſome ſuch thing, which doth reſtore ſtrength verie quickly, (as be) reare egges, *Alica* with wine. The next remedie they muſt looke for by meat, which if they cannot take when it is offred them, you muſt put it into the mouth violently, and compell them to ſwallow it, for by and by after that, they are deliuered from their great hunger, and from their fainting, and are raiſed quickly. For this purpoſe are good alſo the Antidotes, which are compounded of diuerſe ſweete odoures, as is, *Aromaticum roſarum, Diamber, Dianthon, diamoſchi, Alipta moſchata*, and ſuch other like. And if this diſeaſe chance to come in feuers (which is ſeldome ſeene) and if it doth ruſh in ſuddenly about the declination of fits belonging to feuers, you may miniſter meat without feare. But if it chance in the beginning of the augmentation, or in the vigour and ſtrength of the feuer, the ſicke muſt be refreſhed by the odoraments aforeſaid,

aforsaid, and specially by those things which haue corne in them, as is wet with water, or hot bread that sendeth forth a burning sauor. Also you must vse frictions and rubbings of the extreme partes, and apply plaisters made of dates, or quinces sodden in wine: and this must you do vntill the declining of the fit, that you may safely giue him meate. And if the sicke be neuer the better through these things, you must venture to helpe him by giuing of meate. Therefore minister iuice of ptisan, or one morsell or other wet in wine that is white and thin: for they being refreshed, and as it were suddenly called back, they afterward come to the declining of the fit. We must eschue altogether in them that haue this disease, long delay from meate, and hunger: for you shall giue him euerie houre verie litle meate, for it taketh away great famine and the fainting, whereby the sicke is eased. And that it is lawfull to nourish and giue meate to the sicke in a fit, *Galen* teacheth, *Lib.* 10. *method. cap.* 3. *Polenta*, *Polenta is barly steeped in water one night, then dryed, then fryed and then ground.*

CAAP. IX

Of euill digestion.

De Crvditate.

RAwnesse of the stomake or ill digestion is, when as the meate is not altogether changed. The causes of it, is distempure in the stomake, inflammations, hardnesse, impostumes, and such other like. Sometime the meates remaine rawe and vndigested, although the stomacke be not diseased: either through immoderate deuouring of meats and drinks at one time, or through the euill and vicious qualities of the meates themselues, or through heating of them out of due time, or through inordinate taking of them: or through some vicious superfluitie growing: or through short sleeping as *Galen* saith, *Libro tertio de symptomatum causis, capite primo.* The diuersitie of causes be knowne partly by the tale of the patient, and them that be about him: and partly by certaine tokens. By the tale of the sicke, and of them that be about him, you may know whether meates and drinkes haue bene taken immoderately, or out of due season, or inordinatly. Also you may know of them the shortnesse of sleeping: you may know if the meates their selues were of euill qualities by his belkings and sauours, like things roasted or burned. For in them that be hot and cholericke, the belkings or corruptions sauour like meate roasted or burned: but in them that be of a cold nature and more flegmaticke, the corruptions are sowre or sharpe. Likewise you must iudge of excrements that be flegmaticke and cold, they cause sowre corruptions: but those that be hote and mixed with bitter choler, do cause sauour like burned meate. Likewise iudge of the stomake being any otherwise euill at ease: for if the disease be cold, it causeth sharpe and sowre permutations, but if it be hote, it causeth a burning sauour. When perfect cruditie and rawnesse is engendred without corruption, in such sort, that the meates do remaine altogether euen as they were eaten: by this you may knowe that the stomacke is ouercome, either through great quantitie of meates, or through vehement cold taken in a hote thirst. Therefore if you would not haue this cruditie and euill digestion, you must beware of all the aforesaied things (that is) that you neither offend in the quantitie, nor qualitie, nor order, nor due season of the taking *Causæ.* *Signa.* *Victus ratio.*

of your meate: and that you eate thoſe things onely, which you are able to digeſt, and not that which appetite requireth. Therefore you muſt eſpecially take diligent heed to the meaſure and quantitie of your meate, and you muſt refraine your appetite, and eate no more then your ſtrength is able to ſuffer. Alſo you muſt beware of euill order; that is, that you do not firſt eate quinces or pomegranates, or ſome ſuch like thing, and afterward to eate pot-herbes out of oile or ſauce made with ſalted fiſh, or other things which doe ſoften the belly. Alſo you muſt eſchue eating out of due ſeaſon, that is, that you do not eate before ſome moderate exerciſe, or before yeſterdayes meate be well deſcended, and alſo not before your accuſtomed houre. Alſo you muſt eſchue all things that be hard by nature to digeſt: as is fleſh that is hard by nature, that is, beife and harts fleſh: alſo eſchue all olde fleſh. Alſo you muſt beware of meates that be fat, or that be powdred in ſalt, and ſtale kept. Among pot-herbes, thoſe that be verie hote or verie cold, or alſo thoſe that engender wind, be hurtfull. Eſchue fiſhes, which are hard, & dried by long keeping. Alſo abſtaine from meates that be corrupt, or that doe ſtinke, or ſmell ilfauouredly. Refraine from ſweete fruite, or that which doth ingender windineſſe, or that which is corrupt. Alſo eſchue iunkets which be hard of digeſtion. Alſo you muſt eſchue meates that be ſtraunge and vnaccuſtomed, and that haue the power of a medicine, as people vſe to commixe in their tartes and fine cakes: but you muſt eate your meat in due time, not greedily nor in gobbets, nor ſwallowe it not without chewing. Neither let your drinke interrupt and diſturbe your meate, for that doth hinder the vniting and knitting together of the meate, and cauſeth eche peece to ſwimme from other. After meate eaten, you muſt eſchue vnequall and troublous motions. Alſo eſchue heat and cold, for thoſe things do ſtop the digeſtion of meat. But calefaction and chafing of the ſides, and rubbing of the feete, do helpe digeſtion. And if there be heauineſſe about the ſtomacke, ſo that through it a certaine painefulneſſe be ſpread throughout the whole bodie, then laye your hand being ſtretched forth, vpon the mouth of the ſtomacke, or applie to it a fleſhie infant, for as *Galen* ſaieth, it is much better and more naturall, then the heate which is procured by foments. For which cauſe, ſome do lay litle whelpes while they reſt vppon their ſtomach, which doth encreaſe the abundance of heate, that digeſteth the meate. Alſo you muſt procure ſleepe in the night equall and without diſturbance. For this, you muſt prepare to lye ſtraight, and let your head be bolſtered vp high, and in your lying you muſt incline towards the left ſide. And if you cannot ſleepe, you muſt lie without turning or ſtirring of your bodie, and keepe it ſtill in one forme of lying, for often ſtirrings and toſſings do diſturbe the meates, and make the bodie windie and the bowels likewiſe. The cure muſt be diuerſe, according to the diuerſitie of the cauſes: for hote diſtempure of the ſtomacke requireth one kinde of curing, and colde diſtempure requireth another. Alſo inflammation of the ſtomacke requireth another kind of cure, and hardneſſe or impoſtumations another kind; and all thoſe cures you ſhall ſeeke out in the proper chapters: for here it ſufficeth to ſay thus much. When there commeth an vnpleaſant belking, declaring manifeſtly that there is corruption of meates,

Curatio.

with-

without prolonging, you must prouoke vomite, and by drinking of warme water, you must constraine all that is corrupt to come forth. For if they remaine in the stomacke, they cause tormenting, and wrestling, and heauinesse of the head: and sometimes they send forth choler vpward and downeward, or they cause fluxe of the wombe, or feauers. Therefore such as cannot digest but hardly, we must accustome them long time before, that they may vomit easily, for that is best in many perils. And if any be hard to vomit by nature, and be ill disposed to drink cold things, in any cause it is not inconuenient to giue him a cuppe of pure colde water to drinke: for the stomacke being strengthened, it soone thrusteth out those things that sticke in it, and sendeth them downe to the lower parts. Then the next day let the sicke be kept in quiet and rest, and vse rubbings of his feete, and chafing of his sides, vntill the rumbling and windinesse breake out beneath, and vntill the belkings do come foorth with a gentler qualitie. And then it is good to rise vp, that first the belly may send out the corrupt things by siege, and afterward let the sicke walke moderately, and let him be idle, because of the troubled vapors which be ascended into the head through corruption. After this he must apply his minde to daily businesse without perturbation and indignation. Then againe the belly must be prouoked to auoid those things that remaine yet. Afterward you must bidde him rest, and you must powre vpon and nourish the feete with warme water: and the face being washed with pure colde water, let him rest in his bedde, and procure him to sleepe by all meanes. After which let him vse a litle walking, and then a Bath. After bathing let him take meate moderatly, and that which the bodie is able to digest. But yet you may not ouerpasse medicines that do helpe digestion, as is, pepper, especially long pepper, which doth onely helpe digestion. But if you haue it not at that present, you may vse white pepper, and if you haue not that neither, take blacke pepper. Also for the same, *Diacotoneon* is good, and *diospoliticum*. Also there be other things to be applyed aswell inwardly as outwardly, both simples and compounds, to strengthen the stomacke, which are rehearsed in the former chapters. But all these medicines (especially such as do peirce quickely, as is Caraway seedes, fennell seeds, *Apium*, louage seed, parcely seed, *ammeos*, pepper, ginger, and such like) must be giuen two houres before meate: but after meat you must neuer take them: for then there is dispersed together with them some of the crude meates, and causeth obstructions. Therefore let them be vsed most before meate after the rubbings in the morning, and two houres before exercise.

Vomitus.

Long pepper helpeth digestion.

CHAP. X.

Of windinesse of the stomacke.

De Inflatione Ventriculi.

Cause.

The stomake is windy, through the windinesse that is engendred in it. Windinesse is engendred through flegmaticke humours in the stomacke, or else through meates dissolued into vapours through want & debilitie of heate. For cold onely doth cause no windinesse, because it can neither extenuate nor

dissolue meate. Vehement heat for the most part (ouercomming those things that it comprehendeth) extenuateth and maketh thinne the meate, so that no vapours can engender thereof, vnlesse it be easie to turne into windines of the owne nature: but the windinesse that is so engendred is troublous and cloudy: and also it is but little, and endureth but a little while, so that at one belking or other it vanisheth away straight. The heate that worketh in the meates, if it be but of little force and strength, that is, doth somewhat dissolue them, but not altogether consume them, thereof must needs engender windines, as *Galen* teacheth *lib.* 30. *de sympto. causis.* 70. They that are thus diseased, haue stretching out and heauinesse of the stomacke: also sometime swelling, and a certaine bowing out of the mouth of the stomacke, and of the stomacke it selfe: also empty belkings doe come, sometimes lightning a little, and a stopping of the windinesse which is wont to breake downeward. Also this euill sometimes is al ouer the breast, and somtime behind, about the backbone and backe, and rusheth among the iointes, and often it occupieth both places. Besides these things there is vehement pain in drawing of breath, because of the pressing downe together of the midriffe, so that some do feele like as though they were choked. They are eased by the meate going downeward, and by windinesse breaking out either by belking, or by the belly. Also rumbling and noise is heard within. Therefore if the windinesse of the stomacke be caused of flegmaticke meates: you must minister an extenuating diet, and such medicins as do deuide and purge fleume, which we taught in the first chapter of this booke. But if the windinesse be engendred through want and weaknes of hear, he must vse meats easie of digestion, and of good iuice. Also he must eat but litle: for fasting is very good for this disease. After all the meat, you must minister wine that is pure and vnmixed: but yet he must eschue much drinke as a deadly enemie. Also let him eschue frute, and eating of moist oiles. Also let him vse hote bathes in great vessels, for those do mitigate, soften, and dissolue windinesse whatsoeuer it be, and prouoke sleepe. And when sleepe commeth, it easeth the patient much, because it helpeth digestion maruellously.

Signa.

Curatio.

Decoctum.

And as for medicines, let them vse this decoction. ℞. Calamint, mints, wilde mints, cammomill, origan, peniroiall. ana. *M.* j. wormewood. *M.* ß. seeds of annise, apium, comin, daucus, parcely, fennell. ana. ʒ. iij. seedes of nettles, carawayes. ana. ʒ ij. of the root of Enula campana. ʒ ij. seeth these in a iust quantitie of water, till the third part be consumed: then straine them, and put to sufficient sugar to make the iuice of that decoction sweet, and put to that liquor, of sirrupe of Calamint. ʒ iij. and make a potion, wherof let the sicke drink euerie day in the morning ʒ. iiij. Or let him vse this powder. ℞. the powders of *dianysum, diacuminum, diacalum, inthes.* ana. ϑ. ij. seedes of annise, daucus, and fennell. ana. ϑ. j. quibibes, cloues. ana. ϑ ij. ginger. ϑ. pepper. ʒ. j. sugar. ℔ ß. commixe them together and make a powder. They which haue taken meate but a litle before, must first vomit. Also you must minister suppositaries made of things that entice windinesse, after this sort. ℞. honny sodden. ʒ. ij. seedes of rewe, comin, and fennell. ana ϑ. j. seedes of Carawayes and annise. ana. ʒ. ß. salt. ϑ. ij. commixe them togerher and make suppositaries. If the wombe be verie costiue, you must cast in a clister made thus. ℞. of the decoction

Tritura.

Glandes.

coction aboue taught. ℔.j. of *benedicta laxatiua*. ℥.vij oiles of wormewood, rew, and dill. ana. ℥.j. goose grease and hennes grease without salt. ana. ℥.ij. ß. common salt. ℥.j. commixe al togethe, and make a clister. In this disease you must annoint the stomack outwardly with the oiles aforesaid, or make a litle bunch of wooll, and wette it in the aforesaid oiles being warmed, and apply it to the stomacke. And vpon the bunch of woolle being wound vp together, strew commin beaten, or seed of Apium or dill. If the disease endure long, apply to it plaisters made of lineseed, barley meale, darnell meale, commin, dill seed, or Apium, or fennell beaten, the toppes of Centorie, and such other like: or apply this cerate. ℞. oiles of rew, dill, nard, and laurell. ana. ℥.j. meale of lineseed, and fenugreeke. ana. ℥.j. ß. seedes of Apium, carawaies, and *Nigella Romana*. ana. ℥.j. laurell berries, and Centorie. ana. ℥.j. ß. gumme ammoniacke, and *opoponax*. ana. ℥.ij. waxe and rosen as much as is sufficient, make a Cerate. Also a great cupping glasse comprehending the nauell euerie where, being applyed with great flame, is a remedie in this disease. Also *Castoreum* drunke with *Posca*, and applyed outwardly with oile of dill, is good.

Clyster.

Ceratum.

CHAP. XI.

Of yelking or hicket.

De Singvltv.

YElking is a motion of the stomack, and it is as it were a crampe of the stomak, raised of the expulsiue vertue, which goeth about to thrust forth euill and hurtfull things. This disease is caused for the most part, either of fulnesse or of emptinesse, as *Hippocrates* witnesseth. Also sometime it is caused through the biting and gnawing of sharpe humors. Also the meate being turned into a gnawing qualitie, and so corrupted, causeth some to yelke. Also coldnes of the mouth of the stomack, and corruption of the food causeth yelking, which causeth children specially to haue the hicket often. Also yelking engendreth in feuers, specially when the stomack or some other bowell is enflamed. The outward causes are easily knowne by the telling of the sicke, and them that be about him. Fulnesse is known by heauinesse; and emptines by those things that went before. You must know if the meate be corrupt by the burnt sauour of it: but you shall know sharpnesse by gnawing, pricking and pulling: Therefore when yelking is engendred of coldnesse, you must lay vpon the stomack, woolle dipped in the oile wherein hath bene sodden rew, commin, & wormwood. Also oile of masticke, and of *Castoreum* being annointed doth profite. To children warme linnen clothes being applyed to, do helpe often. They that be of full age, minister to them to drinke wine, or Apium sodden in *aqua mulsa*, or commin beaten, or Asarum, or peniroiall, ech of these by himselfe or else mixt with other. Also squilliticke vineger is good to soupe. Also giue them. ℥ j. of *Castoreum* with Posca, as well against yelking caused of colde, as also if it be caused through multitude of humours. Also if it be applied outwardly to the stomack with olde oile, it is good for both the said griefes. Moreouer holding of the breath which doth encrease heate, is a present remedie for them that do yelke through cold. When yelking is caused of fulnesse, vomiting is the best reme-

Causa.

6. Aphor. 39.

Signa.

Cure of yelking of cold.

Cure of yelking of fulneſſe. Auerſion.

die. If there be groſſe humours, they muſt be extenuate and cut with *Oximel ſcilliticum*, and calamint, and horehound their decoction, and ſuch like before rehearſed. Afterward you muſt apply thoſe things which may draw the abundance of humors a contrary way, and turne them cleane aſide. For which purpoſe thoſe things are good which do purge downeward, and ſpecially cliſters, bindings, and rubbings of the extreme parts, and cupping glaſſes with much flame, faſtened to the breaſt, to the ſtomake, and to the back. Alſo theſe things are good for them, long and quick walking, bearings about, and chiefly riding.

6. Aphor. 13.

Alſo it is good for them to ſneeſe, as *Hippocrates* ſaith. For when the yelking is cauſed of fulnes, there is need of violent mouing. Alſo handſome calling loud, with much clamor, & withholding of the breath, is good for them. Moreouer, the ſtomacke muſt be ſtrengthened by medicines miniſtred as well inwardly as outwardly. Inwardly by comforting Electuaries, and outwardly by applying of ointments, emplaiſters and cerats before taught. Yelking, that is cauſed of

Cure of hicket cauſed of emptineſſe.

emptineſſe, is cured by giuing to the patient conuenient foode, and by thoſe things that do fill his wanting: which partly be afore taught, and abundantly ſpoken of hereafter in the cure of the feauer Ethicke. It doth much good in this kind of yelking, to annoint the ioints of the necke and the back with moiſtening oyle, as is, oyles of violets, and of ſweet almonds. But if yelking be cauſed of gnawing things, firſt we finde that vomiting is a ſufficient remedie for it: then alſo ſtupefaction of feeling, and ſuch things as doe alter the gnawing.

Cure of yelking through inordinacie.

Pilulæ de cynogloſſa.

The ſenſes be aſtonied and ſtupefact by cooling things, for which purpoſe you muſt miniſter *philonium*, or pilles of hounds tongue, which do profite marueilouſly in this diſeaſe, you muſt vſe them thus. You muſt make of one dram, ſixe pilles, whereof let the ſicke take one before he go to bed. The mordacitie and gnawing is altered and driuen away by medicines which doe ſtoppe, attenuate, and drie. Stoppers of gnawing be theſe, iuyce of Endiue drunk, cucumber ſeeds husked and beaten being drunke, lettuſe ſeede likewiſe taken. Alſo iuyce of purſelaine drunke, and purſelaine it ſelfe taken in meate. Alſo Sebeſten decoction taken in drinke, but ſpecially aboue all, Aſſes milk is good. Or if you haue not that, cowes milke newly milked is good being drunke. For the ſame purpoſe miniſter conſerue of roſes, or of violets, or of water lillies, *diarrhodon*, *diatrion ſantalon*, Iulep of violets, of *Nimphæa*, that is, water lillies, and ſuch like. Theſe Trochiskes doe ſtop, extenuate, and drie vp. ℞. *Coſtus*, ſaffron, ſpikenard, greene roſes, maſticke, ana. ʒ. ß. *aſarum*, *aloes*. ana. ʒ. ij. *opium*. ʒ. j. with iuyce of *pſillium*, make trochiskes, of the which giue. ʒ. ß. or ʒ. j. Note that *opium*, and the roſes, and the iuyce of *pſillium* be of a cold operation: the ſpikenard doth diſcuſſe, diſſolue, and corroborate: the *Aſarum* doth bring out the vicious humours by vrine: the *aloes* doth purge out the vicious humours, and driue them out beneath at the ſeige: the ſaffron digeſteth and ſtrengtheneth the parts, for by his temperament of heat he cauſeth digeſtion, & by his reſtrictiue vertue which he hath, he addeth ſtrength: the *coſtus* doth ſufficiently heate, and moderately reſtraine, which you may perceiue by his taſt. Galen commendeth this medicine verie much, *Lib. 8. de Comp. Med. ſecundum locos. cap. 3.*

Paſtillus.

CHAP.

CHAP. XII.
Of Choler.
De Cholera.

Cholera in Latine, is an immoderate perturbation of the ſtomake, cauſed by vomit both vpward and downward. The barbarous ſort call this diſeaſe, *Cholerica paſſio*: they that haue this diſeaſe be called of the Latines *Cholerici*. It is cauſed through much cruditie and rawneſſe of the ſtomacke, and ill digeſtion, which many times engendreth of great wickedneſſe of the meates, and ſometime through abundance of vicious humours alſo. The ſignes whereby this euill is knowne be verie manifeſt: for they auoid both vpward and downward: alſo there followeth thirſt and ſwet, and ſhort pulſe and drawing vp, and ſtretching out of the muſcles of the hands and feet, and ſpecially of the calfe of the legges. Therefore ſeing this euill is moſt ſharpe and doth cauſe verie grieuous ſowndings, if it endure long, you muſt do your diligence that you helpe it by and by without any tarying. No Phiſition if he ſee this diſeaſe to be engendred through abundance of vicious humours, will in the beginning all at once go about to ſtop that which is ſent forth, for ſeeing they be vnprofitable and hurtfull, they haue need of purging. Therefore if the patient haue diſpoſition to vomit, and be troubled with vndigeſted meates remaining in the ſtomack, you muſt giue him warme water, and thē he muſt vomit by his finger or a fether put into his mouth. But you may not prouoke vomit by miniſtring of *Aqua mulſa*, nor with water mixed with oile: becauſe theſe things do increaſe the fluxes, and cauſe mordacity and writhings: alſo you muſt helpe the matter that purgeth downeward: for a ſtrange poiſon as it were being within doth gnaw the ſtomacke and guts, and draweth the humours from the whole bodie: you muſt miniſter vnto him the eaſieſt purging medicines, as is, aloës, *Caſia fiſtularis*, decoction of *Mirabolanes* and ſuch like. After that the ſuperfluous things be brought forth, then he muſt reſt, and it is good to nouriſh tho ſides with oiles of maſticke, or nard, or wormewood, and to cauſe ſleepe. You muſt commixe ſometime with the aforeſaied, other things which can ſtrengthen the ſtomack, which be afore taught, and with them you muſt make ointments. When there appeareth exact and perfect concoction & digeſtion, vſe bathes of ſweet water, and meates of good iuice, among which is broth of chickens with veriuice, the fleſh of ſmall birdes of mountaines, rere egges and ſuch like. In drinke let him vſe iuice of pomegranates, or ſirupe of roſes, or water wherein burning ſteele hath bene quenched three or foure times. But when the euill hath endured long, and hath cauſed ſlenderneſſe and leannes throughout the bodie, and ſpecially if the belly or ſtomacke do reſt after the remouing from his place, and that the pulſe be leſſe, and thicker, then you muſt bind the extreame and vttermoſt parts with bands, and you muſt make them faſt by much oile. Alſo apply to the ſtomacke Cataplaſmes, and emplaiſters made of reſtrictiue and ſtrengthening things, as thoſe be which are made of dates, *hypociſtidos*, *Acatia*, *Sumach*, bole armoniacke, frankenſence, *Balauſtiæ*, roſes, and fruite of mirtels. Alſo it is an effectuous remedie, if a linnen cloth wet in the iuice of crabbes be layd vpon the ſtomacke, or this

Cholerici.
Cauſæ.
Signa.
Curatio.

Scutum Stomachi.

cerate. ℞. of the oiles of roſes, mirtels, and quinces. ana. ℥.j. maſticke, frankenſence, acatia. ana. ℥.ij. *hypociſtidis*. ℥.j. ß. ſaunders white and redde. ana. ℥.j. *balauſtie*, dragons bloud. ana. ℥.ß. bolearmoniacke. ℥.j. waxe and roſen as much as is ſufficient, make a cerate to lay vpon the ſtomacke couered with ſilke. In drinking giue him the meaſure of one *Cyathe* of cold water to ſoupe off, (that is) ℥.j ß. but you muſt beware that it be not ouer colde, for that being giuen ſoddenly is vomited vp againe, and ſometime with his ſtupor and coldneſſe, it hurteth verie extremely the naturall heat, or it cauſeth inflammation of the ſtomack, or of ſome of the bowels. And you may ſometime droppe into the water, a litle of the iuice of ſharpe pomegranats, or of roſes, or of the decoction of vine branches. And if thoſe things that be voided forth be verie ſharpe, and that thirſt and burning do trouble the patient: then miniſter cucumber ſeeds with three *Cyathes* of water. Alſo you may giue it commodiouſly with *Amylum*. Then alſo miniſter endiue or lettuſe, or both ſodden in Poſca. Afterward procure ſleepe and reſt by all meanes: but if the fluxe will not be ſtopped, and the pulſe decay betweene this and that, and that colde and ſwet do take him, and alſo ſometime yelking, you muſt come to wine that is meanely reſtrictiue, which is not verie ſtrong, but yet ſweete and not odoriferous: and put into it, warme if it may be, or elſe cold, crummes of bread or *Alica*, and ſo by little and little at ſundrie times, let them ſoupe it vp. But yet they muſt eſchue much quantitie of wine, and by all meanes you muſt go about to bring them to ſleepe, by ſtrewing the pauement of the houſe with roſes, vine leaues, bryer, and ſuch like afore taught. Alſo apply odoraments to the noſe, as roſes, quinces, and ſuch like: alſo annoint ſoporiferous and ſleepie ointments about the temples and forehead. If he go to the ſtoole ſtill, caſt in by a cliſter *Amylum* with decoction of poppy heads, for it doth both reſtrain and coole, and cauſe ſleepe. To ſtop vomits, it is good to eate and deuour the iuice of medlers, quinces, pomegranates and peares. If with theſe remedies, and others that be taught before in the ſecond chapter of this booke, the ſicke cannot keepe and brooke his meate: you muſt apply without vpon the ſtomack a verie great cupping glaſſe lightly. Againſt the contraction and drawing vp of the muſcles, you muſt winde about the muſcles, linnen clothes ſoked in warme oile, and apply moiſt cerates and ointmentes wherein is put ſome *Caſtoreum* and oile of *Ireos*. You ſhall find examples enough of thoſe in the chapter of the palſey before in the firſt booke. When the diſeaſe decreaſeth, you muſt refreſh and reſtore the patient againe with good meates, as chickens, doues, hennes, partrich, wood-culuer, and ouſils, or black-birds, and ſuch like.

A cyathe is. ℥. j. ß.

Conſtriction of vomites.

Againſt conſtriction in the muſcles.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the fluxe diarrhœa.

De Diarrhœa.

Diarrhœa in Latine, is a copious & great fluxe of the wombe without exulceration and inflammation. It is cauſed through weakneſſe of the inſtruments that belong and do ſerue to digeſtion: alſo through abundance of nouriſhment & meat that is moiſt and viſcous, and through corrupting of the ſame meate.

Cauſe.

meat. Moreouer gnawing and biting of those things that are contained in the belly: also flowing of some things from aboue to the belly, and also weakenesse of the retentiue vertue. The signes whereby the causes are knowen are very manifest. For if this fluxe *diarrhea* be caused through the weakenesse of the instruments that serue for digestion (as is) the stomacke, the bowels, the liuer, and the splene: you must seeke the signes of these out of their owne chapters. But if it be caused through much deuouring of euill meates and drinkes, you may know it partly by the patients tale, and partly also by those things that come forth by siege. For if they be cholericke, they be yellow of colour, and they be not cast out without feeling of gnawing and heat: also the patient feeleth bitternes of the mouth, thirst, thinne state of the body, and other tokens which signifie choler. If it be flegmaticke, those things which come out with the siege shall be contrary to that which is said before of choler. And if humors do flow from the head to the belly, the egestions wil appeare frothy, and the temper of the braine will be very moist. If the flux be engendred through fulnesse of the whole body, or if it be indicatory, the signes are rehearsed in another place, and of *Galen lib. de plenitudine & crisibus.* And if this fluxe of the wombe be caused through weakenesse of the instrumentes, the distempure which is cause of this, must be cured and corrected by his contraries, as is taught in the first chapter of this booke. If this fluxe of the wombe be caused through other causes, and that nature doth labour to driue out of the body superfluous and hurtfull matter by this meanes, and that you can easily suffer it which be troubled with it, then you must suffer & watch, till nature hath bestowed all her care & charge: or else also it is good to helpe natures motion, but for to go about to striue with it, and to stop the fluxe, it causeth a worse & greater disease: for those humours which are stopped being caried vpward, do cause paine in the head, or frensie, or litargie, or impostumation behind the eares not without danger. Therfore in the beginning you may not stoppe the fluxe, which floweth profitably for the health of the body. But after that the fluxe hath endured long, not onely carying forth superfluities, but also melting as it were the state of the bodie, and consuming the strength, then you must labour to stoppe it, as well by things giuen in at the mouth, as also cast in at the fundament, and also by things applyed outwardly vppon the bellie. Therfore if there come forth excrements of cleane choler, you must change it into a better and a more healthfull state, but yet you may not cure them by stopping of it straight wayes. For the cholericke matter that is gathered together, and heaped in the stomach, and in the bowell called *ieiunum*, if it be withholden and kept there still, it hurteth greatly: for it both ouerturneth the stomach, and causeth inflammations of the bowels, it kindleth thirst, and restoreth feauers, and causeth the euils aforesaied, and generally causeth a worse disease. Therfore if there be abundance of cholericke humours in the bodie, nature must be expelled with easie purging medicines, as is, infusion of rewbarbe, *casia fistularis*, the barkes of mirabolanes, *citrine* or *manna*. After that giue cowes milke, or goates milke warme, being new milked, or seeth it at the fire and stirre it continually till it be consumed vnto the third part: which you may do by quenching of red hot iron, or steele gads in the milke often, but while it

Signa.

Curatio.

Note.

Cure of a Diarrhea of choler.

doth ſeeth you muſt take the ſcum or ſome of it: for ſurely you can find no quicker remedie againſt fluxes of choler. And becauſe the milke that is eaten of one that hath a feuer, is wont to turne into a burning ſauour, or alſo ſharpe or ſoure, and ſo cauſeth more hurt than good: therefore if the patient hath a feauer together with this fluxe, you ſhall eſchue miniſtring of milke to him, dreſſed after that ſort. But you muſt powre the fourth part of water to the milke, and ſeeth it vntill halfe be conſumed, and then miniſter it vnto him. If the choler be heaped vp together in the bowels, you muſt caſt in cliſters made of the decoction of barley, with ſugar roſet, oile of roſes, yolkes of egges and ſuch like. At the length, when the cholericke humours be voided out, you muſt miniſter inwardly, ſuch medicines as do reſtraine and ſtrengthen (as be) conſerue of roſes, *diacotoneon* without ſpices, *diatrion ſantalon*, trochiskes of *ſpodium*, *Hidromalon* and ſuch like. And what kind of medicines they muſt be that ought to be applyed outwardly we will ſhewe you a litle hereafter. Alſo the fundament muſt be fomented and nouriſhed with a decoction made of ſome reſtrictiue things. If the fluxe *Diarrhœa* be engendred through flegmaticke humors that be groſſe and tough, or through corruption of them, then you muſt beginne your cure as you did before with eaſie purging. Therefore then you muſt miniſter the infuſion of *Agaricke* with *Mirabolanes imbelici*, or ſome ſuch like medicine, which is able to bring foorth the aforſayed humours. Alſo cliſters are good, ſpecially if there be abundance of clammie humours heaped vp in the bowels: let them be made of the decoction of centorie, and oile of rewe, and ſuch like. Miniſter within the bellie *Diacotoneon* with ſpices, greene ginger, and other medicines which haue power to heate and drie. Alſo apply outwardly thoſe things which do adſtrength. If the fluxe *Diarhœa* be cauſed through the weakeneſſe of the vertue retentiue, you muſt miniſter & apply thoſe medicins, which are applied againſt other vnmeaſurable fluxes of the wombe. Therfore apply irrigations & ſprincklings of oile *omphacine*, or oyle of roſes, or oile of the bloſſomes of apples, with ſome ſowre or ſharpe wine, but oile of mirtles is of more effect, if there be need of vehement reſtriction, hauing the third or fourth part of wine added to it. And if their bodies be ſtrong, you may ſeeth in that irrigation, gals, pomgranate rindes, and *Balauſtiæ*. If the fluxe endure ſtill, apply cataplaſmes, emplaiſters and cerates, made of reſtrictiue & drying things, wherof we will make mention in the next chapter. Alſo this cerate is effectuous to be made. Take ſeuen mulberies, or black-beries which be ſowre and whitiſh for lacke of ripeneſſe, bray them well and adde to it oile of roſes. ℥. ij. waxe. ℥. j. and make a cerate. After the voiding of ſuperfluous and hurtfull humours, theſe things heale the fluxe of the wombe being miniſtred in drink, that is, comin, decoction of maidenhaire, the roote of white thorne, likewiſe one ℥. weight of the ſeed of *Apium* miniſtred: for it prouoketh vrine, and turneth the fluxes that be in the bowels thither. Alſo vnripe mulberies being yet ſowre, if they be dried many dayes in the ſun and ſo kept, if they be beaten and drunke when need requireth, they reſtrain and ſtop the wombe maruellouſly. Alſo they may be brayed & mixed with his meates, as they are wont to vſe *Sumach*, which ſometime is ſodden, the quantitie of an ounce weight with a chicken: but yet blackberies of the brier being vnripe

Cure of Diarhœa of flegmaticke humours.

Cure of Diarrhœa of the weakneſſe of the vertue retentiue.

Ceratum.

vnripe and sharpe, do bind the bellie more if they be dried as is aforesaid, and ministred in drinke. Among compound medicines these are maruellous good, that is, trochiskes of *Spodium*, of *terra lemnia*, *diacotoneon*, *diatrion santalon*, triacle: and this compound made in Lozenges is good. ℞. the powders of *diatrion santalon*, *diarrhodon abbatis*, ana. ℈. ij. red corall, chosen frankensence, red roses. ana. ʒ. ß. *spodium*. ʒ. j. seedes of sorrell, *sumach*, ana. ℈. j. *balaustiæ*, *acatiæ*, ana. ʒ. ß. masticke. ℈. ß. bolearmoniacke. ʒ. j. fine white sugar. ℔. ß. dissolue it in the distilled waters of plantaine and roses, and make lozenges. *Morsuli.*

Also this loch is good. ℞. of old conserues of roses, of *diacotoneon* without spices, *rob ribes*, *rob de barberies*. ana. ʒ. ß. *hydromel*. ʒ. iij. *diamoron*. ʒ. v. the powder of *diatrion santalon*. ℈. ij. red corall. ℈. j. *spodium*, *balaustiæ*. ana. ℈. ß. bolearmoniacke. ʒ. j. sirupe of mirtels as much as shall suffise, and make a loch. Moreouer you shall euer haue this water readie made. ℞. *sumach*, one quarter, raine water. ℔. iij. in which steepe the *sumach* a day and a night, then boyle them, and straine the *sumach* well & strongly. And in that water, seeth rice, or milke, or other meats, or at the least way poure some portion of this water to them. If the fluxe *Diarrhæa* be caused through flowing of humours from some other member of the bodie, you must seeke the cure out of their proper chapters. As for example, if the humours flow from the head into the stomacke, you must returne to those things which are spoken of before in the chapter against distillation or reume, and so do likewise with other parts of the bodie. *Ecligma.* *A precious water.*

CHAP. XIIII.

Of the fluxe Lienteria.

De Lienteria.

Lienteria in Greeke, is a certaine lightnes, or smoothnesse of the bowels, euen like as there chanceth of a scarre without on the skin of the body. In this disease the bowels do not hold the meate, but they let it slide away before it be changed & perfectly digested, euen in the same forme and likenesse that it was eaten. Therfore in Latine it may well be called *leuitas*, or *leuor intestinorum*, and in English, lightnesse or smoothnesse of the bowels. It is caused oftentimes through a grieuous fluxe *disenteria* by name going before, which causeth deepe exulceration of the bowels; then scarres that be hard closed together and smooth do follow: which scarres by reason of the hard closing, will not suffer the meats to be distributed about the body, because the mouthes of the veines which are wont to draw nourishment from the bowels to themselues, are now stopped. And because of the smoothnesse (as is aforesaid) the bowels suffer the meats to slide out before they be perfectly digested. Also this disease is caused many times through weaknesse & debilitie of the vertue that should keepe and hold the meates in the stomacke. For this vertue being weake and sickly, the food or meats be neither digested nor distributed: but they are cast forth crude, moist, and nothing chaunged, (the belly being alwayes soluble.) Also sometime it ingendreth after long fluxe of the wombe. Also sometime when dropsie water auoideth by the belly, this fluxe *Lienteria* followeth. Therfore of what cause soeuer this fluxe is engendred, the sicke doth tast or feele no meate, and it causeth euill state or plight of the bodie. Therefore there *Causæ.* *Signa.*

chanceth to the patient continuall ſeiges, crude & raw, in colour pale or whitiſh, vnequall & very watery, without any commixing of bloud and choler. Alſo he feeleth a burning which ſpreadeth all ouer the ſides, loathing of meat followeth it. It is a good and friendly ſigne in them that haue had this fluxe long, if there chance vnto them ſharp and ſowre belkings: for it betokeneth that the meate doth abide ſome while in the ſtomacke vntill it begin to be changed.

6. Aphor. 1.

Victus ratio.

When this diſeaſe chanceth, it is eaſie to perceiue, that you muſt refreſh and recreate the vertues retentiue and digeſtiue, aſwell of the ſtomach as of the bowels by al meanes, and that may chiefly be done by miniſtring of conuenient meats, and ordaining of a diet meet to reſtore and refreſh ſtrength. Therfore the fleſh of birds of mountaines are good: alſo chickens roſted, in whoſe bellies alſo muſt be put *ſumach* or maſticke, and other things which ſhall be rehearſed in the next chapter. Let the meate which you giue him be litle in quantitie and eaſie of digeſtion. And if his ſeiges be ſharpe & cholericke, make him meate with rice and *alica* and ſuch like, with the which ſeeth ſome reſtrictiue things, as peares, quinces, medlars, and ſuch other like. Alſo milke ſodden is good for them, but if their ſeige be flegmaticke, you muſt miniſter vnto them contrarie meates. Alſo commixe ſomwhat that is pleaſant and acceptable to the ſtomach, as is anniſe ſeed, commin or *daucus*. In cholericke ſeiges let their drinke be ale: but in flegmaticke let it be wine that is old and hot. And generally let him drinke but litle, for much drinke is not onely in this flux *Lienteria*, but alſo in all other fluxes of the wombe, moſt hurtfull. For curing of this diſeaſe, if the fluxe *Lienteria* be engendred through weakneſſe of the vertue of the ſtomach, you muſt turne to the chapter of weaknes of the ſtomach, and there ſeeke the cure. But to be ſhort, you muſt miniſter both within and without to the bodie thoſe things that do reſtraine, and that can ſtrengthen aſwell the ſtomach as alſo the bowels. Therefore miniſter ſirupes of wormewood, and mints, and other electuaries which do ſtrengthen the ſtomach. And you muſt apply thoſe things outwardly, which be reherſed before in the chapter of *Diarrhœa*, and ſhalbe taught in the next chap. following. But this medicine is ſpecially good. ℞. oiles of maſticke, wormwood, mints, and mittels. ana. ℥ ij. powders of cinamon choſen, cloues and galingale ana. ℈ j. *Balauſtiæ* and red roſes ana. ℈ ß. waxe as much as is ſufficient, make an ointment, or vſe this cerate. ℞. oiles of maſticke, wormewood and of quinces. ana ℥ j. oile of mints. ℥ ß. *calamus aromaticus*, cloues, frankenſence. ana. ℥ j. wood of aloës. ℈ ß. red roſes, white ſaunders and red. ana. ℥ ß. maſticke, commin ana. ℥ j. *hipociſchidos*, *acatia*, *ſumach*. ana. ℥ j. ß. *Gallia moſchata*. ℈ j. with waxe and turpentine as much as is ſufficient, make a cerate. Moreouer to thoſe that you coniecture haue a ſcarre, to thoſe the eating of ſharpe things is profitable, for it cauſeth a certaine refrication and rubbing open againe of the ſcarre: alſo it reuiueth againe the natural heate, and doth ſomwhat refreſh the digeſtiue vertue. Therfore in this caſe (as *Galen* witneſſeth *in cap. 95. Artis Medicæ*) they be good which do ſcoure and wipe away ſufficiently, and reſtraine a litle: therefore alwayes commixe ſcouring things with reſtrictiue medicins. In all other cauſes of this fluxe *Lienteria*, you muſt vſe the ſame kind of cure, which you do vſe to them that be afflicted with the fluxes *Diarrhœa*, or *Dyſenteria*.

Cure of Lienteria of weaknes of the vertue of the ſtomach.

Vnguentum.

Ceratum.

If Lienteria be cauſed of a ſcarre.

CHAP.

CHAP. XV.

Of the fluxe Disenteria.

De Disenteria.

Disenteria in greeke properly is nothing else then an exulceration of the bowels. The Latines call this disease *tormina*, because through it, the bowels are tormented and fretted very much with paine. We said before properly, because the Greeks recken foure kinds of bloudy *Disenteria*, as witnesseth *Galen. lib. 3o. de symptomatum causis.* The first is, when bloud is sent forth by circuite through some part of the body being cut off, or through some exercise of the former life, being let passe for a time. The second is when watery bloud like vnto the water, wherin bloudy flesh being new killed, hath beene washed and soaked, is sent out: which chanceth through weaknes of the liuer. The third is, when there is sent forth an humour more shining and blacker then that which is natural, being commixt of bloud and melancholy. And of these, we do not speake here, but we speake only of the fourth kind, in the which many times by litle & litle, & betweene whiles somtimes is cast out of pure bloud. Also sometime clodded bloud, or shauing of the bowels, commeth out with pure bloud. Also many times is cast out thicke dung sprinckled with drops of bloud. This fourth kind (as it is said) is caused through exulceratiõ of the bowels, which sometime chanceth through outward causes, as of cold, heate, and moistnesse. Also through drinking of pernicious and naughty medicins (as is) *scammony* and such like. Also through eating of fruite, through crudity and rawnesse, or through eating of sharpe or soure meates, or through sharpe and gnawing humours flowing from the whole body to the belly, or engendred in the belly it selfe. And this beginneth after *Tenasmus* sometime, and sometime by it selfe. The excrements first are cholericke, diuerse, and fatty, by reason of the fat that cleaueth within in the bowels being melted But when the superficies of the bowels is altogether bare, and exulceration doth abide about it, then the excrements that come forth, be full of dregs and bloudy. And when the exulceration hath pearced deeper, then also is sent forth filthines, hauing as it were litle peeces of parchment commixed with it. And if it be not stopped, it eateth and feedeth in short time the places nigh vnto it, and it sendeth forth mattery excrements, such as are wont to run from dead bodies. When the small guttes are exulcerate, there abideth paine about the nauill, the excrementes are cholericke hauing the colour of a leeke, and altogether garnished with sundry colours, commixed with much ordure or dung. The patient feeleth griefe and frettings, and gnawing and loosening, so that the sick is not farre from fainting and failing of heart. Also they are troubled with thirst and be feauerous, and the ordure commeth forth crude and rawe, and the bowell called *ieiunum* is exulcerate, but that is very seldome: but if it doe chance, the egestions do appeare more crude and raw, hauing black bloud wrapped with it vehemently, and yellow of choler, and much thirst, and also disposition to vomit do trouble the sicke. Also sometime they vomite and abhorre meates. Also there remaineth vehement paine about the nauill, & sometime also malignant feauers do engender. And they that are so diseased be waxen il colou-

4. *Kindes of Dysenteria.*

1

2

3

4

Causæ.

Signa.

Signes of exulceration of the small bowels.

red, and do sweat out euen till fainting and failing of hart. Their strength doth quickly faile them, and they be not farre from death. But if the vlceration be engendred in the great bowels, then the ordure that commeth forth is pure, and much, and heaped together, and commeth out with windinesse and frothinesse sometime. Also fatnesse is commixed with it, and bloud swimmeth aloft: as *Galen* sheweth largely in *libro. 60. de male affectu locis*. For it helpeth greatly to the cure to know this thing. For if the exulceration be in the vpper and small bowels, you must goe about the cure by medicines giuen in at the mouth, but if it be in the great and lower bowels, it is more conuenient to throw in clisters. The beginning of the cure of them that haue the fluxe *Dysenteria*, from whence soeuer the fluxe proceedeth, must be with quiet & rest, and litle meate. Therefore if a feuer do not let it, let him eate milke new milked, while it is yet warme: or in stead of it minister milke sodden, as we taught before in the chapter of *Diarrhœa*. For this first cleanseth and purgeth downeward, and tempereth together those things which be in the body, & last of all, it stoppeth & bindeth the wombe. But you must giue him moreouer wet bread after the taking of the milk. Also pottage prepared of milke, hath both the nature of medicines, and also they cause good nourishment, as is rice with milke, *amylum* and egges mixed with milke. Also soupings or pottage made of *alica*, and *milium*, *sumach* being added to it, is good. Also you must prepare meates of dry bread, powring to it *Posca*, or iuice of dates, or quinces, or of peares, or of *sumach*. Also minister chittes well rosted with plantaine, or sodden with quinces braied: the vsing of oiles is not neceessary nor needfull, but you shall minister to tast vpon endiue, both wilde and tame sodden, and plantaine, and coleworts twise sodden. Giue him also the yolks of egs rosted. Flesh is not good to be giuen to them that haue the fluxe *disenteria*, because they be of a stronger norishment, & do striue against digestiō: but yet you must giue it to them that be troubled with this disease long. Among all kind of flesh, you must specially choose birds, as is partrich, and wood culuers, & birds of mountaines. Among foure footed beasts, goats flesh and hares flesh are good. But you must forbid him the flesh of cattell that draw, and of all other foure footed beastes. From the beginning let him vse for his drinke raine water which is not fallen from houses couered with lead: for such water being drunke, euen of them that be whole, engendreth the *disenteria*: and if good raine water be not present, you must vse running water, wherein burning steele hath beene quenched. But if the stomacke be diseased, or if his strength be cast downe, giue him wine, also let it be restringent, and not very old. Sleepe is the best remedy for them that haue the *disenteria*. For this cure you must vse such remedies as doe restraine, stop, dry vp, and prouoke vrine, and that do cary the fluxe some other way. Restrictiue things be these: sorell seed, *sumach*, gauls, pomgranat rinds dried, brier root, *labdanum*, *acatia*, *hypocistis*, *balaustium*, willow leaues, comfery roots, leaues, and seed, *rheum ponticum*, if it may be gotten, root of *althæa*, horsetaile, coral, masticke, hares creame, dragons bloud, the barke of frankensence, *terra lemnia*, roote of *verbascus*, plaintaine seed, white daisies, a kinde of mallowes called *alcea*, *oxis*, *sanicula*, *ophrys*, *ophioglossum*, knotgrasse, shepherdes purse, walwort, *pedelion*, *nummularia*, dragons the male, sharpe mulberies, kernelles of grapes, the barke

Signes of exulceration of the great bowels.

Diet.

Lenticula.

Potus.

Curatio.

Adstringentia

barke of maces, and ſuch like. Theſe things do ſtoppe and make temperate the biting, gnawing, and ſharpneſſe of humors, as is *amylum*, gums tragacanth, tallow of goats, kids, ſwine, geeſe and hens. Theſe do dry vp; hares creame, harts-horne burnt, the ſhels of crabbes of running water, and ſage. Things to prouoke vrine, you ſhall find in his owne place. Therefore if the exulceration be in the great bowels, you muſt miniſter cliſters firſt, ſuch as haue power to ſcoure and cleanſe, as this is: ℞. of the decoction of whole barley. ℔ j. *mel roſarum* ſtrained. ℥ j. ſugar roſet. ℥ ß. yolks of egges in number ij. oile of roſes. ℥ iij. commixe all together & make a cliſter. Abſterſion and cleanſing being firſt done, caſt in thoſe things that do glutinate and ioine together, as this is: ℞. red roſes, plantaine, leaues of comfery, knotgraſſe, primroſes. ana. *M.* ß. *balauſtiæ*. ℥ j. rice burned. ℥ j. roote of comfery. ℥ ß. ſeeth altogether in water wherein ſteele hath bene quenched, vntill the third part be conſumed, then ſtraine it, and take of the iuice of that decoction. ℥ xij. iuice of plantaine. ℥ ij. *acatia, hypocciſchidis*. ana. ℈ ij. bole armoniacke, *ſanguis draconis*. ana. ℈ j. goats tallow. ℥ j. oiles of roſes, mirtels, quinces. ana. ℥ j. commixe all together and make a cliſter. Sometime it doth not only require things to ſtoppe the vehemencie of the paine, but alſo medicines that be ſtupefactiue. Therfore then it is good to vſe this cliſter. ℞. of goats milke, or of cowes milke. ℔ j. freſh butter. ℥ j. goats greaſe. ℥ j. ß. gumme tragacanth. ana. ℥ j. yolkes of egges in number iij. pilles of hounds tongue. ℥ j. oile of roſes. ℥ iij. commixe all together and make a cliſter. If there be neede of more vehement ſtupefaction: you muſt augment the waight of the pils, or elſe you muſt adde to the aforeſaid waight of pilles three or foure graines of *opium*, or more or leſſe, according to the vehemency of the paine, and the ſtate of the body. If the exulceration be in the ſmall and thin bowels, then it rather requireth medicines that are giuen in at the mouth. Therfore the decoctiõ of reſtrictiue things which is afore taught, is good, if you commixe with it firupe of roſes, and mirtels, and ſo miniſter it, and alſo other medicines which are taught in the chap. of *diarrhæa*, are good. Alſo you may conueniently miniſter this potion. ℞. of the decoction of the root of comfery, or of ſome other reſtrictiue thing. ℥ iij. firupe of roſes. ℥ j. firupe of mirtels. ℥ ß. powder of the trochiskes of *ſpodium*, plantaine ſeede, bole armoniacke. ana. ℈ ij. commixe all together and make a potion. Beſides thoſe things that are rehearſed in the chapters of *Diarrhæa* and *Lienteria*, you muſt apply outwardly vpon the belly this cerote. ℞. of the oiles of maſticke, roſes, mirtels, and quinces. ana. ℥ j. meale of barley and fenugreeke. ana. ℥ j. of red roſes, plantaine. ana. ℥ j. *balauſtiæ, ſanguis draconis*. ana. ℥ ß. bole armoniacke. ℥ j. *hypocciſchidis, acatia*, maſticke. ana. ℥ ij. with waxe and roſen as much as is ſufficient, make a cerote. By the examples aforeſaid, you may make many other remedies; which we ouerpaſſe here.

Obtundentia.

Reſiccantia.

Cure if it be in the great bowels.

Cliſter abſtringens.

Cliſter glutinans.

Cliſter dolorem leniens.

Potio.

Optimum cerotum.

CHAP. XVI.

Of Tenaſmus.

DE TENASMO.

TENASMVS, is a cõtinuall deſire to go to the ſtoole or ſiege, which the patiẽt cannot defer nor eſchue, & yet he auoideth nothing, except it be a li-

Cauſæ. tle bloud, or filthy matter like ſneuell. It is cauſed oftentimes through outward cold, or through humours ſharpe and cholericke, or of ſalt fleume, or impoſtumation, or of inflammation engendred in the ſtraight gut. Alſo many times, the ſtopping of hard dung in the blinde gut, may cauſe *Tenaſmus*. The Phiſition may eaſily know if it be cauſed of outward cold, by the tale of the ſicke, becauſe either he hath ſitten vpon cold things, or he hath taken much cold in winter, or he hath taried long in cold water: you may know the humours by that which he auoideth, which either be cholericke or flegmaticke. In a botch or bile his egeſtion is matter and corruption, & he feeleth pricking in the fundament. Inflammation cauſeth ſwelling of the right bowell, & grieuous paine together with a feauer: abundance of dung cauſeth feeling of grieuous diſtention, and ſtretching out about the bottome of the belly. The cure is diuers according to the diuerſity of cauſes. Therfore if the *Tenaſmus* be cauſed of cold, you muſt miniſter pure and vnmixed wine, hote, and you muſt ſprinckle, foment, & nouriſh the ſhare & the parts about the priuy members with hot oiles and foments: as are, oiles of rew and lillies: alſo bran ſodden in wine, and put in a bag may well be applied to the fundament. Alſo it is good to throw in cliſters made of the decoction of wild mintes, origan, calamint, cammomill, ſothernwood, ſeed of anniſe, fennell, & ſuch like, putting to it oiles of dill, cammomill, and lillies. Alſo it is maruellous good if you take a very old tile which is blacke with ſmoke, & bray it with the gere that is contained in it, then commixe it together with ſeething vineger, and bind it vp in a cloth, and apply it to the fundament by and by after he hath auoided any thing. But if the *Tenaſmus* be cauſed through cholericke humors withholden and remaining in the bowels and fundament, you muſt caſt in cliſters which haue vertue and power to ſcoure, waſh and clenſe. As this is: ℞. of the licour of the decoction of barley. ℔ j. ſugar roſet ℥ j. ß *mel roſarum*. ℥ j. yolkes of egges. ij. oile of roſes. ℥ iij. commixe them and make a cliſter, he muſt eſchew all ſharpe thinges, and he muſt vſe things meanly cold and moiſt, and all thoſe things which doe ſtop and temperate the ſharpneſſe of choler. If *Tenaſmus* be cauſed of flegmaticke humors, it ſhall be healed like that which is cauſed of cold, only adding to, and commixing with the cliſters, ſuch medicines as haue vertue to purge fleume, as is *Electuarium nidum* or *diaphœnicon*, or *benedicta laxatiua*. And if *Tenaſmus* be engendred of inflammation, caſt in broth of ptiſan, wherein hath bene ſodden a few red roſes, or if vehement inflammation do trouble him, miniſter this cliſter. ℞. of the licour of the decoctiõ of plantain. ℥ v. oile of roſes. ℥ ij. the white of one egge, commixe them together & make a cliſter. Outwardly you muſt ſprinckle and annoint the place betweene the priuy members, and the fundament with oile of rew, and mirtels: or apply this foment. ℞. red roſes, plantaine. ana. *M*. j. *balauſtiæ*. ℥ iij. *ſidiorum*. ℥ j. mirtell berries. ℥ ij. leaues of brier. ℥ j. ſeeth altogether in ſufficient water, vntill the third part be conſumed, then wette a ſpunge in the licour of that decoction, and apply it to the fundament. Moreouer when there is neede of ſuppuration, rotting or diſſoluing, apply foments made of the decoction of the roote of *Althæa*, of fenugreeke, cammomill, melilote and branne. If the *Tenaſmus* be cauſed of an vlcer or botch, firſt caſt in the things which haue an abſterſiue and clenſing vertue: and then afterward that

Signa.

Curatio.

Tenaſmus of cold.

Tenaſmus of cholericke humours.

Cliſter abſtergens.

Tenaſmus of flegmaticke humours.

Tenaſmus of inflammation.

Cliſter.

Fomentum.

Diſcuſſiues.

Cure of Tenaſmus cauſed of an vlcer.

Vnguentum.

things that doe glutinate and ioine together muſt be vſed, euen as you did in the flux *Dyſenteria*. Alſo this ointment put into the fundament is good. ℞. oile of roſes. ℥. j. ß. the muſcilage of gumme *Tragacantha*. ana. ℥. iij. ceruſe, burnt lead. ana. ℥. ß. *Aloes*, frankenſence. ana. ℈. j. waxe, as much as is ſufficient, make an ointment, wherin dippe linnen clothes, and put them into the tuell. If the paine be wonderfull great, you may adde to the aforeſaid things, *opium* ℈. j. If the *Tenaſmus* be cauſed through multitude and abundance of doung, then in the beginning the doung muſt be brought out by litle and litle with ſoluble and gentle cliſters, as this is. ℞. mallowes, *Althæa*, mercurie, beates, leaues of blacke violets. ana. *M*. j. ſeedes of fenugreeke and lineſeed. ana. ℥. ß. boyle them all in ſufficient quantity of water to the third part: then take of the licour of that decoction. ℔. j. *medulle caſiæ fiſtularis* ℥. j. ß. common oile. ℥. iij. ſalt beaten. ℥. j. and make a cliſter. But of this one thing you muſt ſpecially beware, that in this caſe you do miniſter no purgation at the mouth, for that would bring great perill and deſtruction to the patient, by reaſon of drawing of mo excrements from the whole body thither.

Tenaſmus of multitude of doung.

Cliſter lenitiue

Note.

CHAP. XVII.

Of the Chollicke.

De Colli Doloribvs.

THE Chollick, or paine, which is bred in the gut called *Colon* of the Greeks is cauſed many wayes: but it hath foure ſpeciall cauſes. For ſomtime it is engendred through groſſe and flegmaticke humors fallen downe within the thin skinne of the gut *Colon*. Alſo ſometime through windineſſe, which hath no roome to get out. Alſo it is cauſed through inflammation of the groſſe & thicke gut ſtretching out and troubling or vexing. Alſo it is wont to engender through ſharpe and gnawing humours, which do afflict and vexe the aforeſaid bowell vehemently. Thoſe that haue the cholicke engendred of a groſſe and flegmaticke humour, they be grieued and vexed aloft, all ouer the *Abdomen*, (that is) the place which is vnder the mouth of the ſtomacke: ſpecially they are grieued where the gut *Colon* lieth: for there they feele pain, as though the gut were braied or bored through. Alſo they be fretted & haue diſpoſition to vomit, belkings, ſundrie & ſtrange vomitings and ſpecially of fleume. Alſo the wombe is letted and ſtopped and ſendeth forth nothing, nor ſo much as wind. Alſo the doung which ſometime commeth forth, doth looke like oxes doung, & it is light & full of wind. And there goeth before theſe things continuall vſing of meates that be very cold and of a groſſe iuyce, alſo filling with meats, ill digeſtion, & crudity, idlenes, & ſuch as be adioyning to theſe. Thoſe that haue the cholick cauſed of windines, they feele extentiõ, ſtretching forth & bolning. They that haue the cholick cauſed through inflãmation, they feele inward burning and heat, & no ſmall feuer: alſo retention both of the vrine & ordure. Alſo they are troubled with thirſt, burning heat, diſpoſitiõ to vomit, & vomiting ſpecially of choler without any ceaſing of the euill at all. And this is the moſt grieuous & worſt kind of cholick, which doth threaten to turne into the paine of the *Iliaca paſſio*. They that haue the cholick engendred of ſharp & gnawing humors, they be troubled & vexed with burning thirſt & watching,

Cauſe.

Signes of a groſſe humour.

Signes of windineſſe.

Signes of inflammation.

Signes of ſharp and gnawing humours.

Diet for the cholicke caused of flegmaticke and tough humours.

yea and small feuers, the vrine is made sharpe, and cholericke humours are throwen out oftentimes, going to the stoole doth raise greater paine and torment. Also meats & drinkes that be hote, being receiued doe prouoke it grieuously. The diet and cure of this disease is diuers according to the diuersitie of the causes. Therefore when grosse & clammy humors doe cause the cholicke, the whole diet must be extenuate and made thinne. Therefore let the bread which the sick shall eat be new & wel baked in an ouen or furnace. Flesh is good specially of birdes, as hens, partrich, wood culuers, turtles, blackbirds, and doues: he must eschew all kind of foules which do swim or liue in waters, as those things which do abound with many superfluities. Among foure footed beasts the flesh of calues & kids are good. He must eschue all kind of pulse, which do maruellous hurt in this disease. For potherbes you must vse fennell *apium, asperage* & such like. Also it will not hurt to take garlike & oinions raw. To be short let his food be easie of digestion and ingendring good iuice. Let him eschue fulnesse & cruditie: he must drinke wine that is somewhat restrictiue, white, thinne, shining, of meane age, temperately alayed, and let him drinke but litle. For the cure of the cholicke caused of grosse humours: you must cure it so, that you doe not heat vehemently with no medicins, for such remedies do spread abroad, puffe vp, and make windie all cold and grosse humours, which puffing vp and spreading in the bowels doth cause more vehement paine. Therfore it is good to deuide, cut, and digest those humors without vehement paine or heate, and by vsing of those things which do not puffe vp and make windie. Therefore in his sharp and extreme paine make irrigations of the oiles of rew, cammomill, & dill. Also make foments and *sacculi* of the flowers of cammomill, dill, and melilote, seedes of flaxe, of fenugreeke, of *Althæa*, of mill and branne. Also clisters made with the oiles aforesaid, & with the decoction of the aforesad herbes are maruellous good, or with the decoction of the roote of wild cucumbers, putting to it comin, or rew, with goose grease, or hennes grease after this sort. ℞. mallowes, *Althæa* cammomill, mercurie, dill. ana. *M*. j. origan, calamint, peniroiall. ana. *M*. ß. seeds of flaxe, fenugreek, comin, louage. ana. ℥. iij. seeth all together with wel-water of iust quantity, vntill the third part. Then take of the licour of that decoction being strained. lib. ß. *Hierapicra* ℥. ß. *Benedicta laxatiua*. ℥. v. of *Electuarium nidũ*. ℥. j. ß. of *mel rosarum* strained. ℥ ß. oiles of cammomill, dill, and rew. ana. ℥. j. the yolkes of egges in number two, common salt, ℥. j. commixe all together and make a clister. Also the putting in of suppositaries, and annointing of the fundament made by iuice of *Ciclaminum*, with hony and salt peter, or centorie with honie and salt peter doe profit. Example of a suppositarie is this. ℞. of hony sodden ℥. j. ß. pouder of *Hierapicra*. ℥ j. *colocinthidis*. ℈ j. salt gemme. ℈. ß. commixe them and make long suppositaries. Also vomiting before supper, if the patient can vomit easily, doth helpe aboue all other things. Moreouer after the purging, if the paine hath bin prolonged for many dayes, let him go into a great vessell of hot oile if it may be had. Also it is good to sit in the decoction of *Althæa*, peniroiall, laurell leaues, fenugrecke, cãmomill, motherwort, dill, & such like. The most conuenient medicine against the cholicke, is wine wherin wormwoode hath bene infused or sodden, if they neede drinking after a bath:

Cure of cholick caused of grosse humours.

Clyster.

Glans.

Vomitus.

Insession. Vinum absynthytes.

it is also very profitable for them that they thirst not. Also decoction of the herbe it selfe, when it hath once boiled being commixed with wine, may commodiously be ministred after a bath. Also *Castoreum* continually drunke, doth destroy the disease vtterly: and it is better then all medicines. It is ministred to the sicke. ℥.j. in three *Cyathes* of *aqua mulsa*. And if the paine do not cease & rest, you must minister *diatrion piperion* or *theriaca*. If that the paine be vehemét it is good to vse medicines that do meanely ease, make soluble, and mitigate, aswell put in beneath as also giuen to drinke. For you must eschue those things that do stupefact and astonie strongly, because they do somwhat ease and mitigate, but they make the disease longer by making the humours more grosse, and thickning of the passages of the bowels. If the cholicke be caused of windinesse, you must cast in clysters that do dissolue winde, as is this. ℞. sothernwood, origan, peniroiall, calamint, cammomill, ana. *M*.j. rew, mints, wild mints, ana. *M*.ß. seedes of annise, fennell, carawayes, commin, dill, louage, and *daucus*, ana. ℥.ij. seeth all together vnto the third part: then take of the licour of that decoction strained. ℔.j. *hierapicra*, *benedicta* & *laxatiua*. ana. ℥.ß. *Castoreum*. ℥.j. pouder of *diacuminum*. ℥ ij. oiles of rew and dill. ana. ℥.j.ß. common salt. ℥ j.ß. commixe them all together and make a clyster. Also there may be added to the aforesaid things the cõfection of bay beries: for there is nothing of more effect to dissolue and driue away windines. Also it is good to minister daily the quantitie of an hazell nut of the said decoction or electuary of laurell beries in the decoction of some cutting and extenuating medicine. Apply outwardly vpon the belly aloft, foments and irrigations of such things as doe disperse and scatter windinesse, as these be, besides the aforenamed things, *nigella aminilum*, parcely, bitter almondes, blacke pepper, wilde mintes, bay berries, wormewood, nettle seede, gladon, marioram, cinnamon and others: of these therefore you may make Cataplasmes, foments, and bagges. But that which farre excelleth all the rest (as Galen witnesseth) is a great cupping glasse fastened lightly with abundant flame to the whole belly aloft, which doeth maruellously as it were by enchauntment. Let the sicke beware of and eschue wine that is alayed, and drinking of cold water, and also from vsing of milke and other things that doe coole, and from meates and drinkes which engender windinesse. And let him rather vse to drinke wine that is vnmingled and pure, and let him vse a diet which doeth heate and cutte or deuide. If the cholicke be caused of inflammation of the bowels, you must open the vaine in the arme. But if difficultie and hardnesse of making water, doe rule and beare a sway, you must draw bloud from the vaines of the anckle. Also you must vse the aforesaid remedies, excepting sharpe things and vehement purgers. And you must rather vse clisters mitigating and easing paine, also cataplasmes and irrigations, and going downe into oile. Also fasten to them cupping glasses. Let the diet be thinne, almost the diet of feuers, vntill the inflammation be slaked. And if the cholicke be caused through sharpe and gnawing or fretting humours, it is good to poure in at the fundament those things that can wash out and purge those humours without any mordacitie and gnawing: as is broth of ptisan, or the decoction of fenugreeke, lineseed, cammomill, and *althea*, with fresh goose grease, or hens grease and oile of roses. This clister is

Castoreum.

Anodyna.

Cure of the cholicke caused of windinesse.

Clyster.

Compositio ex baccis lauri.

Note.

Diet.

Cure of cholick caused of inflammation.

Diet.

Cure of cholicke caused of sharp and gnawing humours.

Clyster.

specially good. ℞. leaues of violets, both the tame endiues, leaues of *Althea*, cammomill. ana. *M.* j. ß. seedes of fenugreeke, flaxe. ana. ℥. ß. boile these in iust quantity of water, vntill the third part be consumed. Then take of the licour of that decoction being strained. ℥. xiij *cassia fistula*. ℥. j. *Hierapicra*. ℥. vj. oile of roses. ℥. ij. oyle of dill. ℥. j. goose grease and hennes grease. ana. ℥. iij. yolkes of egges in number two, commixe them all, and make a clister. Moreouer you must not only purge the hurtfull and corrupt humors, but also you must temper and moderate them. Therefore he must vse bathes of sweete water, for they do mitigate and also prouoke sleepe: for which purpose minister sirupe of violets, and roses and such like, which are able to temperate and stoppe the violence of the gnawing humours. Also he must vse soupping meates, as *ptisans* and brothes of fishes of stony places. He must abstaine from all hote and sharpe things, whether they be meates or medicines, or cataplasmes, or foments, or irrigations that be hot: as also he must abstaine from drinking of wine, especially from old wine. And to be short, let his whole diet be cold and moyst. If the paine be not a whit released, but do rage more vehemently, then you must come to the vsing of stupefactiue things. For in this disease they doe not only pleasure and profit by astonying of the sense and feeling: but also because they make the thin humors more thicke and grosse, and do quench the intollerable heat. Among stupefactiue things *Philonium* is speciall good, of the which you may minister for the most part one whole dram Also pilles of houndes tongue are maruellous good, if as is afore taught you do make six pilles of ℥. j. & minister one of them to be swallowed before they goe to bed. But there be very many things which doe helpe the cholicke with their whole vertue and substance: among the which white doung of a wolfe taken with water or thin white wine is not the worst. That doung is better which hangeth on herbes or bushes, then that which toucheth the ground. Also the said doung of the wolfe easeth the cholicke being bound to the Ilions. Greene mintes as *Ætius* affirmeth, sodden a while and drunke three dayes healeth cholickes.

Victus ratio.

Stupefacientia

Philonium.
Pilule de cynogloſſa.

Lib. 9. cap. 31.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Iliaca passio.

DE ILEO.

THE *Iliaca passio*, is a disease causing most grieuous & deadly paine in the small guts. The latins do call this disease, *volumlus* & *conuolumlus*. The barbarous do cal it *Iliaca passio*. This disease is caused through continuall corruptiõ & crudity of meats, but specially of fat meats, which, if they be without corruptiõ & being withholden, they engender obstructions in the smal guts. Also it is engendred of certain stripes & blowes in certain places in which the smal guts do lie. Also through vehement cold restraining, & withholding of the excrements. Moreouer through abundant drinking of cold things, specially if much be taken when they sweate. Also it chaunceth to them, whose bowels be fallen into the coddes together with the doung: and being violently thrust backe from thence againe, and through that it is enflamed. Also it is caused through drinking of deadly medicines, & through hard doung being impact about the thin bowel. For the most part this disease is engẽdred ether through inflamma-

Causa.

inflammation, or through obstruction of the drie doung. This disease is common to children, but yet they escape it through helpe of naturall humiditie. It is not wont to chance verie often to old men: but if they chance to haue it, they almost be neuer rid of it. They that haue this disease haue most vehemēt paine, & some swelling of the thin and small guts sticketh out, that it seemeth wounden together like a string called *Chorda*, whereupon many do call this disease *Chordapson*: also there is ouermuch moistnesse of the stomach, loseneſſe, vaine and emptie belkings, and doing no ease, rumbling and noise of the bowels, perfect stopping and letting of the doung and of windinesse. If the euill do increase and waxe greater, he auoideth all vpward, and therefore he vomiteth vp fleume and choler, he hath coldnesse of the whole bodie, and paine. Also to many there chanceth difficulty & hardnesse of breathing. Moreouer to them that shall die there chanceth cold sweat, difficultie and hardnes of making water, yea the fundament is so bound & close, that no small instrument will enter in: and sometime doung is cast vp by vomiting. For the cure of this disease, you must cure children with irrigations, cataplasmes, clysters, suppositaries, and foments, as is declared in the chapter of the Collicke. But the cure of them that be of age must differ according to the diuersitie of causes. Therefore if *Iliaca passio* be caused of cruditie and ill digestion, & through deuouring and eating of many and diuerse meates which yet remaine in the stomach: you must prouoke vomit with things aforsaid. But if there do remain no raw and vndigest meats in the stomach, you must go about by all meanes, to draw out beneath aswell windinesse as also the doung: & that must be done by clisters, suppositaries, and annointings with great diligence in ech of them. Therefore you must cast in this cliſter. ℞. mercurie, rew, leaues of *Althea*, centorie. ana. *M*. j. hyssop, calamint, wormewood. ana *M*. j. ß. root of *Althea*. ℥ j. root of wilde cucumber. ℥ j. ß. seedes of flaxe and fenugreeke. ana. ℥ ij. seedes of commin. ℥ ij. boile them in iust quantitie of water, vntill the third part be consumed, then take of the liquor of that decoction being strained ℥ xiiij. of *Benedicta laxatiua*. ℥ j. fresh butter, *mel rosarum* strained. ana. ℥ ß. oyles of rew, and dill ana. ℥ j. ß. common salt. ℥ j. commixe them together and make a cliſter, and cast it in before meate: but if the euill be vehement, cast it in also after meate. And you must warne the patient, that he do hold it as long as he can. Also you must make suppositaries, as you do for the cholicke, putting to them seeds of rew, commin, and stalkes of coleworts. And you must make them the longer that they may pierce the deeper. Also you must annoint the fundament with iuice of *Ciclaminum*, or hony with *nitrum* or salt peter. The foments and cataplasmes, wherewith this euill is cured, be almost such as are spoken of in the chapter of the collicke. Also foments made of wooll wet in oile, wherein commin, dill, rewe, and cresses haue bene sodden, be verie good. Also emplaisters made of lineseed, fenugreeke, barly meale darnell meale, rew, commin, seeds of dill, and *apium*, are good. Also it is good to descend into a vessell filled with water and oile: but seeth in the water *Althea*, rewe and dill. After these, fasten on cupping glasses, first lightly to places somwhat farre off, & then also to the places that are grieued, making deepe scarification. Also it is good to minister purgations, specially if the doung be

Signa.

Curatio.

Cure if it come of cruditie.

Cliſter.

Glandes.

Illutions.

Fomenta.

Cataplasma.

Concurbitula.

Purgatio.

drawn out first by such things as are before rehearsed. Iris maruellous good if they vomit by drinking dill sodden. After drinking, cast bread into scalding water, and minister peeces of it to eate by and by hote. They that haue the *Iliaca passio* engendred through taking of some venimous medicine, you must giue them much warme water, and let them drinke it, and constraine them to vomit. After that you must giue them hot oile in drinke, or fat broth, that they may vomit againe. After within a fewe dayes giue him *theriaca* dissolued in wine, and let him eate meates of good iuyce. And if the obstruction do continue still, emptie the belly with milke, with a litle scammonie, or *Aloes*, or some other purging medicine. If the *Iliaca passio* be engendred through inflammation, you must beginne with bloudletting: then you must fasten cupping glasses about the inflamed parts scarifying them. Also cast in clisters made of the decoction of mallowes, fenugreeke, lineseed, with oile & butter. Also apply outwardly those, things that are good against inflammations, and do ease paine, you must prescribe vnto them a most thinne diet. If the *Iliaca passio* be caused through falling of the bowels into the coddes, you must by and by labour (the patient lying vpright) to thrust backe againe the bowelles that are fallen downe to the share, and keepe it vp easily without violence or pressing of it together, with bandes and trusses applyed, conuenient for it.

Cure of Iliaca passio caused of poison.

Cure if it be of inflammation.

Cure if it be of the falling of the bowels into the coddes.

CHAP. XIX.

Of wormes.

De Lvmbricis.

THere be three kinds of worms. The first be round and long, named *Teretes*. The second be broad, called therfore *Lati*. The third, those be called *ascarides*. The first kind of wormes called *teretes*: according to their thickneſſe they be round and a hand breadth in length, and sometime longer, and they be commoner then other. They be often in the slender and small guts, & they go into the stomacke, and therefore they are voided often by the mouth, and to some also they come out at the nosethrils. And this kind of wormes is peculiar to infants, and children, and boies, and girles. The second kind of wormes called *Lati*, be broad and long like a gard or band. They be of incredible length as *Plinie* witnesseth. lib. 2. cap 33. Sometime they are seene three hundreth foote long, and sometime more. This kind of worme (as *Paulus* and *Ætius* witnesse) is nothing else but a permutation and changing of the thinne filmes going about the small guttes within, into a certaine liuing bodie, that will moue and stirre. The third kind of worms called *Ascarides*, be thinne and short like small wormes. They be found most commonly in the right gut, and in the end of the fundament. All the aforesayd kindes be engendred and caused of crude, raw, grosse, & flegmaticke matter, and through inconuenient rottennesse, such as is gathered specially in children, and in other great eaters. They that haue round wormes do feele incredible gnawing of the bowels, and of the stomach, thinne and small coughs, and oftentimes prouoking and drie. In many there followeth yelking and sleepe with mouing of the stomacke: and also they do arise vp vnreasonably. Many do awake and leape vp with noise: and crying out, and fall asleepe againe: but some do both put forth their tongue, and shut their

Teretes.

Lati.

Ascarides.

Causa.

Segnes of round wormes, teretes.

their eies and be quiet, and keepe silence, and do fret & fume with them which raise them, because they cannot watch they be so weake. Some haue their eies sprinkled with bloud, and a pulse that is vnequall, obscure, fayling and running backe. Also to many there chanceth losse of appetite. Children, while they do sleepe chew their tongue, and also fashioning of their mouth as though they sucked or receiued meate. Also to some there chanceth gnashing of the teeth. But these things are done by litle and litle and betweene whiles. To some they runne forth into the stomach, and do cause gnawing and disposition to vomit, and the patients refuse meat: and if they be compelled to eat, they scarce can swallow that which they take, or they vomit it vp againe. In many the bellie doth throw out corrupt meats, and is puffed vp like as it were a timpany. The rest of the bodie it doth consume and make leane without reason, neither fasting going before, nor vnmeasurable purging being made. Also it chanceth sometime the face to be made verie redde, specially about the balles of the cheekes: but this colour turneth againe into swartnesse. Some do speake foolish things in their sleepe like franticke persons. Some change the place that they lie downe in, and tumble and cast themselues from place to place: they increase feuers in them without order with vehement coldnes of the extreme partes, hauing fits the third or fourth day without order. But also these signes & tokens altogether which we haue now reharsed, must not euery one of thē be looked for in euerie body: but the chiefest of them & somtime many. Broad wormes do bring continuall gnawing of the stomach, & an impotent & incorrigible appetite to meat. For the worme that is in the guttes, deuoureth the meat that is eaten, so that he hath need of more straight way, & except he eat straightway, the bowels are gnawn: they that are thus diseased there foloweth slendernes & weaknes of the bodie with inequality. The most sure & infallible signe is, if certen things like cucumber seeds be auoided out with the egestion of excrements. *Ascarides* do raise a vehement itch in the fundament, & do prouoke the patient to go to the stoole continually. They that be troubled with this disease for the most part be the better after egestion & easing themselues. Let their diet be hot & dry, specially if the patient lack a feuer, & let them vse meates of good iuice, and which wilbe soone dispersed throughout the whole body: & such as do not increase the cause that engendreth worms. Therfore all meates are to be eschued, which can ingender flegmaticke humors. Moreouer they that are troubled with wormes, must be nourished and fed liberally, and may not suffer hunger: because the wormes except they haue meate to feed on, they then by & by gnaw the hard parts of the body: but giue them meat at that time, specially when they are not altogether emptie. Let them drinke no strong drinke. For the cure, it is not to be spared & somtime if there be a feuer with it, you must haue respect to that, & to the wormes also: & sometime you need to be carefull but a litle for the feuer, and you must be diligent notwithstanding to get the wormes out of the bodie. Therefore when many haue not spied and known this, it commeth to passe for lack of heed taken to auoid the worms, that they be gnawn and eaten of them, and so being pulled & gnawne, they die. The cure aswell of the round wormes as of the flat wormes consisteth in this point, that you may driue them out of the bodie being first killed.

Signes of brode wormes Lati.

Signes of Ascarides.

Curatio.

They are killed ſpecially with bitter medicines, among which (if a feuer be not preſent) theſe ſimples are good: wormewood, *Seryphium*, which is a kinde of wormewood growing in the ſea, ſothernwood, calamint, horehound, dittaine, hyſope, rew, leaues of perſica, coriander ſeeds, harts-horne, lupines, mintes, peniroiall, origan, centorie, ferne, gentian, *ariſtolochia rotunda*, garlike, ſeed of colewortes, and roote of *Enula campana*. To theſe, if a feuer be preſent, you muſt adioine the ſeeds of both the endiues, and alſo the iuice of their herbes.

Simples to kill wormes.

Aloes.

Among all other, the moſt commendable remedie is aloës. Therefore if infants will hardly take aloës, becauſe it is ſo bitter, you muſt keep them vpright with bands, and their mouth being opened and ſeparated, you muſt caſt it in againſt their willes, with a certaine pipe ſtrengthened with a long ſplent. Of theſe aforſaid ſimples now rehearſed, there may be made diuerſe compounds, as decoctions, powders, cataplaſmes, emplaiſters, & ointments. Among other things this powder is onely good. ℞. of worme-ſeed. ℥.ij. of centory, wormewood, harts-horne burnt, ana. ℥.j. calamint, peniroial, origan, ana. ℥.ß. ſothernwood, mintes, lupines, leaues of *ariſtolochia rotunda*, ana. ℈.j. aloës. ℈.ij. commix them altogether, and make a powder, of the which miniſter the weight of one drachme, or halfe a drachme, according to the age and ſtate of the bodie of the ſicke, in milke or hony, or ſirupe of liquorice: for thoſe things which do kill the wormes, muſt be miniſtred with ſweet liquors, that thereby the worms may taſt of the medicine the ſooner, being allured by the ſweetneſſe of it that is miniſtred with it. You muſt annoint the nauell outwardly with bulles gall or with this ointment. ℞. oiles of bitter almonds, and of wormewood. ana. ℥.j. bulles gall. ℥.ß. centory, wormwood, lupines. ana. ℈.ij. leaues of perſica, harts-horne burnt, aloës, ſothernwood. ana. ℈.j. waxe as much as is ſufficient, and make an ointment. Or apply all ouer the ſtomach this cerate. ℞. aloës, wormwood, meale of lupines. ana. ℥ ij. *nigella*, mints, origan, peniroiall, horehound. ana. ℥.j. centory, calamint. ana. ℥.ß. oiles of wormewood, and bitter almonds. ana. ℥ ij. *oleum coſtiuum*. ℥.j. bulles gall. ℥ ß. with waxe and roſen, as much as ſhall ſuffice, make a cerate. By examples of theſe you may eaſily make emplaiſters and cataplaſmes, ſo that I need not to rehearſe here any example of ech of them. Moreouer, it is good to caſt in beneath abundaunce of *mulſa*, that thereby the wormes being allured by the ſweetneſſe of the hony, may creepe downeward. But when the wormes are killed with the aforeſayd medicines, you muſt driue them out without delay: for there proceedeth a vicious exhalation from them, which both deſtroieth appetite and hurteth digeſtion, and being lifted vpward, it cauſeth ſwemmings, and other euils. The wormes being killed are driuen out for the moſt part by ſuppoſitaries and purgations, but ſpecially by *hierapicra* and *pillulæ peſtilentiales*, or *ruſi*, which haue a maruellous efficacy in killing and bringing out of wormes. But thoſe that are troubled with wormes and with fluxe of the wombe alſo: thoſe you muſt cure by thickning of the flux, and by changing the digeſtion into a better ſtate, aſwell with meats, as alſo with cataplaſmes: for the more that the flux preuaileth, ſo much the more the engendring of wormes is encreaſed: and againe the fluxe ceaſing, the wormes do reſt and pauſe. Therfore you muſt diligently labour to ſtop & reſtraine the wombe, & to adde ſtedfaſtnes and ſtrength to it. Therfore miniſter

Compoſitã.

Pului.

Vnguentum.

Ceratum.

Pillulæ. Ruſi.

Cure if fluxe of the wombe be ioyned with wormes.

miniſter iuice of plantaine, or elſe let him take dried plantaine: for both haue like efficacie as well againſt the fluxe, as alſo againſt wormes. Alſo make cataplaſmes, cerates and ointments of raw barley meale, pomgranate rinds, *hypociſchidos*, & ſuch like reſtrictiue things: but adde vnto them thoſe things which be good to kill wormes. Reſtrictiue medicines are good to be applied outwardly for this cauſe, becauſe they do corroborate and ſtrengthen againe the ſtomacke, being hurt through often vſing of bitter medicines. Alſo it is lawfull in this caſe to miniſter earth worms being dried, and beaten to powder with *hydromel*. The wormes called *Aſcarides*, being in children that be infants, they muſt be brought out with ſuppoſitaries made of honie and ſalt. In them that be elder, they muſt be brought out with cliſters, made either with ſharp brine, or with decoction of wormwood, centorie, calamint, lupines, peniroyall, and other aboue rehearſed, putting to oyles. After miniſtration of cliſters, annoint the ſtraight gut, or fundament with theſe ſimples, (that is) *Acatia*, *hypociſchidos*, iuice of *Sumach*, or ſome other reſtrictiue medicine. For the fleſh being conſtrained by reſtrictiue things, it looſeth the abilitie that ingendreth wormes, and it excludeth and ſhutteth out the *aſcarides*. But this that followeth is good both for children, and for thoſe that be of greater age, and is moſt effectuous. Take old fleſh that is powdred, cut of the fat, and faſhion it long and round, like a ſuppoſitarie fit for the fundament, and thruſt it into the tuell, applying a ligament or band, and let it alone within as long as they can ſuffer it, then looſen it, and draw it out together with the wormes that ſticke on it. After that you ſhall powre in the things aforeſaid, and alſo annoint it as is aforeſaid.

Cure of wormes called Aſcarides.

CHAP. XX.

Of the Hemmorhoides.

DE HEMMORHOIDIBVS.

THe Hemmorhoides is an vnfolding and ſpreading abrode of the veines in the tuell. Of theſe ſome be blind, which do ſwell, and do ſend out none, or verie little blood: ſome be open, which be ſet wide open abroad certaine times, and do ſend forth blood. The hemmorhoides are cauſed through dreggie and melancholie blood, when there is abundance thereof, which the liuer ſendeth to thoſe veines. The ſignes whereby this euill is knowne, need not to be required. For the blind hemmorhoids may be ſeene with eyes, & they cauſe vehement paine, ſpecially in auoiding the doung. But the open hemmorhoids do bleed, therefore the patient cannot be ignorant what they be. Therefore when blind hemmorhoids appeare, and do raiſe great tormenting in the fundament, if the bodie be full of humours, cut the veine of the hamme or of the anckle bones. Alſo you muſt make the belly ſoluble abundantly, leſt the drie doung, while it is ſent forth, do engender paine. Alſo you muſt apply where vehement paine is, thoſe things that can and will mitigate. Among which are crummes of bread ſteeped in milke, and ſodden with yolkes of egges, and applied like a plaiſter. Alſo it profiteth to ſit in a bath made of the decoction of mallowes, violet leaues, melilot, fenugreeke, cammomill, leaues of *althea*, lineſeed, floures of roſe campion, and ſuch like. And if the patient cannot vſe that, wet wooll or a ſponge in the ſaid decoction, and apply it to the griefe. And

Cæcæ.
Apertæ.
Cauſæ.
Signa.
Curatio cæcarum.

if these aforesaid things do no good, you must get blood out of them. Therefore put into the tuell wooll annointed with iuyce of *cyclaminum*, or with onions, or with oxe gall. The same effect also hath the iuyce of centorie, doues doung, staue sacre, figge leaues, if they be rubbed with it, and also the pulpe of *colocynthidis* steeped in oile of bitter almonds. Among many other, this emplaister is verie good. ℞ of doues dung. ℥. ß. seed of staue sacre, lupines. ana. ℥.j. ß bitter almonds. ℥.j. pulpe of *coloquintidæ*. ℥.ß. iuices of *cyclaminum*, & onions. ana. ℥.j. commixe them all together, and make it like a plaister, putting to it if need be, oyle of bitter almonds. But to take away the paine presently, vse this following. ℞. elder leaues. M.j. boile them in water, vntill they be verie tender, then take a peece of scarlet, as much as a mans hand or greater, and wet it in the decoction, and lay it to the place as warme as may be suffered, & when it is cold lay it to againe, being wet in the same decoction as before. Do thus fiue or sixe times together, then lay the herbes vpon the same skarlet, lay the herbes verie hote also, this doth mollifie the hemmorhoides, and seaseth the paines very quickly, which my selfe haue often proued. Also you may put long suppositaries in the fundament, made of the roote of *cyclaminum*. Also bloodsuckers, or horse leaches, being included in a reed, so that they can put forth but onely their head, are wont to be put to the hemmorhoides to open them, and if you cannot pull them away easily, strew ashes or salt vpon their heads, and you shall make them to fall off alone. But if the hemmorhoides be open, and do auoyd out blood meanely at certaine times, they may not be stopped, for the bursting out of such blood, doth cause men that haue this disease, to be free from many other diseases. Which thing *Hippocrates* witnesseth, where he saith in *Epidemijs* these words; They which haue the hemmorhoids, neither be vexed with paine of the sides, nor inflammation of the loungs, nor a feeding vlcer, nor with felons, or cattes haire, nor with *terminthis*, nor with leprie, nor with morphew. But if the hemmorhoides do throw out blood immoderately, or longer then they should do, so that the patient do consume and waste away with this euil, and their strength decayed and throwne downe, they must be stopped by and by: but otherwise there is perill in stopping them: but in this case it is to doubt, lest the dropsie should follow, the liuer being cooled through immoderate vacuation and purging. Therefore let those that be so emptied and purged out of measure, vse meates that haue but litle blood, and that do ingender but litle superfluities or excrements, and which also do drie and restraine, as is *Alica* and rice. Of pot-herbes, endiue, succorie, purslaine, and such like. Commix his meate with *sumach*, and iuice of vnripe grapes. If his strength be much weakened, you must nourish and feed the sicke with meate thus: you must straine out the iuyce that is in the meate, and commixe with it iuice of quinces, and let him soupe that vp: he must drinke wine that is restrictiue. For the cure, if there be abundance of humors in the body, it profiteth to cut the inner veine of the right hand in the arme: but if there be not, you must studie to auert and turne away the blood by fastning of cupping glasses to the sides, & to the liuer. For the which purpose it is good to bind the hands and the feete with bands, and to vse sharp and hard frictions and rubbings. Moreouer you must minister within the bodie those things which do restraine, as are si-

To open the hemmorhoids.

Emplastrum.

Glandes.

Curatio apertarum.

6. Epid. par. 3. Aph. 19.

Diet.

Curatio.

rupes

rupes of roſes, of mirtles, of quinces, red corall, bolearmoniacke, trochiskes of amber, of *ſpodium*, of *terra lemnia*, and other which be rehearſed in the chap. of ſpitting of bloud. Alſo apply thoſe things outwardly, which can ſtop bloud that floweth. Among which as *Aetius* witneſſeth. lib. 14. cap. 5. is aloës laied on with poſca. The ſame effect alſo hath ſcales of iron or burnt lead. This medicine is notable good which is deſcribed of *Galen lib. 5. therap. method.* ℞. of frankenſence one part, of aloës one part & a halfe, commixe them with the white of an egge, vntill all come to the thickneſſe of hony and lay it vpon the ſoft haires of an hare, and apply it to the place that bleedeth, being bound outwardly with bands of fine linnen. Alſo ointments, baths, inciſſions, foments, and other ſuch like medicines, made of things hauing a reſtrictiue vertue do profite, whereof you ſhall finde many examples before in the chapters of *Diarrhœa, Lienteria, Dyſenteria & Tenaſmus.* And if you ſhall vſe litle bags, it is beſt before you apply them, to boile them in wine that is red and reſtrictiue, or at the leaſt to ſprinkle them with it. Examples of other medicines ſeeke before.

Medicamentũ Galeni.

Sacculi.

CHAP XXI.

Of the falling out of the tuell.

De Procidentia Ani.

IT chanceth ſometime, that reſolution or weakneſſe of the ouerthwart muſcles which do plucke the fundament vpward, doth cauſe the tuell to fall out. Wherefore ſeing it cannot be drawne backward againe, nor pulled vpward of the aforeſaid muſcles, it hath need of hands or medicines to put it vp againe. When the tuell is fallen out, you muſt diligently conſider whether it be free from inflammation or no, for if it be not inflamed at all, it muſt by and by be thruſt and put to his former place by compulſion: and becauſe it muſt not fall out againe, after that it is thruſt in, and put vp into his owne place, you muſt apply reſtrictiue medicines outward to it. Therefore firſt you muſt annoint it about with oile of roſes being warmed, or ſcoure the tuel with reſtrictiue wine, and then being put vp againe into his place, you muſt bind him vp. And that you muſt do by and by, aſſoone as the ſicke hath bene at the ſtoole, leſt that when neceſſitie conſtraineth them to go to the ſtoole againe, the tuell ſhould fall out againe. You muſt apply a liniment of *acatia* and *hypociſchidos* with wine. Alſo you muſt ſeeth in water till it be red, galles, *balauſtiæ*, thelles of maſt, pomegranate rindes, daiſies, ſumach, ſhales of quinces and ſuch like, and afterward of that decoction make inceſſions and waſhing. But after that the tuell is waſhed with wine or with ſome reſtrictiue decoction, then it is lawfull to ſtrew vpon it and to apply to it drie medicines. For which purpoſe you muſt apply bolearmoniak, frankenſence, *ſanguis draconis*, galles, *acatia*, mirrhe, *hypociſchidos*, harts horn, and ſuch other reſtrictiue medicins, as we haue rehearſed often before. But if the tuell through inflammation be ſo ſwollen, that it cannot be thruſt vp againe: if the bodie be full of humours, you muſt firſt cut a veine, and prouoke vomit. And alſo you muſt apply to the tuell by and by in the beginning, thoſe things that do reſtrain & ſtop or appeaſe: but if there be no abũdance of humors in the bodie, let the ſick vſe inceſſions of the decoction of cammomil, mallowes, *althæa*, lineſeed, fenugreek, and ſuch like, or let him deſcend into hot

Cauſe.

Curatio.

water, and tarrie in it for a time. Also it is lawfull to apply a sponge or woll wet in the decoction. Moreouer you must annoint the tuell with oiles of cammomill, and dill, vntill it may be put vp: for they because of their dissoluing vertue, do readily take away the swelling, and do also cause that it may be put vp againe, without anie difficultie or paine. But after it is put vp againe, then you must vse the aforesaid restrictiue medicines, that it fall not out againe.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the clefts of the fundament.

DE RIMIS ANI.

Causa. CLefts of the fundamẽt, be chaps which are made in the muscle that shutteth the fundament, or in the circle round about the fundament: they be like the chaps which are made through a North wind on the lips. They are caused through flowing of sharpe humors, or through inflãmation, or through extention of the swelling of the tuell. This euill is apparant to the eyes, and therefore we need to shew no signes to declare it by. *Signa.* For the cure, if the clefts of the fundament be ingendred of sharp humors, then they first of all must be purged and tempered. *Curatio.* But if it be caused through swelling of the fundament caused of inflammation, you must likewise vse at the beginning purging medicines. Also the bellie all the time of the cure must be kept soluble with meates that do moisten, and fat meates, lest drie doung should hinder, and tarie the conglutination. Of such qualities be mallowes, spinach, milke of sweete Almonds, soft egges, fat broth, and such other like. But to the chaps themselues you must vse this ointment. *Vnguentum.* ℞ of the oiles of roses and mirtles, ana. ℥. j. frankensence, masticke, litarge, *sanguis draconis*, ana. ℈. j. *aloes*, burnt lead, ceruse, *balaustiæ*, bolearmoniacke, ana. ℈. ß. white waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. *Aliud.* Or thus. ℞. oile of roses. ℥. j. ß. galles, mirrhe, *terra lemnia*, ana. ℈. j. roote of comferie, roch alume, burnt lead, ana. ℈. ß. the yolk of an egge being rosted, waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment. With these ointments you must annoint the clefts thrise on a day, but wash them first with decoction of roses, galles & *sidiorum*. And if burning and inflammation do vexe the diseased place, you must annoint it with *vnguentum album camphoratum*.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the weakenesse of the liuer.

DE IMBECILLITATE IECINORIS.

Causæ. WEakenesse of the liuer is caused of distempure, either hot, cold, moist, or drie. Hot distempure doth rost, and as it were burne vp as well the humours which were before in the liuer, as also those humours which are caried to the liuer by the veines *meseterij*. But cold distempure doth make the flegmaticke and raw humor, which is already contained in the liuer, grosse & tough, and hard to be moued, and the humours that be caried to the liuer, it leaueth them halfe digested. Drie distempure doth make the humours drier & thicker. Moist distempure doth make the humours thin & more watery. Therfore they which haue weake faculties and strength of the liuer, they are called *Signa.* *hepatici*, as Galen saith. Hot distempure vexing the liuer, there are *colliquations*, first

first of the humours, and after that of the liuer it selfe: also choler that is stinking and grosse is auoided by the belly, and is abundantly coloured: also a feuer vexeth him, he abhorreth meate and casteth vp choler. Moreouer thirst doth trouble them, their vrine is ruffe, & the pulse is swift. When there is cold distempure, they make not many excretions, nor much in quantitie, the euill endureth long, and the belly floweth certaine daies abundantly. But the egestions be lesse stincking then those which be melted through heate, neither haue they colour also nor thickneſſe, but are like putrifact bloud which is curded. And if you do diligently marke it, it is neither curded bloud, nor blacke bloud, but as it were certaine slime and dregs of grosse blould comming nigh to melancholy. And also diuers and many colours of the excrements do signifie cold distemper. Also in it there appeareth a faint feuer. The face doth not fall, and he hath greater appetite of meates. To either of these distempures, if there come drineſſe, the excrements will be drier and lesse, and the sicke will be more thirstie. But if moistneſſe come to either of them, the egestions will be more liquide and more abundant, and they shall be lesse troubled with thirst. For the cure, the chiefe point is to amend the griefe by contraries. Therefore you must coole a hot distempure, & heat a cold distempure. Likewise you must moisten a drie distempure, & dry a moisture. But in the cure, this onely must also be considered, that in all medicines for the liuer, that as well those which be taken by the mouth inward, as also those that be applyed to it outwardly, commixe some restrictiue things with them, whereby the strength and stabilitie of the liuer may be conserued and kept. Therefore in a hot distempure, for his diet, let him vse broth of Ptisan, and other meates that doe meanely coole, as lettuse, endiue, succorie, sowthistle, and water and bread mixed together, or bread dipped in water. Also chickens, partrich, birdes of mountaines, and veale, these being sodden in veruine or limons. Of fruits let the sicke eate raisons, limons, and sweete almonds. He must eschew wine altogether, except some other cause let it, as weakenes of the stomacke, for then you must minister thinne and watrie wine. Let them drinke for wine, iuice of pomegranates, and *syrupus acetosus simplex*. Also *oxysaccharum*, with decoction of barley or endiue. Also they must eschew all meates and drinkes dressed with hony, and that be verie hot, and haue vertue to cut and deuide. For the cure minister vnto him by the mouth, conserue of roses *diarrhodon abbatis*, *diatrion santalon*, and other such like antidotes. Also these lozenges profit. ℞. the pouders of *Diarrhodon abbatis*, and of *diatrion santalon*, ana ℥. j. ß. seedes of both the tame endiues, red roses. ana. ℈. ij. raisons. ℥. j. white sanders, withwind, floures of squinant. ana. ℈. j. sugar. ℥. vj. dissolue it in the stilled waters of withwind, & endiue that hath the brode leaues, and make lozenges. And also the antidote *Philonium*, only once ministred, sometime hath maruellously healed all hot distempure of the liuer. Apply outwardly foments made of roses, cammomill and quinces, or seeth wormewood or dates in the aforesad oiles of roses, cammomill and quinces, & then wet woll or a sponge in them, and lay that right against the liuer. Also you may vse this ointment. ℞. oiles of roses, of quinces, and of water lillies. ana. ℥. j. white sanders and red, red roses. ana. ℈. j. scraping of iuory ℈ j. ß. seeds of both the tame endiues. ana. ℈ j, vineger. ℥. j. ß. purslain.

Curatio.

Note.

Diet in a hot distempure.

Cure of a hot distempure.

Orbiculi.

Vnguentum.

Epithema. seed.gra.ij.waxe as much as is sufficient and make an ointment. Also Epithemes in this disease are wont to profite not a little: which may be made thus, or after this sort. ℞. the distilled waters of sowen Endiue with the broad leaues,of lettuce,of sorrel,of roses,of water lillies ana.℥.iij iuice of sengreene, ℥.j. vineger. ℥.j. red roses, red sanders, shauing of iuorie. ana. ℥. j. pouders of *Diarrhodon abbatis,diatrion santalon.*ana.℥.ß. seed of purslaine.ʒ. ß. Commixe them all,and make an Epitheme.You must apply Epithemes in sommer cold, and in winter warme.When there is cold distempure of the liuer,you must vse medicines that doe heat, and adde strength and stabilitie to the liuer. In his diet he must vse meats easie of digestion, and heating. For potherbes let him take sauorie,hysope fennell,parsley,sothernwood,sage,and such like. And let his meates be dressed with Aromaticke things, as cinnamon,cloues,and such others. He must drinke wine that is thinne, yellow, and odoriferous. He must eschew eating of fish, and cold frutes,and idlenesse,and in conclusion what so euer doth make cold. Within the bodie he must take this decoction.℞. roots of *Apium*,of fennell,and of parsley. ana.℥ j agrimonie,hysope,mintes,wormewood,succorie, withwind,origan,calamint,*Asarum*,ana.*M*.j.seedes of annise, fennell,*daucus*,commin, carawayes. ana.℥. ij. squinant. ℥.j.ß. masticke. ℥. j. floures of cammomill,redde roses.ana. *M*.j. cinnamon chosen .℥.j.ß. seeth all these in a pound and halfe of wine,and one pound of running water vnto the third part, then straine it,& put to the liquour of sirupe of agrimonie.℥. iij. sirupe of wormewood. ℥. j. Commixe all together and make a potion: of the which let him drinke in the morning and after dinner.℥.iij.ß.at a time,for the same purpose you may minister hot antidotes, as *diacinnamomum*, *dianisum*, conserue of sage, galingale condite, rootes of pimpernell couered with suger, and such like. You must annoint him outwardly with hot oiles,as be oiles of Narde, Cammomill, wormewood, and such like. Also it is very good to vse this ointment. ℞. of the oiles of wormewood, and narde. ana. ℥.j.ß. iuice of Agrimonie. ℥. ij. Cinnamon, Cloues, wood of *Aloes*. ana. ʒ. ij. spicknard, squinant and masticke. ana. ʒ. j. waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. You may also apply this Cerate. ℞. of the meale of fenugreeke, and of lupines. ana. ℥. ij. roote of *Ireos*,and *Asarum*.ana.℥ j.of agrimonie,wormewood, melilote,and squinant. ana.℥. ß.gallia moschata. ʒ. j. seede of Annise and fennell. ana ʒ.ß. masticke. ʒ.ij mirrhe and frankensence. ana.ʒ. j. oiles of masticke, narde,roses, and dill.ana.℥.j.waxe and rosen,as much as is sufficient, and make a Cerate to apply to the liuer. Also the vsing of this Epitheme is good. ℞.seedes of annise, fennell,ammeos. ana. ℥.j ß. Cinnamon, cloues,squinant.ana. ℥.j. seeth all in a pound and halfe of malmesey,till halfe be consumed,then straine it and commixe with the liquour of that decoction, waters of wormewood and agrimonie.ana.℥.ij pouders of *diacinnamomum*,and *diagalanges*. ana.℥. j.withwind.ʒ. ij. vineger. ℥ iij. commixe all together and make an Epitheme. In a moist distempure of the liuer, let him vse a diet that doth drie,as flesh of birdes rosted, thinne wine: those things that doe prouoke sweat,as drie bathes,or hot houses,and also bathes comming of their own accord: generally he must eate and drinke but little. He must eschew all kind of fishes, and fruites that haue powre to moisten. You must minister within the

Cure of cold distempure.

Decoctum.

Vnguentum.

Ceratum.

Epithema.

Cure of a moist distempure.

the bodie, ſirupe of wormewood, *dialaccha* and *diacurcuma*. You muſt apply outwardly thoſe things which do drie without any great heat: of the which we will ſpeake afterward in the chapter of the dropſie *anaſarca*. Drie diſtempure of the liuer muſt be cured like the other by his contraries. Therefore that we may comprehend the matter in few words: it is good for him to vſe a diet that doth moiſten, and bathes of ſweete water, and other things which doe moyſten, whereof we will ſpeake aboundantly in their places. But this muſt not be forgotten, which we alſo admoniſhed you of before, to commixe alway with your moiſtning things, thoſe things which adde ſtrength to the liuer. But among thoſe things which ſeeme to be good, by the propertie of their whole ſubſtance, the beſt is wolues liuer, if it be diligently dried and beaten, and ℥. j. thereof miniſtred with ſweete wine alayed with water. For this by often proofe is knowne to be good againſt all diſtempures of the liuer. For as we ſaid, by the properties of his whole ſubſtance, he hath his efficacie, and not by heating or cooling.

Cure of a drie diſtempure.

Lupinũ Iecur.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of obſtructions of the liuer.

De Obstrvctione Iecinoris.

OBſtructions of the liuer are cauſed of vapours, windineſſe, and groſſe and hard to digeſt. But ſometime it is cauſed of groſſe and viſcous humors in the ends of the vaines, ſpringing from the flat part of the liuer, by the which vaines nouriſhment is ſent to the liuer from the ſtomacke and the bowels. If abundance of groſſe and vaporous windineſſe be heaped vp together, which cannot find free paſſage out, and ſo doth ingender obſtruction, there ariſeth then not only griefe & heauineſſe about the right ſide, but alſo feeling & perceiuing of diſtenſion and ſtretching out. If obſtruction be engendred through groſſe and viſcous humors, there followeth heauineſſe with feeling of paine, ſometime eaſie, and ſometime vehement: alſo ſometime without a feuer, and ſometime with a feuer. For groſſe and viſcous humours, being many, do cauſe obſtruction and ſtopping more then other, & ſpecially when the patient doth vſe vehement mouing after meat. And if they be ſharpe and much in quantitie, which be taken in meates, the paine of the obſtruction is made more vehement: when the bodie is ſtopped, they ſuffer both ſtretching out, and alſo pricking. You muſt giue vnto them which haue this diſeaſe hot meates, and that haue vertue to take away obſtruction and ſtopping, as be leekes with *oximel*, *ſperage*, fennell, parſley, capers, and other like things, either ſodden in pottage & meats, or taken with ſome heating ſauce which taketh away obſtructions. You muſt eſchue all meats & nouriſhments engendring groſſe iuice. Alſo refraine bathes and exerciſes after meats. He muſt vſe for drinke, wine that is thin & old. Beſides his diet it is requiſite for him to vſe very quickly medicines that do attenuate & take away obſtructions: for obſtructions waxing old do not only ingẽder putrifactiõ in the liuer, but alſo in all the whole body, & kindleth a feuer. Among ſimple medicins theſe that follow do take away obſtructions notably & without griefe (that is) wolues liuer, fumitorie, agrimony, cammomill, galingale, dragons roote, *aſarum*, anniſe, *apium*, wormewood, *caſia*, *ireos*,

Cauſe.

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Simples taking away obſtructions of the liuer.

licorice, *rhaponticum*, lupines, capares, *auini*, with wind parfley, *piſtacium* bitter almonds, ſpikenard, ſtichados, gentian, roote of plantaine, alſo the ſeede and leaues dried, iuice of *Anagallis* the female, ſuccorie, *alkakengi*, both the endiues, ſperage & bruſcus. Of theſe alſo you may make diuerſe compound medicines, and ſpecially decoctions, putting to it *Oximel ſimplex*, *ſcilliticum*, *ſyrupus*, *acetoſus compoſitus*. Syrupes of wormewood, of hyſope, of calamint, of horehound, and ſuch other like. For the ſame purpoſe it is lawfull to miniſter trochiskes of Agrimonie, of wormewood, of rubarbe and ſuch like. Alſo theſe Antidotes, *diaſaccha*, *diacurcunia* are good and ſuch other like. Among other ſimples before reherſed *piſtacium* is notable good to take away obſtructions. Therefore it will not onely be profitable but alſo pleaſant, if you ſteepe *piſtacia* tenne or twelue houres by night in malmeſey, & miniſter them in the morning, the digeſtions being ended. You muſt apply outwardly, Epithemes, ointments, emplaiſters, and cerates, which be declared in the former chapter, of the cure of cold diſtempure of the liuer. And theſe aforeſaid medicines do ſuffiſe, if the euill be not yet inueterate and growne old: for when the euill is inueterate, you muſt vſe both bloud letting and purgations, if nothing do forbid it. You muſt purge him with pilles of Rubarbe and of agaricke, and with other antidotes, which do purge groſſe and thin humours by the belly. You muſt purge them ſpecially by the belly, whē the hollow part of the liuer is vexed. But you muſt purge by vrine, when the round emboſſed part of the liuer is vexed. The body being purged by bloud letting and purgations, then you muſt miniſter thoſe medicines, which are before reherſed. And ſpecially this Electuarie. ℞. of the roote of ireos, *chamæpiteos*, of ſeeds of anniſe and *apium*. ana. ℥.ij of *aſarum*. ℥. ij. ß. of cinnamon, ginger, carawayes, cammomill. ana. ℥.j. of *ſtœchados*, gentian, and horehound. ana. ℥.ij. with *Oxymell ſcilliticum* as much as is ſufficient, make an electuarie. This doth maruellouſly take away obſtructions, not ſo much thoſe that be in the hollow part of the liuer, as thoſe that ſticke in the out ſide, of the liuer. For it purgeth out vehemently by vrine.

Antidotum liquidum.

CHAP. XXV.

Of inflammation of the liuer.

De Inflammatione Iecinoris.

Cauſæ.

THere is inflammation ingendered in the liuer as well as in other mēbers, and through the ſame cauſes that they be ingendred of. If the liuer be vexed with inflammation, there is felt paine and heauineſſe all ouer the right ſide comming vp to the necke, and downe to the baſtard ribbes. Alſo there is

Signa.

ſwelling of the right ſide, ſpecially, if the outward part of the liuer be inflamed. He hath a ſharp feuer, a ſmall and drie cough, an inſatiable thirſt, abhorring of meats, hardneſſe and difficultie of breathing, the colour of the tongue firſt redde and afterward blacke. Vomits as well of pure choller as alſo like yolkes of egges, and afterward alſo ruſtie, the belly is coſtiue. Alſo the colour of the bodie is changed, like as in the yellow iaundiſe, alſo he hath the hicket. In the time of their fit they are taken with a certaine rauing, & do void forth ſharpe vrine. The inflammation that chaunceth through cauſes in the crooked and hollow parts of the liuer, do cauſe abhorring of meate, diſpoſition to vomit

vomits

vomits of choller,& vnquenchable thirst. The inflammation, that ingendreth in the outward and round parts of the liuer, causeth the patient to haue greater paine in drawing of breath then the other, and do raise a greater cough, and it doth stretch out paine vnto the right part of the neck, so that it seemeth to plucke it off. Also it chanceth sometime, that the muscles leaning vppon the liuer be enflamed; therefore manie being deceiued, doe thinke it to be an inflammation of the liuer. Therefore it is necessarie to tell the differences betweene these. For if the liuer be inflamed, there followeth a round swelling, fashioned like the liuer, which will also be fashioned according to the laying of the bodie. For it appeareth greater, when the bodie is turned downe on the left side, and againe lesser, when it is turned to the right side. For the liuer going vnder the bastard ribbes, it neither appeareth to the sight, nor to the feeling. Againe the thin skin, inclining to the inflammation of the liuer, it appeareth to haue a natural fashion. If the muscles be enflamed, the skin is stretched out round about, so that if one wold pull it vp with his fingers, he cannot easily. Moreouer there appeareth a swelling according to the placing of the muscles that lie vpon the liuer, long in fashion and manifest to sight and feeling. For the cure, when the liuer beginneth to be enflamed, you must by and by let him bloud, if age and strength will permit it. Therefore as *Galen* witnesseth you must both pull backe and purge the bloud, that floweth to the liuer, by cutting the inward veine of the arme: becausse that veine in the right arme is right against the liuer, and hath a large passage: hauing societie with the veine which is called *Vena cava*. If this veine doth not appeare, you must cut the middle veine. And if that doth not appeare neither, you must cut the vpper veine, you must draw out aboundant, and sufficient bloud if his strength will suffer it. After bloud-letting within a litle space, make the bellie soluble, with a simple and easie clyster, specially if it do not voide by it selfe. The next day after the bloud letting, fasten on a cupping glasse, with scarification, and againe, likewise fasten it on within a day after, for many haue felt more ease the second time of the applying, then at the first time. Also you must vse foments of woll wet in oile, cataplasmes, cerotes, and epithemes. In the applying of the which, this only is to be obserued, that to the other medicines that be mollificatiue & discussiue, you alwaies commix some restrictiue medicines. Therfore make a foment of oiles of quinces, or of mastike, or roses, or mirtles, putting to it odoriferous wine: or apply a spong wet in the decoction of wormwood, melilot, red roses, chammomill, dill, plaintaine, tame endiue, and other like. Also make Cataplasmes or emplaisters of lineseede and fænugreeke, barley meale, quinces, melilote, floures wormewood and such like. Or this emplaister. ℞. barley meale, ℥. ß. meate of quinces beaten. ℥. iij. wormewoode, floures of melilot, squinant. ana. ℥. ij. lineseede. ℥. j. oiles of roses, quinces, chammomill, wormewood. ana. ℥. ß. vineger ℥. j. Commixe altogether, and make an emplaister. Also this Cerote is good. ℞. of the meate of dates. ℥. iij. of mirrhe, steeped in old restrictiue wine, storaxe, & mastickc. ana. ℥ ij floures of melilot, wormewood, chammomill. ana. ℥. j. ß. saffron. ℥. ß. oiles of quinces, of mastickc, and of roses. ana. ℥. j. with waxe and rosen as much as is sufficient, and make a Cerote to applie to the liuer. For the same purpose, you may

Curatio.
Vene sectio.
Cliſter.
Fomenta.
Cataplasmata.
Emplastrum.
Cerotum.

Epithemata. make Epithemes of the decoction of Roſes, plantaine, wormewood, chammomill, or of their waters diſtilled. And in making of all theſe things, you muſt take heede, that when there is vehement inflammation, the reſtrictiue things may preuaile, and exceede the things that mollifie and looſen. And contrariwiſe when the vehemency of the heate is ſomewhat ſlaked, the mollifying things muſt exceed reſtrictiue things. *Note.* Moreouer you muſt beware, that you doe not apply the afore ſaid things when they are cold, but firſt warme them a litle. Moreouer in inflammation of the liuer, when there is great and vehement paine, you muſt alſo miniſter drink medicines, that do eaſe paine: but ſo, that you do eſchew continuall vſe of them: you muſt vſe drinking of ſimples moſt. Therefore miniſter groundſwell ſodden, as a thing very profitable, or iuice of lycorice with hote water. Alſo iuice of endiues doth profite no leſſe then the other, putting to them a litle honie: for beſides that it cooleth, and addeth ſtrength to the liuer, it alſo purgeth the mouthes of the veines of the liuer. But the belly muſt alſo be prouoked by eating of nettles or mercury ſodden. Alſo in the declination of the diſeaſe, the belly muſt be emptied by cliſters, for which purpoſe polipody & *Epithimum* with *mulſa* are put in: & that eſpecially, if the inflammation be in the hollow part of the liuer. For the hollow part of the liuer (as we ſaid before) muſt be purged by the guttes. But the round & outward part of the liuer, muſt be purged by vrine. Moreouer in inflammation of the liuer there is need of an exquiſit diet (as Galen witneſſeth *lib.* 13. *Therap. method.* The liuer it ſelfe requireth meat chiefly that can withſtand obſtructions. Such be all thoſe that be of thin ſubſtance, and which doe ſcoure without gnawing, as is, *ptyſan*, *mulſa*, and ſuch like. *Victus ratio.* Therefore the beſt foode for them that are thus diſeaſed, is *ptyſan* broth, wherein *apium* hath bene ſodden. Alſo you may miniſter broth of a chicken, wherein parſley hath bin ſodden: but drink *mulſa* or barley broth, or decoction of the tame endiues. *Cure of inflammatiõ turning to ſuppuration.* And if that inflammation doe begin to chaunge to ſuppuration and rotting, then all the aforeſaid ſignes will encreaſe, as paines, feuers, rauings, carefulneſſe, and abhorring of meate. Then you muſt helpe the permutation, & rotting, that it may quickly be done, leſt other members in continuance of time do rot with it alſo. Therfore you ſhall helpe it to rot with this cataplaſme. *Cataplaſma.* ℞. of the root of *Althæa*. ℥. j. ß fænugreeke, and lineſeede. ana. ℥. ij. leaues of *Althæa* and mallowes. ana. *M.* ij. dry figges in number vj. boile theſe in water till they wax ſoft, then bruiſe them, and make a cataplaſme. Neither ſhall you do amiſſe, if you apply an emplaiſter, that can helpe it to change into matter. As this is. *Emplaſtrum.* ℞. of barley meale, and fænugreeke. ana. ℥. iij. of the root of *Althæa*. ℥. ß. of the root of white lillies, ℥. j. ß lineſeed. ℥. j. floures of cammomil, and melilote. ana. *M.* ß boile all in water vnto a iuſt thicknes, then commixe of oile of cammomill. ℥. j. of oile of lillies. ℥. j. ß. boile them againe, and make an emplaiſter. Of theſe ſaid things you may alſo make a cerote, by putting to them butter, *ladanum*, roſen and waxe. When the ſuppuration and rotting is fullie come to a perfectiõ, then the paines do ceaſe, & all the fits do appeare gentler and meeker. *Ruptura.* In the time of the rupture or breaking, the paine doth encreaſe more againe, therfore then alſo you muſt helpe the rupture or breaking of it, by vſing of goats dung and doues dung, nettle ſeed, muſtard ſeede, and other things

things that do draw to the superficies. And by heating potions, as is decoction of poley, fumitory, root of *Chamædrios*, and such like. When it is broken, you must minister water of hony, or decoction of cicers, and other like things which haue an abstersiue & scouring vertue. And if the matter doth auoid by the veines, you must commix things that prouoke vrine: as be *sium*, *asarum*, *casia*, and cinamome. But if it auoid by the belly, commix those things which do purge gently, as be goats wheye, *tamarindes*, and *casia fistularis*. Also it is lawfull then to vse clisters made of the decoction of bareley. When clensing & scouring of it is done, minister medicines, which can glutinate and ioine it vp.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of distempure of the Spleene.

De Intemperie Lienis.

Like as other parts of the body haue eight kindes of distempures, so many hath the spleene, and most often it suffereth colde and moist distempure. Ech particular cause is not to be declared here: for there be some causes, that be in other distempures of other mẽbers of the body, therfore you shall seeke them in Galen *ex capitibus primi*, 2. & 3. *lib. de morborum causis*. The surest and shortest signes of distempure of the spleene is knowen by those signes that be eaten and drunken, and by those signs which are applied outwardly vpon the skin, nigh to the skin, nigh to the left side. For if cold distẽpure doth vexe the spleene, all meats and drinkes which do coole notably, doe soone and manifestly hurt the spleene. Also all cold things applied outwardly doe hurt it: and therefore they signifie cold distempure of it: but contrariwise al hot things do ease it. And if the distempure of the spleene be hot, it is not vexed with cold meats or drinks, or with cold things being applied outwardly. And if the heat encrease, there is not onely no swelling in it, but also it suffereth contraction, and shrincking vp, specially if a feuer be present. But meats and drinks that be hot, and those things that adde heate being applied outwardly, doe encrease hot distempures, and make them outragious. Also all cooling things be ioyfull vnto them. Likewise also you may gather the signes of drie distempure, speciallie when it is not euident by the proper nature of it for lack of greatnesse. Also those things that be applied outwardly to the bodie, and that be receiued inwardlie, if they haue vertue and power of drying, they doe drie vp the spleene. When the spleene is vexed with moist distempure, and so continuing a while, it causeth it to encrease so much, that it toucheth both the stomacke & the liuer. Also the kind of paine together with these aforesaid signs do declare the distempure that vexeth. For in a hote & cold distempure, they haue small paine or none at all, neither haue they any also in a moist distempure: but least of all in a dry distempure. By these afore saied signes, you may make coniecture of compound distempures of the spleene. For in a maner altogether, when a hot distempure is vehement, a dry distempure followeth it: and to a cold distempure being inueterat, a moist distẽpure followeth. But in so much as humors flowing into the spleene do cause swelling: you must haue diligent consideration to them. For if choler do flow thither, the whole bodie appeareth hotter, although there be no feuer prest. Also the eies & the vrine

Cause.

Signes of distempure of the spleene in bare qualities.

Cold distempure.

Hot distẽpure.

Dry distempure.

Moist distempure.

Signes of distempure of the spleene through humours.

Choler. be coloured by choller. The ſicke ſhall alwaies accuſe drines and complaine of thirſt, and choller troubling his mouth. He abhorreth meate, and is troubled with watching, and deſireth cold things, and withall theſe his tongue is yelowiſhed. He hath tertian fits, and the manners of the ſicke be wrathfull,

Melancholie. and they will chafe out of meaſure. If Melancholie doth flow, his colour doth appeare as well on the tongue, as in all the reſt of the bodie, and he hath vnnaturall appetite to meat, the patient is ſad and heauie, and other ſignes of choller be preſent with theſe. Alſo fits do vexe him the fourth day. When a

Fleume. flegmaticke humour floweth into the ſplene, his choller ſhall be like fleume. The ſicke doth not thirſt, he deſireth meate, vnleſſe the humor be ſalt fleume: for the ſicke abhorre meate, and be more deſirous of drinke, for they are thirſtie. Alſo fits do vexe them euerie day. And their vrines are white, and they themſelues be ſlow and ſluggiſh. Some of them that haue colde diſtempure

Bloud. with it, haue a great and a hard ſpleene. And if it be a ſanguine humour, that floweth into the ſpleene, it is poſſible for it to change the colour both of the tongue, and of the skin. As for the appetite or abhorring of meates, the ſicke is in a meane betweene both, and they be more ſicke then the reſt, although they haue not like ſwelling of the ſpleene. The veines of the whole bodie doe appeare full of bloud, and the vrine is yellow. Theſe ſignes we haue declared

Note. at large out of *Ætius*, becauſe they are common, and may almoſt be applyed to all diſtempures of other medicines, cauſed through flowing of humours. Generally diſtempure of the bare qualitie of the ſpleene is almoſt without

Cure of diſtemper of the bare qualitie of the ſpleene. ſwelling. You muſt cure and correct them both by meates and drinkes, as alſo by ſimple medicines and foments, oiles and ointmentes and ſuch other like, which be contrarie to the diſtempure. Therefore you ſhall heale hot diſtempure of the ſpleene (as you did of the liuer) by meates & drinkes that do coole,

Hot. and by annointings with oiles of roſes and *oleum molmum*, and other thinges which be rehearſed before in the 23. chapter of this booke. Likewiſe colde

Cold. diſtempure of the liuer, by thoſe things which do moderately heat. In a moiſt

Moyſt. diſtempure of the ſpleene, beſides thoſe things which are rehearſed before in the 23. chapter, theſe things do profit: roote of fiue leaued graſſe, drie plantaine, the floure and ſome of ſalt, *ammoniacum*, iuice of willow and ſuch like. If you make of them an ointment or cerote by putting to ſufficient vineger, ſuch as we will a litle after deſcribe. Alſo frictions are moſt conuenient for this,

Drie. which haue a diſcuſſing vertue. Drie diſtempure of the ſpleene is cured by ſweete bathes and hoat waters, alſo annointings with ſweete oile, and meates

Cure of diſtemper by flowing of a humour. moiſting without coldneſſe, as is Ptyſan iuice. If diſtempure of the ſpleene be cauſed through flowing of an humour, then if the humour be ſanguine, you muſt let bloud of the inner veine of the left arme, called *lienaris vena*, or if that cannot be found, let bloud of the veine which is betweene the ring finger, and the eare finger, then apply both inwardly and outwardly medicines which doe adde ſtrength to the ſpleene, as is, the barcke of the roote of capers, of hartes tongue, *Ceterach*, maidenhaire, *Yreos*, calamint and ſuch like, which alſo are able to adde ſtrength and ſtabilitie to the liuer: of which we will ſpeake aboundantly in the chapters following. If other humours flowe to the ſpleene, firſt you muſt auoide the ſuperfluous humours by purging them

them with medicines: then all the rest of the time, you must correct the distempure that is left, and also apply things that strengthen the splene.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of inflammation of the Spleene.

De Lienis Inflammatione.

THe Spleene, like as other members is vexed with inflammation as oft as hot bloud doth flow thither vnnaturally. It is knowen by heauinesse and swelling of the left side, which wil not giue place to the feeling: also by paine & stretching out of the place, by feuers and by burning heate. But if abundance of humors do rush in thither, it is knowen by the greatnesse & swiftnesse of the ingendring of the inflammation. Let the diet of them that be vexed with inflammation of the spleene be simple, & giue them those things that will easily digest for their meate, as is Ptysan iuice, bread wet in other things which be often rehersed of vs before in the inflammation of other members. And if the inflammation indure long, you may also giue them birds flesh, & fishes taken in grauelly places. Let the drinke of the patient be decoction of Cinnamon or watrie wine. Let the cure be begunne by cutting of the veine of the spleene, or that veine, which is betwene the little finger and the ring finger, if there be no cause to forbid it. Let the belly be often washed with clisters, but specially, if you may not let him bloud. Then lay vpon the spleene restrictiue medicines, which can appease the furie of that, that floweth, and keep the strength of the liuer and spleene, but yet you may not onely applie restrictiue thinges, but you must commixe with them those things which do extenuate, cut and loosen without euident heat, least grosse matter be stopped in it, and do waxe more vehemently hard. Therefore if there be moderate inflammation, you must applie moist wooll wet in wine that is old, sharpe and thinne, and mixed with sweete oile. But if there be greater heate, take oile of roses, or *oleum melinum*, or oile of cammomill with vineger, you may cõmixe them together after this sort. ℞ oile of roses and quinces. ana. ℥. ij. oile of cammomill. ℥. j. the best vineger. ℥. ß. commixe them all together for a foment and irrigation. And if the aforesaid oiles be not at hand, seeth bryer leaues and quinces in oile, & adde to also some extenuating things, as is wormewood and peniroiall. And you must beware also that you applie nothing vpon the splene cold, but whatsoeuer medicine you apply to it outwardly, let it be warmed. After foments and irrigations, you must passe to cataplasmes: in the making of which you may adde the meale of darnell and barley with drie figges, lineseede and oile wherein wormewood and peniroiall be sodden. But you must beware that the place be not kept bare after irrigations and cataplasmes, but assoone as those be taken away, by and by applie such cerotes or emplaisters as be described in the chapter of inflammation of the liuer. For both the liuer and the spleene require one kind of medicines, but the spleene requireth so much the stronger medicines, as it is of grosser nourishment. Therefore you shall seeke examples of medicines meete for this place out of the chapter of inflammation of the liuer: obseruing only this thing, that you alway commixe vineger, and somewhat that is acceptable to the spleene, and that doth peculiarly defende his

Causa.
Signa.
Dyeta.
Potus.
Curatio.
Venæ sectio.
Clyster.
Fomenta.
Note.

ſtrength. And if the inflammation of the ſpleene tendeth toward ſuppuration and rotting, which do ſeeldome chaunce, you muſt helpe to further the ſuppuration, leaſt other members putrifie, by cataplaſmes that bring it to matter, whereof we haue ſpoken in the inflammation of the liuer.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of hardneſſe of the Spleene.

De Lienis Schirrho.

Cauſe. INflammation of the ſplene, if it be not rightly cured, it draweth together a hard ſwelling of the ſpleene. The cauſe of this diſeaſe is a certaine humour, which cleaueth ſtubbornly to the ſpleene: but it is when hardnes engendreth

Signa. without inflammation into ouermuch ſwelling. The euill is eaſily knowen by touching, of what cauſe ſoeuer it be. His diet muſt be extenuating: therefore

Victus ratio. he muſt eate meate which is eaſie of digeſtion, and doth engender good iuice and thinne. He muſt eſchew all hard fleſh, which doth engender groſſe iuice, and which do ſtriue againſt digeſtion. He muſt drinke wine that is thin in ſubſtance, yellowiſh in colour, not verie old, and being without all reſtriction. Alſo he muſt put much truſt in exerciſes, which it is good to vſe before meate, the bodie not abounding with ſuperfluities. Alſo it is manifeſt that vociferation, and crying out, oportunatly done and in time, doth greatly helpe in this euill.

Curatio. For the cure, you muſt vſe very ſtrong things as wel outwardly as alſo inwardly. Therefore within the bodie miniſter moſt ſtrong potions, for thoſe they may ſuffer without griefe. Among the which, the chiefe be the barkes of the rootes of capers, harteſtongue, the roote and herbe of *Tamariſcus* ſodden in vineger or *Oximell*. Alſo iuice of centorie drunke, and decoction of bitter lupines taken with rew and pepper. *Anagallis* the female. ℈. j. with *Poſca* or *Oximell* profiteth maruellouſly to drinke it. Alſo the moſt conuenient remedie for the hardnes of the ſpleene is iron quenched often in water or wine, or *Poſca*. For that water or wine or *Peſca* miniſtred in the beginning is pleaſant, & moſt profitable, and is giuen many dayes orderly. Therefore to them that haue the feuer, miniſter water or *Poſca*: but to them that haue tender fleſh, and lacke a feuer, miniſter wine. Let the iron that is quenched in them be ſome inſtrument that is laid with ſteele. Alſo the ſcales of iron may profitably be miniſtred to ſtrong and rude men. For this doth melt the ſpleene notably, for it hath a conſuming vertue. But yet leaſt it ſhould hurt the ſtomake, it is good to commixe with it ſome ſtrengthning medicines, as is harteſtongue, toppes of wormewood, *caſia*, anniſe ſeed, *ſerpillum montanum*, or ſuch other like. Apply out-

Fomentum. wardly this foment. ℞. centorie, harteſtongue, rew. ana. *M*. j. barke of the root of capers. ℥. j. ſeeth all in vineger, and when they be ſodden, wet a ſponge in

Vnguentum. the decoction, and apply it hot to the ſpleene. Moreouer this ointment ſheweth a maruellous effect. ℞. of the oiles of capers, lillies and *Ireos*. ana. ℥. j. marrow of oxes ſhankes. ℥. ij. muſcilage of the roote of *Althæa*, fenugreeke, and lineſeed. ana. ℥. j. badgers greaſe, hens greaſe, gooſe greaſe. ana. ℥. ij. the barke of the roote of capers, *Tamariſcus*, *coſtus*, centory. ana. ℥. j. gumme ammoniack, *bdellium*, *galbanum*. ana. ℥. ß. the gummes being firſt diſſolued in vineger, with waxe as much as is ſufficient, make an ointment. Alſo emplaiſters and cerotes

do

do profit much being made after this sort. ℞. of the oiles of lillies, *Irros*, and of capers. ana. ℥. j. barley meale, fenugreeke, lineseede. ana. ℥. j. the barke of the roote of capers, hartestongue. ana. ℥. j. ß. roote of *Althea*. ℥. j. *bdellium*, ammoniacke, *garbanum*. ana. ℥. j. ß. *opoponax*, mirrhe, frankensence. ana. ℥ ß. with rosen, turpentine and waxe, as much as is sufficient make a cerote. Moreouer the Phisitian must looke diligently to the disease, as he seeth cause sometime adde and sometime take away those things which do either mollifie, or attenuate and dissolue, or which addeth strength. In conclusion cupping glasses fastened with scarification, is not a litle profitable. *Cerotum.*

CHAP. XXIX.

Of obstruction of the Spleene

De Lienis Obstructione.

IT chanceth sometime not onely through weakenesse of attractiue vertue, which is in the spleene, but also through stopping of the passage, by which the dreggie humour of melancholy is deriued from the liuer vnto the spleene there followeth obstruction. Afterward that vnpure and naughtie bloud is distributed all ouer the whole bodie, which if it chance, then the colour of the bodie is corrupt, & enclineth to blackneſse. Also sometime they that are thus diseased, haue vncurable vlcers. The causes may easily be known by those causes, which we spake of in the chapter of the obstruction of the liuer. This euill is knowen by heauines, which is about the left side. If the whole body be corrupted with it besides, it is easie to know specially by the colour of the face, difficultie of breathing, troublesome dreames, and other such like aforesaid. This disease is cured with an extenuating diet, and by medicines which take away obstructions, whereof you may find great plentie rehearsed in the chapter of obstructions of the liuer: for both these members haue need of like medicines: But yet the spleene hath neede of stronger medicines so much as it is nourished with grosser food. Therefore against grosse humors, that they may obey readily to be purged, there behoueth preparatiues, which preparatiues shall be the same that are for obstructions of the liuer (this onely obserued) that here all things be stronger, and that they haue things commixed with them that doe adde strength to the spleene, (the humour being preparate) then they must be purged by such medicins as doe purge grosse and dreggie humors, whereof we haue spoken often before. After this apply such medicines both inwardly and outwardly, as are contained in the former chapter, and in the chapter of obstruction of the liuer. Therefore those places will shew you medicines abundantly. *Cause.* *Signa.* *Dyet.* *Cure.* *Præparatio humorum.*

CHAP. XXX.

Of the iaundeis.

De Ictero.

THE Iaundeis is nothing else but a shedding either of yellow choler, or of melancholy all ouer the body. Somtimes there chanceth shedding of choler to the skinne, the liuer being safe, as in the *Crisis* of diseases. Many times the iaundeis is caused, and doth chance when the bloud is corrupted without *Icterus aurigo arguatum regium.* *Cause.*

a feuer of some outward occasion, and is made cholerick, as it chaunceth by biting of venemous beasts. So a certaine man, when he was stong of a viper, had all his bodie spotted like the colour of leekes. Also it may chaunce that through inflammation, or changing of the naturall temperament of the liuer, such corruption of humour may happen, that sometime all the bodie shall be manifestly like herbes that be whitish with paleneſſe. Also sometime it shall be like the colour of lead, as also such colours be blacker if they happen through disease of the spleene. Also it is caused many times through weakneſſe of the bladder that receiueth the choler, which doth not draw as it was wont to doe the cholericke humor from the liuer vnto him, & therefore leaueth the bloud vnpure. Also sometime it is caused through obstruction and debilitie of the vessels, whose mouthes are deriued from the gall to the liuer, and do not therfore draw the cholerick humour. Also many times through obstruction of the passages, which goeth to the bowels. But that we may discerne well the causes of the iaundeis, you must of neceſſitie consider the figure of the excrements, and the colour: seeing in some they appeare much coloured by yellow choler, as also in some the vrine doth appeare. Therefore in them that haue choler burst out vnto the skinne, by reason of a good *crisis* in feuers, their excrements and vrine shall seeme to be of naturall colour. But if with the feuer cholerick deiections do inuade, and there be heauineſſe in the right side, it signifieth burning inflāmation in the liuer: by whose violence the bloud is changed into choler, & carried all ouer the bodie. But if there be burning without heauineſſe and griefe, the euill is ingendred onely through hot distempure of the liuer. But if without a feuer, together with feeling of some heauineſſe about the right side, white excrements be auoided: in them you may iudge that there is obstruction of the passages of the bladder that receiue the choler. If such egestions come forth without that heauines, you may iudge their strēgth to be weake, either the attractiue vertue which fetcheth out the cholerike humour from the liuer, or weakeneſſe of the expulsiue vertue, which driueth out to the bowels. Also by and by after, most cholericke humours be sent oue with the vrine aboundantly. Those that haue melancholie sent to the skinne together with the bloud, they be vexed together grieuously: for there followeth it sadneſſe without reason, and gnawing of those things which be about the belly, difficultie of breathing, abhorring of meate, and they anoide black vrine, but their dung is like the colour of coperous or shomakers bleach, and their wombe is much costiue. But those that haue the iaundeis caused of yellow choler, haue no gnawing about the belly, nor also they doe not so much abhorre meates, they auoide white egestions, their vrines be coloured like saffron: but they remaine troubled: but commonly to all that haue the iaundeis, there chanceth sluggishnes to moue, & a contrary mind to sweete meats. Also itch of the whole bodie followeth. The whites of the eyes and the partes of the face nigh the temples, and the balles of the cheekes doe betoken it by their pale colour. Also the veines vnder the tongue are found full, and signifie an aboundant humour. The iaundeis that is caused by reason of a good *crisis*, when the feuer is perfectly ended, they are soone cured, if they vse bathes of sweete water, and frictions or chafings with discussiue oiles, and all things

Signa.

Blacke humors.

things that rarifie the skinne, (as be) oiles of cammomill, of dill, of *yreos*, or such like. Also rosemarie sodden in oile doth discusse and dissolue much. Let their whole diet be moist, and extenuating grosse humours. They that haue the iaundeis caused through biting of a venemous beast, they are to be cured almost as those be, which be bitten with a mad dog, of the which we wil speake in an other place. Those that haue the iaundeis through hot distempure of the liuer, or through inflammation of it, you must minister the cures which are rehearsed before in the diseases of the liuer. Therfore that which we haue rehearsed there, must be referred hither. But if the iaundeis be caused through obstruction of the bladder that receiueth the choler, then two speciall remedies must be vsed; bloudletting and purging. In them therefore that bloud do much abound together with choler all ouer the body, & that be troubled with heauines or stretching out about the liuer or the spleene, nothing can be done more profitably, then to let him bloud, so there be no cause that letteth it. You must cut the innermost veine of the right arme, & that if the liuer be affected euill: but if the splene be diseased, cut the veine in the left arme, you must draw out the bloud now and then, least if you should drawe it out on heapes, the strength of the sicke should faile him. And if we be prohibited from bloud letting, we may conueniently minister a clister. For a clister may wel be cast in after blodletting, for by the auoiding out of the dung, it maketh easie breath, and by prouoking and gnawing of the bowels it draweth and pulleth backe to it the humors that are sent out to the skinne. Make it after this sort. ℞. both the endiues, horehound, agrimonie, maiden haire, origan, wormewood. ana. *M*. j. seedes of annise, fennell, percely, sperage. ana. ℥. ij. ß. licorice, *apium*, fennell, the rootes of them. ana. ℥. j. boile them in sufficient water vntill the third part: then straine them and take of the licour of that decoction. ℥. xiij. *casia fistula*. ℥. j. *hierapicra* ℥. ß. *electuarium de succo rosarum*. ℥. ij. oiles of dill and *yreos*. ana. ℥. j. ß. salt. ℥. j. commixe them all and make a clister. But purgations be most proper and familiar for this disease: but so that the humors be first attenuated, and made thinne by brothes, potions, and also medicines. Therefore he must vse meates of easie digestion and extenuating, birdes of mountaines, fishes of grauelly places, & potherbs prouoking vrine: specially endiue, sperage, louage, fennell, & such like. Flesh of wild beasts being tamed are best, specially of goates. For his sauce vineger is good, wherein *Aristolochia* hath bin steeped. He must abstaine from fruites, but let his banket be almondes, a few at once, and cicer, a litle tosted. Also the decoction of it continually drunke profiteth not a litle. Wine white and thinne, and not very old, is good. For medicines let him haue those, that be taught in the chapter of obstruction of the liuer, and also in the first booke the 11. chapter. Aboue other specially, *apium*, percely, maiden haire, calamint, veruaine, roote of chikweed, or mather, *aristolochia*, *serpillum*, S. Iohns wort, being decoct, are good. The humours being preparate and extenuate at length you must minister a medicine that purgeth choler. You must giue strong purgations to them that haue the iaundeis: for through the drines of their stomach, the medicines seeme weaker and lesse in effect in them. The best purgation in this case, is infusion of rewbarbe, described in the first booke the 11. chapter. Also *hierapicra*, *electuarium de succo ro-*

Cure of iaundeis comming through crisis of a feuer.

Of venemous byting.

Cure of iaundeis of hote distempure of the liuer or inflammation.

Cure of the iaundeis through obstruction.

Venæ sectio.

Clyster.

Victus ratio.

Purgatio.

ſarum, de pſillio and *diaphœnicon*. And if you profit him nothing with the firſt purgation, you muſt returne againe to thoſe things, which haue vertue to take away obſtructions and ſtopping: & after three daies you muſt purge him more vehemently again. If the iaundeis be engendred through diſeaſe of the ſplene, you muſt turne to the chapter of melancholiouſneſſe, and the chapter of obſtruction of the liuer. The belly being purged, you muſt againe miniſter medicines which do purge the entrailes. For which purpoſe the roote of *ciclaminum* beaten and drunke is onely good: for this doth not only purge againe the intrailes, but alſo it is moſt meete to ſhut out the choler, by ſweat in the whole skin all ouer. Therefore after it is drunke, you muſt helpe the excluſion of the ſweat by couerings, and warmings in bed. You may giue of it. ℥.ij or iij. with *aqua mulſa*. Alſo iuice of the barke of radiſh doth notably well, if it be mixed with ſweet wine vnalaied, or *vinum mulſum*, ſo that ℥.ij. of the iuice be tempered with ℥.j. of wine. Alſo earthwormes drie giuen three daies with *vinum mulſum*, do ſend out the iaundeis by the vrine. Alſo you may giue very profitably iuice of endiue and ſuccorie to them that haue feuers by it ſelfe, and to them that lacke feuers with wine. Alſo iuice of *cuſcuta* profiteth maruellouſly. Alſo cammomill is moſt profitable, which is called *leucanthemus*: and alſo *buphthalmum*. But all the medicines miniſtred in drinke, let them be miniſtred in a bath if it can be, when the patient ſitteth in a great hot veſſell. Alſo you muſt be much diligent at this time to giue him a diet, that recomforteth & refreſheth ſtrēgth by the which the vertue expulſiue may be repaired: and if any member be hurt, let it be ſtrengthned, & let the corruption of his colour be purged away. Alſo it is good for him to vſe exerciſes, geſtations, annointings and ſweating out. For this purpoſe drie hot houſes are good: in the which annoint the body with oile, wherein *ſerpillum* or roſemary hath beene ſodden. And if any of the iaundeis be left about the face and the eies, if the vrine appeare pure, and the belly auoiding after his accuſtomed manner, you muſt vſe infuſions into the noſe: for which purpoſe iuice of *cyclaminum* is poured in, alſo *nigella* with vineger, iuice of the roote of beetes and *anagallis*. Alſo let the ſicke ſitting in a bath draw into his noſtrels verie ſharpe vineger, and let him keepe it a while, preſſing his noſtrels together, and it will purge maruellouſly.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of euill ſtate of the bodie.

De Malo Corporis Habitv.

κακεξία. *Cachexia* in greeke is nothing elſe, but an euill and naughtie ſtate and diſpoſition of the bodie. For it is in ſuch caſe that it is ſpred abroad in waterineſſe, and all the whole bodie is looſe and waxeth ſoft. This diſeaſe for the moſt part is ingendred of a long ſicknes. Alſo it followeth when ſome entraile is hardened, ſpecially after the hardneſſe of the liuer and the ſpleene. Alſo it chanceth often in a continuall *Dyſenteria*, & the diſeaſe called *Cœliacus morbus*. Alſo through letting of ſome accuſtomed excretion. The whole body is made whitiſh and weake, ſo that his legges are ſcarce able to beare him; and in the beginning his digeſtions be letted, his appetite remaining ſtill: but afterward there followeth abhorring of meate, and their breathing is ſeldome and weake

Cauſa.

Signa.

weake. Alſo their belly ſendeth out vnequall excrements. Old men and children are ſpecially taken with this diſeaſe, which doe ſoone periſh through weakneſſe of the vitall facultie, and becauſe the iuyce doth breath out of them readily through thinneſſe of the skin. But they that be full of age, do ſeldome fall into this diſeaſe, and do ſoone get it away againe. If this diſeaſe do indure long, it turneth into the dropſie, therefore his cure may not be deferred. Let his diet altogether be thinne and drie: therefore let their meates be ſimple, and which will eaſily digeſt, and that can ingender the beſt bloud. Let them eſchue all fruites alſo that ingender groſſe and viſcous humours, and that be hard to digeſt. Wine is good for them which is white, thinne, and odoriferous. For the cure, if the diſeaſe happen by letting of accuſtomed excretion, you muſt ſtirre vp and prouoke the excretion. Therefore you muſt vſe bloud letting, if nothing do let it, which you muſt drawe out by litle and litle at ſundrie times vnto the third or fourth day in them that fell into this diſeaſe through retention of the hemorrhoids or menſtruis. But in them that haue it through abundance of vicious humors, bloudletting is hurtfull. Therfore rather purge them with ſome conuenient purgation. The bodie being purged, let him vſe chiefly waters that ſpring by themſelues of alume and ſalt peter, & afterwards ſulphurous waters. Alſo let them exerciſe diuerſe deambulations, geſtations, vociferations, frictions with linnen, and other moderate exerciſes. After let them vſe annointings with oyle, wherein is put ſomewhat that drieth vp humours, as be, *nitrum* and ſalts. To cure the wearineſſe apply certaine bathes betweene whiles. Alſo potion of wormewood helpeth them maruellouſly, and *dropaces* applied. Alſo if the liuer be affected, or ſome other of the inward members, it is good to cure them by their owne remedies before preſcribed. If the euill turne into the dropſie, you ſhall find it next.

Diet.

Curatio.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of the Dropſie.

De Aqva Inter Cvtem.

THere be three kinds of Dropſie. The firſt is called in Greeke *Aſcites*. The ſecond *Tympanites*, and the third *Anaſarca*, *Yposarca*, *Sarcites*, and *Leucophlegmatia*. *Aſcites* is, when much waterie humour is heaped vp betweene the skin or filme called *peritoneum*, and the bowels. *Tympanites* is when much windineſſe and ſuperfluous breath is gathered in the aforeſaid places of the bellie. *Anaſarca* is, when the humous is diſperſed throughout the whole bodie, that all the fleſh appeareth altogether moiſt and wet like a ſponge or paper. The dropſie is cauſed through great coldneſſe of the liuer, or through other parts verie notably cooled, which can bring the liuer into the ſame affect. The liuer is affected by the ſpleene being colde, and by the ſtomacke and the bowelles, alſo by the longues, the reynes and the midriffe. Alſo it chaunceth through vnmeaſurable auoyding of the hemorrhoides, or through womans fluxe, or through retention of menſtruis, or through ſome other great affection of the wombe. For in all theſe the liuer hath no vnnaturall ſwelling: and yet the bodie is taken with the dropſie, onely through refrigeration of the liuer,

Aſcites. *Timpanites.* *Anaſarca.* *Cauſa.*

affected in the beginning. But afterward sometime it also waxeth hard, which is euident to be seene in them, which through vntimely drinking of cold water, haue their liuer cooled on heapes, so that the dropsie followeth by and by, before the liuer be lifted vp into a knottie swelling. Many haue fallen into the dropsie after the gout, and through the vexing paine of the hucklebones. Most commonly those which feele not their meate, and haue euill state of the bodie, and also that be troubled with the iaundeis, the dropsie followeth it. And it followeth *Cœliacu morbus*, and *Disenteria*. Commonly euerie dropsie causeth difficultie of breathing, and swelling, and heauinesse, and naughtie colour. Also they abhorre meat, and desire drinke largely, specially they that haue *Ascites*. For the humour that is holden and kept in the aforesaid places, is salt and rotten: therefore also after for the most part, there is wont to follow a feuer. Women are lesse troubled with the dropsie then men. Children for the most part are taken with the dropsie *Anasarca*. Among the saide three kindes of dropsies, *Timpanites* is the most perillous: *Ascites* lesse perilous then it, and then *Anasarca*. One diet is common to all these kinds of dropsies: that their meate be easie of digestion and sufficiently coact, and dry. For that meat that is loose & moist, is apt to be turned into watrinesse. Therfore let his bread be verie well baked, & let it haue salt, *ammi*, fennell, annise, or comin cõmixed with it. Also it ought to be well leauened, for it restraineth and stoppeth the lesse. Of birdes the driest are good, as partriches, turtles, blackbirds, & thrushes and such like. Of foure footed beasts, goats & hares. Also chickens, their extreme parts, when they are rosted. Of fishes, crabbes of flouds. Also egges rosted are good. Let him vse potherbes, but seeldome. Let those things that be ministred vnto them be somewhat sharpe, and that haue vertue to attenuate and heate: as is, *Apium*, percely, *Daucus*, rocket, peniroiall, coleworts, garlicke sodden, oinions and leekes. He must altogether abstain from pulses. For sauce let him vse vineger with pepper, cinamon and such like. Let their salt be compound with fennell, hisope, rosemarie and *apium*. You must giue them so much drinke only as shal suffice somwhat to breake their thirst: for ouermuch drinke doth dammage thẽ that be sicke of the dropsie without measure. They must drinke thinne wine, and that doth prouoke vrine. But they must eschew sweete wines & *mulsum*: vineger doth maruellously quench their thirst. Moreouer let them take the greatest portion of meate at supper. Let them eschew much frutes and second tables: but yet nuts, almondes, pomegarnets, peares sodden, and drie figs are to be giuen vnto them, but yet let them take all those moderately and not euery day. Let not their bed be verie soft, specially those that haue *Anasarca*. Strew vnder them drie herbes, as be, peniroiall, calamint, origan, and such like. For it is maruellous, how much those doe drie vp while they sleepe: so that it hath bene proued that some being wrapped and hidden in a heape of wheat, to haue risen againe after sleepe strong and safe. And let them vse exercises in the Sunne, if it be sommer and a faire day, but let their head be couered: but if it be cold, let them vse it in houses being warmed and nigh a fire, or at a fire. Riding is expedient at the first, and to be caried hither and thither in a chaire. But if the strength of the patient may suffer it, it is better to walke much on his feete, and sometime to run, then to be borne. Also the

Signa.

Diet.

Panis.

Potus.

Exercitatio.

the patient muſt be wrapped in skinnes dried with the Sunne, or digged into hot ſand. After exerciſes wipe off the ſweate with ſharpe linnen clothes. Alſo it is verie good if you vſe daily, thrice or foure times, frictions: for this doth open the paſſages that are ſhut, and it drieth vp, extenuateth and caſteth a ſunder humours. Therefore it doth verie quickly prouoke foorth much ſweat and conſtraineth the fleſh. They muſt be rubbed with drie handes, or with ſalt beaten in water or hoat oile. After this they muſt be waſhed with alomme water, or ſulphure water, or ſalt water. For many which haue bene taken with the dropſie *Anaſarca*, and haue vſed ſuch kinde of bathes, they haue ſufficed to weare out the diſeaſe, and alſo to make a ſtronger ſtate of the bodie. And hitherto, we haue rehearſed a common diet for all kinde of dropſies. For the cure, the remedie that is common for all dropſies, is that by and by in the beginning, you muſt purge the humour that doth abound. That you may do both by bloud letting, and by purgations, and by thoſe medicines that prouoke vrine. That which is good particularly for this or that kinde, we will teach in the chapters following, in which we will followe the cures of them euerie one particularly. *Curatio.*

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of the dropſie Anaſarca.

De Anasarca.

IN the dropſie *Anaſarca*, all the whole bodie, and the fleſh appeareth looſe, and wet like a ſponge as it is ſaide: ſo that all the whole bodie ſwelleth vp, and is like a dead bodie. In this diſeaſe you muſt beginne the cure with letting of bloud, eſpecially if the euill be engendred of ſuppreſſion of hemorhoides or menſtruis, and if age and ſtrength will ſuffer it. For by this meanes the aboundance of humours that doe hurt, are drawen out, and the feeble nature being vnloaden is ſwifter, and the cauſe of the diſeaſe is miniſhed, and alſo health commeth againe with leſſe labour. The naughtie humours being drawne out & purged by bloudletting, you muſt come to the remedie of purging medicines. But if there be neede of extenuation and preparation of the humours before their expulſion, you ſhall miniſter decoctions & other things which be rehearſed before in the Chapters of weakeneſſe of the liuer, and obſtruction of the liuer. For which purpoſe miniſter alſo ſyrupes of wormewood, of tame endiue with the brode leaues, of agrimonie and *bizantijs*. Let the purging medicines be, of ſimples, rubarbe and agaricke, of compounds, pilles of rubarbe, *pilulæ de hiera ſimplici*, and pilles of agaricke, and ſuch like. Alſo *hierapicra* is good in the beginning, becauſe it taketh away obſtruction, and addeth ſtrength to the intrailes. Therefore you muſt onely beware that you miniſter not purging medicins that be ſtrong, and which adde no ſtrength to the liuer: but you muſt bring foorth the hurtfull humour with eaſie medicines by litle & litle. For if you purge but once, and on heapes, you deſtroy the ſtrength marueilouſly, and coole the liuer. Therefore euery weeke you muſt make the wombe ſoluble, and you muſt alwayes paſſe from gentle remedies, by litle and litle to the ſtronger. Therefore in this kind of dropſie the Antidotes *diaphenicon*, and *Electuarium nidum* be good. Alſo the roote of Elder ſodden in wine *Signa.* *Curatio.* *Purgatio.*

doth purge notably. Alſo the roote of wolwort profiteth, for they be both of one vertue. Moreouer the reſt of the time of the cure, while he abſtaineth frō purging medicines, you muſt miniſter thoſe things that adde ſtrength to the liuer, wherof many be recited before, where we taught the cure of obſtructiō and weaknes of the liuer. Alſo miniſter thoſe things which prouoke vrine. For which purpoſe, you may well miniſter *diarrhodon abbatis*, *aromaticum roſarū*, *dialacca diacurcuma*, trochiskes of agrimony, of rubarbe, of wormwood, *theriaca*, & ſuch like. And this medicine profiteth notably. ℞. the powders of *diacurcuma*, and of *dialacca*. ana. ℈. j. powders of *diatrion ſantalon*, and of *diarrhodon abbatis*. ana. ʒ. ß. powder of *aromaticum roſarum*. ℈. j. rubarbe choſen. ʒ. ß. ſeedes of endiue with the broad leaues, of melons, and of fennell. ana. ℈. ij. of wormwood, chammomill, and withwinde. ana. ℈. j. of nutmegs, ſquinaunt & ſpiknard. ana. ℈. j. ß. of very white ſugar. ʒ. j. commixe them together, and make a powder. *Tritura.*

Alſo this profiteth marueloufly. ℞. ſeeds of caraway, fennell, & anniſe. ana. ℈. ij. ſeeds of comin and S. Iohns worte. ana. ℈. j. ſeeds of *ammeos*, parcely, daucus and louage. ana. ʒ. ß. of the rootes *yreos* and of *Aſarum*. ana. ʒ. j. wormwood. ℈. j. of licorice. ʒ. j. ſugar, the weight of all the reſt, commixe them all and make a powder. And you muſt doe your diligence, that in *Anaſarca*, the medicines be more dry thē moiſt, becauſe the whole ſtate of the body is ſo watery. Moreouer you muſt apply thoſe medicines outwardly, which can dry vp humours, as be cataplaſmes, emplaiſters, ointmentes, and other like things that haue drying vertue in them. Therefore a cataplaſme is good made of barley and beane meale, of fenugreek, of the root of walwort, of laurell bearies, of wormwood, and of origan ſodden in wine, & laid ouer all the whole body. Alſo oxes dung conueniently dried, may well be applied with *poſca* or *oximell*, hauing the fourth part of brimſtone put to it. Alſo freſh cheeſe hauing much creame being laid to, maketh well againſt all ſwelling parts. Moreouer doues dund, and goats dung, mayweed, and chammomill, by euen portions bruiſed, ſodden in vineger, and hony, may be applied. Moreouer you muſt vſe emplaiſters of leauen, dry figges, *nitrum*, *yreos*, melilote, ſage, peniroyall, *cardamomum*, *ſulphur viuum*, laurell bearies, ſtaues acre, ſalt armoniacke, maſticke, frankenſence, ſothernwood, *Ariſtolochia rotunda*, doues dung, make it vp with *oximell*. But you muſt altogether eſchue fat and rozenny cerots, for they engender windineſſe and cauſe ſwellings. But yet the legges and the hands, and other partes of the body being ſwollen, may often be annointed with this ointment in the Sunne or by a fire. ℞. of *vnguentum agrippa*. ʒ. j. of the meales of lineſeede, fenugreeke, beanes, and barley. ana. ʒ. ij. ſeedes of *Althæa*, *nigella*, *daucus*. ana. ʒ. j. ß. *Sulphur viuum*. ʒ. iij. bolearmoniacke. ʒ. ij. roote of *yreos*. ʒ. ij. ß. roche alome, frankenſence. ana. ʒ. j. ß *Euphorbium*. ʒ. j. oyles of *yreos*, white lillies and chammomill, ana. ʒ. j. ß. with waxe as much as is ſufficient, make an ointment, wherewith annoint the ſwollen partes verie often, it being melted on the coales. For his diet, you muſt ſeeke it in the former chapter of the dropſie. *ataplaſmata.* *Vnguentum.*

CAP.

CHAP. XXXIIII.

Of the dropsie Ascites.

De Ascite.

IN the dropsie *Ascites*, all the whole belly is swollen vp, and if it be striken, there is heard such a sound, as a bottle doth make that is not full of water, but the other partes of the bodie, speciallie the vpper partes, are not puffed vp nor swollen. Let his diet be, that hath this dropsie, of birdes of mountaine and other meates easie of digestion, and which doe engender good iuice, as is saied before in the thirtie two chapter. The cure must be begunne by vsing of purging medicines. Let them be such as we rehearsed in the former chapter. Coleworts of the sea called *soldana*, and *soldanella* taken in drinke excelleth all the rest: for this sheweth a maruellous effect in bringing forth the hidropicke water, so that many by the onely vsing of it, haue beene restored to health. Giue of it in wine or wheye. ℥. ij. or more or lesse according to the diuersite of the bodie. Also pilles of *fagapænum* are verie good: and two drachmes or three of the iuice of the roote *yreos*, putting to it. ℥. j. of sugar. Also you must minister sharpe clisters, vnlesse the belly be soluble of it selfe: for then it is more conuenient to drie vp. Among other this clister is speciallie commended. ℞. floures of laurell. ℥. ij. roote of polipodie, agaricke. ana. ℥. j. ß. dodder or *cuscutha*. ℥. iij. seeth them in wine or water vntill the third part be consumed. Then take of the licour of that decoction being strained. lib. 1. of *benedicta laxatiua*. ℥. ß. of *Electuarium nidum*. ℥. ij. ß. *mel rosarum*. ℥. j. oiles of rew, chammomill and *yreos*, ana. ℥. j. salt gemme. ℥. j. ß. commixe them all, and make a clister. For the same purpose, if you thinke good, you may seeth *colocynthis*, *cartanus*, laurell berries, anise seede, ammi, and carawaie seedes, rewe, roote of wilde cucumber, and other like things put to them. After the aforesaide remedies you must laie vpon the whole bellie, some of the prescribed cataplasmes and emplaisters. Also applie ointments and remedies that prouoke vrine and swet: and let him vse exercises of the which we haue spoken abundantlie before.

Signa. *Diet.* *Cure.* *Clister.*

CHAP. XXXV.

Of the dropsie Tympanites.

De Tympanite.

IN this kinde of dropsie, the bellie is puffed vp and stretched out: and being striken, it maketh a noise like a tabour or timbrell, but the other partes of the bodie waxe leane. It requireth like diet, that the other kinds of dropsies haue: but in this all windie things are speciallie to be auoided. Also let their exercises be much, and great thirst doe helpe and succour the patient strongly. Let the cure be begun with purging medicines, wherof you shall find exãples before. Also it is good to cast in clisters, which haue vertue to dissolue and discusse wind, as this is. ℞. roots of *apium*, and fennell. ana. ℥. j. seeds of anise, fennell, daucus, louage, parcely and comin. ana. ℥. ij. carawaie seede.

Signa. *Victus ratio.* *Curatio.* *Clisters.*

℥ iij. rew, *asarum*, leaues of wall-wort, melilot, ana. M. j. boile them in water vnto the third part, and then take of the liquor of that decoction being strayned ℥. xij. *hierapicra*, *benedicta laxatiua*, ana. ℥. ß. *Electuarium de baccis lauri*, ℥. iij. oyles of rew and dill, ana. ℥. j. ß. salt. ℥. j. ß. commixe them together & make a clyster. You must giue also vnto them things that do prouoke vrine, and you must vse aswell inwardly as outwardly, those things that dissolue and discusse windinesse, whereof you finde plentie in the chapter of the cholicke. The belly must dayly be nourished with *Panicum milium*, salt, branne, leaues of rew, cammomill floures, hot ashes sewed in bagges. Also you may apply to it this cerote. ℞. floures of cammomill and melilot, ana. ℥. j. ß. mintes, sauorie, *asarum*, ana. ℈. j. seeds of annise, fennell, rewe, comin, daucus, ana. ℥. j. *cardamomum*, ℈. ß. mirrhe, *castoreum*, ana. ℈. j. oyle of rew. ℥. iij. oyle of dill, ℥. j. ß. rosen and waxe as much as is sufficient, make a Cerote. Moreouer, cupping glasses fastened often to the whole bellie lightly & with much flame, do maruellously profite. Afterward the bellie must be rubbed with a sharpe linnen cloth, so long till it be red. Inwardly he must vse the antidotes *dianisum*, *diacuminum*, and *electuarium è baccis lauri*, or these lozenges. ℞. the powders of *diantisum* and *diacuminum*, ana. ℈. j the powders of the antidote of laurell beries, ℥. j. the powder of *diagalange*. ℥. ß. seedes of annise, carawayes, *daucus*, and fennell, ana. ℈. ß. leaues of rew, seeds of *Apium* and louage, ana. ℈. j. suger, ℥. vj. dissolue it in the distilled waters of fennell and *Apium*, and make lozenges. The other remedies are to be sought in the Chapter of the cholicke.

Sacculi.

Cerotum.

Lozenges.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of raines that send forth bloudie vrine.

DE RENIBVS CRVENTAM VRINAM EXCERNENTIBVS.

MANY times there happeneth a disease of the raines, through the which thin wheyish bloud is pissed. It is caused through weaknes of the raines, which be not therefore able to deuide the vrine: or it is caused through amplitude of the reines, which straine out the vrine from *Vena caua* vnto the reines. For when the passages are wider and stronger, they also send out some of the bloud to the reines, and other grosse matter. Also oftentimes the reines do sent out bloud likewise as it is wont to do in the hemorhoides. Moreuer, some do voide out bloud from the reines through breaking of a veine in the reines: as it chanceth to those which haue lift vp a great weight, or haue leapt greatly, or haue fallen out of an high place, or haue suffered some such other violent thing. Sometime it chanceth through gnawing of the veines of sharp humours flowing from aboue. If this disease be caused through weakenesse of the reines, the bloud is sent out verie wheyish: but if it be through amplitude & largenesse of the veines, then they feele no paine. If the excretion of bloud be by certaine circuits, then either there is fulnesse of the whole bodie, or neglecting of accustomed exercises, or refection of some member that went before. And if it chaunce through breaking of a veine, then bloud is pissed forth most abundantly: but if it be of gnawing, then bloud is sent foorth by little and litle, and paine doth vexe the reines. Therfore you shall cure that excretion of bloudie vrine, which is caused through weakenesse of the reines, or amplitude

Cause.

Signa.

Cure of bloudie vrine by weakenesse of the veines

ampſitude of the veſſels that ſtraine out vrine to the reines, by quiet and reſtrictiue meates, drinking of blacke wine, and other things which are reherſed, in the chap. of ſpitting of bloud. You muſt abſtaine from thoſe things ſpecially which prouoke vrine, and from carnall copulation. In drinke beſides thoſe things that are rehearſed in the chap. aforeſaid, miniſter decoction of the root of comferie, and *tragacantha* miniſtred, that is ſteeped in blacke wine, is good. Alſo ℥.j. of hartſhorne with wine, iuice of marigolds doth ſtop bruiſings out of bloud from the reins. Likewiſe leaues of willow braied with wine, *lapis hematitis*, ℥.j. root of white thorne and decoction of knotgraſſe. Moreouer ℥.j. of bole-armoniacke miniſtred, is good. Sirupes of roſes and mirtles, trochiskes of ambre, of *terra lemnia* and of *ſpodium*. Moreouer ſheeps milke is only praiſed being miniſtred faſting. ℥.iiij. with ℥.j. of bolearmoniacke commixed with it. Applie outwardly to the reins and the loins thoſe things which be deſcribed againſt ſpitting of bloud, and in the chap. of *Dyſenteria*, and other eruptions of bloud. And whatſoeuer can together with his reſtraining & drying adde ſtrength alſo: (as be) leaues of brier and oke, maſt, mirtle, berries, pomegranat rindes, *balauſtiæ*, and ſuch like. After this the ſtate of the body muſt be refreſhed and reſtored with meats of good iuice, with milke and fleſh of birds, alſo with ſwines fleſh that is lene. That thereby the whole body may be brought to his former ſtrength, and the reins being ſtrengthned alſo they may fulfill their own proper office, and that they may deuide, and ſtraine out the wheiſhe humor from the bloud. But if the reines doe ſend out bloud according to the circuites, or through breaking of a veine, or through gnawing of ſharpe humours flowing from aboue, then by and by you muſt cut a veine of the ſame ſide in the arme. To thoſe that ſend out by circuits bloud, let them bloud a litle before the circuit, but let the other bloud by and by in the beginning: but it is better to part the drawing out of the bloud, that his pulling back and auerſion may be done by litle and litle. Let the places about the reines be couered with ſponges wet in *Poſca*, or moiſt wooll, with oile of roſes and vineger. After this apply ointments, emplaiſters and cerotes deſcribed in the places before rehearſed. Alſo a cupping glaſſe may commodiouſlie be applied, ſpecially if you ſuſpect inflãmation to be preſent in them, which piſſe bloud through breaking of a veine. Alſo potions are good rehearſed before in the chap. of ſpitting of bloud. In the meane ſeaſon alſo, the ſicke muſt be driuen from all ſalt and ſharp things. But when excretion of bloud ceaſeth, he muſt vſe a diet that doeth not engender much bloud, ſpecially in thoſe that voide out bloud by circuite. Alſo the vpper partes of the body muſt continually be exerciſed. In thoſe, which piſſe bloud through breaking of a veine, if the exulceration be left in the places, you ſhall cure them after the bloud is ſtopped by thoſe things that are ſpoken of in the chapter of exulceration of the raines.

Cure of bloudy vrine comming through circuites, or breaking of a veine, or gnawing.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of inflammation of the Reines.

De Renvm Inflammatione.

THE reins are vexed with inflammation for diuerſe cauſes. For both corrupt humours, and ſtripes, and rubbings together, and drinking of medi-

Cauſe.

cines doe engender inflammation of the reines, and ſpecially continuall and
Signa. vehement ridings. There commeth to the ſicke a beating paine behind about the firſt ioint of the backe, a litle aboue the baſtard ribs: but the paine ſtretcheth vpward, euen vnto the liuer, ſpecially the right ſide reine being vexed, but downeward vnto the bladder and priuy members and the loins and hips: and alſo to the ſhare and thighs. Alſo there followeth aſtoniſhment of the leg that is neare, that it can neither be ſtretched out right, nor he cannot goe on his feet. And whether ſneeſing or any other concuſſion do chaunce, they are vexed with moſt vehement paine, their extreame parts be cold, and moſt the calfes of the legs, and the feet. There is preſent difficulty in making of water, and they piſſe continually & painfully. In the beginning their vrine is thin and watery, hauing no reſidence in it: but the inflāmation waxeth worſe, it is more rubicund. Alſo afterward it is groſſe & filthy, & there be vehement feuers preſent. And if the inflammation encreaſe ſtill, al theſe ſigns wax more vehemēt. To theſe commeth diſpoſition to vomit, & gnawing of the ſtomacke, & vomiting of choler. Many of them are vexed, & ſweat vntill their hearts faile them: their belly is ſtopped, ſo that they are puffed vp with wind, & do ſend out belkings continually. There followeth vehement abhorring of meat, and to ſome there are continuall exacerbatiōs, but to ſome between whiles. And generally egeſtion of the wombe, & much excretion of vrine do go before thoſe paines. The ſick muſt lie in a very ſoft bed: & the firſt day he muſt abſtaine frō meate, but you may not extend his faſting to many daies. For the vrines being made more pure & ſharpe by faſting, do vex with moſt vehement biting & gnawing.
Victus ratio. Therfore in the beginning you muſt nouriſh them with thin ſoupings, that do eaſe and ceaſe gnawing and biting (as is) broth of *ptyſan* or *alica* of barley. Alſo mallowes for his pot herbs doth much profit. Let his drinke be water, wherein a litle cinamon hath bin ſoddē. To be ſhort let his diet be thin, & ſuch, as is in other inflammations. For the cure, in the beginning you muſt by and by let
Curatio. him bloud, & you muſt cut the veine that is in the ham or in the anckles, and that muſt be done on the leg that is right againſt the reine, that is vexed. Alſo ſometime (as *Galen* ſaith) you muſt let bloud of the arme (that is) when the inflammation is new, and abundance of bloud is preſent. After bloud letting you
Localia. muſt come to outward medicines, as cataplaſmes, foments, liniments, emplaiſters, and ſuch like, which haue vertue to coole meanly, & to eaſe paine, made of the oiles of roſes, quinces and chammomill, of barley meale, beane meale, fænugreeke, lineſeed, and ſuch like, which be reheārſed in the chapters of inflammation of the liuer & the ſpleene. And if the paine be not eaſed by thoſe things that be applied outwardly: apply a cupping glaſſe to the loines, and the guts, and ſcarification being made, you muſt draw out much bloud. Then you muſt vſe nouriſhment of ſponges, and other things which can eaſe paine. You
Note. muſt only beware al this time, that you giue not ſuch medicins to drink as prouoke vrine, for they hurt vehemently by bringing in gnawing and biting humors to the inflamed parts. This medicin I haue proued to be ſingularly good ℞. the iuice of clary, and the iuice of nightſhade. ana. ℥ij. drunk in ℥.vj. of ſtale ale, morning & euening vj. daies together. Alſo you muſt beware in the beginning of the inflammatiō of purging medicins. But yet you may vſe ſoft cliſters

(ſpecially

(ſpecially if the belly be coſtiue) made of the decoctiō of mallows, or lineſeed, & fænugreek, or *ptyſan* broth, putting to it oile of violets, or chammomill oile. But you muſt beware that you put not in great abūdance of it, for thē the bowels being filled & ſtretched out with it, will preſſe together the reins. But when the inflammation is perfectly ceaſed and concoct, which you may know by the ceaſing of the paine, then alſo you may purge him by medicines that prouoke vrine. For after inflammations concoct & digeſt, the vrine cōmeth forth much in quantity & groſſe. And in thoſe that haue reſidence, it is good: & ſo iudgeth the beſt altogether. What medicines prouoke vrine, we haue taught in the ſecond book of making of medicins the 7. chap. ſpecially among pot herbs, fennell, *apium*, and parſeneps well ſodden, are good. And if by the aforeſaid medicines, the inflammation be not driuen away, and if neither the paine, nor the feuer, nor the heauines do reſt by vſing of the aforeſaid things, and alſo if difficulty of piſſing, and often dropping downe of the vrine, do vex the patient, theſe betokēn matter to be gathered in that part. Therefore as ſwiftly as you can, you muſt helpe the ſuppuration, and breaking out of the matter. For the which purpoſe, a ſponge continually wet in water and oile applied in ſtead of a foment profiteth. For thē ſame purpoſe alſo vſe cataplaſmes which are made of barley meale, bran, figs, *althæa*, & ſuch like, reherſed before in the chapter of inflammatiō of the liuer. Alſo it profiteth greatly to diſcend into a bath made of mollifying herbs, as mallows, *althæa*, lineſeed, fenugreek. And if after perfect ſuppuration, the rupture & breaking be delaid & taried (which you may know if the feuers and pains wax leſſe, and ſenſe of heauines remain about the reine that is affected) miniſter thoſe things in drinke, which prouoke vrine, as is decoction of fennell, peniroiall, origan, & ſuch like. For theſe ſometime do breake the ſuppuration, & purge out the matter with the vrine. And if the vſing of thē do profit nothing, you muſt waſh the belly with ſharpe cliſters: as with root of wild cucumber ſodden and alaied, or decoction of garlike or radiſh. You muſt ſteepe thoſe in brine & commix a litle oile, wherby they may be made ſlippery to be poured in. Theſe muſt be throwen in with a cliſter pipe, and the ſick muſt be bidden to hold it long time: for they are wont often to breake that ſuppuratiō, together with that, that they mollifie the belly. Alſo if the rupture & breaking tary, commin with wine called *paſſum* helpeth, & rew with *vinum mulſum*. Moreouer the rupture being made, litle peeces of fleſh being lōg, are ſent out with the vrine. And if the vlcers be malignant, there be ſent out humors ſtinking, ſwart, and ſlimy, but if they be benigne & gentle, the matter that is piſſed forth, is white, equall, light, & without grieuous ſauour, & litle in quantity. After the eruption and breaking out of the matter, miniſter milk, with hony, and other things which ſhall be rehearſed in the Chapter of vlcers of the reines.

Signa ſuppurationis.

Signa perfectæ ſuppurationis.

Signa ruptura facte.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of the ſtone in the reines.

De Calculo Renvm.

Cauſe.

THE ſtone of the reines happeneth oftner to men of perfect age, then to children. The cauſe of ingendring of ſuch ſtones is continual crudity and rawneſſe of the ſtomacke, whereby abundance of groſſe and earthy humours is heaped vp together, and burning of fiery heate about the reines, parcheth

the humours, and knits them together, and hardneth them into a stone. The stones be in the reines, nigh their ventricles either litle or great, and somtime smaller, sometime many, differing among themselues in greatnesse, figure, colour, and sharpnes, for they are found black, whitish and pale. There chanceth to the sicke gricuous paine in the reins, and he feeleth like as it were a bodkin thrust in, and yet there appeareth no swelling without. He can turne his backe bone hardly. The leg that is right against the reine, that is diseased, is astonied there is present abhorring of meat and vomiting. About the beginning of obturation and stopping, the vrine is pissed forth litle in quantity & watery. Afterward there followeth perfect suppression of the vrine, & the wombe auoideth nothing, but it maketh many proffers to go to the stoole. Somtime there is auoided forth bloud, through the violence of the stones, specially if they be sharpe stones. Also the vrine hath grauelly residence, specially when the stone is remoued from the reins, which signes aforesaid *Hippocrates* declareth in *lib. 6. Epid. par. 1. Aphor. 5.* Moreouer things that be light and round, are easily sent out: but not so, if they be of any other forme or fashion: but specially if they be long and sharpe, they are hard to be sent out. When the stone, stopped in the reines, doth cause most vehement pains, lest abundance of bloud through the greatnesse of the paine should come downe together to the member diseased, in a body that is full of humors and strong, you must by and by cut the vain in the hamme of that leg that is astonied, and is right against the reine that is diseased. But if those that labor of ill digestion or vicious humors, purging of the abundant humor is good for them. Neither may this caution be omitted, except some other thing do forbid them: which also *Hippocrates* biddeth, while he teacheth that yong men should be purged with *helleborc*. Also if it be not lawful to let bloud, nor to minister purgation, you must wash the womb by ministring of clisters, which you must do at that time specially, when there is great plenty of excrements in the bowels. But you must onely beware that they be not strong clisters, and that they do not draw plenty of humors from other places to the bowels, lest the passages of the vrine should be streightned and pressed together. But let them be such as are only able to auoid the excrements contained in the bowels, as is this clister. ℞. mallowes, *althæa*, mercury, maidenhaire, perietary. ana. *M.* j water cresses. *M* j. ß. seeds of parsley, *apium*, fennell, & flaxe. ana, ℥. iij root of *gladon*. ℥. j. ß. bran. ℥. j. boile them in iust quantity of water vnto the third part. & then take of the licour of that decoction being strained ℥. xj. of *cassia fistula*. ℥. i. of *hiera picra*. ℥. ß. *mel rosarum* strained. ℥. j. ß. oiles of dill, rew, and chammomill. ana. ℥ j. salt ℥. ij. commixe them all and make a clister. But we may in no case vse continuall clisters, and neglect almost all other remedies, as many phisitions do now adaies, but vse them twise or thrise, but so that they be not kept aboue their accustomed time. For if they be holden longer then they ought to be, they cause pressing together, and streightnes of the reins, and the conduits of the vrine. When the belly is purged and emptied of excrements, you must minister those medicins, which can loosen the conduits and passages. For which purpose the region of the reines, and the loines must be annointed with this medicine. ℞. oiles of dill, and of sweete almonds. ana. ℥. ij. oile of chammomill. ℥. j. ß. hens grease, and goose grease. ana. ℈. ij butter without

Differences of stones.
Signa.
Curatio.
Venæ sectio.
Purgatio.
Cliſter.
Note.
Vnguentum.

without salt. ℥ j. waxe as much as is sufficient, make a soft ointment. Also he must vse inceſſions of the decoctions of calamint, origan, water cresses, cole wortes, leaues of *althea*, mallowes and such like, or the sicke must often be let downe into a great vessell of warme sweete water. Also foments of bran, with leaues of *althea* sodden, being applied to the grieued place be verie good. Also cataplasmes made of wheat meale, of lineseed & fenugreeke, of lupines, of the roote of dog fennell beaten very small, and of cammomill. Also it is good to lay bread sodden in wine called *passum* about the loynes and the bellie. Neither shall he doe rashly which applyeth cataplasmes, and other things before rehearsed to the bladder and the share. But you must bring on heapes one plaister after another, before the first do coole: for cold doth draw together & bind, and so doth hold still the stone in the reines, and in the conduites of the vrine. And if you list not to vse so many cataplasmes, you may couer it with some heating thing vpon it that it coole not, for these sometimes, and that not seldome, are wont to suffice for to cast out the stone by the vrine. And if these driue not away the disease, you must minister in drinke those thinges which prouoke vrine. These that follow draw much vrine: gladon, S. Iohns wort, parsley, *oreoselinum*, grommell, *ammi*, seede of *daucus* & fennell, *asarum*, roote of brionie and mather, barke of the roote of capers, sperage and such like. With these commixe those things that bring downe vrine vnto the reines: as is roote of pencedane, or dog fennell, briony, *apium* and *radicula*. Also commix with them those things that breake and teare the stone in the reines, as is, *sium*, maiden-haire, *bdellium*, tutsan seede, *bruscus* roote, saxifrage: betonie, roote of *damosonii*, broth of cicers, roote of cipresse, grommell, *lapis iudaicus*, *xanthium*, the seede and roote of *althea*, gumme of plomb tree, earth wormes sodden, and stones and sponges of the sea. Euery one of these part of them sodden, & part of them very finely powdred, minister them to drinke. But it is best to minister those things which prouoke vrine and breake the stone, at that time, when the vehement paines be released, which chanceth when the stone is remoued, and stirred out of his place. But if the stones be established fast, and be vehemently compact in the reines, he must eschew much drinke, and also those things that prouoke vrine: for seeing they bring with them to the reines a great aboundance of excrements, they cause the passages of the vrine to be stopped, and let the passing of the stones out of the reines. You must release and losen the reines, & the conduites of the vrine, with foments, cataplasmes and inceſsions, as is aforesaid. Also the belly must be voided with light clysters, least the passages of the vrine be stopped. After that paine is a litle released, you may also apply profitably to them a cupping glasse, specially subtilly fastened to, if inflammation do not let it: for often times cupping glasses do so remoue on heapes those stones, that they cease the paines by and by (that is) the stones being caried into the amplitude of the bladder. Wherefore in the beginning fasten a cupping glasse aboue from the reine, and then to the part about the priuie members, ouerthwartly according to the placing of the conduites of the vrine. Moreouer stones being brought from the reines to the bladder, and for their greatnesse being holden still about the necke of the bladder, they do often bring the sicke into extreme perill, as well through their pricking paine,

Inceſsions.

Cataplasmata.

as also because they will not suffer the vrine to come out. You must goe about to let the sick lie in such a fashion, that he may lie vpright, and haue the ioints of his huckle bones lie verie high. Then you must sturre them many wayes, that by al the meanes that you can inuent, you may make the stone to fal out of the passage of the bladder. Afterward you must bid the sicke to put out the vrine quickly: but when the stone is not cast out, you must moue him againe, and vse it againe and againe often. And if you do profite nothing by thus doing, you must put in an instrument called *catheter*, which is apt to drawe out vrine, and with that you must draw the stone from the necke of the bladder, and bring out the vrine. Afterward you must labour to breake the stone being in the bredth of the bladder, with conuenient medicines by potions: but if the stone fall out of the bladder, it staieth about the middle passage of the yarde, and by wounding it bringeth perill of exulceration: then you must poure hote water by litle and litle, from the furthest parts of the yarde, or you must put the yard in hote oile, that hath dissoluing vertue in it. Also you must minister much of some docoction made of those things that prouoke vrine, and you must bid the sicke gather much vrine, and afterward to put it out, and to expell it diligently: for so the stone withdrawen is wont to fall out. But when you cannot drawe him out this way neither, you must cut the yarde aboue with a litle wounde, about the bigneſſe of an acorne: for it is not good to cut it vnder the yarde; for almost alwaies it turneth into a *fistula*, and afterwarde the vrine cõmeth out by the cleft. The stone being at the last remoued away, you must preserue the man, that the reines be no more troubled with the stone.

Preseruation from the stone.

The greatest thing to auoid engendring of the stone, is to vse meates of good iuice, easie of digestion, & moderate. Therfore it is good for him to beware of all meates of hard substance, and which are hard to be broken in peeces with chewing. Also let their exercises be meane, and let them vse but litle all kinde of pulse, and of corne: also cheese, milke, & the meates that are made of them. Moreouer blacke wine, and plentie of flesh, and generally all things of groffe iuice, and that be ouer hot and sharpe. You must admonish them, whom the stone hath afflicted, that they vomit often after supper, and that they drinke wormewood continually. And at certaine times, if bloud seeme to abound, let them cut a veine, or if vicious humors be gathered on a heape, let them vse a purging medicine, agreeing to their temperament. Also, their water throughout all their diet, must be most pure and strained. Also let their wine be thinne & white, and not verie old; for that is meete to prouoke vrine. Also they must vse as well meates as medicines that prouoke vrine. Therefore they must eate daily parsneps very well sodden, fennell, *Sium*, peniroiall, and such like. Among medicines this powder is of much effect. ℞. of the rootes of fennell, sperage, & *filipendula*, ana. ℥ j. rootes of mather. ℈. j rootes of *Aristolochia rotunda*, & *Althæa*. ana. ℥ j licorice scraped. ℥. ij. the stones of sea sponges, & *lapis iudaicus*. ana. ℈. j. seedes of *ammeos*, *daucus*, parsley, saxifrage, fennell, annise, grommell. ana. ℥. ß. seedes of melons, and citrons pilled. ana. ℥ j ß. seede of *alkakengi*. ℥. ß. pellitory of the wall, mallowes. ana. ℥ j pulioll mountain, maidenhaire, peniroiall, *asarũ*. ana. ℥. ß. of the bloud of a male goat dried & præparat. ℥ j. *bdellium*, *ammoniack*. ana. ℥ ß. of crabbes eyes, cinnamon chosen and squinant. ana. ℈ ij. beate all & bring

Powder against the stone of the reines.

bring them into a moſt fine powder, whereof giue the weight of one drachme euery fourth day, or once a weeke in the morning with thinne wine. Moreouer the preparating of the goates bloud aforeſaid is taught of *Ætius. lib.* 11. *cap* 12. Other remedies we will ſpeake of in the chapter of the ſtone in the bladder.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of vnmeaſurable piſſing.

DE DIABETE.

DIABETES is a continuall diſeaſe about the reines, cauſing much thirſt: and alſo whatſoeuer is drunke, euen as it is taken, it is piſſed out againe. This diſeaſe is ingendred of weaknes of the retentiue vertue of the reines: but there is ſuch ſtrength of the attractiue vertue, that it ſucketh the whole body through immoderat heate. There followeth to the ſick a ſtubburne thirſt, neither are they filled by miniſtring any kind of licour. Therefore they are conſtrained to drinke continually, becauſe that which is drunke, goeth on ſo ſwiftly by the vrine againe. Alſo the bowels of the ſicke ſeeme to burne, the loynes ſwell vp, and the ſtones and haunches alſo. And if yet more gnawing heate be increaſed in the bowels, the ſtomacke is wrinckled, and the veines in it are lifted vp, all the ſtate of the body is leane, and there chaunceth grieuous conſuming of the body. The effect of the cure conſiſteth in that, to ſtop the ſharpnes of the humour, and the bloud, & with that to make the wheyiſh humour which is commixt with it, of ſlow mouing, and to correct the diſtemper of the reines. Therfore by and by, when the euill beginneth, being not yet come to his perfection, it is beſt to cut the veine on the arme, and to draw out bloud moderately. Alſo you muſt giue him things that prouoke vrine meanely, which may purge out the vicious humours that be ſetled in the reines. But if the euill be immoderate & old, you muſt neither vſe bloud letting, nor miniſter any thing that prouoketh vrine: for theſe do further the colliquation and conſuming of the body, which doth chaunce alſo by it ſelfe. For in them that this euill is inueterate, their ſtrength faileth them, and through bloudletting the whole body is made ſharper, and things that prouoke vrine, do multiplie and increaſe the euill in them. The greateſt and chiefeſt remedie of this diſeaſe, is to reuomite that vp againe, that is drunke. Let his drinke be verie cold, as alſo let the reſt of his diet be cooling. Therfore giue him meates of good iuice, and which can difficultly be changed, and do lacke mordacitie and gnawing: or which is able to ſtop mordacitie and ſharpneſſe, as be, rere egges, *alica* made like a ſouping, and leane ſwines fleſh much ſodden. Alſo you may well giue them new cheeſe well compact, and without ſalt: and milke wherein flint ſtones, or red hote ſteele hath bene quenched, the whey taken away. Alſo for ſouping, cold Piſan broth is good. For potherbs, take endiue, lettuce, & purſlaine. Of fruits, peares, apples, and pomegranates. Alſo fiſhes of grauelly places be good. He muſt drinke wine that is red and thicke, well alayed with water, for to waſh the ſalt humours, which cauſe the thirſt: for wine chaungeth the temperature of the bodie to ſweeteneſſe. In drinke alſo you muſt miniſter vnto him iuyce of pomegranates, *rob de ribes*, or *rob de barberies*. For medicines, miniſter vnto him the iuyce of knotgraſſe, or of ſanguinarie with blacke wine. Alſo decoction of

Diabetes quid.
Cauſe.
Signa.
Curatio.
Diet.
Medicamenta.

comferie and of dates, and of mirtle beries, or peares. Likewise sirupes of roses, and mirtles, and such like. Also Trochiskes of *spodium* may be ministred with
Localia. iuyce of knotgrasse, or blacke wine. Outwardly you must apply to the sides, the loynes, and the share, ointments, cataplasmes, and cerotes that do coole: as be those which are made of rose vineger, *polenta*, lettuce, duckes meate, pellitorie of the wall, vine leaues, purslaine, and such like. For which purpose also, ointments do profit, made of oyles of roses and mirtles, or annointings with the iuice of nightshade, or of vine buddes. Also you must lay to the *Hypochonders* or sides in forme of a cataplasme, Barley meale, wrought vp with vineger, & oyle
Emplastrum. of roses. Also vse this emplaister; ℞. barley meale. ℥. ß. vine buds, tops of willow, *bursa pastoris*, ana. M. ß. the rind of pomegranates. ℥. ij. ß. purslaine. M. j. seeds of quinces. ℥. j. red roses. M. j. ß. boile them all in water vnto the thicknes of hony, then adde to it oyle of roses. ℥. ij. oile of mirtles. ℥. j. boile them againe, & make a plaister. Of these aforesaid things you may make a Cerote, by putting to *hypociſsidos*, *acatia*, bole armoniack, rosen and wax. Also you must prouoke them
Sudorum euocatio. to sweate, that the vicious humors may be turned to sweating out. The best euaporation and sweating is in a tunne, made with herbes and other hot things to prouoke sweate after such sort, that the head may be without the tunne. Or else apply a vessell full of hote water to the patients feete, lying in his bed, and prouoke sweat. Also wash the conduite with plantaine water, and burnt alume.

CHAP. XL.

Against vlcers of the reines.

Cause. VLcers or boyles of the reynes be caused through rupture, and breaking of
Renum vlcera. the veines in the reines. Also it is caused through rotting of inflammatiõ, and through sharpe and gnawing humours, caried into the reines. When the
Signa. reines are exulcerate, there is paine felt in the loines, with heauinesse, and the vrine is pissed forth without any impediment, which chaunceth not so in the vlcers of the bladder. Also there is atter commixed in the vrine with litle peeces of flesh, or haires swimming in them. According to *Hyppocrates* saying, 4. *Aphor.* 75. who saith, if bloud or atter be pissed out, it signifieth exulceration, either of the reines, or of the bladder. And by and by after he saith, if in a grosse and thicke vrine there appeareth litle peeces of flesh, or as it were haires, they
Diet. are sent from the reines. Therefore when these appeare, let the sicke eschue crudities, and sacietie or fulnesse. Therefore let him eate no raw things in his meates, neither that which is hard of digestion, or that will easily corrupt, or ingender inflammations or windinesse. Let him chiefly abstaine from those things, which do soone waxe soure or sharpe. Also from all sharpe and burning things, and whatsoeuer doth breed and ingender choler: as is, much thirst, abstinence, hunger, labour, wrath, solitarinesse, exercise, watching, and immoderate sawces. He must eschue aboue all things immoderat riding, & all vehement mouing and stirring: also he must auoyd perpetuall idlenesse, and continuall bathing. He must vse new bread well wrought, & giue him flesh of birds of the mountaines, and kids flesh, and such like tender flesh. Also giue him scalie fishes of grauelly places, rosted on a grediron. Moreouer, riuer crabs, soupings of Ptisan, and *amylum* sodden with milke, be maruellous good. Giue him

also

also milke mixed with egs, and the fat broth of a henne. Also rere egges ministred alone, are good. Of pot-herbes, mallowes, endiue, sorrell, purslaine, and lettuce are good: but all these must be sodden, for the sicke must eate nothing that is raw, as is aforesayd. Of frutes, raisins are not hurtfull, and pine nuts. Also almonds well blanched are good. Much drinke & strong must be eschued. And he must altogether refraine from cold drinke: for cold, as *Hyppocrates* saith, 5. *Apher.* 20. is an enemie to vlcers. For his drinke let him vse wine that is alayed, and somewhat restrictiue: or let him drinke goates milke, or sheepes milke, or almond milke. Carnall copulation is maruellous euill, not onely for vlcers, but also for all other diseases of the reines, specially in old men, and in them that be weake of nature. Such things must be eschued as prouoke vrine. Also let bathing be seldome vsed, as is aforesayd. It is not vnprofitable to vse naturall bathes, and waters sprong of themselues, and specially allume waters, and brimstone waters, for it is commodious to wash cold places: it destroyeth vlcers that be hard to cure, aswell outwardly as also inwardly. Also naturall waters drunke after the morning walke are good. The cure of vlcers of the reines, when as they are caused through sharpe and gnawing humours, must be begun with purging of vicious and gnawing humors. They that are thus affected, you must also purge them by vomite: for vomite is not good onely to auoyde vicious humours, but also if any man do vomite boldly euery moneth, he shall dissolue the vlcer of the reines, and what euill soeuer may chaunce there: for it turneth the mouing of the humours into a contrary part. Also in the meane seaſon you must minister medicines which do stop the gnawing of the sharpe humours, as is, mallowes, endiue, sorrell, purslaine, seede of melons, cucumbers, and gourds, syrupes of violets, roses, and water lillies, and the conserues of them. But when the vicious humours be purged, he must drinke *aqua malsa*, or the decoction of fenugreeke with honie, or of cucumbers, or of mallowes, or of melons seed with *hydromel*. Also minister milke with hony newly milked, and hote: for it is good to purge the vlcers. Also goates whey, decoction of barley, raisins and licorice, is maruellous good, and the iuyce likewise. When that the vlcers be purged and cleansed: which you may know, if there appeare in the vrine, neither peeces of the couer of the vlcer, nor yet dreggie and filthie matter, but matter that is whitish, light, equall, and litle in quantitie: then minister such medicines, as do drie vp and conglutinate. For which purpose giue him bolearmoniacke, gumme tragacanth, *amylum*, *terra lemnia*, and such like before rehearsed. But among other things, this powder is maruellous good; ℞. *Terræ lemniæ*, bolearmoniacke. ana. ℥. j. ß. *Tragacanthæ*, *spodium* burnt. ana. ℥. j. *amylum*, pine nuttes toasted. ana. ℥. ß. lineseed, cucumber seed blanched, melons seed. ana. ℥. ij. seed of *Apium*. ℈. ij. dragons bloud. ℥. j. beate them all together, and make a verie fine powder, of the which giue the sicke daylie ℥. ij. with milke newly milked. Moreouer, outwardly you must applie such things as can drie and strengthen the reines. Therefore minister emplaisters and cerotes, or ointments made of the oyles of roses, and of mirtles, of barley meale, frankensence, masticke, red roses, & such like. Examples whereof you may seeke before. As for other remedies, we will rehearse hereafter in the Chapter of vlcers of the bladder.

Curatio.

Vomite.

Medicins stopping gnawing of humours.

Purging of the vlcers.

Glutinatiues. Puluis.

To drie and strengthen the reines.

CHAP. XLI.

Of the ſtone in the bladder.

Calculum veſicæ.

Cauſe.

STones in the bladder do ingender oftener in children, then in older folke. When that vrine groſſe and very thicke is caried into the largeneſſe of the bladder, it ſetleth and ſtayeth there, like dregs of wine, or muddie water, and afterward through the heate that is in children, being dried and compact together, it breedeth a ſtone. Therefore there be two ſpeciall cauſes of the ingendring of the ſtone in the bladder: that is, thickneſſe of the vrine, & heate of children. They that haue the ſtone in the bladder, they itch often, and do handle their priuie members, which alſo are ſwollen, and they are conſtrained to make water continually, & they are vexed with the ſtrangury, or dropping out of vrine. The cure of this diſeaſe is almoſt the ſame that the cure of the ſtone in the reines is. But they differ in this thing, becauſe the ſtones of the bladder require ſtronger medicines, and you muſt apply the medicines in another place then you did in the cure of the reines. The ſtones that are ingendred in the bladder, are broken chiefly with theſe medicines (that is) the ſeed and roote of fennell, of louage, blacke pionie ſeeds, motherwort, cammomill, the roote and ſeede of *althæa*, *ſium*, maidenhaire, ſorrell rootes, the ſtones of ſponges, the ſtone of *tecolithus*, grommell, *bruſcus* roote and ſeede, the ſtones which come out of men with their vrine, brayed and drunke, the ſeed of little burres, the barke of capers, ſothernwood ſeed, iacint, white violets, ſmalach, parcelie, and other ſuch like, which do prouoke vrine, and which be rehearſed in the chapter of the ſtone in the reines. To theſe you muſt conioyne the moſt laudable remedie (that is) a hedge ſparow being dreſſed in ſalt, and taken raw in meate, doth heale the diſeaſe perfectly. For it expelleth the ſtones that are already ingendred by the vrine, & it letteth them from ingendring any more. Alſo goates bloud is a preſent remedie, aſwell for the ſtone of the reines, as of the bladder: for it diſſolueth thoſe that be ingendred, and drieth them out with the vrine, and prohibiteth other to ingender any more, & ceaſeth paine. Furthermore, if the ſtones of the bladder cannot come out by the paſſage of the vrine, but that they be there ſtopped, and compact together, & ſo do cauſe ſuppreſſion of vrine, then the ſicke muſt be vpward, ſo that his hips muſt lye vpward and higheſt, and then you muſt moue him hither and thither manie wayes, that thereby the ſtone may fall out of the paſſage, and afterward bid him piſſe euen as he lyeth yet vpward. But if he cannot make water ſo neither, prouoke the vrine by a cyting, and after that you muſt miniſter thoſe medicins which haue vertue to breake the ſtone in the bladder. And if the cure come not to paſſe by this meanes, you muſt come to cutting. The ſtone therfore being conſumed by any of the meanes aforeſaid, ſuch an order of diet muſt be appointed to the patient, that the ſtone may not ingender againe, which we haue preſcribed in the Chapter of the ſtone in the reines.

Signa.

Curatio.

To breake the ſtone in the bladder.

CHAP. XLII.

Of bloud broken out of the bladder, or curded in it.

Cauſe.

IT chanceth ſomtimes that a veine breaketh in the bladder, & then ſome of the bloud is ſent out, and ſome waxeth thick and curdeth within. When the bloud

bloud is thickened and curded within, the patients heart faileth him, and he waxeth pale, his pulses be small, darke, and thicke, he is sorowfull, he is cold, and his strength decayeth. And sometime when a clod of bloud chanceth to fall into the passage of the vrine, then it stoppeth the going out of the vrine. You must in this case, as also in other burstings out of bloud, cause a very quick and speedie remedie. Therefore if nothing forbid, it is good to cut the veine in the arme, drawing out the bloud by times, that by this meanes the bloud may be drawen backe often, and by litle and litle. Let the patient in his lying be layd vpward, and let his hips be lifted vp, and apply sponges dipped in *posca*, that is, water & vineger sodden together, to coole him. Also the extreme parts must be bound, and the share must be couered with sponges dipped in *posca*. If the euill increase, cupping glasses fastened to the ilions, & to the loynes profit much. After irrigations with the sponges dipped in *posca*, you must vse cataplasmes of knotgrasse, brambles, plaintaine and pomegranate floures. Also vse cerotes made of *hypociſchis*, *acatia*, bolearmoniacke, and such like rehearsed before in the Chapters of spitting of bloud, and of the fluxe *dysenteria*. You must poure into the bladder, iuice of knotgrasse, plantaine, or millefolie, commixing with it *acatia*, bolearmoniacke, trochiskes of *spodium*, and such like. Also incessions of such like things are good; for both *posca* and decoction of *Lentiſcus*, and also of brambles and such like, are good. Also you must minister in drinke, medicines apt to bring out bloud, as be, *rhaponticum* finely beaten, & xij. red seeds of pionie, *terra lemnia*, horsetaile, the roote of centorie the great, the barke of frankensence, and such like. But in them that bloud is congealed and curded in the bladder, first you must go about to dissolue and disperse that bloud with conuenient medicines. Therefore you must minister in drinke, motherwort, *ſtichados*, citrine, wormewood, sothernwood, shauing of a vine, radish-seede, hares or goates creame, each of them with *oximel*. Also *oximel* ministred by it selfe doth profit maruellously, for it dissolueth the curds, that afterward they may come forth by litle and litle with the vrine. Apply outwardly bathes, ointments, irrigations, and other things that haue vertue to loosen and release, which you must seeke out of the Chapter of the stone in the reines. Aboue other things this Cerote is verie good. ℞. of the oyles of roses and cammomill, ana. ℥. j. ß. calamint, comin, leaues of elder, ana. ℥. iij. *bitumen Iudaicum*, gum ammoniacke, ana. ℥. ij hares creame, ℥. iij. sothernwood, meale of fenugreeke ana. ℥. ß. spermacetie, ℥. j. with rosen and waxe as much as is sufficient, make a cerote to apply to the share. And if you profit nothing by doing thus, but the vrine is still stopped, you must of necessitie vse a cyring: by the which when you haue brought out the vrine, you must againe minister the things aforesaid in drinke, & apply those things outwardly, which do dissolue congealed bloud. And if the clods of bloud will not yet be dissolued, you must come to the curing of it likewise as you did in the stone of the bladder.

Signa.

Curatio.

To bring out bloud.

To dissolue curded bloud.

Cerotum.

CAAP. XLIII.

Of inflammation of the bladder.

OF diseases that be in the bladder, and ingender there, the most grieuous and deadly is the inflammation thereof. The sicke haue these tokens fol-

Signa. lowing. They are vexed with a sharpe feuer, they watch, they raue, and speake they wot not what: they vomit pure choler, and they cannot make water, the share becometh hard, & hath vehement paine, they haue desire to the stoole, as is wont in the disease called *Tenasmus*; the ordure that commeth foorth is thinne and hath no residence: also somtime inflations follow, and the wombe is costiue, the right gut being pressed together of the inflammation of the

Curatio. bladder. To them that haue this disease, if nothing let it cut the veine of the hamme without any tarying, or draw bloud of the ankels. Also minister to him a thinne kind of diet, as is prescribed in other inflammations. He must also abstaine from wine, and he must vse water, wherein a litle cinnamon hath bene sodden. Outwardly you must apply those things that haue power to cease and

Dyet. mitigate paine. Therfore the place of the bladder must be nourished with oile wherein hath bene sodden dill, lineseede, and somtime rew and *althæa*. Medicines that be cold and restrictiue must altogether be forborne: & that chiefly because the bladder is full of sinewes: for colde as *Hyppocrates* witnesseth 5. *Aphor.* 28. is an enemy to sinewes. Moreouer because cold things do shut vp & bind, and so do stop the vrine (which thing chancing in this euill by it selfe) it encreaseth it. And last of all becaus cold things do prohibite and let that the humors causing inflammation, may be dissolued, consumed & digested: therefore medicines meanely hote are rather to be applied, which haue vertue to cease paine, to losen the pipe and passage of the vrine, and to dissolue the in-

Clyster. flammation. Also let the guts be washed with soft and easie clisters, and after the dung is come forth, cast in oile of dill, or such like thing to ease and cease the paine. It is good to seeth poppie shelles, together with oile, and to poure in goose grease, or fresh hens grease sodden together in the same oyle. In most vehement paine you must poure in ℥.j. of pilles of houndes tong dissolued in oyle of dill: or take *opium* with mirrhe and saffron, and annoint it vpon wooll, and put it vp into the fundament. Also let the sicke sit in the decoction of lineseede, fenugreeke roote of *althæa*, *dauci* seede, and such like, and bid the sicke pisse as he sitteth in the water of the decoction: for the bladder is not strong enough to receiue and expell out the vrine: therfore the patient or some that be about him, must thrust & presse the share easily & softly, and that must not be done out of measure, least that paine shold be augmented therby. Also after

Fomenta. Sacculi. clisters and incessions vse foments by hote water, and apply oyle in oxe bladders or other vessels, halfe ful, or litle bagges as is shewed in the chapter of the pluriſie. And if for all these things, the euill cease not, fasten a cupping glasse with scarification to the grieued places. Moreouer he must abstaine frō those things which prouoke vrine vehemently, and he must eschewe much drinke. When there appeareth euident declination of the disease, you must come to

Catheter. the vse of those things that haue vertue to dissolue and mollifie, whereof we haue spoken often before. The putting in of a Cyring into him that is diseased with inflammation of the bladder is not easie to vse, and specially in men: for seeing it cannot be put into them without paine, it sharpeneth the paine and increaseth the inflammation: but in women it is no great hurt to vse it. For the passage of the vrine in them is short and straight, so that they may suffer the doing of it without paine. But if the perill through the stopping of vrine do ve-

ty much constraine you, then you must of necessity vse a cliring in men also, not because it taketh away the anguishe of the disease, but rather because it should amend the great suppression of vrine, and deliuer the patient frō deadly perill. After that you haue entised out the vrine, you must come againe to the remedies which do ease paine, vntill the inflammation be dissolued & rotted. Oftentimes the inflammation is wont to be dissolued by and by through the meanes of an *Erisipela*, rising outwardly vpon the skin, & remaining there, and not returning againe inward. Yea and oftentimes much vrine being cast out, doth iudge the euill. Yet neuertheles although these things appeare, you must still vse the remedies aforesaide: in as much as for the most part, perfect tension and stretching out being risen, continuall exacerbations and fittes are caused, and long constitution of the euill. But when the perillous fittes are ceased, and the constitution of the disease is now waxē old, you must come to the vsing of ointments, which do call out and bring forth the humours from within: and likewise emplaisters, which do rubifie and blister the skin, are to be applyed which you may finde after.

CHAP. XLIIII.

Of vlcers of the bladder and his necke.

Vlcera vesicæ.

THE bladder is exulcerate either through some bile, or botch, or swelling, which hath bene before, or through some rupture, or by eating, and gnawing of a fluxe, or through some such like cause. There followeth this sickenesse *Signa.* sharpe paine of the bladder, at all times pissing and auoiding out matter. And when the vlcers be foule and filthy, there commeth forth dreggy and slimie matter, and such as hath a grosse residence like bran. And sometime thin skins like leaues, and woolł are sent out with the vrine. If the vlcers do spred abroad and feed deepe, there is sent out vrine that is blouddy, attery and stinking. To these signs may be added, difficulty of making water, and rising vp of the yard. There is paine not onely, when the passage of the vrine is exulcerate, but also when the exulceration is in the bottom or depth. You may know whether the exulceration be in the bottom of the bladder, or nigh the pipe and passage of the vrine by this: for if it be in the depth of the bladder, there followeth paine about the share: but if the vlcers be nigh the neck of the bladder, there is pain felt only at such time, as he maketh water, and specially at the beginning and ending of his pissing: & also his paine is the greater if the vrine be sharp. They that are vexed with this euill, they either sit continually, or they can not stand vpright, nor rest lying along, and through great and continuall pain they are killed with feuers, watchings, and consumings, some sooner & some later. But *Why the vlcers of the bladder be incurable.* the vlcers of the bladder be incurable, or at the least waies very hard to cure: as well because the bladder is sinowy, as also because the vrine which is of nature sharpe doth continually touch the vlcers, and so gnaweth them: and will not suffer them to conglutinate and ioine together. For although much vrine be sent out, yet all the bladder cannot be cleane emptied, but alwaies some of the vrine is left in it, which doth continually touch the vlcers. Yea whē the abundance of vrine is sent out, then the bladder shrinketh vp and falleth together, so that the vrine that is left in it, although it be very litle, yet it toucheth

euery part therof. But seeing that oftentimes some things chance besides our expectation, you shal go about the cure, by the which, if you bring nothing else to passe, yet you shall diminish the paines of the fits. First therefore, you must perswade the patient to lie downe & to rest in his bed. and that specially when that he hath a feuer. Thē you must minister remedies for intermitting feuers. The chiefe thing in this case hath bin drinking of milke, and this is to be compared aboue all other medicines. For it maketh smooth roughnes, & washeth vlcerations, and scoureth the euill. Let the rest of his diet be such, as that is, which is ministred in the exulceration of the reins. Also you must comfort the sick by medicins, that will let the ingendring of sharpe vrine, which doth gnaw and fret the vlcers. And if there be inflammation with the exulceration, cataplasmes of linesced, and fenugreeke, and other things, which are rehersed before in the chapter of inflammation of the bladder, are apt and meet to be applied. Moreouer, if the exulceration do spred broder & eat deep, you must apply outwardly medicins somwhat restrictiue, and that such as be hot whē they are applied, that by their heat they might helpe the painefull places round about by mollifying them, & that through their vertue, they may prohibite the places nigh adioyning to feed & eat. Restrictiue medicins be these: gals, pomegranat rinds, alome, *acatia*, *hypocisthis*, and such like often rehersed of vs before. Also you must vse to minister to thē, medicines cast in with a ciring. You must cast into the exulcerate places, milke newly milked, or very good oile of roses warme. And if none of these be at hād, you must cast in continually most sweet water warmed: specially at such time as the gnawing is present. Also you must driue in by the fundament the iuice of *ptisan*, or the decoction of linesceede, cucumber seed husked, fenugreek, mallows, or milke with oile of roses. Moreouer when thou wilt minister a clister to him which is diseased in the bladder, he may not lie vpward, for the bladder then will not suffer the infusiō to enter in, because it lieth vpon the streight bowell: but the patient must lie groueling vpon his knees, and so you must cast in your infusion. Also let the sicke sit often in hot water, and in dissoluing decoctions, for these do cease paine somewhat. And when the vlcers do spred abroad and feed, you must cast into the bladder by a ciring such things as can stop the feeding: as be *acatia*, *hypocisthis*, *terra lemnia*, bole armoniack, & other rehearsed a litle before. But if the vlcers be foule and filthy, you must powre in medicins, which haue vertue to scoure & clense them, as is *mulsa* much watered, or milke with a litle hony, or with the seede of cucumbers cleansed. But if there follow sharpnesse and gnawing, cast in milke newly milked, mixed with good *amylum*, or tutty washed and dried with many waters, and then mixed with the milke. When the vlcers be scoured and purged cleane, you must procure to bring them to a scar, and to heale them. And that must be done by restrictiue incessions, and by emplaisters, foments, & irrigations, that be of like faculty and vertue. But if the exulceration do endure long time, as it chanceth for the most part, then the patient hath exacerbations and fits sometime, and intermission and space from them at other times. Therefore in the painfull fits apply emplaisters and irrigations, hauing power to cease & ease the paine, and in the time of the intermission between the fits, vse such things as haue vertue to destroy the euil. Therfore apply to the share,

Curatio.

Restrictiue medicines.

Note.

Synapismes,

Synapiſmes, and ſuch things as will rubifie & bliſter. And let the ſick vſe a diet that is good to reſtore ſtrength. And if the euil doth not wax gentler, you muſt make burnt ſcurfes about the ſhare, either by medicines or with iron, and to ſuffer the vlcers to purge and cleanſe them ſelues long time with matter flowing out. You may alſo miniſter medicines to ceaſe paine in drinke, if vehement pains vexe him. For this purpoſe aboue other things, which we haue reherſed in other places, the pils of *Alkakengi* with *opium* are good. Alſo theſe things following do much mitigate the pains of exulceration (that is) cucumber ſeede, mallowes, white poppy, *tragacanthe*, *amylum*, pine nuts and almonds. Therefore this medicine may be miniſtred. ℞. conſerue of violets. ℥. iij. ſeed of mallowes. ℥. ij. of the foure great cold ſeeds. ana. ℥. j. liquorace ſcraped. ℥. j. ß. gumme ℈. ij. bole armoniacke. ℥. ß trochiskes of *terra lemnia*. ℥. j. make them vp altogether with ſirupe of liquorice. Miniſter of it daily in the morning the quantity of an haſell nut. Moreouer you muſt throw into the bladder medicines that can ceaſe paine, and heale the exulceration.

To ceaſe paine.

CHAP. XLV.

Of the Strangurie.

DE STILLICIDIO VRINAE.

STranguria in Greeke, *ſtillicidium vrinæ* in Latine, is a diſeaſe whereas the vrine diſtilleth downe by drops, or by litle and litle and cauſeth a continuall prouoking & deſire to piſſe. This diſeaſe is cauſed through the ſharpnes of the vrine, or by exulceratiõ of the bladder, or by an impoſtume of the liuer, or the reins, which being broken & ſending the filth & atter to the bladder, through the ſharpnes thereof, it cauſeth continuall deſire to piſſe. You ſhall iudge that ſharpnes is the cauſe, if his vrines be cholerick, & alſo al the ſtate of the body, if the reſt of the ſignes betoken choler, & that gnawing do chaunce about the bladder. You may know the exulceration of the bladder, as alſo an impoſtume or bile of the liuer & the reins, by the ſignes afore reherſed in their owne proper chapters. If therefore the ſtrangury be cauſed through ſharpnes of the vrine, then you muſt purge the vicious and naughty humor, that doth abound, with all ſpeed. For the which purpoſe, beſides thoſe things which are ofté ſpoken of before, whey with *caſia fiſtula*, is maruellous good, or ſome other medicine that bringeth out choler. The cholerick humor being auoided & purged, the patient muſt vſe meats that be temperat, & that can ſtop the ſharpnes: as is iuice of ptyſan, mallows, purſlaine, violets, cucũber ſeed, & ſuch like. He muſt abſtaine from all things that be ſharpe or ſalt. Alſo let him eſchue wine, exerciſes, wrath, & ſlow eating: for all theſe things do heape vp choler in the body. Let him vſe ſtony fiſhes, & baths of ſweet water, which is wont to make temperat vicious humors maruelouſly. In drink you muſt miniſter much ſweet water hot, or the decoction of barley with ſirupe of violets, & roſes. But you may not giue him wine, as is ſaid, except it be ſweete and alaied with water. Alſo milke drunk hote, is the beſt thing that can be. To conclude for the order of his diet, he muſt vſe meats that do moiſten, & broths that do make the wombe ſoluble. But the ſicke muſt be cõpelled to piſſe continually: for if the ſharp dregs do tary lõg in the bladder, it gnaweth & exulcerateth it. Alſo to ſtop the ſharpnes of the humors, miniſter the medicin which we deſcribed in the end of the former

Στραγγουρία.

Cauſe.

Signa.

Curatio.

Victus

chapter. For the ſame purpoſe miniſter decoction of licorice, or this powder
Pulvis. following. ℞. of the ſeeds of melons husked, citrons, and cucumbers. ana. ℥. iij. ſeeds of gourds, purſlaine, & lettuſe. ana. ℥. ij. of red roſes. ℥. j. iuyce of licorice and of maſt. ana. ℥. j. ß. beat them all and make a fine powder: whereof giue daily the weight of ℥. j. ß. in the morning with ſirupe of licorice, or inleps of
Terebinthina reſina. violets or roſes. Alſo venice turpentine waſhed in roſe water or endiue water, & miniſter the quantity of a nut, or ſomtime two or three is maruellous good: for this (as Galen witneſſeth *lib. 5. de tuenda ſanitate*) doth not onely looſen the belly without hurt, and ſo by that meanes, turneth away the ſharpe humours from the paſſages of the vrine: but alſo it ſcoureth and cleanſeth the inward parts, and ſpecially the reines. And there hath bin ſome, that haue recouered health only by the vſe of this. Alſo cliſters made of the decoction of mallowes, violets, *althæa*, leaues of willow, water lillies, and other afore reherſed, putting
Cliſter. to them *caſia fiſtula*, ſuger, and oile of violets, and roſes do profit much. But if the ſharpnes do ſtill encreaſe, you muſt alſo caſt in by the yard into the bladder milke with *amylum*. Alſo for the ſame purpoſe, you may caſt in the decoction of white poppy, and you muſt annoint outwardly vpon the ſhare, and there abouts oiles of violets, & water lillies, putting to them a very litle of the iuice of purſlaine. But if the ſtrangury doeth chaunce through exulceration of the bladder, or through ſome other part of the body being euill affected, and ſo purging it ſelfe out by the vrine, then it is manifeſt that thoſe members ought firſt to be cured, but yet ſo that this preſent euill be not neglected. The cures of euery part you may ſeeke out in their proper places and chapters.

CHAP. XLVI.

Of difficultie of piſſing.

De Difficvltate Vrinae.

Αυσῦρία. Cauſa. Dysvria in Greeke, *vrinæ difficultatis*, it is a diſeaſe wherein the vrine is piſſed hardly and difficultly. It is cauſed through weaknes of the bladder, and through cold diſtempure of it which hurteth his actions. Alſo ſometime it is cauſed of groſſe and fleugmaticke humors which ſtop the necke of the bladder. *Signa.* You may know cold diſtempure if it come of an outward cauſe, by the patients telling, and by the thinnes and whitenes of the vrine. But if beſides the whitenes there appeare groſneſſe in the vrine, you may iudge it a fleugmatick *Cure of a cold diſtempure.* humour, which hath ſtopped the necke of the bladder, as is aforeſaid. Cold diſtempure is cured by thoſe things that do heat. Therefore he muſt vſe heating meats, and wine that is hote and condite. Alſo he muſt vſe medicines which prouoke vrine, as are parſeneps well ſodden, fennel, *apium*, ſperage, ſmalach, & ſuch like. Alſo crabs and hedgehogs do prouoke vrine very well. You muſt dry their fleſh and miniſter the weight of one ℥ in drinke. Alſo miniſter in drinke the decoctions of aromatique things, or electuaries made of them, and ſo named of them. Aboue other things the antidotes of *diacalaminthes*, *dialactia*, and *diacurcuma*, are very good. Alſo triacle giuen in drinke is maruellous good. You muſt nouriſh the ſhare without, with hote oiles, as is, oiles of rew, dill, lillies,
Fomenta. ſcorpions, and of *caſtoreum*. Alſo you muſt apply foments, and litle bags made of chammomill, ſothernwood, betony, mugwort, rewe, calamint, ſauein & ſuch like

eyles into the fundament. If a cold and fleugmatike humour do cause difficultie of pissing, then the patient must vse *oximell*, and decoctions of hysope, peniroiall, origan, time, and such like often before rehearsed. Also let him vse foments, irrigations, and litle bagges made of hot things, whereof we spake a litle before, and in the former chapters. Moreouer whether a grosse humour, or the stone, or a clod of bloud, or any other thing of that kind through stopping do let the passage of the vrine, it is good to put in a Cyring, vnlesse inflamation of the members do let it, whereof also we haue admonished before. *Cure of fleg. matick humor that stoppeth.*

CHAP. XLVII.

Of stopping of the vrine.

DE SVPPRESSIONE VRINAE.

ISCVRIA in Greeke, *suppressio vrine* in Latin, it is a disease, in the which the vrine of the patiēt is altogether letted & stopped. This disease is caused somtime through weaknes of the bladder, not being able to thrust out that which is contained in it. Also sometime it chanceth through stopping of the neather passage of the bladder, or of grosse humours, or of a stone congealed. Also it is wont to come either of an inflammation, or of hardnesse, or some swelling against nature, which maketh the passage straighter, or stoppeth it altogether. Also sometime it commeth by a litle peece of flesh, or a hard knob ingendred in the passage of the vrine. Also bloud congealed into clods in the bladder, is cause of the suppression & stopping of vrine. Also atter sent down to the bladder frō the reins, or the liuer, or from some other vpper part, causeth stopping of the vrine, euen like as a grosse and clammie humor doth. Also it chanceth sometime, through the dull sense of the bladder, that the vrine is not made, & yet it is without hurt of the vertue expulsiue, whē as his proper sinews be euill affected: so in haile folk whē the vrine is holdē long time, the bladder is stretched out, and the vrine is stopped. If the stopping of the vrine be caused thorough weaknes of the bladder, it is knowen by those signes which declare the cold distempure of the bladder. If it be caused of grosse humors, it is knowen by the diet that went before. As if one that liueth idlely, hath vsed much meats which do ingender grosse and clammie humours. If it be caused of the stone, you may know it by the signes which are rehearsed before in the chapter of the stone. If it be caused of inflammation, or of any other swelling, it is knowen by paine, by feuer and by sight. When suppression of the vrine is caused thorough some peece of flesh, or some knob, it may be knowen by the signes of vlcers aforesaid: and also because that a cyring being put in, the vrine commeth out. Also a cyring being put into that part of the conduite or passage, where you coniectured the byle to be before, it moueth paine, and the flesh being broken with the cyring, there followeth out with the pissing of the vrine, both bloud and fragments of flesh. If clodded bloud cause stopping of the vrine, there went before it excretion & pissing of bloud, or flux therof. When as atter hath stopped the vrine, you may know it by things that chance before for either the bladder or the reines laboured of some euill before, whereby such, & so much atter might gather: or there hath bene an impostume in some member aboue the reines, which being broken the atter is sent down into the *Ischuria. Causa.* *Signa.*

reines,& so into the bladder: the rest of the causes may be knowen by the patients telling. The cure is diuers according to the diuersity of causes For if the stopping of vrine be caused through imbecillitie & weaknesse of the bladder, you must minister and apply those things which do heat, as is said in the former chapter. For you must altogether remoue cold distempure, which letteth the actions of the bladder. If the withholding of vrine be ingendred of grosse and clammie humours, he must be cured by foments, incessions, and cataplasmes made of herbes that be hot, and that haue vertue to cut & diuide the humours, and with a diet of such like things. Besides those things which we haue rehearsed in the former Chapter of difficultie of pissing, this oyntment following is notably good, to take away the disease. ℞. of the oile of scorpions, oile of narde, and of lillies. ana. ℥.iij. gumme serapine, *bdellium*, and *oppoponax*. ana. ℈. goose grease, duckes grease. ana. ℥ ß. roote of *Enula campana*. ℈.ij. peniroiall, calamint. ana. ℈.ß. dissolue the gummes in wine, & with waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. Also you must throw into the bladder with a cyring, oyle of scorpions, or lillies, or some other thing that can dissolue, cut, & diuide clammie humors. If the vrine be stopped through the stone or clodded bloud: you must seeke the cure out of their proper chap. For the stone which hath stopped the passage of the vrine must be remoued out of his place as is taught before in the 41. chap but the clodded bloud must be dissolued, as is taught in the 42. chap. If the vrine be stopped through inflãmation, or some other swelling against nature, the cure must also be sought out of their owne proper chap. And if the vrine be stopped through some litle peece of flesh or hard knob, apply bathings and other dissoluing & loosening medicines & such as doe open and spread abroad the pipe and conduit of the vrine: examples whereof you may seeke out of the chap. of the stone in the reines. And if the vrine do not come out so, you must come to the vsing of a cyring, and by putting in of the instrument you must entice out the vrine. If the vrine be suppressed through the dull sence of the bladder, you must raise vp his action, by prouoking vrine, & you must helpe it by incessions, foments, and other hot medicines, which can take away his sleeping & dulnesse. But you must only eschue those things which prouoke vrine, least that through plentie of it, the bladder be stretched out, and so the contractiue vertue of it should be hurt. Moreouer you must entice out vrine with *nitrum*, or salt peter, or with a quicke louse, or with some other thing, that can stirre vp the vertue expulsiue of the bladder. In healthfull folke, when through some great busines the vrine is holden too long, and so hath made the bladder feeble, that it can not expell it out, then he must helpe himselfe thus. He must stand, so that the necke of the bladder may leane downeward, and must lay both his hands about his share, and he must presse it and thrust out the vrine by litle and litle, and thus may he doe also in the dull sence of the bladder aforesaid.

Curatio.

Cure if it be of weaknes of the bladder.

Cure if it be of grosse humors.

Vnguentum.

Cure if it be of the stone or clodded bloud.

Cure if it be of a peece of flesh or knobbe.

Cure if it be of the obtuse sence of the bladder.

Cure if it come in haile folke.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Of exulceration of the priuie members.

De Exvlceratione Pvdendi.

VLCERS ingendred in the priuie members without inflammation haue neede of medicines, which doe drie vp vehemently: such as these be,

paper

paper burned, drie dill burnt, and drie *Aloes* made into pouder, for you can scarcely find a more present remedie. Also the roote of *Aristolochia rotunda* doth bring present remedie to the exulceration of the priuie members. Also among compound medicines, that is the most effectuous and profitable. ℞. *Aloes epaticum*. ℥.ij. galles. ℥.j. dragons bloud, bolearmoniacke, tuttie. ana. ℥.j. rootes of *Aristolochia rotunda*. ℥ ß. mirrhe. ℈ j. of gumme arabicke. ℥.ij. alume burnt. ℥. ß. let all these be beaten, and make a fine pouder, and strew it vpon the exulcerate partes. But if the vlcers be very moyst and foule, first scoure them and clense them with *mulsa* well alayed, and then after with goats milke: which thing being done, vse the aforesaid pouder, or *lapis hæmatites*, or frankensence, or pomegranate ryndes, or *terra lemnia*, or such like beaten into pouder. If there chance inflammation together with the exulceration, you must first remoue the inflammation with linnen clothes wet in rosewater, or night shade, or purslaine water, or housleeke water, putting to it the white of an egge, and applying it to the diseased place. The rest of the remedies, seeke out of other Chapters.

Aloe arida.

Puluis optimus.

Abstertion of the vlcers.

CHAP. XLIX.

Of the continuall standing of the yard.

De Priapismo.

PRIAPISMVS (as Galen witnesseth in *Lib. 6. de male affectis locis. Cap. 6.*) is when the yarde is stretched out in length and in breadth, nothing prouoking the patient to lust and desire, nor no heat gotten. And if there chance to the yard panting or beating, then the euill is called *Satyriasis*. This euill is caused (as Galen doth witnesse in the place aforesaid) either through immoderate opening of the mouth of the arteries, or of some vaporous spirite ingendred in the hollow and fistulous sinow. But it followeth often after the gaping and opening of the mouthes of the arteries. For it is easier for them to stretch out wide, then for a fluuious and windie aire to ingender in the hollow sinow. For the loines being heat, it is reason that the arteries are made hotter, & that also their mouths should be wider opened. Therefore at that time, they send out no small substance of spirite or aire into the hollow sinow, which being a litle filled, it stretcheth out the yard, so that all his powre doth seeme to consist in the hollow sinow. Sometime this euill chanceth to them which haue abstained long time frō carnal copulation contrary to their custome. And this thing chanceth specially to them, that do abound with much bloud, and do not studie to disperse the abundance of bloud with much exercise. They that labour of this disease be grieued, as those be, which be taken with distention & stretching out of the sinows: for the yard being puffed vp, and stretched out, suffereth as it were a crampe. They that haue this conuulsion or crampe, doe quickly perish, vnlesse helpe be vsed to them by and by: and when they die their belly is puffed vp, and their sweat is cold. The cure is diuers according to the diuersitie of causes: for if the disease do chance through gaping of the mouthes of the arteries, & so through the heat of them, by & by it is good to let bloud by cutting of a veine; which thing also you shall doe, when this euill taketh them which abound with bloud, & haue abstained long time from car-

Priapismus.

Satyriasis.

Causa.

Curatio.

nall copulation, contrary to their custome. And you must cut the blacke veine which is called *media* or *mediana*, the middle veine of the armes. Also he must vse a thinne dyet, and abstaine from wine. Giue him but litle meate made of corne, and that which doth ingender no winde at all, and that causeth thirst, and it is good for him to vse to drinke water: exercises & frictions or rubbings are well applied and vsed to dissolue and disperse the spirits or ayre. Also it is good to goe about emptying by vomiting. Also if the wombe be costiue and bound, you must make it soluble with a cyster, that is not very sharpe, as that is which is made of the decoction of beetes, mallowes & mercury. You must altogether abstaine from purging medicines, least that the humors should be drawne downeward. For the same cause also, he must eschue those things which haue vertue to prouoke vrine. To conclude, you must altogether labour & study to minister those medicines which can void & empty the abundance, and draw vpward, & so turne the humours from the priuie members. And if the euill endure long, fasten cupping glasses with scarification. And if there be fulnes apply horse leeches. But you must lay vpō the loines, those things which do euidently coole, as is, nightshade, purslaine, henbane, & singreene. Also you must of necessitie annoint the yard, and the space betweene the fundament & the yard, with some iuice or water of herbes that do coole gently. If a cerate made of fine oyle of roses, washed often in cold water applyed as well to the yard, as also to the loynes, it doth notably well. The making of this cerate which is called *ceratum liquidum*, is taught of Galen. lib. 1. *de simplicium medicamentorum facultate.* cap. 6. Also this cerat is good. ℞. white waxe washed tenne times in cold water. quar. j. purslaine. ℥ ij commixe them together and bring them into the forme of a cerate. To be short, apply, and also minister in drinke those medicines which can extinguish and quench seede: of the which we will speake abundantly in the next chap. Moreouer it is hurtfull for him to rest, lying vpright, but he must lie on his side. He must altogether be kept from sightes and stories, and rehearsing of those things which pertaine vnto lecherie. If this disease chaunce of a vaporous and windie spirite, or aire ingendred in the hollow sinow, all your whole cure must be turned to the dispersing and dissoluing of it. Therefore you must turne backe to the chapters of curing of inflammation, and windinesse of the stomacke, and to the cure of the windie cholicke: for there you shall find plentie of remedies.

Clyster.

The summe of the cure.

CHAP. L.

Of shedding of sperme.

De Seminis Profluvio.

Γονορροια.

Cause.

GONORRHAEA in Greeke, *seminis profluuium* in Latin, it is excretion and shedding of seed or sperme against the patients will, and without sicknes of the yard. It is caused through imbecillitie and weaknesse of the retentiue vertue in the vesselles conteyning the sperme: or through some other disease that moueth the partes of the vesselles of sperme, after that sort, as the expulsiue vertue doth, according to nature: as in the falling sickenesse it chanceth sometime, and in other violent conuulsions and crampes. Also sometime it is caused through fluxe of the spermaticke vessels. The seede that sheddeth out,

is

is waterie thinne without appetite of carnall copulation: and for the most part without feeling of it, but sometime it cõmeth out with certaine pleasure. They that haue this disease, their whole body corrupteth by litle and litle, and waxeth leane, specially about the loynes: and there followeth much weakenesse, not for the multitude of seede, but for the principalitie of the places. And if it come out (the yard not standing) there followeth imbecillitie and weaknes of the retentiue vertue in the spermaticke vessels. But if it commeth out (the yard standing) the griefe is somewhat like a conuulsion, or cramp. This disease chanceth not only to mẽ, but also to women, & in womẽ it is hard to cure. The cure of this disease is cõmon with those cures that are ministred in euery flux. First therefore you must keepe the sicke in quietnesse, with litle meat, & with drinking of water. Then also you must couer the places about the share and priuities, and the loynes with wooll wet in oyle of roses and in wine, or in oile of blossomes of apples, or of quinces. Also sponges wet in *Posca* applyed are not hurtfull. The dayes following you must vse cataplasmes, emplaisters, and ointments, made of vine branches, quinces, *acatia*, *hypocisthis*, sumach, and such like afore rehearsed. Also he must vse restrictiue incessions made of decoctiõs of bryer, plantaine, mirtles and such other like. These things must be sodden in austere and sharpe wine, or also in water. Let him vse meats which are hard to corrupt, and that are difficultly chaunged, and that haue power to drie vp. Also you must giue him with his meates and drinke, the seede of *Agnus castus*, and of hempe, specially rosted. Also the seedes and leaues of rew, the seede and stalke of lettuce, and the roote of water lillies. In drinke minister daily, in steede of common water, the water wherein yron hath often bene quenched. To be short he must eschue the vsing of sharpe things, and drinking of much wine, and eating of pottage, and all his whole diet must be appointed of such things, as do drie vp & restraine. And you must minister such medicines as do extinguish and quench seede, as is tutsan seede tosted and rubbed: also the leaues and floures of it are said to restraine lecherie, not onely when they are eaten, but also when they are taken in drinke, or strewed vnder one. Purslaine eaten, and lettuce seede drunke, and the roote and seede of water lillies taken in meat, doe extinguish the seede by cooling of it. But rew eaten corrupteth and destroyeth the seede with his heate. They which eate calamint continually, do loose the power of generation, and likewise the seede of white violets doth the same. But smithes water, in which iron is often quenched, being continually drunke, doth diminish the seed without any griefe. Moreouer of these simples before rehearsed, you may compound and make diuers remedies. And specially this pouder is good: ℞. of the pouders of *diacuminum*, *diacalaminthes*. ana. ℥. j. ß. seede of tutsan and rew. ana. ℥. j. calamint. ℥. ij. seede of lettuce and purslaine. ana. ℥. j. sugar, the weight of them all: commix them together and make a fine pouder, whereof minister. ℥. j or ℥. j. ß. infused in foure wine. Also it is counted notable, to lay a plate of lead, vpon the loynes, for it is wont to coole much. To those which can not suffer hardnesse of lead, you must giue counsell, that they strew vnder them some of the aforesaid herbes dried: for the which purpose aboue other things, vine leaues, rew, calamint, & roses are praysed: for these profit, & besides that they hurt not the reines. For vehe-

Signa.

Curatio.

To extinguish seede.

Trituræ.

Lamina Plumbea.

ment cold things being applyed to the loines, do hurt the reines. Also let not his bed be soft, and let him lie for the most part vpō his side, eschuing vpright lying, lest thereby the arteries of the loynes should wax hot. After that the disease hath dured a while, you must commit the sicke to exercises, whereby the whole body, and specially the diseased parts, may be confirmed and strengthned. Also it shalbe good, if nothing else do let it, to vse cold bathing and washings, which is wont to driue away all the griefe ingendred of flux: and that specially if the water be indewed with any medicinable qualitie. Also it is good at certaine times to vse those things that do rubifie and blister, & that can fetch out from the depth and bottome, vnto the top of the skinne. Moreouer the patient must exclude all thought belonging to carnall copulation.

CHAP. LI.

Of the losse of carnall copulation.

DE IIS QVI RE VENEREA VTI NON POSSVNT.

Cause. THey which be maried, and cannot vse the act of generation, because of the sluggish impotencie and weakenesse of their members, comming of a cold distempure wherwith they be vexed, or of some other cause: such ought to exercise the neather partes, and to vse meats that doe heat and engender good humours: as is the flesh of hennes, capons, partrich, feasantes, young doues, birdes of mountaines, and specially sparrowes, cockes stones and such like. Not onely good nourishing meates, but also windie meates are good for him, as be chiche peason, beanes, scalions, leekes, the root and seede of parsneps, pine nuts, sweete almondes, rape rootes and such other like. Also the egges of partriches do stirre vp carnall lust. Let the patient sleep in a soft bed, and let him read things that do stirre vp lust, or let him heare them read. Let his priuie members be continually chafed and rubbed with oyles, ointments and other heating medicines. For which purpose vse this ointment following.

Diet.

Curatio.

Vnguentum. ℞. oyle of lillies. ℥ j. ß. oyle of *castoreum*. ℥. ß. pepper, nigella, pellitorie. ana. ℈. j. mirrhe, ℥. ß. *Euphorbium* gran. iij. wax as much as is sufficient, & make an ointment. And also he must vse medicines, which do engender plentie of sperme, and can heat. Among simple medicines, these that follow do chiefly stirre vp carnall lust, as be rocket, mustard seede, garden cresses, nettle seede, roote of Aron, & pepper, *satyrion orminum*, annise, squill, *orchis*, called also *testiculus canis*, whose greateste round root drunke with milke doth prouoke stiffenesse of the yarde, but the lesse roote thereof drunke with water doth slake the stiffenesse therof: also fennell & dill are good. The stones of a Fox dried, beaten to pouder and drunke, do cause a stiffenesse of the member, not hurtfull nor vaine. Also the parts of scinces which embrace the reines, are drunke to raise a stiffenesse of the yard. Moreouer burne the drie pissell of an hart and minister ℥ j. of it with pure wine. Among compounds it is good to vse this medicine.

Simples to prouoke carnall lust.

Antidotum liquidum. ℞. *Dianthos, pliris arcoticon, diagalangæ* ana. ℥. iij *diasatyrion*. ℥. vj. pine nuts, sweete almondes, *pistax*. ana. ℥. ij. *satyrium*. ℥. j. roote of Aron. ℈. j. seedes of rocket, nettles, and garden cresses. ana. ℥. j. ß. *scincus*. ℥ ß. *nux indica*. ℥. j. of long pepper and ginger. ana. ℥. j. ß. pouder of harts pissell. ℈. j. sirupe of mintes, and sugar as much as is sufficient, and make an electuarie, wherof minister before supper

or

or fasting the quantitie of one drachme, or two alone, or in good wine.

CHAP. LII.

Of bursting or ruptures.

De Ramice.

Cele in Greeke, *ramex* & *hernia* in Latin, the barbarous writers call it *rup-tura*. It is caused diuers wayes, and thereupon it hath diuers names. For if the *Peritonæum* doe breake, and the bowelles fall downe into the coddes, it is called in Latin, *ramex intestinorum*: that is, the rupture of the bowels. But when the bowels doe cleaue or stay aboue the priuie members, it is called in Latin *ramex inguinis*: that is, the rupture aboue the priuie members. And if any quiet and waterie humour be gathered in any part of the filmes, or skinnes of the coddes, it is called in Latin, *ramex aquosus*: that is waterie rupture. When there groweth hard flesh, with in the coates and tunicles of the stones, it is called in Latin *ramex carnosus*, that is a fleshie rupture. To be short, the kindes of ruptures euer take their names of the things that doe fill vp the coddes. As if the call or filme that lappes in the bowels, do fall downe into the coddes, it is called in Latin *ramex ormenti*: that is the rupture of the filme. And if the bowels do slip downe also with it, it is called in Latin *ramex armenti & intestini*: that is, the rupture of the filme and the bowels. So when the veines which nourish the stones be spread abroad and swollen out of measure on heapes, it is called *ramex varicosus*: that is the rupture of the swollen veines. The rupture of the bowels, and of the parts aboue the priuie members, are caused either because the *Peritonæum*, is stretched out more then it ought to be, or because it is broken. Both these do chaunce through some violent occasion going before, as a stroke, or leaping, or crying, or by taking vp of a great weight. A waterie rupture is caused sometime of a secret cause, and sometime of a manifest cause. Of a secret cause, as when the vessels that are ioyned together be increased in the coddes, & then a waterie humour mixed with bloud is driuen downe to those partes, and resteth there. Of a manifest cause, as when through some blow or stroke, the vessels breake and slide downe: and then bloud flowing downe thither to nourish them, it is chaunged into a waterie and wheyish substance. A fleshie rupture is ingendred of a secret cause, as through the stone, being without fluxe & waxing hard, of a stripe, or by ill curing after the cutting of a rupture. The causes of the other ruptures are euident by their descriptions. The signes both of the rupture of the bowels, & the rupture about the priuy members are cõmon. For there is a manifest swelling in the cods, or about the priuie mẽbers, which appeareth greater, then it did before in exercises, iourneys, holding of the breath & such like occasions: being thrusted together, it goeth back againe slowly, and it rouleth downe again quickly. The particular signes whereby ruptures that come when the *Peritonæũ* is but stretched out, be these: that the bowels fall downe not for a long time together, but for a short space & for very litle cause, the swelling appeareth equall & deepe, the bowels that fall down being staied with the *Peritonæum*. The proper signes of a rupture that commeth when the *Peritonæum* is broken, are, that the bowels fall downe vniuersally from the beginning of the rupture, and that onely through violent

Κήλη. *Ruptura.*

Ramex intestinorum. Enterocele

Ramex inguinis.

Ramex aquosus. hydrocele

Ramex carnosus. sarcocele

Ramex ormẽti, & plo

Ramex ormenti intestiníque.

Ramex varicosus.

Causæ.

Signa.

Herocele et epiplocele præter tumor non fit nisi resupino intestina et omentum ante vel blando digitorũ impulsu remeant; illa vrgitu et flatulento murmure, hoc is et molli sono. Hydrocele et sarcocele tumor epplectus, nec impulsus in abdominis tatem cedit; hæc mollior illa dureior.

cauſes: the ſwelling is of a wonderfull greatneſſe, inequall, and it ſheweth ſtreight way ſticking out in the skinne, becauſe the bowelles are fallen out of the *Peritoræum*. The cómon ſignes of a watterie rupture be theſe: ſwelling that is without paine, and firme, & permanent in the coddes, not vaniſhing by any occaſion: but in them that haue but a litle of the humour it giueth place, and in them that haue not ſo much of it, not ſo. And when there is a watterie humour in the coddes, the ſwelling ſhineth of the ſame colour that the humour is, as like dregges, or bloud, or rubicund, or ſwart. And when theſe ſignes appeare in both ſides of the coddes, it betokeneth that there is a double rupture. There followeth after a fleſhie rupture, hardneſſe, and a colour alwayes like vnto it. But if the ſwelling doe encreaſe into a hardneſſe or kernell, then there is neither colour, nor ſenſe, nor feeling. But if the humour be of a wicked nature, then pricking paine doth vexe him. The rupture of the bowels, & of the parts about the priuy members, be cured in this wiſe. You muſt lay the patient vpright and ſeparate his legges, and then put vp the bowels by litle and litle: and when they are put vp, you muſt keepe them vp with conuenient truſſes, and ligamentes. But if the places adioyning to the coddes, or to the place about the priuie members, be grieued with inflammation and moſt grieuous paines, and that there come with it frettings and windines, and ſo thereby the bowels be made diſobedient to go vp againe, then you muſt vſe and apply fomentes, liniments and bathes, which haue vertue to mollifie and to ceaſe paine and inflammation, & to diſperſe windines: as thoſe things be which be made of mallowes, cammomill, dill, lineſeede, fenugreeke, carawayſeede, aniſeſeede, comin, and ſuch like. Alſo nouriſh the places that be vexed with paine, with woolle that is moyſt, dipped in wine and oyle. When the bowels are put vp againe into their places, you muſt go about, that they may be kept vp ſtill, with conuenient truſſes and bandes: applying to it firſt, reſtrictiue or glutinatiue cerates, or emplaiſters, as this is. ℞. ſhip pitch, maſticke. ana. ℥. iij. frankenſence. ℥. ij. *hypociſchis*, *ſarcocoll*, *acatia*. ana. ℥. j. ß. *lapis hæmatitis*, dragons bloud. ana. ℥. ij. bolearmóniacke, rootes of comfory, galles, pomegranate rindes. ana. ℥. iij. miſſle of the oake. ℥. j. ß. of either *Ariſtolochia*. ℥. ij. ſumache, pomegranate floures. ana. ℥. j. goates tallow. ℥. ij turpentine and waxe as much as is ſufficient: diſſolue the gummes firſt in vineger or wine, and make a cerate, and put it in a weathers skinne, and apply it binding it faſt, and doe not looſe it before the ſeuenth day. Alſo in the meane ſeaſon let the ſicke tarie thirtie daies in his bed, and let him abſtaine from windie meates, and from much drinking of wine, from vehement mouing, running, leaping, crying loud and ſuch other like. And in the meane ſeaſon let him drinke this decoction. ℞. both the kinds of *ſanicula*, of *ſolidago ſaracenica*, or *conſolida ſaracenicæ*, *ophioglóſſum*, pedelion, agrimonie, *numularia*. ana. *M*. j. knotgraſſe, *clematis daphnoides*, great plantaine, burnet. ana. *M*. ß. roote of comferie, hounds tong. ana ℥. ß. roote of the ſixth kind of *geranium*. ℥. vj ſeedē of mirtles. ℥. iij. pomegranate floures. ℥. ij. leaues of laurell. ℥. j. ß. boile theſe in red wine and water of iuſt quantitie till the third part be conſumed. Then ſtraine it & by putting to it ſugar, make the liquor of the decoction ſweete, and purifie it, and make a ſweete potion, whereof miniſter dayly in the morning. ℥. iiij. Alſo you muſt take

Cure of the ruptures of the bowels and of the inguen.

Ceratum.

Diet.

A glutinatiue decoction.

Prunella.

take very good heed, that the belly waxe not costiue: for if he be constrained to labour much, when he should go to the stoole, the bowels will slide downe againe. Also he must vse apt and conuenient deligatures and trusses, as be admonished before. And he must vse them specially at such time as occasion and necessity of moving requireth it. A watery rupture must be cured by such medicines, as do heate and drie vp, as be beane meale, laurell berries, lineseede, *daucus*, *althæa*, *nigella*, and such other like, which we haue rehearsed in the chapter of the dropsie *Ascites*, and other dropsies. To conclude: as for the cure of these ruptures, or any other by surgerie, let it be sought out of *Paulus Ægineta*, *libro sexto*, chapter 62. where he treateth of it abundantly: for it is not our intent to treat therof in these bookes: therefore we will proceed to the diseases of the wombe.

To cure a waterie rupture.

CHAP. LIII.

Of stopping of menstruis.

De Svppressis Mensibvs.

Cause.

In whom the floures are naturally stopped.

THE menstruis of women are suppressed and stopped in them either naturally or against nature. If they be naturally stopped you shall knowe it chiefly by this: because the woman thereby is vexed with no griefe of the whole body, nor yet of the wombe. Also you shall haue a respect to the age, for in many the floures begin to flow the fourteenth yeare, & in very few before the thirteenth or twelfth yeare. And to most women they burst out after the fourteenth yeare. For the most part, the purging endureth for two or three daies, to many fiue daies, in some it endureth vnto the seuenth day. The menstruis also do stoppe in some the fiftie yeare, or the fiftie fiue yeare, and they flow not vntill the sixtie yeare, but in few women. Also barraine women and dauncers, are not naturally purged: for whatsoeuer excrement is in them, it is consumed by the vehemencie of exercises. And to be short, women of a hote temperature, that be wilde, and do vse strong exercise, they purge out litle or nothing. But many times the menstruis are wont to be suppressed and stopped against nature, either through ouer much grossenesse, or slendernesse. For fat folke are more without bloud, then other folke, and they haue lesse and streighter veines, and that litle bloud which is in them, turneth almost all into fat. But they that are leane & slender which be wasted with some continuall sickneſſe, they haue no superfluous bloud in them. Moreouer the menstruis doe not flowe in them, whose bloud is either grosse or clammie, or if it be sent to some other part of the bodie, and purged out, as for example, if it goe out at the nose, or at the fundament. Also in some that haue cast out much bloud from the breast, the menstruis are stopped, and in some, because much bloud hath gone out of a veine being cut. Also other kind of emptyings haue often done the same thing, as aboundant sweating, continuall vomiting, fluxes of the belly, and all kindes of pustules and wheales which budde out of the skinne. Besides the causes now rehearsed, oftentimes the menstruis are withholden through great and sharpe sicknesses, & through aboundance or scarcitie of foode. For of litle foode, that litle doth expirate and breath out streight, and of much foode the passages are stopped, and the excretion

In whom the floures are stopped against nature.

and voyding out of the menstruis is preuented and letted. And for those causes the menstruis are specially suppressed and stopped, the whole bodie being euill affected. Also they are in like manner withholden and stopped, when the wombe it selfe is afflicted with a particular disease or vice: which thing chaunceth to the wombe sometime through hote or cold distempure of the same. Also many times the purgation of the menstruis is letted thorough hardnesse ingendred in the mouth of the matrice, or through some excrescence and growing vp of a peece of flesh, or also through aboundant fatnesse. Also to some by and by in the beginning, certaine filmes or thinne skinnes ingender about the necke or entrie of the matrice. To other some the scarres of vlcers, which haue beene before in the wombe, haue stopped the mouthes of the vessells, which caried bloud into the wombe. To some after the aborsion of the wombe, (the mouth of it being exulcerate, and afterward healed and brought to a scarre) there commeth conioyning and compaction of it, which besides that it letteth all other transpirations of the wombe, it also stoppeth the excretion and voyding out of bloud. Moreouer stubburne carefulnesse, immoderate feare and great sorrow do stop the menstruis. There followeth suppression and stopping of the menstruis, heauinesse of the whole bodie, desire to vomit, abhorring of meate, and certaine terrible discursions, such as chance to those that haue conceiued. Moreouer there be paines about the loynes, thighes, necke, the hinder part of the eyes, and the forepart of the head. Also there follow continuall feauers, and blackish vrine, with certaine red atter, and filth in them, euen like as one should mixe soote with the water wherein new killed flesh hath lately beene washed. Also to many either the vrine doth come forth difficultly or else it is stopped altogether. The diuersitie of causes is knowen partly by the dispositiō of the whole bodie, and partly also and for the most part, by the telling of the patient. Women may know a cold distempure in themselues, by these signes specially, because they be more sleepie and slower to all kind of mouing, and whiter of colour, and as it were of a leadie colour. Moreouer their vrine is waterie & such like signes appeare, which are often rehearsed before. The tokens of hote distempure are cleane contrarie to these signes of a cold distempure before rehearsed. Signes of fulnesse, besides those that may be gathered out of the former chapters, are wont specially to be these: that womē, that are vexed therwith, are grieued most in the time of the menstruis, and they feele vehement paine, about the loynes and the priuie members, and their veines are swolne vp very great. The cure is diuers according to the diuersitie of causes. For if a cold distempure of the liuer or wombe do stoppe the flowing of menstruis, it must be cured and driuen away with contraries: that is, with meate and medicines that doe heate. Therefore you must giue vnto them hote meates, and wine that is yellow, odoriferous and old. Also you must prescribe to them exercises, and you must minister other things which can helpe the bodie. Aboue other, these things that follow are good, penitoiall, time, calamint, sothernewood, diptaine, root of *yris*, *casia*, gladon, *asarum*, and saueine: of which you may make decoctions and foments. Also you must minister vnto them fasting, after a bath, pure wine hote. Also the meet & conuenient times to take these medi-

Signa.

Cold distemper

Hot distemper

Plenitudo.

Curatio.

Cure of a cold distemper.

medicines be, first, if the patient drinke straight way, when the time of purgation is at hand: secondarily, if she drinke straight after a bath, fomentation, or annoynting, that the medicine helping the bodie being yet hote and loose, may shew his strength and effect the more easily and effectually. Women that be too hote and vse much exercise haue no need of curing: for it were better to the safegard of their proper health, to prescribe them such a diet, whereby their bodies should be so dried, that the menstruis should not neede to be purged: but this were against conception: for they doe not conceiue which be not purged. Therefore for conceptions sake, and for because that almost all women keepe an vndiscreete dyet, purgations be necessarie. Therefore it is good also to adioyne the cure, whereby the menstruis, that are stopped thorough hote distempure, may be brought out. Women therefore, that be hot, and vse many exercises, must chiefly be made moyster by moyst meates and drinkes taken in good quantitie, as be soupings of ptysans, and of *Alica*, and meates that are made of lambes flesh, kiddes flesh, and fishes that be tender, birdes of mountaines, & milke. Let their pot herbes be lettuce and gourdes, & their frute, new figges. They must vse white wine, that is not very old, and let it be alayed. Also bathes of sweete water are good, and to conclude, the diet ascribed to them that haue the feauer Ethicke, is to be prescribed to these. If the menstruis be withholden and stopped by reason of the fulnes that vexeth the woman, and if nothing else do let it, you must begin the cure with letting of bloud. And you must cut the veines of the anckles or of the hammes: and that not before the accustomed time of the menstruis. Neither will it be vnprofitable, if cupping glasses be fastened to the legges. The bloud being emptied, minister potions which can prouoke menstruis, and apply fomentations, bathes, and annoyntings of other things which we will describe hereafter. But if there be no fulnesse, but only grosse and flegmaticke humours do stop the flowing of the menstruis: First you must minister medicines which can cut and diuide the aforesaid humours, and preparate them, and make them easier to be expelled and purged out: as is this decoction ℞. the roots of gladon, *yreos*, parsley and sperage. ana. ℥.j. of the seedes of *apium*, fennell, *bruscus*, annise, *daucus*, ammi, and nettles. ana. ℥.j calamint, wormwood ana. *M.* ß origan, sothernwood, mugwort, peniroiall, *asarum*. ana. *M.* j. hysope. *M.* j. ß. chosen cinnamon. ℥. j. seeth all these in a conuenient quantitie of water, vntill the third part be consumed: then streine it and make the licour of that decoction sweete with sugar, & clarifie it with the white of an egge, putting into it of the sirups of calamint, of hysope, and of horehound. ana. ℥. j. ß. & make a potion, whereof minister daily in the morning the weight of ℥ iiij. When that decoction is drunke vp, minister some purging medicine: as is, *hierapicra*, *diaphanicon*, and *electuarium nidum*, pilles of agaricke, of *benedicta*, or such like. After purging the patient must vse exercises, and frictions of the neather partes, and specially walkings. Moreouer apply fomentations, and bathings made of cammomill, motherwort, mintes, and other things rehearsed in the decoction abouesaid. Also annoint the patient with this oyntment. ℞. of the oyles of lillies, and rew. ana. ℥.j. motherwort with the thinne leaues, peniroiall, calamint. ana. ℈.j. root of *yreos*. ℈.ij. hisope, origan. ana. ℈.iij. with wax as much as is suffi-

Cure of hote distemper.

Cure of fulnes.

Purgatio.

Exercise.

Foments.

Vnguentum.

cient, make an ointment. After this, for the cause aboue said, minister medi-
To prouoke menstruis. cines, which can streight way prouoke and bring foorth the menstruis being stopped, such as these be: mirrhe, *castoreum*, laurell berries, madder, pepper, sage, rew, saueine, *casia*, and such other, which be rehearsed before of vs. This
A notable medicine. medicine is notable good. ℞ *castoreum* ℥.j. wild mintes beaten into pouder. ℥. ß. old wine, or *mulsa* ℥ iiij. commix them together, and minister it hote after a bath. Also the decoction of peniroiall, mugwort, rew, comin, *daucus*, sage, dill, *ammeos*, fennell, *enula campana*, and such like are good. Also calamint beaten into pouder, the weight of ℥.ij. or saueine, the weight of ℥.j. drunke in wine or *mulsa*, is very good. Moreouer trochiskes of mirrhe do maruellously profit. Also wine wherein wormewood hath bene infused or sodden, must be drunke all the time of the cure. Also you must vse to put pessaries into the wombe, if that
Pessus. necessitie so require it, such as this is. ℞. of *Triphera magna*, that is without *opium*. ℥.j. of the meale of *ernum*, *nigella*, mather, mugwort, peniroyall. ana. ℈. j. ß. iuice of rew. ℥.ij. commixe them together & make a pessarie, and put it in with
Alius. woll or cotten. Or this pessarie. ℞. mirrhe, *bdellium*, storax. ana. ℥.j. calamint, sothernwood, and wormewood. ana ℥.j.ß. roots of gladon and mather. ana. ℥. j. seede of *nigella*, drie rew, laurell berries. ana. ℈ ij. saueine. ℈. j. *castoreum*. ℈.ß. beate all these to fine pouder, and commix them with hony or *Triphera*, or *mithridatum*, and make pessaries to put into the womans priuities. Also you must cast into the wombe hote oyles, as is oiles of *yreos*, lillies, laurell and such like.
Suffitus. Also it is good to vse suffumigations made of Storax, *galbanum*, frankensence, *bdellium*, the roote of *Aristolochia*, mugwort, cloues, cinnamon and such like. Examples whereof you shall find in our booke of making of medicines. Moreouer the wombe must be euaporated, and fomented with odoriferous things, as with marioram, sauorie, calamint, cammomill, peniroiall, mugwort, root of *yreos*, and such like sodden in a pot, which you must couer with a couering that hath a hole bored through it, wherein you must put a reed or some other pipe, and you must annoynt it round about aloft, that the woman sitting thereon, may be fomented with it. Also it will profit, if the woman sit in this decoction
Cure of fat women. vp to the nauell, and after receiue the pessaries before rehearsed. Fat women must be cured with a diet that can extenuate, and with swift exercises, and with other medicines which can make the bodie slender and leane: as be continuall deiection and solution of the belly, ointments that haue vertue to euaporate and breath out, and such like, which be aboundantly intreated of by
Cure of leane women. Galen *Lib.* 14. *Ther. meth. Cap.* 15. *& lib.* 6. *de tuenda sanitate.* Those which are not purged of their menstruis, through leanenesse of the body, whether it chance through sickenesse, or any other meanes, you must first recreate, and refresh them, and restore the flesh of their bodies by a conuenient dyet, and by other medicines, which Galen rehearsed in the places aforesaid. And if they waxe fleshie, there is good hope that the menstruis will burst out by their owne accord, which if they do not come forth alone, then you shall prouoke them by
Cure if it be of vice of the wombe. potions, foments, and other medicines aboue rehearsed. If the menstruis doe not flowe, because of some disease and vice of the wombe, first you must cure the euill, that is caused of the stopping of the menstruis: & after that, we must proceede to the prouocation and purging of the menstruis. The cure of the

disease

disease of the wombe, must be sought out of their proper places.

CHAP. LIIII.

Of flowing of menstruis.

DE REDVNDANTIBVS MENSIBVS.

WE say, that menstruis doe redound and ouerflow in women, when that great plentie of them do flow out longer then the accustomed time of their purgation. There is no iust or certaine time of their purgation: for to most women they flow two or three daies, to many fiue dayes, and to some seuen daies. The menstruis doe chaunce to flow out of measure, through great or small vessels opened wide, or broken. Also immoderate purgations doe engender in women, somtime through grieuous trauaile in childbirth, which also do cease oftentimes of themselues. Oftentimes after aborsion, they labour of a vehement aborsion, & fluxe of menstruis, & sometime it bringeth thē into a daungerous perill. If the greater vessels be broken or open, the bloud floweth out gushing on heapes: but if the lesser be open, it floweth out by litle and litle, and not in great quantitie. If it be caused through eating or gnawing, it doth not onely flow by litle and litle, but also it floweth with very great paine. Moreouer when the menstruis flow immoderatly, there followeth a filthy colour, the feete are puffed vp with a light swelling, the strēgth of the body is decayed, both the digestion and appetite of meat is corrupted: and in all points such signes, as are wont to follow immoderate voyding of bloud, either by the hemorhoides, or by any other fluxe of bloud doe follow in this disease. First therefore in the beginning of the cure, you must bind the places betwene the ioints, and the extreme parts of the body with bands, beginning at the armeholes and the shares. Also you must fasten great cupping glasses lightly vnder the paps, as *Hyppocrates* teacheth. 5. *Aphor.* 50. Also they must vse meates and drinkes, that be sharpe and restrictiue, as is rice and such like: and let the sick rather eate rosted meates, then sodden: and specially such flesh, as is of nature able to drie vp, as be birdes that liue in mountaines, and wilde beastes. They must abstaine from mouing, and winde, and in steed of it they must vse some restrictiue potion, or *posca*, not cold but warme. Moreouer you must minister restrictiue medicines in drinke, as these simples be following. ℞. pomegranate floures, *hypocistchis*, *acatia*, corall, *Lycium*, *terra lemnia*, galles, knotgrasse, both the *Consolidaes*, the stone *hematites*, shels of mast, plantaine, barberies and such like. Compound medicines be these following, as syrups of roses, mirtles, trochiskes of ambre, and of *terra lemnia*. Also these pilles following are maruelous good to stop and restraine the menstruis. ℞. *terra lemnia*, bolearmoniack, frankensence, masticke, galles. ana. ℈.ij. dragons bloud, the stone *hematites*, ana ℈.j. harts tongue burnt. ℥.j. *hypocistchis*, *acatia*, red corall. ana. ℥.ß. pomegranate floures, red roses. ana ℈.ij. Ambre. ℈.j. cōmix them with syrup of mirtles, and meke pilles whereof minister the weight of one drachme or ℥ ß. Also foment the place outwardly, with the oiles of roses, mirtles, quinces, and sharpe wine. And apply oyntments, emplaisters, and cerates and restrictiue Epithemes, whereof you shall find many before in the chapters of the fluxes, *Dysenteria*, *Diarrhea*, and *Lienteria*. Also incessions made of the decoctions of the

Causa.

Signa.

Curatio.

To restraine menstruis.

Catapotia.

Insessus.

aforesaid medicines be good. Also you must vse such medicines, as are cast into the wombe with an instrument. For the which purpose iuice of plantine is maruellously commended, wherewith Galen sayth, in foure dayes, he stopped a fluxe of the wombe, that could be stopped with no other medicine. The quantitie that must be throwne in, should be the measure of one cyath. Of the same effect be the iuices of knotgrasse, or nightshade, or *hypocistbis*, or *acatia*, or such like cast in. Also the vsing of Pessaries is not to be despised: among which this is specially praysed. ℞. of frankensence, pomegranate floures, and galles. ana. ℥. j. of gumme arabicke, *acatia*, ambre, harts horne burnt, ana. ℥. ij. bolearmoniacke. ℈. ij. beate all these to fine pouder, and mixe it with wooll dipped in oile of roses, and put it into the wombe.

Pessulus.

CHAP. LV.

Of womans fluxe.

De Fluore Muliebri.

VTERI *fluor*, in Latin, *fluxe* of the matrice in English, is a continuall distillation, and flowing out for a long time, of the whole body, purging it selfe. That which is voided out, doth represent such forme and colour, as the humour that doth abound in the bodie. For some is red, as bloud putrified, or attre: some white, which commeth of fleume: some is pale, which signifieth choler: and some is waterie which is, of a wheyish matter. And if pure bloud come foorth, as in the cutting of a veine, you must take good heede, that some erosion and gnawing be not ingendred in the wombe. By these signes following the fluxe is knowen. The places are continually moyst with the humours, being diuers in colours. The patient is ill coloured, she sauoureth no meat but abhorreth it, in walking she breatheth difficultly, her eyes be swollen, sometime with paine, and sometime without paine, or with exulceration or without it, and either with an inflammation, that is with the vlcer, or else it is filthy or pure. The diuersitie of causes you may knowe by the colour of that that floweth foorth as is aforesaide. And if a woman be vexed with a red fluxe, in the beginning, if age and other things will suffer it, you must come to letting of bloud. For many incommodities would follow, if you should first goe about to represse and stop the rage and violence of the bloud that floweth, as the dropsie, vice of the sinewes, or of the mouth of the stomach, or of the head. You may part the times of your bloud letting, as you doe in them, that spit bloud, so that thereby the auersion and turning away of the bloud may be the longer a litle. You must cut a veine in the arme. After this you must binde the extreme parts of the bodie with bandes, and you must vse and apply all such things, as can turne the fluxe of the humour another way. Therefore all those remedies that be rehearsed of vs in the former chapters be good. Let her whole diet be restrictiue, and such as doth ingender grossenesse and thicknesse. Let her drinke be water, or if she be weake wine that is grosse and restrictiue. But if the fluxe that is white or wheyish do vexe a woman, it may not be stopped at the beginning, that euill humors may be purged out of the bodie. Nor also, it is not against reason, seeing that, that which is flowed out, is ingendred of fleume, if you doe minister a medicine

Cause.

Signa.

Cure of the red fluxe.

Victus ratio.

Cure of a fluxe that is white and atterie.

to

to her, which doth purge fleume. And you must minister, and apply to the whole bodie, medicines and remedies which doe drie vp, seeing that the disease it selfe is moyst. Therefore exercises specially of the vpper parts, and frictions are good. Also they must eate flesh which hath vertue in it to drie, as birdes of the mountaines, and wilde beasts. Also in the beginning of the euill, such medicines may be ministred, as doe extenuate grosse humors, and after that doe bring them out with the vrine, as be *asarum*, fennell, *apium*, and such like, often rehearsed before. The beginning being past, you must apply to the wombe things that be moderately restrictiue, as be oyles of roses and quinces, and other rehearsed in the former chapter. Also you must vse abstersiue and scouring medicines, least that vlceration be made with the humour that floweth: wherfore the wheyish humour must continually be washed with hote water. After the scouring and clensing of the filth, you must annoint oyle of roses, or of quinces, or of mirtles. Likewise, when a woman is diseased with pale fluxe, it may not be stopped at the beginning, but the body must be purged with a medicine that purgeth choler. Then you must studie how to pull backe, and turne away the humour, and you must vse other restrictiue medicines, not neglecting abstersiue and scouring things, whereof you shall haue speciall neede, because of the sharpenesse of the humour. Moreouer to conclude, when the fluxe ceaseth, they must long abstaine from swift goings and walkings, from much frictions and rubbings of the bellie and the loynes, also from eating of sharpe things, from things that heat, and from such things as doe prouoke vrine.

Cure of a pale and cholericke fluxe.

CHAP. LVI.

Of strangling of the wombe.

De Vteri Svffocatione.

Svffocation or strangling of the wombe, is nothing else, but a drawing backe of it vp to the vpper parts. It is caused through stretching out of it, which is ingendred of fulnes, that followeth after the retention and stopping of menstruis. For in women the wombe, when it is retched and stretched out, it runneth not to an other place like a wandring beast, but is drawen backe through the extention. Also it chanceth oftentimes, through the seede that is restreined. Also many times it chanceth through cold, which happened to the wombe, at the time that the purgation of the menstruis is ministred. Also sometime it commeth through some hard aborsion, or when as any hath hasted to stoppe sodainely a fluxe of bloud flowing from the wombe. They that are vexed with this disease, when the fit is nigh, there followeth heauinesse of mind, slownesse, weakenesse of the legges, paleness of face, and a sorrowfull countenance. But when the suffocation and strangling is now present there followeth disposition to sleepe, doting, a withholding of the instruments of the senses, the voyce doth waxe dumbe, and the legges are drawen vp together. The pulses are small and weake. Also oftentimes they are altogether stopped. Also in many the breath that should come out at the mouth and nostrilles, is stopped altogether, and yet that which is in the arteries, doth remaine still. When the euill doth cease, the bals of the cheekes begin to waxe

Cause.

Signa.

red,and the eies be lifted vp and opened. Alſo a certain humidity and moiſtneſſe,that one may by feeling perceiue to runne out of the wombe of women, and the bowels doe make a noiſe: and alſo the wombe it ſelfe is a litle looſened,and ſo their mind,ſenſes,and mouing commeth to them againe. This diſeaſe commeth by courſes at certaine times as the falling ſickneſſe doth, and that chaunceth when the matrice (as is aforeſaid) is filled with ſeede,or with ſome other matter that putrificth and rotteth in it. When the wombe it ſelfe is diſeaſed with the quantity & qualitie of any thing,then menſtruis,or ſeede, or other kind of *ſymptomates* are ingendred. If that which is able to coole the whole body,do cauſe this diſeaſe,the body is ſo vehemently cooled,that both breathing and arteries beating,cannot be perceiued by the ſenſes. Which humour,if it be either groſſe or ſharpe,it cauſeth conuulſions and cramps:but if it haue the nature of melancholy,it cauſeth ſorrow and ſadneſſe,and defection of the mind,refrigeration,and paine of the ſtomach. This kind of diſeaſe ingendreth in all ſeaſons,but ſpecially in winter and autumne: and moſt commonly yong folke,and ſuch as be prone to lecherie,& barren,ſpecially if they be made ſo by medicines be moſt taken with this diſeaſe. Many doe recouer from this diſeaſe,and many againe doe periſh ſodainely in the very fit,or at the leaſt way within few houres after. That chaunceth, when the pulſes be ſwift and inordinate,and then do leaue off & vaniſh cleane away. At the laſt a cold humour in litle quantitie doth bedew and moiſture the skinne aloft. In the fits therefore you muſt bind the extreme parts, and beſides the bindings, you muſt rubbe the legs,and all the whole bodie,and doe euen as you would recouer one that is ſounded. And you muſt place the ſicke with her necke and ſhoulders, bending, and riſing vpward, and with her thighes & ſhare leaning downward. You muſt apply to her noſtrilles, ſtincking things, as the ſnuffe of a candle newly put out,feathers ſpecially of partriches burnt, or wooll burnt, or ſoales of ſhoes,or ſhales of garlicke,or onions: alſo haires burnt, and ſpecially if they be the haires of the ſicke, or gotes horne burnt. Alſo pitch melted vpon the coales, *galbanum* or *caſtoreum*,or ſuch like. Alſo you may hold a chamber veſſell with old vrine to their noſe, or old linnen clothes dipped in brimſtone and burned. And you muſt perfume the priuities beneath with odoriferous things,as be ſtorax,wood of *Aloes*,cinnamon,cloues,and ſuch like. And it is good to faſten cupping glaſſes with much flame,and lightly to the partes aboue the priuie members,and to the bottome of the belly. As ſoone as the fit doth come,you muſt apply foments,and litle bagges warmed, to the bottome of the belly and ſhare, for you ſhall ſcarcely finde a more preſent remedie in the comming of the fit of this diſeaſe. And you ſhall make them of both the motherworts,& with origan,betony,cammomill,calamint,wormewood,peniroyall,lineſeede,louage ſeede and ſuch like. And if the fit be prolonged, you muſt alſo adde to,ſuch things as are good to diſſolue and bring out windines: whereof you ſhall find example and names out of the Chapters of windineſſe of the ſtomach,and paine of the cholike. Alſo then, you muſt poure into the wombe, both oyntments & oiles,that be very odoriferous,as is,oiles of ſpike, and *ireos*,and ſuch like. Alſo let a midwife dippe her fingers in theſe oyles,and then put thē into the mouth of the matrice,rubbing it,long & eaſilie, that the rough

Curatio. How to doe in fit.

Sacculi.

through that prouoking, the grosse and clammy humor may be auoided out. Also let the woman be raised with loud callings, & call her loud by her proper name. Also at this time you must minister those things that cause sneezing, as be pepper, *castoreum*, *struthium*, & such like. There be some that thinke it good to vse incessions made of the decoction of laurell berries, & leaues, penroyall, calamint, motherwort, horehound, saueine, *althæa*, cammomill, *serpillum*, *yreos*, *a ristolochia*, and fenugreeke. But in the time of the incessions, we may not omit the cure of the braine, but you must irrigate and sprinkle the head with oile of roses and vinegre. But I iudge, that you must rather vse foments and litle bagges, then incessions, specially when as for the most part, although thou wouldest neuer so faine, thou canst not vse incessions in this euill. When the fit resteth and is ceased, compell the patient to vomit: for all vomits doe lighten, but specially such as are vexed with meate. The third day after, you must apply cupping glasses with scarification to the loines, & the ilions. After the seuenth day minister the purgation of *hiera colocynthide*, or pilles of agarick, & by & by come to the drinking of *castoreum*, which being continually drunke, it deliuereth the patient straight way from this euill. Also you must minister euerie day therof. ℥. j. sometime with *mulsa*, sometime with the decoction of motherwort, and sometime minister it with thinne wine. Therefore at this time, rather then in the time of the fit (as is said) it is lawfull for you to vse incessions and pessaries that do mollifie made of goose grease, *storax*, masticke, gumme armoniacke, and such like. Also the wombe must be perfumed beneath with such things as do heate, and haue vertue to bring out wind. Therfore vse this perfume specially. ℞. of the Trochiskes of *gallia* and *alipta moschana*. ana. ℥. j. ß. *storax*. ℥. iij. cloues, maces, ana. ℥. j. wood of *aloes*. ℈. ij. cinnamon chosen, leaues of laurell. ana. ℥. ij. *lapdanum*. ℥. ij. ß. beat them into powder, and commix them with *storax liquida*, and make trochiskes for perfumes. In the meane season, let the woman be content with a verie litle meate & drinke, and let all her diet be exciccatorie and drying vp. This cure following is to be vsed in the fits of this disease. In restoring and recreating the whole bodie, specially if that the disease hath endured long, you must beginne oftentimes with bloud letting, specially if the menstruis haue bene stopped, and letted of their purging. Then you must come to purging with *hierapicra*. The purging being done, you must fasten on cupping glasses lightly, but with much flame, and you must draw them off violently. Also sometime the places may be scarified, and strew vpon the scarification, salt, then you must heale it with conuenient medicines. Also you may apply verie well *Synapismes*, and dropaces made of *Euphorbium*, pellitorie, pepper, and mustard seede. Also a good diet doth helpe much, as deambulations in the morning, gestations, and caryings in a cart or in a ship, or on a beast, be good. Also, after they be moued with carying about, crying out loud, distinct and apt reading is conuenient. Also annointing and frictions vsed now & then are good. Bathes of sweete water are seeldome to be admitted, and not, but because it should scoure and cleanse the filth. It is verie good to vse naturall bathes, which flow by nature, and this, as it were the verie last refuge. Aboue others those bathes are good which be in *Badenia* in the base Germanie in *Marchia*. And our Bathes at Bathe and at

What must be done straight after the fit.

Trochiskes of perfumes.

Diet.

Cure of the whole bodie.

Diet.

Buxſtons in Darbiſhire, and there is a bath neere Newmarket in Suffolke at a towne called Exning, they be all verie good, but if they goe to anie of theſe bathes they muſt take heede of cold.

CHAP. LVII.

Of falling out of the wombe.

DE VTERI PROCIDENTIA.

WE ſay, that the matrice falleth out, whē it is ſo turned downward, that it ſticketh out outwardly. And yet the whole matrice rowleth not downe, being looſened from the bands & ligaments, as many vnwiſe folke do thinke, for if it ſhould fall downe ſo, it could not be reſtored againe. Although the wombe do fall out but ſeeldome, yet there be many cauſes of the falling out of it. For a woman falling from a high place, if ſhe fal on her haunches, the pannicles & filmes, that hold vp the wombe, & the members adioyning doe breake & cauſe this diſeaſe. Alſo it chanceth many times that in a ſore trauaile of child birth, the wombe falleth out becauſe of the drawing out of the ſecundine, which the wombe that ioyneth to it doth follow. Alſo many times it chanceth through negligent & vnskilfull drawing out of the child, ſpecially if it be dead. Moreouer it chanceth ſometimes through a ſtripe, or lifting vp of a great weight, or through vehement perturbation of the mind, as death of children, or cōming of enemies, or through perilous ſailing, or through ſome ſuch like cauſe, all the body being looſened, the wombe falleth out. Alſo ſometime this euill chanceth (all the whole being looſened) through reſolution of weaknes of the pannicles & muſcles, which thing chanceth ſpecially to them that be old. Oftentimes the wombe falleth out, through the flowing downe of an humour much in quantitie & clammie. It falleth out moſt commonly by the mouth of it, & that which falleth out, is like to the egs of an Oſtrich, differing only in that, that it is bigger, or leſſe in quantitie. There is no neede of many ſignes, becauſe the diuerſitie of cauſes may partly be knowen by the cōſtitution & ſtate of the bodie, & partly alſo by the telling of the ſicke, & them that be with them daily: when this diſeaſe is but newly begun, you muſt endeuour to put vp the wombe againe, & to reſtore him into his owne place, for in the beginning it will be obedient to be put vp readily, and being in his owne place, it will tarie ſo ſtill, ſpecially if age agree vnto it. For in thē that are well ſtricken in age, the womb being put againe, it ſlideth out againe through euery light cauſe. It is good therefore, if there be hard dung in the right gut, to bring it out with a clyſter. Likewiſe if vrine be gathered in the bladder, let it be brought out with a cyring, that the matrice may be at free libertie on ech ſide. For otherwiſe it chanceth by their ſtretching out, that the matrice, which is in the middeſt betwene them is preſſed together, & pent in a ſtraite place, and ſo when he is fallen out, they let it and ſtop it, that it cannot be put vp againe into his owne place. When you haue thus done, you muſt lay the ſicke vpright ſo that her haunches may lie higheſt, her hammes bowed, & her legs ſpread abroad: then you muſt bath and nouriſh abundantly that part of the matrice which is fallen out, with warme oile or butter, or mallowes ſodden, or with the decoction of *althæa*, fenugreeke, lineſeede, or ſuch like: and you muſt prepare

Cauſa.

Signa.

Curatio.

woolle together on a heape, in figure and thickneſſe, according to the proportion of the member, and wind it about aloft with a fine and pure linnen cloth: then dippe it in the iuices of *Acatia* or *hypociſtus* infuſed in wine, and put it into the wombe, & you ſhall wreſt & writh vpward all that which is fallen down by litle and litle, and without violence, vntill the matrice be put vp into his owne proper place. Outwardly you muſt couer the parts about the priuie mẽbers with a ſponge wrong out of *Poſca*. The woman ſhall lie with her legges ſtretched out & ioyned together, that the one may leane vpon the other. But it is more ſafegard to binde the feete together, bringing the band vp to the knees. But if that part of the matrice which is fallen out, be ſwollen thorough continuance of time, and be ſtuffed vp with plentie of humours, ſo that the ſwelling do let the putting vp of it, you ſhall noriſh it with decoction of beetes and then you muſt cleanſe it and waſh it with vineger, & ſtrew in it, ſalt finely powdered, & when it leaueth ſwelling, then put it vp as is aforeſaid. Then faſten cupping glaſſes with much flame to the nauell, & both the ilions or ſmall guts: and apply continually to the noſe odoriferous things. The third day (the woolle being as yet ſtill in the wombe) let the woman ſit in blacke ſoure wine a litle warmed, or in the decoction of mirtles, brãble leaues, pomegranate rinds & ſuch like. This being done let her lie vpright again with her haunches higheſt, then take the former woolle out, and put in ſuch another in the ſtead of the firſt, dipped in the ſame medicine. Alſo apply cataplaſmes & emplaiſters outwardly to the bottom of the belly, made of dates, pomegranate rindes, lentils and ſuch like. Alſo Cerotes that are made of maſtick, wood of *aloes*, *lapdanum*, frankenſence, ſquinant, *acorus*, nutmegs, gumme *tragacanthe*, and ſuch like, are good to be applied. But let theſe things be changed euery third day, vntill the cure be ended perfectly. Alſo during the whole time of the cure, let the woman eſchew mouing, & ſuch things as prouoke ſneezing. And the womb muſt be perfumed beneth with ſtinking things, but to the noſe you muſt apply moſt odoriferous things, for becauſe the matrice flieth from ſtinking things, and it followeth & embraceth odoriferous things. Let her meates be ſuch as ingender good iuice, & giue her odoriferous wines. Alſo the belly muſt be made ſoft & ſoluble, leaſt if ſhe ſhold go to the ſtoole difficultly, the matrice ſhould alſo fal out again. But yet you muſt take good heed, that the belly be not too much looſened, for then the parts adioyning are looſened, & ſo the matrice will fall out againe. Moreouer if that part of the womb which is fallen out, hath throgh cõtinuance of time by negligence bin putrified & rotten, & through continual wetting of it with vrine, & filthineſſe ſticking in it, it be exulcerated: you muſt cut off and ſeare that which is vnprofitable, or burne it without any feare of danger: for it hath bene knowen (as *Paulus* teſtifieth) that the whole matrice, becauſe it was rotted, hath bene taken away, and the woman liued ſtill.

Victus ratio.

CHAP. LVIII.

Of the mole of the matrice.

De Mola.

Mola in Latine is called of *Ætius* & *Paulus*, a ſwelling that is hardened, ſometime in the mouth & entry of the matrice, & ſomtime it ſticketh out in all the matrice, & in feeling it is almoſt like a ſtone. Galen in li. 14. *ther. met.*

Causa. defineth *Mola* to be a peece of flesh without shape. This disease is caused of womans seede, and much menstruous bloud flowing into the matrice, and there kept, retayned and stopped, which immoderate heate doth ioyne

Signa. together, and changeth it into the forme and fashion of flesh. There followeth this euill, a hard swelling, with contraction and drawing vp of the sides, slendernes of the bodie, euill colour, losse of appetite, and suppression of the menstruis. Also in this euill the pappes do swell, so that at the first it causeth some to suspect that the woman is conceiued with childe, but in processe of time it may be discerned. For paine followeth the *Mola*, causing pricking, neither is there any mouing perceiued in this disease, as is in conception. Many of them do make a suspection of the dropsie, but yet there is a difference betwene thē two: because the swelling is hard, and doth not giue place to the thrusting of the hand and finger, as the dropsie doth, nor maketh a noise as the timpanie doth. But yet often in processe of time, the liuer is cooled and the dropsie ingendreth. This euill for the most part is incurable, except remedies be applied in the beginning. But howsoeuer it chaunceth, the cure may not be neglected but you must applie and minister all things that seeme to be good for it. But first of all you most giue her meates that ingender good iuice, and let her vse moderate drinking of wine. Let not the woman vse vehement mouing, for that will cause the fluxe to the disease, but let her vse gestations, and caryings, and deambulations and bathes, and in her lying let her feete be highest. In the meane season if fulnesse be present, you must cut a veine of the arme, and then you must purge her by *pilulæ fœtidæ*. When the bodie is purged and emptied, applie cataplasms, foments, incessions, pessaries, ointments and cerotes, which haue vertue and power to dissolue and loosen, as they be that are made of *Althæa*, mallowes, cammomill, melilot, fenugreeke, lineseede, and such like.

Curatio.

Vnguentum. For this purpose also it is good to apply *vnguentum dialthea* or *emplastrum diachylon simplex*, or applie this ointment. ℞. of the oile of sweete almonds. ℥.iij. oile of lillies. ℥. ij. ß. goose greace and hens greace. ana. ℥.j. ß. musculage of lineseede and fenugreeke. ana. ℥. j. of the gummes *ammoniacum*, & *bdellium*. ana. ℥.

Pessus. ii. roote of *althæa*, *nigella* seedes, and *daucus*. ana. ℈. ii. dissolue the gummes in wine, and with wax as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. Also you must put in Pessaries made with butter, swines greace, hartes marrow, reisons, fat figs, lineseede and fenugreeke. After this you must minister such medicines, as can prouoke menstruis: for which purpose besides those things that we rehearsed in the chapter of stopping of menstruis, this medicine is good. ℞. the powders of *diacinnamomum*, *diagalanga*, *diacuminum*. ana. ℥. ß. pouder of diam-

Morsuli. ber. ℈. j. powder of *dialacha*. ℈. ß. Cinnamon chosen, S. Iohns wort, *calamus aromaticus*, *asarum*, roote of gladon, anise seede. ana. ℈. j. seede of rew, ginger, motherwort, horehound, *dictemus*, sage, ana. ℈. ß. suger dissolued in the waters of motherwort, and S. Iohns wort, as much as is sufficient, and make lo-

Pessus. zenges, whereof minister daily the weight of two or three. ℥. Also it is good to put in this pessarie. ℞. of the roote of *Asarum*, gladon, and madder. ana. ℥. ij. seede of rew, *nigella*. ana. ℥. ß. maioram, nutmugs, cloues, laurell berries. ana. ℥. j. saueine. ℈. j. *castoreum*, *euphorbium*. ana. ℈. ß. powder them and searce them that haue neede, & with turpentine make a Pessarie. To conclude, you

must

must vse medicins that can dissolue and loosen congealed bloud: for so there will follow excretion, and voiding out of much blacke bloud and clodded. Also it profiteth maruellously to the taking away of this disease, specially if the euill haue continued long, to vse naturall bathes, and such as do ingender by themselues, which haue vertue to dissolue and discusse. Moreouer, many other remedies rehearsed in Chapters of the Dropsie, may be vsed in this.

CHAP. LIX.

Of inflammation of the wombe.

DE INFLAMMATIONE VTERI.

THE wombe is inflamed through many causes: as through a stripe or retention, and stopping of menstruis: also by aborsion, exulceration, vnmeasurable lecherie, sitting on a very hard stoole, very long and swift deambulation and walking. Also oftentimes it chaunceth through cold, prohibition and letting the transpiration and breathing out. The companions to inflammation of the matrice be these: an acute feuer, paine of the head, the share, the loines, & the rootes of the eies: Conuulsion and crampe of the armes, the fingers, and the neck, and declining of them contrary. Also paine of the stomacke, & shutting vp of the mouth of the matrice, and pulses that be small and often. If the inflammation be feeble and small, the aforesaied signes will not be great and strong, and the wombe wilbe vexed with greater paine. But if the inflammation be vehement, then the whole wombe is vexed with a panting paine, and all the signes will be the more vehement. If all the wombe be inflamed, it will be painfull all ouer, but if some part of it be vexed with an inflammation, then the paine is greatest in that part. For if the hinder parts of it be vexed with inflammation, the paine will afflict the loines most, and hard dung is withholden and stopped, because then the right gut is pressed together very much. If the former part be inflamed, then there is paine about the priuities, and the strangurie or difficultie in pissing is engendred, because the bladder is pressed together. If the sides of it be inflamed, the partes aboue the priuie members are stretched out, and the legges are grieued, and difficultly moued. When inflammation afflicteth the mouth of the matrice, there is paine in the *Abdomen*, and if you put in your finger, you shall feele the mouth hard, vnpleasant, shut vp, and burning hote. In the beginning therefore of the cure, if neither age, nor state of the bodie, nor time of the yeare do let it, you must cut the veine of the hams or of the ankles, (if the inflammation came not after aborsion, or great voiding of bloud.) Afterward you shall place the sicke in a darke house, which is moderatly warme, bidding her to be quiet, and prohibiting all mouing from her legges. Then you must rub the space betweene the ioints, and also the extreame parts, that you may turne away the course of the flux from the womb. For her meate, which must be litle in quantitie, you must vse prisan broth and rere egges: but there must be a day betweene: she must abstaine from drinking of wine, and for that, she must vse the decoction of cinamon, or hote water. Also the bellie if it be not soluble inough of it selfe, must be washed & emptied by easie and mollifying clysters. Outward'y you must apply vpon the loynes, and about the share, woolle wet in vineger, wherin roses haue bin sodden. Also

Cause.

Signa.

Curatio.

Dyet.

Localia.

dates or quinces ſodden in wine, and commixed with oile of roſes, is good to be applyed. Alſo you muſt apply cataplaſmes made with the meale of lineſeed, fenugreeke, and with melilot, plantain, lintels, knotgraſſe, purſlaine, ſingreene, and ſuch like: and that ſpecially if the inflammation be of the nature of an *eryſipela*. Moreouer you muſt put into the matrice, wooll moiſtened with oyle of roſes, or quinces, or in the iuyce of purſlaine, or ſingreene. When the inflammation beginneth to decline and ceaſe, you muſt come to the vſing of thoſe things which haue vertue to releaſe, diſſolue and diſcuſſe. Therefore you ſhall bid the patient ſit vp to the loynes in fenugreeke ſodden, or in the decoction of *althea*, linſeed, mallowes, and ſometime alſo motherwort, horehound and ſage. Alſo you ſhall annoint aboue the priuities, and the loynes, barley meale with fenugreeke and lineſeed ſodden in *mulſa*, or the decoction of drie figges. Alſo put in peſſaries made of butter, harts-marrow, gooſe greace, hens greace, and ſuch like. When the cure hath proceeded, ſundrie meats and light will be much profitable. And when the declination of it is manifeſt, bring the ſicke to bathes, and giue her wine that is waterie and thinne.

CHAP. LX.

Of windineſſe in the wombe.

DE INFATIONE VTERI.

Cauſe. THE womb is puffed vp through cold, or humors corrupt in it or through abortion, or ſore trauel in childbirth, the dore of it being ſhut, or a clod of bloud being in it and ſtopping it. Oftentimes the windineſſe ingendreth in the hollow bought and ſpace of it, ſometime in the boſome of it, which is euident to the ſenſes, and ſometime in the thinner parts of the ſubſtance of the womb, not appearing to the ſenſes. *Signa.* There followeth this euill, ſwellIng of the bottome of the bellie, with hardnes & paine that pricketh, which goeth vp to the midriffe and the ſtomach: and yet neuertheleſſe it is ſtretched out on both ſides, ſometime to the ſhare, and ſometime the paine is in the loynes, and at the nauell, to whom alſo the head agreeth. Alſo many times wind breaketh out of the priuities that the ſicke may feele it. If therefore windineſſe be gathered in the hollowneſſe of the matrice, there is heard a certaine rumbling and noiſe in the bodie, ſuch as chaunceth to the guts which are vexed with gripings: alſo if you beat your fingers on it, it maketh a noiſe like a timpanie. But when the windineſſe is contained in the thinne and ſlender paſſages of the matrice, then they are vexed with more vehement paine, and harder to cure. This euill is cured firſt if age, the region and time of the yeare do not let it, by bloudletting, faſting, and purging with *hierapicra Galeni*: which being done, you muſt vſe foments, and annointings with oile of rew, or with oyle wherein dill bath bene ſodden. *Curatio.* Alſo let her vſe inceſſions made of the decoction of rewe, peniroyall, calamint, horehound, motherwort, *althea*, & ſuch like. Alſo apply cataplaſmes made of the ſeeds of *apium*, fenell, caraway, commin, louage, *daucus*, aniſe, fitches or darnell meale, and ſuch like. Alſo you muſt powre into the womb ſuch things as haue power to looſen and diſſolue windineſſe: as is, oile of rew, *ammeos*, origan, and the decoction of things before rehearſed. And if windineſſe be included and ſtopped through the meanes of a clod of bloud, after the vſing

of

of the aforesayd things, and specially incessions, let the midwife put her finger beeing first annointed into the womans priuities, and dissolue, and bring forth the clod easily and by litle and litle. And if the euill hath continued long, you must come to more effectuous remedies. Therefore you must vse liniments, emplaisters, and cerates that be stronger, as this is. ℞ sothernwood, origan, & calamint. ana ℥ij. seed of tutsan. ℈ ij. of centorie the lesse. ℥ j. Caraway seeds *ammi*. ana. ℥ ß. *cassiæ*. ℈ j. *bdellium*, armoniacke. ana. ℥ j. ß. oyle of rew and dill. ana. ℥ j. with wax and turpentine as much as is sufficient, make a cerate and apply it to the womb: also sometime you must proceed to the vse of Synapismes and Dropaces. Also cupping glasses may be fastened to the places lightly in a circuite, and must be pulled away violently, for these do helpe as it were a charme. Also sometime scarification must be made: and you must vse such things altogether, as haue power to draw out, and call forth from the bottome to the top. Also, for her diet you must minister food that doth attenuate and dissolue windinesse, and minister medicines also that haue the same vertue, as *diamson*, and *diacuminum*, and *diacalaminthes*, and such like. *Ceratum.*

CHAP. LXI.

Of exulceration of the wombe.

DE VTERI EXVLCERATIONE.

THE matrice sometime is exulcerate, because of hard child birth, or drawing out of the childe, or through corrupting of the matrice, or through sharpe medicines, or fluxes, or through impostumes or botches broken. They that haue this disease do feele a pricking paine in the aggrieued part: and at certaine times stinking and atterie humours are sent out from the filthy vlcer. And other signes proper to the diseases of the wombe do follow, as headach, and specially of the fore part of the head, of the great sinewes in the neck, and of the rootes of the eyes, is felt paine, which also extendeth vnto the fingers endes, and other tokens declared before in the chapters of inflammation of it. Therfore if the vlcer may be seene, it may be knowne by an instrument called *Specillum auricularium*; but if it be deepe within and hidden, those things which come from it will declare it: for a diuerse humour is sent forth. If the vlcer be inflamed, the humor is litle in quantitie, bloudie or dreggie with great paine. If the vlcer be foule & filthie, the humor commeth forth in more great abundance, & is matter with lesse griefe. If the vlcer doth eate and feed, the humor is stinking, blacke, and with vehement paine. For the cure, when the bile or vlcer is enflamed, you must vse bloudletting and other medicines that are good against inflammation, as is afore taught. In other causes you must vse purging medicines, especially if the bodie doth abound with vicious and corrupt humors. Also apply such medicines, as do represse & stop the flowing of humors, and correct their hote distemper, as is, the iuices of waters of purslaine, plantaine, *bursa pastoris*, and such like before rehearsed. Then if the vlcer be filthie, you must vse scouring and cleansing medicins, as is, *ptisan* with hony, *mulsa* with the decoction of the root of ireos, *aristolochia*, wormwood or agrimonie. Those vlcers which do eate and feede, must be washed with mares milke, or Asses milke newly milked: you must mixe with milke, hony, and roote of ireos. These *Causæ.* *Signa.* *Curatio.*

things, if the vlcers may be seene, may be annoynted: but if they be deepe within, cast thé in with an instrument called *metrenchita*. Whé the vlcers be wel purged & cleansed, you must vse such things, as will close them vp: first gentle things: and then those that be of a more effect. The Cerate of *Aetius* doth especially please me, which is this. ℞. of white waxe. ℥.j. of fine oyle of roses. ℥.iij. & melt them together vpon the coales, and when it is cooled, then put it into a morter, & put thereinto womans milke, or asses milke, or goats milke newly milked, and worke them together with a pestle, vntill it be white, then poure out the aforesaid milke, & put in new milke, and then worke them againe, and then put to it about ℈.j. of saffron. And if thou wouldest haue it to mitigate paine more, adde to it oyle of roses. ℥.ij. the grease and marrow of a goose. ana. ℥.ß. Also you may put to oile of quinces, in steed of oyle of roses. You must apply this Cerate to the belly and the haunches: for the vertue of it is sent into the wombe by secret and hidden passages. Also you may cast into the matrice of that facultie: as be, the decoction of pomegranate rinds, roses, quinces, brāble, mirtles, sumach, *acatia*, *hypocistis*, with restrictiue wine. To this place you may transferre and bring medicines out of the former bookes, and out of the chapters of vlcers of the reynes, the bladder, and the yard.

Ceratum.

CHAP. LXII.

Of Straitnesse of the matrice.

De Phinosi Vteri.

PHINOSIS in Greek, *obturatio* or *coarctatio uteri*; in Latin, it is a stopping or straightening in the mouth or neck of the matrice, wherby those places are made so streight, that it will not admit nor suffer any seede: or if they do receaue it, they can not hold it, for because of their knobby hardnesse, it can not shut together. Sometime it receaueth seede, and it is kept and retained in the streight mouth of the wombe, & thereof is a child conceaued, but the conception bringeth occasion of death to the woman: seeing because of the great straightnesse of the places, it can not be brought forth. This disease is caused in the mouth of the matrice, either of exulceration going before, or of an inflammation there hardened. There is no neede of signes to know this disease by: for by the telling of the sicke, and by touching of it, you may easily know it. The cure of it must be wrought with fomentations, that can release, dissolue, and mollifie. Also with cataplasmes and incessions, that be of like power & vertue. Therefore you must apply foments made of the decoction of fenugreeke, and *hydrelæon*. Also you must vse pessaries, that can mollifie and dissolue, as that is which is made of *æsipum*, that is, oyle tried out of woll in sheeps flanks or necks, salt peter, and turpentine. To be short, to the cure of this disease you must vse mollifying medicines, as is mallowes, *althea nigella*, fenugreeke, lineseede, *ammoniake*, *bdellium*, rozin, grease, and such like, of the which you may make cerats, emplaisters, and all kind of outward medicines. And if the euill be waxed old, you must vse suffumigations, & euaporations made of aromatike things. And when the places do seeme to be softer to the feeling, then you must put a drie sponge, that hath a cord hanged at it, into the streight place, to the intent to make it wider: which if it fall out, you must put in another that is thicker. Therefore

Cauſæ.

Signa.

Curatio.

fore you muſt haue many and ſundry drie ſpunges ready. Afterward you muſt annoint vpon the ſpunges that you will put in, ſome medicine made of alume, and *elaterium*, mixed with honie, that thereby the place may be made wider. And if, after the ſponges be taken away, the place do not ſeem open and wide enough, and inflammation be preſent through the eating and gnawing of the medicines that were applyed, then annoint vpon the ſpunge, that you will put in this ointment. ℞. oyle of ireos. ℥. j. of fine turpentine. ℥. ij. of gooſe greace, ℥. j. roote of ireos and frankenſence. ana. ℥. ß. wax as much as is ſufficient, and make an ointment. But if the inflammation be vehement, take oyle of roſes or violets in ſtead of oyle of ireos. When the inflammation is ceaſed & the place is open, annoint vpon a ſpunge a cerat made of oyle of roſes and gooſe greace, and vſe that vntill it be healed, making the place a litle founder: but yet you muſt alwaies put in ſpunges vntill the end of the cure, leſt that the mouth of the wombe do gather together againe. *Vnguentum.*

CHAP. LXIII.

To take away barrenneſſe.

DE STERILITATE REMOVENDA.

STERILITAS in Latin, barrenneſſe in Engliſh. It is cauſed of the womans part, or of the mans part. It is of the mans part, when his ſeed is either hot, and as it were burned, or elſe cold, thinne, watery and feeble, as is the ſeede of old and feeble men: or when it is ſent forth thicker then it ought to be: or becauſe the men be halfe geldings, and haue a very ſhort yard, ſo that they cannot caſt their ſeed into the innermoſt place of the matrice, which alſo ſometime chaunceth through much fatneſſe: for fat men haue ſuch great bellies, that they cannot caſt the ſeed into the deepeſt partes of the bodie. Alſo women of their part cannot conceaue, that haue their matrice either hot & fiery, or cold and moiſt, or foule, filthy and drie. For (as *Hippocrates* ſaith 5. *Apho.* 62.) the ſeed is corrupted or quenched in ſuch. Alſo women that be very groſſe & fat, do not conceaue (as *Hyppocrates* witneſſeth. 5. *Apho.* 46. Moreuer women that be leane and ſlender do not conceaue, or if they do conceaue, they doe ſuffer aborſion ſtraight way, which alſo *Hyppocrates* witneſſeth. 5. *Apho.* 44. Alſo ſome do not conceaue, becauſe their wombe is weake, or ſtreight, or ſhort: or becauſe the veſſels of it be ſtopped or ſhut vp, or blinded and couered, by reaſon of a ſcarre, or becauſe the necke of the wombe is drawne crooked: or becauſe the mouth of the matrice is too ſtreight or too wide opē. Alſo vnwilling carnall copulation for the moſt part is vaine and barren: for loue cauſeth conception, and therfore louing women do conceaue often. Alſo age too great or too litle, doth let conception. Therefore you muſt ſeparate them that be young from carnall copulation, ſo that the man may be 30 yeares old, and the woman 18. But ſpecially an vncomely and fooliſh ſhape and forme of the womans body, doth giue an occaſion to barrennes. For a woman that is fertile, ought to haue a moderate ſtature and height of the bodie, breadth of the loines & the ſhare, buttockes ſticking out, a handſome and conuenient greatneſſe of the belly, a ſtraight breaſt and large pappes. The ſignes whereby the diuerſitie of cauſes be knowne be theſe. The hote diſtemper of a man, is eaſily knowne by the abun- *Cauſe.* *Signa.* *Hot diſtemper.*

dance of haires, specially blacke haires vpon the genitalles, and the places adioyning, from aboue vnto the middle thighes. Also this distemperature is lasciuious and readie to carnall lust, but it is soone satiate and filled. A temperamẽt that is too cold, is declared by the parts being about the stones being bald and without haire. Also they that be of this temperature, be not desirous & prone to carnall lust. Heate of the matrice is knowne by the heate in the rest of the bodie, and because few menstruis are sent out and that with paine, so that sometime the womans priuities are exulcerate with it, and that which is sent out, is blackish. Also there followeth this temperature, an instinction or tickling to lecherie, and drinesse of the whole bodie. A temperature of the matrice, which is cold, is knowne by suppression and stopping of the menstruis. Also they that haue this temperament, do despise vse of carnall lust, and haue the mouth of the matrice drawn together. If through too much moistnesse, barrennesse be engendred, then in the act of generation, they are very much bedewed with moistnesse and the menstruis floweth much in quantitie, and thinne. Drinesse is knowne by the contrarie signes to moistnesse. The rest of the causes may be knowne, partly by sight, and partly by the telling of the partie, or other about her. For the cure commonly to both, as well the man as the woman: it is conuenient for them to keepe the whole bodie very temperate, and to keepe a meane and measure in labouring, eating, drinking and bathing, and in all other exercises. Men therefore that haue their seede corrupted through naughtie and euill kind of dyet, if they vse a more ordinate diet and healthfull, their genitors will haue fecunditie and fertilitie. Let the woman neither wearie her selfe with too much labour, nor let her be altogether idle: for idlenesse doth fill and stuffe the whole bodie with superfluous humours and excrements: but great labour drieth vp the bloud, and consumeth the menstruis. Let her vse meates and drinkes easie of digestion, and such as the stomack may well comprehend and consume. And you must specially obserue in their order of good diet, that neither the man nor the woman be made fat. For they that be fat, are vnapt to procreate and beget children, because their genitors cannot touch together, and also because they send out litle seed. Moreouer it is conuenient that you giue vnto such as desire to get children, some accustomed and pleasant thing to eat or drinke before meate, which be most apt to prouoke carnal lust, and to engender seed: as those be that do heate measurably, and puffe vp with winde. Therefore wine in this case measurably drunke, is to be preferred before water. For as the prouerbe is: *Sine Cerere & Baccho friget Venus* (that is) If you haue not bread and wine: carnall lust will coole and pine. For potherbs they must vse rocket, *orminium*, it is an herbe like vnto horehound, *erisymo*, and other such like which we haue rehearsed of them that cannot vse carnal copulation. Rewe, calamint, and mintes must be eschued altogether: for calamint and mints, although they engender much seed, yet, that which they engender, is feeble and weake: but rewe doth altogether corrupt and destroy seed. If a woman do not conceaue, through the vice & corruption of certaine humors, it is good to emptie her with a purging medicine, & to amend her with a good diet. Particularly for women, it is good for them to take as good heede as can be to those things that chance to the matrice, and that their menstruis may flow

Cold temperature.

Cure of both to man and woman common.

Cure of a woman full of corrupt humors.

flow without any impediment. Therfore when the purgation of their mẽstruis is nigh at hand, let them keepe a measure in eating and drinking with all their diligence. And let them take some of those things that can prouoke and stir vp the purgation of the menstruis, as be herbs that be odoriferous and sharpe, as is, *Cerefolium*, fennell, *apium*, louage, and such like, whereof you shall find plenty in the chapter of the stopping of the menstruis. After the purging of the menstruis, both the right side and the left side of the matrice is open. If cold distẽpure doth cause barrennesse, you must correct and amend it by foments, cataplasmes, and suffumigations, and other medicines that haue vertue to heat: as those be that are made of motherwort, peniroyall, sage, rewe, annise seede, commin, gladon, and such like. Also it profiteth her to drinke *Castoreum*, and odoriferous seeds, commin, annise seed, and iuniper fruit, and other things that be rehearsed in the chapter of stopping of menstruis. You must amend & correct a hote distempure of the matrice causing barrennesse, with such things as do coole and moisten: as these herbes be, lettuse, mallowes gourds, purslaine, and orach with such like. Also she must drinke wine that is thinne, white and alayed. Also it profiteth her to sleepe, and to bath in sweet water. Also you must apply to the loynes and about the priuities such things as do coole, as iuice of nightshade mixed with oile of roses, which also being layd vpon wooll, may be put well into the matrice. They which cannot conceaue through moistnesse of the matrice, it is good for them to vse a drier diet. Also they must exercise them selues much, and they must be rubbed in the vpper part of the bodie. Also to the intent to purge out, and turne away humors, let them vomit sometime after dinner, and somtime fasting, and you must dry them with scarcity of meat, and let them eate flesh of middle aged beasts rosted, and giue them pure wine, that is mightie to drinke, but giue it them seldome. Also it profiteth to apply restrictiue things to the matrice, as be, roses, leaues of brier, galles, *sumach*, mirtles, knotgrasse, pomegranat rindes, and such like sodden. But you may not do this, vnlesse the whole bodie be first purged. A dry matrice must be cured by the contrarie to that which is aforesaid, as with bathes of sweet water, annointings, and meates that do moisten. Let her vse wine that is alayed, being not very olde. And if a womans conception be impedited and stopped through grosse humours, if they be gnawing, it is good to purge the woman well with *hierapicra* in whey: and she must vse a most exquisite diet, and meats that do engender good iuyce: but you must consume the flegmaticke humours with much labour, with sweating, vomiting, or by purging by the neather parts: and all other things which be rehearsed in the Chapter of stopping of menstruis, which it behoueth not to rehearse here particularly. Also windinesse engẽdred in the womb, doth let the fertilitie of conception, & causeth barrennesse. Such women therfore as haue this, must first be amẽded with a straighter diet. Then you must minister both outwardly and inwardly to them, such medicins as can dissolue, disperse, and consume windinesse, as is, commin, rew, dill, seed of *apium* and such like, which be rehearsed in the chapter of windinesse of the matrice, and in other places. If shutting vp of the matrice doth cause barrennesse, you shall open it by casting in of odoriferous clisters, and by vsing of foments and incessions made of fenugreeke, line seed, mallowes, and such like rehearsed in

Cure of a cold temperature of the wombe.

Cure of a hote distempure.

Cure of a moist distempure.

Cure of a drie distempure.

Cure of grosse humours.

Cure of windinesse.

Cure of a matrice shut vp.

the chapter of straightnesse of the wombe. And afterward you must proceed to stronger medicines, as motherwort, calamint, peniroyall, and marioram. They which haue the mouth of the matrice gaping much, it is good for them to vse a drying dyet, and drying foments. And it is good also to vse restrictiue medicines, as be the decoction of galles, bramble roots, mirtles, and such like rehearsed before in the cure of a moist distemper. Last of all, if crookednesse of the matrice do cause barrennesse, you shall direct and make straight the matrice with mollifying foments: for foments can do that best: but yet you may conueniently put in mollyfying pessaries. But specially the decoction of peneroyall, and motherwort, and *castoreum* drunke with posca, are wont to be good for a writhed matrice. *Paulus* saith, that then carnall lust vsed backward, is good to conceiue. We here haue generally comprehended the cures, onely by other chapters. For the particular cure of each cause, must be sought out of his proper chapter.

Cure of an open matrice.

Cure of a writhed matrice.

CHAP. LXIIII.

Of sore trauaile in child-birth.

DE DIFFICVLTATE PARTVS.

Difficilis partus.

SORE trauaile in child birth doth chaunce either through default of the parent, or of the childe, or of the secundine, or through some outward cause. Of the parent, if she be grosse and fat, faint harted, and vnskilful of pain, or if the whole matrice be small, or if there be inflamation of the whole womb, or of some part of it, or that it be vexed with some other diseases, or if she be naturally weake, so that she cannot driue out the childe: or if that she do labor before her time. Also if the necke of the mouth of the matrice be crooked, or if there be some peece of flesh ingendred there, by reason of a bile or vlcer going before. But default of the childe is, if it be of an vnaccustomed greatnes, or small and of a litle weight, or if it hath a great head, or if it be monstrous, as hauing two heades, or three feete, or if it be dead, and so doth not labour to come forth, or if it swell, or being aliue, if it be weake, so that it cannot proceed forth: or if they be two or mo, & do all rush suddenly together into the neck of the matrice, or if the childe be fashioned contrary to nature. For the naturall forme of a childe comming forth is, first with his head, (his hands being stretched out vpon the thighes) & with his head declining to the nether parts, but straightly directed to the mouth of the matrice: the best form in cõming forth, next vnto this, is, first with his feete, hauing the hands stretched vpon both thighes, and so descending straight vp. All other formes in comming forth, except these two, are contrarie and abhorring to nature. The trauaile is made difficile through the Secundine: if it be not pulled away, because of the grosenesse or thicknes of it, or if it break before it should do because of the thinnes of it. For then, the humor that is gathered together in the matrice, is sent out before the conuenient time. Therfore the priuities be without moisture, & be drie at the time of the trauaile, when moistnesse were necessary, which should make a slipperie, and easie going out of the childe, and so through drinesse the child slideth out hardly. Also difficultie in child-birth is engendred of outward causes: as of colde, which thickneth the matrice, and maketh the passages straighter, or through a great heate, which dissolueth and weakeneth the

Signa.

strength,

strength. But outward causes are knowen by the telling of the patient, or of them that sit by her. Weakenesse of the woman that laboureth, as fatnesse, may be knowen by the state of the body. Also by diseases, that she hath had before, you may readily come to the knowledge of weakenesse, and of manie other euils. Weakenesse of the child is knowen by feeble and slow mouing of it. Which if it be dead, it moueth not, and there is coldnesse of the belly, and great paine about the nauell. Also a stinking breath is breathed out, & a naughtie colour of the face. Greatnesse of the child may be coniectured by the constitution of the parents bodie, and by greatnesse of the womans belly. Grossenes & thicknesse of the secundine may be gathered & knowen thus: if none of the aforesaid signes be present, and the woman strong & lustie, and the child moueth quickly & easily. As for the cure, it varieth according to the diuersitie of causes. Therefore you must place a fat woman downwarde in a litle bed, that is, hanging downward with her head, and her face towardes the ground, bending and enclining her knees to her thighs, that her wombe stretching to the *Abdomen*, may be right with his mouth. You must with your fingers annoint the mouth of the matrice, with butter, oile, ducks greace, hens greace, and such like, and you must spread it abroad, and open it wider by little and little. You must comfort and incourage a fearefull woman. And if she be vnskilfull of paines in trauaile, admonish her to hold and stop her breath strongly, and let her thrust it out to the ilions with al her might. If sore trauell in childbirth be caused of adstriction, and binding, or astonishment, or, as it were, adarctation & penning in of the child, you must helpe it with dissoluing and releasing, by pouring in largely sweete wine & hoat. Also the decoction of fenugreeke, or mallowes, or lineseede, or also egs are good, because they are of a losening and mollifying vertue. Afterward you must nourish the partes about the priuy members, and the belly and loines with the aforesaid decoction, or with some other losening and mollifying medicine. Also it profiteth to vse hoat incessions and euaporations, and to haue the aire of the house enclyning to heate. Also it is good to vse infusions and annointings, with oiles that be hote in touching and vertue, and conuenient cataplasmes be good. And if neither a feuer, nor any thing else do let it, she must vse releasing and dissoluing bathes, & you must moue her, with bearing her in a chaire, in an aire that is meanely hote. Many doe vse to such violent shaking of the bodie. And if any woman be weake, and haue sore trauaile in childbirth through resolution of the bodie, you must comfort and refresh the bodie, with medicines that do thicken, and drawe together, and with such meates and drinkes as do recreate, restore, & adde strength to the bodie: as be incessions & sprincklings with mirtles, vine leaues, pomegranates, roses, smelling to vineger, and annointings with wine mixt with cold oile of roses. When the infant is ouer great, you must applie those things which can make wider, stretch out, and loosen the mouth of the matrice. If sore trauaile do chaunce through an innaturall forme of the child in comming foorth, you must bring him to a naturall forme and figure, as much as is possible, partly by putting backe, partly by drawing to you, partly by turning, and partly by making it straight. And if the head or foote, be sent out first, you may not draw out the child taking hold by that member: but put

Signa.

Cure of a fat woman.

Cure of a fearfull woman.

your fingers to the ſhoulders or haunches of the child,& thruſt vp that againe which is come forth into the conuenient place,if there be two or three,or mo children,& do thruſt altogether into the necke of the matrice,you muſt driue backe the reſt into the bottome of the womb,& bring that out firſt,which ſeemeth to be moſt ready: but if it do not come forth,becauſe the infant is dead, or hath a very great head, or through ſome other cauſe, you muſt come to drawing out of the child,or to cutting which is taught abundantly of *Ætius*,li. 16. *cap*.23.and of *Paulus lib.6.cap*. 74. For it is not our purpoſe to teach handie cure here. Moreouer if the tunicle or ſecundine of the childe be thicker and ſtronger, then that it may be broken,you muſt cut it. Thoſe that haue the humour,which is contained in the tunicles or ſecundine, flowing & running out before the conuenient time,ſo that the places be dried vp,you ſhall waſh it all about with whites of egs,with the decoction of mallowes, & fenugreeke ſtrained,or with iuyce of Ptiſan warmed. A medicine that doth vniuerſally helpe all that haue ſore trauellin child birth, is this that followeth. ℞. Cinnamon choſen.℥.ij. mirrhe,*caſia lignea*,ana.ℑ j. white amber.℥.j.ß. beate them together and make a fine powder, wherof miniſter in wine that is odoriferous,the weight of one drachme. Moreouer the child being borne,oftentimes it chanceth that the ſecundine doth ſticke faſt in the wombe, which if it chanceth, then ſometime the mouth of the matrice is found open,& ſometime ſhut, and the ſecundine many times is ſtill ioyned to the bottom of the wombe,& many times it is ſeparate. If therefore the mouth of the matrice be open , & the ſecundine which is left therin do cleaue to ſome part of the womb,being wound vp together like a ball,it may eaſily be drawen out. You muſt draw out the ſecundine with your left hand being warmed,& annointed with ſome fat thing, & put into the wombe. If the ſecundine be faſtened & knit to the bottome of the wombe,you ſhall likewiſe put in your hande, warmed and annointed with greace,and take hold of the ſecundine & draw it out:but you may not draw it ſtraight forth,leaſt the matrice come out with it:nor pull it very vehemently, but ſoftly & eaſily,firſt pulling it crooked,bringing it this way & that way:then after that,you may draw it ſomwhat harder, for by this meanes you ſhall louſen it from the faſtening. But if the mouth of the matrice be ſhut,you ſhal vſe perfuſions, & with the fingers of your left hand you ſhall labour to open it eaſily,& to make it wider by litle & litle. Which if you cannot bring to paſſe,it is good to apply about the priuities, foments,perfuſions & ointments that can mollifie, diſſolue & releaſe. If ſhe be ſtrong, you muſt put into her noſtrels at that time alſo ſneezing powder,made of *Caſtoreũ*,pepper & ſuch like. For *Hippocrates in* 5. *Aph*.49. writeth thus. that the ſecundine may come out, giue her ſneezing powder, and let her ſtop her noſe & mouth. Alſo you muſt miniſter vnto her potions that can prouoke menſtruis:which things aforeſaid,you muſt do the firſt and ſecond day.Moreouer ſhe muſt vſe ſuffumigations,ſeething in a pot, motherwort,*γνεος*, ſaueine,peniroyall,calamint,*dictemus* and ſuch like. Then put the pot vnder a cloſe chaire, vpon the which let the woman ſit, being compaſſed in round about with clothes. After that, if you find the mouth of the matrice opened, put in your hand and labour to pull out the ſecundine as is aforeſaide, but if it will not obey to come forth, you may not rent it, for within

Puluis optimus.

To draw out the ſecundine.

within a few daies after being rotten and turned into atter, it will fall out. But becauſe through the euill ſauour & ſmell, when it is rotted, it filleth the head and marreth the ſtomach. They that are troubled with this euill, muſt be continually perfumed. For which purpoſe theſe thinges are good: *Cardamonies*, *bdellium*, with ſaueine, frankenſence, *ſtorax*, *lapdanum*, wood of *Aloes*, and ſuch like. Alſo a perfuming with ieate by a pipe, which is put into the mouth of the matrice, doth profite maruellouſly. Alſo ſimples, ſuch as prouoke menſtruis, be good: as decoction of motherwort, and laurell berries, with *vinum mulſum*. Alſo make Peſſaries of mirrhe and *Cyclamminum* commixed with oile.

CHAP. LXV.

Of the Sciatica.

De Ischiade.

ISCHIAS in Greek, properly is called a moſt grieuous paine, which is wont to chance about the ioint, which the Greekes doe call *Iſchion*, the Latines *Coxa*, in Engliſh the huckle bone. The Latines call this diſeaſe *Iſchias*, and they that are afflicted with this diſeaſe, are called *Iſchiadici*. The barbarous ſort call this diſeaſe, *Sciatica*, and they call them that be diſeaſed with it *Sciatici*. It is cauſed through a groſſe & flegmatike humour, which being congealed, abideth in the ioint of the huckle bones. Therfore continuall crudities & rawneſſe, and vnmeaſurable vſing of venerious acts do not a litle helpe the ingendring of a *Sciatica*. Alſo ſomtime ſwift deambulations & walkings, and ſuppreſſion or ſtopping of the hemmorhides, & cuſtome of vomiting being omitted, & purgation of menſtruis, or alſo other familiar & accuſtomed emptyings being impedited & ſtopped, and neglecting of exerciſes. For ech of theſe doe ingender abundance of flegmatike humors. There goeth before this euil ſomtime paine of the muſcles that be nigh vnto it, & ſpecially of the loynes, ſomtime the beginning is in the huckle bone it ſelfe. Alſo ſometime it chanceth (that the paine of the huckle bone being taken away) there remaineth griefe only about the hammes: and to ſome about the ankles, but in ſome all the leg is equally vexed with paine. Alſo in many, there is paine about the priuy mẽbers, & then alſo the bladder being vexed, doth ingender difficultie in piſſing: and then chiefly the whole legge, from the haunches to the heeles ſuffereth paine. Let the cure be begun with voiding & purging of the humor that doth afflict the patient. And if the body do equally abound with all humors, before all other remedies, cut a veine in the hamme, or the outward ankle, or alſo in the arme, on that ſide that is diſeaſed. For ſometime the *Sciatica* is cured in one day, by this emptying out of the legges. But if the bodie be ſtuffed with a flegmatike and groſſe humour, you muſt beginne the cure with purging of that humour. For the which purpoſe, you muſt miniſter Clyſters often, made after this ſort, or in like maner. ℞. of Centorie, ſage, *Verbaſculi odorati*, rewe, *chamæpityos*. ana. *M*. j. rootes of gladon. ℥ j. *ſtechados*. ℥. iij ſeedes of anniſe and fennell. ana. ℥. ij. ß. agaricke of the beſt. ℥. ij. roote of polipodie. ℥. v. ſeeth theſe in ſufficient quantitie of water, vntill the third part. Then take of the licour of that decoction. ℥. xiij. of *hierapicra*. ℥. ß. of *electuarium nidum mainu*.

Ἰσχιας.

Cauſa.

Signa.

Curatio.

Clyſter.

℥.ij. of oile of lillies. ℥. ij. oile of rew. ℥. j. the yolkes of two egges, ſalt. ℥. j. ß. commixe them all and make a Cliſter. Alſo vomittings doth helpe them, that haue the *Sciatica*, much more then the purging downward by the belly, for that doth repell and put backe the humour downward ſuddenly. Therefore you muſt prouoke vomits in the beginning by and by after meate. But afterwarde you muſt miniſter vomitting medicines, beginning firſt with them that be eaſie. They that haue humours vehemently compact and thickened together, which can difficultly be diſſolued and looſened, cauſed through Phiſitions vſing ſharpe medicines out of time, ſuch be holpen by faſtening on of a verie great cupping glaſſe with ſcarifications. But in the *Sciatica* we do not vſe ſuch medicines as can repreſſe and ſtoppe the fluxe. For ſeeing the diſeaſe is placed in the bottome of the huckle bone, bloud is expelled from the veines and muſcles that be nigh adioyning to it, and is ſent thither. Therefore in the beginning of this diſeaſe, there is neede of medicines that can mitigate and aſſwage which neither do coole much, nor that do heate vehemently. For as thoſe things which doe coole, doe thruſt the humours violently to the ankle bone: ſo thoſe things that do vehemently heate, doe draw more matter out of the members adioyning. Moreouer you may not come to the vſing of ſharpe medicines, till after bloud letting or emptying by purgations. For if any man applie ſharpe medicines to the diſeaſed member, before the bodie be emptied or purged, he ſhall make the diſeaſe hard to cure, becauſe of a multitude of humours ſo thickened there, that they cannot be diſſolued. For beſides other things, it is made groſſe and viſcous, and through the heate and drineſſe of the ſharpe medicines, it ſuffereth as it were roaſting, or burning. Firſt therefore you muſt irrigate and ſprinkle the aggrieued place with oile of rew. After you muſt apply more effectuous medicines, which doe heate and can drawe humors from the bottome to the toppe, as be *oleum nulpinum*, oile of pepper, *oleum coſtiuum*, oile of iuniper, *vnguentum aragon*, *martiatum*, and *agrippa*. Alſo ſage, rew, laurell leaues, elder, roote of wallwort, peniroiall, ſauine, *opoponax*, *bdellium*, *ammoniacum* and ſuch like. Of the which you may make foments, ointments, emplaiſters and cerotes. But if the griefe be extreamely painfull, then vſe this, which followeth, for it is moſt excellent againſt this euill. ℞ roſen of the pine tree ℔. j. ß. *Galbanum*. ℥. v. melt them with a ſoft fire, and then ſtreine it through a cloth, and put vnto it of the pouder of maſticke. ℥. j. and then ſpread it warme vpon dogs leather, or lambes leather, and ſtricke it a good thicknes, and before you applie this plaiſter to the pained place, annoint the place with this ointment following. ℞. freſh hogs greace, ℥. j. ß. and take ſowes or monkes peaſon in number twentie, and beate them both well in a morter, till they be well incorporate, and therewith annoint the place and the plaiſter, and warme the plaiſter againſt the fire, till it be ſoft, and lay it to the agreeued place, and let it lie nine daies. If there be haires vpon the place, you muſt ſhaue them off firſt, and roule it well, leaſt it ſlippeth away, then euery day, morning and euening at ech time, let the patient take. ℥. j. of this electuarie. ℞. of the rootes of *Acarus*, or *gladian*, being made cleane. ℔. j. ſtampe thē very ſmall, (as poſſible you may doe) then take of clarified honie. ℔. iij. and put in the rootes by litle and litle, euer ſtirring it, and when it is well ſodden, put

Vomitus.

Cucurbita magna.

When ſharp medicins may be vſed.

Simples.

Emplaſtrum.

Vnguentum.

Electuarium.

put into it of cinnamon. ℥. j. made in very fine powder, which being well incorporate, keepe it to your vse, and at the end of the nine dayes, if the paine be not cleane gone, lay to the forenamed plaisters, other nine dayes, vsing the same electuary, and procure vomit, as before, euery sixth or seuenth day, for that doth greatly reuert the humor. But in the beginning of the griefe, apply to the aggrieued place againe and againe, sponges wet in the decoction of iuniper, or sage, or elder leaues. Afterward, vse this oyntment. ℞. of *vnguentum martiaton.* ℥. iij. oyle of *yreos*, and lillies, ana. ℥. ß. iuyce of rew, and *chamæ pityos.* ana. ℥. ij. hony. ℥. j. ß. sage, peniroyall, pepper, ana. ℥. ß. pellitory, stauesacre, ana. ℈. j. wax as much as is sufficient, and make an oyntment. Also the vsing of this cerote profiteth. ℞. *oleum costinum*, & *vulpinum*, ana. ℥. ij. ß. oile of pepper. ℥. ß. *opoponax*, *bdelium*, *storax*, ana. ℥. iij. roote of briony, salt peter, leaues of elder. ana. ℥. ij. *aristolochia rotunda*, rewe, ana. ℥. j. ß. *Euphorbium.* ℈. j. dissolue the gums in very sharpe vineger, and with turpentine & waxe, as much as is sufficient, make a cerote. And if the euill doe remaine still, you must vse clisters againe: and then fasten a very great cupping glasse with much flame to the huckle bone, making good deepe gashes with scarification. And if that the disease be not ended so, you must vse againe purging vomits, and the other remedies aforesayd, which being done, you must come to the vsing of *Dropaces*, and *Synapismes*, and so to the vse of burning medicines: amongst which, the roote of the herbe called Iberis, is not the worst being new, digged vp in sommer, and diligently braied, and mixed with a little olde swines greace, being layde and bound to the ioynt of the huckle bone, or to the whole shancke or leg. Also the leaues of it will do the same thing. And being so applied, let it lie not past two houres to women, but let it lie foure houres to men, if it be possible for thé to suffer it: for it raiseth swelling with burning and redneſſe, as a *Synapisme* is wont to do. Afterward bring the sicke into a bath, in the which, when he hath swet a little, bid him sit downe in the vessell, because of the biting heate, and compell him to suffer it strongly. For in the beginning, it is wont to bring byting and gnawing with burning heat, then bring him out: from which alwayes almost (as *Aetius* witnesseth) although they be caried in of other, they will go out alone vpon their feet. After the bathing, commixe much oyle with a very little wyne, and shake them together, and annoint it: then wipe off the humor with a sharpe cloath, and couer the leg it selfe with very soft wooll. And truely (this being done) it hath bene wont to need no other remedy for the cure. But if sometime it chaunce any part, or remembraunce of the euill to be left still, within a few daies after, you may vse againe the same remedy. And certaine dayes after, you may lay on the cerote, which is a litle before described. Moreouer, among burning and blistring medicines, this is good. ℞. *Mel anacardinũ*, leauen. ana. ℥. j. *cantharides*, (the wings cast away) ℥. ij. vineger, as much as is sufficient: and commixe them together. Or this is good. ℞. *Euphorbium*, salte peter. ana. ℈. ij. sope, quicke lime. ana. ℥. j. *mel anacardinum*, as much as is sufficient, so that all being mixed together, may be of the thickneſſe of hony. Let his diet be such, that his meat may be meanely thin, and easie of digestion. Let his exercise be walkings, continuall writhings, leapings, or dauncings and running. It is good alwaies to haue the body soluble. And if the disease hath en-

Aliud vnguẽtum.

Ceratum.

Cauſticum.

Aliud.

Victus ratio.

dured long, and cannot be driuen away with the aforesaide medicines, you must vse burning in three or foure places, after that sort, as *Paulus* teacheth in lib. 6. cap. 76. and *Aetius*, lib. 12. cap. 30.

CHAP. LXVI.

Of the goute in the feete and ioyntes.

DE PODAGRA ET ARTHRITIDE.

Podagra. Arthritis.

PODAGRA & *Arthritis* in Latine, be diseases of one kinde. And therefore they differ not, but in places diseased. For in both of them there is weakenesse of the ioyntes, and an vnnaturall humour floweth to them. And if that the fluxe of the humor doe flow to the feete, that is called *Podagra* in Latine. But if the humour flow to other ioyntes, it is called in Greeke *Arthritis*, in Latine, *articularis morbus*, the ioint sickenesse. Sometime, this euill doeth rushe in sodainely, being equally dispersed throughout all the ioyntes. But for the most part, the fluxe is woont to fall in priuily, and by little and little. For in some, paine doeth inuade the ioynt of the great toe, but in some the end of the heele is afflicted. Againe in some other, the hollownesse of the foote is grieued, either through chafing of the shoe, or some such like thing. The gout taketh his beginning at the feete, whereuppon it taketh the name, and it proceedeth vpward by litle and litle to the knees, and also to the iointes of the huckle bones, and the thighes. Afterward to the handes, euery ioint particularly being grieued. They that are taken extreamely with this disease, they haue paine in the backebone ioints, and in the ioints of the ribs, and eie lids, and to some paine in the throte also: neither is there any connexion or knitting of bones, which is free from this euill. This disease is engendred of continuall crudities and drunkennes, and of immoderat vsing of lechery, through vehement and swift deambulations and walkinges, through long standing, or often riding, by suppression and stopping of accustomed excretions & fluxes, and through intermission of familiar exercises. Sorrowes, cares, watchings, and other perturbations of the minde doe not onely engender this euill, but also do breed hurtfull and corrupt humors. Also many times the cholick being naughtely cured, is wont to be a cause, why the ioint sickenesse should follow. But, for the most part, a disposition to this kinde of disease proceedeth from the parents to the children, and their posterity. Also vniuersally aboundance of all raw humours is the cause of this disease. The humours that do abound, and doe fasten them selues in the ioints, either be sanguine, or cholericke, or flegmaticke, or melancholious. Also sometime this euill is engendred of commixtion of humors. The outward causes may easily be knowen by the telling of the sicke, or them that be about him. The difference of humors you shal know by the signes following. The humour of bloud, if it be much in quantity, it causeth fulnesse, and great swelling, not onely of the veines, but about the skin of the whole member that is grieued, and maketh it red in colour. They which are afflicted with this euill, cannot suffer remedies to be applied that be very colde, or very hotte, and they are continually vexed with paine, because the flowing of the bloud doth chaunce continually and equally. Their vrines are yellow, and meane of substance. Also their veines do abound with bloud, and

Causa.

Signa.

Signes if bloud doe flow.

are puffed vp and ſwollen. The conuenient age for this euill, is youth. Alſo meats that engender good iuice, and nouriſh abundantly were eaten before, and exerciſes were neglected. The time of the yeare in the which the patient is moſt afflicted is ſpring time. If the humour that floweth into the iointes, be cholerick, you may know it by the yellowiſh colour of the skin. Somtime rednes is mixed with the yellow color, that is whē choler is cōmixed with bloud. Alſo there is ſenſible heate and ſharpe paine like launcing. Alſo moiſtnes ſodainely burſteth out of the skinne, without euident ſwelling. The patient is eaſed with cooling medicines, and reioyceth, but with hotte thinges his paines augment. In the ſtate and ſtrength of the fit, a feauer taketh him, and a very great thirſt. His vrine is cytrine, and ſometime alſo it is ſharpe. There is wont to goe before this diſeaſe, great cares, and wrath watchings, & werines, and a diet, that was apt to engender choler. The age, complexion, and time of the yeare, that is hote and dry, be apt to cauſe this cholericke fluxe. And if the humour that floweth into the ioints be flegmaticke, the ſwelling will giue place to the thruſting of the finger, and it is looſe and moderat. The colour of the mēber afflicted, is white. Old age is moſt afflicted with this humor, and a complexion cold and moiſt, and it chanceth in the winter time. His vrine is thinne and watery. There went before it idlenes, reſt, and a diet that engendreth flegmaticke humours. If it be ſalt fleume, great ich, and gnawing, or byting doth trouble the diſeaſed members. If the fluxe to the ioints be of melancholy, which chanceth but ſeldome, the colour of the ſwelling is blackiſh. The age, which doth moſt engender this flux, is the declination of middle age. Alſo the complexion is cold and dry, and the time of the yeare, harueſt, a countrey that is cold and dry, and like ſtate of the aire, and a diet that engendreth melancholy. When the humour that floweth into the ioynts, is bloud, by and by you muſt let bloud, not once onely, but often taking it away by litle and litle: for if you doe omit bloud letting, and doe vſe repercuſſiue medicines, you ſhall be an author of great euil. For the bloud being driuen back from the vnnoble members, it ruſheth vp to the principal members, and that be neceſſary to life. Therefore in fluxes of bloud, letting of bloud is very neceſſary, ſpecially in them that abound with bloud. You muſt cutte a veine in the arme beneath, right againſt the leg that is vexed with the fluxe. And if the right hand be vexed with paine of this diſeaſe, cutte a veine in the right legge, about the hamme, or the anckle, or the ſole of the feete: for a veine being cut right againſt the member that is afflicted, it is of great efficacy and ſtrength. Then ſpecially muſt bloud letting be vſed, when this euill beginneth firſt to inuade anie man. For they that be vexed often with this flux of bloud, do feele more hurt, then helpe of bloud letting, ſpeciallie if their body be weake & cold. After bloud letting, you muſt apply remedies to the agrieued mēber, which doe neither coole greatlie, leaſt they ſhould driue together, and thicken the humors, nor heat vehemently, leſt they ſhould draw mo humors vnto the diſeaſed mēber. Therefore you muſt ſprinckle the grieued place with old vineger, & oile of roſes mixed together, ſpecially if the cauſe of the paine do ſeeme to be deep within. For vineger of his own proper thinnes, going into the depth, maketh a way for the oile of roſes, which naturally can eaſe pains. But if the pain be aloft

Signes of cholericke fluxe.

Signes of flegmaticke fluxe.

Signes of melancholy flowing.

Cure of bloud letting.

Localia.

nigh the skinne, you shall helpe it greatly with oyle and wine, applying it in
Cataplasmata. sommer warme, in winter hot. Afterward also you must vse cataplasmes, which can ease, and cease paine, without any prouoking of fluxes, made of the meale of fenugreeke, bareley, beans, lupines, chammomil, and such like: and you must see that those things be euer hot, which may well be, if they be cõtinually chãged, and couered ouer aloft with wooll. Also this medicine profiteth not a little. ℞. goates milke. ℥.v. the yolkes of two egs, oyle of roses. ℥. j. saffron, ℥.ß. crums of bread as much as is sufficient, that it may haue the forme of a cataplasme, stampe these, till they be well commixed together, and then apply thereof to the member that is grieued. Also you may make an emplaister or cerote of oyle of roses, vineger, rosen, waxe, *galbanum*, gum ammoniacke, frankensence, saffron, and such like. You must giue him meates, which doe extenuate, and that do nourish but little, as be pot herbes. Let him abstaine altogether from flesh, except it be birds of mountains. Let him vse fishes that breede in stony waters. Wine if the intemperaunce of the sicke may suffer it, must altogether be taken away: for it is almost the only reason, wherby health should follow: which, seeing among a thousand, scarce one doth obserue, it is not marvaile, though there be very few which be deliuered from this disease at these daies. In steed of wine let him vse water, wherein cinnamon, annise seedes, or such like hath bin sodden: or that drinke, which is called foolishly now adaies *ypocras:* the making wherof you may finde before in the chapter of the Palsey. Let the sicke diligently auoide fruite and carnall lust. Also he ought to haue a soluble belly alwayes, that can auoide out the ordure readily alone: which, if it do not well, wash it with some easie clister. If through flowing of choller, the disease in the iointes be caused, then your labour must be to voide and purge out the humour that doth vexe the patient, which you must doe, aswell by vomiting, as by the belly downewarde. Therefore you must surely purge them that be thus afflicted, by medicines that draw out choler. After that, vntill the full state of it, you must apply medicines that haue vertue to coole & restraine, as be those that are made of singreene, green roses, sharpe sorrell, nightshade, plantaine, and such like, often before rehearsed. In this kinde of fluxe, many times, because of the vehemency of the paine, you must vse such medicine, as can cause astonishment. For the which purpose, it is good to apply the medicine which we described before, of gotes milke, crummes of bread, saffron and yolks of egges, with the which, you must commixe poppy seeds. ℥.iij. or *opium*. ℥.ß. or more, or lesse according to the paine. Also, for the same purpose, leaues of hemlocke and henbane do profit, being applyed and layd on. But, you must note, and take heede, that, when you be compelled to vse stupefactiue thinges in feruent and vehement paines, that afterward you doe recreat and nourish those members by such things, as doe heate. For vnlesse you doe so, you shall make those members weake and intemperate, and so they shall be subiect to a perpetuall fluxe, and shall soone catch hurt in their actions. Heating medicines, be origan, sauory, mustar seede, pepper, and such like. Also you must helpe to prouoke sweating with heating and rubbing of the body: but so, that you touch not the aggrieued member. Moreouer, you must minister in drinke those things, that do prouoke vrine: for such do voide out choler by the vrine.

Victus ratio.

Why few be cured of the goute at these daies.

Cure of a cholericke flux.

Stupefacientia.

Note.

Also

Also such things ministred as do cause sleepe, are wont to doe good, because the fluxe is stopped and dried vp by them, specially, if they be ministred after a purgation. You must giue them meats that do coole, but not that do moisten: for moistnes encreaseth the flux. Let them not suffer hunger, for that maketh choler sharper. Of fruits, let them vse restrictiue apples & medlars, and other that do coole, and stop, or let the fluxe. Let them abstaine altogether frō wine, as is aforesayd. They which are diseased through flowing of fleume, you must begin the cure of them with purging of fleume. The flegmaticke humour is auoided by vomiting, but neuertheless also downeward by the belly. But the best purging in this euil, is downeward by the belly, whether the disease sticke about the hands or the feete: and so much the more, if the fluxe be in all the ioyntes of the body. For the way that is most familiar, and least perillous for fleume, is to goe out by the guttes. For if it were drawen by violence vpward to the stomacke, and not purged out, it causeth peril. Therefore it is more safe and healthfull to purge it downeward. But before you minister purging medicines, you must minister those things that haue vertue to cut, extenuate and diuide, that by this meanes the grosse humours may be preparate, and made apt to purge. If emptying may not be done by purging, then they must vse hūger and famine many daies, for they that be flegmaticke of nature, can suffer hunger easily and without hurt. Hereupon *Hippocrates* saith 7. *Aphor.* 6. It is good for the bodies that haue moist flesh to vse hunger: for the hunger drieth the bodies. Also they must vse discussiue and dissoluing frictions, and strong clisters and medicins that prouoke vrine: but you must apply outwardly such medicines as can ease and cease paine, and which can dissolue and dry moderatly, of which we spake a little before. But in the beginning of the disease, you must mixe with them some things, that haue vertue to restraine and bind. After the beginning, you must vse onely dissoluing and discussiue thinges. The gentlest is this: leaues of *Althæa*, sodden and beaten alone, or with floure, or barely meale applied to it. Also the roote of it sodden in *aqua mulsa*, and stamped and applied is good. And this oyntment is good. ℞. of the oiles of laurell, and *ireos*, ana. ℥. j. old swines greace, butter, ana. ℥. iij. the marrow of a hart. ℥. ij. fine turpentine. ℥. v. *galbanum* dissolued in vineger. ℥. j. Isope, roote of *althæa*, fenugreeke seed. ana. ℈. ij. waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an oyntment. Moreouer let the meates that you giue to nourishe him, be drie of nature, and small of nourishing, as is iuice of rice, rootes, and such like: but yet flesh of the birdes of the mountaines, rosted is not hurtfull for them. Capers with *acetum mulsum*, doth maruellously profite. Giue vnto him wine, in very little quantity, at certaine times, and let it be thin, yellow and old. They that are diseased through flowing of melancholy, they must be emptied either with bloudletting, or by purgation. Vse bloudletting, when the bloud is infected with melancholy. And vse purgations, when the patient declineth to melancholy: but if both these abound together, it is not sufficient for you to vse one of the aforesayd things. But first, cutte a veine, and then vse a purging medicine: which thing you must also doe in other euils that haue neede of double purging. In the beginning of the disease, and in the very time of emptying and purging, you must vse such things as can represse, stop, and also heate sensibly.

Diet.

Cure of a flegmaticke fluxe.

Flegmaticke folke can suffer hunger easily.

Victus ratio.

Vnguentum.

Cure of a melancholy fleum

After purging, vſe thoſe things that can gently heate, attenuate and diſſolue or diſcuſſe, as is afore taught. But becauſe knobbes and hard ſwellings do engender afterward in the ioynts, aſwell becauſe of the groſſeneſſe, and earthy hardnes of the humor that hath flowed thither, and alſo through the vſing of immoderate diſcuſſiue and drying medicines, without mixing of ſuch with them, as haue a mollifying vertue. Therefore to take thoſe knobs away, you muſt vſe thoſe medicines, which be declared of vs before in the Chapter of hardnes of the ſpleene. But ſpecially very old and ſharpe cheeſe, braied in the decoction of very fatte and old ſwines fleſh is good to be applied. Alſo, for this euill, figges brayd and laid on are good. Alſo *Althea*, twiſe ſodden, oates, nettles, briony roote, round roores, dill, ſothernwood, mayweede, horehound leaues, mixed with pitch, ſulphure and wine. Alſo you muſt commixe fat and greaces of ſwine, goates, calues, and geeſe. Alſo all marrowes & other things that haue vertue to mollifie and ſoften. And alſo bathings, after the inflammation is ceaſed, is moſt commodious, and profitable to all that haue the gout. While they waſh them, put ſpunges wet in vineger & ſalt mixt together, round about the diſeaſed places, that they may remaine ſafe from humours flowing to it. They muſt waſh them ſelues, not once onely, but often, in an aire that is altogether meane and moderate. But they maynot tary long in hotte water. It is beſt therefore that they be ſprinckled and wet with hotte water, poured on them. Alſo it is profitable, that all the body be rubbed with dry linnen clothes. Moreouer, they that be cured of the goute, ſhall defend themſelues afterward from it, by this means: Firſt, twiſe in a yeare, that is, at ſpring time and autumne, if nothing doe let it, let him bloud largely. Alſo about thoſe times, and oftner, let him vſe purging medicines. Alſo it is neceſſary for him to eate little meate, and to abſtaine from fulneſſe. Alſo you muſt vſe meates that be eaſie of digeſtion, and which readily be diſtributed into the members of the body, and be without excrementes. Let him abſtaine altogether from wine, or let him vſe it very ſcarcely. Let him vſe exerciſe very often, and that before meate: for labour (as *Hippocrates* ſaith) muſt goe before meate. And to conclude, they that deſire to be free from the goute, let them remember this ſhort and moſt holeſome precept of *Hippocrates*: the way to help and preſerue health, is not to be filled with meates, and to be vnſlothfull in labouring. Alſo let his ſleepes and venerous actes be in a meane. As for remedies in this caſe, let ſalt be brayed ſmall in oile, and the ioynts rubbed therewith, for it helpeth greatly all thoſe that wil be free from this euill, except they be of a wonderfull dry temperature. And he muſt vſe annointing with that, morning and euening all the daies of his life.

Cure of knobs.

Bathes.

A defence for the goute.

The end of the third Booke.

THE FOVRTH BOOKE TEACHING THE CVRE OF FEAVERS.

CHAP. I.

An exposition of feauers.

FEBRIVM EXPLICATIO.

FEBRIS in Latine, a feauer in Englisſh, it is an vnnaturall heat, which taking his beginning at the heart, is ſpread by the arteries and veins into the whole body, and doth hurt, and let the operation of it. For although a man be hotter now then he was before, it followeth not, that he hath a feauer, vnleſſe the heate being immoderatly encreaſed, do offend the man, and hurt his operations & actions. Moreouer, as there be three things (*Hippocrates* witneſſing) which doe ordaine and conſtitute our body (that is to ſay) things contained, things containing, and things that flow about violently, (that is) the hard and ſound members in the body, the humor and the ſpirite or aire: ſo alſo there be three kindes of ſimple feuers. For if immoderate heat be kindled in the ſpirites and aire of mans body, it is called in Greeke, *Ephemera*, and in Latine *Diaria febris*, and in Engliſhe it may be called one day feauer. This feuer is like to hote aire or wind, included in a bladder or bottle: for, like as the aire heateth the bottle, that it is in, euen ſo, the ſpirites of a mans body, being heat more then they ſhould be, doe heat all the whole body. There chanceth in this kind of feauer but one fit, and for the moſt part it endureth but one day of his owne proper nature, whereupon, it is called *Diaria febris*, (that is) the one day feauer. For they ceaſe after the firſt fit, if they be rightly handled. But you muſt note, that there be feauers called *Diariæ*, which laſt vntill the third day, as thoſe be which are engendred of thickening and ſtopping of the conduites and paſſages. For although that this word, *Diaria*, be not of the very ſubſtance of ſuch feuers, yet becauſe they lacke a conuenient name, to the intent that our teaching ſhould be briefe and euident, notwithſtanding that the word repugn againſt it, ſeeing that they be of the ſame nature that true *Diaries* be of, they may moſt rightly be called *Diariæ*, as *Galen* ſheweth abundantly in lib. 9 *therapeutices* cap. 1.) Hereupon it is euident, that there be two kinds of *Diaries*: One, which is named *Diari* ſimply and without adiection or putting too of any word, which feuer doth not extend aboue the ſpace of a naturall day (that is) 24. houres. An other kinde there is,

Febris quid.

Three principall kindes of ſimple feauers.

Ἐφήμερα.

Diaria.

Note.

Diaria ſimplex.

Diaria pluriũm dierum.

Putrida.

which is called *Diaria plurium dierum*, (that is) a diary of many daies. It is called by an other name of *Galen* (that is) *Synochus non putrida*. The second kinde of simple feauers is, when as immoderate heate is kindled in the humors, and it is called *putrida* (that is) rotted, onely because the humours in this kinde of feauers do putrifie and rotte. It is like vnto hot water: for as that doth heat a cold vessell, that it is poured into: so also humours, hote aboue nature, doe heate the body. The humours do putrifie and rot either within the vessels or without. If they rot within the vessels, then either all the humours do putrifie together, or else one alone. If all the humours do putrifie equally and a little within all the vessels or veines, or specially within the greatest it causeth a feuer called *Synocha putrida*, which, to the intent you may perceiue what it meaneth: yo must note first that the Phisitions of Greece doe call that feauer *Synochus*, in the which one fitte remaining still continually from the beginning to the ending, extendeth and continueth many daies. Or, it is a feauer which is without any great mutation vntill the end of it. This feauer may be called of the Latines *continens febris*, and is in English a constant or continuall feuer. But although there be one forme and likelyhood of such feauers, whereupon they name them *Synochus*, yet their nature is not all one. For some of them haue manifest figues and tokens of rottennesse: and some againe haue none at all, which (as we said a little before) be of the kinds of *Diaria*. We to the intent that our doctrine may be the more euident, doe call the first *Synochus putrida*, and the last we call, *Synochus non putrida*. And in this place you may not follow the barbarous sort, which call the last of them *Synocha*, and the first *Synochus*: seeing the Greekes (as *Galen* witnesseth) conteine them both vnder the name of *Synochus*. Of those feuers, which are named *Synochi*, there be three sundry sorts or differences: for some of them doe endure of an equall vehemency and force from the beginning vntill the ending: those the Greekes call *homotonos*, and *acmastikos*, (that is) remaining still in the same force and vigour. Some alwaies encrease and augment by little and little, those the Greekes do call *anabatikos*, and *epacmastikos*, (that is) encreasing and augmenting more and more. Some doe decrease and diminish by little and little, those the Greekes call *paracmastikos*, (that is) decreasing. Moreouer, if one onely humour doe putrifie and rot within the vessels, it kindleth a feauer, which the Greekes do call *Synechis*, and the Latins, *continua febris*, in English a continuall feuer, which is, when the feauer doth not leaue the patient, but it hath a certaine remission and slaking in euery fit. Whereby it is euident that the feauer *Synochus* and *Synechis* (that is) a constant feauer and a continuall feauer doe differ much a sunder. For in a feauer *Synochus*, there is no remission or slaking of the heate, but in the feauer *Synechis*, there is sensible remission and slaking in euery fitte. Also the feauer *Synochus*, hath but one onely fit: but in *Synechis* there be many fittes. And they two agree in this, that neither of them doth leaue the patient sometime. Of feauers that are called *Synechis*, or else *continuæ febres*, there be three kindes: for if choler do putrifie and rotte within the vessels, it causeth a continuall tertian, or a burning feauer, which is called of the Greekes *causos*. If fleume doe putrifie or rot within the vessels, there engendreth a continuall quotidian. But if melancholy do putrifie and rot within the vessels, there engendreth

Σύνοχος.

Two kindes of Synochus. Synochus putrida, non putrida.

1 *Three sorts of Synochus.*

2

3

συνοχος. *What a continuall feauer is.*

Difference betweene Synochos, and συνεχυς.

Three kindes of continuall feauers.

Tertiana continua.

gendreth a continuall quartan. And these continuall feauers be somewhat like to the intermitting feauers, of the which we will speake straight way. For a continuall tertian, agreeth with a true intermitting tertian, in that, that it hath a fit, aswell as it, euery third day. And a continuall quotidian agreeth, with an intermitting quotidian, because ech of them hath a fit euery day. Also a continuall quartaine agreeth with an intermitting quartain, because both of them causeth a fitte euery fourth day. But yet these feauers doe differ two waies, notwithstanding that they agree in the humor that causeth them. First they differ, because in continuall feauers the putrified humour is contained within the veines, but in intermitting feauers, that humour is dispersed into all the members of the body, whereuppon it chaunceth through violence of spreading of humours, the feauers are purged out by them selues. Hereby also they differ another way, (that is) the intermitting feauers slake berweene the fits, but the continuall feauers doe not cease at all betweene the fits. Hitherto we haue rehearsed what kindes of feauers humors putrified within the vessels doe cause and engender. Now we will expound, what feauers humours putrified without the vessels doe conceiue, engender, and kindle. If therefore an humour doe putrifie and rotte without the vessels, it causeth an intermitting feauer, which is so called, because the fit doeth not endure continually, but it hath a slaking or ceasing, and leaueth off betweene the fits. It may most aptly be called in Latine *febris interpolata*, because the fittes come and renew at their times: some call it *deficiens febris*. Of this feauer there be three kindes, (that is) a Tertian, a Quotidian, and a Quartaine. A pure and exquisite Tertian is caused when choler doth putrifie and rotte without the vessels. It is so called because it ceaseth one day, and commeth againe the third day. An exquisite Quotidian, which in Greek is called *Amphimerinon*, it is caused of sweet fleume being putrified and rotten without the vessells, and it is so called because it returneth euery day. We did not rashly say sweete fleum: for if glasen fleume doe putrifie and rot a little, it causeth a feauer called *Epialos*. And this *Epialos* is a feauer, in which the patient is both feuerous, and feruently colde, and doth feele both heat and cold immoderat in all parts of his body, both at one time together. To the aforesaide feauer doth belong a feauer, in Greeke called *Lypiria*. In this feauer there is heate felt within, and in the bowelles and entrals: but in all the outward parts, there is cold felt. An intermitting Quartaine is engendred of Melancholy putrified and rotted without the vessels. It is so named because it ceaseth two dayes, & returneth againe the fourth day. The third kinde of simple feauers in generall is caused, when heate is kindled, in the sound, hard, and fleshy parts of mans body, & it is called both in Greeke and Latine, *Hectica febris*, and in English the feauer Ethicke. This feuer is like to a hote vessell, for as the vessell doth heate the water that is poured into it: so also the feauer Ethicke, which sticketh in the sound and fleshy parts of the body, and is infixed in them, is able to heate all the humors of the body. And if this feuer doth so encrease, that it doth melt and consume the whole body, and all the hard and sound parts of it: then it is called *Hectica marasmodes*, and *marasmus*. And this (as *Galē* witnesseth) is vncureable. For although you might quench the heate, yet the drinesse which is left, being proper to old age, will

Quotidiana continua.
Quartana continua.
Likenesse betweene continuall and intermitting feauers.
Difference betweene continuall and intermitting feauers.
Intermitens febris.
Interpolata.
Tertiana intermittens.
Quotidiana exquisita.
Epialos.
Lypiria.
Quartana intermittens.
Hectica febris.
Marasmus.

kill the patient. Besides the feauers now of vs rehearsed, there is another feauer which is caused of breathing in of pestilent aire. But seeing this feauer (as *Galen* witnesseth *Libro primo de differentijs febrium, Capite quinto*,) is engendred of rottennesse, for the aire about vs being corrupted with a putrifying, and rotting euaporation, causeth also the humours of the body to rotte. Therefore it may be contained vnder the second principall kinde of feauer called *Putrida*. Moreouer in this place, we may not let passe to tell, that some feauers be engendred without disease or griefe in any member of the body, and some feauers be kindled through the inflammation of some member. Therfore, as the former feauers haue their names: so also each of these that follow haue their proper names. For that feauer which is engendred through inflammation of the filme or cal that girdeth in the ribs, it is called *Pleuretica febris*. That which engendreth through inflammation of the lungs is called, *Peripneumenica febris*. That which chaunceth through inflammation of the stomack, the liuer, or the lungs, is called in Greeke *typhodes* (that is) inflaming or burning. Likwise all other feuers, which engender through inflammation of any member, haue diuerse names, according to the diuersity of the member. Therefore in euery sicke person you must diligently discerne feauers which come without disease of other members, from those feauers which engender through inflammation of some member. Of the aforesayd seuers, some be *Typice*, (that is) certaine and ordinate: and some be, *Erraticæ*, (that is) vncertaine and vnordinate. *Typicæ* be such feauers, whose fits and slakings from them doe come iustly at their appointed time. *Erratice* are such feuers as be contrary to these, for they keepe no certaine and iust time, nor any order of fits, nor the intermission betweene them, as be those feauers, which engender of melancholy, which is moued in certaine members, and in some it remaineth vnmoueable, in other members it putrifieth, or beginneth to boile. Hitherto we haue rehearsed the kindes of simple feauers: it remaineth therefore, that we declare briefly the kindes of compound and mixt feauers. Therefore compound feauers are caused two waies: first, because these feuers aforesayd (that is) a Tertian, Quotidian, and Quartane, may be mixed together without the disease of any member. Secondarily, because these feauers, which be engendred through inflammation of some member, may commixe together. The feauers that come without inflammation of any member, are sometime complicate and ioyned together, and sometime they are altogether confounded. Complication (as *Galen* witnesseth) is when the feauers inuade the patient at diuerse houres. And confusion is, when they begin at one time. There be foure complications or ioyning together of the feuer Tertian and Quotidian (as *Galen* witnesseth.) One, when a Tertian and Quotidian are mixed together being both intermitting feuers. Another is, when an intermitting Tertian is ioyned with a continuall Quotidian. This is called by a peculiar name of the Greekes *Hemitriteus*, because all his nature hath the halfe part of each of the sayde feauers. The third is when an intermitting Quotidian is mixed with a continuall Tertian. The fourth is when a continuall Quotidian is ioyned with a continuall Tertian. To be short, feauers of one kind are complicate and ioyned with feuers of the same kind, as continuall with continuall, and intermitting with intermitting feuers, and Tertians

Pestilent feauer.

Feuers engendred by inflãmation of some member.

The kindes of compound feauers.

Complications of Quotidians and Tertians.

Hemitriteus.

Tertians with other Tertians, and one Quartane with another Quartane. Also it chanceth many times, that feuers of diuerse kinds are coupled together as Quotidians with Tertians, and each of them with Quartanes, and sometime intermitting feauers are mixed with continuall feauers. Moreouer after the same sort, feauers which are engendred with inflammation of some members, are sometime mixed together, as if diuerse members doe each of them kindle a feauer proper to them selues, or the affection where they engender, be mixed. Seeing therefore, that feauers are compounded and mixed many sundry waies: first the kinds of simple feuers must be with great diligence perfectly learned of them that study Phisicke: for vnlesse they know them verie perfectly, it can not be that euer they should knowe well compound feauers. Therefore seeing the knowledge of them is very hard, in so much that oftentimes cunning Phisitians are deceiued in iudging of them: you must seeke the signes and tokens, whereby you may know them, diligently out of *Galen*, who hath taught this thing more exactly then any man. We, to helpe the memory of the studious haue comprehended all the kindes of simple feauers in this Table following.

TABVLA FEBRIVM.

Of simple feauers there be three principall kindes. For vnnaturall heat is kindled and engendred either in the, &c.

- Spirites or breath, and doth cause Ephemera, or Diaria, whereof bee two kindes, that is to say.
  - Ephemera simpliciter or diaria, one day feuer. And Diaria, pluriũ dierũ otherwise called Synochus non putrida, enduring three or four daies.
- Or in the humours, and causeth putrida febris, a rotten feuer, they do rot in two places either
  - Within the vessels, & that two waies, for either,
    - All the humors do putrify and rot equally, & cause a feuer called Synochus putrida.
    - Or one only humour putrifieth, and so causeth a continuall feuer: and if there be putrefaction of
      - Choler it causeth a cõtinuall Tertian or a burning feuer.
      - If fleume do putrfie it causeth a continuall quotidian.
      - If melancholy do putrifie, it causeth a continuall quartane.
  - Or they putrify without the vessels, and cause an intermitting feauer. For if there be putrefaction of &c.
    - Choler it causeth an intermitting Tertian.
    - If fleum that is
      - Sweet do rot it causeth an intermitting quotidian, Exquisit and pure
      - Glasé: it causeth Epialos.
    - If melancholy do rot, it causeth an intermitting feauer quartane.
- Or in the fleshy parts, and causeth either. Hectica febris. or Marasmus.

CHAP. II.

Of one daie Feauer.

De Diaria.

Ἐφήμερα quid.

Diaria *Febris* in Latine, *Ephemera* in Greeke: in Englisſh one day feauer. It is that which hath one onely fitte, finiſhing for the moſt in one day, at the moſt, of his owne nature. For it endeth after the firſt fitte, and doth not exceede, nor paſſe a naturall day, if it be rightly vſed. And that, becauſe of the matter wherein it is, (that is) the ſpirite of breath which is eaſily diſſolued and diſperſed. Therefore *Galen* doeth moſt worthily call this, the moſt ſimple feauer, becauſe it is the ſhorteſt, and the moſt gentle feuer, being nothing malignant. Therefore if any thing in this feauer be committed either by ignorance of the Phiſitions, or through intemperance of the ſick, or by errors of the miniſters & aſſiſtants, whereby it turneth into an other kind of feauer, that doth not chaunce through the nature of this feauer.

Cauſa.

Diaria febris is cauſed, when as the ſpirite or breath is inflamed and heat aboue nature without any putrefaction or rottenneſſe. And that chanceth many waies: ſomtime through conſtipation binding or thickning of the skinne, which ſtoppeth and keepeth in the vapours or ſpirites which were wont to flow out by the pores, which becauſe they be hote and ſharpe, therefore they engender a feauer. Sometime it is cauſed through wearineſſe, & vehement defatigation. Alſo through watchings, crudities, and lacke of digeſtion, ſadneſſe, feare, ire, vehement care of the minde, burning of the ſunne, cold, hunger, drunkenneſſe, and ſwelling of the kernels in the throte, and ſuch like, which can heate the ſpirites and inflame them.

Signa.

The ſignes whereby *Diaries* are knowen, are of two ſorts: for ſome ſignes be common to all *Diaries*, and ſome be proper and peculiar to eech cauſe.

Common ſignes ſixe.

The common ſignes be ſixe in number, whereof the firſt is the pulſe. For all the

1 *Diaries*, as much as in them is, do change the pulſe in greatnes, ſwiftneſſe, and oftenneſſe. But it keepeth exquiſitely that order, ſoftneſſe and equality, which

2 is according with nature. The ſecond common ſigne is the vrine, which in *Diaries* is altogether according to nature, or doeth little turne from a naturall ſtate. An vrine, that accordeth with nature, is ſubruſe in colour, meane in ſubſtance, hauing in it a reſidence white, light, and equall. The third token is the

A naturall vrine.

3 4 equality of heat which in al *Diary* feuers is gẽtle, pleaſant, & eaſie. The fourth ſigne is the maner of ending of it, for all *Diaries* are looſened and ended by a breath or vapor, which cannot be perceiued, or by abundant vapours or moiſtures, or ſweet ſweets. The fift is the wanting of euill ſymptomats, & accidẽts:

5 as be vehement paine of the head and ſtomach, and other parts, abhorring of

6 meats, vnquietnes, vnſatiable thirſt, and ſuch other like. The ſixt and common ſign is, that all *Diary* feuers be engendred of an outward cauſe which the Phiſitions at theſe dayes call a primitiue cauſe. But the particular ſignes, whereby

Particular ſignes of diaries

each *Diaria* doth differ frõ other, be theſe that follow. They which haue a *Diaria* feauer, cauſed through watching, there chaunceth to them a naughty colour, and ſwelling of the face, heauy motion of the eyes, for they ſcant lift vp

Signes of watchings.

the eye liddes, there is moyſtnes of the haires of the eie liddes, and ſmall pulſes. For watching (as *Hippocrates* ſaith) ſeeing it letteth digeſtion, it engendreth

abun-

abundance of crude and raw humours and vapours, it diminisheth the natu-
rall heate, and vnlooseneth the body, whereupon there followeth the tokens
aforesayd. To be short, watchings doe reuoke and pull backe nature from di-
gesting: therefore they cause great crudity and rawnesse, as well in the braine,
as in the rest of the body, whereupon also doth chaunce the tokens aforesaid.
The signes of a diary, caused of care and sorrow be these, leannes of the body. *Signes of care*
If sorrow be the cause, it is clearer, if care, it is darker. Also hollownesse, and *and sorrow.*
drinesse of the eyes doth signifie both the sayd effects: but in thoughts and co-
gitations it is least, because the spirites and humours are lesse consumed. And
it is most euident in sorrow. Also there follow these effectes, a certaine vnac-
customed paleness or swartnesse, so that the skinne is destitute of her natu-
rall colour. They which haue a diary through wrath or furious anger, they
haue neither hollowness of eyes, nor euill colour of the face, but rather their *Signes of an-*
eyes seeme to sticke out further, and their face is red, and there is loftines of *ger.*
the pulses. So also the signs of the rest of the diaries being engendred through
perturbation of the minde, may chiefly be knowen by the pulses. For in sad- *Signes of sad-*
nesse the spirites are caried inward, and therefore the pulses be small, feeble, *nes.*
and rare. In feare new begun, the bloud and spirits runne inward as it were to *Signes of feare*
the spring head, and the minde is troubled. For nature being vexed, drieth
the spirites hither and thither, which through mouing are inflamed, whereby
the pulses are made swifte, necessity compelling them, and the minde being
chafed maketh them vnequall and sharpe. In old feare (the spirits being dis-
persed and vertue being feeble,) it causeth such pulses, as we speake off before
in sadnesse. They which haue a *Diaria* feuer, through burning and heat of the *Signes of Sun-*
Sunne, their skinne is hot and dry, their head seemeth to them to burne, be- *burning.*
cause of the spirites inflamed in it. Their eyes waxe redder, and somtimes the
veines in their eies, temples & forehead, and in all their whole face are stret-
ched and puffed vp. They that haue this feuer through cold, they are taken *Signes of cold.*
with heauy distillations, and reumes, because cold bindeth, and withholdeth
and keepeth the fumous excrements within the skin. Moreouer the skinne is
lesse hote, and all the body sheweth to haue a greater moysture, because the
wonted fluxe is restrained and stopped through colde. Moreouer there is no
filthinesse in the face for the same cause. They which haue this feauer caused
of wearinesse, their skin is made drier, then it is in other diaries, because ex-
ercise drieth vp the body, and draweth out the moisture of it: also their pul- *Signes of wea-*
ses be vnlike: for they that haue vsed great exercises, and bee wearied aboue *rinesse.*
measure, they haue small pulses, because of imbecillity and weakenesse of
strength, but they that haue vsed but small labours, their pulses be great, be-
cause their strength is not diminished yet. They which be taken with a *Diaria* *Signes of drū-*
feuer through drunkennes or hunger, they need no signes to know the cause, *kennesse and*
for such causes may bee knowen by telling of the sicke. They which haue this *hunger.*
feauer through kernelles, swellings or impostumations aboue the throate or *Signes of swel-*
mouth, or other where: they haue very great pulses, and because of the feue- *lings about*
rous heate, they be swift and often. Also there is equality of their pulses be- *the throte.*
cause the instrumēt of mouing is not letted neither by obstructiō, nor throgh
abundance of humours, nor of sharpe vapours, nor by pressing together, vn-

leſſe the inflammation be very great. Their face is altogether red and ſwollen, becauſe of the abundance of heat. And their vrine appeareth pale, becauſe the choler that ſhould coulour the vrine is transferred to the botch or impoſtumation. The cure of all diary feauers is brought to paſſe by diet, whoſe chiefe point in all diaries that be ſimple conſiſt in this: that you miniſter vnto them meates that engender good humours, and that be eaſſe of digeſtion and apt to be diſtributed about the body. Giue vnto thē that are burnt in the Sun, and to them that be angred, a diet which doth coole & moiſt. And vnto them that are cold, giue a diet that nouriſheth leſſe, and that doth heat moderatly. Againſt watchings or ſadneſſe, or conſuming with ouermuch care, vſe a diet which can both moiſten and prouoke ſleepe, that it may deliuer them from the drineſſe that thoſe euils haue cauſed, and alſo that it may recreat and refreſh their ſtrength. They that haue a feuer of wearines, you muſt allow them to eate as much meat as they can digeſt: for you muſt alwaies eſchue cruditie and rawnes of the ſtomach. For the ſubſtance of the body being diſſolued and diſperſed with labour, muſt be repaired with much meate being eaſy of digeſtion. You muſt meaſure the quantity of taking of meate, by the patientes ſtrength, age, naturall temperament, and cuſtome of the ſicke. Moreouer by the time of the yeare, the region, & ſuch other like. But thoſe, whoſe temperature of the body is very hot and dry, thoſe you muſt feede with meat by & by, at the firſt beginning of the fit. For in them the diary feauer will change very ſwiftly into an acute and rotten feuer. Chiefly aboue other, they may be fedde with a thin diet, which haue a diary cauſed of a botch or impoſtumation, for in them, the ſubſtance of the body is not diminiſhed. Wine that is white and thin is good almoſt for all diarie feuers, thoſe, which be properly named ſo, & doe endure but twenty foure houres. For beſides that, it helpeth digeſtion, it alſo prouoketh vrine and ſweat (as *Galen* ſaith.) But you may grant it more abundantly to the feauerous through watchings, ſorrow, or care, becauſe great abundance of ſpirites is ſpent and conſumed in them, which wine will eaſily & quickly reſtore in them againe. But to thoſe that haue headach, whether they haue watched, or be feuerous by any other occaſion, they muſt refraine from wine, becauſe it pearceth the head quickly. And they that haue this feauer engendred of great anger and fury, vnleſſe they be altogether quiet from that perturbation, they may haue no wine giuen to them, for the ſpirites, and bloud is maruellouſly chafed, and boileth ſore. Alſo you muſt driue from wine thoſe that be feuerous, throgh the ſwelling of botches or kernels in the throte vntill it be looſened: not, that it is ſo vnprofitable for the feuer, but that it hindreth the cure of the botch. For it encreaſeth the flowing of the humors into the grieued place, and ſo cauſeth inflammation, and thereby augmenteth the feauer. You muſt cure all ſimple feauers that be diaries (as *Galen* witneſſeth) with bathes. Therefore whoſoeuer hath this feauer, in the declination of the firſt fit, you muſt bring them into a bath. But yet all may not be bathed alike, nor all muſt vſe the ſame parts of a bath. For they that haue this feuer cauſed of botches, or impoſtumations, they may profitably tary in the aire or fume of the bathe, becauſe it both rarefieth and maketh thinne the skinne, and alſo it prouoketh and enticeth ſweate out of the body. Neither doeth it hurt

Victus ratio.

Wine good for diaries.

Curatio.

thoſe

thoſe patients with drineſſe, as it would doe thoſe, that haue this feauer engendred of wearineſſe, watchings, cares, and other perturbations of the mind. For ſeeing their body is dried vp altogether by thoſe cauſes, they muſt be kept from the aire of the bath, leaſt it augment their griefe. Therefore ſuch may tary the longer in a bath of ſweete water being made hote, that through the moyſture of it, they may recouer the humidity that is loſt, and is decayed in them. Afterward ſoft handes muſt rubbe them gently, with plenty of warme oyles, wherein there is no manner of reſtriction or binding. For this friction and rubbing doth moiſten, looſen, and ſoften the hard and fleſhie parts, and it diſſolueth and diſperſeth thoſe things which are contained in the pores and conduites of the body. They that haue this feauer cauſed through burning of the Sunne, you muſt cure them by and by in the beginning with cooling, and with many bathings of ſweete water, and onely with pouring on a little oyle without friction or rubbing of it, for it raiſeth heate. Things that doe coole the head being applyed to it, be oile of roſes, and of vnripe oliues, and other which be rehearſed in *libro primo*. Theſe being firſt made cold, and then receiued with wooll, and holden vp aloft, you muſt preſſe it with your hand, and let it droppe downe vppon the fore part of the heade, and that continually, while the feauer doth decline: then afterward bring the ſicke into a bath. If any perſon haue this feauer through colde, he muſt alſo bee brought to a bathe in the remiſſion of his fitte, and his head muſt be nouriſhed both before and after the bathing with oyle of *ſyreos* and *oleum nardinum*, and ſuch like. For they that haue a feauer through this cauſe, haue neede of medicines that can heate, and remoue conſtipation and binding. They that labour of a *Diaria* feauer through hunger, in the inclination of the fit, you muſt bring them ſtraight vnto a bathe, and pouring vppon them much ſweete oile warmed, rubbe them ſoftly, and you muſt keepe them long in the water of the warme bathe, that thereby the drineſſe, which hunger hath cauſed in the body, may be corrected and amended by the oile and the bath. When they be come out of the bathe, you muſt recreat and refreſhe the ſtrength with conuenient meates, and then you muſt bring them againe to a bathe, and when they come out againe, (the perturbation with their bathing being ceaſed) you muſt giue them hotte water to drinke, and by and by you muſt miniſter iuyce of ptiſan, and ſometime they may take lettuce, and they may eate fiſhes taken out of grauelly places, and being light meat ſodden in a white broath, which, what it was in olde time, *Galen* ſheweth in his fourth booke, *de ſanitate tuenda*. If the feauer *Diaria* doe chaunce through crudity or rawneſſe of the ſtomacke: you muſt firſt conſider, whether the wombe be ſoluble, or elſe coſtiue. If it be ſoluble, and thoſe things only which be corrupt, do ſeeme to voide forth, then you muſt waſh him and nouriſh him in the remiſſion of the feauer. But not vnleſſe firſt you diligently behold and foreſee all thinges chauncing to the ſtomacke. For if ſuch aboundant emptying hath beene already, or doth now continue, ſo that, the vertue and ſtrength of the ſicke is wearied, it is better to giue him meate, and waſhe him both together. But you muſt diligently beholde firſt thoſe things that be about the ſtomach. You muſt vſe about the ſicke, if the emptying

doe endure no longer, irrigations and ſprincklings of the ſtomach with oyle and wormewood, and other things which are rehearſed before in the thirde booke in the Chapter of weakeneſſe of the ſtomacke. But thoſe things that be applied to the ſtomach, let them be wel heat. For thoſe things that be applied bloud warme, do diſſolue and looſen the ſtrength of the ſtomach. If the belly be altogether coſtiue, handle, and feele the ſides, & then the whole body, and conſider, whether the meate is deſcended into the ſmall guts, or into the colon. And if the meate abide yet ſtill in the ſtomach, let the ſicke drinke much warme water, or put his finger or a feather downe into his throte, and vomite vp all that vexeth and troubleth him. Then you muſt foment and nouriſh his hypochonders and ſides, and let him reſt. But when the food is diſcended already into the bowels, you muſt bid them lie with their face & ſtomach downward, and you muſt nouriſhe the belly and prouoke ſleepe: for that digeſteth crudity maruellouſly. After ſleepe to bring out excrements from the wombe, you muſt put in a ſuppoſitary, or caſt an eaſy cliſter to looſen the wombe. They which haue a feuer cauſed through ſwelling of the kernelles of the throte, in them you muſt firſt cure the bile or botch that cauſed the inflammation, after that ſort, that *Galen* teacheth in his bookes *de medendi ratione*. When the fit declineth, they muſt be waſhed. Alſo they muſt be nouriſhed with a thinne and ſcarce diet, becauſe in them, the ſubſtance of their body is not loſt. Alſo they muſt be kept from wine, for the cauſes aforeſaid. And this ſufficeth for the curing of a *Diaria* Feuer, being ſo called *ſimpliciter*, without any addition.

Note.

Sleepe digeſteth.

CHAP. II.

Of a Diary laſting moe daies.

Diaria plurium dierum. Synochus non putrida.

DE DIARIA PLVRIVM DIERVM.

THERE is an other kinde of Diaries, which is named *Diaria plurium dierum* for no other cauſe, but becauſe it extendeth and cõtinueth vnto the third day. It is otherwiſe called *Synochus non putrida*. The auncient authors haue called this feuer *Diaria*, becauſe it is of the ſame nature that right Diaries are of. For it endeth after the firſt fit, if it be rightly and well handled. This feuer is cauſed of thickning or ſtopping of the pores, and paſſages of the skinne. That thickning (as *Galen* witneſſeth) doth chaunce either becauſe the ſmall pores are ſtopped vp, or becauſe they waxe narrower, or alſo becauſe the body it ſelfe is moderatly thicked, which is wont to change through cold, or after a bath, or by a medicin that is very ſharpe and reſtrictiue: or through burning of the ſunne, and other ſuch like which can dry the skinne. This feauer may be knowen firſt by touching: for in them that haue it, the skin is felt harder, and more compact together, then it is woont to be: Secondarily you may know this feuer by mouing of the heat, for at the firſt touching it ſeemeth gentle, and eaſie, but afterward, if you hold ſtill your hand longer, the heat is ſharper. Thirdly you may know this feuer by the vrine, which is not much altered from his naturall ſubſtaunce and colour: for the bloud doth not boyle very much, neither is there much choler ingendred, whereby the vrine ſhould be made higher coloured. Fourthly, you may know it by the bigneſſe of the body, which keepeth one ſtate and doth not fall alway, becauſe the thicknes

Cauſa.

Signa.

1

2

3

4

of

of the skin doth let the dissoluing of the vapours and moysture, and therefore also the eyes are not hollow, nor dry, but more swollen and more moysture, then they should be naturally. Fiftly, you may know it by the pulse, which is equall great, swift, frequent and vehement. They that be taken with this feauer, if you will cure them rightly and truly, you must let them bloud, and you must draw out so much bloud, as the strength of the patient will suffer. And know this for a surety, that vnlesse you vse this remedy to those, which by nature haue their body vnapt to breath out vapours because of aboundance, it will come to passe that either they shall be choked, or be in daunger of often swounding, vnlesse great strength or much sweating, or large fluxe of bloud do deliuer them from death. The body being emptied by bloud letting, shortly after minister meats and medicines which can cleanse and scoure. The meats which can do this in feauers (as *Galen* witnesseth) be *ptysan* and *mulsa*. The medicines be *ptysan*, *oximell*, and things sodden in *mulsa*, as be calamint, hisope, otigan, serpillum, *yreos*, and *apium*. But all these be hotter then they ought to be, and therefore they enflame and kindle feuers, as also wine doth. *Oximell* doeth only scoure and cleanse strongly, and doth not enflame and kindle feauers, so that it doth dissolue those things that be glutinous, clammy, tough and grosse, and it deliuereth the conduits, pores and passages from obstructions & stoppings. Obserue and watch how much of the feauerous heat is diminished by this diet. For if the third day in the morning, you see very little of the feauer left, and if there be no signes of rottennes of humors in the pulse, nor crudity or rawnesse in the vrine: if the suspect houre wherein the feuer tooke the patient the first day be after noone, you may boldly wash the patiēt quickly long before six of the clocke, but it is sufficient, if you end the washing three hours before. Likewise if you suspect the tenth houre, you may washe him vntill the seuenth houre, for three hours or foure is space enough between the bathing and the fit. When the body hath beene heat in the bath, being first annointed with sweet oile warmed, and rubbed very moderately and easily, then by and by it must be wiped without and washed. These things following doe scoure and cleanse most moderately (that is) meale of *Eruum*, and of barely, and also of beanes. Moreouer *mulsa* which is watery doth the same. Stronger things be *yreos*, roote of *panax*, and *aristolochia*, and *mulsa*, which is of a meane commixtion, but that *mulsa* scoureth most of all, that is pure, which is, when there is but a little water mixed with the hony, so that the melted hony may easily enter into the small pores of the skin. Stronger scourers then these, be the froth of salt Peter, the salt Peter it selfe, and then *aphonitrum*, sope is one of them that is able to scoure most of all. Moreouer after a bath, you must giue the patient no thing but water, which hath had a little *apium* sodden in it, although there be three houres space betweene the bathing and the suspected houres. But if the fit doth inuade the patient in the euening, or two hours sooner, then you may wash him in the morning, and giue him meate, but you must giue him only iuyice of *ptysan* Then if the suspected houres bring nothing with them then you may wash him againe, if you will and giue him meate, but you must haue respect to the vrine and the pulse. But if there chaunce any thing in the suspected houres, you must conferre it with the fit, which you had the first day, and

5 *Curatio.*

Absterſiue medicines.

Oximell.

then you must consider the vrine, and also the pulses. For all these will appeare to be in a meane temperature, when there is left but a little obstruction. Wherefore you shall wash him the fourth day, and giue him meate, hauing respect to the aforesaide considerations: and you shall hope that nothing will be left the fift day. But if there be great obstruction caused, that feauer is not of the kinde of *Diary* feauers.

CHAP. III.

Of a rotten Feuer called Synochus.

DE SYNOCHO PVTRIDA.

Συνοχος. SYNOCHVS in Greeke is a *Feauer*, wherein one fit continuing perpetually from the beginning to the ending, remaineth many daies, or els it is a feauer which is without all great mutation vntill the end of it. Hereupon it is called in Latine *continens febris*, and in English it may be called a constant & stable feuer. There be three sundry differences of these cõstant feuers, as appeareth before in the exposition of feauers. This feauer *Synochus putrida*, or *continens febris*, is caused when all the humours do putrifie and rot equally together within all the vessels, and specially in the great vesselles, which be about the armeholes, and the share, which is wont to chance, when a feuerous heate is retained and kept in of a vehement binding and stopping, which is within the body. For whatsoeuer things be hote and moist, and may hardly breath or fume out, they putrifie and rot quickly and readily. Therefore this kind of feauer is not engendred nor kindled in folke that be leane & slender, nor in them that haue a thin and rare state of their body, nor in a cold temperament of the body, nor in a cold age: but for the most part it engendreth in them which do abound with bloud, and in those that be hot, as well by their age and nature, as by exercises & diet, and specially it kindleth in them that be fleshy, grosse, and thick bodied, or else in them that be stuffed with hot excrements. They which haue this feuer, their pulse is very great, vehement, quicke, frequent & equal. The constitution or substance of the arteries is neither harder nor softer, then it should be by nature: but the quickneſſe and frequency of it, is according to the greatnes of the feuer, and these signes are common with the signes of the *Diaria plurium dierum*. But particularly in this feuer, there is signs of rottennes, and that aswell in the vrine, as in the pulse, and by the quality of vnkind heat.

Continens febris.

Causa.

Signa.

Curatio. The cure of this feuer must be begun with letting of bloud. And if vertue and nature be strong, and no other notable thing do stop it or let it, you must draw bloud til he do faint and swound. For if the patiẽt be strong, this is the chiefest remedy for this kind of feuer (as *Galen* saith.) For first the body is turned into a contrary state, for it is cooled quickly through the fainting and swounding. As for cooling of the body, nothing can be found that is more pleasant, nor more profitable, either for the sicke, or for nature. Moreouer in such bodies, there chanceth of necessity, loosenes of the belly, or a lask. And oftentimes also vomiting of choler. Which things, moisture or sweates do gather from the whole body. Therefore you shall do best by and by in these feauers, not to marke the nũber of daies past, but only to consider the strength of the patient. For if that he be safe and strong, you may let bloud not only the 6. or 7. day, but also in the

daies

daies folowing. But, and if you are compelled at any time to cure a patient, to whom not only the remedy of bloudletting hath bene pretermitted and kept backe, but now also either through ignorance of Phisitions, or through fear of the sick or his assistents in processe of time, you are forbidden to let bloud, you must come to the ministring of cold things. But you must diligently discern & consider before, how much hurt may chance by it. For if the hurt will be small or none, minister very cold drink, as much as the sicke will drink. And you may be the more bold to do it, if the patient hath bin vsed to drink cold drinks. But if you feare that great discommdity would arise through it, you shall abstaine from it: and vse other remedies whereby obstructions may be taken away, and abundance auoided, & that the burning heat of the feuer may be cooled and eased. The discommodities and hurts which do follow cold drinks ministred immoderatly and out of time, be these: first becausе it prohibiteth and letteth grosse & clammy humours to be attenuated and digested, whether they haue engendred obstructions or rottennes, or inflammatiō, or impostume, or knobby hardnes, or such like affects. As often therefore as a feuer is kindled of such humors cold things are not good for their auoiding: but to this feuer it bringeth much ease, becausе it quencheth the feuer that is already kindled. But yet seeing the cause of the feuer remaineth stil, of necessity another feuer must be kindled new againe, and many times a worse, then that which went before, becausе that the body is thickned through colde And this is one discommodity not to be neglected. Another is that cold things hurt many weake members of the patient, whether they be weake by naturall distēperature, or by some vice that they haue gottē. So in some, it hath bin foūd that their throte hath bin so hurt, that they could not swallow, in some the stomach, that they could scarce digest, in some the mouth of the stomach, or the liuer, or the gut colon, or the lungs, or the midriffe, or the reins, or the bladder, or som other such like member is so striken with cold, that it is made weak & vnable to do his proper action and office. Many by immoderat drinking of it out of time, haue by & by bin taken with difficulty of breathing, & with cramp and trembling, and haue had hurt in all their sinewes. Therefore to be short, in them that haue any swelling of fleume or bloud, or any knobby hardnes: you may not giue cold water vnto them, nor yet to them, that a raw humor doth hurt with obstruction or rottennes. But if there be no such swelling as is aforesaid, & then you doe perceiue euident signes of digestion and concoction in the vrine, and if then there be no member so giuen to a cold temperature, that it might take hurt, then you may boldly giue cold water. Also if the sick haue vsed to drinke cold water, you may the more boldly minister it, for all the members haue learned before by experience to suffer it familiarly without hurt. The drinking of cold water is perillous in them, that haue but litle bloud & flesh. Therfore by these things before rehersed, it is euident to all men, that the chiefest remedies of these kindes of feuers called *Synochus putrida*, be these 2. bludletting, & drinking of cold water: but bloudletting may be vsed at any time, if the strength of the patient wil suffer it, & drinking of cold water must be vsed when euident signes of concoction are seene in the vrine, when the feuer is greatest, & when you are compelled to leaue bloud letting. You must note well the time, when you should let

When cold things should be ministred.

Discōmodities of cold drinks.

Of cold water.

Continens febris hath two remedies chiefely.

You may not let bloud on a full stomacke.

bloud, and marke what went before, and what followeth. For if crudity and indigestion of meates do go before, you must refraine so long time from bloud letting, as will suffice as well to digest the meate, as that the excrements may descend downe. But if there will follow of necessity any fluxe or emptying, you must leaue so much bloud still, as will voide by that fluxe. Therefore if at the time of bloudletting, the menstruis doe chaunce to flow, or also that the hemorhoids do open and burst out, if you beholding the vehemency of the flux, shall thinke it to be sufficient to purge and empty out that which you require without any helpe, then you shall let nature worke alone. But if you thinke it contrary, draw out so much bloud, that thereby vnder them both conioyned togethe*r*, you may bring to passe your requeste and expectation. Let the diet in these feuers be chiefly this that followeth. In them that haue bene let bloud, minister to them two houres after bloud letting, iuice of *ptysan*, and command quiet and rest. And when they are awaked out of sleepe, minister againe *ptysan* broth. In this diet the patient must persist & continue vntill the third day.

Diet.

When the sicke should be fed.

You must note, that in these feuers called *Synochi*, the patientes must be fed at such time as hayle folke are wont to eat, and when they feele most ease, for so they shall the easilier suffer and beare their foode. And if they be strong and lusty, and you looke for the vigour and state of the feuer straight way, the patient must vse a most thinne and scarce diet. But contrariwise if he be weake and feeble, you cannot minister a thinne diet to him without perill. Therefore in giuing of meate to the patient, you must diligently foresee, and ponder his strength and ability. He that desireth to know more of this kinde of feauer as touching the cure of it, let him read *Galen in lib. 7. therapeut. meth. cap. 5.*

CHAP. IIII.

Against continuall Feauers.

De Continvis Febribvs.

Febris cõtinua.

Causæ.

Three differences of continuall feauers.

Signa.

Febris *continua* in Latine, *Synochis* in Greeke, in English it is called a continuall feuer. It is a feuer that leaueth not off altogether betweene the fits but it hath a certaine sensible slaking of heat betweene the fits. A continuall feuer is caused, when one only humor doth putrifie, & rot within the vessels. And there be three differences of this feuer, according to the diuersity of the humor that putrifieth in the veines: for if choler do putrify within the vessels, it engendreth a continuall Tertian, which the Greekes call *causos*, in Latine it is called *ardens febris*, in English a burning feuer. If fleume do putrifie and rotte within the veines, it engendreth a continuall Quotidian: but if melancholy do putrifie within the veines, it kindleth a continuall Quartane. There is not a more certaine signe of a continuall feuer, then that, none of them do come to intermission and slaking altogether betweene the fits, vntill the feuer be quite ended and quenched. Their other signes are common with the intermitting feauers: for an exquisite burning feuer, or continuall Tertian, hath all the other signes of an exquisite intermitting Tertian: differing only in this, that it doth not inuade and begin with vehement cold and stiffenes, neither doth it end in quiet and rest. Likewise a continual Quotidian hath all the signes of an exquisite intermitting Quotidian, but it only differeth from it, because it doth

not

not intermit and slake betweene the fits. In like maner the continuall Quartanes haue the signes of intermitting Quartanes, but that they come not to quiet and rest betweene fittes. Seeing it is euident by that which we haue said, that continuall feauers be of the kind of rotten feauers. It is necessary for him that will cure them commodiously and rightly, first to stop and let the putrifying & rotting. Therfore two things must be taken heed of at the first, wherof one is the feuer, another is the rottennesse. And in the feauer you must also regard two things, the one, that the portion of the feuer, which is now kindled and enflamed, may be cured and quenched: the other is, that the portion of the feuer which is not yet kindled may be letted and stopped. Also two things must be considered concerning the rottennesse, one is, that the rottennes already engendred, may be healed, the other is to let & stop that which is ready to engender putrefaction. That which is ready to engender, is caused through perspiration and breathing out, if it be impedite and letted. So that of this other two considerations do spring: first that the humour which is withholden, may be purged and emptied out: secondarily to prohibite and keepe in that which is to be withholden and kept backe, it will be prohibited with those remedies which do heale obstructions. Againe note, that the obstructions which are engendred must be cured, and they which are to come must be letted and driuen backe away. You must cure that obstruction which is already engendred, by those things that do loosen, deliuer and open obstructions. And you shall driue away & stop the obstructions which are to come, if you bridle and stop the fluxe of obstructiue and stopping humors, whereby it appeareth euidently, that the last thing which we haue found in this *Compendium* of curing that must be done first in the working of the cure. Seeing that therfore (when we haue examined the matter particularly) there be fiue things in continuall feauers from the which considerations in curing be gathered (that is) the feauer, rottennesse, perspiration impedite and letted, obstruction and abundance of obstructiue humours. You must begin the cure with the last consideration. Therfore seeing that the abundance of humors that cause obstructions, doth require purging and emptying out: in the beginning, if vertue be strong in the patient, and if time of the yeare, and his age, and other things do agree, you must let him bloud. You must then specially let him bloud, whē the whole body swelleth more then it was wont to do, or when the veines be swollen vp, or stretched out, for that doth signifie abundance of bloud. When the multitude of humours are voided and emptied out, you must next come to the ciring of obstructions, and you must minister medicines, whereby obstructions may be taken away. But because most of those medicines be hote, it is to be feared, least they should encrease both their rottennes, and also the feauer. Therefore you must vse to minister those thinges that can deliuer the patient from obstructions without heate. What those things be, we haue declared before in the second Chapter of this Booke. When those humours that caused the obstructions be deuided, cut, and scoured, you must assay to voide & empty them out by the wombe or guts, by the vrine, and by sweats, But seeing those things which should bring this to passe, be hote, of necessity the rottennesse and the feauer must be encreased by them. Therefore, as much as we may, we must

A compendium of curing in feauers.

There be fiue things to consider in feuers.

Curatio.

Bloud letting.

How obstructions should be healed.

Oximell.

Bathing doth coole.

labour to chooſe ſuch a thing as doth heate but litle, or if we can find any that doth not heate at all, (as in this caſe a Bath, you muſt vſe that. *Galen* teacheth *in libro tertio de tuenda ſanitate, cap.* 3. that a bath can do this. For he ſaith, that the ſtrength of ſweet waters made hot, if they be temperat, be hote and moiſt, but if they be warmed, they be cold and moiſt. And a litle after he ſayeth, A bath if it be diſcreetly vſed, it mollifieth the hard and ſtretched partes, and it bringeth forth excrements or moltings, if any ſticke within the skinne. Theſe things being done, and thoſe humors being ſcoured out, which were compact together in the skin, ſo that the obſtruction and perſpiration impedited be taken away, you muſt come to the cure of the rottenneſſe. Therefore at this time you muſt firſt corroborate and reſtore the ſtrength, whereby it may exuperate and ouercome the rottenneſſe, and be able to digeſt the humours. And you ſhall heale the putrefaction and rottenneſſe, if you do void and emptie out by all meanes, that which is corrupted & putrified. That which is left ſtill within, you muſt bring it to an exquiſite meane by moderate motions, and coole breathings, and you ſhall worke the emptying out of your humors by vrine, egeſtions, vomiting and ſweats. Laſt of all, you muſt proceed to the curing of the feuer, which muſt be done by cooling things. For euery feuer, in aſmuch as it is a feuer, muſt be remedied by cooling and moiſtening things. But to know how each of theſe things ſhould be rightly done, it is partly rehearſed before, and partly it ſhall follow hereafter. In continuall feuers, whoſe ſtate or vigour of the diſeaſe will come at the fartheſt within ſeuen daies, if their ſtrength be luſtie, and their age agreeing to it, you muſt ordaine them a very exquiſite and thinne diet. But in the continuall feuers, whoſe vigour, force, and ſtate is longer then ſeuen dayes after the beginning, or if vertue be weake and feeble, at the firſt you muſt feed them liberally: when the vigour and ſtate draweth neare, their diet muſt be more ſcarce. But in the ſtate and vigor of the diſeaſe, you muſt feed them moſt thinly and ſcarcely. Afterward againe, augment his diet, & feed him moſt, increaſing his diet in like caſe as the vigor & ſtate of the feuer doth diminiſh, as *Hyppocrates* ſaith in the firſt ſection of his Aphoriſmes

Cure of putrifaction.

Cure of the feuer.

Diet.

Aphor.

CHAP. VI.

Of a burning feuer.

De Ardente Febre.

Continua Tertiana.

ARDENS *Febris* in Latine, *Cauſos* in Greeke, in Engliſh it is called a continuall Tertian, or a burning feuer. It is of the kind of continuall feuers, as is declared in the former Chapter. And it is cauſed when choler putrifieth and rotteth within the veines. Therfore it agreeth with an exquiſite intermitting Tertian, becauſe it is engendred of the ſame humor that the other is. But yet it differeth from it in that, that in an intermitting Tertian the choler is caried all ouer the bodie: but in a burning feuer the choler is contained in the veſſels together with the bloud. Hereupon it commeth that the fits in a burning feuer do not intermit nor ſlake. But when the choler in them is ſtirred moſt vehemently, and is driuen about by nature waxing ſtrong, then there is wont to come vehement cold and rigour, and the feuer endeth. Which *Hyppocrates* declareth 4. *Aphoriſ.* 58. ſaying, he that is taken with a burning feuer, if

Difference betweene a burning feuer and a Tertian.

if it be vehement cold and rigor come vpon it to him, he is deliuered from the diſeaſe. A burning feuer is knowne by theſe ſignes: their tongue that haue this feuer is drie, groſſe, rough and blacke, there is gnawing of the ſtomacke, intollerable thirſt, watchings, and alſo many times rauing, and egeſtions of the wombe be liquide and pale: which ſignes *Hyppocrates* rehearſeth in *lib. 4. Vict. Acutorum.* They which haue this feuer, let them lye in a cold place, and in a ſweetaire, from whence pure wind commeth. Alſo let him lye in a ſoft featherbed, which muſt be made often, let the couerings be verie thin & cleane: which muſt be continually changed, & let his bed be of a great wideneſſe, that he may eaſily moue his members that be hote to other cold places of the bed. And if the aire be quiet, ſtirre it with a fanne, or ſuch like. You muſt giue him meates that haue vertue to coole and moiſten, as is, lettuce, gourds, ſorrell, ptiſan broth and ſuch like. Let his drinke be water, wherein a litle cinamon hath bene ſodden, or veriuice. If the ſicke haue vſed it, or if no other thing do let it, after meate giue him cold water a ſpoon-full or two, or mixe Iulep of violets, or ſome Iulep of roſes, or ſuch like with decoction of barley. Moreouer the ſtomack muſt be refreſhed with iuyce of roſes: and other cooling things muſt be vſed, as ſtrewing of the floore with greene vine leaues, and with the leaues and floures of roſes, water Iillies and violets, and by ſprinkling and powring often of colde water on the floore vp and downe. For the Cure in the beginning ſtraightway, you muſt cut a veine, if age, time, vertue and ſtrength do permit it. Hereuppon *Hyppocrates* ſayeth in the Aphoriſmes thus. In great burning feuers, if bloud be drawne till the heart faint, by and by the ſtate of the whole body is cooled, and the feuer is quenched. In many alſo a lape is cauſed, and ſweats flow foorth. Afterward let the breaſt and ſtomacke be nouriſhed with dates brayed with oile of roſes, or of quinces, or of water Iillies. Alſo other cooling medicins be good, as be, vine buddes brayed, endiue, ſuccorie, knotgraſſe, lettuce, ſorrell, vine leaues and ſuch like. Alſo a fine napkin folded together and dipped in oyle and water made hote, and applyed to the breſt and ſtomack: it ceaſeth the burning of feuers maruellouſly. Alſo a handfull of wooll ſoked in water, and oile of roſes het greatly, and being holden vp aloft to drop vpon the breaſt, doth eaſily quench the vehemencie of the burning heat. Theſe things muſt be hote, for warme things do diſſolue the ſtrength and vigor of the members. Neither ſhall you raſhly alſo commixe vineger againſt vehement burning feuers. You may not apply epithemes nor other cooling medicines in the beginning and increaſing of the fit: for at that time the affect of the body is driuen about, and the heat is in the inward members: therefore cold things applied do driue the heate to the innermoſt parts, and be an occaſion of greater hurt, for firie heate being oppreſſed and ſtopped within, it raiſeth a more vehement and burning heate againe. Therefore in the force, ſtrength, & vigor of the fittes, when the heat is alreadie ſpread ouer all the bodie, theſe colde things may be wel appied: for then the reſidue of the vnnaturall heate which remaineth about the inward members may readily be quenched. Hereuppon the patient will begin to breath better, & ſhalbe troubled with an eaſier thirſt. Alſo ſome by breathing out of a dewie vapor do fall on ſleepe. The epithemes which you muſt vſe in this feuer is this. ℞. of roſe water, and lettuce water,

Signa.

Diet.

Curatio.

Outward cauſes.

Epithema.

ana .ʒ.iij. ß. waters of endiue and ſuccory. ana. ʒ. j. ß. good vineger ʒ.j. all the three ſanders of each ʒ.ß. ſeed of purſlaine. gra.iiij. commixe all together and make an epitheme. Moreouer when the vigour and ſtrength of the ſickenes is at hand, you may ſafely miniſter pure cold water, if none of theſe things which be rehearſed in the third chapter do let it. And if feare of any hurt, although it be very litle, doe let it, you ſhall miniſter the firſt draught refrained after this ſort. Take one cupfull of temperate water, and commixe fiue cupfuls of pure cold water with it, and ſo miniſter it to ſuſpect bodies. To conclude, in the curing of burning feauers, you muſt needs bring to paſſe one of theſe things, that either the cholerick humors may be voided and emptied out, or elſe that they may be quenched within. They may be voided and emptied out by ſweats, vomits and egeſtions. They may be quenched by drinking of cold water wherewith very often great burning feuers haue bin cured quite and cleane. A bath of ſweet water is good only to them which haue a burning feauer without any ſwelling, tending to the nature of an inflammation or *Eriſipela*. But & if ſignes of concoction do appeare in the vrine, it is much more cõuenient for the patient. Let the ſicke which in a vehement burning feauer deſireth to vſe a cold bath, be young, and of a moderate ſtate of the body, as alſo *Hippocrates* witneſſeth and moniſheth. Neither let it be done to him in ſommer time, and in hot times of the yeare, and in the vigour and ſtrength of the feuer, & let it be one that hath vſed to waſh in cold water in his health. But when the feuer waxeth more moderat, and vertue is ſtronger, and if there be ſignes of concoction together with it, a bath of ſweete and temperate water is ſufficient & doth good. For annointings, oile of chammomill doth good, ſpecially if the weather be cold. But the abundance of matter, whereon you ſhould make competent remedies againſt burning feauers, you ſhall find in the Chapters following.

When cold water may be miniſtred.

Nota.

To whom a bath is good.

Fuction.

CHAP. VII.

Of a pure intermitting Tertian.

DE EXQVISITA TERTIANA INTERMITTENTE.

Cauſa.

EXquiſita tertiana febris intermittens, in Latine, an exquiſit and pure intermitting tertian feauer in Engliſh. It is cauſed of choler caried by the ſenſible parts of the body, and by the proper nature of it, it remaineth pure, ſincere, & vnmixed. Therefore ſeeing it is engendred of choler that is ſincere and pure, and not commixed with any other humor, it is called of the Phiſitions exquiſite. This feuer engendreth in perſons that be cholericke by nature & in their flouriſhing age, in ſommer time, in hote and dry regions, and when the weather is hote and dry, and in bodies oppreſſed with labours, watchings, cares, deepe thoughts, and burning of the ſunne. Alſo this feuer by and by in the beginning, and in euery fitte cauſeth a vehement cold, rigour and ſtiffeneſſe, and by this meanes it differeth from a burning feauer, as is before rehearſed. And the cold in this feauer differeth from the colde in a quartane feauer thus, becauſe in this feauer the patient thinketh his body were pricked, and as it were vlcerated. But in a quartane the cold ſeemeth to the patient, like the cold that haile folke feele in winter time. Therefore a tertian feauer doth not chaunce without vehement rigour and cold, pricking and wounding in the fleſh: but a quartane.

Signa.

Differences of coldneſſe in a tertian and quartane.

quartane feuer doth not by and by the firſt day inuade the patient with vehement rigor and cold. For as it proceedeth forward and encreaſeth ſo alſo the rigor and cold encreaſeth, and the patient doth not feele pricking, but rather feeleth great cold, and as it were nipped to the bone with it. There is in a tertian feuer an exact & perfect order and equality of the pulſes: but yet in the encreaſing of the fits, the pulſes are raiſed and prouoked to vehemẽcy, greatnes, and frequency. Moreouer in the vigour & force of the feuer, it cauſeth thirſt, and burneth vp the patient, ſo that he caſteth off the cloths, to make him bare & naked, and he breatheth largely and often, and he bloweth out as it were a flame of fire, and requireth to drinke cold water. Afterward the heate ſpreadeth equally al ouer the body, ſo that the breaſt is no hotter then the extreme parts and members. And when you lay your hand vpon him, at the firſt touching you ſhall feele much gnawing, and biting heate, burſting out as it were with a certaine vapor and moiſture: but not long after your hand wil vanquiſh it, if you do hold it ſtill. Moreouer there followeth this feuer vomiting of choler, and the belly is laxatiue, and they piſſe vrine that is cholerick, ſubruſe, and ſomwhat yellow, and moderatly thicke. Alſo their vrine hath by & by a white cloude, or a laudable ſublation in the middes. If the vrine be redder, and if in the firſt fit there doe appeare neither ſublation in the middes, nor cloud, the feuer will extend and remaine ſeuen fits. Moreouer this feuer leaueth off till another fit, when the fit hath endured the ſpace of xij houres at the moſt. For this is the longeſt time of a fit in true and pure tertians. But ſometime the fit is ſhorter then the aforeſaid ſpace of time, hauing differẽce more or leſſe according to the quantity and quality of choler within, or becauſe of the ſtrength of the patient, or through the preſent affect of the patientes body at that preſent time. Therefore we name that an exact and pure tertian feuer, which endeth his fit within twelue houres: but that which hath a longer fit, that is not called an exquiſit tertian, but an extended & ſtretched out tertian. And if the feuer doth inuade the patient daily with vehement rigor and cold, & with the ſignes aforeſaid of the vrine and pulſes, as alſo of other things afore reherſed: then it is called *duplex tertiana*, a double tertian. But as for an enquiſit tertian, becauſe it is engendred of pure choler moued about, you muſt moiſten it, and coole it, as much as you may poſſibly by all meanes. For this humor (as *Galen* witneſſeth) is the hotteſt & drieſt among all the other that be in the body. Let the ſicke lie therfore in a cold place againſt a ſweet and pleaſant aire. Alſo you may not ſuffer many to be in the houſe, becauſe they ſhould make it hote with their breath. Let the floore be ſprinkled often with cold water, & with roſe water, violet water and ſuch like. And ſtrew on the floore willow leaues, flours of roſes, violets, water lillies and ſuch like. Let the patients vſe meates that haue vertue & power to coole and moiſten. And you muſt giue him ſo much of thẽ, as he can very well digeſt. Let his pot herbs be orach, beets, ſpinach, mallows, lettuſe, gourds, ſorrell, endiue, ſuccory, & ſuch like. Alſo giue him *ptyſon* broth, and ſoupings made with Alica. Of fiſhes, let him eate ſuch as liue in grauelly places: for ſuch, beſides that they do coole & moiſtẽ, they engẽder good iuice, and are eaſy to digeſt. Of fouls, let him eate thẽ that be of ſoft fleſh, as be chickens & partrich, doues, yong ſparrowes, feaſants, & ſuch like: but of thoſe that

Signes of a double tertian.

Victus ratio.

haue not soft flesh, let him eate their wings, which are without excrements, becausse of their often exercises. Also he may eate cocks stones, & sowes feet, for they be without excrements, becausse they are exercised: & their braines, specially if they be well sodden. Also if you minister the flesh of pigges wel sodden, you shall not hurt, for so it may the easilier be consumed of the stomacke. Also rere egges, which be but onely hot through, may be suffred, specially the yolkes of them: for they be easier to digest than the whites, and they do coole meanely. You may suffer him to eate fruites, which be not verie hard to digest,

Potus. as be, cherries, proines, mulberries. He must abstaine from honie, becausse it will easily turne into choler, and from mustard, salt meats, and all sharp things. Also you must keepe the sicke altogether from wine, vntill the disease be digested, and let him drinke in the meane season water wherein a litle cinamon hath bene sodden. Or let him vse to drinke this. ℞ Iulep of violets. ℥.iiij. water wherin a litle cinamon hath bene sodden. ℔. j. commixe them together, and powre them out of one vessell into another, often. But when the disease beginneth to digest, you must giue him in the beginning a litle wine that is thinne and alayed with water, and giue him more liberally of it, when the end of the disease is at hand. This is the order of dyet for many, but not for all men: for they that are not daintily brought vp, but do liue hardly, and are strong of nature, you must ordeine for them a thinner diet (that is) let them be contented

No sleepe in fittes. with ptisan broth vntill the iudgement of the feuer. As for sleeping, they may not sleepe in their fits, but rather let them watch, that thereby the bloud and spirits, and naturall heat may be letted, and stopped from creeping to the inward members, and contrariwise may thereby be drawn to the outward parts: for otherwise the feuers will scarse be dissolued, and they will come very slowly to their state, and fluxes will increase & be multiplied: when the fit is ended, sleepe is not hurtfull. The patient must eschue exercises, and all other vehement motions. Also let him refraine perturbations of the minde, specially an-

Curatio. ger, feare, sorrowe, and such like. But you may not onely vse the diet before prescribed, but also you must minister medicins to the patient which can coole and moisten. In the beginning to quench the boiling of choler, & to mitigate

A decoction to digest choler. the cholerous heate, let him vse this decoction. ℞. of floures of violets, borage, and red roses. ana. *M.* j floures of water lillies, *M.* ß. endiue, succorie, lettuce, ana. *M.* j ß. of raisons picked. ℥ j. damascene proines number ij. seeds of endiue, succorie, lettuce, purcelaine, gourds, ana. ℥.iij. of the roote of succorie, ℥.vj. seeth all together in ℔.ij. of well water, vntill the third part be consumed, then straine it, and make the liquor of that decoction sweet with sugar, and purifie it with the white of an egge, then adde to it sirupe of endiue with the broade leaues, and Iulep of violets, ana ℥ ij.ß. commixe them together and make a potion, and let the sicke drinke thereof euery morning fasting. ℥.iiij.ß. But and if the sicke be more delicate, and do abherre potions, let him take daily of this

Misura. medicine. ℞. of conserues of violets, borage, roses, water lillies and succorie, ana. ℥.ß. *electuarium de prunis damascenis* without *diagredium*. ℥.vij *diarrhodon abbatis*. ℥.j. *diatrion santalon* in powder. ℥.ij. of Iulep of violets as much as is sufficient to commixe them, and make a loch. Moreouer you must remoue the cause of

Vacuation. the feuer: which you shall do, if you emptie out the cholericke humor. Therefore

fore you must emptie out the choler which is crept into the stomacke, by prouoking vomite. By what meanes you may prouoke vomite it is declared in the former bookes. The choler which is caried downward it is best to emptie it out by a laske of the wombe, which also is wont to come sometime of it selfe in an exquisite tertian. Vomiting should be prouoked chiefly in the beginning of the fit, for at that time, nature is wont to thrust in choler thither: as in the inclination and slaking of the fit, nature thrusteth it to the neather partes and to the skin. Therfore at that time you must cast in an easie and soft clister, that it may both bring out the choler easily, and that also by his gentlenesse, the sharpnesse of the choler which is wont to vexe and gnaw the gutties, may be stopped and broken. Make therefore such a clister. ℞. of mallowes, leaues of purple violets, mercurie, endiue, and succorie. ana. *M*. j. seed of purslaine and of melons. ana. ℥. ij. ß. seeth them all in sufficient quantitie of water, till the third part be consumed: straine it, and adde to the liquor of that decoction, the marrow of *casia fistula* newly drawne, ℥. j. oile of violets. ℥. iij. common salt. ℥. j. ß. commix them and make a clister. Also you must emptie out choler by prouoking of vrine and sweats specially, if it be caried thither by nature. This thing you may well do by medicines that prouoke vrine, but not by all such, but by those that can do it without drying. Therfore you must prouoke vrine with potions wherin *apium* or dill hath bene infused or wet. And if signes of concoction do appeare, then you may minister wormwood softly, which is a speciall remedy for the stomak, when it is vexed with choler: specially if you take of the tops of it as much as is sufficient, and infuse it in *melicratum*, that is, wine and hony sodden together: for it purgeth choler out of the wombe and stomacke by egestion, and out of the veines it purgeth it by vrine. You shall prouoke sweating with this and such like medicines ℞. roots of *apium*, sperage and succorie. ana ℥. ß. of the seedes of parsley, fennell, *bruscus*, and louage. ana. ℥. ij black cicers ℥. iij dil. *M*. ß. seeth all in sufficient quantitie of water that runneth vnto the third part: then let it be strained, and make it sweet with sugar, adding to it *oximel compositum*. ℥. ij. and make a potion. Or beate all the aforesaid things into powder, and minister of it euerie time. ℥ j. or ℥. j. ß. with ℥. iij. of *oximel simplex*. These medicines which prouoke sweate, must be ministred in the declination of the fit, or on that day that the sicke hath not his feauer. For this purpose also annointings with oiles of cammomill, dill and such like, are not a litle profitable. Moreouer hote bathes of sweet and potable water do profit two wayes, both because they prouoke out some of the choler, as also because of their qualities, they do much good: for such bathes do moisten and coole. But bathes of sea water, salt water, saltpeter water, and brimstone water, they bring out more choler, but they profit much lesse then potable waters. Therfore it is best not to call them profitable, seeing they do more hurt by drying, then they doe good by emptying and voyding: for the remedies must haue contrarie qualities to the humours that haue inuaded against nature: for that doth more commoditie then the emptying by any means (as *Galen* witnesseth *ad Glauconem*) by the which words it is euident that emptyings and purgings in an exquisite tertian, do but litle please *Galen*. Specially those emptyings that are done by bloud letting, and by a vehement purging medicine, for all such kind of purging medicines be of a

Vomitus.

Clyster.

Prouokers of vrine.

Absynthium.

To prouoke sweate.

Bathes of sweet waters.

hote facultie and qualitie. But seeing this feuer is the hotest of all other, therfore it rather desireth to be cooled & moistened, then to be vehemently purged. It rather permitteth and requireth emptyings by other meanes, and specially when nature laboureth and assayeth to driue out the humour. Also nature must be holpen, if of her selfe she be not able to performe her intent. As for a bath this is the effect and scope of it, thereby to haue the body wet and moistened. Therfore you must strew in, neither salt peter, nor salt, nor mustard seede, but it is good to poure much oile, being made hot, vpon the patient, and to bring him into the bath, and to wash him. And if he will swimme in it, you may suffer him to do it as long as he can: And they that are delited in bathing, if you suffer them to wash twise in a day, you shall not do amisse. But you must haue this in memorie, that it be opportunatly, & done in due time, for if signes of concoction do now appeare, then if you wash him oftener, you shal not erre from Galens doctrine.

Balneum.

CHAP. VIII.

Against a bastardly Tertian.

De Tertiana Notha.

Cause. A Bastardly Tertian is caused, when choler is mixed for the most part with fleume. Hereupon it commeth that all the signes of this feauer do not declare the nature of pure and sincere choler, as in an exquisite tertian they do.

Signa. In this feauer also the time of the fits doth exceede 12. houres, neither is this iudged in seuen fittes, as an exquisite Tertian is. Moreouer in this bastardly Tertian, the signes of cōcoction do appeare more slowly, neither is there such great heate in the vigour and state of this feauer, as in the exquisite Tertian. Besides all these, it doth not end with abundance of swear, as an exquisit Tertian doth. Therfore the diet in this feauer must not be altogether cooling and moistening, as it is in an exquisite Tertian: but let it haue some power & vertue to heate, cut and diuide: for the choler in this feauer is grosser, neither is it so hote. They therefore that haue this feauer, may profitably take broth of ptisan, wherein some pepper is put, and you must giue them *mulsa* to drinke, wherein hath bene sodden, hysope, origan, and spiknard. Also you must giue them soupings and brothes easie to digest. Moreouer seeing the time of the fit is long, and so endureth a whole day, you may not giue him meat daily, but each other day: for by this meanes we shall be ware and take heede, that nature be not called away from her office and worke, and so the disease should be increased: for you must only take heede that the disease doth not increase, and that the strength of the sicke, which must striue and fight a great while, be not weakened debilitate and cast down. But it is hard to keepe and saue both, because hunger looke how much it profiteth to the digestion of the disease, and so much or more it hurteth & debilitateth the strength. And meats, looke howe much they increase the patientes strength, and so much they hinder and let concoction and digestion. To conclude therfore, you must vse hunger to them that be strong and lustie, & their disease hard to digest. And you must feede them more largely, whose strength is debilitate and weake, and their disease not stubborne for to digest. Let their drinke be water, in which a litle cinamon, and some hysope or origan hath bene sodden. Quiet and rest is good

Diet.

Totus.

for

for them, but exercises do hurt them: for this doth cal forth outwardly nature, and naturall heate, which could concoct and digest crude matter within. For the cure, if you may let the patient bloud, you may not faile to doe it, but by & by in the beginning, if the age, time, and region, and state of the body will permitte it, you must draw out so much bloud, as the present state of the body requireth and will suffer. By the present state, vnderstand the state aswell of the patient, as of the disease: for the sicke, if he be strong, may suffer bloud letting, if not, the contrary: if the disease remaine, and be caused through abundance of humours, it requireth bloud letting not a meane quantity, but according to the abundance of them. But when the disease will endure long through crudity, and lacke of digestion, you must draw out but a meane quantity of bloud, that the strength of the patient may be kept and endure vntill the end of the disease. Also you must cast into the belly not very easie clisters, that they may bring forth the sluggish and hurtfull matter, & make them thus. ℞. mallowes, mercury, leaues of violets, origan, and hisope, ana. *M*. j. seed of *cardamum*. ℥. iij. seeth altogether in sufficient quantity of water, and adde to the licour of that decoction, *benedicta laxatiua*, *hierapicra*. ana. ℥. iij. *mel rosarum*. ℥. vj. oils of violets and chammomill. ana. ℥. j. ß. common salt. ℥. ij. & make a clister. Also you must minister to the patient, decoctions made of such things as can cut, & diuide, & also prouoke vrine without any great heating & drying. As this is. ℞. roots of *apium*, fennell, and succory. ana. ℥. j endiue, succory, origan, and hisope, ana. *M*. j. lettuce. *M*. j. ß. the foure common cold seeds. ana. ℥. j seeds of fennell and *apium*. ana. ℥. j. ß. seeth all these in two pounds of water, vntill the third part be consumed. Then straine it, and make the licour sweet with sugar, and purifie with whites of egges the streined licour. Then adde to it *sirupus acetositus simplex*, *mel rosarum* clarified, *oximel simplex*. ana. ℥. j. ß. and make a potion, wherof minister daily euery morning ℥. iiij. After these you must minister such medicines, as doe empty the belly gently, as is infusion of ruberbe, *electuarum è psillio*, and *diaphenicon* and such like, which are able by them selues, or mixed with other, to bring and purge out choler together with fleume. Whereof we haue rehersed many in our former bookes. After the seuenth day, you may minister continually decoction of wormewood: also *oximel* drunke alone helpeth many. Also vomiting after meate is so healthfull, and profitable to these olde and inueterate feuers, that many (as *Galen* witnesseth in *lib*. 1. *ad Glauconem*) haue bene cured with this one remedy. For a feuer which hath continued long, doth engender and breed any flegmaticke excrementes in the stomach, which being cast out by vomiting, the patient is deliuered frō the feuer. Also the sides must be nourished with hote medicines, that therby the windes and bolning which stretcheth them out, may be dissolued & dispersed. Among other this foment is very good. ℞. floures of chammomill, melilote, and dill. ana. *M*. j. wormewood. *M*. ß. red roses. *M*. j. linseede, and fenugreeke. ana. ℥. iij boile these in sufficient quantity of water, vnto the third part, then dippe a spunge in it, and nourish the sides therewith. Also it profiteth to annoint the stomach, with this or such a like ointment. ℞. oiles of masticke, roses and chammomill. ana. ℥. iij. of cloues. ℥ j ß wax as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment. Moreouer bathing in this feauer is not healthfull, before that signes of concoction

Curatio.

Bloud letting.

Cliſter.

Decoctum.

Purgatio.

Abſynthium oximel.

Vomitus.

Fomentum.

Vnguentum.

Balneum.

do appeare, becauſe crude and raw humors, which ſhould be digeſted within, are brought out by it to the skinne, and ſo it doth increaſe obſtructions.

CHAP. VIII.

Of a quartane Feuer.

DE QVARTANA FEBRE.

Cauſe. AN exquiſite quartane is another kind of the intermitting feuers, which is engendred only of a melancholy humor, putrifying and rotting without

Signa. the veſſels. This feuer doth not by and by in the beginning inuade the patient with vehement rigour and cold the firſt day, but it is like to them that are cold in winter through vehement froſt: but when the feuer hath continued & proceeded forward and is increaſed, then alſo the rigour & cold encreaſeth with it, and waxeth greater and ſtronger daily, till the whole diſeaſe be come to his full encreaſe and force. And the cold doth not ſeeme to the patient as it were pricking and vexing the skin, as it doth in an exquiſit tertian, but there is cauſed vehement cold, & as it would breake the bones. Their pulſes are very rare and ſlow in the beginning of the fits, but when the feuer is in his full force, or alſo when it is increaſed, then of neceſſity the pulſes are ſwift & often: but yet they do keepe their naturall ſlownes and rarity, if you conſider the ſwiftneſſe and frequency comming in the fits. But the mouing of the heat, the increaſing and the vigour, and force of this feuer is cleane contrary to that in tertian feuers. For in this feuer the melancholy humor is kindled and inflamed by little and litle, as it were a ſtone, or a ſhell, or a bone, or ſome other ſuch cold & dry body. And when that any flame or heat is kindled in it, thē in the fit it leaueth nothing fumous or ſmoky, but it burneth & conſumeth it. And therefore there

Cauſe of long intermiſſion in quartane fittes. is longer ceaſing and intermiſſion of this humor, betweene the fits, then there is in fleume. And the intermiſſion and ceaſing betweene the fits ſeemeth to be exquiſit & pure without any griefe at all: becauſe in this feuer, look how much melancholy is kindled and inflamed, and ſo much in the time of the fit is diſperſed, conſumed, and drawen out clean. Moreouer in a quartane feuer there followeth not vomiting vp of choler. Their vrines are thin, white and watery, and as it were ſtrained from a groſſe matter. Alſo this feuer beginneth ſpecially in Autumne or Harueſt, comming after erraticke feauers. But you muſt behold both the nature of the patient, & his temperament, alſo his diet vſed before, his age, the region, and other ſuch like. For if thoſe things be cold & dry, then you may looke more ſurely, that a quartane feuer will enſue, ſpecially if

Curatio. at any time, quartans be rife among the people. They that haue a quartane feuer, in the beginning they muſt be handled and ordred moderatly and gently, neirher may they be vexed with any vehement medicin, or by vehemēt emptying and purging: for the humor which cauſeth the quartane, is ſtubburne to be drawen and handled. Therfore in the beginning, and before it be digeſted, it will hardly & ſcarcely follow the medicine that draweth it: and that becauſe of his groſſenes and coldnes, and alſo becauſe it ſtoppeth the narrow waies, by

Bloud letting. the which it ſhould paſſe out. Yet if bloud do ſeeme to abound much, then you muſt take away that. And if when you haue ſtricken a vein, the bloud that cōmeth out do appeare blacke and groſſe, as for the moſt part it doth in diſeaſes of the ſplene, you may then boldly draw it out. For great aboundance of ſuch

bloud

bloud being drawen out, nature will get the vpper hand in digesting the rest of the humor, and wil make the feuer shorter. You must cut the innermost veine of the left arme, which is called *linearis vena*, the splene vein, or *mediana*: for this veine emptieth out the melancholy humor, specially from the splene, which is wont to be diseased in a quartane feuer: but if, when the veine is stricken, the bloud doth appeare thin, and yellowish, you must stop it by and by: for such an humor is not vnprofitable in a quartane, but it correcteth and amendeth the grosse and cold humor, as well because of his substance, as also with his quality. You must ordain for the patient a very good diet, such one as is not windy, *Dyet.* and engendreth good iuice. Therefore you must keepe the sicke from swines flesh, and from all other meates that be grosse, tough and clammy, and slow of digestion. Moreouer, let him abstain from all things which do coole & dry the body. He must eat birds that liue vpon mountains, & do engender good iuice: for those that do liue in fens & marishes, they be vnwholesome and full of excrements, and do engender a grosse humor. He must vse fishes of grauelly waters, which be soft and without toughnes, but in this feuer salt things and mustard must be ministred in meats, that they may extenuat, cut, and deuide, the grosse and clammy humors, and that they may consume & feede vp the superfluous humidity and moisture. They must vse wine that is white, thin, & mean- *Vinum.* ly hot: for that by the thinnes of it doth extenuat the grossenes of the melancholy humor, and by the meane heat that it hath, it heateth the body by litle and litle, which is cooled with the melancholious humor, and it helpeth digegion, and also prouoketh vrine. They may not altogether be kept and refraine from frictions, deambulations, and other accustomed exercises (that is to say) you must suffer thé to vse exercises, but not so much as they did in their helth. Neither may they vse frictions, deambulations, and other exercises of the body so often nor so vehemently as they did in their health, for that would cause peril and danger of obstruction. But if exercises be vsed moderatly, and that in the time of intermission betweene the fits, they will void out excrements and bring other commodities which *Galen* rehearseth in *lib. 2. de tuenda sanitate.* They must altogether abstaine from bathing if they can, and be content one- *Balneum.* ly with frictions and rubbings: for although bathing, because it doth heate, doth profite, yet, because it calleth forth humors outwardly, it bringeth perill of obstruction, specially when the body doth abound with excrements. And if the quartane be short, and not violent, it is not hurtfull in the intermission betweene the fittes, when the patients haile daies be, if he vse his wonted exercises. As for the belly, if it can be by any meanes it must be kept soluble, either with his accustomed meates, or with medicines mixed with them, or with clisters first gentle and easie, and after sharper: for you must encrease the streugth and sharpenesse by little and little, as the matter of the feauer doth concoct and digest by little and little: for at the beginning (as is sayde before) you must handle and order these feauers gently and easily. You may seeke examples of easie clisters out of the former Chapters. A clister somwhat *Clister.* sharper is this that followeth. ℞. mallowes, chammomill, mercury, leaues of blacke violets. ana. *M.* j. leaues of seene, the roots of polipody. ana. ℥. v. harts-tongue. *M.* j. ß. seeth al these in sufficient quantity of water vntil the third part.

Then straine it and commixe with the licour of that decoction, the marrow of *casia fistula*. ℥ j. *diasena laxatiua* ℥ ß. common oil ℥ iij *mel rosarum*. ℥ ß. salt gem. ℥ j. and make a clister. Within certain daies, giue to the patient *diatrion piperion*: but becauſe it doth heat vehemently, you may not miniſter it daily, whoſe making and vertue you muſt ſeeke out of *Galen in lib. 4. de ſanitate tuenda*. Alſo (as *Galen* ſaith) the patient ſhall doe rightly, if he drinke daily, onely pepper with water: for it heateth and diſſolueth the groſſeneſſe of windy ſpirites and vapours, and it extenuateth and digeſteth the crude and raw humors, which are heaped and gathered vp together in the hipochonders and ſides. And theſe things muſt be done from the beginning of the feuer, vntill it come to the vigour, force, and ſtate. And if the ſicke ſeeme now to be in the vigour and ſtate of the diſeaſe, then he muſt vſe a thinner diet, then he did before, or muſt doe afterward, and you muſt commaund long quiet & reſt to the patient, leaſt nature being occupied about digeſting of the matter of the diſeaſe, ſhould be called from her office and worke. Afterward you muſt prouide and forſee the intrailes which are wont to be ſwollen and ſtretched out with viſcous, tough and groſſe humours, and alſo with aboundance of windy ſpirites and vapours, which being diſſolued and emptied out, the bowels wax ſoft and are looſned. Therefore you muſt annoint them with thoſe thinges which can mollifie and looſen, as be ointments which are made of barely meale, ſeed of *apium*, rootes of ireos, rew, and ſuch like. Among other annoint the left ſide with this ointment. ℞. of oile of capers. ℥ iij. oile of ireos, & of ſweet almonds. ana. ℥ ij. ſeeds of *apium*, and of comin, rootes of ireos. ana. ℈ j. waxe as much as is ſufficient, make an ointment. After theſe thinges you muſt miniſter medicines, which haue vertue and power to prouoke vrine, and not before this time: for if you miniſter ſuch things before the inward members bee free from obſtructions, becauſe thoſe medicins be hote, they cary the humors downe with them, and do encreaſe the obſtructions. For to prouoke vrine, you muſt miniſter *mulſa*, wherein dil, or rew, or elſe *apium*, hath bene ſodden. If ſignes of concoction do appeare, thé you muſt ſtraight way vſe purging medicins which can purge out melancholy, and you may not purge him once onely, but oftner, if the matter ſeeme to require it: for that melancholy cannot be brought out al at once, ſeeing the body is not able to ſuffer and beare ſo ſtrong a purgation, as ſhoulde purge out all that ſtubborne humour at once. You may ſeeke examples of ſuch medicines, as doe purge out melancholy, out of the firſt booke in the Chapter of Melancholiouſneſſe. But yet aboue other things, *Aetius* praiſeth ſweet wine infuſed in the inward part of coloquintida, but ſo that you commixe with it ſome *apium*, or *daucus*, to make it pleaſaunt. After meate, you muſt prouoke vomite (if nothing let it) with white hellebore firſt commixed with radiſh as is declared in the other bookes, which if it worke little or nothing, you muſt miniſter hellebore by it ſelfe. And if any man abhor from hellebore, let him vſe this or ſuch like medicine. ℞. iuice of radiſh, or diſtilled water of it. ℥ iij. *oximel ſimplex*. ℥ ij. commixe them and make them warme to drinke, but they which cannot vomite, muſt be purged downeward, ſuch be they that haue a ſtraight and ſlender breaſt. After purging you muſt giue them *theriaca*, or ſomewhat that is of like vertue, as this is. ℞. *Liquoris cyrenaici*, fine mirrhe, pepper of ech a like

Piper.

Prouiſion for the intrailes.

Vnguentum.

Prouokers of vrine.

Purgation of melancholy.

Vomitus.

Vomite.

like much, beat them by themselues, and commix them with the iuice of rew, and make pilles thereof, and minister the weight of ℈.ß. They that minister any of these medicines at the beginning of the sickneſſe, or at all, before the vigour, state, and force thereof: they make of a simple quartaine oftentimes a double quartaine, or without doubt they make the single quartaine greater and more vehement: and of a double quartaine they make a triple quartaine, or else the double one is made greater.

CHAP. X.

Of a quotidian Feuer.

De quotidiana Febre.

QVOTIDIANA *Febris intermittens* (that is) an intermitting quotidian feuer. It is engendred of putrified and rotten fleume being thrust of nature by the sensible partes of the bodie. It is called of the Greeks *amphimerina*, because it causeth a fit euerie day. But if glasen fleume which is the coldest of all other fleumes, do putrifie by it selfe the one halfe of it, (that is) if the whole substance of it do not putrifie equally, but some parts of it do putrifie and some do not, then it engendreth a feuer called *Epialos febris*: in which the patient is feuerous, and vehemently cold together, & at one present time he feeleth immoderate heate and immoderate cold in all the partes of the bodie together. For part of that humour which is not putrified nor rotten as yet, being spread by all the veines, or in the rest of the body, engendreth the rigour and cold, but the other rotten part of the humor engendreth the feuer. A quotidian feuer doth not inuade the patient with rigour and vehement cold by and by the first day, but in processe of time, it commeth rather like a cooling, then like a rigour. The pulse when the fit beginneth is inordinate and vnequall, slow, litle & weake. Neither also in the augmenting and increasing of the quotidian is there swiftneſſe of mouing of the pulses, nor greatneſſe, nor vehemencie. The heate in this feuer is not so sharpe and vehement as it is in a tertian: for it neither burneth them, neither are they compelled to make naked their bodies, and to throw off their clothes, neither doth it compell them to breath much & often, & to blow out of their mouthes as it were a flame, nor to desire to drinke cold water, but it is moist and smokie, and commixed with much vapour. Also it is hardly kindled, and it consumeth a long time, vntill that by increasing it come to the force and state. Moreouer, they that haue this feuer do not thirst, because not only the tongue, but also the whole body in this feuer is most moist. The vrines in quotidian feuers either be white, and thinne and waterie: or thicke, and troubled. There bursteth out no sweat at all in the first dayes, neither is there any exact and perfect rest from being feuerous. For the feuer remaineth eche time almost the space of 18. houres. There chanceth also to them vomiting of fleume: and those things which are sent out by egestion, are colder, moister, cruder, more waterie, and more flegmaticke. Also a quotidian feuer doth chiefly vex them that be moist and flegmatick of nature. Also it chanceth in a moist season, specially in winter that is cold and moist, and in olde folke and children. Hereupon *Galen* writeth, that he neuer saw a young man that was cholericke and dry by nature, taken with this feuer: but they that be

Cause.

ἀμφήμερινος.

Epialos febris.

Signa.

Victus ratio. and most flegmatick, hauing a grosse substance of the body, and do liue an idle life, seruing their belly and giuen to drunkennesse, vsing bathing often and specially after meate, they are soone taken with this quotidian feuer. Let the dyet in this feuer be altogether extenuating, cutting and diuiding. Therefore you must now seeke such places, wherein we haue declared abundantly, what kind of diet it should be. In the first daies (that is) when signes of crudities and indigestion do yet appeare, the fleume must be diuided and cut, and the pores and passages that be stopped, must be scoured and clensed. And therefore you

Curatio. must minister *oximel* because it doth scoure mightily, it cutteth and diuideth the glutinous and clammie humors, & it deliuereth the pores from obstructions. And you must minister those things which prouoke vrine, that the fleume (being already extenuated and diuided) may the more readily passe by the cõduites, and be emptyed out. Therefore it is good to minister decoction of the root of *apium*, percely, *ireos*, fennell, and such other like often rehearsed before with *sirupus acetosus compositus*, and *mel rosarum*, and *sirupus è duabus radicibus*, and other that haue the vertue and power to extenuate, cut, and deuide. About the vigour and force of the feuer, you must take heed and haue regard to the stomacke, and specially to the mouth of it. Therefore you must prepare those things which being applyed outwardly, may ad strength to the stomack, such as be, masticke, spikenarde, wormewood, and such other like. Therefore before meate, vse this ointment. ℞. oiles of masticke, wormwood & nard. ana. ℥. ij. ß. masticke, cloues, and wood of aloës, ana. ʒ. v. cinnamon. ʒ. j. with waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment, wherewith annoint the

Vnguentum. region of the stomacke. The stomacke being strengthened, you must compell vomiting, first by ministring of radish, then after, meates must be eaten, for so it lifteth vp the meates, and causeth the easier vomite. After he must vse medicines that do purge out fleume: for fleume when it is digest, may conueniently be purged. What medicines those be that can purge out fleume, it is euident in our other books, and this here sufficeth to cure a quotidian feuer.

CHAP. XI.

Of a Feuer ethicke.

De Hectica Febre.

Hectica febris. HECTICA *febris* in Latin, the feuer ethicke in English. It is a feuer wherin an vnnaturall heate is not onely kindled in the spirites and humours, but now also it is kindled in the massie, sound, and fleshy parts, and members. This feuer knoweth no payne, & they that haue it, do thinke that they haue no feuer, neither do they perceiue or feele any heate, seing all the members of their

Causa. body be equally heate, (as Galene declareth abundantly in his booke *De inequali intemperie*. The feuer ethicke is ingendred and caused two wayes. First for the most part, of burning feuers which haue continued so long, that in processe of time they consume the humiditie and moisture that is contained in the bodie of the heart, or also if it resist more abundantly, then those feuers are not onely ethickes, but also *marasmodes* (that is) consuming and melting feuers: for feuers being ingendred, (the humiditie yet still remaining) when they haue caught and occupied the body of the heart, hereupon they are specially kind-

led

led and inflamed like the flame of a candle with a match. And this is one way of ingendring of the feuer ethicke. Another way of ingendring of them is this, when they begin of themselues by and by, being ingendred as diarie feuers be either of sorrow, or anger, or ouermuch wearinesse, together with burning of the heate of the Sunne. The feuers that be thus ingendred, be not very hard to cure: but such feauers of these as be turned into consuming and wasting, which the Greekes do call *marasmos*, through the negligence and ignorance of Phisitions, if those feuers be in their force and strength, and not as it were beginning still, it is not onely hard to cure these, but it is also impossible to remedie them. For the nature of them is hote and dry, so that the heart is in like case as the snuffe of a candle when it is verie much burnt: for when it is much burnt, it will breake and dissolue, and through drinesse fall asunder, so that although you poure abundance of oile to it, yet you cannot cause a greater flame to be kindled: for the flame being small & weake panteth alwaies vp & downe in it, and waxeth continually lesse and lesse, till it be altogether quenched out. Euen such is the feuer which is altogether *marasmodes* (that is) consuming. The feuer ethicke which turneth into *marasmus* or a consumption, is very ready and easie to know: for before you do consider the pulses & heat by touching them, you may see the eies wonderfull hollow, as though they were hid in some ditches or furrowes, for then all the moist substance of them is exhaust and consumed, so that you may see the bones of the eye browes sticke out. Also there hangeth on the haires of the eye lids, drie gumme and filth, and vncleanly affects, as is seene in them specially that go a long iourney in the dust, when the Sunne burneth hote. Also the vitall floure in them perisheth, and the skin of their forhead is dry and retched out, and their eye lids winke often as though they were sleepy, but their disease is not to sleepe, but is rather impotencie and debilitie to watch. Also the flesh of their temples is consumed, so that they seeme hollow places, for what other thing haue they but skin and bone? For, if you looke vpon their bare belly, it shall appeare to you, that neither bowell nor filme is left. The hypochonders and sides are pulled vpward to the breast. and if you touch their skinne, it is verie drie, which if you take hold on with your fingers and pull it vp, it is like the hide of a beast. The pulses be thin, hard, weake and often. The heate when you lay your hand first on him doth seeme weake: but a litle after it bursteth out sharpe & gnawing more and more, if you hold your hand long vpon him. Also this shalbe a great and vndubitate signe to you: when you do giue him meate, the heate is inflamed and increased, and the pulses are augmented in greatnesse & swiftnesse. It is called a feuer Ethick, so long as naturall humiditie and moisture is kept and reserued: but when it is to be doubted that there is left no more humiditie and moisture in the body, then it is an absolute & perfect consumption, which is called in Greeke *marasmos*. For the cure of a feuer ethick before it come vnto a consumptiõ, you must by all meanes coole it. And therefore the effect and summe of the whole cure doth consist in these pointes (that is,) to coole and moisten aswell with those things that be outwardly applied, as also by them that are ministred inwardly. Therefore let the aire that the patient doth breath in, be cold and moist. And if it be not so by nature, make it so by Arte, as is taught before in the 6. Chap, in

Marasmus.

Signa.

Hectica febris.

Marasmos.

Curatio.

Aer.

Dyet.

the cure of the tertian. He must also vse meates, that do coole and moiste, as broth of ptisan, bread steeped a litle in cold water, the flesh of kids, feasants, birds of the mountaines, cocks stones, capons flesh, reare egs, new cheese without salt, and fishes of grauelly waters lettuce, endiue, succorie, gourds, spinach, mallowes, and such like: cheries, proines, pomegranates, melons, figs and such like. He must also take milke, for that profiteth him maruellously, so that this feuer be not compounded and mixed with another feuer that is engendred of rottennesse of humors. Let his drinke be cold water, but specially if the sicke haue bene vsed to it before. Let him drink thereof moderatly, or let him drink water wherein a litle cinamon hath bene sodden, or wine that is watered and thin. Moreouer it is good to them that haue this feuer to eate meat often in a day, that by that meanes they may beware & take heed that they eat not great abundance of meat at one meale, which vertue being weak should not be able to ouercome and digest. They must eschue moderate mouing, and all things that can resolue and weaken the strength. You may not minister any purging medicines to them that haue a feuer ethick; for purgations are hotter & vehementer then they are able well to suffer: but if the belly be more bound then it ought to be, you must loosen it with easie clisters that can coole and moisten, adding to them marrow of *casia fistula*. You must minister such things within the body as haue power & vertue to coole & moisten. As among the cõpound medicines be these, sirupe of violets, of water lillies, and of tame endiue, *sirupus acetosus*, and such like. Also *diarrhodon abbatis*, *diatragacanthum frigidum*, *diapapauer* & such like. Of simples these be good, the iuyces & distilled waters of lettuce, purslaine, tame endiue, and poppy. Among those things that are to be applyed outwardly, bathes at all times are conuenient and profitable to them that haue this feuer: I meane bathes of sweete waters, to the which the sicke must be caried in a bed, or in a fine sheete, and let there be foure to carie the sheete at each corner one. The water of the bathe must be most temperate: and also the patient must not tarrie in it long least any of his moysture within him should be drawne out by it: therefore in no case must he sweate it it. There be some that vse to seeth in the water of the bathe herbes, as violets, mallowes, lettuce, flowres of water lillies and such like: some other do seeth calues feet, or lambes heads vntill the flesh be sodden from the bones. Also you must beware, least any thing be powred on his head, seing it is sufficient for it to be dipped twise or thrise in the water with the whole bodie, the sheete being let downe easily, and then againe lifted vp by foure young men which must carie him. Straight when he is brought from thence, he must be dipped all ouer once in cold water, and he may not tarrie in it any time at all. They that haue this feuer and be brought into a bathe, vnlesse they be dipped in cold water, it helpeth them nothing (as *Galen* sayth.) By and by, assoone as he is drawne out of the water, let another sheet be ready, and cast him into that, and then into another. Then lay him in his bed, & first wipe him with spunges, and after with soft linnen clothes. And let them not handle him violently that do wipe him, but as easily as they can possibly. To conclude, after this he must be annointed with cold oiles, and with other moistning things. Among other this liniment is good. ℞. oile of violets. ℥. ß. oile of gourds. ℥. iij. new butter without salt, swines

Lac. *Potus.* *Nota.* *Balneum.*

swines greace, ana. ℥j ß. commix them, and make a liniment, wherewith annoint the whole body. Or adde to it musculage of *tragacanthe*. ℥. ij marowe of calues shankles. ℥. iij. waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment. Also oyle of water lillies, and of poppie, are good, and specially oyle of roses, which (as Galen saith) doth maruellously moisten dried bodies. When he is annointed and clothed, you must bring him againe vpon a bed, or a sheet, into the place where he is fed, and you must nourish him with meates. Also, it profiteth him to haue his hart cooled, and moistened with epithemes: as is this, ℞. waters of violets, water lillies, and lettuce, ana. ℥. iij. strong vineger. ℥. ß. red roses, all the saunders, ana. ℥. j. pouder of *diamargariton*. ℥. ß. seed of purslaine. ℊ. iij. saffron. ϑ. ß. commixe them and make an epitheme, and apply it to the region of the hart cold. Likewise it is good to coole & moisten the liuer thus. ℞ water of lettuce. ℥ ij. vineger. ℥ j. *diarrhodon abbatis*. ℥. j. ß. scraping of iuorie. ℥. ß. purslaine. ϑ. ß. commixe them and make an epitheme and apply it to the liuer. Also for them that haue the feuer ethick, medicines are good which can coole and moisten, with their odour and sauour, as be floures of water lillies, purslaine, violets, roses, and such like. Also you may find mo things, that are good for the cure of the feuer ethicke, in the second booke, in the Chap. of the Ptisicke or Consumption. And in curing of the feuer ethicke this oncly must be your study and labour, that the bodie may not only be cooled and moistened with those things which be ministred inwardly, but also by things that be applyed outwardly, and specially by annointing with oile. How much oile applyed and annointed outwardly, specially doth helpe to the conseruation of the body, and to the restoring of strength, we are taught by the notable example of *Pollio Romulus*, who being aboue an C. yeares old (as *Pliny* telleth) *Diuus Augustus* his host asked him, by what meanes he kept that vigour, force, and strength of body and mind: he answered thus: *Intus mulso, foris oleo* (that is) I keepe me moist with *mulsa* within and oile I annoint vpon my skinne.

Epithema cordis.

Epithema iecoris.

Odoramentum

Pollio Romulus.

CHAP. XII.

Of an hemitrice feuer.

De Haemitritaeo Sev Semitertiana.

Although there be diuerse kinds of compound feuers, as is declared in the beginning of this booke in the explication of feuers: yet in this place we will only speake of that feuer which is cõpounded of an intermitting tertian, and a continuall quotidian. And it is called in Greeke *hæmitritæus*, and in Latin *semitertiana*, in English halfe a tertian. It is so called because this whole feuer hath halfe the nature of the said feuers, ech of them: by the example of this compound feuer, you may learne to cure all other compound feuers. Therefore an hemitrice feuer is caused, whẽ putrified fleume is commixed with rotten choler. It is declared before that a tertian inuadeth the patient with rigour and vehement cold, and a quotidian commeth with cooling of the extreame parts. Therfore the feuer which is cõpounded of them both causeth horrour and shaking for cold, which is lesse then the rigour of a tertian, and greater & more vehement then the cooling of a quotidian: so that it is a meane betwene them both. It is engendred two sundry wayes: for either two fits are ioyned

Hemitritæus quid.

Causæ.

Signa.

together by and by at the beginning, and do inuade the patient together both at once, or els eech of them commeth separate from the other. Therfore when the tertian doth exceede the other, it causeth a more horrible feuer, and also it hath much rigour and vehement cold in the augmenting of the fit, & there is present greater heate and more burning, and choler is driuen out either by vomiting, or by egestion, or it breatheth out a moist vapour, but when the quotidian exceedeth the tertian, then cold is in the extreme parts, and but a litle shaking, and neither burning nor thirst doth vexe him. But when the intermitting tertian, and the continuall quotidian be equall and of like force & greatnesse, the fit doth come with horrour and shaking for cold. And when the quotidian is of greatest force, the pulses and horrour waxe lesse and gentler: but if the tertian preuaile, by and by the pulses and horrour increase and waxe greater. Note therefore, when a feuer is ingendred of an intermitting tertian, and a continuall quotidian being equall of like force, greatnesse and strength, then it is called an exquisite *hemitriteus* ague: but if one feuer do exceede the other; then it is called an vnpure hemitrice. You may vnderstand by the former Chapters, how this feuer should be cured. For seeing an exquisite hemitrice feuer is ingendred of two feuers equally commixed (that is) a tertian and a quotidian: you must also vse a cure cõuenient & agreeing equally to a tertian & a quotidian. But in an vnpure hemitrice, whẽ there is most of choler, or most of fleume, you must also varie and chaunge the cure, according to the humour and feuer that aboundeth. For if choler haue the vpper hand, you must chiefly vse the remedies which we haue declared in the cure of the tertian. But if fleume abound most, vse the things most that be declared in the cure of the quotidian. To conclude, you must most couet the cure of that which hath most neede, and doth most abound, but so, that you do not altogether neglect the other. Therefore we neede not in this place rehearse the remedies wherby this feuer should be destroyed and cured, seeing euery man may learne the cure of them more readily according to the diuersitie and nature of the humours, out of the Chapters of curing of the tertian and quotidian. Therefore if any man do first learne to know exactly & perfectly the curing of simple feuers, he shall also know how to cure compound feuers without any more labour: for the cures of simple feuers being knowen, and considered, it is most readie to any man to cure compound feuers, so that here we shall not need to write seuerally of the curing of compound feuers.

Exquisitus hemitriteus.
Non exquisitus hemitriteus.
Curatio.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the Pestilence.

De Pestilentia.

SEeing that at this present time and day, there be euery where treatises of the Pestilence made of diuerse new Authors: I neede not now long dispute here of it: but it shal be sufficiẽt, if we do briefly declare the causes, signes, and curing of it, as we haue done in other diseases before. There be two especiall causes of the Pestilence (as Galen writeth in *Lib.* 1. *De differentijs febrium. Cap.* 5. The one is, an infected, corrupted and rotten ayre. The other be humors gathered through naughty and corrupt diet of the body, which humors be

Cause.
1
2

be ready to putrifie and rot, when a man taketh any light occasion to kindle a feuer of the corrupted ayre. Therefore the chiefest cause why men are infected with the Pestilence, is breathing in of ayre, without which no breathing thing doth prolong their life. For it beginneth for the most part of breathing in of ayre which is corrupted of a putrifying and rotting euaporation. The beginning of corrupted aire, and of the rotten euaporation, is either a multitude of dead bodies not burned or buried, as it chaunceth in warres, or the euaporation of some pooles, fennes or marishes in the sommer time. It chaunceth also sometime to come before immoderate heate of the ayre, when the temperature of the ayre is chaunged from his naturall state, to immoderate heat and moisture, of necessitie the Pestilence must follow. Hereupon Galen saith, that of all temperaments of the ayre, the worst is that which is hot & moist. Also oftentimes (as is aforesaid) naughtie and corrupt diet ingendreth humors in the bodie that be easie and readie to putrifie and rotte, and so is the cause why such bodies are infected with the Pestilence. And then truely they specially haue the Pestilence, which vse a naughty and corrupt dyet, and so be full of all kinds of superfluities. Therefore it neede not seeme maruellous, if sometime some one among many (which yet doth very seldome chaunce) be infected with this disease, the ayre yet not being pestilent and corrupt. For they that keep a good and healthfull diet, and be without superfluities in their bodies, they take no hurt at all, or else very litle hurt, although they be in the corrupt and pestilent ayre and may easily returne and be brought to their naturall habite and state. Hereby it is easie to answere them that aske, how it chaunceth that all men are not taken equally with the Pestilence, seeing euery one is constrained to breath in the pestilent ayre. The first cause why some remaine vnhurt, is because they be not full of superfluous humiditie and moisture, but do vse moderate diet & exercises, & haue their bodie easie to breath out vapours. Another cause is, because all mens bodies be not of like disposition & affect. For dispositions of mens bodies are of many sundry formes, for some bodies are quickly ouercome and infected, and doe most readily suffer any cause: but some againe be insuperable, and cannot be ouercome, nor will at all suffer the infection, or else very hardly. And therefore the greatest portion of ingendring of diseases, is the disposition of the bodie of him that suffereth the disease. For els all men, that taried long in the burning heat of the Sunne, or that vsed ouermuch mouing, or that were loden with wine or inflamed with anger, or affected with sadnesse, should fall into a feuer. Also we doe not deny, but that sometime great plagues & pestilence be sent of God for the grieuous sinnes and horrible offences of men, wherewith he punisheth the great offences of vs: whereof there be many euident testimonies in the Prophets, and specially in *Ezechiel cap. 5.* The time of the yeare in the which chiefly by nature the Pestilence is rise and flourisheth, is the end of Sommer, and the beginning of haruest or Autumn: for thé both the aire & mens bodies are most apt to putrifie, corrupt, & rot, for many causes. There be many & diuerse signes of the Pestilence to come rehearsed of the new Authors: among which signes, the first is the chaunging of the times of the yeare. The second is often *Phænomina* in the aire, specially in Autumne. The third is, when pushes, and

whereon rottennesse beginneth.

Nota.

Plagues from God.

The time of the Plague.

Signes of the aire corrupted.

1 2 3

Pocks, and measles do not only vexe children, but also young folke of perfect
4 age. The fourth is, when the windes are often in the South and in the West in
5 Autumne. The fifth is a darke and troubled aire in Autumne threatning raine,
6 but yet it doth not raine at all. The sixt is, if women conceiued with child, doe
7 suffer abortion for euery light cause. The seuenth is, when in sommer after
raine suddenly a great abundance of frogs of diuerse colours do gather toge-
8 ther on a heape. The eight is, a great multitude of flies, wormes and creeping
9 10 things. The ninth is the dying of foure footed beasts and fishes. The tenth is
11 flying of birdes from their neasts, leauing their egges there still. The eleuenth
12 is the dearth of victuals and corne. The twelfth, (which is the most certaine
Signes of one infected. signe) is a hot and moist temperature of the yeare. There be many signes, that declare whē one is already infected with the Pestilence. The first is if the out-
1 2 ward members be cold, & the inward mēbers burning hot. The second is heauinesse, wearinesse, & slouth of the whole body, & difficultie in breathing. The
3 4 third is paine & heauinesse in the head. The fourth is carefulnesse of the mind
5 and sadnes. The fift is a maruellous inclination for the most part to sleepe, for
6 sometime watching and raging do vexe him. The sixt is a diuerse & frowning
7 8 looke of the eyes. The seuenth is losse of appetite: The eight is immoderate
9 thirst & often vomiting. The ninth is bitternesse & drinesse of the mouth. The
10 11 tenth is a pulse, frequent, smal, & deepe. The eleuenth is the vrine, for the most part troublous, thicke, and stincking like beasts vrine. Although sometime the vrine of them seemeth to differ litle from the vrine of healthfull men, therfore by such an vrine, they that are vnskilfull of the other signes be quickly deceiued, suspecting no hurt, because of the good colour of the vrine. The twelfth,
12 which is the most surest token of all, is, if there do arise and ingender botches, behind the eares, or vnder the armeholes, or about the share, without anie manifest cause, or also if carbuncles do suddenly arise in any mēber: for when they appeare, they betoken strength of nature, which being strong and
Signifying of botches. mightie doth labour to driue the poyson out of the bodie. Also they doe declare, which members of the bodie being affected aboue other, doe thrust out from them the venemous humors. For if they do appeare in the neck, they do declare that the veines be chiefly vexed: if vnder the armeholes, the hart: but if they appeare in the share, the liuer is most affected. But seeing that botches do not alwaies appeare, (which is most perillous and daungerous, for it betokeneth that nature is weake and feeble, and is not able to expel and driue out the venemous humors) you must haue respect to other signes & tokens, which be rehearsed a litle before. As for the Cure, if the aforesaid signes do appeare,
Curatio. Venæsectio. then if nothing doe let, by and by you must cut a veine on that side in which the pestilent botch doth appeare. If the botch do appeare behind the eares, or about the chinne, or in other partes of the face and necke, you must let bloud out of the *Cephalica* veine on the same side. If it appeare and come out vnder the armeholes, you must cut the innermost veine of the arme on the same side, it is commonly called *Basilica*: or if that veine will not appeare, take the middle veine. If the botch doe appeare in the share, you must draw out bloud from the anckles of the same side. But if there doe appeare no botch outwardly, you must drawe out bloud from the same side where

there

there is felt greateſt paine and heauineſſe. But out of which veine you muſt let bloud, the paine and grief of the members afflicted will declare to you well enough: for if the members aboue the breſt be grieued and afflicted moſt, cut the *Cephalica* veine. But if the parts beneath the necke be moſt grieued and afflicted, cut the *baſilica* or the middle veine: and if the neather parts be moſt vexed, you muſt cut the veine of the ham or anckles. And if nature be ſtrong, and other things not letting, you muſt draw out bloud aboundantly. But if through age, or for other cauſes, you may not vſe bloudletting, you muſt faſten cupping glaſſes to the necke and the ſhoulders, or to the backe, or to the legges. *Cucurbita.* And if the Peſtilence do inuade any man at his dinner time or ſupper time, when the ſtomacke is filled with meate, then he muſt vomite ſtraight way. *Vomitus.* At the laſt, when the bodie and ſtomach is emptied, you muſt by and by miniſter ſome medicine that can reſiſt poyſon, that it may draw the poyſon to it, and call it backe from the heart, for that is the propertie of ſuch medicines. *Alexiteria.* Among a great number of the which, this is praiſe worthie, which is called *Electuarium de ouo*, which once a good and wiſe Emperour called *Maximilianus* did vſe. *Electuarium de ouo.* Why I doe preferre this almoſt before all other, is, becauſe of his marueilous effectes and vertues which haue appeared often in diuerſe ſicke perſons: and becauſe it is eaſie to make, except the roote of white diptaine, which cannot well be gotten, for the which it is better to vſe the leaues of true diptaine, which may well be come by; miniſter of the aforeſaid Electuarie to them that be of perfect age. ℥. j. and to them that be younger ſometime. ℈. ij. will ſuffice, you muſt diſſolue it in water of roſes, or endiue, or ſcabious: Alſo this medicine vſed is good to preſerue a man from the Peſtilence, if he take thereof daily the weight of a graine or two of barley, or the quantitie of a peaſe. Alſo the taking of this potion doth helpe much. ℞. *Theriaca Andromachi.* ℈. ij. *Mithridatum.* ℈. j. Bolearmaniacke preparate. ℈. ß. *Potio.* waters of Roſes, ſcabious and bugloſſe, ana. ℥. j. Commixe them. What powre and ſtrength is in bolcarmoniacke to driue away the Peſtilence, Galen teacheth aboundantly *in libro nono, de ſimplicium Medicamentorum facultatibus.* *Bolus armeniacus.* Where he writeth that in a great Plague that was in Rome, as many as drunke this medicine were quickly healed. Wherefore this medicine ought chiefly to be vſed in the time of the Peſtilence. Moreouer this powder doth profite verie much. *Puluis optimus* ℞. the leaues of true diptaine, the roote of turmentill, the roote of pimpernell, zedoarie, gentian, roote of *Betonica altilis*, commonly called *tunica*. ana. ℥. ß. Bolearmoniacke preparate. ℥. j. *terra lemnia*. ℥. iij. *Aloes* epatike, mirrhe. ana. ℥. ß. ſaffron. ℥. j. maſticke. ℥. ij. and beate them all to very fine powder, and make a *Tritura*. Wherefore miniſter to the ſicke. ℥. j. in roſe water or ſorrell water. When the patient hath taken ſome of the aforeſaide medicines, lay him in a warmed bed being made with ſoft ſheetes, and well couered with clothes, that he may there ſweate foure or fiue houres, or longer, according to his ſtrength. *Suder.* But if by this meanes you can ſcarcely prouoke him to ſweate, you muſt lay tyles being heate at the fire, to the feete of the patient, for theſe by reaſon of their heate will readily prouoke ſweate. And in all the time that the ſicke doth ſweate, you muſt onely take heede, that he doe neither ſleepe, eate, nor drinke. After ſweating you muſt diligently wipe

off the sweate with very cleane and fine linnen clothes. Then afterwarde let the sicke rise from his bed, if he will, or if he can, and let him eschew the open ayre. Let the ayre of the chamber in which the sicke doth lie, be corrected, amended and purified with odoriferous things, and with sweete smelling perfumes, dayly foure or fiue times. It is best for the sicke to chaunge from one chamber to another. Because the ayre of one chamber by the continuall tarying of the sicke in it, is much corrupted, and cannot easily be corrected and amended. Let the aire of the chamber into the which the sicke shall remoue, be first corrected and purged with perfumes. What those thinges should be, we will declare afterward. Two or three houres after the patient hath sweate, giue vnto him the broath of a chicken, and that you must doe often afterward, according to his strength: for the sicke must be nourished and refreshed by little and little. Therefore it is good for him to eate often, and but verie little at once: for they that are thus fedde, will sooner recouer againe then other. Also he may vse to eate the flesh of chickens, sodden with sorrell, or with iuyce of lymons, or else veriuyce. Also the sicke must be kept altogether from sleepe the first day by take of the assistantes, by rubbing of the extreame partes, by pulling of their eares, nose, and hayre. For the which purpose it is not vnprofitable to dippe a sponge in very sharpe vineger, and holde it to the nose. If the patient haue vehement thirst, he may vse this potion. ℞. Iulep of violets. ℥. iij. syrupe of the sharpe iuyce of Cytrons. ℥. j. ß. syrupe of sowen Endiue. ℥. ij. of the decoction of sorrell, scabious, and floures of bugloss. ℥. tenne, or so much of their distilled waters, commixe them and make a potion. Also you must take the water wherin barley hath beene sodden a little, and commixe with it iuyce of roses, or sorrell, or lymons, or of vnripe grapes, and minister it in steede of drinke. And you must minister medicines (specially if the strength be feeble) which can strengthen and comfort the heart, and other principall members of the bodie, as this is. ℞. conserues of violets, roses and bugloss. ana. ℥. j. ß. Bole armoniacke preparate. ℥. j. redde corall. ℈. j. barkes of Cytron apple. ℥. j. ß. Camphire. ℈. v. with syrupe of the iuyce of sharpe Cytrons, as much as is sufficient, make an Electuarie or liquide antidote. Also you must lay vppon the region of the heart, (specially if the sicke doe yet feele heate about the breast) this Epitheme. ℞. waters of roses, bugloss and sorrell. ana. ℥. iiij. powder of *Electuarium de gemmis*. ℥. j. wood of *Aloes*, red saunders, the barkes of a Cytron apple beaten to powder, the bone of the Harts heart. ana. ℈. v. saffron. grain. sixe, commixe them all and make an Epitheme. But you must note that the Epithemes may not be applied, except they be made hote: and as soone as they are cooled, you must take them away straight way: for then they constraine and shut vp the pores, and so doe bring vnto the patient no small griefe. Therefore it is better to vse cordiall bagges, as this is. ℞. floures of red roses, water lillies, and of violets. ana. ℥. ij. of all the saunders, corall white and redde, *spodium*, pearles. ana. ℥. iij. cinnamon, cloues, the bone of the Harts heart, wood of *Aloes*, barkes of the Cytron apple, saffron. ana. ℈. j. seede of sorrell. ℈. ij. seede of purslaine. grain. iiij. beate all these into fine powder, and make two square bagges of silke, and apply

Aeris correctio

When meate should be ministred.

Of sleepe.

Potio.

Comfortatiues.

Electuarium.

Epithema.

Succulus.

apply each after other being heate. Moreouer you muſt altogether couet and labour, that the venimous humours may be entiſed and drawen to the place where the botches appeare and burſt out, and you muſt doe it by ſetting to of cupping glaſſes, or by medicines applyed, that haue vertue and power to draw thoſe humours, as this is. R. fat figges in number ſixe, great raiſons. ʒ.ß. ſalt gumme. ʒ.ij. honie. ʒ.j. with oyle of cammomill, make it into the forme of an emplaiſter, and apply it hot to the botch. Or apply this plaiſter, which is much commended of all men. R. a great onion, and cut off the head of it, and picke out all the core within, then fill it with *Theriaca Andromachi*, adding to it iuyce of rew or ſage, which done, ſtoppe the hole faſt that is in the toppe of the onion with lute, and ſet the onion in the imbers to roaſt. And when you doe thinke that it is roaſted enough, pull off the barkes of it, and then bray it in a morter, vntill it be thicke like an implaiſter, and apply it hot to the botch. You neede not to be affraid to apply *theriaca* to the botches, becauſe of the authoritie of *Gentilis* and *Valeſcus* and ſome other authors. For *theriaca*, and ſuch like medicines againſt poyſon do not worke their operation by driuing the poyſon from them (as they being in a wonderfull errour doe affirme) but rather they worke by drawing the poyſon to them (as Galen teacheth, in his booke *de theriaca ad Piſonem.*) Alſo this emplaiſter is good, for it helpeth much to the rotting of the botch. R. meale of fenugreecke, and lineſeede, of floures of cammomill. ana ʒ.ß. rootes of *althæa* and white lillies. ana. ʒ.ß. figges in number ſixe, leaues of true diptaine. ʒ iij. rootes of valerian. ʒ.ij. muſtard ſeede. ʒ.j.ß. doues dong. ʒ.ß. oyles of cammomill and lillies. ana. ʒ.j.ß. make them into the forme of an emplaiſter or pultiſe. Alſo this is practiſed. R. of *emplaſtrum diachylon ſimplex*, ʒ. ij. of gumme armoniacke, and *galbanum*. ana ʒ j. bray them together, and bring them to the forme of an emplaiſter. But if the botch will not breake of himſelfe by applying the aforeſaide things, you muſt then lay vpon it gooſe dong diſſolued in the common oyle, or in oyle of cammomill. And this is ſufficient to ſpeake of here as touching the cure of them which be taken with the Peſtilence.

Outward medicines.

Emplaſtrum.

Error of Gentilis and Valeſcus.

Emplaſtrum ſuppuratorium

Aliud.

Now we will briefely expound, by what meanes a man may preſerue and defende himſelfe from the infection of the Peſtilence, which vexeth and infecteth in ſome certaine place or region. And ſeeing (as we haue declared in the beginning of this Chapter) it is euident that the peſtilence is not cauſed, but through the breathing in of the peſtilent and corrupt aire: there can not be a more preſent remedie to preſerue one, then flying from the corrupt ayre. For there is no other meanes to auoide the peſtilent aire, becauſe whether we will or no, we muſt draw in ſuch aire, vnleſſe we get vs away into ſome other place, where the aire is not corrupted nor infected, but pure and good. Which you muſt the rather and more quickly do, if the euill be greatly infectiue. And you muſt flie farre off into ſuch a place whereas the aire is knowen to be pure and good, and deſtitute of corruption: neither muſt you returne home againe from that place verie ſoone. Hereupon it is not raſhly ſayde of the common ſort, that theſe three Aduerbes *Citò*, *longè*, and *tardè*, in the time of the Peſtilence, do more pleaſure and profite then three ſhoppes very well furniſhed. Therefore they that may conueniently for their buſineſſe fly away,

A preſeruation from the peſtilence.

Flight is the beſt remedie.

let them not suffer themselues to be perswaded by anie meanes to tarie in the pestilent aire: which if they doe, they shall foolishly put themselues in daunger of Pestilent death: but if you may not flie for vrgent businesse, and iust causes, then let your first care be, that the house in which you must tarie, be without all kind of stinke, and kept cleane from all filthinesse & sluttishnesse. Let the windowes of it be iust shut, specially in cloudie and rainie dayes, that the pestilent aire enter not in. But if you will open them, see that they open vpon the East or North quarter, and do it when the Sunne is risen aboue the earth some houres. You must come abrode but seldome, and not except the element be cleare and bright: neither come then, vnlesse you haue first taken some medicine which is able to preserue you frō the infection. You must make fires dayly in your houses, with oken wood, Iuniper, *tamariscus*, laurell, or such like, that thereby the corrupt aire that is in the house, may be corrected and purged. For there is a maruellous vertue and strength in fire to amend and correct the rottennesse and corruption of the aire. Also you must strew vpon coales this powder following. ℞. rosemarie. M. ß. sage, betonie, wormewood, marioram, origan. ana. M. j. bray all finely, and make a powder. Or vse this powder. ℞. of Iuniper berries. ℥. j. mirrhe. ℥. iij. frankensense and masticke. ana. ℥. iij ß. roote of *benedicta*, ℥. j. rew. ℥. ß. cipresse barkes. ℥. j. ß. roote of *Angelica*, lauender, ana. ℥. ij. beate all together, & make a powder. Let poore folke lay vpon quicke coales, iuniper cleft in small stickes, or the berries of iuniper. Let richer folke vse wood of Aloes, or powder of *Gallia moschata*, cloues, and such like. When necessitie constraineth you to go abrode, carrie this or such a like pomander with you. ℞. *Lapdanum*. ℥. iij. *florax calamitæ*. ℥. ij. cinamon, mace, cloues, nutmegges. ana. ℥. j. wood of Aloes. ℈. j. spikenard. ℈. ß & mirrhe, masticke, frankensence, ana. ℥ ß. muske and amber. ana. gra. iij. powder them and searce them, and with *florax liquida* and water of marioram as much as is sufficient, commixe them, and make a *pomum odoratum*. In sommer time, let the aire be purified & corrected with cold things, as with floures of roses, violets, water lillies, vine leaues and branches, willow leaues, & such other like. Also sprinckle the pauement with water of roses, sorrell, and such like, or with cold water wherewith some vineger is commixed. Also it profiteth to smell roses, vineger, camphire, saunders, & such other like: or to smell to this pomander. ℞. *Lapdanum*. ℥. ß. *florax calamitæ*. ℥. iij. flowers of water lillies, roses, and violets. ana. ℥. j. barkes of the citron apple. ℥. j. ß. all the saunders. ana. ℥. ß. of maces and cinamon. ana. ℈. j. masticke. ℥. j. white poppie. ℥. ß. Camphire. ℈. ß. amber, muske. ana. gra. ij. bray and commix them with *florax liquida* and rose water, and make a pomander. But seeing Galene saith, that one of the chiefest things which they that would be preserued from the pestilence ought to regard and take heede of, is that their bodie be for the most part without superfluities and excrements, and may well breath out the vapours. Truly there is nothing more to be eschewed at such a time, then ouermuch deuouring, and swallowing in gluttonously of meat & drinke. Therefore let their meates be altogether easie of digestion, and such as ingender good blood, and be not readie to putrifie and rot. And alwayes commix with the meates that be eaten at that time, some vineger, or some other sharpe iuyce,

Suffimenta.

A pomander.

Pila odorata.

Diet.

iuyce, as veriuyce, or iuyce of citron apples, or of lymons or orenges. In Summer time he must vse for potherbes, bugloſſe, endiue, ſuccorie, and lettuce: and in Winter let him vſe ſage, parcely, *eppum*, marioram, balme, and hyſope. He muſt abſtaine from all fruites, vnleſſe they be ſharpe, as be pomegranates, citrons, lymons, orenges and ſuch like, which are good for him to vſe. Let his drinke be wine that is thinne and waterie. Let euerie man beware of ſtrong wine that is vnlayed and new. To conclude, let his diet be altogether cooling and drying. Therefore he may not vſe exerciſes but in a meane, and in a temperate place, and in an aire being firſt purified, amended and corrected by medicines and perfumes. Therefore you muſt eſchue common dauncings openly, and alſo turnings, leapings, and whatſoeuer ſuch like exerciſe there be that requireth ouer ſtrong breathing in of aire. Therefore becauſe of this alſo in the time of the peſtilence he muſt eſchue companies gathered together by magiſtrates by ſome open commandement, for matters of the common wealth, as courtes, ſeſſions and ſuch like. Let his ſleepe, watchings and all other things be moderate and in a meane. But he muſt ſleepe in a chamber that is cloſe, well ſtopped and ſhut, leſt the peſtilent aire ſhould enter into it: the aire of which chamber muſt be purified and corrected with ſome perfume aforeſaied morning and euening. He muſt vſe ſheets that be pure and cleane, and that haue bene layed vp a while with odoriferous things. When he is awaked from ſleepe let this be his firſt care and worke, to emptie the bodie of ſuperfluities and excrements. And you muſt onely take heed and beware, that the bodie be not coſtiue at any time. Therfore if it do not of it ſelfe void out excrements daylie, you ſhall prouoke them out with *pilulæ ruſi*, or with a ſoft clyſter, or with a ſuppoſitarie made for the purpoſe. When the body is emptyed from ſuperfluities and excrements, as well by the guttes as by the bladder, he muſt take ſome medicine that can preſerue him from the infection of the peſtilence, for the which there be many things before rehearſed. And if neceſſarie buſineſſe do conſtraine you to go abroad openly, you may chew zedoarie, or root of angelica, or pimpernell, or you ſhall ſmell to rew. For the ſauor of it doth maruellouſly reſiſt the peſtilent aire. He muſt eſchue all carnall luſt, ſpecially immoderate vſing thereof. After copulation, he muſt keepe him out of the open and infectiue aire. Bathes muſt altogether be abhorred, as a moſt preſent poiſon, ſpecially common bathes, becauſe when the pores of the bodie are opened by the heate of it, the peſtilent aire doth readily creepe into the bodie. They that will vſe a priuate bath, let them preſerue and defend themſelues moſt diligently from the corrupted aire, when they go out of the bath. But it is better and more wholeſome to vſe frictions at home in a rectified aire, and let bathes alone, but yet you may waſh the head weakely with lie wherein hath bene ſodden *aſarum*, marioram, lauender, roſemarie, betony, ſage, cammomill, and ſuch other like, but young men and ſuch as abound with bloud, muſt in the time of the peſtilence vſe bloudletting: and that not onely once, but, (if nothing let to the contrarie) bloudletting often doth profite much to preſerue them in health, becauſe it doth much coole the ſtate of the bodie, and bringeth it to a moderate heate. Alſo you muſt purge the bodie (if need require) with purging medicines, and that ſpecially in the ſpring time and autumne. As for per-

Exercitium

Excretion

Venus.

Balneum.

Bloudletting.

Purgatio.

turbations of the mind, he must eschue sadnesse, anger, hatred, feare, great cares, and heauie thoughts, and he must vse ioy and mirth in a meane. Now it remaineth, that we describe medicines which can keepe and preserue vs safe from the infection of the pestilence: among which the pilles that are called *pilulæ rufi* or *pestilentiales*, or else *communes*, are principall and chiefe. ℞. aloës epatick two parts, saffron oriental, mirrhe. ana part 1. with white wine, or with water of scabious, make pilles, of which minister daily ℈. j. and more or lesse according to the age and strength of the patient. These pilles because of the aloës and mirrhe in them, which do most resist putrefaction, they haue a maruellous efficacie & vertue against the infecting of pestilent aire. Also you may vse these pilles following. ℞. aloës epatick ʒ. iij. mirrhe ʒ. j. ß. agaricke preparate. ʒ. j. saffron orientall. ʒ. ß. bole armoniacke preparate. ℈. j. seed of Citron apples. ℈. ij. mastick. ℈. ß. roote of pimpernell. ʒ. ß. with rose water make 13. pilles of ʒ. j. of which minister one or two. Also you may vse that medicine that is commonly called *electuarium de nucibus*. ℞. of walnuts in number 20. of fat figges in number 13. rew. *M.* ij. of wormwood, *cotula fœtida* & scabious. ana. *M.* j. roote of *aristolochia longa*. ʒ. ß. roote of *aristolochia rotunda*. ʒ. j. ß. of turmentill, *petasitis*, and pimpernell. ana. ʒ. ij. ß. leaues of true diptaine. *M.* j. of laurell berries. ʒ. iij. of harts-horne burnt. ʒ. ij. ß. macés, mirrhe, bole armoniacke, true *terra lemnia*. ana. ʒ. iij. salt of the sea. ʒ. j. ß. *nux vomica*. ʒ. ij. floures of bugloss. *M.* j. beate them all, and commixe them with ℔ ij. of clarified hony, and made a liquide medicine like a Loch. Also this powder is verie good. ℞. leaues of true diptaine. ʒ. ß. of the rootes of zedorie, *tunica*, pimpernell, and turmentill. ana. ʒ. ß. barkes of the citron apple. ʒ. iij. *terra lemnia*. ʒ. vj. bole armoniack. ʒ. j. mirrhe chosé, aloës epatick. ana. ʒ ß. saffron. ʒ. ß. mastick. ʒ. j. ß. liquorice, ʒ. j. scabious and sorrell, ana. ʒ. iij. red saunders. ʒ. j. scraping of luorie, and *authera*. ana. ʒ. ß. the bone of the Harts heart, red corall. ana. ℈. ij. seed of purslaine. gran. 5 bray all finely and make a powder. If you will, you may make of these, lozenges, with sugar, and waters of roses and scabious, and minister daily of them. ʒ. j. or more, or lesse according to age and strength. Also onely bole armoniacke taken with vineger, is notably praised. Likewise *theriaca*, *mithridatum*, and such other are good, whereof there is plentie named of them that haue written of the Plague. We therefore here will make an end of speaking of this kind of euill.

Preseruatiues.

Pilulæ communes.

Pilulæ.

Electuarium de nucibus.

Pulvis.

The end of the fourth booke

Omnia solum Fortis patria est.
Ingenio pereat Naso Poeta meo.

THE FIFT BOOKE CONTAINING THE CVRING OF TVMORS WHICH HAPPEN ABOVE NATVRE.

CHAP. I.

What that swelling is which happeneth besides nature, which commonly is called by this generall name Apostema: and the sifting out of the true definition, and of the diuision of the same, according to the opinion of the Neoterickes.

THESE Tumours which haue their being besides nature, the later sort both of Phisitions and Chyrurgians, and not they onely, but almost the vniforme consent of olde writers haue comprehended vnder this name *Apostema*: whereas indeede *Apostema*, both by *Galen* and all other Grecians, hath bene reputed but as one kinde of those swelling tumours, which commonly are sayed to chance besides nature, which the Latines haue verie fitly termed *Abscessus*, and the crew of younger Phisitions do call it *exitura*, deriuing the originall of the word from the Interpreter of Auicene: of the which, as also of all other kindes we will intreate particularly in his seuerall Chapter. Although indeed it hath pleased some of the later sort to make *Apostema* as the *species* or *differentia* of those tumors besides nature: appointing it to be diuerse from that which they call *exitura*, and also from that other kinde *pustula*. For vnder the name of Apostemes, they will conclude and place those tumors onely which being lifted vp into a great bigneſſe, do fetch their procreation from the influence of naturall humors (as they terme them) whereupon they call them *vera Apostemata*. Therefore when *Apostema* is taken for the *genus*, comprehending vnder it all the tumors besides nature by Auicene and his followers, it is thus commonly defined. An Apostéme is a disease compounded of three kindes of maladies, all aggregated into one bigneſſe, which definition they do affirme to be essential, consisting (as they say) of *genus* and *differentia*, which do verie sufficiently explane the nature of that which is defined, appointing this word disease to be the *genus*, & the other words which are annexed, do stand to manifest the difference of other the like infirmities,

Apostema.

Abscessus.

Apostema.

The common definition of Apostema.

which do happen by the composition and construction of the instruments: All which distinctions and diuersities, *Galen* doth recite in his booke intituled *de morbo & symptomate*. But these three kindes of sores, which in that swelling, besides nature commonly called *Apostema*, do concur establishing the essence of one onely disease, are these: intemperature, which they also call an euill complexion: immoderation, whereby they intend a sinister composition, and the solution of that agreeing vnitie which nature affordeth to euerie bodie. To which three kindes, the Greekes haue assigned three oppositie and fitte termes, calling the first δυσκρασία, the second ἀμετρία, the third σαυτοῦ ἕξεως λύσις but they bring also many other descriptions rather then definitions of this *Apostema*: for definitions I dare not tearme them, when as they do not conuert with that which is defined; neither do they serue either to the sufficient explication of his nature, or the constitution of his essence, which they very wel knowing, are content to let them goe vnder the name of accidentall definitions. One of them they haue deſumed and taken out of *Galen* his booke which he wrote *de tumoribus præter naturam*. An Apostеme or tumor besides nature, is one of those things which happening vnto the body, doeth inflate that part which it occupieth, to the extremest dimension. This definition they haue extorted out of *Galen* his words which he set not downe as an exquisite definition, but as an ordinarie assertion. You may fashion (if you please) manie such definitions, as this for one. An Apostеme is an increment exceeding naturall constitution: or this: an Apostеme is a tumor, in the which the parts haue departed from their naturall state & habite in quantitie and bignesse. Whereas *Galen* in his *lib* 13. *Therap meth.* hath these wordes: in this thirtith part of our whole worke we will begin to discourse of those tumours happening besides nature, in which the parts haue forsaken their naturall constitution by becoming more bigge, so that you seing the slender weight of these definitions, you must annexe this particle, *actiones lædens*, hurting the duties of the body, or thus, inducing an euident detriment to the actions, or else they will not be absolute or essentiall: for euerie tumor making distention or swelling in length, breadth or profunditie, beyond the ordinarie constitution of nature ei her in all the bodie, or in any part thereof: or euerie excrement or greatnesse exceeding nature, must not according to the vulgar acception be named either *Apostema*, or a swelling besides nature. For (as *Galen* sayeth in his booke *de tumoribus præter naturam*) such like augmentations may befall not only to the diseased, but also to the healthfull, as well in the whole body, as in any member of the same. For grosse men, although they be enlarged, and as it were distended both in breadth and profunditie: yet they haue not this distention besides nature, but (as he saieth) onely not naturally: for they haue not yet passed the bounds of nature, neither are the actions and duties of their part maimed or annoyed, which is the border of those incremets, which are besides nature: and those tumors which abide in those parts which are yet sound and without the tast of griefe, may well be said to be aboue & beyond nature, but not besides nature, as for example: if both the teats, or one of them onely be maruellously increased, or inflated, yet so that his substance be free from all annoiance, this cannot appositiuely be said to be besides nature, but onely beyond

Three kinds of diseases appointing the essence of tumors besides nature.

Accidentall definitions.

Definitio prima. Secunda. Tertia.

A perfect definition besides nature, taken out of the writings of Galen. The diuision of a tumor besides nature into his species after the opinion of the later sort.

yond nature. Therefore if you desire an absolute definition of this tumour which happeneth besides nature, collected out of the writings of Galene, you shall thus define it. A swelling besides nature is an increment surpassing the ordinarie habite of nature, bringing with it a maime to the actions therof. But such like tumours besides nature are wont to be deuided into three kindes by *Guido*, and those of his age, into impostumes, absscessions, and pushes or vlcers. Impostumes they call great tumours, in which the matter whereof it springeth, doth offend in plentie or quantitie: pushes are those litle tumours (which they call *Bothor*) in which, the substance whereof they arise is troublesome rather in qualitie than in quantitie, yea and in them there lurketh a poysonous venim (as they say) but the absscessions are those tumours which the Latines call *Absscessus*, and of the Greekes may well be named ἀπόστημαλα, as we prooued before: but let it be lawfull for euerie man to impose what titles or names they will, so that (as *Galen* sayth they do not swarue or stray from the naturall meaning of the things themselues: but leauing all the scrupulous and Scholerlike contentions, which some do vse in the intreatie of this subiect, as impertinent to our purpose, I will orderly set downe the branches of all the tumours or impostumes, (if so you will terme them) which happen besides nature: and first we will begin with inflammation.

Apostemata.

Pustule.

Exitura.

CHAP. II.

Of the differences of those tumours which happen besides nature.

De Differentiis Tvmorvm, Qvi Praeter Natvram Incidvnt.

The diuision of a tumour into his differences.

From whence the differences of tumours besides nature are taken of the later sort.

Substantia.

Materia.

There be many and sundry differences of tumors besides nature, which are commonly called by this generall name Apostumes: the differences whereof, of the later Chyrurgians are obserued, to proceede either from the substance of the sore, or from the matter thereof, or from the Accidents, or from the affected partes, or else from the efficient causes. The differences, which they desume from the substance, are supposed by *Auicene* and his sect to be two, either the greatnesse of the swelling, or the litlenesse thereof. Amongest the bigge tumours, they do reckon *Phlegmone* (which appeare commonly in flethie places, which are fit to be distended) and *œdema*, *erysipelas*, and *scirrhus*, which all do grow vp to a great bignesse and quantitie. Litle tumours are called of them litle eminences or appearings, or breakings out called pushes, which are commonly seene in the skin, and the vttermost parts of the body, as the Greeks leprosie, the scabbe, the ringworme, and such other like, of the which we will speake more at large hereafter. The matter of the aforesayd tumours are the foure humours, as well naturall, as not naturall (that is to say) fleume, melancholie, choler, and those humours which are altogether besides nature, somtime the soundnesse of certaine bodies, and sometime a yealow or pale humour; the handling of all which differences we will referre

Accidentia.

vnto another place. The ſymptomates or accidents, which are commonly incident to theſe tumours are, griefe, heat, ſoftneſſe, hardneſſe and ſuch like: from the which they will deriue ſome differences: but thoſe which they take from the members and from the affected partes, are *ophthalmia*, the inflammation of the eye, the ſquince, the inflammation of the throat, *phyma*, *phygethlum*, and thoſe inflammations which we terme *glandulæ* and *bubones*. But the efficient cauſes from the which certaine differences be borrowed, are congeſtion and fluxe, and *criſis* (that is to ſay) iudgement thereof, which happeneth in diſeaſes: there be alſo certaine other cauſes both internall and externall, whereof we will diſpute more copiouſly & earneſtly in that which followeth. But yet truly all diuerſities and differences of theſe kindes of ſwellings chancing aboue nature, haue their beginning frō the nature and ſubſtance (which prouoketh the ſwelling) of that which floweth (as witneſſeth *Galen* in his booke which he wrote of tumours hapning aboue nature.) Likewiſe in his 2. booke that he wrote vnto *Glauco. cap.* 13. *meth. med.* in which places he declareth that the varietie of all ſwellings which are aboue nature, doth ariſe of the nature of that which floweth: for when (ſaith he) a flatuous matter hath more free acceſſe, then alſo the tumors are made more flatuous: but they are more like vnto *phlegmone*, whē as bloud aboundeth: as likewiſe *Eryſipelas*, when melancholie hath his courſe: and they be alſo more vexed with *ædema*, when fleume or reume deſcending frō the head doth raigne. Alſo they be grieued with the diſeaſe *Scirrhoſis*, when either a thicke or too cold a humor is ſetled in ſome part thereof. Therfore all tumors do chance (as *Galen* affirmeth) beſides nature, which proceede either of humors, or of flatuous and windie ſpirit, which is gathered ſometime vnder the skin, ſomtime vnder the thin filmes that couer the bones, ſomtime in the belly, ſometime in the intrailes, oftentimes in the middeſt of theſe, and of the *peritonæum*. The Greeks call it *Emphyſema*: and *Auicen* termeth it a windie *apoſtema*. If ſuch ſwellings happen of humors, then they are either hot or cold, or mingled together. Hote tumors come of the beſt bloud (that is to ſay) which is perfectly ruddy, & of a meane ſoundneſſe, & moderat qualitie, & then the Greeks call it *phlegmone*, the Latines *inflāmatio*: or they proceed of yealow choler or of burning & thin bloud, or elſe of thoſe things which be hotter then bloud or choler. They terme this euill *Eryſipelas*, but theſe name it *Sacer ignis*. But cold ſwellings are prouoked either through thin fleume, & then the Greeks call it *ædema*, but our Phiſitions terme it *laxus tumor* the interpreter of *Auicen vndimia*, or elſe it is cauſed through the humour of choler, or through thicke, cold and clammie fleume. They cal this *Scirrhon*, the Latins *durities*, the Arabiās, *ſephirus*. Alſo ſwellings ſometimes do chance by reaſon of a late taking away ſuperfluous bloud, as hereafter ſhalbe declared. Tumours are ſaid to be mingled when ſuch kind of humors tempred together, & if one maiſtreth the other, frō that which exceedeth in the mixture, is the name giuē to the ſwelling, as in blud ruling choler, we will call *phlegmone* the principall to be *Eryſipelatodē*, and alſo becauſe melancholy gouerning, *Eryſipelas* is ſaid to be *phlegmonades*. Now of other mixtures there is the like interpretatiō, both *Scirrhus phlegmonoſus* with *phlegmone ſcirrhoſa*: & *ædema phlegmonoſū* with *phlegmone ædematoſa*. And after this example you ſhal name the other tumors, although there chāceth cōmixtiō together of three or foure

Pars affecta.

Cauſæ efficientes.

From whence the difference of tumours aboue nature do come & ariſe.

Emphyſema.

Calidi humores.

Tumores frigidi.

Tumores ſeroſi.

Tumores complicati. One euill ſeemeth to haue affinitie with the other.

foure humors at once. Moreouer if the humours be of like force, & equally incorporat, so that the one cānot ouercome the other, then we will name the tumours by the coupling together of those humors which they stirre or raise vp. As if bloud be equally mingled with choler, that euill may be called, by reason of their ioyning together *phlegmone* & *erysipelas*, or (as *Galen* hath it) it may be termed a meane in the kind & nature of *phlegmone* & *erysipelas*. These truly be the chiefe swellings and tumours which are recited in *Galen* by the flowing of humors (that is to say) *phlegmone*, *erysipelas*, *œdema*, *schirrhus*: vnto the which innumerable other tumors exceeding the measure and bounds of nature, are reduced & comprehended vnder them, although they haue chose to themselues diuers names according to their sundry causes. Therefore there pertaineth vnto a kind of *phlegmone*, *phygethon*, which is called *paruus* (*Celsus* being the author) but of our men *phyma* & *tuberculum*, also it is named of the same *Celsus terminthon*, or *Oribasius*, the kinds or *species* of *phyma*, but of *Ætius*, *phigethlū*: also they be called *dothienes*, which *Celsus* doth call *furunculi*, felons. Likewise *gangrena* of some member, *νεκρώσις* (that is to say) mortification, but not absolute, & also *sphaselus*, which is called of the Latins *syderatio*, and of *Auicen ascachilos*. *Carbunculus* also is called of the Greekes *Anthrax*, whereof *Auicen* writeth in the chapter *de pruna & igne persico*. But vnto *erysipelas* are referred *herpetes*, which in kind be two manner of wayes (that is to say) *miliares* and *excedentes*, byting and gnawing, which the Greekes doe call *ἰσοπύους*. He which expoundeth *Auicen* hath called both the kindes *formicæ*, but he being deceiued with the likenesse of the name, hath mixed them in the same Chapter by great ouersight, with those *verrucæ* which the Greekes call *mirmecie*, the Latines *formicæ*: *Celsus* seemeth to haue comprehended those *herpete* vnder the name of *ignis sacer*: but the Chyrurgians of later time haue numbred them among the cholericke pustules (as they terme them.) There commeth also of choler almost all those diseases called of the Greekes *phlyctænæ*, and therefore they belong vnto *erysipelas*, whereof *Auicen* doth intreate in his chap. *de vesicis & inflammationibus*. Vnto the tumors caused of fleume (that is to say) vnto *œdemata*, are referred certen tumors cōpreheded of the Greekes vnder the name of *apostema*, which be called of *Auicen nodi*, of *Haly abbas*, *selaa*, and *dubeleta Phlegmatica*, of the Latines *abscessus*: whereof there be diuerse kinds according to the diuers matters cōtained in thē. Moreouer in *Galen* there be three such kinds of *abscessus*, chancing very often, whereof euery one hath borrowed his proper name of the Greeks: those be, *atheromata*, *stratomata*, *melicerides*, which indeed be called after the likenes of bodies cōteined in them, as we wil declare hereafter more at large. There also is a kind of *apostema*, that is, of *abscessus*, wherin are other things cōteined, which do represēt not only the properties of humours: but also of certen sound bodies: but these (saith *Galen*) chance very seldome. And of these also we will speake hereafter whē we shall intreate of abscessions. But now vnto the said kinds of *abscessus*, there appertaine certaine names of tumors being deuised of the later sort, & neuer as yet found out amongst ancient writers, as *testudo*, which is a soft swelling cleauing to the whole head of a man, and *talpa*: the one seemeth to belong vnto *atheroma*, the other vnto *melicerides*. But vnto *stratomata* doth belong a certaine swelling without paine, which they call *nata*, or *napta*, whereof we will speake

The chiefe tumors that are caused of flowing of humors.

What tumours do associate phlegmone.

Erysipelaptosis tumores. ἰσοπύους.

Aedematose tumores.

Certaine new names of tumours giuen of the latter sort of Phisitions.

Teſtudo. *Talpa.* *Ganglium.* in his place. Hitherto alſo do pertaine the euils called of the Greekes *Ganglia*, of Auicene *glandulæ*, which do differ from the aforeſaid *noat*. There commeth alſo of ſlewme that which the common ſort call *Scrofula*, and therefore they are reduced vnto *ædemata*. Theſe be called of the Greekes *Cherades*, of the Latines, *ſtrumæ*. Notwithſtanding Galene in a certaine place amongeſt the diſeaſes named *ſcirrhi*, doth take it for *durities*. Alſo vnto *ædema* is referred in Galene that kinde of *Hydrops*, which is named of the Greekes, *leucophlegmatia*, and *hypoſarca*. But the ſwellings or tumours which pertaine vnto choler, and which be comprehended vnder the ſayd *Scirrhus*, are *Cancri*, which of the Greekes be called *carnici*, and *carcinomata*: Notwithſtanding Celſus maketh a difference betweene *cancer*, and *carcinoma*, that he might ſay, that it did come and proceede by little and little of thoſe things which do chaunce outwardly, and that it is ingendred within (ſome member being corrupted.) The ſame Celſus diuided *cancer* into many partes or kindes (that is to ſay) into *eryſipelas*, *gangrena* & *vlcus nigrum*: of this kind alſo is *elephantus*, or *elephantia*, or *elephantiaſis*, called of the common ſort of Phiſitions *lepra*, and of ſome *ſancti Lazari morbus*. Therefore the name of *lepra* ſignifieth with Auicene and with the vnlearned company, a moſt grieuous and deadly diſeaſe, when yet with Gal. Paul. Ægineta, & with other Græcians it is counted but a light grief not much differing from that which we call *ſcabies*, which is called of the ſame writers *Pſóra*. Among this hard ſwelling kinde of tumours, are accounted the diſeaſes called in the Latin tongue of the interpreter of Auicene, *verrucæ*, which be ſwellings like vnto little hillockes appearing in the skinne, whereof they haue this name, being called of the common ſort *porra*. To this kind alſo may be referred *myrmeciæ*, as if one ſhould call thẽ *formiculæ*, and *acrochordones*, which of our coũtreymen are termed *penſiles verrucæ*, and *clauus* alſo, which in forme is like to a hard round pillar called of the Greekes ἴλος, of Auicene they are called *almiſmar*, *Thymion*, or *thymon* repreſenting the knobby tops of the herbe thyme. Auicene ſeemeth alſo to haue giuen it this name *tuſium*, or (as another tranſlation hath it) *tarſecũ*. Alſo among the diuerſe kinds of *verrucæ*, there be euils called of Auicene *cornua*, ſo called, becauſe they being very lõg, are turned again croked like vnto hornes. In like caſe alſo there be *calli* which the Greekes call τύλοι, theſe are engẽdred by meanes of the skin being obdurated & hardned through much labour. Vnto choler alſo there ſeemeth to pertaine this euill, which the Grecians call *dracontion*, the Latines *draculiculus*, according to the liuely ſimilitude or likeneſſe of that name, Auicene calleth it *vena medeni*, Haly Abbas, *venæ ſanioſæ*. Whereof Paulus Ægineta intreateth *cap. vltimo. Lib. 4.* This diſeaſe is not very riſe with vs. Beſides theſe tumours which we now haue rehearſed, there chaunce other alſo, affecting oftentimes the ſuperficiall parts of the body (that is to ſay) certaine ſmal appearings, which they cal *puſtulæ*, and *bothor*. Which although they differ both amõg thẽſelues, & alſo from thoſe tumours which we haue aboue recited, yet they are cauſed of the ſame humors, of the which alſo they are now called great tumours. Therfore they onely ſeeme to differ frõ thẽ in reſpect of their greatneſſe and ſmalneſſe. But that ſuch little tumors (which truely a Chirurgion ought not to be ignoraunt of) might appeare moſt manifeſt, and eaſie to be conceiued of euery man: I haue thought it expedient,

Strumæ. *Leucophlegmatia.* *Scirrhoſi tumores.* *Cancer.* *Carcinoma.* *Elephantiaſis.* *Verrucæ.* *Porra.* *Myrmecia.* *Acrochordones.* *Clauus.* ἴλος. *Thymion.* *Cornua.* *Calli.* *Draculiculi.* *Puſtulæ.*

and

and a thing worthie the labour, to set downe in this place the names of them, both in Greeke and Latine, and also their barbarous title, with a certaine rude description thereof, as we haue alreadie done in the greater. Therfore that we may enter into the matter it selfe, there are of the kinde of pustules or pushes, *Lepra*, so called of the Greekes, and retaining the same title amongest the Latines, and *Psora*, called of the same writers *scabies*, being truely diseases verie neare of affinitie among them selues: for there is roughnesse and sharpnesse of the skinne, with itching and pritching in the bodie, coming of the same humour (that is to say) of choler. Notwithstanding they differ in this, because *Lepra* doth consume the skinne with manifest scales somewhat deepe, as it were in a circle: but *Psora* doeth onely hurt the outward part with diuerse formes, and doeth vnloose a certaine scurfe of the bodie. Hitherto also doth pertaine that light infection of the skinne, called of the Greekes *Lychene*, of the Latines *impetigo*, in English the ring-worme, and commonly of some (as *Manardus* reporteth) they be called *volatica*. This chaunceth by reason of the mingled putrefaction of wylde bloud being thinne and sharpe, with other that be thicke: and verie often and easily it doeth turne it selfe (Galene affirming the same) into the aforesayd euils (that is to say) into *Lepra* and *scabies*, which they call *Psora*. Yet there are some which thinke, that that which the Greekes call *Lepra*, is called of Celsus, *impetigo*. But truely seeing he doth write specially of *impetigo*, appointing foure kindes thereof, *Lib. 5. suæ medicinæ*, it is euidently apparent, that he meant some other thing by this word *impetigo*, then *Lychene* amongest the Greekes, seeing that truely we neuer reade in anie Greeke Authour, that there were so many kindes of *Lychene* euer agreed off or acknowledged. Therefore if we will with Galene speake properly, *Lepra* and *Lychene* or *Impetigo*, cannot be one and the same euill: otherwise the same should be chaunged into it selfe. That I may therefore draw the whole matter into fewe words: when the skinne is lightly infected with an onely roughnesse and itching, that is called in Greeke *Lychene*, but in Latine *Impetigo*. But when the griefe waxeth worse, it chaungeth the name together with the forme. But if *Lychene* doth cause manifest scales, and doth pierce the skinne somewhat deepely, it is properly called *Lepra*. But if it be stretched out onely by the outward *superficies*, and doeth cause brannie or scalie bodies, it is called *Psora* of the Greekes, of vs it is called properly *Scabies*. Although this word *scabies* doth extend verie farre commonly also amongst the Phisitions of late time, who do name all the euill of the skinne to be *scabies*. But they speake verie improperly, for the pure and true *scabies*, so called of the Latines, is without all doubt that disease which is called of the Greekes *Psora*, of Auicene also *Albara* and *morphea*, cleane contrarie to the opinion of some. For that which is sayd of him and almost of all the Phisitions of Affricke to be *Albara*, is named of the Greekes and of Celsus also *Leuce*. But amongest them it is called *Morphea*, among the Greekes *Alphon*, in which disease the whole flesh is not affected, but onely the externall parts of the bodie, euen as though (as Galene sayth) it were set about with certaine scales. But these *Alphi* (as it is in Galene) in their kinde are of two sorts, that is to say, white, which come of fleume: and blacke, which proceede from a melancho-

Lepra. *Psora.* *Lychene.* *Foure kindes of Impetigo.* *Impetigo.* *Lepra.* *Psora.* *Scabies.* *Albara.* *Leuce.* *Alphon is of two sortes.*

like humour. But these things we now haue spoken of, being led by the consequence of things. For neither *Leuce*, nor *Alphi* themselues are accounted amongst the tumours besides nature, but rather among the euils of the skinne. Which things although they hurt very litle, yet because they do dishonest and bring shame, they are wont to be for the most part a greater heauinesse and wearinesse (especially vnto women) then many other diseases which truly do hurt, but yet they be secret. Both these euils (that is to say) *leuce & alphos*, *Celsus* hath comprehended vnder the name of *vitiligo* (making three kinds thereof) although our students of phisick, turning Greeke into Latin, do conuert *Leuce* in all places into *Vitiligo*, which would more aptly agree, if it were put with his Epithete or addition, as to say *alba vitiligo*. *Vitiligo* therfore, if we will comprehend it vnder any certaine head or kind, is a filthy colour of the skin, proceeding of an euill habit of some part of the bodie, which could not well receiue any nourishment to it selfe. For this euill chanceth through the default of the nourishing facultie, whereof some do constitute two kindes, the one which doth infect the skin onely with certaine markes, which do cleaue fast vnto it like vnto litle scales: the other which goeth in somewhat deeper, so that it toucheth the very flesh, and coloureth the haires: for in it there ariseth gray hayres, like vnto a certaine kind of mosynesse: this is gathered together of viscous and glutinatiue fleume, but both of them do defile & staine, either with their white, or especially with their black colour. The first *species*, which is aloft & superficiall, whether they be white or black, it is called of the Greeks *Alphos*, by the same name (as before) because it chaungeth the colour of the skin, for ἀλφίσει (whereof ἄλφος is deriued) signifieth amongest the auncient Greeks to chaunge. *Auicen* calleth it *morphea*. But the other kinde, which we haue declared to pierce somewhat deeper, is called of the Greeks, and of *Celsus* also *leuce*, and of the rest of the Latines *alba vitiligo*, of *Auicen albara*. *Haly Abbas* onely among the Arabians calleth *lepra*, a filthy disease which is hard to be cured, yet he doth not declare it to be pernitious and deadly, who hath not accounted it altogether as a light thing (as the Greekes affirme it) and litle differing from a scabbe: neither (as *Auicen* thought) pernicious and grieuous, but onely lothsome and filthie. Whereby we may coniecture, that litle credite is to be attributed to wordes or names, vnlesse the matter be throughly discouered. For one and the selfe same word by varietie of Authors, hath enforced to vphold many diuerse and different significations, as in their Commentaries doeth euerie where appeare. But we haue spoken by the way of the euilles and defedations of the skinne, onely that the confusion of things might be eschued, which happeneth by wordes misunderstood. Therefore omitting these things, we will returne to our purpose, and with as much breuitie as we can, we will dispatch the discourse of the residue of swelling sores, amõg which, besides those which we haue rehearsed and touched alreadie, are reckoned by the Greeks *Ionthi*, *Epinyctides*, *Hydroa*, *Psidraces*, *Exanthemata*, *Celsi papulæ*, and *Plinij mentagra*. *Ionthi* are litle swellings and those hard which arise in the outward skinne and *superficies* of the face (as *Paulus* and *Galen* thought) proceeding from a grosse humour, which are either resolued, or else ripened by a litle matter which springeth with it. The Latines call them *vari*: Ga-

Vitiligo.

Small credit to be giuen to wordes or names.

Ionthi.

lene

lene maketh mention *Lib. 5. De medicam. secundum locos* of an affect which he calleth *Ionthosius affectus*, which he sayth is the foundation and beginning of *Elephantiasis*, vnder the which disease he seemeth to comprehend the third and fourth kinde of that which *Celsus* nameth *Impetigo*. *Epynictides*, (as *Celsius* supposeth) are Pestilent pushes either of pale colour, or of a blacke colour, or of a white hew, not exceeding the bignesse of a beane, arising either in the legges or in the feete. About them there is alwayes a verie vehement inflammation, and when they are opened, there is found a very thicke and clammie exulceration within, his colour is like vnto his humour: but the griefe greatly surpasseth the bignesse of the sore, which in quantitie surmounteth not a beane. They borrowed their title from the night, either as *Celsius* thought) because that in the night time they pricked and molested more grieuously, or because they most commonly arise in the night. *Plinie* termeth the blewish pushes, disquieting specially in the night time. The Arabians cal them *essere*, *sere*, or *saire*, which words explane the forenamed nature of the sore. Those which are called of the Greeks *hidroa*, the Latins *sudamina*, and *Plinie papulæ sudorum*. *Auicen planta noctis*, & *almansorus*, & *alhasaphum*: whereby it commeth to passe that *Epinyctis* doeth much differ from *Auicen* his *planta noctis*, although the Greeke word *epinyctis* doth draw his originall from the night. But these *sudamina* (as *Galen* sayth) *Lib. 4. Apho. Aphor. 21.* are reckoned among those kinde of pushes or whelkes which sticking in the very *superficies* of the body, do pricke and shoote, not much vnlike to our common vlcers, and they come (as their name doth declare) by many bilious sweates, which byteth the skinne and maketh it to itch and pricke like vlcers. But this affect is common to boyes and young men, and to those which are cholericke, but in the time of heate: but it is so easie to be cured, that of it selfe without any aide it will heale, ripening with a white toppe. But *Auicen* thinketh that these desudations, by their description, agree rather with *Celsius* his *exanthemata*, the with *Galen* his *sudamina*. But he, who will obserue the nature of the wordes, will thinke that *Auicen* his desudations may well be the Greeks *hidroa* which the Latins call *sudamina*. But we must not follow the names so much among the Barbarian and Arabian writers, but the genuine & sincere descriptions of the things themselues. *Psydraces* or *psydracia*, are pushes, which abiding in the very vttermost part of the skin, are resembled to bladders excited by fire, which are called *phlyctænæ*. These rise specially in the head. *Psizacion* is not truly read in *Celsius* for *Psydracio*. Those pushes which grow in the skin first comming by thicke humours stuffed in the skinne, which are commonly called *morbili* and *variolæ* of *Galen*, because they swell and waxe bigge, as it were the bud of a flower they are called *exanthemata*, but of *Hippocrates*, because they doe breake out of themselues, they are tearmed *ecthymata*. For ἀνθος whereof *exanthema* is deriued, signifieth a floure, and ἐκθυμα wherof *ecthyma* commeth, signifieth to burst out. *Plinie* calleth such pushes, whelkes, and the eruptions of fleume. But these are of two kindes: for some of them are steepe, and some go out into breadth: those which are steepe, do grow of a more thinne and hote humour, and do excite itch. But those which are broade, do flow, and proceed from a more colde and thicke humour, and doe not a whit procure itche. The first sort, of the common Phisitions are knowne by the name *morbili*: the second by this name *variolæ*.

Epinyctides.

Why they be called Epinyctides.

Sudamina.

Planta noctis.

Desudationes

Auicene.

Psydraces.

Morbili.

Variolæ.

Exanthemata.

Ecthymata.

But the Frenchmen prepoſterouſly abuſing the names, haue called the lowe and broade kind *rubeole*, but the higher ſort *variole*. *Hyppocrates Lib. 3. Epid.* doth deuide theſe kindes of puſhes into litle and great *ecthymata*, in calling the ſteeper kind *magni herpete*, either becauſe (as *Galene* ſayeth) they occupie a great place, or elſe becauſe they happen with a vehement gnawing. For indeede theſe ſometimes appeare great in height onely, ſometimes both in height and breadth. *Cornelius Celſus Lib. 5. medicinæ ſuæ* in his Treatiſe of *impetigo* remembreth two kindes of whelkes: the one ſomewhat ſmall, which if it be daylie rubbed with faſting ſpittle, it waxeth whole, the other ſomewhat greater, wherein the skinne is made more ſharpe, and is exulcerate, and groweth verie vehemently, and looketh red, and is hardly cured. He ſayeth, that this is termed of the Greekes ἄγρια, in Latine *fera*. But in both theſe kindes he confeſſeth that there is leſſe impediment or corruption then in *impetigo*, ſo that he affirmeth, that euill whoſe cure is hard, except it be taken away, doth chaunge and turne into *impetigo*. The Frenchmen (if I may iudge thereof,) do call both theſe kindes, but eſpecially the firſt, *Dartræ*. For that euill beginneth to be very round, and after the ſame manner it commeth (as it were) into a circle, and creepeth ſlowly. Which whelkes or puſhes doe agree in all things to be thoſe which are ſayed of *Celſus* to be of the firſt kinde. Some doe conſtantly affirme that thoſe whelkes ſo named of *Celſus* doe nothing differ from *Lychene* among the Grecians, or the *impetigo* among the Latines. And we haue read, that the onely Authour amongeſt the Latines hath turned *Lychene* into *Papulæ*. *Mentagra* a Latine word vſed of *Plinie*, wherein he ſeemed in the beginning *Lib. 26.* to haue altogether meant another thing from *impetigo*, and that it was farre aboue a worſe euill then that which the Greekes comprehend vnder the name of *Lychene*, although in his Phiſicke he hath interpreted ſometime *Lychene* among the Greekes to be *impetigo*, and the like diſeaſe called *Mentagra* he tearmeth alſo in the ſame place *Lychene*. Furthermore, the ſame *Plinie* reporteth, that this euill crept firſt into Italie in the raigne of *Tiberius Cæſar*, which griefe in all the time before was vnknowne to all Europe, much leſſe vnto Italie. It was of ſo great filthineſſe and corruption, that any death was to be preferred or wiſhed before it, and alſo of ſo great infection, that by the ſwift paſſage thereof onely by kiſſing one another it infected the people, but chiefly thoſe that were gouernours and rulers among them. This euill began almoſt at the chinne, for that it did chiefly affect and annoy, whereupon it tooke this name *mentagra*. This perhappes is that ſcabbe, which certaine of the Frenchmen call *mala dartra*. *Galen* alſo ſeemeth to acknowledge this diſeaſe: for in his firſt booke *de medicam. compoſ. ſecundum locos*, he remembreth a moſt vile kind of *impetigo* of the chinne, which (as he rehearſeth out of *Crito*,) prouoketh itching, it afflicteth alſo the patients, and bringeth them into no ſmall danger. For ſomtime (ſayth he) it runneth ouer the whole face, and goeth vp to the very eyes, and it cauſeth the greateſt deformitie of the body almoſt that can be, which deſcription of *impetigo*, doth conſent in all things with the *mentagra* of *Plinie*. But they do greatly erre, which do thinke that this moſt contagious *Lychene* called of *Plinie*, *mentagra* is that diſeaſe which at this day commonly ſome do call *Gal-*

Papulæ Celſi.

Dartræ gallicæ.

Mentagra.

Plinie Lib. 26.

Galen acknowledgeth mentagra.

licum

licum malum, some *Neapolitanum*, other some not bearing any hate or iniurie to their countries, do call it *venereum*. For this infection was altogether vnknowne to the ancient Phisitions, and also of the former age, and first of all it crept into Neapolis in the yeare after the incarnation of Christ 1493. At which time Charles the eight, that most inuincible king of France did ouercome and winne the Alpes: going about also to inuade Italie: although not long before it had spread it selfe abroade through the countries of Spaine (as some report.) Wherefore hauing as it were the originall and beginning from thence, it beganne to be called *Hispanica lues*, the spanish pestilence, which plague being sent vpon the earth as it were by the iust reuengement of God (as we may thinke) for their filthie and abhominable whordome forbidden of God, hath corrupteted and ouerthrown with the contagion thereof a great part of humaine kind. For the same sickneſſe the magistrates and officers tasted of, the prisoners and captiues felt, the heads of their countries sustained, and the common people also were infected withall: so swift was the passage thereof frō one to another, and now also it straieth and wandreth through the countries of Spaine, France, Italie, and all Europe, to the great annoiance of the people. *Morbus Neapolitanus, & Venereus.*

There are also certaine pushes besides these, rehearsed euen out of *Auicen Lib. 4.* called *glandoſæ*, which do seeme to differ nothing from the disease called *ganglion*, but in respect onely of the lesser or the greater. There is mention also made by the same *Auicen. Lib. 3.* of certaine whelkes, which he calleth in the same place, *bothores iuncturarum*, and in lib. 4. he calleth them *almatim*, which because he sheweth that they be blacke, and resembling greene corne, they must doubtlesse be those which the Greekes call *terminthi*, which a litle before we accounted among the *species* of *phyma*. These *Celsus* seemeth to compare vnto *vari*, which be spots in the face, who also iudgeth them to be called of the Greekes *helcodes*, that is, *vlceroſæ* full of scabbes or sores. These white and milkie pushes, so called of *Rasis* and *Serapion*, and of *Auicen leuis bothor*, if their description be throughly considered, they will seeme to pertaine vnto the whelkes called of the Greekes *Ionthi*, which we in Latine haue named *vari*: although the selfe same remedies which *Auicen* hath set downe for them, be taught of *Dioscorides* for the disease *ephelide* (that is to say) for the roughnesse and swartnesse of the face, being caused by the heate of the Sunne. Hitherto haue we intreated of the differences of tumours aboue nature, which chiefly haue their residence outwardly aboue the bodie. Now let vs proceed to declare the causes of them. *Pustulæ glandoſæ.* *Terminthi.* *Pustulæ albæ.*

CHAP. III.

Of the causes of tumors aboue nature appearing vniuersally on the out side of the bodie.

THERE are two causes of tumours chancing besides nature, agreed of among the latter sort of Phisitions and Chyrurgians; that is to say, generall and speciall causes. Generall causes are these, the flux, which the Greeks call *ῥεῦμα*, and the congestion or heaping together of humours. Againe by the same writers there are appointed to be sixe causes in number of this fluxe, *The causes of tumors besides nature.* *Fluxionis cauſæ.*

that is to say .1. the strength of the repulsiue member .2. the weakenesse of the retentiue .3. the abundance and plentie of matter .4 the loseneſſe or fulnes of the pores of the body, through the which the fluxe happeneth .5. the straightnes of the repulsiue partes .6. and the lower situation of the place retaining the fluxe. But these may be reduced vnto foure heads, as vnto the repulsiue member, the part that retaineth, the state of the humour that floweth, and the place or course through the which the flowing chanceth. But the fluxe is prouoked either by the meanes of the expulsiue member, or because of the fortitude of the expulsiue vertue, or by reason of the naturall knitting together that it hath with the retentiue member, or because of the streitnes of the particular pores, but some part receiueth the fluxe, because it is either painfull, or hot, or somewhat weake, or seldome, and base, or setled in the neather roome. Furthermore by meanes of the humour, there is a defluxion or flowing down into some part of the bodie, because it is in abundance superfluous, of nature troublesome, & of substance thin. But the space or place is a cause of the fluxe by reason of the largenes of the passages, as of the veines, arteries, and pores. But of congestion, which is the other generall cause of tumours which chance aboue nature, there are assigned two causes: (that is to say) the fault of the vertue nutritiue, & the imbecilitie of the vertue expulsiue. By which things we gather, that hot tumors happen for the most part through the defluxion of humours, but cold tumours are rather prouoked by their congestion. But after what manner a hot fluxe exciteth the tumour, *Galen* doeth declare plainely and wittily, in that litle booke which he intituled *inæqualis intemperies*, writing after this manner. A hote descending of a fluxe (sayeth he) assoone as it hath once placed it selfe in the muscle, first the greater arteries and veines are filled and stretched out, then by their meanes the lesser are distended, and so it proceedeth vntill it commeth to the least of all. In them, when a flux is strongly compact together, and can no longer be contained, part thereof issueth out through the extreame parts of them, and part is strained out through the holes of the tunicles, and is speedily sent forth, and then those void places are filled with the fluxe, which are betweene the best and chiefest bodies. Thus all things proceeding of the humour do waxe hote in euerie place, and also are still powred forth. And these are the sinewes, the bindings or ligaments, the small filmes, the very flesh, & besides these, the arteries and veines, which truly being the principall are diuersly & many wayes afflicted aboue the rest. For inwardly by reason of the fluxe they are both made hote, and also are stretched out, and torne and pulled assunder. And outwardly also, they are not onely made hot, but also are suppressed and made heauie. But the other partes of the bodie, some truly are onely made hote or kept downe, and some are affected with both. And this disease is called *phlegmone*. Hitherto *Galen*. Therefore in such kind of tumors chancing besides nature, which are caused of the flowing of humors, something alreadie (at the least way at the beginning, and before the fluxe did begin to striue) is made & ingendred, and something is yet to come, and resteth in the generation. That which doth happen as yet, is the matter which went before, which as yet abideth in the fluxe: but that which is ingendred already, is the ioyned matter, which hath alreadie flowed, and is compact

Pars propellens
Particula excipiens.
Humor fluens.

Spatium.

Causes of congestion.

How a hote defluxion prouoketh a tumour.

pact in the aggrieued place. Hereupon therefore there must be vsed a diligen care of the Phisition in such kinds of *phlegmone* which as yet remaine in generation (as in all other tumors also and diseases which are yet in begetting, neither as yet haue obtained perfection) as *Galen Lib.* 13. *meth. med.* doth declare them to be knowne and perceiued, both by that which foreseeth, & that which cureth: but these things pertain to another kind of study. But it is conuenient, that we set downe the speciall causes of tumors which are aboue nature, to the which these three are commonly appointed: Primatiue causes, which we call both *prægressæ* and *euidentes*, and causes antecedent, which we name *antecedentes*: and ioyned causes, which we terme *coniunctæ* or *continentes*. These be called of the Greeks, προηγουμεναι συνεχεις. The primatiue causes are said to be these, which while they do worke any disease, are separated, as a fall, a stripe, a blow, a bruse, a tumor, or a solution, or that euill which is committed by admitting a dissolute diet. Antecedent causes are those which of themselues are fit and materiall to beget any disease or affect, as are foure humours both naturall and not naturall. Naturall humours are those which serue to nourish the bodie, and haue their being with the bloud, and are comprehended vnder the name of bloud. Which if they be sent out from the veines and arteries, they do sudenly congele & gather together, whether they flow without the bodie, or do remaine still in the place wherein they be contained. But they call those vnnaturall humors, which are sound seuered frō the bloud with the which the body is norished, and by reason of their corruption & naughtines by their owne nature are not nutritiue, the which do somtimes grow although they remaine in the aire which compasseth vs. And these as it were by a certen kind of prouidence of nature, being destined and ordained for some vse, are demitted and sent into certaine receptacles, either into the innermost parts of the bodie, and so engender vnkinde swellings called *abscessus*, or whelkes, scabbes, defedations and alterations of the skinne, and vnnaturall sweats: or somtime by an insensible aire inwardly infused they doe excite sweatings. Sometime also they putryfie within, and beget feauers. But such like (say they) are improperly termed humors assuming to themselues the names of naturall humors. For they hold this opinion, that onely those iuyces which come from the liuer in the generation of bloud, and of nutrition and moisture, are properly to be termed naturall humours. Such are sincere and pure bloud, cholericke also, flegmaticke and melancholike, by the which foure kindes all the parts of the bodie are generally nourished and maintained: some partes with a more pure, and (as I may say) a more bloudie humour: other with a humour more cholericke, other with a flegmaticke, and other with a melancholicke, as the nature of euerie part requireth. Therefore all the humours are contained in the veynes and arteries, the which may appeare by their varietie of colour and consistencie (as *Galen* hath expressed in *libro de atra bile*.) Furthermore of those foure tumours which are called naturall, foure especiall tumours are engendred, which are commonly called *apostemata*. In the which the swelling is very bigge, and the matter doth offend rather in quantitie then in qualitie. They are called by their proper names, *Phlegmone*, *erisypelas*, *edema*, *scirrhus*. Of tumours not naturall (as it pleaseth the latter Physitions)

There is a twefold declaration of all those euils which are yet in begetting.

Speciall causes of tumours aboue nature.

Prægressæ.

Antecedents.

Which are said to be naturall humors.

Which are said to be vnnaturall humors.

What iuices are properly termed naturall humors.

Of the four naturall humors are ingendred foure lawfull and especiall tumors.

do proceed *abscessus*, which they also call *exituræ* and *pustulæ*, which they thinke cannot well be called apostemes. To the which they will adde and reduce two other kinds also, flatuous and waterie, which proceede of a fluible substance, and are commonly called *apostemata ventosa & aquosa*, that is, windie and waterish apostemes. There be therfore sixe titles attributed vnto simple tumours, that is, *phlegmonosi, erysipelatosi, œdematosi, scirrhosi, flatuosi, & aquosi*. But the compound tumours are not all called according to the concourse of humors, (because a great many may happen in one disease) but they are named by the predominant humour especially, as we haue manifested heretofore, and will hereafter more plentifully in his owne place. But *coniunctæ causæ* or *continentes* of those tumours besides nature, which they commonly call *apostemata*, *pustulæ*, and *exituræ*, are matters and seuerall substances, which are found to be aggregated and stuffed together in the affected part, and which do yet remaine after they haue excited the swelling: and while they increase, the tumours also do greatly augment, and when they decrease, the tumours are diminished, and when their substaunce is vtterly spent and extinguished, the tumours also of themselues do fall away. And this cause called *coniuncta* or *continens causa*, of all the maladies and sundrie dispositions of the bodie, is after this manner by Auicene defined, that, when it is present, his disease alwayes accompanies him, and also when it is taken away, his disease also vanisheth. But for all this, some Phisitions of our age, and those verie well learned, do contend that Galen would admit but two causes (that is to say) an externall, and an internall, or (as they say now) a primitiue and an antecedent. Of the which that (he saith) doth happen to the bodie outwardly, which altereth and changeth the same greatly, the which alwayes is separated, vntill it hath established his maladie, as heate, cold, the byting of a Scorpion. But the internall hath his being within the bodie, and doth presently procreate the maladie, as are humours affected besides nature. But they do constantly affirme, that he neuer so much as dreamed of that, which they terme *causa coniuncta*, when as according to his opinion, euerie affect which letteth and hindereth the actions and duties of the bodie, is a maladie it selfe, and not the cause of a maladie, and that *coniuncta causa*, which Auicene and his sect haue inuented, according to their owne description, which they assigne vnto it, is nothing but a certaine kind of affect letting the execution of those dueties pertaining to the bodie: which is the verie definition of a maladie it selfe. And therefore they proue that it nothing differeth from a disease it selfe, which is wont to preiudice those actions which agree with nature. But because one and the selfe same opinion hath occupied all mens minds of this later age, concerning this triple kind of the causes of all such diseases, it shall not seeme altogether absurd, if that I throughout all this treatise of mine, for plainenesse sake, shall diuide and distinguish these three causes, into these three kinds and titles: I meane *primatiua, antecedens* and *coniuncta*. And thus much for the causes of tumors happening besides nature. Now the course of our treatise doth exact, that we should adde the signes and tokens of the same, if that before, we shall intreate somewhat of the nature and generation of the *abscessus*. *Abscessus* therefore, called of the Greeks *apostemata*, and of the common Phisitions *exituræ*, are called of Galen (*libro de tumoribus*

What tumours do come of vnnaturall humours.

Coniunctæ causæ tumorum præter naturã.

What it is which is called continens causa

Some thinke that coniuncta causa nothing differeth from the maladie it selfe.

What abscessus Galen thinketh the.

præter

præter naturam, & secundum ad Glauconem) disposítions, in which the parts of the body do depart one from another, which before did touch and meete: for the matter which doth excite these tumors, being thrust out without the flesh of the muscle, doth bring the parts out of their places, and maketh them part and seuer. Therefore saith Galen, there must of necessitie be a place voyde in the middest, which borroweth either some flatuous, moyst, or tempered, or mixed substance from the partes, which in length of time is altered, into many and sundry substaunces. But there is a double kinde of these *abscessus*, one is, when as the inflammation being turned into matter, the matter it self is packed vp together in a corner or hole: the other is, when as no inflammation proceeding or going before a certaine humour either vaporous, or else a substance mixed of both parts, is in some part collected togither, which also happeneth two wayes: for either in the space lying betweene the seuered partes, such like substance is engendred, or else it runneth into the partes themselues, and that either in the beginning, or else that way by the which those diseases happen, called ἀποσκήμματα: which (saith Galen) then do chance, when as humours which before haue infested and grieued some one part, do thence remoue, and are inforced into another. And this substance which begetteth this *abscessus*, worketh himselfe a place betweene the skinne and the flesh. And in time it doth flea off all the skinne, either becaus it is verie vehement, or else becaus the plentie of matter doth putrifie, and so breake the skinne. But if those humours, with the which the space situated betweene the seuered partes is filled, do continue any time: they haue (as I said before) many alterations, and are chaunged into many substaunces, which do represent the properties not onely of humours, but euen of solide and hard bodies. For you shall finde sundry matters within these spaces, some like vnto stones, some to grauell and sand, some to wood, some to coales, some to durt, some to the foame of oyles, some to the dregs of wine: the varietie of substances some ignorant men haue thought to proceede from the force of incantation.

Two kindes of abscessus Gal. lib. 14. Thera. meth. & lib. 2. ad Glauconem.

ἀποσκήμματα.

What things may be found in abscessu.

CHAP. IIII.

Of the signes of tumours besides nature generally appearing togither with the iudgements thereof.

TVMORS besides nature, being resyant in the extreamest partes of the body (the examining and speculation whereof doth appertaine to the Chyrurgion) being surueyed by the iudgement of the senses, and the affected parts being touched and felt with the hands, are easily descried and knowne. For in euery part of the body there appeareth a certaine kinde of encreasing exceeding the natural state, and distending aboue the measure of nature, that part which it affecteth, and it letteth the dueties or actions thereof, becaus either some humour, or some such substaunce proceeding of the humour, or which do sauour somewhat of the nature of the humour, or a vaporous spirite hath excyted it, there also must needs happen a tumor besides nature. But the tumors which they call true Apostemes, are discerned by their swelling, by their paine, and by their heat, being stretched out more or lesse. But they are

General signes of tumours aboue nature.

Particular signes.

not counted to be true Apostemes in deed, which we haue termed *pustulæ* and *abscessus*, besides that tumor: which malady the Grecians call *cacoethia*, & also in the greater or lesser sequestration, *determinata*. But the signes of euery particular difference, and of their matters whereof they be ingendred, shall be declared in their due place, in that which followeth. In the meane time we will handle the simple differences of those tumours which are aboue nature, by the which the compound differences shall also be easily knowne. But we must not come vnto particular things, before we haue throughly discoursed of vniuersall, for that order is wont to be obserued in the institutions of the Artes, neither truely vnworthily, or without cause. For those vniuersall and common things are more manifest vnto vs then particular, because these particular things are more confused and more mixed one with another (as Aristotle teacheth lib. 1. *Physicorum* ca. 1.) Let no man therfore maruell, though euery where in this treatise of Chyrurgerie, we alwayes begin of more common things, and of those which comprehed many things vnder them. But let vs returne to our purpose, and let vs prosecute the iudgements of tumours consisting aboue nature. In the which first of all we must note that all those tumors which they call true Apostemes (if we will credit Galen and Auicene) are greatly complicate and folded togither, neither can any of them be easily iudged or found out to be pure and sincere: for (as Galene sayth) with *phlegmone* (that is) with an inflammation comming of bloud, there is somthing chiefly mingled which doth preserue the nature either of *erysipelas*, or *ædema*, or *scirrhus*, but *erysipelas*, because it representeth a kind of *plegmone*, or *ædema*, or *scirrhus*: & so likewise cõsider & marke in all the rest of the tumorus. But truly those tumours besides nature, which they terme not true Apostemes, are very often found sincere and pure. But we will handle the cures of simple & sincere tumours in those things which follow, by the which the remedies also of compound and intricate tumors shall manifestly appeare. For I thinke it good to discourse of all the kinds of tumours, and also to dispose a right that which shall seeme superfluous. For if a man shall know all the simple tumors, and learne after what manner they be compounded togither, he shall be furnished sufficiently to exercise him selfe particularly in the rest. But now let vs see other opinions and iudgements generally concerning the tumours themselues, *Periodi*, *paroxismi*, and the *crises* of tumors besides nature do follow the analogia of the humors whereof they be conflated or engendred (Guido affirming the same) which analogia, we here declare to be a propertie, or proportion, a nature, or a likenesse of substaunce, which they call *forma specifica & occulta*, a speciall and hidden forme. Such kind of tumours, especialy they which be wholesome, and which are caused of the flowing of humours, are distinguished by foure times (that is to say) by their beginning, by their increasing, by their state, and by their declination. The signe of their beginning is, when the member beginneth to be stretched out, and when the beginning of fluxe is present, but yet with small griefe. We may also iudge augmentation to be present, when we see the tumour to be raised like a heape or pile, and the place affected to be filled, and the symptomates, which are wont to follow euery tumour, to be manifestly increased. But the token of their state is, when all the aforesaid things (that is to say) the

1 *Iudicia.*

Lib. de diffe. morborum.

Foure times of tumors besides nature.

1 *Principium.*

2 *Augmentum.*

3 *Status.*

the tumour, and the Symptomates of the differences of euerie tumour, hath his owne proper force and vigour, neither can they any longer admit any increasing, but the matter causing the tumour doth degenerate and change it selfe into another kind of substance. But their declination is then knowne to be present, when the pyle of the tumour and the proper symptomates thereof are decreased and diminished, or when the matter which prouoketh the tumour beginneth to be transformed into another substance. Therefore such kind of times do receiue their differences from three kindes especially (that is to say) from the essence of the tumour it selfe (that is) from the greatnesse or smalnes, from the disposition of the matter, and from the accidents which do verie much alter the declaration of the cure. But these foure times, sometime do seeme to happen altogether, because of the short hardnes of euery one of them, which almost cannot be perceiued, (as it chanceth in the venimous inflammations,) yet not mortall or deadly, which straightway do flourish and increase. Furthermore these kind of tumours, which do chiefly happen through the influxion of humors, except they be hindred by repressing the matter that floweth, or except they lurke secretly within, either of their owne accord, or without any manifest cause (the fluxe hauing recourse thither) it is necessarie that they should be comprehended vnder one of these foure, either vnder insensible exhalation or resolution, or vnder suppuration, or putrefaction, or induration and hardening. But of all these wayes the best and the most to be desired is that which is made by an insensible dissolution, and next to that, that which commeth by suppuration or mattering. But that which is caused by induration and hardening, is said to be euill, and that which happeneth by the corruption of the affected part, is to be thought the worst of all, the which *Galen* doth insinuat *in libello de inæquali intemperie*, writing on this manner. Therfore of the two, we must of necessitie follow the one, either that the bodie be putrified & corrupted, because fluxion is predominant, or else we must grant, (that this putrifaction being resisted and ouercome) the muscle must return to his naturall habite and constitution. Let vs therfore imagine that all fluxion is withstood and impeached, then you haue two meanes to cure it, either by digesting those humors which were in the affected part, or by dissoluing or losening them: of these the dissolution is best. But in the concoction of the humors, these two things are specially required: viz. the perfect generation of the matter, and also his abscession into some space by it self. And a litle beneath he addeth also these words. But if that fluxion do make the partes as it were subiect to it, then they do fall to so great an intemperature, that their ordinary action perisheth, and in processe of time they are corrupted & putrified. Thus far *Galen*. The tokens of dissolution and loosning of the humours are these: the softnesse of the sore, and the litle throbbing and beating thereof. But the signes of predominant fluxion, & of the putrifaction of the part it selfe, are the black and blew colour, to which also somtime happeneth an odious stinch. But the tokens of a stony hardnes of the tumor are, the imminution of the tumor, and also the extreame hardnes therof. The notes & signes also of the egestion and lurking of the tumor, are the sodaine diminution thereof, which chanceth somtime by too much refrigeration & coldnes, sometime by reason of a secret

4 *Declinatio.*

The times of tumors do take their difference fro three things chiefly.

Tumors aboue nature are contained vnder foure modes.

Gal. lib. de inæquali intemperie.

Signes of dissolution.

Signes of putrifaction.

Signes of induration.

venim, which lurketh in the place. And this same sudden and often imminution of the tumor succeedeth commonly some feuer, and also other euill sumptomates. And thus farre of the signes and tokens of these tumours which our common Phisitions haue comprehended vnder this name *Apostema*. The tokens also of those tumors which we call *pustule*, shall not be forgotten, when we shall haue occasion to handle them. But the signes and tokens of the absceſſes, commonly called *exitura*, either those which doe foreshew their comming, or else those which do manifest their presence alreadie, are these. When thou seest (saieth *Auicen*) pulsation and beating, or hardnesse to haue continued a great time, and also that the griefe together with much heate doth augment, then you may imagine that the next euent that followeth is that the Apostеme will be turned into matter and suppuration, and so consequently to be an Abscession. But when thou findest that the place is soft, and that the griefe is somewhat asswaged, and the heate mitigated, and that one place of the tumour is supereminent aboue the rest, and againe if by thrusting it with your finger, you shall perceiue a wateriſh inundation to subsist, and againe that the colour of his top shall waxe white, then you may well thinke that the tumour is mattered, and also that it is turned into abscession. And therefore it was verie well iudged of *Hyppocrates*, that feuers did oftner happen, when that the matter was in ripening, then when it was already come to his maturitie. Moreouer the markes and tokens as well of the present Abscession, as also of the Abscession to come are comprehended in these common verses:

Signes of the regression and lurking of a tumour.

Signes of Abscession to come

Signes of Abscession alreadie present.

Apho. 47 lib. 2.

Durities longa, pulsus, dolor, & calor aucti,
Signant pus fieri: sed factum, dicta remissa,
Sub digitis vndans, albescens pars & acuta.

Which may be thus Englished.

By hardnesse long, by pulse and griefe, and eke by heat encreasd,
We know that matter doth approch: but made we iudge indeed,
If that it yeelds to finger weight, and whitenesse doth appeare,
--and painfull be also.

But you must be very attentiue and vigilant in discerning and iudging of the matter it selfe. For the manifest knowledge of the matter and suppuration is sometime withholden from the Phisition by reason of the thickneſse of the skin in the which it is included, (as it is proued by this Aphorisme of *Hyppocrates*.) Whosoeuer is ignorant of the suppuration which is in the bodie, his ignorance proceedeth of the thickneſse of the matter, or of the place wherein it is comprehended. And thus much for the signes of Abscessions. Now of the iudgements of them, these things are deliuered vnto vs of *Auicene* and his sect. Abscessions which are planted neare vnto any strong member or vnto anie iuncture or ioynt, and in those places where there are most veynes and sinewes, and againe in a weake part, hauing gathered his debilitie by the defect of naturall heat, being indurate also and couered with a thicke skinne, conteining also thicke matter, and so the more slow in motion, the outward place being plaine also, and euen, not ascending like a litle hillocke, I say, such a like sore is greatly suspected, and very hardly and slowly ripened: and such a one as is euerie way by description opposite and contrarie to this, is of good and laudable

Apho. 41 lib. 6.

Iudicia abscessuum.

laudable habite, for both soone and easily it mattereth, and oftentimes also (no outward medicine aiding or assisting) of it selfe it gapeth and openeth. If therefore the abscession do grow vp into a sharpnesse, and the substance of the matter be thinne, and the skinne not thicke or hard, of his owne nature and power it will expell and thrust foorth the conceiued humour without any forreine aide, vnlesse a man by making incision will anteuert and preuent his voluntarie opening. Such like abscessions are digested sometime by breathing or wind (no solution being made subiect within the skinne,) but that happeneth when the matter is small in quantitie, good and thinne, and not sticking very deepe. But if there be any emissarie, or way made into the tumour either by nature or by Art, the humour conceiued within doth breake foorth oftener then digest. But that opening or apertion which is made by nature, is a great deale safer then that which is made by the hand: but if it be so, that it must be mollified by Art, you shall safelyer do it by a sharpe penknife, or other cleare and bright instrument of yron, then by that medicine which they call *ruptorium medicamentum*. And therefore (as before I sayed) euerie apertion, which is made and enforced by Art, is worse then that which nature affoordeth of it selfe, because such like manuell openings to make the matter ranke, may perhaps turne into a *Fistula*. But when necessitie vrgeth, & when we cannot vse a better remedie, we must boldly attempt that. And by this meanes you shall eschue those discommodities, which before I named, if (when the matter so requireth) you do seasonably make apertion, and by that meanes hasten the ripening of the other baggage which lurketh in the tumour. *Hyppocrates* in his last Oracle of his first booke of prædictions hath expressed the very notes and markes of the worst matter, and of the best, speaking after this manner. That matter is esteemed best, which is of colour white, and euerie way like it selfe, and soft, and gentle to the toucher, and as litle vnpleasant to the nose as may be. And that which is euerie way contrarie to this, is the worst of all. But the tokens and signes of all the other humors and solide substances also which are included in these abscessions, shall be manifested and shewed in their particular Chapters, as they shall by consequence and order ensue.

what abscessions may easily be digested.

what abscessions may soonest be ended through resolution.

Abscessions are safelier opened with a penknife then with ruptorium medicamentum.

The notes of the best and worst matter, out of Hyppoc.

CHAP. V.

Of the generall method of curing of all tumours besides nature, but of those especially which proceed from the influxion of humours, as Apostemes, and Abscessions commonly called Exituræ.

OF all Tumors aboue nature, as well those which are alreadie ingendred, as those which are not yet in generation, there is one common & principall order of curing (as it is in *Galen lib.* 13. and 14. *Method. medic.*) namely that that which is aboue nature resident in any member, and raiseth the same into a tumour, should altogether be emptied out. But those which are yet in begetting, in them there is a certaine obstruction of the humour that floweth to the

The common order of curing of tumors.

The common method of curing of tumors

doth change according to the difference of the tumor, and the member affected.

aggrieued place, before the euacuation. In them therefore is required a diligent and singular care of the Phisition, to declare the cure of them. But these common manifestations, according to the difference of the tumor it selfe, and the nature of the affected member, do verie much differ and alter. For truly in all tumors alreadie ingendred, and in euerie part of the bodie, the euacuation of that which annoyeth, and infesteth, is in no case to be vsed and ministred, as *Galen* teacheth *libro* 2. *ad Glauconem*, and in the places aboue recited, which also shall manifestly appeare in that which followeth. But we must not cure those tumors with such remedies, which are yet but beginning and occupying euerie member, or emptie out that which is alreadie ingendred in them, but we are enforced (if we intend to follow the right order in curing) to vse sometime one remedie, sometime another, which is of force to stop the fluxe, and auoid out that which is ingendred, so farre forth as the kinde of the tumor, and the nature of the affected member doth require. *Galen* therefore chiefly draweth the demonstrations of the cure of tumors aboue nature from these two things. viz. from the disposition it selfe or essence of the euill, and from the nature of the affected member. Moreouer the disposition of the euill (which we haue now in hand, or the essence thereof doth comprehend three things in it, according to the iudgement and consent of the later sort (that is) the quantitie, the qualitie, and the matter or substance which prouoketh the tumor. By meanes whereof that chiefe and common declaration is changed, and from them is taken also the particular order of curing. For a great tumor is cured one way, and a small tumor another way. For the difference of them is knowne by their greatnesse and smalnesse (as some suppose.) And one way is a mightie *phlegmone*, and another way a litle *herpes* healed. Otherwise also is that tumor remedied, which is caused by fluxe, and is yet in begetting, then that which is procreated through congestion, or is alreadie ingendred & congeled. Also a hot tumor (as *Erysipelas* saith) is otherwise cured then a cold, as is *œdema* and *scirrhus*. The quantitie therefore which in a tumour aboue nature varieth the cure, is either great or small. The qualitie is the fluxe, or (as some terme it) the deriuation and congestion. The matter therof is the humor, be it either hote or cold. But in the nature of affected members foure things chiefly are to be considered. viz. their temperature, their forme or fashion, their situation or place, and their power and strength. To the which also may be added a fifth thing, which is the facilitie (as I may terme it) and difficultie of the senses. Except you will with *Galen* comprehend and containe it vnder the last thing, which is the vertue and strength of the tumor. These things therefore also doe much alter that generall order of curing, which is commonly obserued throughout all kind of tumors aboue nature. It is therefore requisite, that in curing those tumors which chance besides nature, we remember all those declarations which are taken from them. For *Phlegmone*, or any other tumor which hath his abode in the fleshie parts of the bodie, is otherwise cured then those which are situated in the sinowy places: otherwise in the eye, then in the knee or necke: and otherwise are the kernels in the throat cured, then those which are resident in other parts of the body. But to be short, the temperature, the fashion, the situation & the strength of the mem-

The order of curing of tumors is chiefly taken from two things.

The essence of a tumor doth containe three things in it.

Foure things to be considered chiefly in the nature of affected members.

ber

ber that is affected, and be set with the tumor, do change all those operations, which we shall attempt and proove in their cure: retayning still that generall intention, which *Galen* hath taught to be alwaies taken from the disease. Therfore first we haue here decreed to set downe a common and generall method of curing of tumours aboue nature, especially of those which are caused through the influxion of humors, taking their manifestation from the affect or euill it selfe, nothing respecting the affected part. Afterward we will teach the vniuersall cure of them, but chiefly of inflammations, whenas they shall degenerate & change into abscessions. Then moreouer we will declare the particular order of curing all differences, especially of those which be simple, by whose proportion or Analogie, the cure of compound tumours shall easily be learned. And in the meane time, as the place shall require, we will rehearse out of *Galen* certaine things concerning the order of curing, which haue their assumption from the parts which are affected, & as it were besieged with a tumor: which things being rightly weighed & considered, it shalbe easie for any reasonable Phisition or Chirurgian, by our certaine method and order, to cure all kind of tumors which are incident to any part of the bodie. We therefore imitating *Galen*, will draw the beginning of the cure of tumors which are said to be aboue nature from the flowing of ingendred humors, & from the inuention of the cause of the verie euill, that so both the causes which excite the same, may be preuented, and that which is alreadie in it may be taken away. Therefore by the example & analogie of one difference of tumors, which are caused through defluxion (for here we mind to intreat onely of them) we will vnderstand also other differences, which do grow through flowing of humors. And here we will set downe a briefe and compendious curing of one kind of *phlegmone*, which chanceth verie often, and procureth feuers and other verie dangerous euils and symptomates. But in this place vnder the name of *phlegmone*, our intent is not to comprehend euery hot & flaming disposition, which the Greekes call *phlogosis*, but that onely which proceedeth by the meanes of a bloudie fluxe, chiefly incident to fleshie and fat bodies, wherein is vehement paine & redneſſe appearing in the outward parts, and as it were a burning heat, a stretching out, and a striuing or thrusting, and when the euill is increased, there is sence of the pulses beating. For this inflammation with *Galen* & other Greeke writers, as *Paulus*, *Aëtius*, and *Oribasius*, which do follow him as their best guide, we properly call *phlegmone*. That we may therfore come to the matter it selfe, these are the very words of *Galen*. The common ingendring of euerie *phlegmone* commeth by, the influxion of bloud, and that more abundantly then was wont to happen to that member: for bloud doth flow very abundantly (sometime one or other member sending it forth) and that part doth entertaine and receiue it, which beginneth to be affected with *phlegmone*: but some time that member which is afflicted doth draw it vnto it selfe. But the partes which sendeth it forth do driue out the iuice, being either superfluous by reason of the plentie thereof, or grieuous because of the quality, or else because of both. But they which are attractiue, do draw or pul with a sickly heat or griefe. But to these also are adioyned certaine helping causes. viz. the weakeneſſe and baseneſſe of the member, the fulnes of the conduits & passages through which

Lib. 2. ad Glaucon.

The order of handling that which followeth.

The finding out of the cause is the beginning of the cure of tumours aboue nature.

Phlegmone quid.

Gal. lib. 13. meth. med.

The common ingendring of euery phlegmone.

The helping causes of flux. the flux passeth, the straitnesse also and narowesse of the pores and expulsiue partes, and the inferiour place, as we haue alreadie declared. Therefore of all these, there are three intentions of curing those tumours which haue their beginning of flowing, collected and gathered of the latter sorte of Chirurgians. 1. The first is to turne away the fluxe, and preuent it altogither. 2. The second is, to mitigate the griefe, and altogether to remoue that cause, for the which the member intertaineth or also draweth the flux vnto it. 3. The third is to emptie out all that humor that hath flowed to the aggrieued place. But how the first intention should be finished, Galen hath fitly taught *li. 3. meth. med.* where he declareth vnto vs all the wayes to auert & turne away the flux, & the meanes to stop and inhibite *phlegmone*, which as yet remaineth in generation, writing after this manner: when humours are equally augmented amongest themselues (which the Greekes call *plethora*) yea also when all the body it voide of excrements and doth containe a mediocritie of iuicie humours, (paine and the heate of that member also wherein *phlegmone* raigneth raising the flux) through the emission of bloud we helpe and remedie *phlemone* which now beginneth to rule. *Plethora* also is cured both with often bathing and with exercise, and also with much friction and rubbing. Furthermore it is cured by medicines that will digest, so that a feuer be not present, and besides all these it is helped through hunger, and a good diet, although the sicke be feuerous. But when the bodie is stuffed either with melancholie, or choler, or flewme, or with other clammie and viscous humours (which state of the bodie the Greekes call *cacochimia*) the euacuation therof must be laboured by a purgation, which is a fit remedie for euerie humor that raigneth. But of them we will speake more at large in their particular Chapters. Now *Antispasis* (that is) a reuulsion the contrarie way, is a common remedie against all these kinde of tumours, while the flux doth yet strongly preuaile, as in the beginning & increasing of the euill: but in the end of the state, & in the declinatiõ thereof, while the flux now remaineth & sticketh in the member, and the whole body is sufficiently emptied, the euacuatiõ must be attẽpted & fetched either frõ the affected part, or frõ that which is next adioyned thereunto. The second intention containeth remedies to prouoke sleepe. vidz. which do mitigate paine, & also bind & preuent the flux. Moreouer it teacheth remedies, which are able to loosen & dissolue the naturall pores, by the which the affected member is wont to be throughly purged. But the matter of al these shalbe abundãtly described hereafter. But we will handle the third intẽtion, which is perfited with such things as do euacuate the matter that exciteth the tumour, from the affected place. And that matter is euacuated not onely by medicines which do euaporate & dissolue, but also by such as do repel & represse such as the Greekes call ἀποκρουστικα. And therfore, in the beginning of these phlegmonous tumours, & other whatsoeuer do deriue their beginning from the influxion of humors, we may rather vse repressing medicines, then those which do euaporate: except in certain cases, of the which (saith Guido) Galen seemed to haue appointed foure. 1. The first is, whẽ that such tumors be in cleane & pure members. 2. The second is, when the subiect thereof is venimous. 3. The third is when the matter is thicke, & not pliable to repulsion. The fourth, when it is very

Plethora quid.

Cacochymia.

Antispasis.

Secundus scopus.

Tertius scopus.

Cases in which we may not vse repelling or repressing remedies.

very vehemently packed together. *Auicen* excepteth only two causes, viz. when it happeneth in any clean or pure part, or in any other place, out of the which it is to be feared that the matter will flow to some principall part of the bodie. Some other appoint onely one cause, other six, other ten, other ninteene, other twentie three. But before we do establish any thing of this so doubtfull a cause, we must know that there be two kindes of repulsiues, both amongest the late Phisitions and also the Arabians (that is to say) common & proper. Common repulsiues are such as do inhibite all fluxe keeping vnder and repressing the same, and that is done either by cooling it, or by thickning it, or else by stuffing it (that is) by reason of the thicknesse of his substance, by shutting & occluding the pores and wayes whereby it shall flow out, or else by confirming the parts affected. These things following do represse fluxe by refrigeration & cold, singreen, letuce, *psillium*, *cotyledon* (that is to say) *vmbilicus Veneris*, *lenticula palustris*, *caphura*. And these also do stuffe and stop the passages *farina* called *volatilis*, the white of an eg, *amylum*, *gluten*, & the kinds of gums. To conclude, all such things as do refrigerate with ease and without biting. But these things which do confirme & roborate (I meane such as do restore the naturall temperature to the part affected) as oile of roses, *oleum omphacinum*, oile of mirtles, oile of cammomill, *absynthium*, horehound, *vua cupressi*, and such like things, which being applied do strengthen the affected part, and so do free it and defend it from all imminent flux. But proper repulsiues are such as when the humours do slide into some other part, do meete with the same, and do enforce them to retire againe. And these are to be vsed then when the member is growne thicke, as attractiue medicines are commonly applied to thin tumors. Of these manie are of a cold qualitie, and many of a hot, but both sorts, (that is) both hot and cold are in operation astringent, & binding. The medicines repressing, which of nature are cold, are these, vine leaues, plantaine, nightshade, *dipsacos*, viz. *virga pastoris*, or *bursa pastoris*, *Glaucium*, *balaustium*, *omphacium*, *sumach*, *terra cinolia*, commonly so called, and *terra sigillata*, and others of that kind. Those be the simples out of the which many compounds are made, as *oxycratum*, the ointment of bole, the ointment of *Galen*, and such like. But the hot repulsiues are alume, cypresse, nuttes called *galbulæ*, *iuuens rotundus* or *odoratus*, called of the Græcians χίος αὐθ, called also *blatta*, *bizantia*, *lupinorum farina*, and certaine austere and sharpe wines, and many other such like things. But we will set downe the whole order of applying of repelling medicines in the beginning of fluxions, prescribed by *Guido* in two seuerall prologues. In the beginning of all tumours, which proceed from the influxe of humours, but specially of such humors as are *phlegmonous*, it wilbe auailable to vse repulsiues as they are called, these tenne causes onely excepted, that is to say, when the tumor is in a fat member, or when it proceedeth of a venimous matter, or a substance which is verie thicke, and so vnfit to be repelled: or else when the humour is vehemently packed in the affected part, and deeply also, if the tumour be inclined to suppuration, or descending from a primatiue cause, if it be in a plethoricke or full bodie and verie weake, if it be seated next vnto a principall member: to conclude, if it happeneth with vehement griefe, for in these cases, we may better vse medicines which will mitigate the tumor and the paine

Repellentia communia.

Repellentia proprie dicta.

Frigida repri-mentia.

Callida repellentia.

The first prologue of Guido in repressiue things.

Gal. 2. ad Glauconem.

rather then such as shall repell and resist the humours. The second Prologue is after this manner. In the beginning of all tumors, but chiefly of those which are *phlegmonous*, common repulsiues are profitable: (three cases onely excepted,) that is, if the tumor happen in those partes which are called *glandulosæ*, if they be enclined to suppuration, or if they proceed of a venimous matter. And in all these cases, but especially then, when the humour doth stand, and when the fluxion consisteth, and is almost made a tumour, it is behouefull to dissolue and scatter the matter, applying to the swolne place, *diaphoretica*, not biting or sharpe but milde and gentle, being moderately hote and moist, but this must be done principally in the three last remembred cases, in the which we must endeuour to attract and draw the matter which is dispearsed to the head, where the tumour most appeareth: and we must increase the tumour as much as we can, and so inhibite the course and fluxion of the mixed humours. Which truely we may sometime do, by vsing attractiue emplaisters, and oftentimes by fastening cupping glasses to the aggriued place, (as *Auicen* teacheth.) Let this therefore be a generall rule or canon of Arte. In the beginning of all tumours which proceed of the influxion of humors, (those three excepted which were named a litle before) onely pure repressiues are to be vsed. But in their increasing we must mingle with these repulsiues, some of those things which do dissolue and discusse. But in the state of tumors, yea and somwhat before the state, we must commixe repressiue medicines equally with discussiue: and when there is declination present, or the end of the state, we may lawfully vse onely resoluing and releasing remedies: to conclude, so long as the humour doth yet abound, we must labour to repell it, and driue it away: but if the fluxe doeth still remaine, we must seeke to digest it. But if it dependeth vppon both, (that is to say) that partly something hath alreadie flowed, and cleaueth fast to the place, and partly something may yet abound and flow: then it shall be lawfull to vse commixed remedies, (that is) partly those which can resolue and vnbind, and partly those which are able to bring backe and repell. For contrarie diseases being gathered into one place together, we must vse also compound cures, as *Galen* saith 13. *Therap.* Furthermore, all these things truly are to be vnderstood, as thus, if a tumor aboue nature is to be dispatched and cured by resoluing medicines, or (that I may speake generallie) by the way of resolution. But their cures, whereby we will finish all those intentions whereof we intreated before, according to their diuerse matter that exciteth the tumour, shall be described and declared in their particular Chapters, as by consequence and order they shall follow.

The second Prologue.

Si tumor iam factus est.

Emplastrum. Cucurbitula. Artis canon generalis.

CHAP. VI.

Of the abscessions generally.

DE CVRATIONE ABSCESSVVM IN VNIVERSVM.

Of the cure of tumors which are turned into abscessions, which they call Exitura.

BVT if *Phlegmone*, or any other tumour doth degenerate and turne into *Abscessus*, the cure thereof in the beginning is finished and ended (as saith *Galen Libro. 2. ad Glauconem*) by helpes and remedies that do mitigate, which the Greekes call *chalastica*, (that is) by resoluing and remitting medicines: of the which nature and force is that medicine, which is called of *Galen Tetra-*

pharmacum

pharmacum, being verie softe, and prouoking sleepe: with the which according to the opinion of the same *Galen. Lib.* 13. *Therap.* there must be commixed a litle honie. But *Tetrapharmacum* consisteth of foure things, of the which there must be of euerie one a litle portion or quantitie (that is to say) of waxe, of rosin, of the gumme of the herbe *colophonia*, which distilleth from the roote thereof, and of bulles tallow. But in processe of time, we must passe ouer vnto those things which are able to concoct and digest, or to ripen and bring to suppuration. But those which are turned into another kinde, (that is) into another substance, and that altogether besides nature, they are to be remoued and cured by the Arte of Chyrurgie. Moreouer in remouing them according to the counsell of *Galen*, 14. *Therap.* it shall be requisite to consider, that among all the wayes and meanes, whereby we intend to finish our purpose, we should alwayes make choice of the best of them. The best meanes and wayes are declared and manifested vnto vs three manner of wayes: viz. By the shortnesse of the time to cure in, by curing without paine, and chiefly by curing safely and without danger. Againe, that thou mayest cure safely, there are three speciall things diligently to be considered. The first and the chiefest is, that you throughly attaine to the perfection of your labour. 2. The other is, that if you cannot attaine to the same, yet at the least, that you hurt not the sicke. 3. The third is, that the euill or disease may not easily returne or come againe. By these considerations, if you will declare the best method of curing, you shall find in all those tumors before mentioned, when the cure is to be ended by the helpe of Chyrurgie, and when by the force of medicines. But truly the studie of Chyrurgie in these chiefly which now we do entreat of, (that is) in those tumours which are altogether aboue nature, doth make and tend to the killing and destroying of them, and doth wholly declare, after what sort they may be taken away. But if it cannot bring this to passe, the next counsell is, to transferre the euill, as we vse to do in those humors called *Hypochymata*, (that is to say) the web in the eye. But that which is fetched from medicines, doth first tend vnto this end, that that which is aboue nature, may both turne into matter, and also into putrefaction: but this he appointeth in the second place. These things hath *Galen*: therfore whē the parts which are troubled with *phlegmone* do beat verie vehemently, so that now you begin to dispaire of their cure, (they being not yet mattered:) all the ancient Chyrurgians (sayeth *Galen* 4. *Therap.*) do minister and apply such kind of medicines which do speedily procure matter: but before it be mattered, they vse none at all. And although those parts which are annoied with *phlegmone*, be annointed with a cataplasme, which may both heat them & moisten them, & bring thē to suppuration, yet the same doth not appeare by the first reason or way, that is, as the remedie and help of the euill, but as the mitigating & easing of the symptomat, that is, of the paine. For truly the remedies of *phlegmone* are of a drying nature. And the same *Galen* addeth morouer a litle after, that a short and compendious cure of those parts which are affected with *phlegmone* is quickly ended & dispatched, by remedies which are able to drie and vnbind, which truly doth altogether either remoue the affect, or else, if they leaue behind them some litle relict, which may turne to suppuration, it is needfull to vse some other sharpe medicine, which is able

Tetrapharmacum.

The best order of curing is declared three wayes.

1
2
3

Ex lib. 4. Therap. meth.

to bring out the matter, or if the skin about the tumor be thin, and you willing speedily to ease the sicke, you necessarily must vse incision. And this truly is that which *Auicen* saith, namely, that the cure of an Apostеme, (as it is an Apostеme) is the extraction and drawing out of the strange matter which raiseth the Apostеme. But to declare the remedies of them wherewith it is expedient to draw and moue the matter, and to manifest other things also, which we spoke of a litle before, they are to be sought out of their particular Chapters. Furthermore, the Abscession being alreadie come to Suppuration, or changed, or strongly compact together, if the matter or any other baggage therein contained, be not discussed and dissolued, or if in conuenient season, and while the occasion is offered, it be not opened without the labour of the hand, you must make an issue by incision for that which otherwise will not be digested. But this thing chiefly is to be proued and enterprized, if there be feared any erosion or gnawing to insue, or any other danger, yea if necessity commandeth, it ought straight way to be opened, and the matter to be drawne out, as speedily and safely as is possible, for the cause before alleadged. But aperrion is made more safely with a knife, then with burning and scalding medicins if nothing do hinder it, and commonly such kind of *phlegmonous* tumors, being alreadie turned into suppuration, are opened with a penknife. Moreouer Apertion or the letting out of the matter ought to be done, by reason both of the abundance of matter there gathered together, & also of the affected place. But if any part of the mattered member shall seeme to be putrified & rotten, it is needfull to cut it off, to the forme or likenesse of an oliue or mirtle leafe, that it may heale the more easily. But *Galen* commandeth to auoid and eschue alwayes any great incisions, who did heale such kind of mattered tumors, both in the parts about the priuie members, and also in the armeholes only by incision (as he vsed chiefly to do) and by medicines that were of force to dry. Now if need sometime required to cut off somewhat by reason of the plentie, not only of matter, but also of the corrupted parts, he vsed no greater incision then the breadth of a great mirtle leafe. For by wide & large sections, when the member is brought vnto a scar, besides that it is made most filthie, it also becommeth very weake and vnfit to moue withall. But these kinds of sections imitating the mirtle leafe, are vsed in those tumours especially which do matter vnder the armeholes, & about the share. And in those truly the lengths of them must be drawn ouerthwart and not by the straightnesse or rightnes of the leg or body: for wh ē we bend the leg or the arm, the skin naturally doth apply itself with it. But in other places we alwaies almost do vse simple incisions. Now in this apertion or incision, seuen things are especially to be considered, according to the consent of the later Chyrurgians. First, that incision be made in that place wherein the matter is contained. The 2. that incision be made in the neather place of the tumor, that the mattered and corrupted filthinesse may the better be voided out. The 3. that it be made next the wrinckles and processe of the muscles. The 4. that you do auoid and eschue the sinowes, veines and arteries, as much as you can. The 5. that all the matter be not brought out abundantly all at once, especially in great abscessions, lest that by too much emptying out and that suddenly, and also by the resolution of the spirites, there followe weakneſſo

Auicen.

When abscessions are chiefly to be cut and opened.

A mattered tumor is more safely opened with a knife then with burning medicines. Lib. 13. Ther. A section imitating the oliue or mirtle leafe.

Great hurt cōmeth by wide incisions.

Why mattered impostumes about the share must be cut ouerthwart.

Seuen things to be diligently marked in the apertion of an abscession alredy mattered.

1
2
3
4
5

weakneſſe and faintneſſe. The 6. that the place be handled and touched very gently, and with as litle paine as can be. The 7. that apertion being made, the place be wiped very cleane, and filled with the fleſh againe, and brought to a ſcarre after the manner of vlcers. But *Galen lib. 13. Therap.* warneth vs chiefly to marke two things in the inciſion of a ſuppurated abſceſſion, writing after this manner. 1. It at any time the abundance of matter exceedeth and ouercommeth your medicines, neither do they ſeeme vnto you to be able to digeſt all the corruption: it is requiſite to make an iſſue by inciſion for that matter which yeeldeth not to digeſtion, in that place eſpecially where it is moſt high. 2. Moreouer in the inciſion alſo of another abſceſſion which pertaineth vnto fluxe: and yet reſpecting both the kinds, you muſt not forget to cut and lanch that which is alreadie come to ſuppuration: and then apply ſome medicine thereto which can drie it vp without eroſion or gnawing. But after the impoſtume is opened, you muſt vſe remedies that be of a ſcouring and cleanſing nature, and fit to purge the filthy vlcer, as are ſoft flaxe or lint, and ſoft linnen, emplaiſters and ointments, which ſhalbe ſpoken of in their particular chapters. At the firſt time, *Guido* did apply the yolke of an egge being thickned with alume *Zuccharinum*, which medicine *Gulielmus à Saliceto* did alſo vſe. But afterward you muſt come to the applying of *mel roſatum*, & *mundificatiuum ex apio*: and laſt of all, to *vnguentum Apoſtolorum*, and *Ægyptiacum*, if the matter ſo requireth. But aboue, without you muſt miniſter ointments, as *baſilicon*, *diachylon*, & *diaphœnicon*, ſo commonly called, and other of that ſort, which are appointed for vlcers. For when you haue cut an abſceſſion, it muſt be cured after the manner of other vlcers. *Galen lib. 13. Therap.* after the skin was cut in thoſe *phlegmonous* tumors which chance about the armeholes and priuie members, he did fill the affected place with that medicine which the Greeks call *Manna*, which is, *thuris purgamentum*. For this hath a light adſtriction or binding. But you muſt alſo (ſayth he) firſt aſſwage the launced member, (as much as you ſee cauſe) firſt with foments, then with cataplaſmes, and ſtraight after with ſome moiſting medicine, or elſe with ſuch as do not much drie, (all theſe being applied outwardly vpon the vlcer.) For in the very vlcer, both of *Manna* (as hath bene ſaid) and alſo of thoſe remedies which are taught and declared by vſing of lint, thoſe things are truly firſt to be layed on, which do moue and prouoke the matter, and afterward thoſe which do purge and cleanſe: after the applying of which things, if there remaine any hollowneſſe, you muſt miniſter thoſe things which may fill the ſame: but if it fall out otherwiſe, you muſt vſe things to bring it to a ſcarre. Moreouer if the ſicke will not ſuffer inciſion to be made, either with ſome bright inſtrument, or with a penknife, by reaſon of the ſoftneſſe thereof, then the apertion is to be finiſhed with burning medicines. For this purpoſe *Auicen* praiſeth the ſeed of line or flaxe, leauen and doues doung, which you may make more excellent and forcible if you mingle them with a litle ſoft ſope, or with the filthineſſe that commeth of muſtard ſeed. But that medicine which is called *ruptorium* or *cauſticum*, which is made of lime and ſope, in this matter is moſt excellent, and obtaineth greateſt fame. Hitherto haue we ſpoken of tumours aboue nature generally: now it followeth that we intreate of the particular differences of them as they follow in order.

6
7
Two things conſidered of Galen in the apertion of a matered tumor.
1
2
Detegentia.
Ointments are to be applied aboue a tumor that is opened.
The vſe of Manna and Thus after the inciſion, & the vertue of them.
The launced part muſt firſt be eaſed.
What things are to be layed to an vlcer.
Auicen was in fine tract. 1. Fen. 3. l. 4.

CHAP. VII.

Of a true Phlegmone, and of other tumors ingendred of bloud.

Phlegmone taken two waies.

Phlegmone taken for phlogosis. 2.

Phlegmone also is taken for an inflammation comming of the best bloud

Phlegmone. 2.
1. Vera.
2. Non vera.

Sanguis quid.
Sanguis quotuplex.

Bloud doth degenerate from his proper nature two waies.

Foure differences of tumors caused of bloud

HAVING spoken generally of those tumors which consist aboue nature, it is conuenient that we entreat particularly of the differences of euerie one of them, taking our exordium from *phlegmone*, as a tumor which chanceth very often, and exciteth (as *Galen* saith) very dangerous symptomates. Therefore *Galen lib. 1. de morbis & symptomatis*, taketh *phlegmone* two kind of waies. One way generally after the manner of the ancient writers which were before his time (that is) for euerie kind of inflammation of any member, or for any heating or burning, (that is) for euerie hote and flaming disposition, which the Greeks do properly call φλόγωσις. Another way, both with *Galen* and other late writers, it is taken for a true and pure tumor ingendred of bloud, that is, the best, and that also which retaineth but meane thickneſse or grosseneſse. And this truly borroweth his name of the kind thereof, and of the Latines it is called diuersly by reason of the kind *Inflammatio*, of the Greeks absolutely *Phlegmone*. But this after the mind and consent of the later sort is two fold, *videlicet Vera & non vera*. A true *phlegmone* is causèd of good bloud, which is the best both in qualitie and substance or essence, but yet more abundant then naturally should happen to the member. But *Phlegmone* which is not a true and lawfull *phlegmone*, is causèd of naughtie and vnnaturall bloud. For bloud is a hote & moist humour proceeding from a more temperate part of the verie *Chylus*, which is a certaine iuyce that commeth of the meat in the first digestion. And it is two waies, naturall and not naturall. Naturall bloud is a hote and moist humor, slender and meane in substance, but of a very red colour, in sauor and taste it is sweet, gentle and good. But that bloud is said to be vnnaturall, which differeth or digresseth from the former description of bloud: yet notwithstanding conteining it selfe within the bounds of his breadth & largenes, which if it doth once passe, it is no more to be called a bloud, but some other humor. But bloud doeth chance to degenerate from his proper nature two kinde of wayes. The first way is (as they terme it) in it selfe, that is, in respect of it selfe, (his proper substance being changed without any commixtion with another.) The second way is by another, or in respect of another: and yet it consisteth two wayes by it selfe, (that is to say) either because the substance thereof is more thicke, or more thinne then it ought to be: or because it is burnt, and that which is thinnest of it, is turned into melancholy: but that which is thick into choler, and that without separation. But in respect of another, bloud becommeth not vnnaturall, whenas another humor is mingled withall. Which may happen many wayes, according as the diuerse kinds of choler, fleume or melancholie may be commixed with bloud. By which thing it is manifest, that of bloud there are engẽdred foure kinds or differẽces of tumors aboue nature. First, of natural & good bloud there is engẽdred a true *phlegmone*. But of bloud, which is corrupted through the admixtion of other humours, there do grow three differences of that kind of *phlegmone*, which is neither true nor lawful: because that the three other humors (that is to say) fleume, choler & melancholy

may

may be easily commixed with bloud. Therefore if melancholie be mixed with bloud, it is called *phlegmone Scirrhodes*: if choler (which then is conflated of both kinds) it is called *phlegmone Erysipelatodes*: if fleume, it is termed *phlegmone Ædematodes*. But of bloud, which is filthie and corrupted through the aduſtion and corruption of his owne proper ſubſtance, according to the manner of the thinneſſe or thickneſſe thereof, there are ingendred either Carbuncles, which are called of the Greekes *Anthraces* or elſe *Gangræna* and *Sphacelus*, which we call Cancres. Of the which diſeaſes we will ſpeake of hereafter in that which followeth.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Cauſes, Signes, and iudgements of Phlegmone.

THERE are three cauſes of *phlegmone*: as there are alſo of all other tumors beſides nature, which do chaunce through the defluxion of humors, *videlicet*. 1. *Primitiua*, which we call both *prægreſſa* and *euidens*: 2. *Antecedens*. 3. & *Coniuncta*. Euident cauſes of inflammation are outward cauſes: as, beating or belking, diruption, conuulſion, breaking or burſting a wound, a voluntary vlcer, a looſeneſſe, and other of that ſort which do prouoke fluxe, by excyting paine in the affected member. The Antecedent cauſe, is abundance of bloud, which is good and faultleſſe, as when the veines touch nigh together to the moderate repletion of the Arteries. For then is bloud prouoked (as a certaine ſuperfluous thing,) to flow and deſcend to ſome member which is either weake or immoderately hote, or affected with paine, where it is thruſt, and abideth compact together, vnleſſe it be by and by repreſſed from the beginning, (as we haue ſayd before in our generall Chapter: to the which we muſt therefore haue continuall acceſſe, that we may attaine to a more perfect knowledge of particular tumours, whereof we now entreate. The Coniunct or continent cauſe, is the bloud it ſelfe, which is alreadie ſtuffed in the affected place. The markes or tokens of *phlegmone* are the tumor, or the augmenting of the member aboue the naturall habite, vehement heate, ſo that the member ſeemeth to burne. There appeareth redneſſe in the outward parts, ſuch as is wont to come through bathes which are made hote either with the fire, or by ſome other meanes. There is extreame paine, vnleſſe the member hath altogether a dull ſenſe. There is alſo grieuous beating, and pulſation verie vehement inwardly. There is alſo extenſion or ſtretching out of the member, which not onely we alone haue found out, but alſo the patient himſelfe may perceiue by his owne feeling. There is furthermore reſiſtance of the member if it be touched, after the manner of extenſion. There be alſo other ſuch like ſignes, which do teſtifie that abundance of bloud is preſent in ſome part of the bodie. *Phlegmone* hath foure times. 1. the beginning. 2. the increaſing. 3. the ſtate. and 4. the declination: except at the leaſt way, fluxe hath recourſe within, or it be ſtraight way repreſſed by repulſiue medicines. But when it ſhall lightly paſſe ouer theſe foure times, it is needfull either to reſolue and draw out the matter of it, or to bring it to ſuppuration, or elſe to putrifie & rot it, or to turne it into a *ſcirrhus* and ſtony hardneſſe. And truly the ſignes of all theſe are to be ſought out of the chapter that intreateth generally of them: where the markes of all times,

The cauſes of phlegmone.

1. Prægreſſa.

2. Antecedens.

3. Coniuncta.

Signes of a true phlegmone.

Lib. de Tumo. præter natur. & 13. method.

Foure times of phlegmone.

Iudicia.

and the meanes to finish tumours aboue nature (which they commonly call *apostemata*) be declared and expressed. But *phlegmone* is accompanied with many other euill simptomates which do alter and change the order of his cure, as are, vehement paine, which doth greatly occupie the sensible part: recourse of the matter from the kernels (which the Greeks call *Adene*, and commonly they be called *Emunctoria*) to the internall partes. Also mortification of the affected member (which they cal *corruptio esthiomenica*) proceeding of too much refrigeration, and of a strong compacting or stuffing of the matter, which did cause the inflammation. Also a stonie and almost an indissoluble hardnesse, commonly called *Sclirotica*, which proceedeth through a certen ouerthwart & vntoward dissolution of the thinner humor. Wherfore in curing tumors which consist aboue nature, we must diligently oftentimes marke and consider, how farre we meane to proceed in the matter, and what accidents may chaunce vnlooked for, that so we may chiefly insist, and be occupied about that most which appeareth, and is most vrgent: which *Galen* hath admonished vs of verie well, *Lib. 2. ad Glauconem*, and 13. *Therap.* speaking after this sort: In diseases, whose resolution is difficult and hard, it is to be feared, least some remnant of them be left behind which is very hard. Wherefore in euerie resolution, we must diligently consider into what thing euerie tumor whose cure is once begun, may be changed. For that cure which is attempted by medicines that do mightily dry, doth leaue very hard knobs which are hard to remoue: hitherto *Galen*. But the time requireth, that we now declare the cure of *phlegmone*.

Symptomates which hinder the cure of phlegmone.

CHAP. IX.

The order of curing Phlegmone caused of the defluxion of humours affecting the outward parts of the bodie.

The method of curing phlegmone which is yet in generation.

SEEING that *inflammatio*, which is called of the Greeks properly *phlegmone*, doth ingender and grow through the influxion of bloud, happening more abundantly to some member then nature requireth, and fluxe also (*phlegmone* being yet but beginning to raigne) is partly in begetting, and partly begotten alreadie: there must needs truely be a double consideration in the cure of the *phlegmone* being yet but beginning (that is to say) to emptie out and auoid that which hath flowed alreadie, and to hinder and stop that which is now a flowing. Moreouer we shall stop fluxe, if we shall draw backe and repell the humor that floweth, if we will adde strength to the afflicted member, and if we shall seeke to remoue that which causeth the flux. We shall draw it backe and bring it into a contrarie defluxion of the other humors, by bloudletting, if strength and age will suffer it, but if not, we shall do it by applying cupping glasses, or by vsing bindings and frictions, and by heating those partes which haue a direct passage to the affected part. We shall bring back and repell flux, by ministring those medicines which are able to driue and turne the flux another way. We shall also remoue the causes that do bring or fetch defluxion to the member alreadie infected with *phlegmone*, by confirming & strengthening the member, if it be weake, by vsing astriction if it be too loose, by cooling it if it he too hot,

By what means fluxe is stayed.
1. *Retractio.*
2. *Repulsio.*
3. *Causæ summotio.*

as it is wont to be, by easing the paine if it be vehement, and by emptying the whole bodie with bloudletting, if it doth abound with bloud, & if it send eth infection to the member: of all which things we will speake by and by. But we do emptie out and auoid that which is flowed alreadie, & hath gotten it selfe into the affected part, not onely by those medicines which do digest, that is, which do discusse and dissolue, but also by those remedies which do bind together & refrigerate. And truly in *phlegmonous* tumors now beginning, we must rather vse (sayth *Galen*) cooling and astrictiue medicines, then those which do concoct and digest: and so much the rather, if that which floweth be not of a thick substance. But if bloud be greatly compact together in that part which *phlegmone* hath caught & taken vp, you must not apply any longer repercussiue remedies (as we said before) but then it is conuenient to vse those which can digest. Also in an old & inueterat inflammation, which after the euacuation of the whole body, and other some fit cure, hath left behind it a certaine hardnesse & blacknesse in the member: it is not vnprofitable (*Galen* also affirming the same) to take away the bloud by scarification. And these things haue we spoken briefly and by a generall method, concerning the cure of inflammations that do happen through the defluxion of humours, which the Greekes properly are wont to call *phlegmone*: which things may be sufficient to content a reasonable Phisition, and one which is exercised in this kind of studie. But because we haue taken in hand to write those things for the practitioners of Chyrurgerie, and not for the learned only, it shall not be amisse, neither any thing from our purpose, if after this generall and compendious method, we set downe more particularly those things which not only the ancient Phisitions, but also the later sort of Chyrurgians haue left behind them in writing. Therefore aboue the generall rule (as they terme it) the Chyrurgians of our age are wont to reduce the order of curing *phlegmone*, into foure branches or particular intentions: that is to say, into a iust obseruation of a good diet. 2. the stopping of fluxe, or the turning away of the matter which went before. 3. the emptying out of the humor, which hath alreadie entertained himselfe in the member (which they call *materia coniuncta*,) 4 and the correcting or amending of the symptomats. The first intention therefore is made perfect by the due vsing or administration of sixe things commonly called vnnaturall things, and by the vsing of those things also which are said to be annexed vnto them. And these things which are sixe in number, called of the Phisitions *res non naturales*, (as hath bene declared from the beginning of this treatise) are, the aire, meate and drinke, mouing and rest, sleepe and watching, emptying and filling, the affections of the mind or the accidents. All which things (because *phlegmone* doth commonly prouoke feauers) ought to pertaine vnto coldnesse and moderate moistnesse. For which causes we haue thought good to set downe these precepts following. Let the sick be in a pure and cleare aire, and that somwhat cold. Let him keepe a thin diet, cold and moderately moist. Let him drinke small ale, or beere, or other small drinks. But if a vehement feuer shall haue any accesse (which is wont often to happen) let him altogether abstaine from wine. Let him not exercise, or moue that member which is beset with *phlegmone*. Let him be quiet as much as he can, especially if there be very great abundance of humors in the bodie. Let

Vacuation of that which is flowed already Gal. 1 hor. 13.

Scarificates.

Foure intentiõs in the cure of phlegmone.

1. 2. 3 4

1. The first intention is an order in diet.

Res non naturales.

Aer. Cibus. Potus

Motus. Quies.

Somnus.
Repletio.
Inanitio.
Animi pathemata.
Venus.

him keepe a measure in sleeping and watching: and let him shun sleeping on the day time, especially about noone. Let him diligently beware of drunkennesse and gluttonie. Let the bellie be alwaies kept soft and soluble, and now and then let it be washed with clisters if need require. Let him flie anger, cryings out, and wrath, as deadly enemies. Let him abstaine from venereous actes as a mortall foe.

2. The auersion of the fluxe is the second intention.

A veine is alwaies to be cut directly.

The second order in curing *Phlegmone*, which is the turning away of the fluxe, is dispatched by letting of bloud, if strength and age doth suffer. But in all members of the bodie, whether you intend to reuell (that is) to draw backe againe another way, or to turne it from that place at the side, either straight ouer against the place, or directly forth (which is called in Greeke κατειζιν) a veine must alwaies be cut, although there be great abundance: but directly, the right sides do answere to the right parts, and the left to the left. Therfore if *ophthalmia* doth annoy the right eye, or the squinancie doth affect the right side of the throat, the shoulder veine, or some other in his place (if that doth not appeare) must be cut in the right arme, by and by at the beginning of the fluxe. But if a humor doth flow in the knee, you must cut a veine in the elbow either the outward or the middle vein, except you meane to scarifie the other legge, or breake the veine assunder in it, as *Galen* counselleth in a certaine place. Therfore the election of the cutting any veine, & the inuention to turne the humor another way (which *Hyppocrates* calleth *antispasis*) is manifested and declared by the affected part, and by the place or situation of the member that is to be cured, as *Galen.* 13. and 14. *meth. med.* and in other places, doth oftentimes teach. But that body which *phlegmone* occupieth, not onely when it is plethoricke and full of humors, but also when the greatnesse of the euill doth exhort vs to it, (though it be but meanely stuffed with humors) we must empty & euacuat by letting of bloud, if we will follow the aduise of *Galen*, who *lib.* 13. *meth. med.* commandeth that it should be so, thus writing. Paine and truely, the heate of the member wherein *phlegmone* hath setled himselfe, (although the whole bodie be voide of excrements) do happen by reason of the fluxe. But then it is expedient to do it but meanely, (that is) to draw forth bloud and to make euacuation, no further then it shall best agree with the age and nature of the patient. Further you must haue consideration both of the time of the yeare, of the nature of the aire wherein the sicke remaineth, and also of the former custome of the man. Also these do profit not a litle to draw backe the bloud that floweth to the affected part, walkings, frictions, and binding of the opposite member, but first chiefly the detraction of bloud, as hath bene said. Therfore if *phlegmone* appeareth in the hands, the legges are to be exercised, bound and rubbed, if in the legs, the handes must be also so vsed. But these things belong more vnto the Phisition then the Chyrurgion.

The choise of bloud letting is declared of the afflicted part.

3

The third intention is the euacuation of the humor alreadie compact in the member.

We now dispatch the third scope or intention, in the beginnings of *phlegmone*, only by applying repulsiue things to that member which laboureth with the inflammation (excepting these cases before rehearsed.) For that which is filled with corrupted water (as *Galen* sayeth) is emptyed out, not onely by those medicines which digest, but also by those which do bind and refrigerate: as be those which are called *repellentia* and *regerentia* repulsiues and restitiues.

But

But in the increasing thereof at the present intention, (that is) to emptie that, which is flowed, and also to stoppe, that no more doth abound, you must ioyne digestiue medicines with repressiues: but yet so, that the abundaunce and strength of the one may yet preuaile with the other. But in the state they must equally be commixed together by euen portions, & somwhat more mild in mitigating remedies must be applied, if paine be vehement. But in the end and declination of the state, it is requisite to euacuat by digestiues only that which is compact together, if that *phlegmone* must be ended by resolution or discussiō. If truly it doth turne into abscession, and that it cannot be, that the gathering together and eruption of the matter should be letted, it shall be lawfull to vse medicines which can both matter, open & clense the vlcer. Furthermore those remedies which do drie, are profitable in the end of both the euils (that is) of *phlegmone* and *abscessus*, for they do altogether consume that which remaineth of the humor, but when incision is made in the abscession which is alreadie come to suppuration, you must lay on such a medicin as may drie without erosion or gnawing, (as hereafter shall be said.) But in those phlegmonous tumors which now are but in the beginning, the most apt remedie to repell and driue backe, is *oxicraton* in *Galen*, which the Latines call *pusca aquosa*. It is a mixture of water and vineger, so tempred together, that it may be drunke: and then (a spunge being wet and laied in this *oxicratum*, must be applyed to that part, where *phlegmone* is. But in stead of *oxicratum*, by the counsell of *Galen*, we may take sharpe wine, or apply cold things onely to the parts which are about the sinewes. These are the words of *Galen*. In those members which are about the sinews, it shalbe sufficient in the beginning of *phlegmone*, to lay on a spunge dipped either in cold water, wherewith a litle vineger is mingled, or in water only, or in sharpe and soure wine. For the same purpose also this caraplasme of the same *Galen* is verie effectuall, made of syngreene and the rindes of pomegranates sodden in wine of *rhu*, that is, *sumach*, and *polenta*. This by restraining doth repell that which floweth, and by drying doth emptie out that which is contained in the tumor, and both wayes it doth strengthen and corroborate the affected parts. The remedie hath bene described of the later sort: of *Auicen* after this sort as followeth. ℞ of the iuyce of syngreene. ℔.j. of wine that is thicke of substance, and sharpe in tast, ℔. ß. of barley meale, one quart, of the rind of pomegranates, and sumach powdered. ana. ℥.ß. boile them and make a liniment. There is also another which greatly auaileth for the same purpose, inuented of Haly Abbas: ℞. of *santalum* white and red, ana. ℥. iij. of *memitha*, which is called *Glaucium*. ℥. ij. of *terra cimolia*, and bole armoniack. ana. ℥.j.ß. let all be brayed into verie fine floure or powder, and well searced, then dissolue them in the iuyce of syngreene, or purslaine, or lettuce, and make a liniment. Another also in the beginning of phlegmonous inflammations, very common and much vsed, which is very profitable for greene wounds, and bruses taken lately. It is made of the white of an egge, of oile of roses, and of the distilled water of roses (that is) of rose water, wherin you must wet fine clothes & lay them to the inflamed member, & let them be changed often. But there are many other medicines both simple and compound, which do profite in the beginning of *phlegmone* to restraine and repell fluxe, which are to be sought

Represſiues in the increase, must exceed digestiues.

If phlegmone doth turne into abscession.

Repulsiues are to be vsed in the beginning of phlegmone.

Oxycratum.

Lib. 13. Methodi meden.

Galeni cataplasma, lib. 2. ad Glau.

Fen. 3. lib. 4. tract. 1. cap 3.

Haly Abbas Linimentum.

Aliud.

out of other Authors, which haue written of this thing. But these shall content vs for this time.

Remedies to be vsed in the increasing of Phlegmone.

Amongst the remedies which in the increase of *phlegmone*, being outwardly applied, do greatly helpe, oile of roses is maruellously effectuall, (the Greekes call it *rhodinon*.) For this doth partly draw back, and partly doth digest through the vapor: because it perfectly holdeth a middle nature betweene the oile and the roses. Therfore in oile of roses there is a certaine astriction, which cannot (sayth *Galen*) ouergo the weake parts of the tumor: but when they haue pierced somewhat deeper, it beginneth then to worke outwardly according to the strength, both to thrust together, to draw into one place, and to thicken greatly, wherby it commeth to passe that in the augmenting of *phlegmonous* tumors, oile of roses is a most excellent and readie helpe. In the augmenting of *phlegmone* there is another in *Auicen* verie profitable: ℞. of the leaues of mallowes *M*. j. of wormwood, roses. ana. ℥. ß. of barley meale. ℥. j. oile of cammomil, quart ß. seeth them, and bray them together, and bring them to the fashion of a soft emplaister. Another of the same. ℞. of wine boiled either to the halfe or third part, (one we call *sapa*, the other *defrutum*) quart. j. rose water, and vineger. ana. quart. ß. saffron. ℥. ij. let them be a litle het ouer a soft fire, then straine them, and dip a cloth in the liquor of that decoction, which you must apply to the phlegmonous member after the manner of an epitheme. Moreouer such kinds of remedies which are vsed in the increasing of the inflammation, and haue their power and vertue commixed together of repressiue and digestiue medicines, ought seldomer to be remoued and changed, then those which repell the matter, being ministred in the beginning of *phlegmone*.

Lib. 3. de simp. medic.

Oile of roses a present remedy in the increase of phlegmone.

What things do help in the state of Phlegmone.

Aëtius, in the vigor or state of *phlegmone*, and when there is vehement paine felt, hath set downe these remedies: as mallowes mingled with a litle bread, & with oile of roses. Also melilot boiled in the liquor called *passum*, and applied with a litle bread: of the like vertue (saith he) are dates sodden in *passum*, and mingled with bread and oile of roses. Another also, which digesteth through breathing in the vigor of *phlegmone* very effectual. ℞. pellitorie of the wall, mallowes. ana. *M*. j fine branne, the floure of meale. ana. pug. j. fenugreeke, dill. ana. ℥. ß. oile of cammomill, quart. ß. let them be boiled in wine, and wel braied together till they be well incorporated, and make an emplaister. Another taken out of *Galen*, *Lib.* 13. *Therap.* ℞. of the crummes of bread made of corne. ℔. j. steepe it in hote water the space of one houre, then straine it, and commixe therewith of the beft hony, quart. j. and make it to the forme of a cataplasme, This doth dissolue and mitigate paine. *Auicen* counselleth to minister in the rigor of *phlegmone*, *vnguentum basilicon*, and that which is made of the iuices therof called *diachylon*: but the one is good to mollifie, the other to ripen and bring to matter: although notwithstanding both of them do carie with them a digesting qualitie. But these and other such remedies, which are ministred to dissolue that which is alreadie flowed, and to ease paine, because they are of a verie moist nature, must be changed verie seldome. Furthermore, when as by the remedies before mentioned, the humor which is fallen into the member that is troubled with *phlegmone*, is dissolued and discussed, and the tumor together with the extention thereof is diminished, and the griefe somewhat affwaged, then

Emplastrum Galeni.

then it is to be iudged that the declination of the inflammation is at hand, at which time you must vse onely discussiue things, as are wild mallowes bruised, annointed, raisons (the kernels being taken out) applied with bread and a litle honie, & barely meale vsed also with honie. Also moist wool, flaxe, a sponge, or some such like thing, wet in hote wine, then streined or wringed, you must minister it: for all these haue an excellent discussiue nature, & prouoke not paine. But if, by reason of the stubburnesse and hardnesse of the disease, the affected place doth conteine too great plentie of matter and that such as resisteth resolution, you must not by and by (as some do) breake forth vnto Chyrurgie, that is, to make incision, or to scald it and burne it, but you must labour by all meanes possible, that the humour collected togither may be digested and dissolued by such medicines as can worke this effect. For it is conuenient to attempt the digestion of the humor by such medicines as can profit in that case, before you begin to cut the inflammation. But if the tumour will not yeeld to digestiue medicines, and no further hope doth remaine to dissolue that which is compact in it, but the matter seemeth rather to pertaine vnto suppuration, you must come vnto those, things which can ripen and procure matter. And we hope that a tumour (although it degenerate into absceſſion) may through the vapour be digested, if the matter which exciteth the same, be thinne and little, and fit to be resolued: or if it remaineth not any thing deeply within, and the skinne of the affected member be thinne. But if the humour be plentifull, and thicke, and lurketh verie deepe, and the skinne also thicke, exhalation or resolution is not to be hoped for. Therefore you must come vnto those helpes which can ripen & prouoke matter, of which force is this cataplasme, made of wheate meale, sodden moderatly in water and oyle: for this (Galen being our Authour) doth speedily bring to suppuration those inflammations, which will not yeeld to digestion, & it hath also a heate like vnto our heat, that is, temperate and meane, and by reason of the meale and oyle (which haue a certaine clammy and glewish propertie, whereby in stopping the pores, they hinder the naturall heate of the member) it hath the force of an emplaistre, which two things are most required in medicines that do ripen and moue matter. There are some which do mingle with this cataplasme a litle saffron to colour it. But if a tumour, by reason of the thicke and viscous humours which are stuffed in it, be hardly brought vnto suppuration, this cataplasme doth notablie helpe which is made of the decoction of the rootes of *althæa*, and of figges that be sweet and fat, which do resemble the thickenesse of honie, cõmixed with wheat meale, as followeth, ℞. of the foresaid decoction, ℔ j. of wheate meale, ℔ ß. boile them throughly togither, & bring them into the forme of a cataplasme. But if in stead of wheate meale, you vse barely meale or crible bread, which the Greekes call *συγκόμιστον*, it more auaileth to discusse the inflammation thẽ to bring it to suppuration (as Galene hath noted *lib. secundo ad Glauconẽ*. There is another also excellently profitable to prouoke matter in the declination of *plegmone*, which is commonly vsed of the common Chyrurgians, ℞. of the barke of the roote of Marsh mallowes, that is, of *althæa*, of the roote of lillies, grownswel, called in Greek *erigerõ*, leaues of mallowes, ana. *M*. j. wheate meale, quar. j. of the meale of the seed of flaxe. ℥ j. fresh swines greace, ℔ ß. seeth the

What remedies must be vsed in the declination of plegmone.

What resolution is to be hoped for.

Pus mouentia.

Lib. 2. ad Glauco.

Haly Abbas remembreth this cataplasme.

Aliud.

A common cataplasme.

herbes in sufficient quantitie of water, and bray them with the other things in a mortar, and make a cataplasme. But if, (when the matter is gathered together and dispatched,) the absces sion whereinto *phlegmone* is turned, doth not open of the owne accord: (the members now being free from the inflammation) you must go about to euacuate and emptie out the matter which cannot be digested, with a penknife, or some such instrument, or by some drawing medicine. Then you must bring the vleer vnto a scarre, like vnto other vlcers, which you must do by cleansing the sore, by filling it with flesh, and ioyning it together, which at the last will cause a scarre. Moreouer, if the matter be thicke, which bringeth forth the tumor, and very disobedient to resolution and digestion, and be exceedingly compact in the passages of the flesh (as is wont to be in continuall inflammation which be naughtely cured, the thinne part of the humor being resolued, & the thicke part remaining still in the passages, then you must not be afraid to vse scarification, especially (as Galen admonisheth *lib. 2. ad Glauc.*) when hardnesse blewnesse or blackenesse do appeare.

Symptomatum correctio.

The fourth intétion, which in the cure of *phlegmone* was propounded to the Chyrurgian and Phisition, is the correction and the remouing of the symptomates, which do so sodeinly come vpon the inflámation, & those are paine, recourse of the matter, whereof the tumour is raised to the inward parts, putrefaction and corruption of the matterie member, and as it were a certain stony hardnesse remaining behind, by reason of some mightie drying and digesting medicines. Therfore if vehement paine shall happen to the tumour, you must labour by all meanes possible to mitigate and asswage the same, because, (besides that it weakneth the strength, and hindreth the lawfull duties of the bodie) it prouoketh fluxe and draweth bloud vnto it. If paine therefore doth grieuously torment in *phlegmone*, straight way you must lay on those medicines, which can lenifie and ease the vehemencie of the paine without any hurt, as is this of Galen, which was made of the licour called *passum*, of oile of roses, & a litle waxe melted with them both: but this is to be take in moist wool, which hath much oile in it, and to be ministred cold in sommer, and hote in winter. Therfore such a medicine being tẽpered & applied (as is said before) doth rarefie, extenuate, digest & euacuate: it maketh the humor that is sharp, viscous, grosse, or plentifull, & which cleaueth to the aggrieued parts, to be equall, cõstant & moderare, & it discusseth the thicke vapour which can find no fit issue, & so it mitigateth paine: it bringeth no hurt with his heat, for it maketh dul or taketh away the heat of the oile of roses. Wherby it cõmeth to passe, that this remedy doth asswage paine without doing any hurt, & disprofiteth not the cuill, as hote water, oile, & wheate meale, which things in an inflãmation that happeneth with paine cãnot be profitable (as Galen witnesseth.) For these do loosen & release through their heat & moisture, & do resolue the strẽgth of the mẽber, wherby it is made more weak, & more prone & apt to interteine fluxe. To the same vse (that is to alay the paine in *phlegmone*) you may applie effectually oile of roses, yolks of egges, crummes of white bread steeped in hote water, & then streine them, & commixe them with oile of roses. These also are a present remedy, mallowes sodden in water, & mingled with branne and oile of roses, or with oile of violets. But Auicene in mitigating euery paine vseth saffrõ.

Dolor.

Lenifiers of paine in phlegmone.

Lib. 2 ad Glau.

Crocum.

which

which he profitably cõmixeth with asswaging medicines. Furthermore if the sharpnesse of paine be so great & vehement, that it cannot be eased with those things, which because they mitigate and lenifie paine, (the succours of nature being stretched out) are properly called *Anodyna & paregorica* (that is) prouokers of sleepe & helpers of paine: you must passe ouer vnto those aides which we call *narcotia* (that is) stupefactiues. Amõgst the which we haue tried by dayly experience besides the authoritie of some writers, that henbane hath profited in this case maruellously, whose leaues you must take, & bake them in the hote embers, then mingle with them fresh swines greace & apply them to the place. This doth pacifie vehemẽt paine, & bringeth phlegmonous tumors vnto suppuration. But, while you attempt this thing, you must haue a diligẽt care least you apply to much moisture, because it is a thing, which in the beginnings of inflãmations, when fluxe aboundeth with great griefe, is very pernicious (as we said a little before.) But if you feare recourse of the matter, that exciteth *phlegmone*, to the inward parts, & that chiefly toward the principall mẽbers: you must cause him to come forth by some drawing medicines, or else by applying cupping glasses, which do draw vehemently from the inward partes. But if by reason of vehement drying and digesting medicines being rashly applied to the inflammation, the relictes of the tumor do turne into *Scirrhus*: you shall boile in water the rootes of wild cucumber (which is commonly called in herbaries and shops *cucumer asininus*) or of briony or of *Asarum*, seething them oftentimes alone by themselues (as Galen commaundeth) and sometime putting to them fat figges. Then commixe meale with water, to the which also put a little suet, either of a goose or a cocke, but if there be not plentie of these at hand, adde swines greace and make a cataplasme. This doth notablie heale that schirrhous affect which through mightie drying and digesting medicines in the member which *phlegmone* occupied, doth still remaine behinde. Also the aforesaid herbes together with the rootes of *Althæa*, being after a moderate boyling well mingled with bread and suet, and then applied, do discusse and dissolue such hardned tumours: as Galene doth plainely teach *Lib. 2. ad Glauconem*. Therefore if you feare, that phlegmonous tumours, which are scarcely digested through their vapour, neither yet are easily concocted, be turned into *Scirrhus*: you must alwayes commixe with digestiues those things which can mollifie and soften. Moreouer if any part of the mattering member shall putrifie, you must straight way cut it out, or else seeke to cure it by many deepe scarifications: afterward you must sprinkle on it salt water, & thẽ lay on it an emplaister made of the meale of beanes or tares sodden in *oxymel*. There be other things also to be proued in this case, which we will by and by set downe in the cure of Gangrena. But now it shalbe more profitable, if we comprehend the Chapters concerning the cure of such phlegmonous affectes in some short sentences. And first we wil begin to declare the sum of the cure of *phlegmone*, being yet but beginning, and not yet vexing with any grieuous paine. 1. Let the whole body be emptied with cõueniẽt purgations, & especially by letting of bloud, if nothing do let it. 2. Let the inflamed mẽber be all to washed and annointed with such things, as haue power to driue backe the flowing of the humor. 3. Let the humor, which is conteined in the

Nota de hyẽ sciamo.

Recursus materiæ ad interiora.

Duritiei relicta.

Galens cataplasme for hard tumours.

Putrefactio.

Galen. lib. 2. ad Glau.

1.
2.
3.

The ſumme of the cure of phlegmone: vhẽ it afflicteth wit'h much paine.

4. aggrieued place, be emptied out by drying and digeſting medicines. 4 Let the affected part, and thoſe alſo which are about it be ſtrengthned and fortified. Now followeth the ſumme of the cure of the ſayd *phlegmone*, when it tormenteth with a more greiuous paine. 1. When as inflammation being cauſed through the deſluction of humors, doth vexe with great paine, you muſt mitigate the vehemẽcie of the ſame without any hurt doing. 2. Then, you muſt not miniſter thoſe things, which do ſtrongly bind, or vnlooſen through their heat and moiſture, or reſolue ſtrength. 3. But you muſt applie to the inflamed place ſuch helpes, as by meanely binding, can repell that which floweth, and euacuate that which infeſteth the affected member. 4. Applie to the tumour, a ſponge dipped in ſharpe wine or *paſtà*, that ſo you may preuent the paſſage of the humour that floweth. 5. If theſe things ſhall profit, and yet the matter appeareth not any where, you muſt vſe ſoft & gentle emplaiſters, & thoſe eſpecially, which are made as remedies againſt fluxe. 6. Amongeſt thoſe things, which are of power to drie, & repell the fluxe of bloud without paine, you muſt chuſe the beſt, as is that reſolutiõ with oile of roſes, which is made of the ſtone *chalcitis*: then lay vpon it pure woll dipped in ſharpe wine. 7. But when matter appeareth in the member, you muſt often apply the aforeſaid cataplaſme, or that rather, which is made of barely meale. 8. If the aboundance of thick matter doth exceede the medicines, ſo that there is no hope of reſolution, you muſt make an iſſue for that which yeeldeth not vnto digeſtion in that place eſpecially, where it is higheſt. 9. After inciſion, you muſt drie the wound, if paine be not vrgent, and cleanſe it and ſcoure it without griefe. 10. If after inciſion, paine be vehement, yóu muſt firſt aſſwage it with foments, then with a cataplaſme, ſtraight after with ſome moiſt medicine, or with ſuch a one as drieth not. 11. If the member, be ſtill enflamed, lay on a cataplaſme made of a certaine pulſe called chittes, which doth emptie out and driue backe.

1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10. 11.

CHAP. X.

Of a Carbuncle, and a Cancre, and of the maladie named Sphacelus, all which they call ſanguinea puſtulæ, i. bloud puſhes.

De Cabunculo.

SEEING that we haue intreated aboundantly, as muchas pertaineth to a Chyrurgian, of *Phlegmone*, which is the firſt differenee of inflammations, & moſt incident to mans body: it now remaineth that we ſpeake firſt of *Carbunculus*, which is called in Greeke ἄνθραξ: next of *Gangrena*, the Cancre, and laſt, of *Sphacelus*, (which with the expounder of Auicene they commonly call *eſthiomenum*) for that hath his beginning of a bloudie fluxe, as *phlegmone* hath and doth prouoke a moſt ſharpe feuer, but theſe are wont oftentimes to accompanie great *Phlegmones*, as Galene *libello de Tumoribus præter naturam*, and in manie other places hath diligentlie noted. A Carbuncle therefore proceedeth of the flowing of bloud, which is blacke, thicke, filthie, burning, and exceedingly hote, with the which if there be mingled but certaine thinne humours: there are raiſed vp on the out ſide of the skinne whelkes or puſhes, like things that be burned or ſcalded, & then this inflammation is called *Carbunculus*.

ἄνθραξ. γαγγραίνα. σφακελος.

Gangrena and Sphacelus do follow great phlegmones.

The generatiõ & deſcription of a Carbũcle.

bunculus cum postula, the Carbuncle with the push, which euill truely doth happen verie often. In the meane time notwithstanding it beginneth (although seldome) without push or pushes: but then is caused a crustie or hard vlcer: I say without push or pushes, because sometime there ariseth with this euill one onely push of some greatnesse, which being broken, the vlcer is brought forth with a scurfe or scabbe: but oftentimes not one push alone doth breake out, but manie little and slender ones, sticking thicke in the member like vnto the seedes of hirse: which being burst forth, there doth likewise arise a certaine crustie vlcer, such as hote iron doth cause. But between their beginning, before that the pushes do appeare, they trouble the member throughly. Now these scales or scurfe do sometime receiue an ashie or earthly colour, sometime blackenesse, and in that place the skinne cannot be eased, but it is, as it were fastened to the inner flesh. The flesh also about it, is brought to an exceeding hote inflammation, which the Greekes call *Phlegasis*, and is blacke in colour, and shineth after the manner of lime or pitch, as though there were a litle blacke commixed with a great quantitie of red. This colour is caused altogether of melancholie. And these truely are the signes & tokens of a Carbuncle drawne from the very affect it selfe, to the which may be added a very grieuous and vehement paine of the afflicted member, as though it were bound with strong chaines. They also which are thus affected do necessarily fall into a feauer, and that sooner then they which are vexed with *Phlegmone Erysipelatosa*. But if any poyson doth lurke within (as oftentimes it chaunceth) the sicke persons are miserably tormented with perbreaking & continuall vomiting, together with a want of appetite and lothing of meate. There are present also with them quaking of the heart, panting or mouing of the stomacke, and an often fainting of courage. This euill is called properly of the Chyrurgians of our age, *Anthrax*, differing from *Carbunculus*, by reason of the malice and crueltie of the euill (as they please.) When as in verie deede ἄνθραξ among the Greeks is the very same, that *Carbo* or *Carbunculus* is among the Latins. Therefore it is superfluous to distinguish, and to handle in diuers Chapters the signes and cure of them (which all Chyrurgians almost do vse at this time.) But these Carbuncles do chiefly arise of violent causes killing the people sodenly, and they follow a pestilent plague. Wherefore there is required a diligent heede or care about them, neither must they in any case be neglected. Moreouer although ἄνθραξ or euery Carbuncle be a sharpe disease, dangerous & contagious: yet the worst of all and the most deadly is that of Auicene, which doth arise in the purest places and neare to the principall members. For it is to be feared, that this venimous matter which exciteth the Carbuncle, doth sodainly returne to the inward parts, and to some principall mēber: which if it shall happen, the sicke is in great danger of his life, especially if any euill signes shall bewray the same. But if the exalation thereof be onely filthy and corrupted with abhominable poyson, it is inough to kill the man. If a Carbuncle chaunceth about the stomacke, or about the cheekes or iawes, it sodainly oftentimes (as *Celsus* saith) bursteth out the stomacke. And lesse deadly is that Carbuncle in Auicene, which appeareth first red, and then yellow, or of orange colour. But if it waxeth blew or black, it killeth almost euery man,

Carbunculus duplex.
Signes of a Carbuncle.
1. *Vlcus crustosum.*
2. *Some great whelkes, some small.*
3. *The colour of the crust either earthly or blacke.*
4. *The flesh blacke about it.*
5. *Grieuous paine.*
6. *A vehement feauer.*
7. *Nausea.*
8. *Vomitus.*
9. *Want of stomacke.*
10. *Cordis tremor.*
11. *Animi deliquium.*
Carbuncles do follow always a pestilent plague.
Iudicia.
1. *Whē a Carbuncle, is most deadly, (the iudgemēt therof being taken from the affected place.)*
2. *Another iudgement taken from the affected place.*
3. *Iudgement of the colour.*

and there is none that is iudged more dangerous of the own nature then it. If the Accidentes, which are wont to accompanie with this diſeaſe, be verie much remitted or releaſed, there is ſome hope of recouerie. But if they be ſtill more and more continually ſtretched out, & made more vehement, then truely the matter is in great diſpaire.

4. Iudgement of the accidentes.

CHAP. XI.

Of the cure of a Carbuncle.

The cure of a carbuncle muſt be begun by bloud letting.

GALENE *Lib. method. med. 14. & ſecundo ad Glauconem,* commaundeth that the cure of a Carbuncle (hauing ſet downe a conuenient order of diet) muſt be begun with bloud letting by and by at the beginning (if none of thoſe things do let it, which are wont to forbid the cutting of a veine) who alſo willeth to drawe bloud euen to the fainting of the heart. For it profiteth much thoſe that be troubled with this euill: and this alwayes is to be marked, that the veine be ſtroken directly againſt the vlcer. But the choiſe of the veyne is manifeſted vnto vs of the affected member (as we haue ſayd in the cure of *Phlegmone.*) Therefore in that matter, euen a skilfull Phiſition muſt take counſell of the Chyrurgian, who hath the knowledge to declare, from what place and how much bloud is to be drawne out. The veine (as it behoueth) being cut, if nothing (as I ſayd) do hinder you, it ſhall not be amiſſe to ſcarifie the ſayd tumour, vſing ſomewhat deepe cuts or woundes by reaſon of the thickneſſe of the malicious humour, (that is) ſuch cuttes as are ſomewhat deeper then ordinarie (as it pleaſeth Galene.) There are ſome, which would haue ſcarification made in the cruſtie or hard vlcer onely, and then they ſtraightway ſprinckle thoſe inciſions with hote ſalt water, that bloud might not meete together in them, or increaſe, but that it might be emptied out. Sometime they alſo apply ſome gnawing medicine, as arſenicke, which in this caſe among the reſt hath the greateſt vertue, but ſome do miniſter to the ſcarified place horſe leches or bloud ſuckers. But ſtrong repulſiues are in no wiſe to be vſed or applyed to the aggrieued member (although refrigeration be needefull, which indeede doth belong vnto the inflammation.) For you cannot ſo turne away the fluxe or preuent the malice hereof, becauſe of the thickeneſſe of the humour. And if at any time you ſhall do it, you ſhall finde ſome other naughtie humour (as Galene ſaith) which is ſetled in the depth or inward partes of the bodie: but this humour muſt not be ſuffered to flowe aboundantly (the ſame Galene being our Authour.) Therefore ſuch remedies are to be ſought for, as by a moderate repreſſion can digeſt or diſperſe the humour. Such truely is that cataplaſme, both that which is made of plantaine, and alſo that which is made of lintels twiſe ſodden. But with this you muſt commixe crummes of bread, which haue bene baked in an ouen. Let the bread (after Galens counſell) be neither altogether without branne, nor verie full of it. But this kinde of cataplaſme is called of the latter ſort *Emplaſtrum de Arnogloſa*, which they make after this ſort, ℞. of plantaine, lintels, bread baked in the ouen, of each a like portion, let them be boyled in water. To theſe Auicene putteth gaules, who alſo for this purpoſe doth allow the cataplaſme which is made of the two pomegranates ſodden either in vineger, or in ſharpe or tarte water, and theſe they

Venae directo ſecundae.

Deepe ſcarification.

Sprinckling of hote ſalt water

Arſenicum. Sanguiſuga.

Fluxe in a carbuncle can not be turned away, neither ought it, Lib. 14. Ther.

A cataplaſme good for a carbuncle.

Cataplaſme de Arnoglaſſa.

A cataplaſme of pomegranates.

they applie both to the affected member, and also to the partes about it. Of this minde also is *Paulus Aegineta*, who saith, that if you will plucke vp a Carbuncle as it were by the rootes, and disseuer it from hauing anie societie with the partes about it, you must seeth in vineger a sharpe pomegranate cut in small peeces: when the sore is corrupted you must wipe it smoothe, and clense it with a linnen cloth, and when it waxeth drie, you must moysten it with vineger. Also the kernell of the olde filberd nut or of the young doth ripen and breake Carbuncles. But the best remedie for the partes lying about it, is the oyntment made of Bole armoniacke, of the oyle of roses or mirtles, and of vineger: which is vsed, because the humour, which hath flowed alreadie, should not returne backe againe within. There are some which doe drawe and allure the poyson, and malicious humour in a Pestilent Carbuncle with sucking or drawing it with cupping glasses, and with medicines that can bring the humour to the place which is beset with *Carbo*. Which thing truely I would also counsell to doe, if ἀνθρακὲς doth occupie the arteries, and the partes about the lesser veines, and if the fluxe doth moue but slowly. But if it rusheth or breaketh forth strongly and aboundantly, the rage of the humour must be tamed and bridled by medicines that can moderately represse (as of late we recited out of Galene) least that there be caused too vehement paine through the fluxe that floweth so strongly in the affected member, and so the euill be made more painefull and angrie. But vpon this hard or crustie vlcer, especially when the member is putrified, you must lay some strong medicine both which can greatly drie (but not that which can concoct or digest) and also which can moue the matter, (seeing that so you shall fauour the putrifaction of the member,) of this nature is that of *Andron*, *Musa*, *Pastor*, or *Polyida*: and it must be washed in some sweete wine, or in *Sapa*, by reason of the thickenesse of the filthie humour. That Cataplasme also which in Galene is made of the meale of Tares and oximell, is rightly applyed, when as the vlcer is malignant and corrupted. But commonly the oyntmẽt called *Vnguentum Aegyptiacum* is to be applied. But if these things doe little profite, you must come vnto more sharpe remedies, which haue euen a fierie force. Of the which kinde are these, the roote of *Dracunculus* or *Aristolochia* broken and layd in vineger, lime, arsenicke, yellow oker, and other of this sort, which do burne like fire. These do profit sufficiently, if they doe throughly resolue the corrupted member euen from the quicke. This being done, whatsoeuer is corrupted and dead within, you must by and by pull away and plucke it vp by the rootes. But when after these gnawing medicines there followeth a scurfe or scarre, which is drawne euerie way from the quicke flesh, the wound truely, which is raised through them, must be diligently regarded, as in other sores that be burned. But beeing in extreame diseases (as Hippocrates saith) extreme remedies are perfectly the best, we are constrained sometime (our medicines not preuailing with the euill) to roote out a malicious Carbuncle by actuall or manuell instrumentes (as they call it) that is, with a bright knife or some other such thing. But the end of burning is, while there is sense of paine euery way, as *Celsus* hath taught verie well. After these things the cruste or scabbe which is vpon the vlcers, must be resolued by

Paulus.

Nux auellana.

Remedies to draw the poyson in a carbuncle.

What must be applied to a crustie vlcer.

A cataplasme of the meale of Tares and oximell.

Vnguentum Aegyptiacum.

Adurentia medicamenta.

When aduſtion must be vsed.

Finis adurẽdi.

such medicines as are meete for that purpose. But if the sicke shall refuse to suffer adustion, the helpe of some poore and base fellow is to be vsed, who by laying hold on the Carbuncle with his teeth may quite extinguisthe and pull vp the same. As were in time past certaine people in Italie named *Psilli*, who did sucke their wounds, which they receiued by the stinging of Serpents, and that without any harme taking thereby. Moreouer the Carbuncle being thus taken away, or consumed any other way, the hollownesse thereof (the inflammation now ceasing) must first be cleansed, & afterward being made pure and cleane, it must be healed with filling medicines (which the Greekes call *Sinulotica.*) Which when it is throughly filled, neither doth there remaine any hollow place at all in it, it is conuenient to vse those things which can bring it to a scarre, as in other vlcers. But if the euill doth not rage very much, but shall seeme to offer vs truce and peace, it is ripened and opened (as Auicene saith) by applying figges commixed well together with leauen and salt. And when this Cataplasme or the like is layd to twise or thrise, the place is wont to appeare altogether blacke and full of chinckes or cliftes, and then the place is to be scoured and cleansed with mundificatiues made of *Apium.* That medicine also, which is made of the yolkes of egges and of salt, if it be often aplied, it ripeneth and openeth a Carbuncle. (as *Theodoricus* writeth.) For the same purpose we vse commonly at this day that medicine, which is made of honie, salt, wheate meale, and the yolkes of egges. *Consolida maior*, (that is) comferie (which the Greekes call *symphyton*) being brayed betweene two stones, doth heale *Anthrax* verie maruellously (as they report) and within the space of one day it quite destroyeth it, so that it needeth no other curing after any more: besides also it is a common helpe for other woundes. Some also do declare wonderfull things of *Scabiosa*: because that, (it being eaten or drunke in wine) it thrusteth out internall tumours to the externall places, and it doth dissolue and discusse them without paine.

Psilli.

Maturatiuum Auicennæ.

Mundificatiuum ex apio.

A common cataplasme vsed in Paris.

Consolida maior.

Scabiosa.

In the vlcers of a carbuncle these do resolue the crustes or scurfe, fresh butter, swines suet, and other fat things of that sort. For this purpose also this emplaister following doth maruellously profite: for besides that it resolueth the scarre, that is, the cruft, more speedily then the aforesaid things, it also asswageth the paine that is caused either of the sharp and burning medicines, or of the bright instrument, and it mightily discusseth the malicious humour, which exciteth the Carbuncle. ℞. of wheate and barley meale. ana. ℥. iij. of the which make a solide emplaister with the decoction of mallowes, violetes, and the rootes of *Althæa*, and put thereunto of butter, and swines suet melted. ana. ℥. ij. the yolkes of two egges, which must be put in, when they are taken off the fire: and all these must be diligently commixed and incorporate together with the aforesaid rootes and herbes, which must be well beaten and brayed together the one with the other, and then sifted through a searce. As concerning their diet, epithemes, cordials, & other of that kind, which are made to strengthen the heart, also Euacuations, if they be needefull, they do altogether pertaine vnto that part of Phisick, which cureth with diet and medicines. Wherefore in ministring thē, you must aske the aduise or coūsel of some learned Phisition. But cōmonly all mē almost do vse *theriaca*, which is wōt to be ministred to

What things do resolue the cruftes of vlcers.

Emplastrum escharam resoluens.

Theriaca.

to the greatneſſe of a beane, made of the water of ſcabios, or if a very ſharpe and vehement feauer be preſent, you muſt make it of roſe water, or water of bugloſſe: which the ſicke muſt take ſixe houres after meate. But becauſe we haue made mention before of the Trochiskes of *Andron*, *Polyida* and *Muſa* (which Galen ſo greatly vſed) it ſhall not be amiſſe to ſet downe here the deſcription of them.

℞. of Cytines (that is) of the firſt flowers or buddes of a Pomegranate. ℥.x. of alume that may be cut. ℥.iiij. of coperous or vitrioll. ℥.xij. of mirrhe. ℥.iiij. of frankenſence, *Ariſtolochia*, and gaules. ana. ℥.viij. of ſalt ammoniacke. ℥.iiij. *Andronh Trochiskus.*

℞. of pomegranate rindes. ℥. vj. of mirrhe. ℥.viij. of Alume that may be cut ℥ v. of frankenſence. ℥.iiij. of coperous. ℥.iiij. of the gall of a bul. ℥.vj. let theſe be taken in ſweete wine. *Polyidæ Pastillus.*

℞. of cut alume. ℥.iij frankenſence. ℥.iiij. of mirrhe as much, of coperous. ℥.ij. of the floures of pomegranates. ℥.xij. of bulles gall. ℥.vj. *Aloes*. ℥.viij. Take theſe in ſharpe wine. *Polyidæ paſtillus alius.*

℞. of cut alume, *Aloes*, mirrhe, coperous. ana. ℥ vj. of ſaffron, & of the dregs of the oyle of ſaffron ℥.iij. of the floures of pomegranates. ℥. iiij. Let them be taken in *mulſum* made of *Falernum*. *Muſæ trochiſkus.*

CHAP. XII.

Of Gangrena and Sphacelus.

GALENE *Lib. 2. ad Glauconem*, calleth them Cankers, which by reaſon of the greatneſſe of the inflammation be made and changed into mortificatiõs, yet they be not throughly engendred and already confirmed. The force and tyrannie of this euill is ſo outragious, that except it be remedied very ſpeedily, the affected member doth eaſilie repreſent the habite of death (that is) it doth verie readily draw together the extinction and quenching both of life ſenſe and mouing. But when the member is ſo corrupted and ſo feeble, that it is altogether without ſence, and as it were dead, ſo that whether it be ſtroken, or cut, or burned, the ſicke feeleth it not, then the Greekes call this euill no longer *Gangrena*, but *Sphacelus*, the Latins *Syderatio*, the latter ſort call it *Eſthiomenon*: which name alſo they giue vnto *Gangrena*. But Auicene calleth it *Eſthiomenon*, when as the corruption therof doth paſſe to the continuall parts, which terme the Grecians do vſe in an other order. Some call this affect ſometime *Herpeta Eſtiomenon*, ſometime verie improperly, *Cancer vlceratus*. But this affect chanceth alſo to the bones, when as the fleſh being beſet & compaſſed about with them, bringing forth and engendring filthy and ſtinking corruption, doth infect them with this horrible poiſon, and conſumeth them with moſt corrupt rible rottenneſſe. Therfore when as the member ſhall together appeare voide of life, ſence and mouing, you muſt by and by pare it to the quicke as neare as you can to the ſound fleſhe. *Sphacelus* therefore differeth from *Gangrena*, becauſe the one doth grow vp in the bones (as we haue declared) and not in the fleſh and the veſſelles of the bodie onely: but the other commeth not to the bone. Notwithſtanding it is one kinde of *Sphacelus* but it borroweth a proper and ſingular name beſide the common terme. This kinde of corruption being

What a Canker is, & where it hath his beginning.

Gangrena peſſimus tyrannus

Sphacelus.

Syderatio eſſeum.

The benũmed member muſt ſtraightway be pared.

perfect in the affected part, and altogether depriued of sence, is called commonly in France *Ignis Sancti Antonij*. In another place, *Ignis Sancti Martialis*. But this mortification of the members, or the extinguishing and destroying of the life in them, chaunceth three wayes. One way, when as the member can no longer receiue the life that is sent to it frō the heart through the Arteries, by reason of the dissoluing of the mixture and consent of the affected member. Which mixture and harmonie of the member is dissolued and destroyed either becausse of too much cold, (as sometime it happeneth in sharpe and boysterous winters) or by reason of immoderate, rash, and vnadui sed refrigeration of the inflammation, or else becausse of the exceeding, and vnmeasurable vehement heate, and poyson of the inflammations, and malignant vlcers (as they call them.) Another way *Gangrena* and *Sphacelus* are causse d, when as the life being gotten into the member is choaked & stopped, as it oftentimes happeneth in great inflammations, which sometime do so close vp and stoppe the veines, Arteries, and pores of the skinne, that there the spirites, (the breathing forth of the vaporous streames, and the drawing in of the aire, being altogether hindred) are strangled and choaked. The third way, these mortifications & destroyings of life are causse d in the members, when as the passage and flowing of the vitall breath from the heart to some member is letted and forbidden, and that happeneth either by reason of a vehement and strong binding, or else becausse of some bruse receiued in these passages and pores, through the which the breath is caried. To conclude, *Gangrena* and *Syderatio*, which the Grecians call *necrosis* and *Sphacelus* do chaunce vnto mens bodies, destroying either the member, or the vitall facultie, or the naturall heate and temperature of the bodie. But the signes of *Gangrena* and *Syderatio*, Galen in his little treatise of tumors aboue nature declareth to be these. First truly that flourishing colour is extinguished in them, which is wont to be in phlegmonous inflammations, then paine and beating of the pulses (that is) the mouing of the Arteries, which is felt of the sicke, do depart a little aside, yet their naturall disposition not altogether ended, but their sense altogether dead and mortified. Whereupon the member straight way appeareth blacke, and it is verie soft and full of corruption, it breatheth out a filthie sauour and it is like vnto a dead thing without life. Whereby it commeth to passe, that when it is touched with the finger, it easily yeeldeth verie deepely, neither after doth it rise vp againe or returne, but the skinne appeareth as though it were separated from the flesh. But this mortification of the affected member, (which the Grecians call *Gangrena*,) is of so great crueltie and madnesse (as *Paulus* saith) that except you presently seeke a remedie for it without all delay, the affected member soone perisheth, and then it inuadeth the other parts that be next vnto it, and killeth the man. But if (as *Celsus* reporteth) it yet hath but small power, but is now a beginning, it is not verie hard to cure, especially in a young mans bodie, and so much the rather if the muscles be sound and whole, if the sinewes be not hurt, or smally affected. But when this euill hath taken deepe roote, and is turned already into *sphacelus*, it is vncurable, and very many do dye of a cold sweat.

Ignis Sancti Antonij.

Three causes of mortificatiō.

1. *What things do dissolue the mixture of the member.*

2.

3.

Signes of Gangrena & sphacelus.

1.

2.

3.

4.

Iudicia lib. 4.

Lib. 5.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the cure of Gangrena caused of great inflammations, and of the destroying or curing of Sphacelus, which is ingendred of Gangrena.

BECAVSE abondance of bloud doth ingender a canker, the order of the cure thereof must be straightway attempted by a plentifull and copious euacuation of the corrupt bloud, which is packed together in the affected member. But in the meane season, you must not neglect those things which shall seeme to belong vnto diet, medicines, cutting of a veine (if need require) and strengthning of the heart, in which things the Chyrurgian must take the aduise of some learned Phisition, who knoweth how to instruct him therein (as the matter shall require.) But there must be great plentie of that congealed bloud (which causeth mortifications) drawne out from the affected part, either in the veine that is cut, if it appeareth any thing full and swolne about the same member, or in the whole skinne of the part affected, together with his substance either kept downe and made obedient, or cut or diuided by manie deepe scarifications. Some to this end do applye horse-leaches, and they do open little the veines that be next the sore, but those deepe and often sections or scarifications are much more effectuall to cure that euill. But because of the greatnesse of the Canker, we vse very great sections, or often incisions (which we call Scarifications:) the one, when the euill is neare rorten, the other when it onely beginneth to rot. For the greater the euill is, the greater remedie, it requireth (as euerie man may know.) But when you haue drawne out bloud aboundantly by those deepe slashes or cuts, you must wash the place with salt water, that the thick bloud which otherwise would abound there, may be brought forth. Then you must applie some medicine that can let and dissolue putrifaction, as is the meale of tares or darnell, (which the French men call *yuraria*, because it doth prouoke drunkennesse after the manner of wine) or if there be scarcitie of them, you must vse the meale of beanes with *oximell* and *syrupus acetosus*. It shall be profitable also to wash the scarified place twise a day with hote vineger, but especially with *mulsum*. For these by reason of the drinesse, doe consume the filthinesse and corruption, and doe clense it, but because of their coldnesse they doe chalenge of putrifaction that, which is not yet defiled and corrupted. But when this feruent heate is now abated, and the furie of the euil somewhat remitted and slaked, you must lay aboue vpon the sore that ointment which is commonly called *vnguentum Ægyptiacum*, made of verdigrease, alume, honie, and vineger, of each a like quantitie commixed and boyled together. This doth stop putrifaction and resolue it: and it doth disseuer also the putrified and corrupted humour from the sound and whole partes, and it doth cause it to fall and perish. Moreouer it procureth a crust or scarre, and preserueth and defendeth the whole partes from any infection. But if you will apply a more strong & effectuall medicine, mingle salt with the aforesaid things; or if the euill shall increase yet more and more, minister some of the Trochiskes before mentioned, being throughly

Emptying of corrupted bloud.

After scarificatiõ you must wash the place with salt water.

Medicines putrefactiues.

Vnguentum Aegyptiacum.

Burning Trochiskes.

brayed and beaten together, and then washed in vineger and wine: as that either of *Andron*, or *Polyida*, or *Musa*: or one of those which are called of the latter sort *calcitron*, *Aldaron*, or that made of *Asphodelus*, which by reason of the burning force do separate the corruption from the sound partes. In this matter before all other things *Arsenicon* is praysed and allowed of, which they call *sublimatum*, *purum* or *correctum*, which must be dissolued either in some powder or in wine, and taken in linnen or cotten (which the French men call *Coton*.) And so applyed betweene the sound and corrupted member. For this doth straight way stay the euill, and that truely without paine. But if necessitie requireth, you must deuide the good from the euill with a certaine instrument called a probe, or skise. But in ministring such medicines: that the matter may be handled more without care, you must be diligent to know the nature of the sicke bodie, (as Galene hath well taught vs saying.) If the body be rusticall and hard by nature, it requireth verie vehement medicines: but if it be tender and soft, it requireth more gentle and mild medicines. Infantes also or children, and they which loue to liue at their owne pleasure in idlenesse, must haue gentle medicines ministred to them. Moreouer the nature of the partes which are euill affected must be regarded as well as the whole bodie, when you do either cut off, or cut about that which is putrified and corrupted. For there are some sores, which very quickly do come to matter, and corruption, if they be negligently cured: and some verie slowly: some also do slowly feele the force and benefite of medicines applyed, and some verie soone.

Arsenicon sublimatum.

Lib. 2. ad Glauc.

When aduſtion is to be vſed.

Furthermore if (notwithstanding these burning medicines) the euill shal yet remaine, you must burne that place which is betweene the whole and corrupted member. But all these remedies are wont sometime to profite nothing at all, and then this is the onely helpe, although (as *Celsus* saith) it be a miserable helpe (that is) to cut off the member, which by little and little waxeth dead, that so the other partes of the body may be without daunger. For that which is once corrupted, euen with touching it doth infect and corrupt that part which is whole and sound after the manner of poyson. But if at any time you shall cut off this putrified and dead member, or shalllance of that which is corrupted in any member euen to the sound flesh, then by the counsell of Galen for more quietnesse sake, you must seare or burne with some bright instrument that member, which as a roote is ioyned to the whole and sound body, for so you shall quickly stay the flowing of bloud, and debarre corruption. Now aduſtion being done and ended, you must vse the iuyce of leekes, or (as Paulus saith) you must applie salt with the leekes, or some of those remedies, which we haue spoken of a litle before. For these do dry and bind the corruption, and do also stoppe the flux of humors. But when by vsing these remedies rottennesse or corruption shal seeme to cease: that the crustes and scurfe may soone fall away, you must vse a Cataplasme made of bread, or barley meale, or wheate meale boyled in *hydraleon*. Also that medicine which they call *Cephalicum*, annointed with hony. These through their cleansing or scouring, do resolue the crust from the flesh which lyeth vnder it. Moreouer that medicine which is called *Tetrapharmacum*, and that also called *macedonicum*, by mouing

If the canker turneth into sphacelus.

Lib. 2. ad Glau.

Lib. 4. Remedies that can loſen the crusts from the ſeared member.

and

and mollifying the matter do bring the scurfs from the partes that lye vnder them, as all other things do, which do bring the sores vnto suppuration. For these remedies do both mollifie, and ripen or end the matter vnder the crust, which matter doth resolue it: (I meane that matter which lyeth betweene the crust and the flesh.) Bread also beaten and brayed with *apium*, or *ocinium*, thorough their clensing doth mightely drawe the crustes from the whole partes without erosion or gnawing, of the like vertue also is *Iris*, or the roote of *panax*, or of *aristolochia*, or of *acorus* mixed with honie. But they are commonly wont to vse butter or some other annointing thing to resolue the crustes. But when the crust is fallen of, they wash the place with vineger, and then applie this plaister following, which is rehearsed by *Guilielmus de saliceto*. ℞. honie. ℔.ß. raw yolkes of egges iij. or iiij. of barley meale. ℔.ß. mingle these togither and bring them into the fourme of an amplaister. But two or three dayes after, that the mundification or cleansing may be the better accomplished, you may adde to this emplaister, of chosen mirrhe. ʒ. x. But in tender and young bodies for the separation of the crust, and detersion of the filthie corruption, the meale of tares mingled with honie, or frankensence (which was vsed of Galene) doth abundantly suffice. These things being rightlie ordered, such kinde of vlcers must be brought vnto some soundnesse of health with such kind of medicines as can draw togither the flesh, and procure a scarre: the Grecians call them *synalotica* and *epolotica*. 1. Emptie out aboundantly the corrupted bloud, which is stuffed in the affected member. 2. After scarifications or sections, wash the affected place with salt water. Then lay on a medicine appointed for corrupted sores. 3. When the furie of the euill is somewhat slaked, minister *vnguentum AEgyptiacum*. 4. If the euill will not yeeld to these remedies, seare with a bright and hoate yron that place which is betweene the filthie and corrupted member. 5. But if all these things shall nothing helpe, and now *Gangrena* is chaunged into *sphacelus*, cut off that member verie speedily, which is so perished euen to the whole, so that no filthinesse remaine behinde. 6. When you haue cut off that which was putrified, you must vse some hoate burning instrument, that so you may the more quietly pull vp euen the verie roote of the euill. 7. After exustion, minister the iuyce of leekes, and other such things, which do drie, bind, and stoppe fluxe. 8. Make no great speede to resolue the crust or scurfe by vsing burning medicines, or some hoate instrument from the subiect places (for then there is wont to follow abundance of bloud.) 9. When rottennesse or corruption is ceased, and you feare no more the flowing of bloud, apply those things which can draw of the crust. 10. When the crustes or scurfes be falne from their places, you must vse the same cure, as in other places.

Butyrum.

Emplastrum Gulielmi de Salicito.

Lib. 2. ad Glauconem.

The summe of the cure of Gangrena and Sphacellus.

1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.

Aphorismes.

1. First appoint a thinne and cooling diet for them which are vexed with *Gangrena* and *sphacelus*. 2. If nothing do let it, turne away the fluxe by letting of bloud: and draw it out aboundantlie, if it floweth plentifullie. 3. Purifie the bloud with the medicine which is called *Catholicon*, or with the blacke pith of *Cassia fistularis*, or with the decoction of *Tamarindi*, of hoppes, and fumitorie. 4. Let the sicke take *Theriaca*, and other of that kinde, which are able to defende the heart, (which is the fountaine and beginning of life) from those cor-

pertaining to a phisitiō.

1. 2. 3. 4.

rupted and filthie ſmelling fluxes, which are mounted vp from the putrified member.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of Eryſipelas and other tumours cauſed of Choler.

Fleume in the generation of humors is next vnto bloud.

Although fleume in generation of humors, doth follow next vnto bloud, & there be greater abundance of that humour in the body next vnto bloud, then of other humors, yet becauſe tumours aboue nature proceeding of choler (which they commōly call cholerike apoſtemes) do in many things greatly cōſpire & agree with bloudy humors, it followeth (after the determination of *phlegmone*, and of other tumours conſiſting aboue nature, which proceede of bloud) that we now ſpeake of thoſe ſwellings, which are cauſed of choler, and are called of the Greekes by this generall name *Eryſipelata*, but of the auncient Latins *Ignes ſacri*. *Eryſipelas* therfore is the braunch or bud of cholericke fluxe, moſt abiding about both the skinnes (that is) both about that which outwardly couereth all the partes of the body, and alſo about that filmie and thin skin which inwardly compaſſeth the internall partes. But oftentimes alſo it occupieth ſome of the fleſhe that lyeth vnder it, as *phlegmone* (which is the iſſue of bloudy fluxe moſt incidēt to fleſhy bodies) doth alſo poſſeſſe ſome of the skin. Therfore when very thin choler, or hote bloud which is thin alſo in ſubſtance. (called of the latter ſort *cholera naturalis*, but of Gal. χολὴ ξανθὴ) ſpread abroad ouer the skin onely, nothing moleſting the fleſh vnder it, & yet ſomewhat raiſing the member into a tumor with a languiſhing inflammation & yellow rednes, & altogether doth yeeld when it is touched. This affect is properly called of Gālen, a true & exquiſite *Eryſipelas*. But this is for one conſideration, or (as they ſay) it chanceth vniformely, and without vlceration. Auicene calleth it *ſpina*. But when a humour of bitter choler ſhalbe more thicke & ſharpe, then that it cā returne again naturally, it doth exulcerate or fetch off that litle outward skin, (which the Greeks call *Epidermida*) & ſometime that exulceratiō of the skin in proceſſe of time pierceth ſomwhat deepely, ſo that it toucheth the inner fleſh vnder it, & then that affect is called alſo *Eryſipelas* but with vlceration, which (as Galen ſaith) is all one with *Herpes*. But if it be neither a cholerick fluxe, nor a bloudy humour, but equally congealed of them both, it is not then called *Eryſipelas* only, but Galen termeth it a diſpoſition throughly commixed with *Eryſipelas* & the inflāmation. But of that which is predomināt in the mixture, is the title giuen to the euill. For when bloud ruleth, it is called *phlegmone eryſipelatoſa*: but whē choler raigneth, we terme it *Eryſipelas phlegmonōſum*. But whē neither hath ſuperioritie, but the accidents of them both appeare equal together in power, then that euill ſhalbe called a meane betweene *phlegmone* and *Eryſipelas*. Now alſo of other mixtures, there ſhalbe the like interpretation, that is, if much choler be mingled with a thin and ſmall humor, either of fleume or melancholie, it ſhalbe called *Eryſipelas ædematōſum* or *ſchirrhoſum*. Moreouer when we ſpeake ſimply of choler, or of a billious humour, after the manner of Galen and other Phiſitions, we meane pale choler, yellow, and bitter, and not that which is ſoure & blacke. And this is called of others, *naturalis & certa cholera*, hauing his generatiō of bloud that is thin & hote. But melancholie we ne-

Eryſipelas quid.

Eryſipelas exquiſitum.

Spina.

Eryſipelas cum vlceratione.

Eryſipelas non legitimum.

Mediū vitiū.

Bilis.

ver

uer absolutely do terme choler, but alwayes with an adiection of the humour which ioyneth the colour of the name. Choler therfore, which is called of the Greekes χολὴ, & commonly *cholera*, is a hote & dry humour, proceeding of the thinner & hotter part of *chylus*, or thin and hote bloud (as we said a late.) And this is two maner of wayes according to the diuisiõ of the new Phisitions, that is to say, naturall and vnnaturall. Naturall choler is a humour of power hote & dry, in substance thin, of colour yellow or red, declining vnto a certaine colour like orenge taunie, but in tast very bitter, & not sharp or soure (as some vntruly haue affirmed.) Vnnaturall choler is sayd to be that, which doth degenerate from the aforesayd bilious humour, and yet it keepeth it selfe within the bounds of his circuite, which if it doth once passe or go out of, it is now not to be accounted choler, but rather some other humour. But this (I meane choler) doth happen to transgresse the limites of his liberty or circuite two wayes. 1. One way (as we may say) by it selfe, and in it selfe. 2. The other way by admixtion with others. By it selfe & in it selfe it is also two fold. 1. one way, when as that naturall choler doth putrifie, and is burned within, and that is called *adusta per putrefactionem*. i. burnt through putrifaction. 2. The other way, when as vnnaturall choler called *vitellina*, is throughly concocted euen with a fierie heate in the liuer, or in the stomach, or in the veines, and it is made of the colour of leeks, which they also call *prassina*, or it is caused to be rusty or cankred, which truely are extreme griefes. But vnnaturall choler, or choler aboue nature, through admixtion, is caused, whē as another humor doth come vnto it extraordinarily. And this truly happeneth many wayes. For if thin & watrish fleume be mixed with it, it is made yellow & like vnto saffrõ, if thick & viscous fleume be cõmixed therewith, it is made like to the yolks of egs: but if burned melancholie be ioyned therewith, it is made *bilis adusta per admixtionẽ*. And so after Auicenes minde & iudgement, there are six kindes of naturall choler; with Haly abbas, foure onely, for he maketh no mention at all of two kinds of adusted choler. But Gal. *lib. 2. de virtu. naturalibus* saith that there is no choler besids nature, but that which is *vitellina*, verie like both in colour & thicknesse to the yolkes of egs: for he saith that *porracea* and *æruginosa bilis* are engendred oftentimes in the stomach, of naughty & corrupted humours, by reason of the cruditie or rawnesse of meates and drinkes, as are, the herbe called beete, onions, coolewortes. And also sometime, when these things are not well digested, it is engẽdred in the very veynes, by reason of sicknes, or some other euil disposition. By these things therefore is gathered, that there are foure kinds or differences of inflammations engendred of choler (which commonly are called cholericke apostemes.) That is to say. Of true sincere, and laudable choler (which we call thinne and hote bloud) is engendred that kinde of inflammation, which Galene *Lib. 2. ad Glauconem* calleth a true and exquisite *Erysipelas*, which is as it were a passion of the skinne onely: in Greeke it is called ἀληθὴς ἐρυσίπελας. But of vnnaturall choler, being mixed with other humours, there do arise three other differences, as *erysipelas phlegmonôdes*, *erysipelas ædematôdes* and *erysipelas sarrhodes*. And of choler which besides nature is caused of adustion, by reason of the thinnesse or thickenesse of the substance thereof there are engendred either *herpetes esthiomeni* (that is) *excedentes*, which are of the same

Bilis flaua duplex.

Not naturall.

Choler doth digresse from his owne nature.

Bilis vitellina. Porracea. Prassina. Aeruginosa.

Crocea. Auicene. Haly.

Foure differences of inflammations comming of choler. Verum erysipelas.

Three vnnaturall erysipelas. Herpes excedens.

kinde with those *erysipelata*, which do chaunce with vlceration, or there are engendred *phagedæna*, which do somewhat deepely gnaw the flesh together with the skinne, and there are caused exulcerat cankers, & other such gnawing euils, there are also engendred *cacoëthe* (that is) malignant vlcers, which are called of the late Chyrurgians *pustulæ corrosiuæ*. Therefore in such kinde of humours, that is truely the most thinne, which raiseth the exulcerated *herpes*: and that most thicke, which prouoketh the canker. Then that which pertaineth vnto thicknesse, occupieth the next place, which doth engender *phagedæne*, as Galene hath noted *Lib.* 14 *meth. med.* The causes of a true *erysipelas* as also of a true *phlegmone* are three. *Prægressæ*, which are called also *primatiue*, 2. *antecedentes*, 3. and *coiunctæ*. But *erysipelas* is seldome caused of any primitiue cause: notwithstanding violent frictions, the applying and ministring of attractiue medicines do oftentimes excite or cause the same.

Phagedæna.
Cancri vlcerati.

Causa veri erysipelatis.

CHAP. XV.

Of the signes and tokens of a true erysipelas.

THE markes and tokens of a true and exquisite *erysipelas* are gathered and knowen by conferring the same with *phlegmone* according to the doctrine of Galene 14. *Therap.* and 2. *ad Glauconem*: whereby it plainely appeareth that a true and lawfull *erysipelas* is a certaine *species* of *phlegmone* (that is) of an inflammation, as it is generally taken. The signes therefore of *erysipelas* are these, a red colour to behold, declining somewhat to yellow, which yellowish colour doth easily yeeld to touching or handling of it, (that is) by thrusting it downe with the fingers, and then it flydeth in againe, a small tumour rather remaining in the skin, then descending deepely, vehement heate causing a more vehement feauer then that which is ascended of *phlegmone*: for *erysipelas* is farre away more hote, then *phlegmone*. No great or strong breaking of the pulses, which is the proper sumptomate of a great *phlegmone*. A byting and pricking paine without any extension, as it chaunceth in *phlegmone*, and many other like signes which do signifie the dominion and rule of choler. But that which pertaineth vnto the iudgementes hereof, *erysipelas* doth chiefly lay hold on the face, and beginneth commonly in that part of the nose, which is commonly called *lepus*, then straightway it spreadeth ouer the whole face, and that through a double occasion, that is, for the thinnesse of the skinne, and lightnesse of the choler. But in the vncouering or laying naked of any bone, *erysipelas* is a sodaine and maruellous disease, as Hyppocrates writeth *Lib.* 7. *Aphorisme.* 19. that is to say, it is an euill symptomate, if the flesh lying round about the naked bone doth seeme to be occupied of *erysipelas*, but this, as Galene witnesseth, chaunceth verie seldome. Againe the same Hippocrates writeth in the Aphorisme following, that of *erysipelas* there commeth corruption, suppuration, together with the disease, which things (saith Galene) neuer doe chance vnto *erysipelata*, except it be to them, which are very malignant. A true and lawfull *erysipelas* hath foure times or seasons, as other tumours also aboue nature haue: the signes whereof are to be sought out of those things which went before. An exquisite *erysipelas* is seldome ended by suppuration, but chiefly through an insensible transpiration or resolution. There happen sometime in

Signes of erysipelas.

A yellowish redneſſe yeelding to the finger, a small tumour, vehemẽt heat.
Small pulse.
Pricking paine.
Iudicia.

Erysipelas followeth the order of a tertiã feauer.

in *Erysipelas* certaine symptomates, which oftentimes by reason of their greatnesse do exceed the verie cause of the euill it selfe, and therefore they do hinder the order of the cure (that is) they do change and peruert the method of curing (as hath also bene sayed before in *phlegmone*.) Moreouer also, *Erysipelas* followeth the mouing of a Tertian feuer, with whose matter it hath a certaine analogie and proportion, for the matter of them both is a cholericke humour. But it is not good to driue or turne *erysipelas* from the outward partes to the inward, but contrariwise from the inward members to the outward partes, as *Hyppocrates* hath written *lib. 6. Aphor. 25.* But those *erysipelata* which do arise about the head, do put vs to more trouble, which (as *Paulus* saith) are wont to be so dangerous, that except they be holpen with some effectuall remedie, they sometime strangle and choke the sicke. *Hyppocrates* also writeth, that *erysipelas* is verie mortall and deadly, if it chanceth in the wombe of a woman with childe, for *erysipelas* being thus engendred in the wombe, the childe of necessitie dieth. For truly a sharp feuer (as *Galen* saith in his commentaries) oftentimes destroieth it without inflammation.

Erysipelata about the head are verie hard to be cured.

Erysipelas in the wombe of a woman killeth the childe.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the cure of Erysipelas

SEEING that *erysipelas* (as also *phlegmone* whereof we intreated a litle before) is a hote affect, and engendred of the defluxion of humours: the method of the whole curing thereof shall also be two fold: that is to say, refrigeration, and euacuation. And as in *phlegmone* the order of euacuation did surmount and ouercome the method of refrigeration: so in *erysipelas*, refrigeration is more needfull then euacuation. For the one doth trouble and molest in quantitie, but the other (which is *erysipelas*) in qualitie. Therefore *erysipelas* must be greatly cooled and litle emptied, wheras contrariwise an inflammation ought to be plentifully euacuated, and litle refrigerated. Although there be a common chapter and summe of curing both affectes, as *Galen* sayeth, that is, the vacuation of the troublesome humour: and therfore after that *erysipelas* hath bene cooled, we vse those medicins which can digest or discusse. Furthermore that we may attaine vnto this vniuersall method which we haue sayed to be two fold (I meane refrigeration and euacuation of the noysome humour:) it shall not be amisse, if we declare this cure by foure other particular orders after the consent of the Chyrurgians of our time. The first scope consisteth in the right obseruation of a good diet. The second concerneth the auersion of the humour that floweth to the affected member, which they call *antecedens materia*. The third consisteth in the emptying out of the humour which hath flowed alreadie into the diseased part, which they also call *materia coniuncta*. The fourth and last is busied and occupied about the correction and keeping backe of the euill symptomates that may happen therevnto. We shall easily dispatch the first scope, if the applying of all those things which they call *Res non naturales* shall belong vnto moistnesse and to coldnesse, as is a feuer tertian, seeing that *erysipelas* hath his beginning of choler, which is of a hote and drie temperature. Therfore chuse & prepare an aire as neare as you can, that is somewhat cold and moist. In summer let the sicke be in a verie colde house

Two generall orders in the cure of erysipelas.

Foure particular intentions of curing erysipelas.

1

2

3

4

Primus scopus.

Aire.

somewhat within the ground, that is, windie and towards the North. But if there be no such place to be had, and the ayre verie hote, make it readie for him your selfe by Art. Powre cold water very often out of one vessell into another: sprinkle the pauements of the house daily with water that is altogether ycie and cold. Spread vppon the floore roses and violettes, vine leaues and branches, sallow boughes, and other floures and buddes, which are of a cold and moist facultie. Let no great companie of men come into the parlour or place where the sicke abideth. Let him eschue all fat, sweete, soure, and hote meates. Let him eate lettuce, gourdes, purslaine, sorrell, (which they call *acetosa*) rice, and other things of that kind which do thicken & refrigerate bloud. Let him altogether abstaine from wine. Let his drinke be ptysan broath, or barley water. Let him keepe a temperate dyet. Let his bellie be alwayes soft and soluble. Let him abstaine from all exercise and mouing, especially that which is vehement and immoderate. Let him eschue anger, contentions, and all vehement motions and perturbations of the minde as mortall enemies. Let all things be cleene and handsome about him. Let him refraine from carnall copulation. And let these things suffice concerning the first scope. But we shall also bring to passe our second intent about the cure of *erysipelas*, if by conuenient euacuation we take away that humour which is left behind in the bodie. Therefore in a true and lawfull *Erysipelas* not necessarily as in *phlegmone*, we must draw bloud out of a veine, but we must also purge the belly downward with some medicine which can expell choler (called of the Greeks *cholalegon*), if that the affect be great, and the bodie doth seeme to abound with choler. Therefore when *erysipelas* doth accend and kindle feuers, and those more vehement then *phlegmone*, those medicines which are exceedingly hote, and the iuyce of *scammonium*, (called of the new Greekes *dacrydion*) and that also which is commonly called in the shoppes *electuarium de succo rosarum*, are in no wise meete or conuenient for this disease, and therefore you must vse either rewbarbe, or that potion which of Rasis is called *aqua tamarindorum*, which is made as followeth. ℞. damaske prunes. 24. *tamarindi* that be new. ℥. x. of broken sugar. quar. ß. to the which things to make them more effectuall you may adde rewbarbe that is well washed. But if the euill be verie litle & small, these medicines, called *cholagoga* shall not neede, but it shall be sufficient to vse at that instant some sharpe clyster, (as it pleaseth *Galen*.) But in a phlegmonous *erysipelas* your labour shall not be frustrate, if you shall beginne the cure with bloudletting (if nothing doe let it.) For that kinde of *erysipelas* doth often lay hold on the face, whereupon *Paulus* commaundeth that by and by in the beginning you must cut a veine in the elbowe especially chusing in it the shoulder veine. But if that doth not appeare, you must take that which is most obiect to the sight. And if any thing do hinder the detraction of bloud, he commaundeth to vse a purgation made of some medicine which is dedicated and appointed to driue out choler, yet *Paulus* doth not contend with *Galen*: for whereas *Paulus* hath commaunded to cut a veine in that *erysipelas* which doth rise about the head or face, he meant that of a phlegmonous *erysipelas*, which verie often molesteth the face: but *Galen* speaketh of a lawfull *erysipelas*, wherein he vsed no detraction of bloud. But in *Erysipelas œdematosum* or *scirrhosum*,

Cibus.

Potus.

Motus. Animi affectus.

Venus.

Secundus scopus.

And Glaut. In a phlegmonous erysipelas, it is good to let bloud.

sum, you must vse a purgation which hath a mingled and manifold force, that is, which can purge, partly choler, partly fleume, or a melancholie humour. And truely in all these things the aduise of some learned and wise Physition is to be asked, from whose counsell and decree the Chyrurgian ought not in any wise to swarue or digresse. And let this be sufficient that once you haue bene admonished, that the Chirurgian ought not to attempt any thing at al in those things which belong vnto purging and bloud-letting, without the counsell and warrant of some cunning Physition, except sometime necessitie shall compell him, and when no Physition is ready at hand. The third intention is finished and performed by cooling and repelling medicines in the beginning of the fluxe, excepting those causes which we haue mentioned in our generall discourse. But the beginning being passed, and fluxe now remayning, you must emptie that which cleaueth fast vnto the member and is compacted therein, by applying outwardlie digestiue or euaporatiue medicines, that is to say, through the transpiration and breathing through to the sense. But of all these kindes of tumours thus consisting aboue nature, there is a double euacuation. *Galen Lib.* 14. *Therap.* one truely of repulsiues to the other parts, the other of outward digestiues, through that vaporous breathing, which doth flie the sence. But because *Erysipelas* doth afflict and molest not onely in quantitie, but also in the verie qualitie, by reason of the vehement inflammation: it doeth require a more often and greater refrigeration then *phlegmone* doeth. Therefore after the emptying of the whole body (as we haue said a litle before, we will vse represiue remedies, cooling it as it is conuenient) the afflicted member, or that parte which sustaineth the skinne: especially when *Erysipelas* is engendred without anie manifest cause. But the end of refrigeaation is the mutation or change of the colour: for that which is a pure *erysipelas* doth by & by rest and cease with this, but that which is not pure, but after a sort phlegmonous, if you shall refrigerate it much, it maketh the skin blacke and blew, but if you shall desist from seeking to change the colour, it waxeth black, especially in an aged bodie: so that some of those refrigerated tumors cannot perfectly be healed, no truly not with digesting medicins, but that some scirrhous tumour will remaine behind in the member. It is farre better therfore (saith *Galen*) when you see the colour of the affected member altered, to passe ouer from refrigerating and moderating helpes vnto their contraries (that is) vnto dissoluing or digesting and drying remedies, before that the member be altogether blew or blacke. But you must alwaies beware and take good heed, that those things which be annoynted, be verie liquide and moist, and that they be often changed, and that those things which be applyed, be often washed with spunges dipped in some colde liquor. For the great heate of the member quickly bursting forth into a vapour, doth drie vp these things. But amongest those things whiche carie with them a refrigerating and repelling force; very conuenient for this affect, *Auicen* chiefly praiseth among simple remedies the sprinkling on of cold water. But *Galen* commendeth the iuyce of nightshade, of syngreene, of purslaine, of *Psillium*, of henbane, of lettuce, of *vmbilicus Veneris* (which herbe is called of the Greekes *Cotyledon*) of endiue and succorie, of fenne lintels, of gourdes, and other of that sort. Also that cerate made of

In phlebotomy & purging, the Chyrurgian must be taught by the Physition.

Tertia intentio.

Hic Guido deprauatè citat Gal.

How much erysipelas is to be refrigerated.

Lib. 14. *Ther.*

Materia refrigeratum ex Gal.

Ceratum.

verie cold water, which conteineth foure times as much of oyle of roſes with white waxe. ℞. oyle of roſes with oyle of vnripe grapes made without ſalt, which being made verie ſoft and pliable in a morter, ſprinckle on cold water as much as you thinke good, with the which if you commix a little vineger that is thinne and very cleare, you ſhall make the medicine more excellent and more effectuall. Moreouer all theſe things muſt be miniſtred cold, and often chaunged, before they be any thing dried or withered. It profiteth alſo very much and that preſently to annoint the member annoyed with *Eryſipelas*, with ceruſe onely, or mingled with vineger and *lycium*, or with *terra cimolia*, or with potters clay, with nightſhade, or with *ſpuma argenti* with oyle of roſes, and with *acatia* with vineger. To this purpoſe alſo this compound following helpeth much.

A compound medicine.

℞. iuice of plantaine. ℥. j. oyle of roſes. ℥. iij. *Lithargyri nutriti* ℥. j. *ceruſæ lotæ* ℥. ij. of womans milke. ℥. ß. let all be commixed together and brayed in a leaden morter, and make a liniment. But *lythargyrum* and *ceruſa* ought firſt to be beaten, and then the oyle and iuyce aforeſayd muſt be powred on them ſoftlie by little and little, vntill they be throughlie incorporate together the one with the other. But if you deſire greater coolers, you may commixe with theſe and other remedies before recited (according to *Paulus* minde) a little *opium* or *cicuta*, or mandrake. But I thinke it good to abſtaine from applying either of them or the like, which are of a ſtupefactiue nature, except great neceſſitie doeth moue you thereunto. But when the inflammation of the affected member is ſomewhat abated, and the heate of *Eryſipelas* ſlaked, *Galene* (before that any blewneſſe did appeare through refrigeration) did vſe to diſſolue the humour gotten into the member (which they call *coniuncta materia*) by laying on a cataplaſme of barley meale, or of *cruda polenta* (called in Greeke ἀμυλώσις) and of other things before mentioned in the order of curing *phlegmone*. For euen as the ſignes of *Eryſipelas* were deſumed and knowen by the analogie of the tokens of *phlegmone*: ſo alſo the remedies of the cure of *Eryſipelas* are to be fetched from the proportion of the remedies of healing *phlegmone*. Furthermore of ſuch kinde of medicines, which haue a diſſoluing and breathing qualitie verie neceſſarie in this euill, there are verie many, both ſimples and compoundes, rehearſed of *Paulus Ægineta Lib. 4. cap. 22.* and of *Ætius Libro 14. de re medica*. But now it ſhall be ſufficient to rehearſe among ſo many, one onely remedie which of all the reſt ſeemeth in my opinion to be moſt excellent. ℞. of the tender leaues of *althæa. lib.* j. boyle them in *hydreleum*, and being well boiled, bray them well together, putting thereunto of oyle of roſes. ℥. iiij. *argenti ſpuma*, and *ceruſæ*. ana. ℥. ij. ß. againe plaine or ſmooth them with the iuyce of coriander, of ſyngreene, or nightſhade, then put thereunto a few crummes of bread and annoint them after the maner of an inplaiſter. But if peraduenture blewneſſe ſhall now occupie the place, (the skinne being cut before) you muſt lay a cataplaſme aboue vpon it, and ſprinckle the place aboundantly, as *Galene* hath commaunded, with hote water: for it doeth digeſt and waſh the wound. Alſo water and ſalt brine in the meane ſeaſon ſhall auaile to nouriſh or cheriſh the place, when it is ſomewhat thicke and groſſe, which things doe ſcoure and clenſe the thickeneſſe thereof. The fourth intention of the cure of *Eryſipelas*, which is the correction of the accidentes, is perfected, (as we haue ſayd in the

Euacuation of the ioined matter by euaporatiues. ἀμυλώσις.

Hydreleum is a mixture of water & oyle.

Si liuoriam locum occuparit.

Quarta intentio.

the cure of *phlegmone*) when as we shal returne and driue backe the recourse of the matter, induration, and corruption together with the paine and the heat. For these symptomates are wont to happen as well vnto *Erysipelas*, as vnto *phlegmone*. Moreouer the best remedie to asswage paine and vehement heate, is made of leaues & rootes of henbane, which you must rowle vp in towe and seeth them with prunes: then commixe them with the oyntment commonly called *populeon*, or with swines greace (as is sayd before in the cure of *phlegmone*.) But if *Erysipelas* shall chaunce to be exulcerated, you shall cure it with applying *vnguentum album* or *vnguentum de lythargyro*, with the which if you shall commixe a little *scoria*, which is the drosse of lead molten in the fire, you make the remedie most excellent and effectuall. But it shall be more profitable to comprehend the whole order of the cure of *Erysipelas* in some short sentences, after the manner of an Epilogue, that those things whereof we haue spoken before somewhat at large, may take the deeper roote in our mindes and memories. For this cause therefore we haue taken out of Galene these seuen Aphorismes following, which summarily do containe the whole cure of *Erysipelas*. 1. In an exquisite *Erysipelas* make no detraction of bloud. 2. If the bodie be full of choler and the affect be great, purge the bellie downward with the medicine *cholagogon*. 3. If the disease be little and small and the body without choler, vse no medicine to purge choler, but content your selfe with some sharpe clyster. 4. When you haue purged the whole bodie (as you must) annoynt the affected in the beginning with medicines that can moderately represse and aboundātly refrigerate, eué to the changing of the colour. 5. When you see the colour of the aggrieued member altered, and the heat of *Erysipelas* slaked, and the inflammation ceased, you must passe ouer from refrigerating and adstrictiue medicines before that the member be throughly blew or blacke, vnto their contraries (that is) vnto digestiues or discussiues and drying remedies. 6. Those *Erysipelata* which are caused of vlcers, and other manifest causes you must scarifie, and afterward applie a cataplasme of barley meale. 7. If *Erysipelas* be not exquisitiue or true, but *phlegmonous*: you may let bloud without fearing any thing, especially if bloud do abound in the bodie.

A remedie to mitigate paine and heat.

If Erysipelas be exulcerated.

Seuen Aphor. out of Galene concerning the whole cure of Erysipelas.

1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7.

CHAP. XVII.

Of Tumours which doe associate Erysipelas as Herpes both Miliaris and exedens, which are called of the late Chyrurgians cholericke pushes.

De herpete.

THose tumours aboue nature, which haue any societie with the aboue mentioned *Erysipelas*, or any way do seeme to pertaine thereunto (for that they haue their proceeding of vnnaturall, and hidden choler (that is) which is not mingled with other humours) both the latter sorte of Phisitions and also of Chyrurgians do call *mala cholericæ pustulæ*: but the Grecians, as Hippocrates, Galene & Paulus do call them *herpetæ*, which word doth almost founde and agree with the Latines, as *malum quod serpit*, the creeping euill. For ἑρπω in Greeke is all one with *serpo* in Latin, whereupon ἑρπης is called *serpens*, yet *herpes* doth perfectly signifie among the Phisitions *malum quod serpit*, but a cer-

Pustulæ cholericæ vulgo appellatæ herpetes,

taine kinde of diſeaſe whereof we now entreate, therefore the creeping euill extendeth and ſtretcheth further then *herpes*, for *Phagedænæ* are alſo called *ſerpentia vlcera*, creeping vlcers. But Auicene called all theſe kindes of puſhes *Formicæ*, and Galene numbreth them among inflammations, but *Celſus* ſeemeth to comprehend them vnder the name of *ſacer ignis*. *Lib.* 5. *Cap.* 28. *herpes* therefore is cauſed, when yellow choler, vnnaturall, alone, and ſecret, that is to ſay, which is commixed with no other humour, doth flow into ſome member, and there remaineth: whoſe ſubſtance if it be any thing thicke and ſharpe, it exulcerateth the whole skinne euen to the fleſh, which lyeth vnder it, and then this euill is called of Hippocrates and other Grecians ἕρπης ἐσθιόμενος, but of the Latines *herpes exedens* or *depaſcens*, an eating or feeding *herpes*, and it is called 14. *Therap.* of Galen, by this abſolute name, *herpes*. But if choler be ſomewhat thinne, and not ſo thicke and hote, it exciteth ſmall whelkes outwardly in the ſuperficies of the skinne (for that it doth onely as it were burne and ſcald) like vnto the ſeedes of millet or hyrſe: by reaſon of which ſimilitude and likeneſſe the affect is then termed of the Latines *miliaris herpes*: but of certaine of the Grecians after Hippocrates time, it was called for the ſame reaſon κέγχρια: for κέγχρις in Greeke, is called *milium* with vs. And this kinde of ſpecies of *herpes* (Galene witneſſing the ſame *Libro ſecundo ad Glauconem*) doeth borrow his name or title of the generall worde, ſeeing that the ſame Galene calleth it *herpes* ſimplie and without addition. Notwithſtanding in another place by the name of *herpes*, Galene calleth it *herpes eſthiomenos*, that is, *exedens*, as afterward ſhalbe ſayd. But this kinde doeth not altogether cauſe the vlcer, as the other doeth which is called *excedens*, but as it hath bene ſayd, it exciteth little ſmall puſhes to the likeneſſe of *milium*, which puſhes in proceſſe of time, when they are broken out, doe turne vnto an vlcer. Therefore not without any great reaſon or cauſe did *Oribaſius* and certaine other alſo before Galenes tyme, iudge and thinke, that in this kinde of euill, there was mixed with choler ſome thinne fleume, which did bring forth thoſe little puſhes, whereupon it was called of ſome *puſtuloſus herpes*. But the other which is called *eſthiomenos*, is not ſo mixed with fleume, but ſeemeth to be a pure choler infected with no other humour: and therefore it chanceth with *eroſion*, which continually affecteth the skinne, whereupon this name is attributed vnto it. For *eſthiomenos* is all one with *erodens* or *exedens*. And truely this euill is of one & the ſame kinde with a puſtulous & exulcerate *Eryſipelas*, from the which notwithſtanding it ſomewhat differeth by reaſon of the thinneſſe of that bilious humour (whereof both of them doe take their beginning.) That is that which Galene teſtifieth in theſe wordes; It is (ſaith he) a verie thinne humour which raiſeth *herpes*, and ſo thinne truely that it paſſeth through not onely all the inward members, which are euery where of a fleſhy ſubſtaunce, but alſo through the verie skinne, euen vnto the outwarde little skin (which is called of the Greekes *Epidermida*) which onely becauſe it ſtayeth there, it both gnaweth and feedeth on: but if it ſhould alſo pierce through this, after the maner of a ſweat, it ſhould in no wiſe excite any vlcer, for that is a cõmon thing vnto vlcers which do ariſe of a byting humour, which vlcers they call *Spontanea*, becauſe the humour which cauſeth them,

Formicæ Auicenæ.

When herpes is cauſed.

Two kindes of Herpes.

1. ἕρπης ἐσθιόμενος. 1. *exedens vel depaſcens.*

2. κέγχρια, ſiue *herpes miliaris*

Lib 14. *Therap.*

Ex Paulo & Gal.

Lib. de tumoribus præter naturam.

Lib. 4. *Methio. medendi.*

The cholericke humour, which cauſeth herpes is very thinne.

thē, is ſtayed & tarieth ſtill in their going out or iſſue: hitherto Galen. When he nameth *herpes* ſimply & without any addition, he meaneth *herpes eſthiomenos*, as it is eaſie to be knowē by the ioyning together therof, by the ſignes & cure, & ſo in that place it borroweth his title of the generall word, when it is ſimply and abſolutely called *herpes*, as in that little booke *de tumoribus præter naturam*, where the ſame Galen writeth thus of that ſame kinde of *herpes* word for word; *Herpes* alſo feedeth and gnaweth vppon thoſe parts which are about it, but the exulceration is of the skinne onely. But almoſt all the barbarous ſort of Chyrurgians, euē they of late time, do comprehend both theſe kinde of *herpes*, viz. *miliaris & exedens*, vnder this title of *formicæ*, to whō both in this thing, & in many other alſo, Auicene firſt gaue the occaſiō of errour, who being deceiued by the likeneſſe of the name, becauſe the Greekes call *myrmeciæ*, that is, *formicæ*, a certaine kind of *verrucæ*, hath through a maruellous ouerſight, euē in the ſame Chapter, confounded thoſe *verrucæ* with *herpetes*. Guido notwithſtanding maketh a difference between *herpes & formica*, & confoundeth the name of *formicæ* ſomtimes with *verrucæ*, which the Greeks cal *myrmeciæ* and *achrochordonæ*, ſometime with *herpes exedens*, which (I meane *herpes comedēs*) is ſomtime named of the ſame Guido *herpeſtes*, ſomtime abſolutely *herpes*, who alſo thought this *herpes* to be nothing elſe but a puſtulous and vlcerated *Eryſipelas*, when this notwithſtāding as we haue alledged out of Galene, doth differ from the other, by reaſon of the thinneſſe of the humor. For that choler which exciteth *herpes* is thinner then that which cauſeth an vlcerate *Eryſipelas*. Furthermore *Eryſipelas*, which chanceth with vlceration, doth not only occupy the skin, but with it alſo, it annoyeth ſome part of the fleſh vnder it. But *herpes*, wherof we now intreat layeth hold on the skin onely, & exulcerateth it. Therfore although theſe euils are of one & the ſame kind, (as Galen thought) yet they are not altogether one, neither are they alike. Thoſe whelkes alſo, which the interpreter of Auicene and the vnlearned company of Phiſitions, do terme *morbili*, Hippo. *lib.* 3. *Epidemiarū* hath comprehended vnder *herpes*. But theſe *morbili* are cauſed of a more thin & fléder matter, then thoſe puſhes which are commonly called *Variole*. For theſe (as Auicene writeth) proceede of bloud, but the other are cauſed through the admixtion of choler and bloud. But if any man doth long or deſire to know what name the auncient Phiſitions did bequeath vnto theſe puſtulous vlcers, we haue declared that in Latin they are called of Plinie *Papulæ*, and ſometime *pituitæ eruptiones*, flegmaticke eruptions, but in Greeke of Hippocrates *Libro tertio Epidemiarum*, *Ecthymata*, of Galen *Epanthemata*. But the ſignes, and iudgementes, and cauſes of both kindes of *herpes*, may ſufficiently be knowen by thoſe things which went before. It remaineth therefore that we now declare the cure of them. In curing theſe euilles called *herpetes*, (as in other ſuch like voluntarie vlcers, which haue their originall of a byting and vehement humour) three intentions are to be obſerued and marked. The firſt is, that the confluxion of the humour vnto the affected part be ſtopped and letted. The ſecond is, to make euacuation, of that, whatſoeuer is flowen already into the aggricued member, and ſticketh faſt in the ſame. The third is, to heale the vlcer. We do finiſh our firſt intēt, by purging the whole body with ſome medicine that can bring forth the humor wherof the euill doth grow, &

Herpes exulcerateth only the skinne.

Auicene confoundeth myrmecia with herpetes.

Herpes eſthiomenos and Eryſipelas vlceratum are not all one.

Morbili ſunt ex herpetum genere.

Variole.

Papularum eruptiones.

Ecthymata.

Epanthemata.

Herpetum curatio.

Three things to be marked in the cure of herpes.

1. 2. 3.

Primus ſcopus

when the bodie is throughlie emptied, by repreſſing and driuing backe the humour that floweth. Therefore in *herpes exedens* we muſt vſe ſome medicine, which can prouoke choler downeward, ſeeing (as we haue ſayd before) a pure and ſincere biluous humour doth procreate this euill. It happeneth therefore that in reſpect of the emptying of the whole bodie, *comedentes herpetes* muſt be cured like vnto *Erypelata*. Therefore becauſe it is a thin and wateriſh humour which cauſeth this euill, Galene hath ſufficiently declared to mollifie and ſoften the bellie gentlie, or to prouoke vrine with thoſe things, which can moderately cauſe the ſame. But in the other kinde of *herpetes*, which by reaſon of the ſimilitude which it hath with *milium*, we haue ſayd to be called in Greeke *miliaris* and *cenchria*, there is required ſome remedie which is of a mixed faculty (that is) which can purge forth both choler and fleume. For ſome haue thought and that not without great reaſon (as Galene ſayth) that in this euill there is ſome fleume commixed with choler. Furthermore that humour which aboundeth in the bodie, and cauſeth the euill, beeing emptyed out (as it is required) you muſt applie thoſe medicines which can repreſſe and keepe backe the flowing of the humour, for then miniſtring of them ſhall be more without daunger, and more conuenient alſo, ſeeing that (as Galene ſayth) if one doe thruſt backe but a little portion of the vicious humour, which after conuenient purging, remaineth yet in the bodie, to the bowelles and great veynes, yet will not cauſe any ſenſible euill at all, that can be felt. But if the quantitie of the humour be great, it ſometime coucheth it ſelfe in ſome principall member, whereas through the force of the purging nature, the whole body is not euacuated either by purging downeward, or by the vrine, or by the skinne, which includeth the whole bodie. But repreſſiues and repulſiues be not onely thoſe which doe binde, but alſo thoſe which can refrigerate without any adſtriction. Of the which nature are theſe, as lettuce, knottegraſſe, fenne or ponde lintels, purcelayne, endiue, ſengreene, and other of that ſorte, which were verie conuenient alſo for *Eryſipelas*. But thoſe medicines, which beſides their cooling, are alſo apt by nature to moyſten, *herpetes* eſpecially *depaſcentes*, do in no wiſe require, but they doe onely admitte thoſe refrigeratiues, which can alſo greatly drie vp. For thoſe remedies which haue but a meane and weake force to coole and dry, as is nightſhade, are not ſufficient for them. Therefore by Galenes counſell you muſt in the beginning lay vppon them the young tender buddes of the vine, bramble leaues of *rubum caninum*, and plantaine. After applie alſo with theſe lintels, ſometime honie and barley meale. Alſo miniſter that cataplaſme *ſine ſempertiuo*, which is appointed for thoſe phlegmonous tumors which proceede of fluxe, for it doth repell that which floweth, and it drieth vp that which is conteined in the affected member, and it ſtrengthneth the partes about it. The beginning of the being paſt, this remedie auaileth greatly. Make a Cataplaſme of the rindes of pomegranates ſodden in wine, and of *rhu* or *rho* (that is) of the ſeedes of the ſhrub *coriarium* (which of the late Phiſitions is called *ſumach*) and of the meale of barley. But by this cataplaſme you ſhall very well accompliſh the ſecond intention or ſcope of curing *herpes*, becauſe it is of ſufficient power to digeſt that, which is flowen already into the affected place,

Herpes requireth the medicine cholagogon.

Herpes miliaris requireth a remedie which can purge both choler and fleume.

Reprimendi tempus.

Lib. 14. Therap.

Repreſſiues are not to be vſed if the humour be plentifull.

Reprimentium materia.

Thoſe remedies which do coole & moyſten are not meete for herpes exedens.

Repreſſiues meete for herpes exedens.

Cataplaſma. Sumach.

Theſe things do accompliſh our ſecõd intẽtion.

for

for it appeareth euidently, that thoſe remedies which haue a repreſſing faculte,ought to exceede in the generation of the vlcer, but when the vicious humour doth ceaſe to flow any more into the affected part,then thoſe medicines are requiſite which do digeſt.As cõcerning our third intẽt which declareth the cure of the vlcer,it behoueth you briefly to know theſe things following:viz. That euery vlcer whether it commeth of the owne accord, or be cauſed by ſome accidentall cauſe,doth deſire to be dried vp by ſome medicine(as Hippocrates ſaith)that is not ſharp,byting,or vehemently prouoking,except, when the vlcers be malicious and ful of corruption,for ſuch euils(ſaith Galen) require more ſharpe medicine, and thoſe which haue euen the power of fire, as is,*myſos* and *chalcitis*,and *arſenicum*,and lime,and *ſandaracha*,and other things of that kinde,which burne as hote as fire.Thoſe places therefore that are exulcerated in *herpes exedens*,muſt be tended with pilles,and trochiskes, written for the cure of *herpes* in thoſe bookes,which are called *pharmacentrici*:which remedies,when neceſſitie compelleth vs to vſe them,muſt be throughly waſhed in *paſſum* or in ſome other ſweete wine,or if ſweete wine be not ready at hand, in thinne and ſomwhat ſharp wine,which is not too old(that is which for age hath no ſharpe taſt)or elſe in *poſca aquoſa*(which they call *oxycratum*.)Paulus in *herpes*,which annoieth vnder the skinne,vſeth theſe remedies;the ſcourings of lead ſteeped in the iuyce of ſmooth rew , or a cerate of mirtles in ſtead of reſt.Another of old wooll,waſhed and burnt about a torch.℥.xij.ß.of wax.℥. xxv. of the ſcourings of lead. ℥. j. of goates tallow,trimmed and waſhed with water.℥.xxv.of mirtles.℥.v.But for thoſe *herpetes*,which do gnaw and byte vehemently called *depaſcentes*,he chargeth to vſe this remedie: ℞. of the ryndes of ſweete pomegranates.℥.vj.*argenti ſpume*. ℥.vj. of waſhed wooll cleauing to the torch or to ſome ſweete wood,& that burnt.℥.iij.of waxe.℥.xij. of ceruſe. ℥.viij.of frãkenſence,alume ſciſſible.ana.℥.j.let them be ſteeped in wine or in oyle of mirtles. But now the vlcers being of long cõtinuance,thoſe trochiskes aboueſaid,and other ſuch like medicines which are appointed to cure *herpetes*, muſt be waſhed neither in ſweete wine, nor in *poſca aquoſa*, but rather in wine that is ſomewhat ſharpe,eſpecially in that which is blacke, and if that be not to be had,you muſt vſe whitewine. But thoſe medicines which are more effectuall and moſt meete at that time,when vlcers be inueterate,are the pilles of *muſa*,*andron*, and *polyida*, whoſe deſcriptions are ſet downe in the ende of the cure of *carbunculus*,and thoſe trochiskes alſo,which of Auicene and the latter ſort of Phiſitions are called *calidicon* and *aldaron*. But thoſe *herpetes*,which doe onely exulcerate the outward skin, as they be which we haue called *miliares*, muſt in no wiſe be enioyned to any of thoſe medicines before rehearſed(if we will credit Galen)for they be verie vehement , and do greatly drie. But thoſe medicines whatſoeuer they be, which haue the nature and force of *glaucium* (that is) of *memytha* , ſhall ſuffice theſe vlcers and you muſt waſhe them with this, but eſpecially with water. But if theſe things ſhall nothing auaile , you muſt alſo commixe vineger therewith. Alſo if you annoynt it with iuyſe of nighſhade , or plantaine , you ſhall helpe it greatly. Hetherto haue we ſpoken of *herpes*. Now becauſe in that which we haue ſaid,we haue not as yet touched by the way any thing concerning the euils called *formice*, which both the

The cure of the vlcer in herpes is our third ſcope.

Euery vlcer muſt be dryed vp.

Lib.2.ad Glau.

How exulcerated places muſt be looked to.

Poſca.

Remedies take out of Paulus.

Aliud.

Ad herpetes depaſcentes.

For inueterate vlcers.

What is to be done in puſtulæ miliares if they turne into an vlcer.

Lib. ſecundo ad Glauconem.

Arabians, and the latter sort of Phisitions do erroniously, as we haue said, confound with *herpetes*: this present place doth require, that we set downe a few wordes both of them and of other tumours and increasings appearing in the skinne, which the Latins call *verrucæ*.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the euils called Formicæ, and of other differences of Verrucæ.

Verrucæ. Porra.

THose little tumours, or low swellings, which are seene to appear in the skinne like little hillockes, the Latines, haue fittely called *verrucæ*, for *verruca* signifieth properly the highest part of a mountaine or hill: but the common sort call them *porra*, leekes, because sometime they haue certaine threads lying betweene them not much vnlike vnto the rootes of leekes. The Greeks haue no name, wherein they may comprehend all those kindes of *verrucæ*, but they do call a certaine kind thereof by proper names, which be these, μύρμηκια, ἀκροχόρδονες, ἥλοι, θύμιον. *Verrucæ* therefore of them be called *myrmecia*, which are of a large foundation, and as it were sitting iust to the grounde, and when they be touched, they are felt painfull like vnto the byting or stinging of an ant, whereupon their name is giuen vnto them, for the Greekes do call μύρμηκα, *formica*. Wherfore the Latins applying the name therof to the Greek word, haue called *formicæ*, *verrucæ*, and for their forme & fashion, *sessiles verrucæ*. These euils saith Celsus *Lib.* 5. do grow either in the palmes of the handes or in the soles of the feete: but these take deeper roote, and are lower & harder then a wart, & do cause greater paine: and they send forth more store of bloud, & they scarce at any time exceede the bignes of a hop. But *acrochordon* is a *verruca* that is as it were hāging, & of a more narrow foundation (that is) a certaine round highnes or growing vp in the skin, which hath the foundatiō (that is) the neather part very straight to the skin. It is so called because it seemeth to hang as though it were tyed with a string. By this difference therfore, *acrochordones* are distinguished frō *myrmecia*, because they are very smal at the neather end next the skin, but at the other end are very large and broad: contrariwise *myrmecia*, (as hath bin said) are of a large foundation, but at the other end they are very small and slender. But these oftentimes are equall together with the skin, and *acrochordones* do alwayes appeare aboue the skin, (as Gal. 14 *lib. de morbis curādis* hath manifestly declared.) Beside these things, *acrochordones* (as Celsus saith) do grow vp thicke and many together, & do most trouble children, & oftentimes they fall againe sodainely, and sometime they cause but meane inflammation: there are some also, which are turned into corrupted matter, but they seldome passe the greatnesse of a beane. They be called of Auicene *claui*, but the Latins do terme *claui*, *verrucæ albæ*, because they be like to the round heades of nayles. These do chiefly happen in the fingers, and the soles of the feete, where they doe cause great paine, the Greekes call them ἥλους. but Auicene *almismar*. These be often caused of a bruise, and sometime otherwise. But *thymion* or *thymen*, in English a wart, is called of Celsus and of the Greekes *verruncula*, a little hillocke, appearing aboue the bodie, which at the neather part next the skinne

There be diuerse kindes of verrucæ.

Myrmecia.

Sessiles verrucæ.

Acrochordon pensilis verruca.

The difference betweene acrochordones and myrmecia.

Claui.

ἥλοι.

Almismar.

Thymion.

is

is verie ſmall (as *acrochordon* is) but aboue it is more large: it is alſo ſomewhat hard, and very ſharpe in the toppe, which doeth repreſent the colour of the floure time, wherupō the name is giuē vnto it, & alſo it is eaſily ſpread abroad. Oftentimes it giueth forth ſome bloud, and is almoſt as great as an Ægyptian beane, ſeldome bigger, but ſometime leſſer: ſometime there groweth vp one alone, ſometime many together, either in the anckles of the feete, or in the handes, or in the ſoles of the feete. But the worſt *thymia* of all are in the filthie partes of the bodie, where they doe commonly bleede. Auicene ſeemeth to haue named this kinde of *verruca*, *tuſium*, or (as another tranſlation hath) *tarſeum*. Of the kinde of *verrucæ* be thoſe euilles alſo, which Auicene called *cornua*, not much differing from the other ſortes, but that they be ſomewhat long and are turned crooked agayne like vnto hornes. The euils called *calli*, (called of the Greekes alſo Τύλλοι,) do not much differ from the aforenamed *claui*, but that they be of themſelues without griefe and nothing painefull, and of the colour of the skinne wherein they are reſident, neither doe they ingender of themſelues or of their owne accord, but of the hardneſſe of the skinne cauſed by labour.

Thymij magnitudo.

Thymia in obſcœnis peſſima.

Cornua.

Calli. Τύλλοι.

CHAP. XX.

The iudgements and cure of verrucæ.

AMONG all theſe euilles *Acrochordon* and *Thymion*, are oftentimes (as Celſus reporteth) ended and doe heale of themſelues, and the leſſer they be, the ſooner they be ended. But *Myrmecia* and *Claui* doe ſcarce at any tyme ceaſe without curing. If *acrochordon* be cut off, it leaueth no roote behinde it, and therefore it groweth not agayne. But where *thymion* and *clauus* be cutte off there riſeth vp vnderneath a little rounde roote, which deſcendeth downe ſomewhat deepe into the fleſhe, and there abyding, it doeth cauſe the aforeſayd euilles to growe agayne. *Myrmecia* doe holde faſt with verie broade roores, and therefore they cannot be cutte off without great vlceration. It is very profitable to cut off *clauus* and then ſprinckle it ouer with hoate water, for ſo it doth waxe ſoft and tender without any more adoe, and if it doeth bleede, it oftentimes dyeth and ceaſeth. It is alſo taken away, by cleanſing it round about, and by laying on it roſen mixed with the beaten powder of *lapis molaris*. But the other kindes (as the ſame Celſus affirmeth) muſt be cured with hoate medicines. Now the fitteſt remedie for the other euils is that, which is made of the dregges of wine, and that medicine is good for *myrmecia*, which is made of alume and yellow oaker. Paulus Æginera *Lib* 4. *cap.* 15. rehearſeth verie many remedies, which doe take away and vtterly abandon theſe *verrucæ*, eſpeciallie thoſe which be *ſeſſiles* and *penſiles*. Of the which kinde are *elaterium* (which is the iuyce of wilde cucumbers) rubbed on with ſalt, the barke of franckenſence with vineger, rathe rype figges, which are rype before their time, with vineger, meale and *nitrum*. Alſo the iuyce or liquor of the aforeſaid figge tree annointed doth greatly helpe, the iuyce of *tythymalus*, in Engliſhe ſpurge, the head of the fiſh *ſmaras* ſalted and burnt, the

Acrochordon. *Thymion.* *Lib.* 5. *Myrmecia.* *Claui.*

Myrmecia. *The cure of verrucæ out of Paulus.*

ruſt of ſome mettall with quicke brimſtone (that is) which is not throughly burnt in the fire, the leaues of *cymum* with ſhoemakers bleache, (which the Greekes call *chancalthum*,) the water of the greene twigges of the vine burnt in the fire) ſheepes doung with vineger, goates gall annoynted, the fruite of the great herbe *heliotropium* applyed by it ſelfe, or miniſtred with wine, rewe with *nitrum* and peper, *nitrum* with the vrine of a young boy not yet accuſtomed with venerous actes, oxes doung miniſtred in vineger. But theſe, which we haue mentioned as remedies for the extirpation of *myrmecia* and *acrochordones*, are greatly alſo effectuall for thoſe euilles called *claui* and *thymia*. They doe vſe alſo the head of a lyſard to take away *myrmecia*, *acrochordones*, and *claui*. There are ſome which doe boyle the heades of ſalted fiſhes in that water, which diſtilleth out of the greene braunches, while they be burning: which they doe declare to be a moſt excellent remedy for the aforeſayd euils. Other ſome to extinguiſh theſe diſeaſes doe make a linament of the ruſt of braſſe (which of the late Phyſitions is called *virride æris & flos æris*) of brimſtone, and of the diſtilled water of vine braunches. And this is the onely methode of curing, which they are wont to vſe in racing out of *verrucæ*, (that is) by gnawing and ſcalding medicines. But this one thing is moſt diligentlie to be obſerued in adminiſtring ſuch kinde of medicines, which Celſus doth admoniſh vs of in his fift booke: namelie, that thoſe partes, which are about the euilles, ought to be couered with leaues, leaſt they alſo be exulcerate, for which cauſe ſome doe annoynt the places about the diſeaſes, with oyntment of Bole armoniacke, with *terra ſigillata*, with roſe water and vineger. Furthermore we aboliſhe *achrochordones*, *myrmecia*, and *thymia*, not onely with theſe aforeſayd burning medicines: but alſo with the flame of the fire, or with ſome hoate inſtrument rightlie applyed to them. Oftentimes alſo we cutte them off. But ſometyme we doe take them awaie and vtterlie deſtroie them by a ligature cunninglie made and prepared for them, (as it happeneth in that true diſeaſe called *ficus*) or elſe by ſetting to the foreteeth, as ſome at Rome in Galenes tyme were wont to doe. But if you ſhall apply fire or ſome hote inſtrument to *verruca*, you muſt prouide, that a plate of Iron or ſome ſuch thing beeing bored through be made ready for the burnt ſore, the hole whereof muſt ſo fittely comprehend the ſame, that none of the skinne about it may be ſeene. A duſtion being now made, you muſt reſolue the cruſt with butter, or with ſome other annointing medicine. Afterward you muſt cure the ſore like vnto other vlcers. But how *myrmeciæ*, which do not appeare out of the skinne, but altogether, equall therewith, ought to be brought forth and cut off. Galene teacheth very well *Lib. 14. method. med.* where he maketh mention of one in his time at Rome, who deuiſed a new order to cure theſe *verrucæ*, firſt he brought out the euils by applying his lips vnto them or by ſucking them, and then (which did ſeeme maruellous) he plucked them from the roote, afterward ſetting to his foreteeth he vtterly deſtroyed thē. But *achrochordones*, appearing aboue the skin, he ſtraight way bitte off with his teeth, & ſo quickly diſpatched them. Galen alſo ſetteth down another double maner to cure the euils, ſaying: but a Chyrurgian being ſomwhat exerciſed in manuell practiſe, may eaſily cut off theſe *verrucæ*, both with

Aquæ ex ſarmentis diſtillans.

Stercus bubulum.

Lacertæ caput.

Other orders of curing.

How verrucæ are ſafely burned.

The cure of myrmecia being equal with the skinne.

A new cure of myrmecia out of Galene.

Another cure of myrmecia Lib. 14. metho. med.

Scalprum.

with that instrument made to the forme of a mirtle leafe, and with that also, which the Greekes call *scolopomacherion*: (this alwaies prouided) that the sore be kept and separated from the skinne or partes about it. We also bring forth *myrmecia*, by laying some strong and stiffe quill about the compasse or circle therof, the hollownesse of which quill must be equal with the thicknesse of *myrmecia*, that it may pinch it round about in euery place. Which being afterward turned about the sore and enforced downward, it will quickly bring forth the whole *myrmecia* together with the verie roote, but you must marke, that the verie end of the quill which shall cut it in a circle, ought to be not onely thin and slender, but also sharpe and strong. The quill therefore of an old cocke, or rather of an Eagle is verie fit for this purpose. But you must cut it off, onely towardes the roote, seeing the hollownesse of the other part of the quill may easily comprehend *myrmecia*. And truely by this abscession if it be done cunningly, you shall learne great Arte. Hitherto speaketh *Galen*. But the vlcer which remaineth, (*verruca* being thus taken away) must be filled vp & brought vnto a scarre, as other vlcers be.

Scalprum.
Scholopomacherion.
Another cure inuented by a quill.
Prima scitè radicem versus abscindenda.

CHAP. XX.

Of Oedema and other cold flegmaticke and flatuous tumours.

HAVING sufficiently intreated of those tumours which are engendred through hote humours: we are now againe determined to handle those tumors which haue their originall of a cold matter, taking our exordium from that euill which of the Græcians is called *œdema*. For as *erysipelas* is caused of a cholericke fluxe; so *œdema* proceedeth of a flegmaticke humor: *œdema* therfore (*Galen* defining the same) is a certaine loose and vnpainfull tumor: or it is a certaine thinne swelling without paine, rising of a flegmaticke humour that floweth into some member of the bodie, so that the same *Galen in lib.* 14. *The.* thought of *œdema*, that it was a disease and no symptomate. For truly we know (sayeth he) that *œdemata* doth come otherwise then of the flowing of a flegmaticke humour, (that is to witte) of a flegmaticke humour, or vaporous spirite gathered into some member, and sometime engendred in the same, as in the legges and feete which are troubled with a corrupted water running vnder the skinne, and with the euilles called *phlhoe*, and *cachexia*, which are euill habites and deformities of the bodie. For in those dangerous dispositions, *œdema* is an accidentall symptomate of that effect which oppresseth the man (that is) an accident necessarily following, which requireth no seuerall or proper cure, (as afterward it shall appeare.) *Oedema* (as *phlegmone* and *erysipelas* also) is discerned of the Chyrurgians by two differences (that is) by the true, or vntrue or vnlawfull *œdema*. A true *œdema* commeth of naturall choler, which truly is nothing else, but a raw bloud not throughly digested, which is found in a lumpe of bloud, verie fit to nourish flegmaticke members. An vntrue and vnlawfull *œdema* proceedeth of vnnaturall fleume. That we may not deale herein any thing obscurely, naturall choler is a cold and a moist humour, in substance crude or raw, in colour enclining to a certen whitenesse, but in tast,

Oedema quid.
Oedema est symptoma.
Oedema duplex verum.
Illegitimum.
What fleume is

and (if I may speake it) in smell it is sweete and pleasant: vnnaturall fleume is that which doeth degenerate and differ from that fleume before described, and yet it keepeth it selfe within the boundes of his circuit and libertie, which if it shall once passe, it is then no more to be called *phlegma* or fleume, but some other humor. But this fleume chanceth to degenerate from his owne proper nature two manner of waies One way is (as they say) in it selfe, when in his own naturall and proper substance it is chaunged without any admixtion with any other humour, which truly happeneth verie often, for it is turned either into a wateriſh substance, or into a flatuous substance, or into a verie thin matter, & then it is called *phlegma aquosum, flatuosum* or *tenue*: or it is turned into a thick and viscous substance, which maketh the fleume verie grosse and clammie, and through a greater (or as we may say) through a further induration, it is caused to looke like a plaister, or like glasse, or it doth putrifie and is altered, and then it is made both salt, nitrous, and corrosiue. The other way vnnaturall fleume is caused through admixtion, that is, whenas some other humour doth happen to come vnto it extraordinarily: as for example, either bloud, or choler, or melancholie. If bloud be commixed with fleume it is made sweet: if choler be mingled therewith, it is caused to be salt: if melancholie, it is made sowre and sharpe. There are therefore eight kinds of vnnaturall fleume after the opinion of Auicen. Haly Abbas appointeth foure onely. But Galen (sayth Guido) seemeth to assigne vnto it two onely kindes, that is, salt and sowre, although in his second booke of the differences of feuers: and in his second booke *De locis affectis*, and in many other places also he maketh mention of the fleume called *vitreum*, which oftentimes doth ioyne himselfe with sowre fleume, by reason of that affinitie and acquaintance that it hath with it. By these things therefore it is gathered, that of fleume there are ingendred eight *species* or differences of tumours besides nature. For, first of fleume that is naturall commeth, a true and a lawfull *œdema*. Secondly of vnnaturall fleume by reason of admixtion there proceed three other differences of tumors, because that three other humours may be commixed therewith, and these be they: *œdema phlegmonôdes, œdema erysipelatôdes*, and *œdema scirrhôdes*. Thirdly of vnnaturall fleume, through the alteration of his proper substance, there arise foure other differences of tumours. For first of windie and vaporous fleume doth come that tumour, which of the Latines is properly called *inflatio*, but commonly among the Physitions it is termed *apostema ventosum*, a windie apostеme. Secondly, of wateriſh fleume, there proceedeth a wateriſh Apostеme. Thirdly of raw, thicke, and grosse fleume there are engendred these tumours which some do call *leues nodi*, & there are also ingendred flegmaticke absc essions, which they do commonly call *exituræ phlegmaticæ*. But these are called of the interpreter of *Auicen dubelet frigida*, of which sort are these, *steatomata, atheromata*, and *melicerides, ganglia* also which be called of Auicen, *glandulæ*, & other of that kinde which shalbe spoken of in that which followeth. Nowe of hard or rather of indurated, and (as I may say) of caked fleume, there doe arise all those hard knots, which are most found in the ioynts, and those euils also called *strumæ*, which are commonly called *scrofulæ*. Fourthly of corrupted and putrified fleume, there do come *fistulæ* and other vlcers which they call *scrofulosæ*.

what & after what sort fleume doth degenerate from his owne nature.

Galen appointeth two kinds of fleume.

8. Differences of tumours besides nature comming of fleume.

The

The causes of *œdema*, as also of other tumours besides nature are threefold. First, primitiue causes are these: a fall from some high place, a stripe, a naughtie diet. Secondly, antecedent causes, as the abundance of a flegmaticke humour running downe into some member of the bodie. Thirdly, *Coniuncta causa*, is the verie fleume which is alreadie stuffed and heaped in the member that is beset with a tumour. The signes of *œdema* are these, a loose and soft tumour, which yeeldeth to the weight of the finger, and is hollow after the manner of a caue or denne, it doth not rise vp againe at the remouing of the finger, but it doth retaine the verie footstep or marke of that which presseth it. There is felt verie small paine, or almost none at all. Verie litle heate, a verie white colour, or (as some will haue it) a meane betweene whitenesse and paleness, and other such like signes, which do testifie the dominion & power of fleume. *Oedema* (as other tumours also) hath foure times, the beginning, the augmenting, the state, and the declination of the tumour. This kinde of tumour is most cured by resolution, or exhalation, but seldome by suppuration, verie often by turning and changing them into knots or kernels called *Nodi*, or into other increasing (as they call them) which are termed of the Græcians *Apostemata*, but of the Latines *Abscessus*. But the markes and tokens of the ending and finishing of these kindes of tumours are handled before in our generall discourse of tumours. These œdematous tumors are rather excited in the winter time, then at other seasons, for then verie much fleume is gathered together in mens bodies. These tumours also do greatly and verie often trouble olde men, and them which be giuen to gluttonie.

Three causes of œdema. 1 2 3

Signa œdematis.

Iudicia.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the cure of Oedema caused of a flegmaticke humor flowing into some member.

Curandi œdematis scopus duplex cum adhuc gignitur.

BECAVSE *œdemata*, after the manner of other tumors, are raised through the fluxe of humors into some member, the scope and order of their cure shall also be two folde. 1. The one is to dissolue the substance of these humours which nowe do occupie the member. 2. The other is to withstand and restraine the flux. And as the one scope doth excell the other, so the remedies of their cure must be commixed together, the one with the other, either somewhat plentifully or somewhat sparingly. When therefore the order of restrayning shall ouercome that which counselleth vs to vse euacuating and digesting remedies, the force of restrictiues must be augmented. But when there is more need of euacuation then of restriction, the nature and vertue of digesting or discussiue and drying medicines, must of necessitie excell in the mixture. Moreouer both the plentifull fluxe and the small deale of matter in the affected part doth tell vs, that in the mixture the vertue of restrictiue medicins must be more effectual, & of greater force. Contrariwise you must vse a greater measure of drying & digesting remedies, when matter aboundeth in the member very plentifully, & the fluxe very litle. But in an old and inueterat *œdema*, & that which is already ingendred, you shall not vse any lõger this order of curing which hath a mingled power, but you shall apply such things as can

The order of curing an olde œdema.

Oedematis vt symptoma est curatio.

dispersse and deuide the matter. Which thing is also diligently to be obserued in all other continuall vlcers. But *œdema*, which is an euill simptomat following other dangerous affectes, as leanneſſe of the body, the dropſie and an euill habite of the body, which the Grecians call *cachexia*, doth desire no proper, peculiar or seuerall cure (as we haue before mentioned) for it cannot be cured but by expelling that euill affect whereof it first groweth. Yet somewhat is to be remitted out of it, if it doth debilitate the strength or increase the chief affect, or else hinder the cure. It shall therefore be sufficient (if it shall neede any cure) to rub diligently the swelling place, sometime with *oxyrhodinum*, somtime with oyle mingled with salt, or else with *Oxyrhodinum* with salt. For this kinde of friction doth slake the tumour, and doth mitigate paine, if it be prouoked thorow too much distention (as sometime it chanceth) *oxyrhodinum* doth stay the fluxe, oyle with salt hath power to digest and emptie out that which is compact in the member. But *oxyrhodinum* with salt, doeth partly digest and drie vp, and partly restraine and stop the affluction of humours. But our generall method being before declared, let vs turne our pen to declare the proper and particular order of curing a lawful *œdema*, which hath his beginning of the flowing of thin fleume: which method, according to the opinion of the Chyrurgians of our time, doth consist of foure things, (as hath bene said of *Phlegmone* and *Erysipelas*) that is to say, 1. In a iust order of diet. 2. In preparing of the phlegmaticke humour, which they call *æquatio*, an equal diuision, & in purging the same. 3. In repressing, dissoluing and drying vp the humour that is flowed already and now doeth occupie the member. 4. And last of all in correcting and remouing the symptomates or accidents which doe follow *œdema*. These therefore are the foure particular intentions by the which we dispatch those two generall orders before mentioned. The first intention therefore is perfected or finished by the due and iust vsage of sixe vnnaturall things, which shall be well and fitly applyed to the sicke bodie if they shall all decline vnto heate and drineſſe with a certaine attenuation or diminishing. Therefore chuse and prepare a thinne and drie ayre. Let him take for his drinke wine that is fined and cleane from dregges, cleare, white, or somewhat red, which they call clarret wine, which in his kind must be excellent good, and alayed a litle with water. Let his bread be verie well baked, and well handled. Let him eate the flesh of sheepe, or the flesh of the birdes of mountaines and of the plaines, and those rather rosted, then sodden. Let him vse sparingly fat brothes, potherbs, and other fat meates. Let him abstain from things that be vnleauened, raw, and verie moist. Let him not eate of any kind of pulse or cheese, nor of vntimely and vnripe fruites, nor of fishes (except they be those that liue in grauelly places, and those also either rosted, or boiled in wine.) Rosted meates generally are better than sodden, and better then those things also which the industrie of the baker can prouide. Let him eate litle, and drinke lesse. In all his diet let him eschue lecherie and gluttonie. If the belly be bound, loose it with figges, or with *Carthamus*. Take therefore siue or sixe drie figges, and fil them with the pith of the seed of *Carthamus*, and eate them either in the morning or before dinner. Let the bodie be exercised moderately, if so be the affected member can permit the same without hurt. Let his sleep be litle & short. Let him altogether auoid bathing,

Foure particular orders to be kept in curing a lawfull œdema.

Prima intentio.

Aer.

Potus.

Cibus.

Repletio.

Inanitio.

Motus.

Somnus.

Balneum.

Secunda intentio.

and

and all other moyſtening things. The ſecond intention is accompliſhed by preparatiues, or by remedies equallie deuiding (which they commonlly call digeſtiues) and by medicines which can euacuate that flegmaticke matter, wherewith the bodie of the ſicke doeth abound. Therefore you muſt giue him ſome kinde of *Oximell*, which can cut, and deuide, and purge forth the fleume that lurketh in the bodie. Afterwarde the matter going before the expulſion being thus prepared, at the appointement of ſome cunning Phiſition, muſt be emptied out with ſome medicine, that can purge fleume called *phlegmagogon*. But if (ſayth Guido out of Cauliacus) aboundaunce be preſent in the bodie, you may ſafelie open a veyne, but yet not without the aduiſe of ſome expert Phiſition. But in a plethoricke and full bodie there are ſcarce at anie time ſeene any *ædemata*, eſpecially, theſe which be lawfull, for fleume doth not abounde in it more plentifully then other humours doe. Therefore it being ſimple and alone, not commixed with other humours, it can ſeldome flowe into anie part of a plentifull bodie, wherefore letting of bloud eſpeciallie in a lawfull *ædema* doeth ſeeme to be nothing profitable. The third intention is finiſhed in the beginning by applying repercuſſiues, & not by thoſe remedies, which by binding vehementlie with their naturall coldneſſe doe repell and driue backe, but by thoſe which haue power to drie greatlie, and digeſt well, which they call prouokers of drineſſe and reſolution. But in the increaſe, by vſing diſcuſſiue remedies ſomewhat more forcible. But in the ſtate thereof, eſpeciallie about the ende, the fluxe being alreadie ſtayed, by pure medecines, and by thoſe which doe verie ſtrongly digeſt and reſolue. But in the declination by conſuming and drying helpes if the cure be to be diſpatched by reſolution. But if it doth degenerate and turne into Abſceſſions, which they call *Exitura*, it ſhalbe cured by ripening medicines and by other helpes, which are ſet downe for the cure of Abſceſſions. Moreouer repreſſing remedies endued with a drying digeſting nature, which do profite in the beginning of *ædema* comming of the influxion of a fleugmaticke humour, are comprehended vnder three ſpeciall rules. The firſt is out of *Galene Libr. 14. Therapeut. & ſecundo ad Glauconem*, where he ſayth, that if *Oedema* doeth conſiſt of a fleugmaticke humour flowing into ſome member, a ſponge wet in water wherein is a little vineger, ſhall ſometime aboundantly ſuffice. But theſe muſt be ſo well tempered and commixed togethet, that they may either be drunke, or that they may not haue much vineger vpon it. But you muſt bind the ſponge to the place, beginning at the neather part, & ending aboue. Let the ſponge be very new. And if there be not a newe to be gotten, you ſhall cleanſe and ſcoure the old verie diligently by waſhing it in *nitrum* and *aphronitrum*, and in lye. *Auicene* commaundeth that inſteade of a ſponge, you ſometime applie a double linnen cloth, or ſome like thing. The ſecond rule is mentioned of *Auicene* himſelfe. R. *Baurach* of the decoction of water (that is) of ſalt peter, or of the ſome of ſalt peter, of aſhes, of vineger, of ech as much as ſhall ſuffice. The third rule is deſcribed of *Razis* after this maner. R. *Aloes*, mirrhe, *ſicij*, *acatia*, *ſief*, *memitha*, (that is) of *Glaucium*, of *Cyperus*, of *crocus orientalis*, of Bole armoniacke, of ech a little quantitie: powder them, & cõmixe thẽ with the iuyce of coleworts called *Braſſice*, and with vineger, & make an emplaiſter. Furthermore thoſe remedies

Secunda intentio.

Tertia intentio.

Remedies to be vſed in the beginning of ædema.

1.

Poſca aquoſa.

2.

3.

Emplaſtrum Razis.

Remedies to be vsed in the time of increasing.

which were of late rehearsed, doe also helpe much the increasing of this œdematous tumour, if you doe put vnto them a good quantitie of vineger, and a little Alume, especially in strong bodies, which haue a hard skinne, and when as *aquositas posca* shall not auayle. Therefore if *œdema* doeth not cease or rest with these helpes mentioned a little before, when you binde it to againe, you shall commixe a little more vineger, that the *posca* may be the stronger: or you shall lay on a little alume, and applie a new sponge. For this doth helpe as an excellent medicine, and doth long continue very effectuall, and with his substaunce it doth dry vp the affected member. If there be no plentie of new sponges, it is better (sayth *Galene*) to vse that which the common sorte call *elychnion*. But aboue all things let it be soft, which kinde is vsed at *Tarsi*, whereof if there be any plentie, you may boldly vse: for you shall try it to be more profitable, then the vsing of sponges But let it be wetted in *Posca*, & a little alume therewith. Then (as it is set downe already) let it be bound to, and let the binding begin at the neather partes, and end aloft. Let the binding be meane and small, as in the setting of a bone. But truly the first casting about of the swathing band, which must begin beneath, ought to be tied somwhat strait, but all the rest, must be slacked by little & little, but yet not so, that any part of the binding be loose. Now the remedies which are to be ministred after the vigour of the state, when the fluxe is stayd, & in an vniuersall declination (if *œdema* doeth require resolution) are wont also to be described & contained vnder a three fold rule. 1. The first is of *Auicene*, which is a sponge dipped in lye, of the ashes of the figge tree, of the vine, & of the holme, which is a kinde of oke, apply these to the member, for truly in them there is great power and vertue both to dry & to cleanse. 2. The second is of *Brunus* which *Theodoricus* also vsed. ℞. of Alume, brimstone, mirrhe and salt, of each a like quantitie. Commixe all these with oyle of roses, and with vineger, and make a linement, which yet doth dry more strongly then the former remedie. 3. The third is of *Auicene* likewise, whose description is this as followeth. ℞. of cowes dung. ℔. ß. of *olybanum*, of *styrax*, of *Vsnea* (that is) of the mosse of trees, which is called of the Grecians *bryon*, of *calamus aromaticus*, of spikenard, of wormwood. ana. ℥. ß. apply all these with vineger, and with the decoction of colewortes, and make an emplaister. And this truly is the way to cure *œdema*, which is finished by resolution. But if they do not yeeld vnto digestion, but do come vnto suppuration, you may applie and that verie profitablie *vnguentum è succis* called *diachylon*, and that oyntment especiallie which *Rogerius* was wont to make. To the same purpose also this emplaister following is very effectuall. ℞ mallowes, branke vrsine, or *hirtina*, which is called *Achantus* and *achanta*, roote of *Althæa*, roote of lillie, rosted onyons, snailes, leauen, linesseede, sodden and kneaded, & mingled with swines greace, or with butter, bring them into the forme of an emplaister, or rather of a cataplasma. Another for the same purpose verie effectuall. ℞. of the iuyce of elder, of walwort, of sorrell) which our late writers do call *lapatium acutum*) of *leuisticum* or *ligusticum*, & of fennel: of each of them, as much as you thinke good, yet of an equall weight, boyle them with *dialthæa*, with hony, oyle, & butter, & of the make a cataplasme. The Apostеme being ripe, do not tary till it open of the own accord, for that happeneth seldom, or peraduenture neuer, but let a-

Lib. 14. Ther. & 2. ad Glau.

Remedies for the state and declination.

1.

Spongia aqua lixiua imbuta.

2.

Linimentum.

3.

Emplastrum Auicenne.

Vsnea quid.

Concoquentia seu maturatia.

This is giuen to Theodoricus.

pertion

pertion be made with some hotte iron, or some burning medicine, wherewith the matter may be purged out, according to the manner and forme before expressed. Then let the filthinesse be clensed out and wiped away with that ointment commonly called *vnguentum Apostolorũ*, or with a mundificatiue of *apium*, and with the iuyce of wormwood, or with this ointment following which doth draw & cleanse the thicke and grosse matter. ℞. of *Galbanum*, of *Ammoniacum*, of rosen, *terebinthina*, pitch, of bullocks tallow, of old oile, ana. a like quãtitie: dissolue the gummes in vineger, and let them melt or boile vpon the fire with the rest, & make an ointment. Afterward let it be cured like vnto other filthie vlcers. But we dispatch our fourth intention, according to the nature and qualitie of the accidents that chaunce very sodenly, as if paine doth happen, it must most especially be mitigated, by applying moist oile of wooll, after the doctrine of *Auicene*) or by boiled wine, or by a cerate made of the oyle of chammomill, of the oile of wormewood, of the oyle of spike and of wax. But if hardnesse be present it must be dissolued & mollified with the marrow of the bones of bullockes, or with harts marrow, or with some such like thing, as hereafter shalbe sayd. But *Galene* in an inueterate *œdema* did annoynt the sore with oyle, and then ministred a sponge dipped in lye, and binding it somwwhat iust or straite did perfectly cure the euill.

Aperitio.

A mundificatiue oyntment, which is attributed to Diuus

Quarta intentio.

Li. 2. ad Glau. Oedemate diuturno.

Now it remaineth that we set down the summe of the cure of *œdema*. 1. First therfore vnto an *œdema*, which is a symptomate happening & comming sodenly with other diseases (as the dropsie, leanesse of the body, and that euill called *cachexia*) apply such medicines as cã discusse & dry vp without grief. 2. Therfore rub the swolne place diligẽtly with *oximell*, or with *oxyrhodinũ*, or with oyle & salt, or else with *oxyrhodinum* & salt: for by this frictiõ you shall both mitigate the paine (if any be caused through distention) & remit the tumour also. But to an *œdema* which commeth of the influxion of thin fleume, if flux doth not yet cease, apply those medicines, which partly digest, & partly constraine and restraine. 4. Therfore bind a new sponge, or some other dipped in lye, or wetted first in alayed, *Põsca*, especially in soft and tender bodies, & (if the tumour doth possesse the members of the body) bind about them softly some swadling band from the neather part to the vpper, as we vse to do in setting of bones. 5. But if by these remedies, the tumour doth not slake or yeeld, put a litle alume with *posca*. vidz. with *oxycratũ*. 6. But if the affect shalbe of any continuance you must not vse any more these remedies which haue a mingled faculty (that is to say digesting and restraining) but rather digestiues. 7. Therfore, the member being first annointed with oyle, you must minister a sponge (as we said) dipped in lye, and bind it with swathing bandes somewhat iust and straite.

Capita curationis œdematis.

1. *Oedema mor-*
bus.

2.

3.

4.

5.

6. *Oedema inueteratum.*

7.

CHAP. XXII.

Of Tumors aboue nature, vvhich the Latins call inflations but they are commonly called vvindie Apostemes, apostemata ventosa.

IT is now verie requisite for vs to dispute of the Tumours called *Inflationes*, whose cure is diuerse from the cure of *œdemata*. For they (as *Galene* saith *Lib. 14. Therap.*) haue their originall of a phlegmaticke humour, and therefore doe

The difference betweene inflatio & œdema.

yeeld vnto touching and handling, & our fingers being layed thereon do descend somewhat deepely into them. But *Inflationes* do come of a flatuous spirite gathered together, breeding sometime vnder the skinne, sometime vnder the thinne filmes, which are compassed about with the bones, or they do shut in & include the muscles, or else some part of the bowels. Furthermore sometime there is also not a little of this humor gathered together in the belly & in the inward parts, & also in the middle space of them, & of the *Peritonæum*, as in that kinde of water (saith *Paulus*) vnder the skinne (which euill we call a Timpany.) These also differ frō *œdemata*, because they being touched with the fingers do not retaine any marke, and they do giue a sound like a tabour, and also because sometime, they are contained in a sensible hollownesse, and that oftentimes very great. The cause of these kinds of inflations, is the weakenesse of the naturall heat, which is placed in a flegmatike matter to prouoke windines. For truly heat may take vp such a vapour of a moyst substāce, but it cannot deuide nor discusse it. For euen as (saith *Galen*) we see in outward things, that a very cold constitution (especially when the North wind bloweth) doeth make the aire very calme, and a very hote constitution in sommer maketh the ayre pure & cleare, but the middle constitutions do cause cloudes, so it happeneth in liuing creatures. For heat, neither by extreme weakneſſe, nor yet by vehement strength can beget wind, but when it getteth a meane betweene these affections. For this vapour is holden in some place (as *Auicene* saith) either because of the thickenesse of the member, or for the grossenesse of the vaporous spirite. Which thing also *Paulus* after the opinion of *Galen* witnesseth in these words: saying, that the thickneſſe of the members, and the grosseneſſe of the spirit or vapour doth cause, that the same vapour is not dispersed abroad.

Lib. 4.

Inflationum causa.

Lib. 6. de morbis & symptomat.

Lib. 4.

The signes of inflation are these, a tumour not yeelding to any touching or handling, it appeareth very cleare and bright, & when it is beaten on, it giueth a sound like vnto a bottle, or Tympanie. Moreouer there is felt oftentimes windineſſe throughout the whole body, sometime running this way, somtime that way, which causeth extensiue paine. But concerning the iudgements and opinions hereof, a flatuous or vaporous spirit, which is not dissolued & dispersed, doth procure many discommodities. But a breathing and windy vapour, coursing vp and down within the body with paine and great anguish, is greatly to be feared, because it doth seeme to be drawē frō some venemous matter.

Inflationum notæ.

Inflationum prognostica.

Inflationum curatio.

But now seeing these three things, vidz. the moist matter, the imbecillity of the naturall heate, and the thickneſſe of the pores of the body, do concurre together to the generation of *inflatio* (as hath already bene declared) the order therefore of the cure thereof shall be this, first to strengthen the substance of the heat, to extenuate the vapour & flatuous matter, & to preuent or opē the thickneſſe of the pores of the body (wherin this vaporous spirit gathered now together, is contained.) Now we make perfect and we finiſhe the two latter things, that is, the rarifying of the thicke body, & the extenuation of the grosse vapour, by one and the same kinde of medicines, which is by vsing those remedies which do profite to the extenuation of the members & by applying those helpes, which cā heat either more or lesse according to the inflatiō of the afflicted members according to the thickeneſſe or thinneſſe thereof, & according

also

also to the grossnesse or thinnesse of the vapours. For according to the difference of these things, the power or facultie of those medicines which are ministred, ought to be intended and remitted. The thin parts therefore, and the vapour or spirit which is not verie thicke, are but meanly to be dealt withall: but the grosse members, and that vapour which containeth much thicke matter, do require medicines which may greatly extenuate and heate them. But if the substance of naturall heate shall perish or diminish, it must be repaired againe, regarding the greatnesse of the losse thereof. But if it shalbe altered, you must bring it vnto a certaine mediocritie. But if griefe there shall vexe or molest the sicke, you must hasten vnto those helpes which can mitigate paine. Verie well therfore haue the Chyrurgians of our age declared, that the cure of Inflations (which they call *Apostemata ventosa*) is dispatched by three intentions. The first consisteth of a iust and due obseruation of diet. The second of a good concoction or digestion, and the third dependeth of the discussing and dispersing of the windie spirite, which is assembled in the member. Therefore let the institution of diet be after this manner. First of all you must abstaine from all grosse, viscous, rawe, flegmaticke and windie meates: as are sweete meates, all kind of pulse, rawe fruit, rape roots, Chest-nuts, and other things of that sort which do ingender a flatuous vapour. You must vse hote and drie things, and those remedies also which can attenuate and dissolue windinesse, as is, bread made of barley with a litle salt and commin seed. Let the patient his drinke be small ale or beere. Let him vse the decoction of Cicers mixed with onyons: let him take *apium hortense* (which is commonly called *petroselinum* parcely) calamint, rewe, commin. Let the flesh which he eateth on, be rather rosted than sodden, and especially the flesh of birdes (as hath bene sayed in the former Chapter.) But now that you may dispatch the second intention, you must strengthen & corroborate the vertue concoctiue with some sweet and odoriferous sauours, and by confections, and by electuaries appointed for this purpose, as be these, *diacuminum*, *diacalaminthæ*, *Aromaticum rosatum*, and this decoction following, which they call *Drageta*. ℞. of annise, of fennell, *Carnus*, *daucus*, commin, of laurell berries beaten together .ana. ℥. j. of liquorice, galingale, white ginger .ana. ℥ ß. of cloues, cubebs, of long pepper, seede of rew, ana. ʒ. ij. of annise seede couered ouer with sugar .℥ iij. of sugar ℔. ß. make a powder. But outwardly let the stomacke be annointed with oyle of spike, of *Costum*, and oile of rew: or make an Epitheme of those things which can discusse winde, and which are appointed to helpe concoction, and let it be applyed to the stomacke. But these things do rather appertaine vnto Phisicke than vnto Chyrurgerie. The third intention is accomplished by applying some medicine which hath a double vertue, (that is) which can both concoct, digest, and moderately binde, neither will increase paine. But to the perfecting of these things, there are appointed three manner of remedies in *libro* 14. *Therapeut.* The first is mentioned of *Galen* in these words. In the arteries (saith he) and in the muscles which are vnder the skin, or vnder the filmes which do couer the bones, when *Inflatio* is risen, if it be without griefe, some liquour applyed to the thinnest members shall profite greatly, of the which nature is lye ministred with a newe spunge. But if griefe doth also trouble

Three intentions of curing inflations.

Prima intentio.

Cibus.

Potus.

Secunda intentio.

Drageta helpeth digestion.

Tertia intentio

Inflation commeth of a bruse in the arteries, muscles, and filmes which cover the bones.

him, you must annoint the member with some oyle which hath power to mitigate and remit the same. These diseases happen through a stripe or bruse, when as either the muscle, or the filme which compasseth the bone, is bruised or hurt, vpon which filme that goeth about the bone, the aforesayed spunge must be layed. 2. The second rule is described also in the same place after this sort: but vnto the muscles (for they sometime are painefull) you must applie some medicine which can mitigate paine in greater measure, so that to them you must applie not onely lie alone, but you must put into it both *Sapa*, and also a litle oyle. But it shall be more profitable in the beginning not to applie lie, but to vse *Sapa* with wine, and a litle vineger, and to put to them a litle oyle, which things when they are mingled together, it is good to heate them, and lay on vnwashed wooll (which they call *succida*) dipped in them. But if there be no plentie of such wool, then the oile of wool is to be vsed with the former mixture: but if oyle of wooll be at hand neither, you shall commixe verie well some Cerate, which is made of the oyle of wooll. For the bruised muscles must needs be lenified with some medicine which hath a double strength (that is) which can both concoct, digest, and moderately binde. But if the medicine containeth no astriction, it encreaseth sometime *phlegmone*, and especially in those bodies which are plethoricke and full of humours. Being mindfull therfore of these three indications alreadie declared (that is, of concoction, digestion, and moderate astriction) in the muscles which are inflated by means of some bruse or stripe, when great paine doth afflict, you shall the rather vse a more mitigating remedie, and you shall greatly resist paine, by vsing more oyle and wine, whose force I knowe to be mightie, when as paine together with the inflation doeth speedily hasten to an end. And truly the time is the shorter, if you minister those things which haue a strong and mightie effect, as are these, lie and vineger, and next after them wine hath a mightie operation. As often therfore as you mind not to asswage paine, you shall cast into the mixture, a greater quantitie of lie and vineger. Againe when you intend to repell and driue backe, you must put in more of wine then of other things, which wine shalbe the more effectuall for this purpose if it be black and sharpe. But if you please to digest, you shall minister the greater quantitie of lie. But if you shall mingle vineger with them, the mixture shall be profitable both wayes, because that vineger hath a double and mingled facultie. But when the muscle is not pained, you may lawfully for want of lie vse *Aphronitrum*, but it must not be grauelly, but rather fomie. The third rule is an emplaister made of the filthinesse which is wiped from the bodies of men that wrastle, and of vnslaked lime, boyled together in water and wine. These are the wordes of *Galen lib. 14. Therap.* But those inflations (saith he) which through negligence are inueterate and of some antiquitie, you shall apply to them those helpes which are made of lie (as hath bene saied before:) and secondly you shall minister some emplaister. But I will declare also the example or order how to prepare these things. First the filthinesse that commeth of mens bodies must be heat and throughly strained that it may be cleane and pure: then againe take the lime, which must be brayed as small as meale, and sprinckle it in the vessell where the filthinesse is, and temper it together to the thickenesse of clay.

Sapa.

Lana succida.

Oesipus. Ceratum ex oesipo.

Pro lixiuio Aphronitrum. Formula tertia

How an old inflation must be handled.

That

That medicine also is verie good for these inflations which is made of *Sycomorus*, & other remedies of that sort do greatly helpe also. But if this flatuous spirit, which causeth the inflation shall be smokie, wicked, corrupt, & excited of a venemous matter, with intollerable paine, and vehement heate, running vp and downe in the members of the bodie, no more safe or better counsell can be giuen then that (when it is resident in some particular member) that member be straightway bound beneath and aloft, and in the middest the tumor be opened with a rasor, or with some hote instrument, so that the venemous vapour may easily come forth. Afterward the gaping wound must be filled with aloës, and with bole armoniacke dissolued in oyle of roses and vineger. But within three or foure dayes after, you must fill vp the wound with flesh, and bring it to a scarre. But in such venemous inflations, a verie thin diet must be obserued, and the body must be emptyed with some purging medicine. And if you minister *Theriaca* to the sick, it will helpe him greatly. Now there remaineth the summe of the cure of a flatuous tumour, which we mind to declare in these wordes following. First, confirme and strengthen the weake substance of heat that is in the affected member, restore the same againe, and when it is altered bring it into some mediocritie. Secondly, extenuate the vaporous and windie humor which raiseth the tumour. Thirdly, open the thicke pores of the skinne, and of the whole affected member with medicines that are effectuall for the thinnesse of the members, afterward seeke to discusse the flatuous vapour. Fourthly, (but according to the difference of the affected parts, and according to the thicknesse of the flatuous vapor, or thinnesse of the medicins which are applied,) intend and remit aswell the matter as the facultie & vertue of them. 5. Furthermore, if such a vaporous tumor shall chance with griefe and with inflammation (as it happeneth in the muscles which through some bruse are stuffed out with wind) apply in the beginning mitigating medicines: but in processe of time, vse such remedies as haue power to dissolue, increasing by litle and litle the plentie thereof. Sixtly Inflations, which through negligence are inueterate, first annoint them with lie, and then lay to some plaister, which can mollifie, dissolue and discusse them.

If the windie vapour shalbe venemous.

Victus ratio Theriaca.

The summe of curing of a flatuous tumour.

1

2

3

4

5

6

CHAP. XXIII.

Of a Tumor caused of a thin substance, which they call aquosum Apostema (that is) a waterish Apostem.

IF fleume doth vniuersally abound throughout the whole bodie, that kindof disease (which is a waterish humour running betweene the skinne and the flesh, called *Leucophlegmatia*) doth accompanie the same, as Galen hath noted in his sixth booke *de symptomatum causis*. But when this flegmaticke humour doth flow in one onely member, there is engendred *œdema*: for so they call a loose tumour, which is without paine. But if waterish excrements do abound, they are woont to bring the dropsie (which they call *ascites*) which if they shall couch themselues in one onely member, they do raise in it *Phlyctæne* (that is to say) pushes or whelkes. Furthermore the latter sort of Physitions

Leucophlegmatia.

Serosum incrementum.

Phlyctana.

haue bene accuſtomed to all this kinde of wateriſh tumors, *Aquoſum phlegma*, as alſo they do terme that humour to be fleume which floweth in the feet and legges of them that are troubled with the dropſie, and aboundeth in the leane partes of the bodie, and in other members, which do labour of an euill habit, (which the Græcians call *Cachexia*.) And theſe kindes of tumors which do proceede of wateriſh fleume, or of the aforeſayed ſerous increaſing, they doe alſo call vnlawfull and vntrue *œdemata*. But in thoſe dangerous diſpoſitions or diſeaſes they call it *Tabes*, which name *Hydrops* and *Cachexia* do require: but *œdema* (as hath bene alreadie declared out of *Galen*) doth not deſerue the name of a diſeaſe, but of a ſymptomate, for that it truely needeth no particular or ſeuerall cure. For the onely rubbing of it with *oxyrrhodinum*, or ſometime with ſalt and oyle, or with ſalt and *oxyrrhodinum* doth ſtop it, and many other things of that kind do worke the like effect. But the cauſes of theſe tumors are theſe, the altering of the vertue or facultie of the members through a cold and corrupted intemperature of the bodie, and the naughtineſſe of nouriſhment declining to aquoſitie, as you may eaſily gather out of the ſixth booke *de ſymptomatum cauſis*. The ſignes and iudgements are almoſt all one with a true *œdema*. Yet they differ in this, becauſe in the wateriſh tumors the tumor is more looſe then in a lawfull *œdema*: and therefore it doth not ſo reſiſt touchings, neither doth it ſound like winde, but rather as water; and it doth ſeeme to ſhine after a ſort, when one beholdeth it againſt the light. Now concerning the iudgments of this kind of tumor, there is no doubt but that a wateriſh tumor proceedeth of a greater coldneſſe then a flatuous tumor doth, as *Galen* declareth in the eleuenth commentarie of his fourth booke of Aphoriſmes. But it ſeemeth (ſaith he) that a wateriſh *Hydrops*, which they call *Aſcites*, is engendred of great coldneſſe, but a *Tympanie* of leſſe cold, which diſeaſe is named of *Hyppocrates* a drie water running betweene the skin. For a moiſt ſubſtance cannot be chaunged into a flatuous vapour without ſome heate. Moreouer wateriſh tumours do happen oftener in the feet, in the ſtones & cods, in the head, and in the ioynts, then in any other partes of the bodie, both becauſe ſuch a kinde of humour doth readily ruſh into thoſe partes, and alſo becauſe heate is verie meane and litle in them: for becauſe they be farre off from the hotteſt members. And as a flatuous vapour is ſeldome found without a wateriſh humor: ſo a wateriſh or ſerous humor is ſcarce contained at any time in any member without a windy ſpirit. Hitherto haue we ſpoken of the generation, the cauſes, ſignes, and iudgments of a wateriſh tumour: now we will ſet downe the cure thereof. Seeing that theſe wateriſh tumors are cauſed (as we haue ſayd alreadie) of the flowing of a ſerous humour, there needeth no other meanes, eſpecially no other generall order to cure them, then that method which we haue expreſſed alreadie in the cure of other tumors, which are engendred of the influxion of humors into ſome member. The order therefore of remedying ſuch kind of tumors in the beginning ſhall conſiſt of two pointes, (that is to ſay) 1. to emptie out that which is flowed 2. and to ſtoppe and inhibite the fluxe of the humour. Wherefore, as in all other diſeaſes, which are yet but in begetting, ſo alſo in theſe affects, the Phiſition muſt be carefull and diligent, as well in curing them, as in foreſeeing the danger following: (that is) both to remedie the diſeaſe, and prouide

Lib. 2. ad Glauconem & 14. Therap.

Cauſæ.

Signa.

Iudicia.

Aſcites is cauſed of more cold then Timpanites.

What parts theſe tumours do moſt occupy.

Aquoſi tumoris curatio.

Curatio duplex.

prouide for the fluxe. The first order therefore is subiect to that part of the Arte of Phisicke which cureth the diseases: but the second belongeth to that part which preuenteth the disease to come. But that we may profit & dispatch this doubt and generall method, it is necessarie to recite fiue other particular intentions, expressed of *Guido* out of Cauliacus for the cure of a waterish tumor, in this manner and order as followeth. The first consisteth in a iust institution and obseruation of a good diet. The second in the helping and furthering of concoction. The third in purging out the waterish humor by the belly. The fourth in bringing out of the waterish humor through the passages of the vrine. The fifth and last consisteth in the euaporation and drying vp of that waterish humiditie which is compact and contained in the aggrieued member. But because the foure first intentions do rather pertaine to the Phisition then vnto the Chyrurgian, for whose profite we haue taken this worke in hand, and also because they may sufficiently be knowne by those things which went before: I haue set downe the cure in the 33 Chap. of my 3. booke: and am determined to handle in this place the last intention onely, which requireth some new intended remedies. The fift intention therefore is ended with those medicines which can drie vp, and resolue those waterish and serous humors which are contained in the affected member. But of these remedies there are commonly set downe three rules or orders. The first out of *Galen lib.* 2. *ad Glauconem*, and *lib.* 14. *method. medendi.* which is made of *oxyrrhodinum* and salt (as hath bene before declared.) The second is out of the same author, which is a new spunge dipped in lie, and to this purpose serueth those remedies also which we haue before set downe for the cure of *œdemata*: with the which helps (that they may drie vp and discusse the more strongly) you must commix *Aphronitrum*, alume, and brimstone. The third rule is a certaine emplaister described of *Auicen* for the cure of *scrofulæ*, which emplaister he attributed to *Galen in libro suo de compositione medicamentorum κατὰ γένη*. But this emplaister (as he sayeth) within one weeke at the most, and often times within three dayes doth resolue all the hardnesse of the euill. But although this emplaister cannot be found in the booke before rehearsed to belong vnto *Galen*: notwithstanding we may vse the same verie fitly to the dissolution of a waterish and flatuous hardnesse: whose description out of *Auicen* is this that followeth. ℞. of mustard seed, of nettle seed, brimstone, *spuma maris*, *aristolochia rotunda*, and *bdellium*, ana. ℥. j. of ammoniacke, old oile and waxe, ana. ℥ij. But if the hardnesse of the tumor be not discussed by this emplaister, you can deuise no other more excellent or more present remedie, then to open with some instrument, and then to clense it and scoure it, and afterward to cure it after the manner of other filthy vlcers. The summe of curing a waterish tumor is this. 1. Appoint such a dyet to the sicke as can attenuate heate, and drie vp 2. Let him vse a moderate exercise of his bodie, let him eate and drinke little, let him not sleepe much, let him oftentimes prouoke his belly and bladder to auoid excrements. 3. Take heed that he digesteth his meate well, and that he begetteth not windinesse. 4. Purge out the waterish humor, wherewith the whole bodie of the sicke doth abound, by the bellie, and by the pores of the vrine. 5. Drie vp, and digest through breathing that serous humor which is included in the affected mem-

Fiue particular intentions in curing a waterish tumor.

1 2

3

4

5

1

2

3

Auicens emmettle plaister to discusse waterish tumors.

Capitacurationis aquosi tumoris.

1 2 3

4

5

6 ber. 6. But if it cannot thus be discussed, put some penknife, or some other hot instrument into the tumour, if it occupieth the arteries, and open it in that place where it is most inclined downward, that so the humour may the more
7 easily come forth. 7. Euacuate the humor which did cause the tumour by some emissarie, and then without delay dispatch all other things which do pertaine vnto the cure of other corrupted vlcers of the like nature.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of the diseases called Glandulæ, Nodi and Strumæ, together with other Abscessions, which they call Phlegmaticæ Excrescentiæ.

Enumeratio abscessuum pituitosorum.

GANGLIA so called of the Grecians, *Chœrades* (that is) *Strumæ*, which they also call *Scrofulæ*, *Bronchocele*, which they name *Bocium*, and *Hernia gutturis*, *Melicerides*, *Steatomata*, and *Atheromata*: also *Testudo*, *Talpa*, *Nacta* or *Napta*, which names giuen to tumors were inuented of the late Physitions, and are not to be found among auncient writers. Those tumours also which *Auicen* calleth *Fugillæ*, also *Nodi*, and *vulgaris Bubo*, together with many other tumors of that kind, in what part soeuer of the body they do growe, they haue their generation of fleume, and for that cause they are iustly referred vnto phlegmatike tumors. But although certaine of the aboue named Abscessions do degenerate into a stonie hardnesse and into schirrhous diseases: yet the roote and the originall beginning of them for the most part is fleume, (as *Auicennas* declareth) yet we will not denie, but that some other humor may sometime be commixed with fleume, whereof such kinde of Abscessions do come, and so there do growe vp those Abscessions which are both compound and of an other kind. But our intent is to speake here of simple Abscessions onely, by whose proportion or analogie the knowledge of compound tumors shall appeare most euidently: for the one must alwayes be referred vnto the other as it were vnto certaine rules or canons (as we haue said elsewhere.) Therefore all the aforesaied tumours are comprehended vnder the kind of flegmaticke Abscessions or (that I may speake after the maner of the cõmon Chirurgians) vnder the *Genus* of phlegmatike increasings, which diseases haue certaine speciall differences among themselues (as it shall afterward appeare.) For *Glandula*, (as *Guido* thought) tooke his title of the likenesse of *Glans* an acorne, which forme he doth seeme to vnderstand in this place. This *Glandula*, saieth he, is euerie where soft, one alone, moueable, & disseuered from the other partes lying about it, oftentimes growing in the cleane & pure parts of the body. But *Glandule* in *Auicen* doth breede either in the hand, or in the foote, or in some other place ioined to the sinewes and cords of the bodie, and these *Glandule* he would not haue destroyed, lest the sicke thereby should fall into *Spasmes*, the crampe. They do hapen also in the palme of the hand, & in the forehead, as *Auicen* sayth, who also calleth them sometime *Glandules a Apostemata*, sometime *Nodi*: for he doth intreat of those euils verie rashly in diuerse Chapters, as in his Chapter *de Nodo* euen vnto the end, & in his treatise *de Glandulu*. Therfore *Auicens Glandulæ* do seeme to be diuerse from *Guido* his *Glandulæ*, and *Ganglia* among

Simplicia sunt regula compositorum.

Glandula Guidonis.

Auicens glandulæ are all one with Ganglia.

among the Grecians to be all one with *Auicen* his *Glandula*, which thing *Paulus* his words next following do plainly testifie. *Ganglium* (saieth he) is a gathering together of the sinewes which is caused of some stripe or of wearinesse, & that in many parts of the bodie especially in those which are alwaies mouing, as in the middest of the hand and in the feete. *Ætius* sayeth, that it seldome possesseth the elbow and the head, and it doth seldome also arise voluntarily. And againe the same *Paulus lib.6.ca.39.* declaring what *Ganglium* is, how it doth grow, in what mẽbers chiefly it doth arise, & what signes or tokens do accompany it, confirmeth those verie words which we spake before saying: *Ganglium* is a conuulsion of the sinewes, caused of some blow or of labour, chancing for the most part in the ioynts of the hands, & of the armes, and in the ankles and ioints of the feet, although also it ariseth in other parts of the bodie. These are the signes of *Ganglium*, the tumor is al of one color, resisting touching or handling, & without paine, but if you do thrust it any thing violently, it is felt painfull, being not deeply rooted, but lying vnder the verie skin next the sides: but againe, if you prouoke it by force it doth so neither before nor after. Hitherto speaketh *Paulus AEgineta de Ganglijs*, now we will discourse of other flegmatike tumors. Those Abscessions which the common sort call *Scrofulæ* are nothing else but hard kernels contained within the litle filmes, *videlicet*, *Glandulæ* chiefly, appearing in the neck, the armeholes, and in the parts aboue the priuie members, where *Glandulæ* are placed by the vessels of the bodie that lie vnder them: yet somtime (although seldome) they are caused by meanes of the flesh of the same places, which through a certaine kind of affinitie is turned into the nature of *Struma*, and is increased by the addition of matter (as it pleased *Leonidas*.) The Latines call them *Strumæ*, but the Greeks *Chærades*, either truely because of the stones called *Chærades* growing in the Sea, or else because of those beastes called Sowes that bring forth a great companie of pigges at once (for these euilles do rise vp many together) which beastes are often infected with that disease. For *Scrofæ*, that is to say *Sues*, haue thicke & glandulous necks, and cõmonly they be strumous & full of kernels. But *Celsus* saith that *Struma* is a tumor, wherein vnder the congeled place there do arise certen things like *glandulæ* of matter & bloud. But these do not onely possesse the necke, but also the nosethrils, the priuy parts of the body, & the sides. The Chyrurgian *Meges* declareth also that he hath found them in the paps of women. *Paulus* also speaketh thus of them: *Strumæ* saith he, do arise in the fore part of the necke, or in one part or other both at once, either two or more: but all are included within their filmes, as *Steatomata*, *Atheromata*, & *Melicerides*. *Lupia* saith *Guido*, is soft & round like vnto a hop, & chiefly chuseth his place in hard & dry places of the body, as in the eie-lids & in other sinowy mẽbers: the Frenchmen call it commonly *vne Loupe*. Therefore if the description and cure of it, (which shalbe afterward handled) be conferred with the description and cure of *Ganglium* amongest the Greekes: the diseases will appeare not much different or vnlike: but they do greatly erre, which do make this euill called *lupia*, to be al one with that disease called *Lupus*. For *Lupus* is a malignant vlcer quickly consuming the neather parts, but specially annoying the thighes & legs; & it is very hũgry like vnto a wolfe (whereof it seemeth to receiue this title) eating vp the flesh that

Cap.16.lib.4.
Ganglium quid.
Signa Ganglij.
Scrofulæ.
Chærades Græcorum.
Sues.
Struma Celsi.
Lib.6.
Lupia.
Lupus morbus.

lie next vnto it, which euill without doubt is of the kind of *Phagedane*. Diseases therefore are farre diuerse among themselues the one from the other, al-

Nodi. though in name they be somewhat acquainted. *Nodus*, (as the knot of a rope) is said of the same *Guido*, to be round, hard, and abiding in one and the same

Auicene nodi. place, growing especially about the sinowy places of the bodie. But *Auicen* in a certaine place defineth *Nodi* to be *dubeleta frigida*, and he compareth this name with *Steatomata*, which are called *adiposi & adipini nodi*, fat kernels, and with *Meliceridei*, which are called *mellitij nodi*, and with *Atheromata*, which consist of a certaine kind of matter like vnto a pulse, which the Greeks call *Athera*. But because these three kinds of abscessions, that is to say, *Steatoma*, *Meliceris*, & *Atheroma* are most incident to mens bodies, and *Galen* also maketh mention of them in verie many places: we thinke it conuenient (hauing here gotten so fit oportunitie) to intreat of them plainely to declare their nature and their

Atheroma. markes whereby they may be knowne, and in what things also they do differ and dissent, and in what things they doe also conspire and agree. *Atheroma* therefore is a tumor of one and the same colour, and without paine, containing within the filme or sinowy tunicle a soft humor like vnto *Athera*, that is, a kind of pulse which is made of boiled meale. Sometime also in *Atheromata* together with a soft humor, there are found certaine stonie and hard substances, and other things like vnto small peeces of brimstone, oftentimes there are found in them certaine things like vnto the chewed bones of a henne, and like vnto haires wound vp together. This tumor *Atheroma*, appeareth in forme and figure verie long, and somewhat eleuated in height, which being pressed with the fingers, by reason of the clammishnesse and thicknesse of the humor, it doth slowly yeeld or go backe, and the fingers being remoued, it doth slow-

Meliceris. ly also returne again. But *Meliceris* is a tumor which is void of pain also, but yet it is round, wherein the humor, which is also included in some sinowy tunicle, (which they call *Cystis*) is found somewhat thinne, representing the substance of honie: whereupon some of the Latins do call it *Mellifauium*, a hony comb. *Meliceris* therefore doth differ from *Atheroma* in fashion, and in the substance of the humor: for both the forme is more round, and the substance of the humor more slender. This hony tumor therefore is further extended then *Atheroma*, and by pressing it with the fingers it doth speedily giue place, and when the fingers are remoued, it doth with the like celeritie returne to the former

Steatoma. place. But *Steatoma* is a tumor also besides nature, all of one colour, and verie gentle to be handled, in the beginning truely it is verie small, but in processe of time it increaseth and becommeth more copious, wherein is contained a humor verie like vnto tallowe, which is also comprehended vnder the filmes of the bodie. This is distinguished from *Meliceris* and from *Atheroma*, by reason of the hardnesse thereof, for it is both full and plentifull, and it doth so resist touching, that it will in no wise yeeld to the thrusting of the fingers. But let vs now proceed to declare other kinds of Apostemes which are almost re-

Testudo. duced vnto these three whereof we haue now entreated. *Testudo* (sayth *Guido*) is a great Abscession, verie humerall, soft, and of a broad fashion, after the manner of a target, (whereupon it receiued the name) which euil if it groweth (saith he) in the head, it is called *Talparia* or *Talpa*: if in the necke, it is called

Bocium:

Bocii: ifin the ſtones, *Hernia*: but ſometime it is found with matter, or with certaine ſcales, or with a *fiſtula* accompanying it. But *Teſtudines* & *Talpæ*, amongeſt the ancient Phiſitions, had neither any proper name, nor yet once entreated of. But ſome of our dayes do define *Teſtudo* to be a ſoft tumour, or not greatly hard, yet ſomwhat big, in the which is contained a groſſe matter lying hid in a certain tunicle, which doth ſo cleaue vnto the whole head of a man (for it is a diſeaſe incidēt to the skin of the head) that it oftētimes corrupteth the ſame. This euill (no doubt) is to be accounted among the number of Abſceſſions, & cōprehended vnder *Meliceris* or *Atheroma*, but it rather ſeemeth to incline vnto *Meliceris*: but *Talpa*, becauſe it conteineth a white matter, is rather referred vnto *Atheroma*, then vnto *Meliceris*: Notwithſtanding *Guido* affirmeth that it is a kind of *Teſtudo*, yea alſo that it is *Teſtudo* it ſelfe (as we ſayd a late) as *Hernia* alſo and *Bocium*, which he alſo nameth: but theſe affectes haue borrowed there diuerſe names according to the varietie of the places, wherein they are found. But that which the common ſorte call *Bocium*, the Greekes (fetching their title or name euen from the very depth) doe properly call *Bronchocēle*: we call it *Herniam gutturis*, whereupon they alſo call them *Gutturoſi*, which doe labour of that diſeaſe. *Bronchocēle* is a great tumour chauncing in the necke, very round betweene the skin and the wind pipe, wherein there is included, ſometime dead fleſhe, ſometime a certaine humour like vnto honie, or fat, or ſodden meale, or water. Sometime alſo (as *Celſus* ſayth) there are found in ſuch tumours certaine haires mingled with little bones. *Nacta* (as *Guido* writeth) is a great tumour, full of fleſhe, like vnto the fleſh of a mans buttockes, of diuerſe formes and greatneſſe: as are melons and gourdes, and therefore it borroweth ſundrie names according to the varietie of the faſhion and member wherein it is placed. Moreouer this tumour which of the latter ſort is called *Nacta* or *Napta*, is voyde of paine, except peraduenture it be ſo great, that by the continuall drawing of the partes of that member, it bringeth ſome griefe to the parts about it. This alſo is of the number of Abſceſſions, and doth pertaine vnto *Steatomata* (as we ſayd before in the enumeration of tumours beſides nature. *Bubo* (ſayth *Gelene*) is a diſeaſe of the looſe members, or of *Glandulæ*, (which the Greekes call *Adenæ*) that is to ſay, a ſimple inflammation. Wherfore *Guido* hath either vnfitly here rehearſed it among the number of flegmaticke abſceſſions: or elſe he vnderſtandeth ſome other matter then *Galene* doth. But *Bubones*, which are cauſed through a fall from ſome place, or by other vlcers and diſeaſes, are without any danger: but thoſe which are wont to happen in peſtilent feauers, are the worſt of all (whether they inuade the thighes, or the noſethrils, or the necke. *Fugillæ* (ſaith the interpreter of *Auicene*) is of the kinde of glandulous Apoſtemes, and this terme (ſaith he) is appropriated vnto it, becauſe it is a diſeaſe chauncing behind the eares. By the which deſcription it may eaſily be coniectured, that Fugille, ſo called of *Auicene*, is that tumour, which is called of the Greeks *Parotus*, that is, a glandulous diſeaſe growing vnderneath the eares, But ſome do thinke Fugille to be all one with *Bubo*: but then *Bubo* is farre otherwiſe taken of thē, then of *Galene* and *Paulus*, which is (as they ſay) a tumour that is deepely planted and rooted, and oftentimes not compaſſed with any skinne or filme, it is very hard alſo after the maner of

Talpa.

Bocium.

Bronchocēle.

Nacta.

Nacta or Napta is referred vnto Steatomata.

Bubo.

Fugillæ.

παρώτις.

What Bubo is with Guido & other late Phyſitions.

the euils called *Scrofule*, and in that signification (as I iudge) is *Bubo* taken of *Guido*, becauſe he doeth regiſter *Fugillinus Bubo* amongſt the number of fleugmaticke abſceſſions. But there are now found out verie manie titles giuen to theſe kindes of phlegmaticke abſceſſions. But we ought not greatly to ſtand vpon the names of them, ſo that we know and vnderſtand the onely differences of them, becauſe it falleth ſo out, that according to the diuerſitie of their names, their cures and iudgements do varie. Therefore of ſuch kinde of abſceſſions, ſome truly are included within a certain skin or tunicle (which they call *Cyſtis*) and ſome are deeply planted in the fleſh: ſome haue a ſlender foundation, or ſmall roote, & ſome againe are verie large and brode. Alſo ſome are eaſie to be reſolued, and ſome are farre otherwiſe: ſome great and ſome little. Some alſo do come vnto ſuppuration, and ſome do not. To conclude, ſome tumours are ſcalie, fiſtulous and cancerous, but ſome do admit or ſuffer none of theſe things. The cauſes of theſe kindes of tumours are threefold, *videlicet*. 1. Primitiue cauſes, as a fall, a ſtripe, exceſſiue or inordinate liuing, and an euill diet. 2. Antecedent cauſes, as are vnnaturall humours, eſpecially thoſe which be flegmaticke, and true *ædemata*, which do degenerate into abſceſſions. 3. *Coniunctæ cauſæ*, which are the diuerſe ſubſtances, and properly the matters of euerie abſceſſion, contained in the affected member. But in theſe kinds of tumors there are contained certaine humours, which be either ſerous or wateriſh as is vrine, putrified and corrupt, or filthie, or dirtie, or elſe humours like vnto honie, or ſodden meale, or vnto fat. But there are ſometime found within theſe abſceſſions, phlegmaticke, and wateriſh, and glandulous fleſh, ſometime alſo ſtones, ſand, ſhelles, wood, coales, and other ſuch like ſolide ſubſtances. Notwithſtanding theſe three kinds of tumours do moſt frequent mens bodies (as we haue ſayd before) whereof euerie one hath borrowed in Greeke his proper title: as *Atheroma*, *Steatoma*, and *Meliceris*, which are thus called by reaſon of the ſimilitude of the ſubſtances contained in them. For there is another tumour amongſt theſe, like vnto tallow, or ſome other fat thing, another like vnto honie, another like vnto a thinne kinde of meate, which they call *Athera*. The ſignes and iudgements of ſuch kindes of tumours, which belong vnto fleume, may eaſily be found out by their deſcriptions and differences before declared. But the marke wherby we may know whether they be couered with any veile or not, is this, there is moueableneſſe and inconſtancie of the filme or skinne, called *Cyſtis*, which the auncient Phiſitions haue named *tunica*, and there is a ſeparation of the skinne: but when they be ſurely fixed, that is, abiding in one place, and do cleaue faſt to the fleſh, it is an euident token, that they are garded about with no filme or tunicle at all. Furthermore, thoſe tumors which are new and tractable, may eaſily be diſcuſſed, but they which be hard and inueterate, can in no wiſe be reſolued. Redneſſe, paine, & increaſing of heate do declare that thoſe abſceſſions will either come to ſuppuration, or elſe degenerate into a fiſtula or a cancre, *Strumæ numeroſæ*, which do affect the outward members, & do often change their place, wandring here and there about the body, with a certaine extraordinary heat, do teſtifie & declare verie plainly, that they will beget and breed thoſe inward diſeaſes called *Cherades*, as Arnaldus hath noted in a certaine place. Thoſe remedies therfore, which are

The differẽces of flegmaticke abſceſſions.

Of the cauſes, ſignes & iudgments of the aforeſaid tumours.

Cauſes of tumours which pertaine vnto fleume.

The matter of flegmaticke abſceſſions.

14. Therap.

Signa.

Notæ abſceſſus velamento incluſi.

Iudicia abſceſſuum pituitoſorum.

Arnaldus à villa noua.

out-

outwardly appplied to thē, do profit little or nothing. But these diseases (as *Auicene* thought) are increased and doe multiply by some fall, or by some hurt or bruise in the body. Now these strumous tumours are greatly helped by vsing purging medicines, diureticall potions, & electuaries, (as they call thē) which can dry vp. Also the change of aire doth greatly auaile in young children. But children, by reason of their excessiue eating and immoderate diet, and the slenderneſſe of body, are very oftē annoyed with *Strumæ*. But old men by reason of the contrary causes, are seldome troubled therewith. Moreouer they which haue a narrow forehead, & straight temples, & great cheekes, are subiect to *Strumæ*. For in such, the matter is readily brought downe to the necke, as one *Henricus* among the number of the late Phisitions, hath noted very wel. But *Strumæ* (as *Celsius* sayth) are wont commonly to weare Phisitions, because they procure feauers also, neither doe they at any time rypen easilie, and they are cured either with some hotte instrument, or with medicines, and oftentimes they doe rise vp againe beside their scarres, and a long time after they require medicines againe, and moreouer it so commeth to passe that they remaine in the flesh a long season. The insciſion, & corrosiuing of such tumors is greatly to be feared about the belly, the necke, & the ioints, by reason of the affinitie and knitting together of the veines, the arteries, and the sinewes, and also of the internall capacitie. In the insciſion also of great Glandule, it behoueth greatly to eschew that veine, which lyeth at the roote of them, and doth bring nourishment vnto thē. For oftentimes it causeth great profusiō of bloud, wherupō there ensueth straight way no small danger. These euils called *Strumæ*, do greatly differ amōgst thēselues both in greatneſſe, nature, place, beginning, multitude, and ioyning together of the vessels (as *Aetius* hath gathered out of *Leonidas*.) Therefore litle *Strumæ* are sooner & more easily cured then the great, euen as the gentle tumours are more tractable then those which are inflamed. Noysome Strume cannot be remedied. For seeing all such diseases called *Strumæ* are cancerous, and do stuffe vp the vesselles of the body, while they are curing, they must needes bring the daunger of profusion of bloud, besides that also, they are found verie deepe in the flesh and therfore they cannot any way be cut off. For a malicious & hurtfull *Struma* doth possesse the best vessels, (that is) the greatest veines and arteries (which are called *Carotides*) euen as though it should hold by certain rootes. The superficiall *Strumæ* are more easie to be cured then the internall by reason of their place, & those also are curable which doe happen in the necke, where yet you must be verie diligent to eschew the loude and great sinewes: for many by cutting *Strumæ* about the windpipe, and by cutting other loude sinewes haue caused the sicke all the time of his life, after to remaine speechlesse. For beside the excision of that sinew, the great vessels being layd bare, & cooled in the cure, do hurt the duty of the tōgue. For the multitude of *Strumæ*, it appeareth, that one alone may easilier be cured them many together. And concerning the manner of their rising, it is manifest also, that they which hang downeward are a great deale sooner healed, then they which are planted in the flesh. Thus much of *Struma*, which *Aetius* hath recited out of *Leonidas*. The cure of these kinds of Abscessiōs, which haue their originall of fleume, is of the late Chyrurgians appointed to be two

In what ages and bodies Strumæ doe raigne.

Celsus.

Magnitudo Strumæ.

Natura.

Locus.

Multitudo ortus.

Duplex abscessus suum pituitosorum curandi ratio.

1. *Vniuersalis.* fould(that is to say.(1.Generall,and vniuersally common at all,2.and particular,which is propet in euery difference. Therefore our generall methode of curing these tumours shalbe, to appoint such an ordinarie and conuenient diet to the sicke,as that the matter, which causeth such abscessions, be not heaped vp together in the body, and by all meanes to preuent and turne away the antecedent matter(as they call it)which now is gathered together in the sicke body,least at the length it be vnited to the ioyned cause, that is, vnto that matter,which now bringeth the disease. But we shall accomplish the first intention of our generall cure, if the sicke do diligently obserue that kinde of

Victus ratio. diet, which is prescribed in our former Chapters(this one thing excepted) which is, that they ought to keepe a very thinne diet,and that, which is more conuenient to deuide thicke and clammie humours. Therefore if they will follow the counsell of *Auicene*,let them eschew all those meates which are of a grosse iuyce,the drinking also of cold things,too much satietie & immoderate fulnesse,and those things also which procure vomite and abhorring of meats. But they must abide as much hunger as can be. They must chiefly procure good digestion,and auoyde a moyst house, that is either situated in lowe vallyes, or in fennes, or frequented with corrupted waters. Let his drinke be

Aquæ alumi-nosæ vsus. wine that is excellent and of the best, or else let it be water of alume, or of brimstone.For such kinde of minerall waters,especially those which do represent in tast the dregs of wine, do not onely diminish and discusse these inward Strumours and flegmaticke abscessions: but those also which doe outwardly

Antecedentis materiæ euacuatio. affect the superficiall partes of the body(as *Arnoldus* affirmeth.) But we doe perfect the other part of our former proceeding (that is to say)to turne away the antecedent matter, least it be mingled with *coniuncta materia*, by foure kindes of euacuations, that is,by some medicine to purge fleume downeward, and sometime by letting of bloud, also by those things which can prouoke vrine, and last of all by those remedies which can through their vapour both resolue and digest the humour which is gathered together in the inwarde

Vacuantia per aluum. partes of the body. To purge the body downeward, the powder of *Turbith* is

Puluis Turbith. greatly commended, which is made thus in *Auicene*: ℞. of *Turbith*,ginger,and

Razes. sugar,of each a like portion,but he taketh thereof two drammes, and he affirmeth also, that (besides that it doth resolue grosse fleume) it doth neither heate, nor violently wrest the inward members. But *Razes*,who was very bold in declaring and vsing purging medicines, made this kinde of powder, in his ninth Chapter *de doloribus ventris ad Almansorem*,of twentie parts of *Turbith*, of ten of ginger,& thirty of sugar,and ministreth of it at one time.℥.iij. *Benedicta*

Hieræpicra. also and *Hieræpicra*, and *pillulæ de agarico* and *pillulæ maiores de Hermodactylis* do

Prouokers of vrine. greatly helpe these diseases.To prouoke vrine,*Guido* out of *Cauliacus* was wont vse this potion following,which (he sayth) he gathered out of the writings of

Potio Guidonis à Cauliaco. many Phisitions. ℞,of *Scrofularia*, *partes* iij. of *phylipendula partes* ij.of pimpernell,mouseare,*Tenacetum*,of red coleworts (which of some are thought to be *Brassica maruciua*)of *rubia maior*,ana.*parte* j. of the roote of *Aristolochia*, of *spathula fœtida* of the roote of radish,ana part,ß.put them altogether, and boyle them in white wine and honie, vntill halfe be consumed, then streine them, whereof euery third day in the morning let the sicke take three ounces, and

let

let it be drunk hot. But in the applying of all these remedies, (as also for blood-letting, if at any time it be required) the counsel of some learned phisition is to be vsed, who may prescribe both the quality, quantity & vse of them. But to resolue through breathing, and to digest the humor, which is gathered together in the depth of the body, and doth excite inward Glandule, (which also are the causes of outward diseases) *Galen lib.* 14. *Therap.* willeth vs to minister *Theriaca*, *Athanasia*, *Ambrosia*, and that medicine also which is made of *cretica calaminthe*: the Greeks call it *Diacalaminthe*: whose composition is to be sought out in *lib.* 4. *de sanit. tuen.* Many other helps are appointed for the cure of these abscessions, as potions, electuaries, and oiles, which are cast into the eares. There are also very many remedies called *Empirica*, consisting in practise, described & celebrated of the ancient Phisitions, the vse whereof I do not allow, and therfore I thinke it good to pretermit the declaration of them in these our commentaries. Notwithstanding this one thing I stedfastly affirme, that the Christiã king of France is indued as it were by inspiration with so wonderful a gift, that with the onely laying on of the hands he can restore them which be diseased with *Struma* or *Scrofula* to their perfect health againe. *King Edward* also (as histories do report) was wont maruellously to cure Strumous persons only by touching them, which gift immortall doth come as it were by inheritance to the Kings that succeed. For the Kings of England at this day, by laying on of hands, and rehearsing certaine ceremoniall prayers, do heale *Struma*. And these things truly are generally spoken in all the abscessions before mentioned. Now those things which follow do concerne the particular and proper method of curing euerie difference: which method is made not only diuerse, but also it is changed, both by the substance of matter whereof they haue their beginning, & by the quantitie of them, whether they be great or small, and by the nature also of the affected member, & of the whole body. But the continuance of time, although it declareth not the cure, yet sometime it sheweth vs, and it doth insinuate the qualitie of the disposition thereof, (as *Galen* hath set downe *lib.* 4. *de morbis curandis.*) Therefore although many indications and intentions of their cure may be gathered & learned by those things we haue spoken before, yet for our present purpose, we haue reduced them into 6. points, which we haue expressed in these sixe canons following. The first whereof is after this maner:

Quæ per habitum digerant.

The Kings of France do cure Struma by applying the hands.

What things do alter the particular cure of abscessions flegmaticke.

Tempus quid insinuet.

1 inprimis, let those flegmaticke abscessions that are soft and small, (which are commonly called *Luptæ*, and of the interpreter of *Auicen*, *Glandulæ*) if they be seated in the strong partes of the bodie, and becausethey are not yet inueterate, haue their thin *Cystin*, that is, their filme to couer them, let them I say, be appeased, suppressed, consumed, and afterward dried vp. 2. Mollifie, discusse, 2
and consume the great abscessions which be not greatly hard nor inueterate, after the manner of œdematous tumors whereof we haue before intreated. 3. 3
Ripen, open, and clense such flegmaticke, corrupted, and vlcerous Apostemes, which do pertaine vnto suppuration. 4. Those *Strumæ* which are not cured by 4
the former remedies, and yet are moueable, gentle, tractable, & obedient, cut them off, and draw them out. 5. Those which are vnmoueable, deeply rooted, 5
inwardly planted, and wound about the veines and arteries, and broad at the the root within, corrosiue them about, and cleanse them throughly. 6. Those 6

which are faſtned but to a thin & ſlender root, bind them about and pluck them out. The firſt canon, according to *Auicen* his opinion is perfected after this manner, if when you do conſume and ſuppreſſe vehemently theſe ſoft and litle abſceſſions (which *Auicen* doth call *Glandulæ*, and the new Phiſitions *Lupiæ*) you do lay on a plate of lead made fit for the tumor, & bind it very ſtrongly in the middeſt leſt it ſlide from the place: for this doth digeſt theſe kindes of tumors. Firſt therfore let *Lupia* be ſoftly rubbed with the hand vntill it wax ſomwhat hote, and vntill it be after a ſort ſofter then it ſelfe. Afterward let the affected member be ſurely laid hold on with the hands, and let it be ſo often, and ſo vehemently ſtricken with the bottome of a ſaucer, or with ſome other ſolide thing, that it may be diſſeuered, and that the inward *Cyſtis* thereof (which is the filme wherein it is included) may be rent and broken, and ſo the matter therein contained may be diſperſed: Which thing being done, apply the plate of lead vpon the place, and let it be bound verie ſtrongly with a ſwathing band that hath two ends, neither let it be remoued for the ſpace of nine or ten daies, but let the plate be of that greatneſſe (as it was ſaid of late) that it may anſwer to the proportion of *Lupia*. But there are ſome which before the application of any plate of lead do miniſter this ointment made of burnt lead, of the bark of the elder tree, or of the figge tree, with oile and vineger. Other do firſt vſe an emplaiſter made of aloës, *acatia*, mirrhe, *olibanum*, *ſarcocolla* putting to them a litle vineger, or the white of an eg, as much as ſhall ſeeme ſufficient to commixe with the reſt. *Henricus* was wont to lay vpon them litle flakes (as he and other Chyrurgians of that ſect do call them) made of flaxe dipped in the white liquor of an egge with ſalt and alume *Zuccharinum* vnthicked. Moreouer *Philagrius* almoſt after the ſame manner was wont to cure *Ganglia* (as it is in *Ætius*) which diſeaſes are tumors vnequall (as we ſaid before) ſpeaking after this ſort. We denie (ſaith he) the labour of the Chyrurgian, that is bloudletting in *Ganglia*, eſpecially if they chaunce in the handes or in the feete, but we muſt cure them onely by medicines. For we annoint them by the fire with ammoniacke which muſt be made pliant to the thickneſſe of an emplaiſter: afterward we applie a plate of lead equall for the tumor, and leſt it ſhould ſlide away from the place, we bind it in the middeſt with ſtraight bands. But a few daies after, when we know that *Ganglium* is mollified, we take away the bands, & (not ſaying any thing to the ſicke) while the place is yet hot, we faſten the thumbe of our right hand vpon *Ganglium*, and laying faſt hold on the member with our other foure fingers, we violently breake it, and ſo *Ganglium* is preſently diſſolued. Hitherto *Philagrius*. Therefore by this our order of cure, it may eaſily be gathered, that *Lupia* amongſt the late Phiſitions, *Auicen* his *Glandule*, and *Ganglion* among the Greeks, is all one diſeaſe, which the former deſcription of the do alſo manifeſtly declare. *Archigenes* in this diſeaſe, commendeth to lay quick lime with the fat of a gooſe, and with roſin *Terebinthina*, which is the right turpentine. The ſame *Archigenes* alſo did oftentimes vſe that medicine made of the ſtone called *Lapis achates*, as *Paulus* reporteth. But *Oribaſius* vſed verie often this medicine. ℞. of ceruce, *reſinæ piceæ*, old oyle, ana. ℥ j. of ammoniacke *Thymiama*, and *Galbanum*, ana. a like quantitie, of waxe ℥. iiij. The ſame medicine is to be ſeene in *Aetius*, but the quantity doth varie in certen things,

Compreſſio & attritio.

Lupiæ curatio.

Lamina plumbea.

Vnguentum Rogerij.

Ganglij curatio ex Philagrio.

Lupiæ & ganglion is all one euill.

Archigenes lib. 4.

Oribaſius his medicine to mollifie Ganglia.

as thus. ℞. of ceruse, old oile, and *resinæ piceæ*. ana. ℔. j. of waxe. ℥. ij. of *ammoniacum Thimiama*, and of *Galbanum*. ana. ℥. j. boile the ceruse with oile till it lose his staining faculkie, then bray the ammoniack, and cast it into the ceruse with the oile, afterward cast in the *resina picea* and the waxe, and last of all the *Galbanum*, which first must be made verie soft and tender. Moreouer that famous Phisitien of Greece, I meane *Oribasius*, did not apply any plate of lead, as *Philagrius*, *Auicen*, and other late Chyrurgians were accustomed, but he did lay and bind vnto *Ganglium*, a thick round peece of lead like vnto a wherue, which do hang vpon womens spindles to make them turne round, which was more large & ample for the disease. For truly saith he, with the weight thereof, it doth more speedily dissolue the euill. Therefore in the cure of *Ganglia*, it is far better to vse such mollifying and discussing medicines, then the diligence of the Chyrurgian, (with excision of the tumors) especially when they do grow in the legges, or in the armes, or in the principall parts of the bodie. For it is to be feared, that if they be cut off, the member is made lame and vnperfect. But those diseases which do occupie the head or the forehead, may safely be cured with the hand, that is, may be cut off, or pulled vp by the roots. Therfore diuide the outward skin with a penknife, and then (if the tumors be small) lay hold on the foundation of them with a paire of pinsers, or some such like instrument, and cut them off frō the root. But if they be great, thrust them through with a hooke, and lift them vp, and winde them round about vntill you haue plucked and drawne them forth: last of all, sow vp the sides or brims of them together, and vse those medicines which are appointed for bloudy vlcers. But these things belong vnto the fourth canon. The second canon (because I wilbe silent in those medicines which are appointed for flegmatick and œdematous tumors which we haue described alreadie, and yet together with these remedies following, they be verie profitable and expedient for these Absceſſions whereof we now intreate, and also for all kind of *Hernia*) is finished by the applying of a certaine emplaister, which is described of *Galen libro sexto de compositione medicamentorum κατὰ γένη*: which emplaister (as he himselfe testifieth) doth digest through breathing, and doth repell *Phlegmone*, and is effectuall against the diseases called *Struma*, *Pani*, and *Parotides*: it is auaileable also against the goute, and it benefiteth many other diseases. The emplaister is this. ℞. of old oile. ℥. 100. *spumæ argenti*, *picis siccæ*. ana. ℥. 50. of *Ladanum*. ℥. 25. of *æruginis rasæ*. ℥. 8. of *Galbanum*. ℥ 4. let *Argenti spuma*, which they call *Litharginum* be braied and boiled in the oile, and when they are somewhat thickned together, put in the pitch & the rust of the scourings of brasse commonly called verdigreece, then the *Ladanum*, and *Galbanum*. Afterward powre them into a morter and bray them and mollifie them, and reserue them to your vse. Some to make it haue a good colour, and to looke somewhat browne, do commixe with them also the offall of brasse. ℥. viij. for otherwise it would be very blacke. This emplaister is found otherwise described in *Guido* his commentaries vnder this forme, ℞. of olde oyle ℥. xij. of the scourings of brasse. ℥. xiiij. of drie pitch. ℥. vj. of *Ladanum*. ℥. iij. of *Litharginum*. ℥. xij. of *Galbanum*. ℥. iij. For the same purpose *Diachylon* also which is called *Commune & ireatum* doth profite much, wherof you must take one pound, and commixe therwith the powder of the root of

Verticillum plumbeum.

Ganglio rum per Chyrurgiã curatio.

Secundus canon.

Discussion by digestiues.

Emplastrum.

Diachylon.

ireos. ℥.j. The ſame effect hath that *Diachylon*, called *magnum Meſues*, whoſe deſcription ſhall afterward inſue. Some counſell vs, for the digeſtion of theſe abſceſſions, to apply vnto the grieued place, the old doung of a goat with hony & vineger, which muſt be het ouer the fire vntil they be wel incorporat together, and then brought to the forme of an emplaiſter: alſo an emplaiſter made of fenugreeke, of the ſeed of flaxe, & of coleworts, with the ſcrapings of the roote of *Althæa*, which medicine, (if there be any hope of ſuppuration) doth ripen it notably. Haly Abbas alſo for the ſame purpoſe doth greatly commend this emplaiſter following. ℞. of beane meale, and of barley meale. ana. ℥.v. of the root of liquorice, of the roote of *Althæa*, and of pitch. an. a. ℥. x. of white waxe, gooſe ſuet. ana. ℥.x. bray them, and mingle them together with old oyle, and with the vrine of a child that hath not yet tryed Venus ſports, and ouer a ſoft fire make an emplaiſter. Another out of *Auicen* which *Guido* vſed. ℞. of oxes doung. ℥.ij. of the roote of coleworts, of the roote of capers, of the fiſh called a ſhrimpe, of fat figges ana. ℥.ß. of hops and *bdellium*. ana. ℥.ij. of vineger, hony, ſowes tallow, of the dregs of old oile, of ech as much as is ſufficient, whereof make an emplaiſter. *Brunus* approueth this remedie following, whoſe opinion *Theodoricus* alſo doth confirme. ℞. of ammoniacke, *bdellium*, *Galbanum* of ech a like quantitie: ſteepe them three daies in vineger, wherto (when they be diſſolued) you may adde of ſmall bran aſmuch as ſhall ſuffice, and make an emplaiſter. *Rogerius* was wont to vſe this remedie for *Strumæ* (which they commonly call *Struſulæ*). ℞. of the roote of brakes of daffadill, or of walwort (if you pleaſe) of ech as much as you thinke good, let them be boiled in the beſt wine, and then braied in a morter, and ad to them a litle quicke brimſtone, and make an emplaiſter. *Guido* his maiſter *in monte Peſſulano*, hath often tried this emplaiſter to be moſt effectuall, which is made of xij ſnailes (which they alſo call *Limaces*) boyled in wine, or in lie made of aſhes, commonly called *clauellata*. But that which is more profitable, he did miniſter euerie day to the ſick to be eaten one ſnaile, either drie or otherwiſe prepared, and as they terme it, made readie to chew. *Paulus* alſo was wont notably to diſcuſſe *Strumæ* with vnſlaked lime, ſteeped in hony, or in the filthineſſe of mens bodies that do ariſe either in exerciſing themſelues, or in bathes, or elſe in oile, or ſowes greace. The like vertue ſaith *Aetius*, hath the filthineſſe of exerciſing places ſcraped from the walles, which muſt be well beaten together and ſpred vpon a linnen cloth, and applied after the manner of an emplaiſter. For the ſame purpoſe this helpeth effectually. ℞. of lime & *nitrum*. ana. a like portion, of *Cardamomum* and fenugreeke, foure times as much, with hony, and apply it after the manner of a mollifying plaiſter. Alſo the meale of bitter hops boiled and annointed with *oximel* doth diſcuſſe *Strumæ*. For the ſame purpoſe alſo oxes doung boiled in vineger and annointed, doth notably auaile, which being applied after the manner of a cataplaſme, doth maruellouſly diſſolue all hard and ſcirrhous tumors. Rathe ripe figs alſo, eſpecially of the wild fig tree, applied with hogs greace, do diſcuſſe all kinds of tumors. Therfore by this our method of curing, you ſhall heale all kind of *Strumæ* which are but newly begun, and not yet inueterate, as well in children as in them which cannot abide manuall practiſe, euen by the applying of ſuch medicines as can diſſolue, digeſt, & diſcuſſe. But firſt you muſt labor to mollifie, and afterward to diſcuſſe

Stercus capril-lum vetus.

Haly Abbas emplaſtrum.

Emplaſtrum Auicennæ.

Brunni & Theodorici emplaſtrum ad ſtrumas.

Rogerij emplaſtrum.

Emplaſtrum præceptoris Guidonis ex limacibus.

discusse, or else vse some medicine of a double qualitie, which can worke both these effectes together, of which kind are all those remedies almost, which are before described. Nowe if digestiue medicines shall nothing preuaile in these Abscessions, they must be either brought vnto suppuration, or consumed or else cured by Chyrurgerie, (as it shall be said hereafter.) But here we must not omit that thing, which is recorded of some verie diligently: namely, that they which are diseased with *Strumæ*, and with any leprosie, are maruellously holpen by the vsing of vipers and serpents, and by the drinking of the gumme called *Laser*, euerie day fasting to the quantitie of a chiche pease. Therefore cast the dead serpent into a pot, & stop the mouth therof verie iust with some plaister, and set it in the fire, then take the ashes of the burned serpent and mingle them with the like quantitie of fenugreeke, and vse them in wine. For this doth excellently helpe them which be strumous. Also in them that labour with *Struma*, you must prouide that the bellie be made soluble, and a slender diet obserued: you must daily prouoke vomiting, & endeuour to purge fleume vpward: you must also drie the head, and apply cataplasmes to the forepart thereof, which can raise litle pushes in the skin, as is the roote of capers, with *polenta*, and other such like things. And you must also vse purging medicines, and fine powders that be of the like vertue. We also do generally dispatch the declaration of the third rule, by the vse of the former remedies: for all mollifying and resoluing medicines, if they find any place or matter disobedient vnto resolution, they doubtlesse do ripen the same matter, and bring it to suppuration: especially if the said matter be gentle & tractable, or commixed with bloud. But Haly Abbas, that he might bring these kinds of abscessions vnto maturitie, ministred a plaister made of barley meale, pitch, and *olibanum*, and of the vrine of a young child all well incorporat together. But *Auicen*, to represse the vehemencie of the heate, willeth to commixe the decoction of coriander with the aforesaid vrine. But if these things doe nothing helpe, and there be required a more effectuall remedie: take of mirrhe part. j. of *licium*, parts ij. and mingle them with the aforesaid decoction. This medicine vnder written, doth bring *Struma* vnto suppuration, which medicine is recorded of *Paulus Ægineta Lib.* 4. ℞. of mirrhe, ℥. x. of *ammoniacum Thymiama*. ℥. vij. of *viscus quercinum* ℥. viij. of *Galbanum*, ℥. iiij. of *propolis* ℥. j. beate them in a mortar. But when these abscessions be ripe, and brought vnto suppuration (which you shall easily perceiue by the tokens of the matter) they must be opened and clensed within, which you shall do very well, if you do clense them after their apertion with that ointment commonly called *Vnguentum Apostolorum*, which is an ointment of great efficacie in malignant and vlcerated *Strumæ*. To this purpose also the ointment called *Vnguentum Ægyptiacum* is verie profitable, and the *Emplastrum de succis* (which they call *Diachylon*) & *Diapalma*, which the Greekes call ποτνιαῖον, whose descriptions are to be found in other places. But if these Abscessions shall possesse any member, wherein there subsisteth any putrefaction, and corruption of the bones, or any euill symptomate shall haue accesse to them: they must be cured after the maner of vlcers, with which they haue some affinitie & acquaintance. Concerning our fourth canon, you shal cure gentle, obedier, superficiall, and curable *Strumæ*, very cunningly and shortly after this sorte.

The vsing of vipers and serpents doth maruellously helpe them which are strumous.

3 *Tertij Canonis declaratio.*

Suppurantia, seu maturantia.

Pauli medicamentum ad strumas suppurandas.

Detergentia.

Vnguentum Apostolorum.

Vnguentum Aegyptiacum

Diachylon.

Diapalma.

4 *The way to cure and destroy Struma, out of Albucasis and Leonidas.*

First, commaund the sicke to lie downe: for that when he sitteth, his heart will quickly faile him. When he is thus layd, bind his legs surely together, and tie them to the bedsted, and charge the seruants about him to hold his head very hard. Then cut the skin that compasseth the tumour either with a right, or a litle ouerthwart section, but that insision which is drawne ouerthwart in the necke is altogether vnprofitable, because in it the vesselles and sinewes are extended right foorth. But you shall not cut the whole thicknesse of the skin hastily at one time without ceasing: for our mind is to vse no violent thing in this our worke. And truly in litle tumours, that is, in small *strumæ*, make but a simple insision, or deuide them with a small line: but in great absceſſions cut the skin to the forme of a myrtle leafe: then those vessels which are vncouered (as the veines and arteries) put them softly and easily aside. After these things, distend & stretch out the sides of the section, or the edges of the diuided skin, with pinsers, or with other such instruments, and plucke out the filmes within, either with your fingers, or with some other instrument appointed for that purpose, and so by litle and litle picke out *struma*, where it appeareth bare and vnfolded from the tunicles. But if *struma* shall be wound about the vessels, you must handle the cure with great attention, lest through negligence, there followeth a copious profusion of bloud. Therefore in dispatching this cure, draw one onely side of the section at once with the pinsers, and so by litle and litle separate it with the poynt of a penknife from the other partes thereunto adioyned, and when you haue drawne and loosed the connexion on the one side, do the like also on the other side, and then cut out the whole foundation or ground worke, because of the sinewes and vesselles lying vnderneath. But in those *strumæ* which do chaunce about the arme-holes, and about the priuie members, you must make an ouerthwart insision, by reason of the doubling of the skinne. Moreouer, in that section, which is made in *strumæ* that possesse the neck, you must haue a singular care, least either the arteries, which they call *carotides*, or the quiuering sinewes, be touched and hurt. But if by the cutting of any vessell when you make insision, the profusion of bloud doth delay and hinder your worke, either take vp the vessell with a small cord, or (if it be not verie great) cut it quite off (as *Paulus* counselleth) or else, (if it bursteth not out with great violence) apply such remedies as are appointed to stanch the bloud. Afterward returne againe vnto your enterpised labour. Therefore when the foundation of *struma*, is brought into a narrow roome, cut it cleane off cunningly and handsomely, and then put in the forefinger, and search the place diligently, whether there be any other *strumæ* thereunto adioyned or not: which (if there be any found) you must also draw foorth after that manner which we haue before expressed. Moreouer you shall easily represse a meane fluxe of bloud by applying those things which haue power to drie vp, as flaxe, sponges, or liniments made of cotten, infused in cold water, or in vineger, or in a mixture of both, (which they call *oxycraton*) and afterward wrong out. But if the section shall continue without bloud-shead, fill it vppe with the powder of frankensence, and applie linimentes, and for the longer preseruation of the liniments, binde to wooll dipped in wine. But if any full veine worthy the speaking of be connexed within the root or bottome

What is to be done, if a veine be annexed vnto struma.

of

of *Glandula* or *struma*, or some such like tumour, it is not conuenient to cut it off at the verie ground, but to take it vp and binde it with a small cord, that it may fall out of it owne accord, peece by peece without any danger. In which fall the cure must be followed with linimentes: but the cord must be of some matter which will not easily putrifie, as are those threads which are called *Serica*, or small lute strings: for those bandes which do quickely rot, do soone fall from those members whereunto they are tyed. But, if when the worke is finished, some of the skinne which couereth the matter of the former Abscessions, or some other strange thing shall remaine behind: *Albucasis* willeth it to be drawne out, first by filling the wound with cotten, or with some other like thing dipped in salt water. But *Guido*, to draw out those reliques which remayned behinde, did fill vp the gaping vlcer, first with the white of an egge, and with Alume sprinckled ouer it, afterward with *Vnguentum Aegyptiacum*, or with some of those corrosiuing medicines which are described in the Antidotarie. Moreouer in all these operations, you must applie such medicines as can lenifie paine: but among all other things, we do commonly lay on flax dipped in the white of an egge, and in oyle of roses. You shall finish the scope of our fifth rule after this sort: breake the skin with some burning hote medicine according to the greatnesse of the Abscession: But while you attempt that thing, you must giue diligent heede, least that the scalding medicine do touch the other partes lying about the tumours. You shall notablie dispatch this labour, by applying some hote medicine made of lyme, or sope, which things do happily execute their effectes within the space of twelue houres: but though they remaine somewhat longer, yet there will ensue no daunger or discommoditie thereby. The skinne therefore being thus broken by some burning medicine, and crust procured in the place thereof, you shall diuide the tumour with a straight line all along through the middest of the crust: but you must make incision somwhat deeply, almost to the verie quicke, and then lay vpon the cut or gaping wound, a liniment striked with some consuming or eating medicine, as is, the powder of *Asphodelus*. Moreouer although many do apply a great number of medicines in these abscessions: yet Arsenicke in this case obtaineth the preheminence, so that a man know how to vse it aright. But the certaine quantitie of vsing the same cannot be described (as *Galen* hath noted in *libro tertio Therapeut.*) It is not therfore to be vsed rashly, because it is a medicine vehement and violent without measure, exciting feauers, and procuring many other vicious symptomates. Besides that also the ministring of a small quantitie doth performe a maruellous and almost an incredible effect: notwithstanding, the cõmon measure or quantitie thereof, is the medietie of one graine of wheate in a strong bodie, and in those members which are farre off from the principall partes: but in weake natures, and in those places which are situated neare vnto the principal members, a lesse quantity must be applied. But to be short, it is better, and more safe, to minister a litle at once and often, then at one time to applie an immoderate quantitie. The operation or effect of Arsenicke remaineth three whole daies, in all which time, the sicke must vse the diet of them that are feuerous. But the affected member, & the parts lying about it, both for the owne

Cordes made of silke.

Albucasis.

Corrosio & mundificatio.

Casticum ex calce & sapone.

Arsenicum.

Quantitas arsenici.

defence, and to ſtop the fluxe,(which immoderate heate may cauſe)ought to be annointed and all to waſhed with the ointment called *populeon*, with water alſo, or with the iuyce of nightſhade,and with vineger, and with other refrigerating remedies of the like kinde. But when you are certainely aſſured, that *Glandula* is deſtroyed and waſted away (which you ſhall know by the hardneſſe and ſwelling of the procured cruſt)then the cruſt muſt be reſolued euen from the quick by waſhing it with butter, & by applying a litle wheat meale thicked together,and by ſome other fat and vnctuous thing that is not ſalted,as ſwines greace and ſuch like. But when the cruſt is fallen from the tumor, if any thing either of *Glandula*, *lupia*, or *ſtruma* do yet remaine behind, it muſt be fetched out with ſome gnawing medicine, as with the powder of *Aſphodelus*, with *Vnguentum Aegyptiacum*, or with ſome ſuch like thing. But if there remaineth no thing behind it muſt be brought vnto a ſcarre after the maner of other vlcers. But now that we may alſo accompliſh the intention of our ſixth canon: theſe abſceſſions which haue verie narrow baſes or foundations,muſt be faſt bound either with a cord of ſilke, or with horſe haire, and they muſt be bound daily more and more, either with the former bands, or with other new cordes, vntill they appeare verie dry, and voluntarily do fall away of their owne accord, (as we haue ſayed of thoſe Abſceſſions which are deepely planted, and folded about the great veſſels.)But the band muſt be ayded with ſome conſuming and drying medicine. The paine alſo muſt be aſſwaged with the white of an egge, with oile of roſes,with *vnguentum populeon*,or with ſome other remedie that can mitigate paine. But when the cordes ſhall fall off alone of it owne accord, the tumour muſt be cured after that manner,which we haue before expreſſed. And thus much generally concerning thoſe abſceſſions which vniuerſally conſiſt aboue nature, eſpecially of them that haue their originall of fleume. Now we haue here thought it conuenient to ſet downe the proper and peculiar method of curing *Meliceride*, *Steatomata*, & *Theromata*, which diſeaſes are alwaies and often incident to mens bodies,& do comprehend vnder them other certaine kindes and differences of tumours beſides nature, called of the late Phiſitions after certaine new titles and names, which among the auncient ſorte were neuer heard of, as *Talpa*, *Teſtudo*, *Natta*, and others of that kind, which we haue expreſſed in our former chapters. In thoſe three kinds of Abſceſſions which do moſt frequent mens bodies, (I meane in *Steatomata*, *Atheromata*, and *Meliceris*) there is one generall order of their cure, namely that the matter which is contained in that tunicle which they call *Cyſtis* may be diſcuſſed, or that the whole tumour together with the verie tunicle may be conſumed by medicines,or taken away by ſection. But ſome of thoſe tumors require a three fold method of curing, as thoſe, which containe a more liquide humour,as is, *Meliceris*. Some againe are cured two wayes,as *Atheroma*, which is deſtroied by ſection, and conſumed by medicines. But *Steatoma* can neither be diſcuſſed, nor conſumed: but it is cured by the onely labour of the hand (that is) by ſection onely. Moreouer of medicines, which in theſe affectes haue power to diſcuſſe and diſperſe,you ſhal find plentie among thoſe remedies which we before haue ſet downe for the cure of *ſtruma*. But *Paulus* doth particularly and properly diſcuſſe *Meliceredes* with that medicine, which containeth, of preſſed grapes

Quando cruſta a vino reſoluenda.

6 Ligatura & euulſio.

Curatio Atheromatis, Steatomatis & meliceridis.

How many waies theſe Abſceſſions may be cured. Lib.4. Curatioper digerentia.

grapes(the kernels being taken out)xx. of the scourings of brasse .ℨ.iiij. which medicin must not be applied before the member be nourished with foments. Another emplaister appointed for *Melicerides*, which *Aetius* reported vnto *Leonidas*. ℞. of pressed grapes (the kernels being detracted) ℔.j. of commin seed beaten verie small.ℨ.vj. of *nitrum* ℨ.iij. bray all together in a mortar,& bind the to the tumour. Another discussiue medicine expressed of the same writer,verie profitable against *Melicerides*. ℞. *salis ammoniaci*, of the scourings of siluer, and of Ceruse .ana.℔ j. of waxe *Terebinthina*, *chalbana*,*opoponax*.ana.ℨ.j. of *rubrica sinopica* ℨ.vj. of vineger .ℨ.vij. ß. boile the scourings of siluer, ceruse, and salt beaten verie small altogether, then cast in the *rubrica sinopica*, which first must be steeped in vineger and melt them together: last of all, when they be all boyled together and cold, commixe therewith *opoponax* and *chalbana*, both dissolued in vineger, and conserue them to your vse. But if in such kind of Abscessions you mind to wast the humor by applying of gnawing medcins(which the Grecians call *Septica*)it is expedient first to vncouer them (as also in *struma*)by hote burning medicines applied to the skin, whereof (saith *Paulus*) the best remedie is that, which consisteth of quicke lime (that is)which is not yet quenched with water of sope, and of the athes of lye that are made in a stillatorie. There is another more diuerse remedie which may be kept a long time. ℞. of vnslaked lime .ℨ.iiij. of *ſpheele*, (that is) of the burnt dregs of wine, of liquide *nitrum* parched in the fire .ana. ℨ.ij. of *nimium* or *rubrica sinopica*.ℨ.j. Let them be brayed with the distilled athes of lye, and when you haue brought them to the thicknesse of liquide honie, heate them thrice ouer the fire, that it may be of a meane substance, and lay on *pixis plunubra*, with the distilled lye aboue, least it drie vp too soone. Therefore first breake the skin that is beset with such medicines as can procure a crust: but when the crust is fallen off, apply consuming remedies, among which this remedie following doth notably waste without gnawing and byting .℞.of the offall of brasse .ℨ.iiij. of *Sandaracha*(that is)of red arsenicke,and of *Helleborus niger*.ana.ℨ.ij. apply them with oile of roses. Another remedie verie effectuall for the same purpose. ℞. of a burnt hedgehog, of *Testa sepia*, and of orpine or arsenicke .ana. an equall portion: commixe them with oyle of roses. But the partes which lie about the tumour,and are adiacent thereunto, let them be first annointed with ceruse and oyle. But if we purpose to cure these kindes of Abscessions by making insision (hat is) by Chyrurgerie: truely in that method of curing(whether it be a mealy humour, or a hony,or a fat humour, or of what substance soeuer it be,which is contained in them) we must obserue one onely and principall intention, namely to take away the tunicle wherein the humour is included.) But in enterprising the same, we must be verie attentiue and warie(as we haue sayd before of *ſtrumæ*)that we rashly hurt not and teare in peeces the filme or tunicle, whereupon the humour which was contained therein,gushing out plentifully, doth both hinder our operation,and some portion thereof also remaineth still behinde. For if (when the tunicle is diuided, and the humor issued) the tumor shall sinke downe, the tunicle will hardly be plucked away and cured. But if any remnant of the humour be left behind in the Abscession, it is to be feared, that the disease will grow againe (as doth *struma*) when as any portion thereof

Lib.15.

Curatio per excedentia.
Lib.4.

A medicine to wast without byting.

Curatio per Chyrurgiam.

sticketh behind. But if any such thing doth happen, it is not expedient to sew together the Abscession, but to draw out the relictes thereof either with those consuming medicins which we haue before expressed, or by some such like remedies. Now if *steatoma* hath a verie broad top, and a verie narrow and slender foundation, then (setting aside all other superfluous remedies) you must cut it vp quite euen by the very root, for so the labour of the Chyrurgian shall quickly be ended, the vlcer made plaine and equall with the other partes, and the cure shortly dispatched.

Aetius lib. 15.

CHAP. XXV.

Of hard and Scirrhous tumours, engendred of melancholie.

WE haue hitherto discourssed of those tumors which are caused of bloud, choler and fleume: of *Verruce* also, and of those abscessions which are excited through a wateriſh humor, and a flatuous vapour: of those Apostemes also which haue their beginning of a phlegmaticke substance, and of other tumors generally consisting aboue nature. Now it remaineth that we entreate of those Abscessions which doe proceed of a melancholike humour, as are scirrhous, indurated and cancerous tumours, which they call *Cancerosi*, *Apostemosi*. To *Scirrhus* therefore (as also to *phlegmone*, *Erysipelas*, and *œdema*) there is assigned of the late Chyrurgians, a double difference, which notwithstanding is comprehended vnder the same title, *videlicet*: *Scirrhus verus*, *& scirrhus non verus*. But a true and lawfull *Scirrhus* is sayed to proceede of naturall melancholie. Also naturall melancholie, is the dregges of good bloud, and as it were a certaine slimie superfluitie, and verie grosse bloud, whose colour is blacke, but the taste thereof sharpe and soure (as it is not vnknowne to them that do vomite the same) it is lodged in a certaine bloudie corner, wherein all the humors are contained, and appointed of nature to nouriſh the melancholike members. But an vnlawfull *Scirrhus*, after the opinion of the late Chyrurgians, is that which is engendred of vnnaturall melancholie. And vnnaturall melancholie is that, which differeth from the former description of the naturall humor, and yet it keepeth within the precincts of his libertie, which if it shall once pretergresse (they say) it is no longer to be called melancholie, but some other humour. But melancholie (to enter into the generall definition thereof) is a colde and drie humour, proceeding (as *Guido* sayeth) of a verie grosse portion of that which we call *Chylus*. But of vnnaturall melancholie there are commonly appointed foure differences. 1. The first is, when as that melancholike humour, which is called naturall, and doeth daylie engender in the bodie, euen when a man is in perfect health, is in his owne proper essence, burned, putrified, and become exquisite melancholie. For that (as *Galen* sayeth) is engendred of a blacke humour that is vehemently burnt, and it glistreth like vnto lime and pitch. But this is sowre, and being powred vpon the ground, it is hote like vineger, and it riseth vp like leauen. It is also verie vnpleasant to all creatures liuing, so that neither mice nor flies will taste thereof. It sheweth likewise, like vnto aboundance of salt, wherein no liuing thing can

Scirrhus duplex.

Melancholia naturalis.

Scirrhus illegitimus.

Melancholia non naturalis.

Differentiæ 4. non naturalis melancholiæ.

Bilis atra exquisitè.

Gal. com. 21.

can vpholde his life, as the sea which is sayed to be dead. Furthermore this blacke kinde of choler is then ingendred, when as that slimie bloud, (which we haue said to be naturall melancholie) doth continue long in the bodie, and is purged out neither by any sensible nor secret effluxion: but is transformed, corrupted, and rotten. For truely this humour (sayeth *Galen*) when it waxeth vehemently hote, either because of the corruption thereof, or because of a burning feuer, it causeth melancholie: which truely is cold because it resembleth the nature of the earth, but yet it is not voide of heate, as is, ashes and vineger, and when it is purged downeward (as it happeneth sometime to them which are diseased with *Dysenteria*) it appeareth more glistering and more blacke then that thicke and blacke bloud, which we do call a melancholious humour. 2. The second *species* or difference of vnnaturall melancholie is that which commeth through the adustion of other humors, as that which proceedeth of choler vehemently burnt, which is of so great malice and rancour, that it raseth the earth, and lifteth it vp on high, after the manner of exquisite melancholie. But the flyes also do abhorre it, as in a true melancholie. If bloud also or fleume shall be vehemently heated in the bodie, and burnt, there is also caused a melancholicke humour, which *Auicen* because of the adustion, tearmed to be vnnaturall. But these two last kindes, which do come of the adustion of bloud and fleume, *Auicen* hath thought to be verie milde and gentle: yet *Galen* writeth, that that kinde of melancholie which is engendred of burnt choler, is a great deale more dangerous then that which hath his generation of grosse bloud, which is like vnto the dregs of wine in the bottome of a vessell, or in proportion resembling the dregs of oile, for this is more gentle and milde, yea and especially when as it tarieth not long within the bodie with any abundant heate exceeding nature. But before it be changed into exact melancholie, it passeth first into a yeallowish forme, secondly into a leekie substance, and thirdly into a rustie colour. 3. The third *species* of vnnaturall melancholie is that which borroweth his originall of a certaine stonie concretion, as when through the ignorance of vnskilfull Physitions or Chyrurgians, *Erysipelas*, and those inflammations which the Grecians call *phlegmone*, or any other tumours proceeding of naturall humours, are too vehemently cooled and bound by the applying of extraordinarie remedies: or else when those medicines which do mightily draw and digest, are ministred to the same tumours. For then (the whole substance which was verie small in them, being dispersed) the grosse matter which remaineth, being exceedingly dryed, will resemble the hardnesse of a stone, and be conuerted into a melancholious humour. 4. The fourth difference of vnnatural melancholy ariseth, when as some other humour is mixed with naturall melancholie, which thing while it happeneth, it is made sweet, and doth waxe milde, vntill such time as one burnt choler or other be commixed therewith, for then it waxeth sharpe, and bitter, and is made partaker of immoderat gnawing. We may gather therfore by our former words, that the 4. differēces of tumors aboue nature do proceed of melancholy: for first of naturall melancholy (which we haue said to breed daily in sound bodies) there is caused a true & lawful *scirrhus*, called of the Arabians *Sephiros*, but of the Greekes σκίρρος & σκίρρωσις ἐκ ἀκρισίας (that is) *scirrhus* or *scirrhus-*

Lib. 4. Apho. *Lib. 14. Therapeutices.*

2 *Melancholie commeth by the adustion of other humors.*

Com. 29. lib. 3. prædict. Hyp.

3 *Bilis atra per congelationem (vt vocant) & indurationem.*

4 *Melancholie through admixtion of other humors.*

Foure differences of tumours caused of melancholy.

Verus scirrhus non exquisitus

non exactus seu non exquisitus, which kind of tumour truely is very hard and void of paine, but yet not altogether insensible: *Auicen* calleth it *impurus*. Yet *Galen lib. 14. meth. med.* pardoning them which do contend about the names of tumors, calleth it a tumor conflated of a melancholious humor, & then properly *scirrhus*, when as notwithstanding it is expert of any feeling or sense, but if it be not yet made altogether insensible, it is rather to be called a scirrhous tumor, then *scirrhus* it selfe. Secondly of vnnaturall melancholy through the admixtiō of other humors there do grow three other differences of tumors (that is to say) *scirrhus phlegmonodes, œdematôdes, & Erysipelatôdes*, which diseases are here rehearsed for one onely difference. Thirdly of vnnaturall melancholie caused through a certaine stonie hardnesse and concretion, there is engendred an exquisite *scirrhus*, hard, and void of sense and paine, it is called of *Auicen*, *purus*, which euill admitteth no cure. Fourthly of vnnatural melancholy through deustion, are all the kinds of Cankers ingendred, aswell vlcerate as not vlcerate: of the which kind is *scirrhus cancrosus*. *Scirrhus* therfore properly is a tumor verie hard and without paine, but yet not altogether without feeling, proceeding of a natural melancholie, and vncorrupt humor, which definition the late Chirurgians haue assigned thereunto. The causes of *scirrhus*, as of other tumors besides nature are three. First primitiue, as is an euill diet, ingendring & gathering grosse and melancholike bloud. Second antecedent, as a melancholike humor collected in the bodie, which is drawne from the spleene (whose dutie it is to purge the liuer from that grosse and muddy bloud) and yet is not expelled without the body (as it ought to be.) Third, *Coniuncta causa* is the melancholike humour it selfe, compacted in the affected member. The signes of *scirrhus* his presence (as *Guido* reporteth) are these, a hard tumor, and mightily resisting, a middle colour between a red and a blacke, which is a brown colour. This *scirrhus* when it happeneth in the partes of the bodie, many of the Phisitions (as *Galen* saith) do call it *pelidnon*, that is to say, black & blew. Moreouer if the affected member hath any manifest veines appearing in it, you shall see them puffed vp and swolne by the meanes of thicke and blacke bloud, such as is sometime purged downward in them which labour, with the disease of the liuer, but then it is called *scirrhus impurus & cancrosus*. For these signes which *Guido* doth here ascribe vnto *scirrhus*, do properly agree with the signes of Cancer (as *Galen* writeth 14. *meth. med.* And truly they may very fitly be attributed vnto *scirrhus*, if this one thing be excepted, namely, that *scirrhus* hath not such swelling and full veines, as Cancer hath, except *scirrhus* (as we haue said before) chance to be *cancrosus*, for *scirrhus* doth oftentimes degenerate into Cancer, and that not without great cause, seeing that both proceed of one matter (that is) of a melancholike humour. The proper signes therefore of a lawfull *scirrhus* are these: a hard and stony tumor, very obstinate and resisting touching, wherein there is present a very dull sense. There do also appeare many other signes which do testifie the dominion of a melancholie humor in the body. Such tumors as are truly *scirrhi*, in their beginning and first conception are wont to appeare verie small, but in processe of time, they do growe and encrease by little and little, and become great and mightie, whereof some do annoy one onely member, but other some of the sayed tumours do leaue that member which they did first

Scirrhus phlegmonôdes, œdematôdes.

Erysipelatôdes.

Scirrhus exquisitus.

Scirrhus cancrosus.

Scirrhus proprie quid.

Causæ 3. scirrhi legitimi.

Signa.

14. meth. med.

Guido not as Cancri tribuit scirrho.

Iudicia scirrhi

first infest, and afterward do passe ouer into the possession of another, which thing when it happeneth, then *Auicen* calleth the euill *ferinos*. Furthermores these kinds of melancholious tumors if shey be rightly handled, they are commonly cured by resolution; often times they continue indurared and hard, and many times (which is worst of all) they degenerate and change into *Cancer*. *Ferinos.*

But now we will prosecute the absolute cure of these kindes of hard tumors aboue nature, which are called true *Scirrhi*, and not *Exquisiti*, by three speciall intentions. The first prescribeth a conuenient order of dyet. The second admonisheth to take away the antecedent matter, which is readie to procure the disease. The third warneth vs to enterprise the vacuation of that coniunct matter (as they call it) which now causeth the euill. Therefore (to speake generally) you must appoint to them which are diseased with *Scirrhus*, a sober and moderate diet, and such a one as declineth vnto heate and moisture in those things (which they call *res non naturales*) as before. Giue him therefore meates of good iuyce, and which can ingender good bloud. Let his bread be made of wheate, well kneaded, and baked in an ouen with a soft fire, and let it haue some leauen, and salt as much as shall suffice. Let his drinke be small Ale or Beere, giue him rere egges, the flesh of chickens, capons, hennes, and the brothes of them. Let him also eate the flesh of partriches, phesants, quailes, young kids, sucking calues, and of weathers of a yeare olde. For potherbes, let him vse that which the Arabians call *Aspanar*, but we somewhat altering the name do call it spinach: also lettuce, hops, borrage, bugloss, and other herbs of that nature which can purge forth bloud, and make it more pure. To conclude, let him flie and auoid all those things, which naturally do engender melancholike bloud, which things *Galen in libro tertio de affectis capite sexto* hath described vnto vs, as are, the flesh of Goates, and of oxen, and of bulles, but especially the flesh of Asses, and of camnels, of foxes and of dogs, of hares also and of bores. Furthermore, snayles, (if they be accustomed to be eaten) and the flesh of all terrestriall creatures seasoned with salt. The flesh also of fishes, as of Tunie, of the fish called *Balana*, the sea calfe, the Dolphin, the dogfish, & of all kind of Whales. But of potherbs, coleworts, is wont onely to engender this kinde of bloud. The buddes also of trees, when they are seasoned either with brine or with *Oxalme*; especially of the tree called a mastixe tree, of the Terebinth, of the brier, and of the wilde eglantine brier (which the Greekes call *Cynobatos*.) But of all kind of pulse, lintels chiefly are accounted amongest the number of melancholike meates. Bread also made of branne, and that which is made of Rie and of other corrupt and naughtie seedes, which other Countries do vse in stead of corne. Moreouer, thicke and blacke wines are verie fit to engender a melancholious humor: especially, if one drinking them abundantly, doth by occasion keepe his bodie in great heat. Finally old cheese when as by chance it shall be exceedingly hote in the bodie, doth easily breed this kind of humour. These things haue we hitherto recited out of *Galen*. Furmore you must diligently beware of meates that are burnt, rosted, and fried, which do vehemently drie vp, of salt meats also, and of those which are sharpe and sowre, as onyons, garlicke, peppers, mustard, and of other things of that kinde which do burne the bloud. You must also eschue anger, wrath, sadnesse, *The cure of a true & lawful scirrhus, yet not exquisite, & growne into a stony hardnesse, altogether insensible. Three intentions. Victus ratio. Euchyma. Panis. Potus. Oua. Carnes. Olera. Carnes. Limaces. Pisces. Olera. Oxalme is made of vinegar and salte. Leguminum. panis. Typha. Vinum. Caseus. Sanguinem. adurentia. Animi pathemata.*

Exercitatio.

watchings, heaulneſſe, carefulneſſe, and immoderate exerciſes. Quietneſſe and tranquillitie of minde, with mirth and gladneſſe is greatly to be deſired: and you muſt diligently endeuour euerie day to emptie the bellie. Hitherto concerning the firſt ſcope. 2. Now that we may accompliſh that which our ſecond intention doth propound: let vs ſomwhat conſider the precept of *Auicen*, who willeth vs to euacuate the whole body both by bloudletting, if too blacke and groſſe bloud ſhall appeare, and alſo by ſome purging medicine, which can expell melancholie, as are thoſe which follow, out of *Meſua*, *Epithymum*, *Senæ*, *polypodye*, *fumus terræ* (which of the Græcians is called *Capnos* or *Capnios*, of the Latines *fumaria*) *lupulus*, and the herbe called *volubilis*. Alſo *Caſia fiſtula*, *myrabalani Indi*, *lapis lazuli*, which the Greekes call *Cyaneus*, the Romanes *Cæruleus*, *Diacene*, *diacatholicon*, *hiera*, *Ruphi*, all which things do purge forth melancholike humors. But theſe things which pertaine vnto phiſicke do exceed the bounds of Chyrurgians. Omitting therefore the profeſſors of the Art of Phiſicke, we will haſten vnto the third ſcope, which we ſhall verie ſpeedily diſpatch, if we labour to emptie out all that matter, which vnnaturally is compacted in the aggrieued member. Which truly is the generall and principal indication of all tumours which conſiſt about nature: in which that leekie matter (as we haue ſaid before) is not yet engendred. But this is the onely and proper way to euacuate them, about the which the Chyrurgian ought to be verie circumſpect & attentiue. For truly the matter of ſuch kind of tumours, is naturally ſo malignant and ſtubborne, that it will turne into a ſtonie hardneſſe if it be raſhly reſolued. Againe, if it be mollified more then is exquiſite, it is greatly to be feared that it will putrifie and corrupt, and that *Scirrhus* will degenerate into *Cancer*. We muſt therfore in this caſe follow the counſell of *Galen* and *Paulus* (who wrote of this thing long before *Auicen*.) Namely, that in ſuch ſcirrhous affects, we muſt not applie any vehement, hot, and drying medicine, neither any thing elſe which hath the power only to mollifie and moiſten. For that tumor which hath a ſuperfluous humor, it doth nothing at all diſſolue: but that which hath a ſmall fluxe, it doth more drie vp then need requireth. Hereupon *Auicen* did well admoniſh vs, to apply to theſe indurated tumours by turnes, ſometime mollifying, and ſometime digeſting remedies. But becauſe that order was verie tedious, and hard to be done, it pleaſed *Galen* to vſe for the cure of theſe euilles, ſuch medicines as had a mixed and double facultie, which deuiſe was more ſafe and leſſe dangerous. For by this meanes we ſhall both mollifie and digeſt the indurate and hard ſubſtance all at one time: yet in the beginning we muſt commixe ſomething with them which can moderately repreſſe. For this purpoſe, *Auicen* hath ſet downe many kindes of remedies, which becauſe they are rather appointed for thoſe *Scirrhi* which proceed of *phlegmone* and *Eryſipelas* when they be exceedingly cooled (as we will declare in the chapters following) we will omit them making choice of that medicine which *Razis in libro ſeptimo ad Almanſorem* hath deſcribed: vſing notwithſtanding at the beginning ſome equall repreſſion of the flowing of humours (by applying ſome moderate repelling remedie.) The forme of the medicine is this. R. of *Bdellium*, *Ammoniacum*, and *Galbanum*, of each a like quantitie: beate them in a morter with oyle *deben*, which the Greeks call *balanum myrepſice*, the Latines,

2 *Vacuatio materiæ antecedentis.*

3 *Vacuatio materiæ coniunctæ*

Materia ſcirrhorum cautè tractanda. Gal. 2. ad Glauc.

Medicines good for ſcirrhus.

Razis medicamentum ad ſcirrhos emolliendos & diſcutiendos.

Glans

Glam vnguentaria, or with oyle of lillies. Then take of the filth of fenugreeke, of lineseed, and of figges the weight of all the former things: bray them altogether till they be throughly incorporated the one with the other. *Galen* for this cure doth greatly commend the barke of the roote of *Althea*, which the common sort (sayth he) doth call *Anadendromalache*, as though one would say, *arborescens malua*, melted with the fat of a goose or of a cocke, and then beaten together, and brought into the forme of a cataplasme. But if the tumor doth belong vnto suppuration, you must be verie warie, least the affected member be incended or stirred with hot medicines, or by any other meanes, for so *Cancer* should easily be procured. But if the tumour be opened, and the substance thereof alreadie turned into matter, you must vse the helpe of that ointment which is called *diachylon*. Againe, if it shall degenerate into a stony hardnesse, you must straightway repaire vnto those remedies which shall be described in the chapter following.

Galeni cataplasma, Therap. 14.

If Scirrhus will matter.

But now when as through the vnskilfulnesse and ignorance of Phisitions, those inflammations which the Græcians call *phlegmone* or *Erysipelata* are exceedingly refrigerated, or else rashly resolued through the ministring of such medicines as can vehemently draw and digest by their vapour: then all that substance which is any thing thinne and slender in them, is dissolued, but that which remaineth behind, being as it were congealed together, and marvellously dried vp, doth take vnto it a stonie hardnesse, and at the last commeth to that disease which is called of the Greekes *Scirrhus*. But it chanceth sometime that some member is hardened through extention of the flesh, which commeth by reason of winde or by some waterish humour (as we haue sayed before in our Treatise of flatuous and watersh tumours.) Oftentimes also there ariseth vp in certaine members a stonie hardnesse, caused of the priuation of the moisture of the bodie, and through too much drynesse, as it happeneth in the hardnesse of the ioynts, and in the pores of the bodie when the gowt or such like diseases do raigne. But here we will onely discourse of *Scirrhus*, or of other hard tumours, which haue their originall from *phlegmone* or *Erysipelas* or else from *œdema*, when as they be greatly refrigerate and cooled, which tumours we haue termed not without some reason *Scirrhi ex coincidentia procreati* (that is) *Scirrhi* proceeding of an vnlaw, being as it were a double disease incident both at one time. The signes and tokens of an vnlawfull *Scirrhus*, which is not exquisite or perfect are these; a hard tumour, scarce sensible, that is, as though it were without feeling and paine, perfectly representing the colour of the bodie, drawing his beginning from vnnatural melancholie. This euill is not altogether incurable, and yet it admitteth no easie cure, neither is it easily remedied. For that humour whereupon this euill gathereth his force, is clammish, glewish, and thicke, or (as *Galen* sayth) a partaker of both kindes, which when it is stuffed in the hard members, it doeth obstinately withstand resolution, and when the humiditie thereof is throughly resolued, then that which remaineth behind, is dried vp, and made as hard as a stone. But an exquisite *Scirrhus*, and such a one as is altogether insensible, doth not receiue anie cure. But if it may be holpen anie way, it must be done by some moystening medicine. That hardnesse also which commeth through

Scirrhus illegitimus & non exquisitus. Quomodo generetur.

The causes of hardnesse in the partes of the bodie.

Scirrhi ex coincidentia procreati.

The signes of an vnlawfull Scirrhus.

Iudicia.

Scirrhus ex quisitus curationem non admittit.

too much exciccation, and when the moisture of the bodie is cleane extinguished, is also incurable, for it is sufficient if you stop it, that the drinesse may proceed no further. But those *scirrhi* also, wherein there do grow certain haires, and which are great and verie hard, and do resemble the colour of the bodie, are neither cured, nor yet changed at any time into any other disease, as *Auicen* hath declared.

Scirrhi incurabiles.

Summa curandorum scirrhorum.

The common and generall declaration of curing these tumours, is in this order described: namely, to euacuate all that matter which vnnaturally is cõtained in the member. For the onely way of euacuation (as *Galen* hath noted *lib.* 14. *meth. med.*) is this, euen to clense and draw out that corruption, which stubburnly doth cleaue vnto the humour. But if any man shall assay to make euacuation by those medicines which do vehemently drawe and digest, neither shall mollifie and soften with any drying & moistning remedies, the cure shall seeme to him within few dayes greatly to haue preuailed: for *Scirrhus* will manifestly appeare to be diminished, but that which remaineth of the disease will be incurable. For truely when the whole substaunce which is verie thinne in the tumour, is digested or dispersed, then that which remaineth behinde, is turned into a certaine stonie concretion. For this cause therefore there is no medicine that doth vehemently heate or drie vp, meete and conuenient for these hard and scirrhous affects, but such remedies onely, which can fitly both mollifie, and also digest, as are these things following: the marrow of a hart and of a calfe, also gotes suet, bulles suet, the tallow of a lybard and of a Lyon. Among the fat of birds, gooses greace is greatly commended, next that the fat of a ducke and of a phesant. Also *ammoniacum thymiama, viz. suffimen*, perfume *galbanum*, and *bdellium* of both kindes, but rather that which is called *scirhicum*, because it is somewhat moist. *Storax* also, which is somthing moist and fat. Moreouer the roote of *althea*, and of the wild mallow, which groweth almost euerie where, the leaues whereof must be moderately boyled with gooses or cockes suet, or if there be none of these at hand, you may vse swines greace; these remedies are greatly profitable for this intention. But *Auicen* warneth vs not to commixe any hogges tallow that is salted with the former things, and to vse *Mastiche*, *ladanum*, oyle of wooll, *strygmenta gymnasiorum*, (which they call the filthinesse of bathes) asses dung, and the dregs of oile of lillies, of oyle of *alchanna* which they call *cyprinum*, and of *cherua*, which of the Greeks is called *khrixo*, but of the Latines *recinum*. But that cure which is administred by vineger is profitable for this euill, that is, for *scirrhus* which is full growne, and when the member is prepared to receiue mollifying medicines, as *Galen* also hath declared: for truly saith he, the force of vineger, if it be vsed moderatly & in due time, is verie wholesome in these diseases, because it doth deuide and resolue the grosse humors included in them: but if it be applyed immoderatly and out of a conuenient season, it violently consumeth the thinner partes, and maketh that which remaineth behind to become verie hard, also if it be vsed long, it will diminish and corrupt the verie substance of the sinewes. For this cause therefore, we must not verie often nor at the beginning, nor any long time, apply those medicines to the great sinewes or cords of the body, which are compounded and made of vineger. Wherefore *Galen* did

Medullæ sena.

Adipes.

Gal. 14. meth. med.

Anadendromalache.

Oleum recinũ.

14. Meth. mid. Vsus Aceti.

did cure the childe of one Cercilius, who through too much cooling and vehement binding of *erysipelas*, had a hard and scirrhus tumour remaining in his thigh, after this maner. First he annointed his thigh, with *oleum sabinum*, which of alkoyles is most thin, in stead whereof they vse in these daies *oleum sambucinum*, oile of elder, which the common sort call *iasminum*. When he had thus washed and annointed the member, he applied *ammoniacum thimiama*, which must be grosse and not very olde, commixed with the aforesaide suettes and marrowes. Afterward he annointed his whole thigh round about with very fat *ammoniacum*, dissolued in exceeding sharpe vineger, and commanded the childe to hoppe on the other legge, that so the more nourishment mought be brought vnto it. By such medicines therefore as could release and mollifie the tumour, and by digesting or resoluing remedies also, and by the moderat and right vse thereof, he perfectly cured the childe. But in those great sinewes and ligaments of the body, which are drawen together and couered with *scirrhus*, you must vse vineger after this sort, as *Galen* counselleth vs. Take a stone, and heate it very hote in the fire, and quench it in very sharpe vineger, if it be possible, let the stone be that, which we call *pyrites*, but if there be no plenty thereof, take the stone called *lapis molaris*, which the Greekes call *mylites*, then let the affected member bee holden ouer the hote vapour that riseth vp from the stone out of the vineger, that it may receiue the steeming vapour, which doth dissolue *scirrhus*: and afterward lay on againe some mollifying medicine: yet the affected part must be euery day cuē from the beginning throughly annointed with oile and not with water, which oile must not be adstrictiue in any case, but of a thinne substance, as is oile of sauin. But sometime you may boile in oile the rootes of *althea*, and of the wilde cucumber, and other things of that sort. By this methode of curing, many men truely haue bene perfectly healed in a short space, so that some haue thought it (as *Galen* saith) to be done by the art of Magicke. By these things therefore it doth plainely appeare, that with that cure, which is accomplished by mollifying remedies, aswell in the sinewes, as in the ligaments of the body, you must commixe some medicine that can cut, dissolue and diuide, among which number vineger is chiefly the principall. Now as concerning other medicines which can mollifie the hardnesse of these tumours, we haue spoken nothing hoping that they may easily be gathered out of our former discourse. Now followeth the summe of the cure of *scirrhus* tumor, which we haue drawn into a compendious forme hereafter ensuing. 1. That kinde of *scirrhus*, which hauing all his humidity and moisture consumed and wasted, is growen into a stony hardnesse, and is altogether destitute of sence (as is that which *Galen* calleth *exquisitus scirrhus*) of such a *scirrhus*, I say, attempt not the cure, but leaue it as an euill incurable. 2. To *scirrhus non exquisitus*, which is not altogether insensible, and yet scarce feeleth any thing) apply such medicines as cary with them a maruellous heat, and a meane moisture (that is to say) which by mollifying, can also moderatly digest. 3. Vnto such members as are infected with *scirrhus*, minister no remedies which do vehemently digest, & immoderatly dry vp, for in them their small humidity is quickly resolued, and then that which abideth still behinde, is dried vp and turned into a stony hardnesse. 4. In hard and grosse members,

Historia. Lib. 2. ad Glauconem.

Oleum sabinum.

Suffimentum.

The cure of scirrhus, sinewes, and veines, out of Galen and Paulus.

Lapis ylites. Lapis pyrites.

Oleū sabinum

2. ad Glauconem.

Lib. 6.

The summe of curing scirrhus tumours.

1

2

3

4

which are annoied with *scirrhus* (as are the great vessels of the body) and in other places also, where the euill is inueterate, you must commixe such medicines as haue power to cut and diuide, as is vineger, with those remedies
5 which can mollifie and moderatly digest. 5. Also command, that this *scirrhus* member which is hard and grosse, or any other part besides, which is affected with *scirrhus*, be holden ouer the hote vapour of *lapis molaris* burnt in the fire,
6 and quenched in vineger: and let this be done often. 6. Furthermore let the aggrieued member be euery day annointed with some thinne oile, wherein either the roote of the wilde cucumber, or of *althæa*, or greene and fresh dill,
7 or some such like thing hath bene boiled and infused. 7. Apply vnto the aforesaide *scirrhous* members such medicines as can dry, diuide, and resolue the grosse humours moderately (that is to say) neither often, nor any long time, nor out of conuenient season, that is, not at the beginning of the disease, to
8 preuent the vse of mollifying remedies. 8. To conclude, all such *scirrhus* tumours, as are not indurated and of a stony hardnesse, let them be cured with
9 such medicines as can fitly digest and mollifie. 9. Last of all commit the cure of a *scirrhous* splene and a lapidous liuer, to the wisedome of the Phisition.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of a cancerous Tumour, which they commonly call Cancer Apostematosus.

Cancer pertaineth vnto two kindes of diseases.

THe name and title of the disease called *Cancer*, among the Phisitions and Chirurgians hath diuerse and sundry significations: for the notifying or declaration thereof is extended vnto two kindes of diseases (that is to say) vnto a cancerous tumour (which they commonly call *cancer Apostematosus* aswell that which is euident and appeareth in the outward members, as that which is hidden, and lieth in the inward and secret parts of the body, as in the hips, the rouse of the mouth and in the pappes of a woman) the other signification pertaineth vnto an vlcerate cancer. But both these euils are engendred of melancholy (that is to say) of such a humour, as resembleth the dregges of wine, and the filthines of oile, which thing *Galen libro decimo quarto therapeutices*, and in his little booke *de tumoribus præter naturam* doth plainely testifie. Now this aforesayd humour, when it is quiet, milde, and gentle, it engendreth a secret or an inward *cancer* without any vlcer. But if it happeneth to be sharpe, fierce, and malignant, it gnaweth the skinne, and causeth a cancre with an vlcer. But here we will onely discourse of that kinde of cancre which hath his residence in the outward parts of the body, and of that which is not yet exulcerate, which also sometime (as *Galen* affirmeth) is said to be a priuy cancre. That cancre therefore, whereof we here intreate, is a hard tumour, vnequall, round, hauing the veines round about it, swollen and puffed vp, it is blue or browne, and (as *Paulus* saith) it is more blacke in colour then in an inflammation, it is also hote, but yet not so vehement as inflammations are, it sodainely increaseth, and greatly wearieth the sicke, and afflicteth them almost with a continuall griefe: in Greeke it is called καρκῖνος, and καρκίνωμα, which title aswell the Latines as the Grecians haue assigned to this disease of the fishe called a crabbe, because the

1

Of what humour cancer is engendred.
Cancer sine vlcere.
Cancer cum vlcere.

2

Cancrosi tumoris descriptio.

Cancri nomen à cancro aquatico.

the veines about this euill are filled and ſtretched out, very like vnto the feete of crabs, deſcending from the round compaſſe of their bodies. But ſome haue giuen it this name, becauſe it is very hardly pulled away from thoſe members, which it doth lay hold on, as the ſea crabbe doth, who obſtinately doth cleaue to that place which it once hath apprehended. Moreouer this tumor doth alſo repreſent the colour of a crabbe, whoſe hew is very blacke. But the firſt beginnings of theſe cancres are ſometime ſo confuſed and ſo ſmal, that the common ſort may be ignorant thereof: for when they do beginne, they do ſcarce reſemble the greatneſſe of a peaſe or of a beane. Wherefore it is no maruaile (ſaith *Galen*) though the common ſort doe not know them, for they be like vnto the little rootes that ariſe out of the earth, which are not diſcerned but of skilfull husbandmen. But afterward they grow vp into ſuch a huge greatnes, and do bring with them ſo vehement, great, and manifeſt *ſymptomates*, that a childe may eaſily diſcerne them. Let no man therefore doubt of the name thereof, ſeeing all men with one conſent doe terme this kinde of diſeaſe *cancer*, becauſe (as wee haue ſaide) the veines in this euill do ſwell on euery ſide, and are greatly ſtretched out, and they doe repreſent the forme and likeneſſe of a crabbe. A cancerous tumour (as we haue ſayd before) is hard and vnequall, which by the touching of it doth plainly appeare. It hath a blue or browne colour, which is a meane betweene red and blacke, called of the Greekes πελιδνον. About the place where cancre is lodged, there is felt a certaine beating or pulſe, and as it were a pricking: ſometime alſo (as *Celſus* ſaith) the tumour is a ſleepe, and as it were dead. It maketh the veines round about it to ſwell and riſe vp, like vnto the cancre in the armes. Often times alſo in ſome they are ſecretly hidden, & when the place is touched, it is felt in ſome very painefull, but in other ſome it is contrary. This tumour alſo is marueilouſly ſtout, and reſiſteth touching. Moreouer it hath in it a certaine ſtrange, and extraordinary heate. *Cancer* or *carcinoma* generally is a grieuous and pernicious diſeaſe, for it can ſcarcely be healed any way, by reaſon of the groſnes of the humour, neither can it be repreſſed or diſcuſſed, neither will it yeeld to any purgation, though it be throughout the whole body. The malice alſo of this diſeaſe is ſo great, that it contemneth all gentle and eaſie remedies, putting forth but the middle finger to them (as the prouerbe is) but it muſt be ſtirred and chafed, and ouercome with very vehement remedies (as we wont to doe in the euill called *crabro*.) This diſeaſe is wont to happen in euery part of the body, but eſpecially in the vpper parts about the face, the noſethrils, the eares, the lippes, and about the pappes of women, and of thoſe chiefly, which are not naturally purged of menſtruis. But cancres do alſo commonly haunt men, whoſe accuſtomed purgings are ſuppreſſed through hemorrhoids growing in the fundament: for by them, that groſſe & thicke bloud (whereupon this euill taketh his firſt beginning) is wont naturally to be purged out. Moreouer when this melancholious humor, reſembling in proportion the dregs of wine, doth deſcend & flow into any member, and there abideth compact together: it cauſeth ſometime the diſeaſe called *varices*, and ſometime it breedeth a cancre, as when the ſame is ſomewhat cooled. But when it is thruſt out to the whole skinne, it cauſeth that euill, which they call *elephans*. *Cancer* therefore

Cancri notæ per initia communia fugæ, & obſcura. Lib. 14. Ther.

Notæ cancri euidentis non vlcerati.

Iudicia. Lib. 14. Ther.

Celſus lib. 5.

Gal. lib. 2. ad Glauconem.

is a certaine particular *elephantiasis*, which the common sort call *lepra*, the lepry. But the thicker and the blacker the bloud is, whereof cancre proceedeth, the more daungerous will the disease be. Now when Cancre is full growen, as they say, and inueterate, it admitteth not any cure, except it be plucked vp by the roots, either by section or by adustion: but those cancres, which haue their constitution in the inward partes of the body, doe not desire any such kind of cure, as that auncient *Hippocrates* simply the Prince of Phisitions hath taught vs very well in the Aphorisme following: saying that it is not good to cure all inward cancres: for when they are cured, they doe soone perish againe, but when they are not cured, they remain a long time. For experience hath taught vs, as *Galen* witnesseth in his commentary vppon this Aphorisme, that they which enterprise the cure of these cancres either by section or vstion, doe rather encrease their fury then abate it, whereby they shortly destroy those men whom this euill hath attached. Those cancres therfore are only curable which do sticke in the outward part of the body, and which are exulcerate, and doe so weary the sicke, that they willingly desire the diligence of the Chirurgian: and these tumors also do consist in those parts, which a man may cut and seare off by the roots. Now when I name the roots of *Cancer*, I meane as *Galen* affirmeth, those veins which are full of melancholicke bloud, and which euery way are extended toward the places lying about the tumour. But of an vnulcerate cancre, there often proceedeth an vlcerate tumor, when as in processe of time the humor doth putrifie, and the disease is couched in the vessels of the body, or else when it is stirred and made worse by medicines vnaduisedly ministred. This exulcerate cancre of all others is thought to be most vile, because it doth altogether resist that true cure, which attempteth and worketh all thinges to bring the sicke member vnto health, for this tumour, to cure it perfectly & absolutely, doth require gnawing, sharpe, and vehement medicines: howbeit by such remedies, as we haue said, it is the more prouoked & stirred to anger, and therefore it cannot be, that it should either be lenified, or cured by the. It shall therfore be sufficient to hinder the encreasing of vnulcerate cancres, which as yet do occupy the outward parts of the body, especially those which be great and inueterate, withdrawing our skill from any perfect cure, which thing *Hippocrates* also hath admonished vs of in his former Aphorisme. For those tumors which doe weary the sicke without exulceration, *Galen* also hath called them secret and inward cancres, wherein both their vehement heat, and their great pulse or beating doe threaten or foretell exulceration to ensue. The cure of a cancre which is not yet vlcerat, but newly begun, hath three principall intentions. 1. The first is to stop the generation of the melancholike humour. 2. The second is to empty out the melancholious humour dispersed throughout the whole body. 3. The third is to digest the humour which possesseth the affected member, and to strengthen, & confirme the diseased place. The first intention is finished by a iust & due obseruation of that kind of diet, which is before prescribed in the chapter *de scirrho legitimo*. But among other things this is chiefly & principally to be obserued, (namely) that such nourishment be giuen to the diseased, as haue vertue to refrigerate and moisten, and which doe engender good and slender iuice: as are these, the iuice of barley steeped in water and

Aphor. 38. lib. 6.

What cancre must be rooted out, and what not.

An exulcerate cancre worst of all.

What things doe foretell exulceration.

Curatio cancri non vlcerati.

Primus scopus.

Victus ratio tenuis sit & probi succi.

pressed,

preſſed, fiſhes of grauelly places, birds of all kindes, ſaue thoſe which liue in fenny grounds, the yolkes of egs, but ſpecially of rere egs, (which the Grecians call ῥοφητὰ) and other things of that ſort. But if any extreame heat ſhall infeſt the aggrieued place, and yet without a feauer, you may ſafely giue him bullocks milke, from the which the butter is taken, or elſe the whey of milke. Pot herbes alſo, which haue a coole and moiſt nature, as mallowes, orage, ſpinach, & when time ſerueth gourdes: citrons alſo and borage may be giuen him in meate. The ſecond ſcope (which is to purge the whole body from that melancholy humour, whereof this euill proceedeth) is accompliſhed by the applying of purging medicines, which are appointed to euacuate melancholy, whereof you may finde plenty in the Chapter of *ſcirrhus*: among the which *epithymum* (which the Romaines call *inuolucrum*) as a preſent remedy doth obtaine the preheminence, whereof you muſt take foure drams ſteeped in the whey of milke, or in *mulſa*, (as *Galen* commaundeth *lib.* 14. *meth. med.*) But this quantity of *epithymum*, or ſomwhat more, muſt be offered euery third day, that the melancholicke humour, which is gathered together in the veines, & cauſeth the generation of cancre, may by little and little be emptied and purged out, becauſe it is impoſſible to euacuat all at one time But we cannot alwaies prohibit the fluxe, leaſt afterward the like humour be engendred in the body, and compact together in the veines. The purging therefore of the antecedent matter muſt be attempted at the beginning, as it were by turnes, by the applying of ſome ſimple medicine: afterward (if the matter ſo requireth and the miniſtring of ſimples doth little auaile) you may vſe the help of ſome compound remedies, as is that medicin of *Galen* dedicated for the purging of melancholy, which conſiſteth of two and thirty ſimples, or *hiera Ruffi*, or *hiera Auicennæ*, which is made of blacke *helleborus*. But you muſt not deſiſt from thoſe former rehearſed purgations, vntill the whole melancholious humor which is ſtuffed in the veines be brought out, and vntill the member which is beſet with this cancrous tumour, be throughly reduced to his naturall ſtate. But if nothing do let it, as age and ſtrength, it ſhall not be amiſſe in theſe cancres to let bloud, and then to purge (as we haue ſaid before:) and if they be women, you muſt labour to purge menſtruis, if they be not aboue fifty years old (as *Galen* hath taught vs *lib.* 2. *ad Glauconem.*) This ſecond indication (ſaith *Galen*) is the firſt and chiefe of all, for that which is put in the firſt place, doth rightly challenge the ſecond degree. The generall manifeſtation therefore (ſaith he) of the cure of a cancre, conſiſteth in the ſpeedy emptying out of that humor wherof this euill groweth, and in the prohibition and ſtopping thereof, and to forſee, (if it be poſſible) that this melancholious humor be not collected in the veins by the meanes of another. But if that thing cannot be brought to paſſe, you muſt euacuate the humour by turnes, now ſome and then ſome, and you muſt alſo endeuour to ſtrengthen the member, leaſt the abundance of the humors do plentifully flow vnto it. 3. The third intention, which is generall to all ſuch diſeaſes comming of the flowing of humors, doth will vs to digeſt the humor, which lurketh in the affected member, and to roborate the ſame, leaſt the humors abundantly haue acceſſe thereunto: moreouer you muſt appoint a conuenient time to repell that which is flowen, and that truely in the beginning,

Secundus ſcopus. *Humoris melancholici vacuatio.* *Epithymum.* *Hiera Ruffi* *Hiera Auicennæ.* *Sanguinis miſſio.* *Lib.* 14. *meth. medendi.* *Tertius ſcopus.*

aſwell in the very time of purging, as before, but now, when the whole body is throughly purged, then may you lawfully endeuor to digeſt, and if there went before but a ſmall and meane purging, then you muſt apply ſome remedy which hath a mixed faculty, that is to ſay, which can both repreſſe and digeſt. Now, that we may iuſtly accompliſh theſe intentions, we muſt make choiſe of thoſe medicines, which are of a meane force, and of a gentle quality, for ſuch remedies are moſt conuenient for theſe diſeaſes. For thoſe which cary with them a weake and feeble power do worke no effect (as *Galen* ſaith) but are eaſily ouercome: but ſuch remedies as are ſtrong and mighty, doe vehemently either digeſt or thruſt backe the thinne bloud which lieth in the veines: but the groſſe and melancholicke partes, which we haue likened before to the dregges of wine, they neither purge forth nor repreſſe: but rather doe make them more obſtinate and more hard to be diſſolued and diſcuſſed. Therefore to cure theſe cancres, but yet beginning, you muſt vſe medicines of a meane and moderat ſtrength, which neither their imbecillity can be vanquiſhed, nor for the vehemency can mightily thicken the bloud. Furthermore you muſt apply (as it is ſaid) ſuch medicines as are gentle and which doe not gnaw or bite: becauſe the malignity of the euill through ſuch vehement medicins is ſtirred and prouoked, and made more fierce and ſauage (as we commonly terme it.) But when the matter, whereof theſe cancres doe come, is for the moſt part groſſe and thicke and diſobedient to reſolution, and partener alſo with many other vicious humours, we ſhall deale ſufficiently in this caſe (eſpecially, when we feare the daunger of Chyrurgery, and that the euill cannot otherwiſe be cured) if we by the vſe of the former remedies, which are made of burnt and waſhed metals (as *Galen* counſelleth) ſhall ſtop and hinder their growing and encreaſing, eſpecially, if they be great tumors: or elſe after the opinion of *Auicen*, if wee ſeeke to defend them from vlceration. For the which intentions, *Galen lib. 2. ad Glaucon.* doth greatly commend the iuice of nightſhade, and that medicine which is made of *pompholygos*, or that which conſiſteth of *chalcites* cõmonly called *diapalma*. Therefore *Theodoriticus* alſo for the ſame purpoſe, appointed the ointment named *diapompholygos*, which is made of oile of roſes, of white waxe. ana. ℥. v. of the iuice of red pomgranats, and of nightſhade. ana. ℥. iiij. of ceruſe waſhed. ℥. ij. of lead burnt and waſhed, of *pompholygos*, which is commonly called *tuthia*. ana. ℥. j. of frankenſence. ℥. ß. *Galen* alſo reporteth *libro primo de compoſitione pharmacorum ſecundum locos*, which booke is entituled of the auncient interpreter *myamis*, a certaine ointment inuented of *Apollonius* for vlcers appearing in the head, which the Greekes call *achoræ*, which ointment hee affirmeth to be very effectuall againſt theſe cancrous tumours. The medicine is this. ℞. of oile of roſes, or of vnripe oliues, *hemina*, which the Greekes call *cotyle* viz. ℥ vij. ß, which muſt bee infuſed or put into a leaden mortar, and ſtirred vp and downe with a leaden ladle, or elſe brayed with a leaden peſtill ſo long till it waxe thicke and blacke, reſembling the very colour of lead: then beate by it ſelfe alone, of *lythargirum. lib.* 1. of ceruſe as much, and commixe them with the oile, and make an ointment. Moreouer how great the force of lead is in all ſuch cancrous diſpoſitions, eſpecially that which is burnt and waſhed: all men may ſufficiently know, which haue had ſome experience thereof,

Quod aptum medicamẽtum cancris.

Lib. 14. Ther.

Succus ſolani.
Diapompholygos.
Diaphenicon ſeu diapalma.
Vnguentum diapompholygos Theodoritici.
Appolonij medicamentum.

The force of lead is marueilous in cancred tumours.
Paulus lib. 4. ex archigene.

thereof, and which haue ſtudiouſly peruſed thoſe things which *Galen libro nono de ſimplicium medicamentorum facultate* doth write of lead, which hee him ſelfe calleth in Greeke *molybdos*. For this cancrous diſeaſe *Paulus* and *Auicen*, doe greatly commend the emplaiſter made of ſea crabbes, eſpecially if it be mingled with an equall quantity of the ſcourings of braſſe. Take therefore of ſea crabs burned, and of the offall of braſſe an euen portion, beat them to flower, and ſtraw them vpon the tumour, or elſe lay on the aſhes of the crabbes with a ſearce cloath or cerat. But the ſame *Auicen* willeth to plucke vp theſe litle cancres hard by the rootes, or elſe to cut them off, and then to wring and crouſe out the thicke bloud on euery ſide, and afterward ſeare the place with ſome hote inſtrument. For this doth diſſipate the relictes of the matter, and conſumeth them, it ſtrengthneth the member and ſtoppeth the fluxe of bloud. *Galen* alſo before *Auicen* his time, did allow that cancres might ſometime be cured by Chirurgery. *Lib. 14. Meth. med.*

But truely although *Galen* and *Auicen* doe permit this manuall cure by Chirurgery: yet to auoide the daunger of immoderate fluxe of bloud, and of vlceration, yea and of the life of the ſicke, omitting thoſe things, we ought to follow that preſcript rule of curing, which is onely accompliſhed by gentle and milde medicines, as a more ſafe way and leſſe troubleſome, and to content our ſelues with that onely methode: becauſe that if ſuch a cancrous tumour, which is growen to a mighty bigneſſe, ſhould be cut round about in thoſe places, which are ioyned to the whole partes, the daunger of immoderate profuſion of bloud woulde ſtraight follow, by reaſon of the greatneſſe of the veſſelles and wideneſſe of the arteries, which partes (ſaith *Galen*) if you ſhould take vp and binde them with cordes, the other members by reaſon of their neare acquaintaunce would be troubled and greatly grieued. *Chirurgery not raſhly to be vſed in cancres.*

Moreouer *Celſus* ſaith, that although *cartinomata* be cut off, and brought to a ſcarre, yet they will returne againe, and giue occaſion of death. But if you intend to ſeare off the rootes of this euill, yet truely you cannot doe this neither without hurting of the next parts, eſpecially if you make exuſtion neare vnto the principall members. Great cancres therefore, and thoſe which are inueterat, muſt neither raſhly be burned with any inſtrument, nor cutte off with a penknife, but rather handled gently and mildly (as we haue ſayd before.) For many men not by the applying of any forcible or vehement medicins to take away this euill, but by the onely miniſtring of eaſie and gentle remedies, which can as it were pleaſe or delight, haue ſo hindred theſe tumours, that they could not attaine vnto any perfect age or ripeneſſe. *Lib. 5.*

Now followeth the ſumme of the cure of *Cancer non vlceratus*, which is yet but beginning, and doth occupy the outward partes of the body, briefly in theſe wordes. *Capita curationis Cancri non vlcerati.*

1. Inprimis in a Cancre which is but newly begun, and which conſiſteth of no very thicke humour, nor cauſeth the veines to ſwell greatly: purge out the melancholicke humour which cauſeth this euill vniuerſally throughout the whole body. 1

2. If age and ſtrength doth ſuffer it, cutte a veine in the elbow, and draw out as much bloud as neede requireth. 2

3. Afterward miniſter to the ſicke ſuch medicines as can purge melancholy downeward: in the beginning let them be gentle and eaſie, but afterward ſomewhat vehement encreaſing their force by litle and litle. 3

4. If the purging of menſtruis in women before fifty yeares of

age, or if hemorrhoides both in them and in men be ſo ſuppreſſed, that bloud aboundeth not at times now and then, you muſt prouoke them by all meanes poſſible. 5. In the meane time appoint vnto the ſicke a thinne diet, which can engender good iuice, and cauſe no melancholicke bloud. 6. If you cannot auoide it, but that a groſſe and melancholious humour be gathered together in the veines: you muſt euacuate the ſame by turnes, both with ſimple and compound medicines. But theſe former Aphoriſmes do pertaine vnto the Phiſition: now we will declare the duty of the Chyrurgian. 7. Apply vnto the affected member both before purging, & in the very time of purging, ſuch medicines as can repell, and driue backe: but when the body is vniuerſally purged, then vſe digeſtiue remedies, but let them be ſuch as are of a moderat ſtrength and of a gentle nature. 8. Therefore miniſter to the aggrieued place iuice of nightſhade, or the medicine made of *Pompholygos*, or that which conſiſteth of *Calcites*, commonly called *Diapalma*, and other remedies of that ſort. 9. But if by the art of Chirurgery you dare enterpriſe the cure of *Cancer*, you muſt firſt (taking the Phiſitions counſell) purge forth the melancholicke humour, and then cut the corrupted tumour cleane off, and ſuffer a good quantity of bloud to come forth, and wring the thicke bloud out of the adioyned parts, and afterward cure the diſeaſe after the maner of other vlcers.

The end of the fift Booke.

THE SIXT BOOKE CONTAINING THE CVRE OF THE DISEASE CALLED MORBVS GALLICVS.

CHAP. I.

Of the diuerse names of the griefe which I minde to speake of, and where it had beginning.

HAuing promised to write of all the infirmities in mans body, and now spying many faults in the first Print and in the second, I will performe my promise, and amend the faults escaped in all the bookes, for the benefit of my countrey: and being preuented by the Printer, this Booke was left out, wherein is contained a grieuous paine and trouble, which doth raigne in all the world at this day, in great fury and raging manner: insomuch that it spareth none of what degree or calling soeuer they be of, (if they seeke for it) be they Kings, Lords, or Ladies, it searcheth them. This griefe hath gotten many names, and so many as come to my memory I will rehearse, and where they were first begotten. First, the Spaniardes borrowed it of the Indians, and brought it home in stead of their gold, and afterward *Charles* the fift Emperour of Rome, who was a man of great power, and delighted much in shedding of bloud, spared neither man, woman, nor child; insomuch that he spoiled a great part of Italy, and subdued the dukedome of Millan, with great hurt, ruine and spoile, to all the commonwealth of Florence: and at the last he came to Rome and Naples, with his whole hoast, spoyling all as he went with great cruelty: and for his hire, this disease began first to shew it selfe plentifully among his people, and specially because his soldiers were much giuen to venery. The frenchmen at that siege got the buttons of Naples (as we terme them) which doth much annoy them at this day. But the first finding of this grieuous sickenesse, was brought into Spaine, by *Columbus* at his cõming home, so that all Christendome may curse the Emperour and *Columbus*. This griefe at the first was so extreame, cruell, and so merciless, that it molested those which were infected therewith, euen the head, eies, nose, palate of the mouth, skinne, flesh, bones, ligaments, and all

the inward parts of their bodies. Then *Columbus* trauelled againe, and brought with him little gold, but all his men were well infected with this griefe: insomuch that the Phisitions in those daies did not knowe what to make of the griefe, nor how to helpe the people. So for want of knowledge many were spoiled. After (as I told you before of the siege of Naples) the Spaniards for frendship they bare to the Frenchmen, sent to them of their curtizans infected with this griefe, minding to let them haue some of their iewels, which they brought out of the Indian countrey. The Frenchmen (not knowing their kind hearts) fell in loue with them, and (being rauished with their beauty) dealt with them, to their great cost and trouble to this day. Now to the variety of the names: First, the Italians call it *Morbus Gallicus*, and some call it *Variolam Gallicam*, because it first appeared among the Frenchmen at the siege before named. The French call it *Scabiem*, or *Morbum Italicum*, because they had the victory, and for that they had this sicknes. And they also call it *Scabiem Hispanicam*, because the Spaniards first brought it out of the Indies. The Germans cal it *Menium*, why they should so terme it, I know not well, vnlesse *Menium* do signifie the priuy parts infected with this disease. Some of them call it also *Scabiem Hispanicam*. In Spaine they name it *Morbum Neapolitanum*, the cause I told you before. They of Naples call it also *Patnysa paradneptur*, that is, the proper name at home in India. Some interprete it *Violentum morbum*, or thus; a great, foule, and vehement disease. Other some call it *Pendendagra*, because it first infecteth the priuy partes both of men and women: and we in our countrey call it, the French disease. But howsoeuer it bee called it skilleth not, so that we knowe how to helpe it, which I minde to declare hereafter by Gods grace.

CHAP. II.

Of the signes.

BVt first I meane to declare the signes how you shall know those which are infected with this griefe, and then the nature of this French disease, as by the effects following it may appeare; and after, the cause thereof is shewed to be nothing else but that contagion. It resteth that we now say somewhat of the signes, whereby you may vnderstand and perceiue those which are infected with this disease: and because signes do proceede and are taken either of the nature of the affects, or of the causes of the sickneſſe, or also of some symptomates or consequents thereof. And because it chiefly beginneth in the liuer, and cannot be looked into, let vs not looke for any signes as *Analogia morbi*: for all signes that can giue certaine testimony and shew thereof, are contayned vnder the affects, and consequently of the disease. Of these there be two sorts, som are *Symptomats*, other som be *morbi*, or affects of nature. *Symptomata* be these falling of haires, ach in the head and members, and small infection of the skin. Those which I called *morbi*, be most sore and vehement vlcers, tumours of the shins, and other partes of the body, with pustules, &c: which followeth this disease, euen as the shadow waiteth vppon the sunne. But because long diseases haue their times, to wit, beginning, encrease, state, and declination, and this French disease is one kinde of long disease, great reason there is, why it should haue his distinct times; and according to the diuersity of those times,

there

there happeneth diuerſe *ſymptomata*: For one kinde of *ſymptomates* happen at the beginning of this diſeaſe, another kind to the ſtate or vigor, &c. And therefore I will diuide all *ſymptomates* into two ſorts, to wit, thoſe which follow and properly belong vnto this grief, beginning at thoſe which follow the ſame being inueterat & confirmed; and theſe next enſuing be of the firſt ſort. Straight waies after a yong man is infected, he feeleth in himſelf a certaine laſſitude or wearines come vpon all his members without any outward occaſion, as walking, or mouing, &c: which foreſheweth this cruell diſeaſe, and happeneth vnto them which are moſt ſtrong & luſty before. There is perceiued alſo a lumpiſh heauines in the whole body, a dulneſſe, faintneſſe, lutherneſſe, or ſlownes to moue in all the members. The occaſion of this, is the infection of the naturall ſpirits, which are the immediat inſtruments of the faculty ſuſtaining and giuing liuelines to the whole body: by whoſe infection, the body waxeth more heauy, and wearieſome then it was before. Moreouer, there is a certaine paine or ach, which wandreth throughout all the body and parts thereof. After this laſſitude of the body, the head aketh: and againe by & by it leaueth the head, and goeth into the ſhoulders, and from the one ſhoulder into the other. Out of the ſhoulder it fleeteth into the legs, the one of them or the other; & in like ſort may it be ſayd of all other members. The cauſe of this, is a certaine vapor which beginneth to riſe vp from the liuer. The euill humor of this affect is not yet begotté: but by reaſon of that feruent heat of the liuer cauſed by infection, there is engendred a certaine ſmal vapor, whereof do grow theſe wandring or fleeting pains. Thirdly, whé the diſeaſe hath begũ, & hath a litle preuailed, the color of the face is changed; yee ſhall ſee the moſt beautifull, liuely, and clean cõplexion of the skin, in three or foure daies ſpace changed into a much worſe courſe then before; and what maner of motion this is, I cannot tell. But certes their face differeth not a litle from that it was before, the colour is altered, the liuely ſpirits in the eies be changed, the mouth, lips, and cheeks ſometimes are changed from their natural comelines. And marke you this (which may much further your iudgement & knowledge therein) there is vnder their eies a wan coloured or blewiſh circle, ſuch as appeareth in women when they haue their naturall purgation, or before it. Noting and finding theſe things in him, conſider with your ſelf whether he paſſed meaſure in drinking, in watching, or ſleeping, or haue vexed his mind with care: & if it happé not through one of theſe, then may you iudge he is taken with this diſeaſe. Fourthly, there is wont to breake out a notable heate in the palmes of the handes, and the ſoles of the feete, yea euen in the Winter time. This appeareth through vaporous ſpirits, taking their beginning of the liuer, which being infected, the face alſo is affected, and the extreame partes or vttermoſt members are ſore diſtempered with heate. Fiftly, you may adde a drowſineſſe, or diſpoſition to ſleepe oftentimes interrupted: and this is cauſed through a turbulent vapour, which is increaſed through the infection and heate. Sixtly, you may adde heauines, and ſadneſſe of the minde: for though a pleſaunt and merry nature ſhoulde be infected with this diſeaſe, yet he ſhall ſtraight way be ſadde, and giuen to penſiueneſſe, and euen growen therewith. This infection increaſing, burneth the bloud, which ſendeth vp troublous and noyſome vapours vnto the head,

1

2

3

4

5

6

7 and seat of the minde. Seuenthly, the patient sometime hath a feauer, because of the heat which is about the distempered parts: but this seldome chanceth.

8 The eight is the appearaunce of some putrified matter, and this is *signum pathognomicum*, a signe to discouer the malady. Therefore as often times as you shall see this putrified matter, yet small in quantity about the priuy place, and know no occasiõ to haue gone before, you may pronounce it to be the french diseast. And what is the reason? This Caries or matter cannot happen but of two causes: either because the corruption of the womans matrice hath eaten and gnawen the fine skinne of the yard; or else because the contagion is communicated and imparted vnto the liuer by the naturall spirites, and the liuer expelleth those infected spirits & sanious matter vnto the priuy parts. Of this Caries, how it may be knowen when it commeth of *Morbus Gallicus*, and when

9 it is caused otherwise, I will speake afterwards. In the ninth place succeedeth *Bubo*, and those not great, as thus; A yong man had to do with a woman, after which act there came vpon him a heauinesse of his members, and a sadnesse of the mind, and after two or three daies there appeareth *Bubo paruus*, that is to say, a small tumour in the arme holes or share, which is painefull, not growen to any greatnesse: this signifieth that the disease is yet gentle, and in the beginning, but the cause of this is the greatnesse by the purging places of the liuer, and therefore the liuer disburdeneth him selfe by sending the disease vnto them, and hereof commeth *Bubo*. The later signe of this disease at the beginning is *Gonorrhoia Gallica*, which bewrayeth vnto vs the nature of this Proteus. After the first comming in of this disease, for the space of forty yeares, there was not ioyned with it *defluuium capillorum*: but the nature of the disease, is to be changeable and diuers, for *Gonorrhoia Gallica* hath not bin seene aboue these fiue and thirty years. Therefore we may looke for new and strange *symptomates*, I pray God they be light and easie to be holpen. Now how this *Gallica Gonorrhoia* is to be discerned from that which is not *Gallica*, I will hereafter declare, to auoide tediousnesse in this place. The cause of this *Gonorrhoia* is *labefactatio spirituum*, weakning and subuersion of the spirites, which rule the naturall faculties or vertues of the testicles & spermaticke vessels, by reason whereof the strength of those parts is dissolued: so that they cannot keepe their seed but it continually droppeth forth. But now let vs speake of those signes which are appropriated to the disease in this progresse or confirmation: and first, of hard pustules in the whole body, and the same grieuous and deformed in the head and beard, sometimes with sanious matter, sometimes without it. And know yee, the disease cannot be aboue the age of fiue or sixe moneths at the most when these *symptomates* appeare. And if the disease beginneth in the winter, it shall bring forth his crusts in the beginning of Sommer: if it beginne in the spring time, his crusts appeare in Autumne, &c.

CHAP. III.

Of the causes of the breaking out of Pistules.

1 AND the chiefe causes of this breaking out of pustules are these: First, be-

2 cause the matter infected is sent thither from the liuer. Secondly because the parts affected do not digest and expell (by way of transpiration) his excre-

ments,

ments, and therefore they remaine in it still, and grow vnto crusts. The third signe of this disease confirmed, is callous vlcers about the priuy partes, which either be callous at the beginning, or become callous afterward: and therefore as often as you see the *Caries* in the priuy parts healed, and that there remaine *Calli* or hardinesse about the place, where it was, be yee assured that this is *Gallicus Morbus* confirmed. Therefore I wishe that you remember this, when you take in hand the cure; for those hardnesses be most manifest & certaine signes of this disease confirmed. The fourth is hanging downe of the *vuula*; the *vuula* hanging downe in the further part of the mouth, and if it do so, much moisture commeth to the mouth, by reason whereof happeneth *raucedo vocis*, a great horsenesse of the voice. Therefore open their mouth when you shall heare them speake thus hoarsely, and you shall perceiue the *vuula* full of moisture, and (if the patient haue no catrrich) say that it is *Morbus gallicus* confirmed. The cause of this humectation or moistnesse of the *vuula*, is the naturall spirits infected and chaunged, which is caried with the bloud of the veins, throughout the whole body, and becausse it is so infected and weakned, therefore the function thereof is weake and feeble in the stomach, and maketh euill digestion. Therefore the same stomach aboundeth with fleume in the braine, and it dorh not his function. Therefore in the braine there is engendred *Mucus*, that is, a skinned cold moisture in the veines, by the reason of weakenesse of the spirites, engendred of flegmaticke bloud, with vnnaturall humours. If they bee afterward by excesse of heate adust, the disease becommeth very grieuous and vehement. No meruaile therefore, if this aboundance of moist humors fall to the *vuula*, and be pressed downe with moisture: and if the bloud be sharper, then the skals breake forth in the skinne, the rootes of the haires be consumed: so that they fall: it exulcerateth the mouth, the palate, and the nose: it perisheth the scalpe of the braine, and is the occasion of many other *symptomates*. The cause of hoarseneſse of the voice, is humidity and excrements which doe stop and let the waies of the voice. Fiftly, you may adde the tumors of the glandules in the further part of the mouth; and when you see this, be yee out of doubt, that the infection of the disease is now confirmed. For the infected matter is now sent vnto the head, which is expelled by his *emmutory* places, that is, glandules. And sixtly, adde thereunto the corruption of the palate of the mouth, and of the teeth; and when you see these, looke not to any greater signes of the confirmation of this euill. In the seuenth place I put outragious and continuall paine, making the patient euen to cry out: this beginneth at the two and twentieth houre of the artificiall day, and continueth not fully vntill midnight; and these most orgueilous and extreame paines are caussed of a very moist and maligne vapour, which riseth vppe from the liuer; and from the excrementes be acquired and gathered by euill nourishment in euery part, and especially about the *periostion*, that is, the rims which couer the bones of euery part. And in the eight place, I remēber corruption of the bones in the head, and in the armes, before there appeare any vlcer. How you may know the bone to be corrupted, the skinne remaining whole and sound, I will hereafter shew. In the ninth place you may adde tumours *atheromacea*, that is, tumors which yeeld a tough slimy matter. These of some writers are called

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Bumbata or *Gummata*, by a similitude taken of trees. For in *morbo Gallico* tumors do grow like the gummes which issue out of trees, and this happeneth, either because the party him selfe is not well nourished, and heapeth vp vndigested excrements, or else because the liuer communicateth and sendeth vnto it infected matter. We may adde here in the tenth and last place, maligne vlcers in all the partes of the body, which vlcerate the whole skinne, head, and all parts, through abundance of offensiue matter. To conclude, they succeed this disease, sometime their affects as *Asthma*, which when it is come vpon a patient, it declareth him to bee past cure. Therefore neuer put such a one to paine by medicines or other meanes, for you shall neuer heale him. Now will I teach you in processe of time following, the waies how to asswage and cure all the said *symptomates*, which although they be very hard and rebellious to remedy, yet I vndertake vnto you that I haue found out such waies and meanes by medicines, as will assuredly, speedily, and without all daunger (as much as is possible) helpe and cure them by Gods grace.

CHAP. IIII.

Of the cure of Morbus Gallicus.

NOw after we haue declared the names, nature, causes, and signes of this affect, it remaineth that we proceede and declare also the cure. And vnderstand ye, that the waies of curing therof are manifold and diuerse, because the nature thereof is not comprehended in any methode of curing; but was alwaies opened by the experiments of Emperickes, for *Hap.* & *Hardy* haue giuen vs medicines against this disease. And because diuerse medicines haue bene found out by chance, therefore there be diuerse waies of curing this affect, of the which one is light and easie, that is, great mouing and exercise of the body, which in yong men strong and lusty able to endure sweat, either in wrastling, leaping, darting, dancing or playing at tennise, or such like, hath bin a sufficient remedy for this euill in the beginning, for by it the heat so groweth, and the excrements thereby be so abundantly expelled, that the spirits be renued and made more pure and apt to ouercome the infection: and therefore it is not to be maruelled, if by this meanes, the liuer sometimes purgeth him selfe when the disease hath taken no deepe roote in him. Why doth *febris putrida* cease & take an end without medicine? Because perdy, it is not in the sound parts of the body. But in *febris hectica*, the patients are healed by medicines alwaies which coole and moisten, because the affect consisteth in the sound parts. Semblable, in *Morbo Gallico*, when the disease is in the beginning and not confirmed or fixed in the inward parts, it is possible that the spirits may be restored of them selues; for this affect is in the spirites. Therefore to returne to our purpose, some indeed by procuring a great sweat haue bene cured but this was in the beginning of the disease, in very strong bodies, and yet it hath not had in all such successe neither.

CHAP. V.

Of Fumigations.

THere is another way that Emperickes haue vsed to cure this disease, and that is *per Suffumigia*. The auncients vsed indeed diuerse affects by suffumigations.

migations. But the Empericks trying alwaies to helpe this affect, at length found out an excellent Suffumigation, *ex cinabari*, yet this often times hurteth: albeit it is counted amongst the waies of curing this disease, and sometime doubtlesse it healeth them.

CHAP. VI.

Of purging of Morbus Gallicus.

HAuing thus farre proceeded in this matter, wee will now come vnto the first scope proposed, I meane euacuation of the matter present in *substantia*, wherewith is ioyned feruor, out of the which groweth a hoate distempure and excrementous matter. First therefore naturall, and that when so euer you goe about to cure this disease: for the very Empericks doe that euer at the beginning of their cure. And because the present humors may offend either in quantity, or in quality, or in both, you ought to vse diligent consideration therein. For if they offend in quantity onely: first, we must giue him a lenitiue medicine either of *cassia*, or *sirup. ros. sol.* and after that open a veine, that the ebullition of bloud in the liuer may be so tempred and asswaged. Secondly, abate and diminish the matter, which requireth first to be altered by medicines, and afterward to be expelled. Thirdly, for as much as the disease happeneth by contagion, which contagion infecteth the liuer, vnto the which their fountaine all the humours haue their recourse; it behoueth reuulsion to be made from the inward partes vnto the outward, as in bloud letting it is. I omit the greatnesse of the disease, which also indicateth *Phlebotomy*: but the three first onely we take as indications of bloud letting, and the veine that is to be opened is *hepatica*, in the right arme, because it is direct vnto the parts affected. But vnderstand that sometime we may not vse this euacuation, because in the beginning of the disease, for the most part, the patient is wont to haue *Bubones*, which *Bubones* because they come from the liuer, expelling the superfluous or vnnaturall matter vnto his emmutory place, if wee should cut the veine, the patient hauing them vppon him, we might happily thereby diuert and turne backe the matter againe vnto the liuer to the danger of the patient. So that in this case it is determined among learned men, that a veine ought not to be opened, least the matter (as I sayd before) should be drawen againe vnto the liuer, and the disease made more dangerous and painefull.

CHAP. VII.

Of the preparation of humours.

AFter the patient hath bene let bloud, as his strength may permit, the time well serueth to prepare his humours, and for as much as in the beginning of the disease, there is not alwaies the same mixture of humours, that is in the end, in which there is *pituita* and *exusta materia*. This *pituita* ought to be prepared first, by those things which haue power to attenuate and scoure, and to open obstructions, of which medicines, you shall finde plenty in the former bookes, for the auoiding of cholericke, flegmaticke and melancholike humors, and mixt humours, and then let vs come to the cure.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the certaine and true medicine for the diſeaſe.

IN the cure of this diſeaſe, after euacuation is made, the ſtate and temperature of the inward parts by conuenient meanes altered, the body prepared by the medicins before ſufficiently, and purged, and afterward confirmed and comforted againe as before we haue declared; if we ſee the diſeaſe continue ſtill, and not yeeld to all this miniſtration, we ought then to come vnto that which maketh the true & certaine alteration of the inward parts, and that of it ſelfe hath knowen vertue, both to alter and reſtore the liuer to his naturall eſtate; and this is the decoction of *lignum guaicum*, otherwiſe called *lignum indicum* and *lignum ſanctum*, which medicine was found out by chance, and confirmed by great experience to cure this diſeaſe, the patient obſeruing a very ſlender diet, & drinking the decoction in which there is a vertue to attenuate, and power to ouercome this diſeaſe.

CHAP. IX.

What ſort of that wood is to be choſen as beſt for this purpoſe.

NOw ſithēce it is determined that for this purpoſe to vſe this wood is beſt, it is neceſſary to ſhew alſo the maner of vſing this wood, cōcerning which
1 you ought to obſerue theſe things. Firſt what maner wood, and what manner
2 3 rinde is to be choſen for the beſt. Secondly the preparation. Thirdly the way of
4 giuing it. Fourthly the order of diet to be vſed in miniſtring it. Firſt concerning the election or choiſe of the wood, I ſay it is not to be doubted, alwaies to chooſe that which is of moſt vertue, and that is *lignum ſanctum*, which is yellowiſh and fatte, hauing no blackneſſe in it: and if we cannot haue this, let vs vſe *guaicum*, whereof there is more plenty. Moreouer, in both kindes of this wood, the meane ſort is beſt; we may haue it of a tree that is old, or of a yong tree, or of a tree of middle age. I call that the meane ſort which is not altogether blacke, nor for the greater part white, neither ſlender, nor groſſe. I chooſe this middle ſort, becauſe it hath more vnctuoſity e or oyliſnneſſe in it, then the other which is grown vnto age. For if the ſame vnctuoſity doth more abound in the younger wood, it is more inconcoct and excrementous. Moreouer, we ought to chooſe that which is beſt in reſpect of the diſeaſe; to wit, in a confirmed diſeaſe, the moſt vertufull and efficacious, as is *lignum ſanctum* of middle age, but if the diſeaſe be not ſo greatly confirmed, but light and eaſie, we may vſe that which is of more weaker operation both in *genere* & in *ſpecie*. Furthermore, regard muſt be had alſo of the patient his age, for in an old body, the old plant is moſt conuenient: for one that is yong and ſtrong, the middle ſort
5 is to be choſen. Fifthhly, in chooſing this wood, we muſt conſider of the time of the yeare: for in a cold ſeaſon, as in the winter, we ought to vſe the hotter, ſharper, and bitterer kinde, which we may iudge by our ſences; in the ſommer time, that which is leſſe ſharpe, and leaſt of all bitter, either of an old or yong tree. And the markes, whereby we may diſcerne the beſt from the other, of the wood of the old tree, which hath in it great quātity of blacknes, are theſe: it is very bigge, and hath a groſſe and thicke rinde, which ſo cleaueth vnto the wood,

wood, that vnneath it can with a knife be separated. For as often as you see the rinde to come easily from the wood, it hath bene moistned with salt water, and is of the worst sort. In the middle sort of this wood, all these things appeare in a meane. Besides this, I would wishe you to rape a little of this wood, and if in so doing you perceiue not a smell proceed from it, you may be bold to say, that it is either very old, or else corrupt. The third signe to choose this wood by is, if in raping it appeareth oyliſh, so that the dust thereof doth somewhat glister. Fourthly, you may tast of that you haue raped in your mouth, and if it biteth the tongue forthwith, and afterward yeeldeth a bitternesse, it is good. Fifthly, take & rape it, and if there appeareth in the substance thereof manifest pores and small holes after you haue raped it, and the superficies remaineth not equall and sound, it is of the worst sort: and if you make your decoction thereof, it is cleare, and neither bitter nor sharpe in taste. Sixtly, it ought to be chosen very ponderous and heauy. Seuenthly, see that it be such as hath not the whitishe colour enclining to dimmednesse, neither hauing the veines of the white part blacke, but greenish, and of dimme pale colour: for if it be otherwise, it is a token of corruption. The last proofe of this wood is, to boile the rapings thereof, and if the decoction be thicke, very bitter, and sharpe, it is good. The signes of goodnesse in the rinde are these; First, that it be taken of a tree which is olde, or of middle age, for that which commeth of a small bough is naught, and we know when it commeth of a middle aged or old tree, for it hath great peeces, and large cauities. Secondly it is required, that the rinde be very thicke. Thirdly that it be very hard. Fourthly that on the inside it seemeth as it were blacke, sprinckled with an ashe colour; and this is the colour of the most excellent barke. If withall in breaking, it appeareth blacke, but not like vnto *Ebenus*, be ye sure it is of the best sort.

CHAP. X.

Of the decoction of Guaicum.

THe wood being thus raped, we come to his boyling, which we call Decoction. And touching that, we shall note that the common vse is, for euery ounce of raped wood, to adde a pound of water. But truth it is, if we deale with a ladde or a stripling of tender yeares, of hote complexion, and that in sommer season, wee must vse for euery ounce of the wood, to take one pound and a halfe of water. But the common custome is (as I said) for euery ounce of the said wood, to take one pound of water. Therfore in making the decoction we are wont to take one pound of the raped wood, and twelue poundes of the water, except in the sommer season when the sirupe cannot be kept; and then we take *lignum* ℥. vj. of water ℔. vj. Also in the winter time we take of the wood raped ℔. j. ß. of water eighteene pounds. In the middle seasons or times betwixt both these, one pound of the wood, and twelue pounds of water. But you must take and macerate or infuse the woode twelue houres before, or sometimes more, sometimes lesse while. Some infuse the wood in cold water, but I like not that way, for if you marke the difference which is betweene the decoction made after the infusion of colde water, and that which is

made after the wood is infused in hote water, you shall finde the last far more sharper, more bitter, and more thicker. Therefore hardly let it be infused in water, which is made euen seething hote. Moreouer, I wish that you stop your pot very closely, and set it in a place amongst branne, couering it vp euen vnto the middle part in the said branne: for by this meanes it long time retaineth his heate. Besides this, encompasse it round about with linnen clothes, that it may bee perfectly macerated, and the decoction haue his requisite strength, and to be boyled in a vessell of stone, or of earth well glased within, those vessels of glasse are best of all. And note you furthermore, that this decoction may be made two diuerse waies, to witte, by dry fire, or in *balneo marie*, which is the more excellent way: for the decoction will be far better, & worke better effect and sooner. Also choose your vessell hauing as small a mouth as may be, and boile your liquor therein, the top being close stopped, and keepe it in boiling continually, let it boile till halfe be wasted, as the common vse is, some will boile it till three parts be consumed, to haue it dry more. This is the rule for boiling this decoction, which when it is boiled, sometime is suffered to coole before it be strained, and some straine it whiles it is yet boiling hot, that the wood make not the decoction thicke or grosse with his substance. I thinke it no matter whether it be clensed hote or cold, and this is the making of this first decoction. The spume or froth thereof must be gathered for that purpose which hereafter I will declare. The second decoction is made in this wise; we take the same wood (without macerating it any more) & boile it againe in the same quantity of water (as custome is) that it boile vnto the consumption of the third part: so that of twelue pounds, after boiling there remaine eight. But in the second decoction we vse to encrease the quantity of this water: for sometime we adde eighteene pounds of water, sometime fifteene: and this we are accustomed to doe, when we haue a patient that is giuen to drinke much. Secondly we encrease the *dosis* of the water, if it be in the sommer season, for then the patients are compelled to drinke betweene dinner and supper. And this is to be drunk at dinner and supper, or (if need be) at any time of the day. Neuertheless ye shall vnderstand, some Phisitions doe giue the first decoction euen at dinner & supper also: and so they make but one decoction only, but this vse is but rare, and when they will dry vehemently. One thing I must adde, which is this, that in leane and weake persons we vse to prepare this wood to be giuen with the broth of veale, of a chicken, or a bird, so that the broth be not fatte. It is boiled after the manner aforesaide: and this I thought necessary to let you vnderstand. Thus much may suffice the simple for making of these decoctions.

CHAP. XI.

Of the making the compound decoctions of this wood.

THis *Guaicum* is boiled not onely single and by it selfe, (as I haue shewed before) but also diuerse other things in boiling are mixed and compounded therewith diuersely. First I will declare vnto you those decoctions which be made of this wood most singly. Afterwardes others which because they haue moe things added vnto them, are called compound decoctions of this wood. The most simple or single decoction, is made of the rind of the wood, and pure water only. And this simple decoctiō the best Phisitions do vse, when they will

make

make the decoction strong. The forme of making it is this: We take the same quantity of the wood of *guaicum*, & the some of water which is declared in the chapter before, and we adde vnto the same the barke, or rind of *guaicum*, which hath no determinat quantities, for somtime we put 2. somtime 3. sometime 4. ounces vnto one pound of the wood, & for halfe an ounce of the rind, we adde 4 pounds of water: as for example, admit the quantity of the wood be 1. pound, the quantity of the rinde ℥.ij. the quantity of the water shall be 16. pounds. But when we will haue the medicine of great operation & strength, we take of the wood 1. pound, of the rinde vj. ℥. of water ℔. 18. we beate the rind into grosse powder, and afterward steepe it in the water 24 houres, then boile we it to the consumptiō of the 3. part, in such wise, as is said of the simple decoction. In certaine places they prepare & make this decoction with wine. The forme of preparing it is this: *Guaici* j. pound *cortiçis eius*, halfe a pound water ℔. 18. let these be infused together according to art, afterward boile them to the consumption of 2, 3. parts, so that 6 pounds only of the decoctiō do remain. This done, they adde thereto of strong white wine, which they boile a litle, and then straine it, and vse it as before. Sometime it hapneth (by the weaknes or vice of the patient his stomach) that the whole decoction is cast vp againe: therefore that it may pearce the sooner, we adde wine thereto, but if the patient can receiue & retaine it without wine, it were the better way. Yet haue we another decoction of this wood which is more compounded, which is this: ℞ *Ligni guaici.* ℔ j. *cortiçis eius.* ℔. ß. *aquæ* ℔. 18. these be infused according to art, then they boile to the consumption of the 3. part: then we adde to it *Cardui benedicti*, which is much vsed, *Chamedrios Betonicæ*, of ech of these herbes a handfull. Againe they boile it euen til the one halfe be wasted. So that of the whole decoction remaineth no more then 6. pounds. Then we adde thereto againe of wine 3. pintes, and after 1. whalme or 2. boiling we clense or straine it. ℞. the same wood, the same rinde, and the same water in quantity, infuse & boile them after the same maner: then adde of rosemary, *fœniculi, stœchadis, betony.* ana. *M.* j *seine*, annise ℥. j. let these boile to the consumptiō of the halfe part, so that there remaine of the liquor but 6. pounds, and thereto adde 3. pintes of wine, after the maner aforesaide. Lastly, we make yet another way as thus. ℞. the same quantity of the wood and rinde, whereof we spake before, we adde of the roots of *enula campana*, of the roots of *althæa*, of the dry rootes of *ireos.* ana, ℥. j. of maidenhaire, of liquorice, *steitiados.* ana. ℥. ß. These boile together to the consumptiō of halfe, then there is put vnto it 3 pints of wine, and so the decoction made perfect by boiling, as is aforesaid. And these be the formes & descriptions of those decoctions which are vsuall with appractitioners and others. They which vse to minister these maner of decoctiōs, make no second decoction, but prepare some other liquor for their dinner and supper at their decoction. I my selfe haue bin wont in this decoction to put in purging medicines, & specially to those which haue such stomachs as cannot haue purging medicines. I haue vsed the foresaid compound decoctions, but not alwaies, but especially in cold griefes, as *Asthma*, and coldnes of the stomach, *sciatica* & palsey in fistulaes, and other foule sores & paines in the ioints, and in affects of the feet comming of cold distempure, in these causes I haue vsed the said decoctions with good successe. But

the moſt ſimple decoction, I ſay doth beſt againſt *Morbũ Gallicum*, ſo that there be no compound diſeaſe ioyned with it, then the compound decoctions are chiefly to be vſed according to the direction of them which do practiſe.

CHAP. XII.

Of the time conuenient to giue this decoction.

BVt at what time is this decoction to be giuen? certes the moſt meete time is the ſpring time, for although we require in the working therof heat, ſwear, and much digeſtion of excrements, yet the heate of ſommer is too great, the bodies are therby reſolued & made faint. Therfore the mid ſpring, and the beginning of ſommer is moſt conuenient. Next vnto the ſpring is the autumne; as for the ſommer and winter they be ſeaſons vnfit for it, the one for his great heate, and the other for his exceſſe of cold. And if of theſe two I muſt needes chooſe one, yet would I rather chooſe the winter, for in the winter ſeaſon we may haue good fires, the chamber may be made cloſe and warme. Therefore concerning the time remember alwaies the ſpring is beſt, the autumne next, the winter next, and the ſommer worſt of all.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the place where this decoction is to be giuen.

VVE may not conueniently giue this decoction in euery place. Our anceſtors the Phiſitions that liued before theſe laſt 40. years, were wont to keepe their patients in darkenes, as it were, in a dungeon for the ſpace of 40. daies, pining them euen vnto bones, and they did well, ſo cruell, ſo fierce and outragious was then this diſeaſe. But now ſithence it is become more meeke and tollerable, Phiſitions ought not to deale ſo hardly withall. Therefore wee keepe our patients in a chamber, where is ſomewhat drier ground, not open vnto the windes, the windowes cloſed in with paper or linnen clothes, the dores not altogether kept cloſe.

CHAP. XIIII.

What quantity of the decoction is to be taken at once.

IN meaſuring the quantity we obſerue theſe things. Firſt, how great the affect is, for if it be great & rebellious, then muſt a great quantity of this potion be giuen: if the affect be not great, the quantity ſhould be leſſe. Vnto a child we miniſter a ſmaller quantity then to one of full growth. Alſo conſideration ought to be had of the complexion, for the patient if his temperament be hot, a litle quantity, if it be cold a great quantity is to be giuen. If the ſtomacke be weake, we giue a very ſmall quantity; if the ſtomach be ſtrong, we giue a great quantity. This quãtity is giuen (when it is large) by 2. ſirupes, but when it is litle by one ſirupe only, our limits are frõ ℥. iiij. vnto ℥. x. In a child frõ 4. vnto 6. ℥. if he be ſtrong and valiant of ſtomack, you may proceed to ℥. viij. In the ſtrongeſt perſon, the diſeaſe alſo being rebellious, we proceede not aboue ℥. x. and that quantity we ſeldome vſe in any. Moreouer you muſt obſerue another rule, that is, to giue a greater quantity alwaies of the ſirupe in the morning, then in the euening, becauſe in the morning the ſtomach is empty: & in the night becauſe of ſleepe, the force therof is greater. Againe, this is to be obſerued, in the 1. and 2. day we giue no more, but each day once of the day, which is in the morning,

and

and likewise in the end of the diet. But after we giue the sirupe twise a day, (to wit) morning and euening, at a certaine without failing or breaking of time.

CHAP. XV.

How many daies this decoction is to be receiued.

THe question hath bene to giue the decoction of *Guaicum*, the space of forty daies, because this *Morbus Gallicus* is *Morbus erronicus*, a long disease, requiring therefore a long cure. But this time serueth when the disease is in a meane betweene confirmed and beginning. If it be but *morbus incipiens*, we scarcely prolong the vse of this decoction til the thirtieth day, or the fiue and twentieth day, but when the disease is inueterate, we cast not to giue it in *vetro*, vntill the 60. day. Whereby shall we know certainely when to leaue the vse of this decoction? truely when we see that all *symptomata* be ceased and gone, and if they be ceased at the sixteene daies end, let vs leaue the vse of the drinke, if not, let vs continue it still, vntill the *symptomata* be all gone. But if after we haue giuen it forty daies, the *symptomata* cease not, yet thereby leaue not off as yet for all that, but continue it still prescribing to the patient *victus nobilum*, and let him till a hundred daies be expired, drinke of the decoction, least the disease returne, or be confirmed more. And ye shall vnderstand, there be two rebellious *symptomates*, which if they remaine, hope ye not for any perfect cure. The one sort of these be certaine callous and hard scarres, we English men terme them the buttons of Naples, for they be certaine scars like indeede vnto Buttons, and except the patient continue this decoction till these be perfectly cured, it is alwaies to be feared, that the disease wil againe return. The other rebellious *symptomata*, is *Gonorrhoia gallica*, which if it ceaseth not through the vse of the decoction or other medicine, of which I will speake hereafter, the disease also endureth. Therefore see that after forty daies, yet they drinke one of the decoctions.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the time of giuing this decoction and things to be obserued therein.

NOw comming to speake of the time of giuing this decoction, I say, that the Phisitions giue it in the morning before dinner, the space of three or four houres, and for the euening after supper three houres. And if it so chanceth that we giue but one sirupe onely, the time is not so much to be regarded. Moreouer, remember that the decoction ought alwaies to be taken very hot, to the end it may prouoke sweat: againe, that it ought to be receiued of the patient lying in his bed. The sirupe being drunke, the patients do vse to sleepe vpon it, and this they must attempt to doe, that it may the better be digested, and distributed into the habite of the body.

CHAP. XVII.

Of things to be eschued of him that receiueth this decoction.

CHiefly *Venus* must be shut out of the dore quite, especially while this decoction is in giuing. Some by comitting this act but once in this cure haue

failed of remedy through the same. There be diueliſh women deſirous to be handled and dealt withall, who will beautifie them ſelues, to inflame mens hearts to luſt towards them; abandon theſe your company, and thruſt them out of the dores and houſe, let none of that hew be ſeene in your diet; beware againe of perturbation and chafing of the minde, which to auoide, flee cards, dice, and all manner of games, which may prouoke anger, and nouriſh fraud, and couetouſneſſe, which doth inflame the bloud, & ſturre cholericke humors.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of things to be corrected or ſymptomates to be oppugned in this cure.

CErtaine accidents alſo in this cure are to be corrected and holpen, among the which, one is a certaine lothing of the ſtomach, or diſpoſition to vomit, called of the Latines *Nauſea*. This comming vpon the palate, letteth him to receiue his potion. This is reſiſted and helped by mixing pleaſaunt things, with the decoction, as is ſome pleaſant Iulep to be mixed with the decoction according to the humor which is the cauſe therof: ſome hauing a hot ſtomach do abhor it, therfore let them vſe in the decoction cold waters, as *cichorri*, and ſuch like, to make it more thin. Some cannot eate their bisket, in which caſe we permit vnto them, good common bread made of the beſt floure, of the beſt wheat. Moreouer ſharpe and grieuous paines are wont to happen vnto the patients after the fourth day, or the eight day of their begun diet, vntill the fifteenth day be paſt, which we endeuour to qualifie and lighten two waies. Firſt by perſwading with the patient to ſuſtaine them patiently, telling him it is the nature of working of the wood, and that they will ſoone be at an end, to his great commodity and much comfort. Secondly by fomenting the partes, and annointing them, wherof I will ſpeake more at large, when I treat *de dolorib.* An other inconuenience that followeth this cure is Coſtiueneſſe, and the patient commeth into laſſitude, or wearineſſe: this is holpen by cliſters, giuen euery third day. Againe ſome do abhor cliſters, vnto ſuch we giue once in the day, of the ſirupe *cum duabus radicibus*, or *mellis roſacei*. And if it be ſuch a perſon as will not be ſcoured by common *mell roſaceum*, then in ſtead thereof we adde vnto the ſirupe *roſ. ſolut.* ℥ j. Some vſe to giue pils of *Aloes*, but *mell roſ.* in my iudgemẽt is beſt. Alſo other whiles it hapneth that the patient fainteth or ſwoundeth, and this happeneth after foure and twenty daies, through the ſlenderneſſe of the diet. Then graunt him a larger diet, as an egge euery day morning & euening, or ſome other thing at your diſcretion. And other whiles the cauſe of this their faintneſſe and ſwounding commeth for that they are not nouriſhed, or becauſe they take litle of their bisket, in which caſe (as I ſaid) we helpe them with a draught of ale, or an egge rere. But if their ſtomackes will not digeſt bisket, let them haue good fine bread. And you ſhall know this weakeneſſe of the ſtomackes digeſtion by theſe ſignes. When either the ſaid ſolutiue ſirupe, or cliſters be giuen them (if their ſtomacke be ſo weake) there is brought forth with it a great part of the decoction, yellowiſh, ſomewhat reſembling the colour of the yolke of an egge, and ſomewhat thicke or troubled, in the which ye

may

may see crummes and small peeces of the bisket swimming whole. And when this appeareth vnto you, vse a remedy for it betimes, that is, permit vnto the patient a larger diet, and let him haue a lesse quantity of the decoction, with which if you do mixe also some Iulep, it is the better. These be the *symptomata* and the meanes to remedy them by.

CHAP. XIX.

Of Excrements.

NOw am I come to that parte of my treatise, wherein I haue to speake of Excrements. And concerning this matter: first you shal vnderstand, there be two kinds of Excrements which are to be regarded and considered of. The one is *Excrementum siccum*, that is to say, the ordure wherof I haue spoken. The other kinde of Excrements, whereby the body is purged, being of three sorts is auoided sometime by vrine, sometime by sweat, sometime by purging medicines. Although (in this case) it be not necessary that the matter be purged, but that the inward affected part be altered, yet euacuation is good by the way of vrine, very good it were indeede, but no Phisition hath attempted that way. For (be it neuer so good) they haue thought it inconuenient to send such hote matters vnto the reins: especially if the patient haue *Gonorrhoia*, for then assuredly the disease shall be exasperated and more hurt, then commodity will thereupon ensue. To driue forth by sweat, Phisitions do their diligence, for a large sweat dissolueth the matter of this disease. Some therfore do further and prouoke this sweating after the most simple and common way, that is, by couering the patient wel with clothes, couering the patients head, by laying him in a hot bed, and giuing him his decoction warme to drinke, (the head of the patient being couered, I doubt whether that wil do hurt or nay.) I can cõmend it in such patients, as haue not the head very hot and sweating already: also in such as haue pustules, & do fear the shedding of their hair. Others take bread hot out of the ouen, and apply it to the backe and sides of the patient, that by the moist heat thereof, they might the more easily sweat. I like not this deuise, for the bread is infected thereby, & therefore this is not good. Some vse to lay a warme brick sprinckled with wine or veriuice, and wrapped vp in cloths, and this is a good cõmendable way, obseruing yet this rule for the vse thereof, that you omit it in such persons as haue *Rhagades* in their feete: in such you must lay no bricke to their feet in no wise. The last way of voiding excrements, is to expell them by the siege. And the *guaicum* potion is wont sometime to worke that effect, but somtime it doth it not. The most part of Phisitians doth (in this case) cõmend euacuation made with conuenient distance of time, by purgatiue medicines, wherefore if very great, euacuation be made by sweats, let them euery eight day be purged, if they sweat not plẽteously, then purge them oftner euery 3. or 4. day, in the name of God: and the purgations which we in this case do vse, be according to the humours which doth most abound, as sometime with pilles, with *Sena Epithymo*, *Hermodactilis*, and sometime with *Electuaris*, as *confectio Hamech*, *Diacodion*, and such other like, as you may find plenty in the first and second bookes, if you looke carefully in them for the medicins for the purpose which you would haue auoided.

CHAP. XX.

Of diet to be obserued in this cure.

NOw are we come to speake of the diet to be vsed while this decoction is in taking. This diet is ordained alwaies, slender touching the quantity and drying: and it consisteth in bisket which we giue vnto the patient first and before other things, to the intent the meate taken after, it might the lesse moisten, (and so it helpeth much to the cure of the tumours, which belong to this disease) and also because this bisket bread tarieth longer in eating, and yet the patients appetite is somewhat staied: and if the stomach be very weake, permit him to eate common bread of the very best. His meat must be rosted and excellent good: chickens, rabets, mutton, partriches, and such like. And when he doth purge, let his meate be boiled that day: once, twise, or thrise in the weeke lette him haue to his supper breade and great raisons, as you like his strength. Some doe minister corants which I commend. But when the excrements of the body are daily auoided by aboundance of sweat, so that we may hope the patient shall that way be perfectly purged: then I thinke best to giue no purging medicines, for nature her selfe expelleth them to the skinne to be euacuated that way by sweate, whose worke should by purgatiue medicines partly be hindered If his sweat be not sufficient, then it is best to vse purging, of what kinde you thinke best (as before.) His ordinary drinke at meales and other times, let him vse the second decoction, whereof let him take as much as he will. But do not you beleeue, the more they drinke the sooner they shall be cured of this disease: and if they cannot drinke the second decoction we must suffer them to take some ale or beere, but let it not be very strong in no case. The time of the diet being expired, we ought forthwith to obserue whether the liuer be too hoate yea or no, if it be so, then prescribe a medicine to qualifie the distempure as thus. Take conserues of roses, borage, or of violets, or such like, which you may finde plenty in our former bookes.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the roote of China.

NOw haue we to treat of the roote of China, whereof some Phisitions do make very great account, not onely for *Morbus gallicus*, but also for the cure of *pyysis*, vlcers of the lungs, consumption of the members. In *Lepra Grecorum. i. scabbes Elephanteasie. i. leprie* proceeding of the melancholicke humour, *podagra*, in all which affects they vse it, the Spaniards do bring ouer this roote, but from what place I cannot learne, I could neuer attaine to try the vertues thereof this way, but vse it profitably against the dropsie: also to represse and temper the melancholicke humour, for bleare eies comming of a hote distempure: moreouer, in an exceeding hote distempure of the stomach and liuer. But in the cure of *Morbus Gallicus*, I will not vse it againe, for I haue proued it three or foure times, and could yet neuer bring any thing to good perfection: to finish their cures they take two pounds thereof.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the way of making the decoction of the roote China.

THe decoction is made in this wise, we take this roote and cut it in thinne peeces, afterward we take ℥. ij thereof, and xij. pounds of cleare water, we heate the water, & infuse the China in it, for a whole night space, or foure and twenty houres. Afterwardes we set it to the fire and boile it, to the consumption of halfe, so that fixe pounds and no more remaine. We make but one decoction which forthwith we clense, and spread out the saide thinne peeces vpon a table, that they may be dried in the shadow, because they are reserued to vse againe. The decoction is kept warme in a pot, set either vpon the embers or the hote coles, for if it remaineth not luke warme, it waxeth sower. But obserue that the decoction be made in a vessell with a very narrow mouth, and the same stopped exactly with corke, while it is in boyling. Of this decoction, we giue in manner of a sirupe in the morning. ℥. x. or xij. in the euening as much. The stomach liketh well thereof, for it is a pleasant drinke: sometime we permit the patient to drinke wine if he haue bene accustomed to wine, or else to common ale at his meat, if he be weake, or else not. Their diet is common bread of the best, and flesh both sodden and rosted in moderate quantity. No purging medicine is to be giuen before the end thereof, and so the decoction is daily made, for of two pound (which as we told you in the end of the last Chapter, is the full *Dosis* of this roote) we take daily two ounces, and so the whole lasteth twelue daies. Afterward, we take againe of the same roote dried, and boile againe of the same euery day ℥. iiij. & so it lasteth fix daies more, till the space of eighteene daies be finished. Now if we will minister it longer, if neede be, we doe as before. *Diet.*

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the election of China.

IF you wil choose the best *China*, take that which is rough in colour and ponderous, not wormeeaten, nor corrupted. And be diligent in this, for among a hundred rootes, vnneath you shall finde foure good, for commonly they haue two faults: one, that they be spongeous and light, another that they be corrupt or worme eaten. And if you can haue none without both these faults, (as few there are indeede to be found) rather choose those that be eaten with wormes, so that they are lesse euill of the two. And spongeous rootes soone putrifie, and haue in the decoction no strength to profite the patient any thing at all. And this is the second way or manner, whereby some Phisitions endeuour to vanquish this euill.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of another manner of making of the decoction with salsa and the wood, and without the wood, and sometime with the barke.

I Haue alwaies obserued and followed this rule, I take of *salsa perigha*. ℥. iiij. of water, x. pintes, I cut the *salsa periglia* into small parts: afterwardes infuse

it in hote water, by the ſpace of foure and twenty houres. When it is infuſed, it is boiled to the conſumption of the one halfe, afterward it is ſtrained, and this decoction kept for the ſirupe. Then we take the ſame *ſalſa* againe, & put thereto of water fifteene pints, and without any more infuſion, we boile it vnto the conſumption of the third part, and this decoction is good to be drunke at dinner and ſupper. Truth it is, I ſometime make this decoction with wine, in this wiſe. The firſt decoction being made (as I haue before declared) I take of water fifteene poundes or pintes, and the ſame quantity of *ſalſa*, and boile them together till halfe the liquor be waſted, then before I take the veſſell from the fire, I put thereto of white wine not ſtrong, but pleaſaunt in drinking, one quart, and after it hath boyled a little, I cleanſe it out, and this wine I vſe to put vnto it, when I ſee the patient not much infected, and ſo he may walke abrode if it pleaſe the patient, or elſe when his ſtomacke is much infeebled. Moreouer, ſometime I vſe to mixe the wood, and ſometime the rinde, and then I take of *ſalſa*. ℥ iij. of the *Guaicke* wood as much, and ſometime of his rinde. ℥. ij. (but not both at once, very ſeldome.) Sometime I vſe the one, and ſometime the other, after this forme. ℞. *ſalſa*. ℥ iiij. *ligni guaici*. ℥ iij. ß. or elſe of the rinde ℥. ij. To which I put of water thirteene pintes, and let them boile together till halfe be waſted. Againe to make their drinke for dinner and ſupper, I take of water eighteene pintes, and boile it to the conſumption of the third part; when I vſe the barke, I take euen the ſame quantity of water, although there be of it but ℥ ij. Now when it chanceth me to haue a patient very delicate, and therefore will not giue him theſe decoctions; in this caſe I boile the *ſalſa* in thirteene pintes of water, vnto the conſumption of halfe, and when it is thus boiled, I haue a veſſell either of the raped *guaicum*, or the powder of the rinde, which I beſt like of, and into it I cleanſe the decoction of *ſalſa*, as hote as is poſſible, and ſo it is infuſed for thirteene houres, and then I ſtraine it, and thus I prepare this ſirupe. At dinner and ſupper, I giue onely the ſecond decoction of *ſalſa*. The reaſon why I thus admixe them, is becauſe the decoction of *ſalſa* doth little offend the ſtomach, but ſometime it moueth the belly, therefore I mixe *guaicum* therewith. An other cauſe why I mixe them, is to eradicate the diſeaſe, wherefore *ſalſa* is needefull. Thirdly, when I hath one that haue hadde this diſeaſe long time, I vſe both *guaicum* and *ſalſa*, yea and ſometime the rinde, but that I doe very ſeldome, and I vſe this decoction in all pointes as the other in quantity and time. And ſometimes if the patient be very full of vlcers, I vſe this decoction following: I take *guaicum*. ℥. vij. of *ſalſa*. ℥. iij. and infuſe them in fourteene pintes of warme water, foure and twenty houres, then boile them vntill there be left ſeuen pintes, and towardes the end of the boiling, adde to of licoriſe. ℥. j. raiſons of the ſunne, the ſtones picked out. ℥. ij. the rootes of *conſolida maior*. ℥. ij. ß. of the ſeedes of *Carduus benedictus*. ℥. ß. and when it is colde, ſtraine it. This decoction take for the firſt morning and euening. ℥. viij. at a time warme, and euery morning procure him to ſweat if it be poſſible. For the ſecond decoction, take that which was ſtrained, and adde thereto of freſhe *guaicum*. ℥ iij. of *ſalſa*. ℥ j. put of water ſixteene pintes, let it infuſe thirteene houres, and boile them to tenne pintes, and adde in the end

of

of the boyling barley. ℥. ij. licoriſe and raiſons of the ſunne, the ſtones taken out. ana. ℥. j. violet floures. ℥. ſſ. and then when it is cold, ſtraine it, and drinke of it at his meate, and at any other time of the day, remembring to purge the body once in foure daies, if there be neede. And let him take this decoction thirty daies, or fiue and twenty daies at the leaſt, as you ſee cauſe, and as the vlcers do heale, remembring to waſh or bath the places grieued, morning and euening with the firſt decoction warme.

CHAP. XXV.

Of other faculties or vertues which this ſalſa hath.

BVt you ſhall vnderſtand, that this *ſalſa* doeth not cure and put away this *Morbum Gallicum* onely, but the ſame is good for many other affectes, as in a catarhe, or diſtillation from the head, being ſharpe and ſalt, in cancres not vlcerate, and in tumors which are hard to be reſolued; and I haue found by mine owne experience, that it yeeldeth good effect in the cure of *ſcrophule*, commonly called the Kings euill. I miniſter it in this wiſe for the ſpace of forty daies, I take of the powder of *Salſa*, and the powder of *Ruſcus*, called of ſome *Bruſchus*, of both a like portion, and euery day I giue of this powder. ℥. j. with white wine, or ale as I ſee cauſe, and it commeth well to paſſe thereby, ſometimes purging the body as I ſee cauſe, and let the patient goe abroad at his pleaſure. I haue proued this powder in the tumour of the ſplene, but I adde thereto the iuſt quantity of *Tamariſcus* which maketh it the better.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of Suffumigations which ſome practitioners vſe.

THis diſeaſe ſomtime is cured of appractitioners by Suffumigation, otherwiſe called perfumes, which way of curing is not to be recommended amongeſt thoſe waies before named. The cauſe is this, often and many times ſore inconueniences come thereuppon, and it cureth not with ſo ſmall daunger to the patient. Wherefore, I haue alwaies held it the beſt (as much as may be) to ſhunne this way of curing, for as much as in ſome it is extremely euill and dangerous, as in leane perſons, ſuch as haue a hoate and dry temperament, alſo in thoſe which haue ſtraightneſſe in the breaſt, either through obſtruction of the veſſels, or ſomwhat diſtilling from the head. Moreouer, it is pernicious vnto them which at any time haue ſpitted bloud: furthermore ſuch perſons as haue *peripneumonia*, if they vſe theſe ſuffumigatiõs, it coſts thẽ their liues. To be ſhort, all ſuch as are troubled with *diſentery*, or any other kinde of fluxe, ought to forbeare theſe Suffumigations: I my ſelfe neuer vſed them, but in one caſe or two at the moſt, and maruell ye not thereat, for I vtterly miſlike of them. But I will ſpeake a litle of Suffumigations, they haue in them theſe faculties & ſtrengths: Firſt they open al the cõduits of the body, for their nature is ſuch, that immediately they pearce the body, in pearcing they alter it, they

mundifie or scoure the inward parts, and first the hart. And the braine it selfe is altered, for by the lungs it is communicated vnto the heart, by the nose-thrils vnto the braine, as by the veines the same is also communicated vnto the liuer. And this appeareth by experience, for *suffimenta* alwaies looseu the belly, and bring excrements vnto the bowels, euen as a purgation, therefore it must needs be that they pearce or penitrate.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of the manner of perfuming the whole body.

First there is none so ignorant, or foolish an Empericke, but he purgeth the body, before the vse of those Suffumigations, by one, two, or three purgations with respect of the humour abounding, the habite of the body, and the sickenesse. And if the disease be confirmed and inueterate, the purgations ought to be strong, which rules of euacuation you may finde before in their conuenient place, where we treated of purging the body both in the beginning and the ending. And first to begin this worke with him, euen about that houre that the sunne riseth, they giue the patient a couple of rere egs, and straight after he hath eaten them, a soppe of bread infused in Malmesey, then they let him drinke a little quantity. Lastly after all these, they let him take. ℥. j. of *saccharum ros.* and lie still after that a quarter of an houre. In the meane time they prepare a little chamber which they make very hote, and therein they make a pauilion or tent, which is made of a thicke and close cloth, within the which they set a pot full of burning coales, and the patient him selfe also sitteth naked vnder this tent on a little seat for the purpose. And they haue their things ready at hand, which by litle and litle they strow vppon the coales, and the smoke thereof being closely kept in, fliteth about the tent, drying and drawing out of his body. And when that which they haue already cast vppon the coales faileth, and is gone, the strow on more, and that diuerse times, and there they let the patient continue if hee can the space of a whole houre, or halfe an houre as he can abide it. But let them alwaies take heed, that so long as he is vnder the pauilion, that they talke with him and aske of him how he fareth, for somtime they swound and fall downe within the tent, which is very daungerous, and if he aunswereth very faintly, take him out in all the hast you can, then wrappe him vp in a warme linnen sheete, and lay him a bed, and there couering him with clothes, let him continue there two houres space. And this is the way which they vse or ought to vse: they vse to perfume them three daies together, and rest one day, and then other three daies, and so to nine daies. Sometime we vse this suffumigation moe daies, euen as the disease requireth, for if we see that the palate of the mouth is exlcerated or sore in the third day, and that the matter floweth out, forthwith we leaue off, or if a laxe commeth vpon the patient, we cease: yea though it be in the third, fourth, fifth, or sixth day. If once in the day we vse suffumigation still, and that is in the morning, afterward dry vp the sweat, and let him eate his meat & drinke thinne ale. In all other things, let his diet be at large and at his pleasure to his best liking.

A good signe to know the time to leaue off.

Diet.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of the Symptomata which sometime happeneth in this way of curing.

THis way of curing by Suffumigations is endangered to certaine euill *Symptomata*, as sometime laxe of the belly, sometime corruption of the roofe of the mouth, somtime loosenes and shaking of the teeth. All which are wont to follow the annointing with Quicke siluer, and where we shall come to treat of that way of curing, we shall speake our mind concerning these *Symptomata*.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of Suffumigations made of a matter benigne and harmelesse.

I Told you before that there is two sorts of Suffumigations, one sort is compounded and made of things gentle and benigne, another sort is made of things venimous and maligne. First, let vs speake of those which containe a matter benigne and voide of malice, amongst which this is: (the first forme of one which is mighty indeed of operation, but yet of the gentler sort) ℞. *Thuris masculi, aloes, myrrha.* ana. ℥. j. *cinamomi, storacis siccæ, spicanardi, moschatæ.* ana. ℥. ß. *ambræ vel charabæ.* ℥. j. *moschi* gra. ij. These are mixed together and lightly beaten vnto powder, and with a litle spoone it is strewed vpon hote burning coales. Another is described thus. *Santal alborum, rubrorum & citrinorum.* ana. ℥. j. *nucis moschatæ, macris squinanthi, gariophillorum, camphore, assari.* ana. ℥. ß. *corticum mali apioli, siccatorum ambræ.* ana ℥. ß. They are mixed and beaten into powder, and with *terebinthine* made into a past, which past is afterward deuided into round bals, which by litle and litle are laid vppon the fiery coales. The third composition being yet more strong is this. ℞. *storacis siccæ, belzoni, ligni aloes, galliæ moschatæ.* ana. ℥. ß. *gummi hedere.* ℥. j *ladani.* ℈. ij. *squinanthi, cinamomi.* ana. ℥. ß. *albi anime, carabe.* ana. ℥ ß. *misce.* These are beaten, & with *storax liquida* made into a past, which past also is made into litle round bals, *vt supra.*

CHAP. XXX.

Of maligne Suffumigations.

Morbus Gallicus is ouercome by Suffumigations, which pearcing through the whole body, do dry the braine, the heart, the liuer, and the whole habite: these be of two sorts. The one sort particular, the other commō. Of which some be light and easie, some strong and vehement, some of a matter more benigne, some of a matter more maligne. Which they bee that consiste of a benigne matter, we haue declared in the former chap; now we haue to speake of the composition of those which doe consist of a matter maligne. Of this sort I will set downe three in number which are nowe in vse, and the principall thinges in them be *cinaberis artificialis, sandaracha græcorum*, and *auripigmentum*; and these be those, which (for as much as they be poisons) of there owne nature, doe inspire a certaine venimous vapour into the body. But to bee briefe, you shall vnderstand that the whole effecte consisteth in *hydrargyro*, or in some other matter of like nature vnto it, as is *Arsenicum, sandaracha*, and *cinaberis artificialis*, or *precipitatum*. These things be mixed with

aromatickes to ſtrengthen the inward parts, for otherwiſe they ſhould be much offended by them and hurt; and the chiefe of theſe *aromaticke* things, be *Reſinæ*
1 and diuerſe kinds of gummes. The firſt forme of this ſort is this: ℞. *cinaberis.* ℥. iij. *myrrhæ, thuris maſtiches.* ana. ℥. j. *aloes hepaticæ, ſandaraca arabum, ſtiracis ſiccæ, belzuini.* ana. ℥. iij. Theſe be beaten groſly, and thereof is made a powder, which
2 is ſprinckled vpon the fiery coles. The ſecond forme is this. ℞. *cinaberis.* ℥. iij. *ſandarachæ græcorum.* ℥. j. ß. *myrrhæ, thuris lignialos, cadani ammoniaci.* ana. ℥. j. Theſe are beaten in groſſe wiſe, and wixed with *terebinthine*, and thereof are made
3 ſmall bals to caſt vppon the burning coales. The third forme of maligne Suffumigations is this. ℞. *cinaberis.* ℥. iij. *Auripigmenti, ſandarachæ grecorum.* ana. ℥. ß. *precipitati.* ℥. iij. *thuris, aloes hepaticæ, maſtiches, myrræ, electæ, belzoni, ſtoraci ſiccæ, cadani, ammoniaci.* ana. ℥. ß. *miſcentur.* Of theſe make a groſſe powder which is ſtrewed vppon the burning coales. And theſe be the deſcriptions of thoſe Suffumigations, which haue a venemous faculty, and do expell by the malignity of their nature.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of the cure by annointing with Quicke ſiluer.

THe firſt way that experience found out to heale this diſeaſe in Italy, was by *argentum viuum.* For when this diſeaſe began to ſpread in that country, Chyrurgians attempting all things for the cure thereof, becauſe they had read that Quick ſiluer ſhould be of great veertu againſt an old rebellious ſcab (and at the firſt comming in of this diſeaſe, it had alwaies vlcers ioyned therewith, they thought good to try that *Argentum viuum*, and that with good ſucceſſe, for ſome thereby gathered great riches. Many fell into *Maraſmus* by this annointing, many loſt their teeth after it: ſome had the palate of their mouth rotted away, ſome had the bones of their head eaten, which ſo doth continue ſtil, one hath his mouth in like ſort, another his face ſet awry thereby. For if it helaeth not, it driueth the hote channell of vicious humours into the head. I haue taken in hand ſome, who haue bene annointed with this ointment three yeares before, and when they haue had ſores (called *gumata*) vppon their skinnes, whereby the bones haue bin diſcouered, I haue ſeene the *Argentum viuum* gathered within the place: for this cauſe I commend not this medicine. I haue vſed it ſometime when I could not attaine my purpoſe, by the ſaid waies of curing called *Regiæ*. I ſaw once a young ſtripling that had *Morbum Gallicum*, vpon whom all the aforeſayd *Regiæ curationes* had bene practiſed, and hee neuer the better therefore, yet he afterwardes was cured by the waies of annointing. Wherefore in ſuch as haue rebellious affects, and are to be deſpaired of, I vſe it, when I haue proued all waies, and all ſorts of medicines before. And when I vſe it, I obſerue this order. Firſt to purge the humour that doeth abound, and if the humours be mixt then all the body, I giue the *dezoctum guaici*, by the ſpace often or twelue daies, to ſtrengthē the inward parts, as the head, braine, and liuer, and then the venemous medicine hurteth not ſo much. And after I haue thus prepared my patients, I annoint them in this ſort. Firſt three daies if the *ſymptomates* doe not appeare, then to foure, fiue, ſixe, yea ten daies, till I ſee the *ſymptomates* doe appeare, then I annoint no more. Of theſe *ſymptomata*, ſome

Harmes following the vſe thereof.

some happen commonly very much, other some very little, it commonly happeneth that after annointing, the patients haue their palate swelled, and raw, their tongue growen bigger, so that sometime they can neither speake nor swallow downe any meate: their tongue is exceeding sore, by reason of great inflammation, and such abundance of corrupt and stinking spittle flowing vppon it, all their teeth are loose in their head, and doe shake, sometime they loose some of them. Finally, such a quantity of corrupt matter, is gathered and brought to the mouth, that sometime the teeth are quite couered therewith. This medicine of his owne nature flieth altogether to the mouth, and there seeketh to breake forth. In this case you ought to appoint the patient a diet of things easie to be digested, as some *cullaze* of delicate flesh. Let the drink which he drinketh be pleasaunt, and if hee hath vsed to drinke wine, let him haue it, and let his diet be large enough of broth, and good store of fine bread in it, and so nourish him largely and plentifully, for the euacuation which hee sustaineth is great, so that I haue bene compelled to cut the *cephalica* veine for the swelling of the tongue. *Diet.*

CHAP. XXXII.

To correct the symptomata which happeneth in the mouth in this way of curing.

AND amongest other things this also is to be obserued as much as is possible, to draw out the *Hydragiron* which lieth soaked in the palate, and the teeth. The way to doe it is this: Let the patient hold and keepe in his mouth, a ring of fine gold, and draw it forth twise or thrise, and if it chaunce to looke white, lay it on the coales and it will come to his colour as before, and then put it in, and so keepe it at his pleasure. But if the patient haue great paine, we vse to washe his mouth with milke. If the paine continue, I vse barley water and sirupe *myrtillis*, or *Diamoron*, or *Memphar*, and sometime wee vse *aqua solani*, or plantaine. Sometime wee vse of repercussiue iuices, as *succus foliorum, rubi, foliorum plantaginis*, some of the iuice of vine leaues. Sometime we vse barley water, with *mel rosi*, sirupe *myrti diamoron simplex*, to scoure with all the mouth. Another *symptoma* yet followeth vppon this way of curing, and that is, immoderate laxe of the belly, for somtime the patient voideth by the siege pure bloud, or strings of bloud, as we see in *dysenteria*. In this case (if the patient his strength may well sustaine it) let vs not stay the fluxe but moderate it, and cause that the excoriation of the bowels do not thereby encrease. First by ministring clisters of milke, wherein haue bene quenched red hote gaddes of steele, or little blacke flint stones, or by the iniection of the iuice of *ptysan*, pure milke. Sometime (the patient being weake) we come to the vse of astringent things, as *oleum myrtinum*, or *oleum empliacinum in clisteris*, also the iuice of plantaine, or of the hip brier. Sometime we put in our clisters also *bolus armenus*, or *lapis hematitis*. Moreouer, we vse astringent waters, sometime we open a veine, somtime we vse ligatures and other means, or waies of reuulsion: now if none of these *symptomata* shall come vppon them, we nourish them with good meats (as is said) and so end the cure.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of the diuerse compositions of ointments which be vsed in this way of curing.

1 THere be diuerse kindes of vnguents; I will set forth but two of them. ℞. *oleum petrolium.* ℥. ß. *olei lumbricorum, olei spicanardi, olei tartari albi, olei turpentini.* ana. ℥. j. *vnguentum dialthææ, vngu. merciaton, axungia toxsion, storax liquide, turpentini* an. ℥. ij. *axungia porcine.* ℔. ß. *armoniacæ, opoponacis, bdellij, elemnij, ladani, styracis, calaminthæ, belzoni* ana. ℥. j. *Tartari albi combustæ, aluminis combustæ.* an. ℥. iiij. *vitriole romani combustæ.* ℥. j. quicke siluer. ℔. j. *minium.* ℥. ß. mixe all, and beate them in a morter 2. hours at the least, if it be three it is the better, without ceasing. ℞. *pinguedinis gallinæ, axungiæ porcinæ, axungiæ vrsinæ.* ana. ℥. iiij. *olei liliorum albi, olei laurini.* ana. ℥ ij quicke siluer. ℥. viij. In this composition, the fats are not melted at the fire, but the filmes cleane taken out, they are beaten in a morter very diligently, then by little and little the quicke siluer is put into the morter, & the medicine is wrought in the morter, by the space of two or three houres at the least. Afterward put in these pouders; *Thuris, mastiches, myrrhæ, ammoniaci, styracis, pulueris saluiæ, pulueris stœchados, lythargirij, cerussæ.* ana. ℥. ß. Of these is made a very fine powder, which by little and little is put into the morter, continually beating till all be well incorporated. Thus these two ointments be made, the first is strongest and best. If there be many vlcers, and at the fourth or fifth annointing, commonly the *symptomata* will appeare, they vse no more annointing.

2

CHAP. XXXIIII.

Of Precipitatum giuen by the mouth.

FVrthermore you shall vnderstand, that some practitioners vse to cure this disease, not onely by annointing (whereof we haue spoken before) but by giuing *precipitatum* by the mouth. Some giue the common *precipitatum* so prepared: It is giuen in waight, *gra.* seuen or tenne at the vttermost: they mixe this quantity with medicine to alter the colour that it may not be knowen. Some mixe it with *aloes, myrrhæ, mastiches.* gr. iij. Some mixe it with conserues of roses, some with *Mithridatum*, and such like. But there is a more safe curing then this by *Turbith mineralis*, which the *Chymists* haue inuented in stead of *precipitatum*, which I better allow of, and it is very daungerous for the better sort of men: of the which I minde to speake hereafter as followeth. First, the vse of *Turbith mineralis* is betwixt graines. xviij. and xx. graines, or xxv. graines at the most, after the strength of the patient; they vse it in this manner. First they take the dose as they themselues best like, and mixe it with *Mithridatum* one part or two as they will, some mixe it with conserue of roses, so that there be not in all past ℥. j. or ℥. j. ß. at the most. They make it into a ball: some make three or foure pils and gild them, other some roule it in powder of *Diambre* or such like. The patientes body must be prepared by some easie meane, and eate a light supper: let the patient receiue it early in the morning, after he hath receiued it, let him lie in his warme bed an houre at the least, and sleepe after it, if it be possible,

Dosis.

The dosis of Turbith mineralis.

possible: then let him arise and apparell him selfe warme, and sit by the fire. Let his chamber be verie warme, so that he may sweate temperately. Within foure houres after he hath receiued the saydbole, cause him to eate of some warme broth, and let him not come out of his chamber till he be throughly whole or cured. Let his diet be verie good warme meate. Two mornings next following giue him a litle *Mithridatum* in clarified Mace ale, and cause him to sweate an houre or two in his bed. The third morning next following, giue him the Turbith as before, and let him keepe the same order aforesayd; and if his mouth growe not sore in the meane time, giue it him the third time in the third morning next following the second time; doe so till his mouth be sore, then seeke in the former chapters to heale his mouth, as is taught there. Thus haue you all the wayes and meanes to helpe this pernitious griefe.

Libri Sexti finis.

THE VII. BOOKE TEACHETH THE FORME AND RVLE OF MAKING REMEDIES AND MEDICINES WHICH OVR PHISITIONS DO commonly vse at this day, and to knowe after what sort their proportion and quantitie is distributed and noted, with the names of eeh medicine.

CHAP. I.

Of Suppositaries.

A Suppositarie is a remedie, whole, long, and round, which is put into the fundament, that it may auoyd the pricking, and moue & prouoke the vertue expulsiue to the auoiding of the excrements compost, or ordure. We do vse Suppositaries especially for three causes: the first is for bringing out of ordure, which when it lyeth in the right bowell, it requireth no clyster. The second is, when one or two clysters haue bene put into the bodie, and do not come out againe at the fundament, as it doth chaunce in passions of the cholicke, then it is verie perillous to put in other clysters. The third cause is, when the sicke person is so weake that he may better suffer a suppositarie then a clyster. A Suppositarie is made of honie that is boyled so long, till it doth waxe thicke and hard; oftentimes common salt is mixed with the honie: but if you will make it more sharpe and quicke, take salt gemme, the doung of a mouse, agaricke, or else *hiera simplex*. ℞. a Suppositarie made of honie, which if you thinke so weake that it will not moue the compost or ordure, adde too these following. ℞. to make a common Suppositarie of sharpe honie, *sal armoniac*. ℥. ß. or of salt gemme. ℈. ß. or of mouse doung. ℈. ß. or ℈. i. or of *hiera simplex*. ℥. ß. Also make suppositaries of white sope, tallow of beasts, fat of bacon, candles, the stalkes of beets or mercurie, or their rootes annointed with oyle or honie, & strewed with powder of salt specially for children & sucking babes, for whom one corne of salt put in is sufficient. ℞. time, or *cyclaminum*, or wormewood, or sothernwood, stamped in a morter. ℥ j. or ß. of boyled honie so much as sufficeth, and make a suppositarie. Suppositaries are good against the Palsey made of pellitory, pepper, napy, (that is, a kind of rapes called a nauew) centorie, bitumen (that is, a kinde of lime) the root of *panax*, hysope, *galbanum*, mixed with drie rosin, or pitch & wax. Let a suppositarie be round, & 6. 7. or 8. fingers in length. We do vse no suppositaries to thē ẅ haue the hemorhoids, or any other swellings in the fundamēt.

A suppositarie to bring foorth the ordure.

A suppositarie against the wormes called Lumbrici.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Of making Nodulus.

NODVLI be those which are called of *Aetius* in Greeke μυξώδεις, they are good for those which haue clefts and swellings in the fundament. These do auoyd and take away the hardnesse of suppositaries, because sometime we are compelled to vse slockes in their steds: their matter is the same that suppositaries be. ℞. slockes mingled or beaten with honie, and put into the tuell; and truly that *Nodulus* is best and sweetest which is made of salt and the white of an egge in cloth or wooll, made in the forme of a beane, and put into the tuell with a thread hanged at the end, that it may be drawne out againe.

CHAP. III.

Of making Pessaries.

A Pessarie is a medicine which is made of soft wooll, or such like thing, and it is put into the priuities of women. The figure or shape of it is like a suppositarie, but that it is longer & thicker, because it must be put into the wombe. It is made of waxe, or of cloth or cotton, or of lint first dipped and wet in ointment, or in a medicine meete and conuenient for the cure. Afterward winde them in silke, and hang a thread thereon, that it may be drawne out the more easily. It is put into the tuell & into the wombe to cease the inflammations & vlcers of them both. Priuatly it is put into the womb to prouoke the menstruis & the secũdine, or to stop immoderat flux of mẽstruis, or to mollifie the hardnesse of the wombe, or to cure other diseases of the wombe. ℞. a pessarie dipped and wet in *vnguentum rosatum*, and put it into the place. To this sometime is added *opium*, that is, where the inflammation causeth great paine. *Opium* by his coldnesse maketh astonied, therefore his quantitie ought to be small, as from halfe a scruple to a scruple, and let it be holden a litle time, least through his coldnesse the partes which are sinewie be hurt. It therefore may be holden halfe an houre. ℞. a pessarie dipped and wet in *vnguentum pompholygos*, put it into the tuell or into the matrice that is grieued. Pessaries to bring forth menstruis are made otherwise. The medicines are taken in silke cloth, that is as thinne as sindall, and let the forme and fashion be thicker, which may bring out with his power, as thus. ℞. *herapicra composita*. ℥. j. of *euphorbium*, and the apple of *coloquintida*, ana. ℈. ß. mixe them and make a pessarie. Annoint it with *oleum nardinum*, or with the iuyce of herbes that prouoke menstruis. Such pessaries be made oftentimes of brayed herbes prouoking menstruis, as, ℞. mercurie, neppe, or mugwort, or sothernwood, *M.* ß. bray them, and roule them in silke, and make a pessarie. If the menstruis haue endured with swelling and paine, first make a bath, for that doth mollifie and moist, the paunch ought first to be emptied, and the bladder to be vnloden, because the matrice is in the middest betweene them: for these being filled, and pressing the matrice, the menstruis for ouer much straightnesse, may be retained, and made slowe in comming out. If immoderate menstruis doe flowe, doe thus: ℞. a pessarie wet in *vnguentum comitissæ*, and put it into the matrice; or thus. ℞. of

To cease inflammation.

To drie vlcers.

To bring forth menstruis.

To mollifie the hardnesse of the wombe. plantaine or knotgrasse, or brier, of mirtle, or other that can stop menstruis. M. ß. bray them, and roll them in silke, and make a pessarie. Pessaries mollifying may be made of the marrow of a calfe, and a hart, of rosin, terebinthine, fatnesse of a goose, or porke, and of gumme armoniacke dissolued in water.

CHAP. IIII.
Of Clysters or Enema.

A Clyster or *Enema*, is a kind of medicine the which is cast and put into the bowels by the fundament, liquid and thinne, and it is profitable for eight things. 1. To mollifie the wombe restrained with hardnesse. 2. To prouoke the violence detestable and astonied. 3. To auoyd any kinde of humours. 4. To put away ventosities. 5. To cease dolours and paines. 6. To bind and restraine the bellie. 7. To make cleane vlcers of the guttes or bowels. 8. To make sound the same. There may be also added to alter or chaunge, as here followeth. ℞. of lettuce, scarioll, *rastrum porcinum*, leaues of sallow. ana. *M*. j. floures of violets, and nenuphar, of each a little handfull: make a decoction of one pound. In the strayning, let one ounce of *Casia fistula* bee dissolued, oyle of violettes, and of nenuphar, ana. ℥. j. ß. camphire, ℈. j. and make a clyster. ℞. the foure kindes of remollitiues, or mollificatiues, pellitorie of the wall. ana. *M*. ß. the rootes of the mallowes called *althæa*, and white lillies. ana. ℥. j. seede of flaxe, fenugreeke, and anise. ana. ℥. ß. of fat figges. iiij. make a decoction of ℔. j. in weight. In the straining thereof dissolue therein of *Casia fistula*, *mel violatum*, and fresh butter. ana. ℥ j. oyle of violets. ℥. iij. and make a clyster. If you will make a clyster mollificatiue lacking the things aforesayd, doe thus. ℞. of oyle made warme. ℔. j. and make thereof a clyster, or thus. ℞. oyle and fresh butter. ana. ℔. ß. and make a clyster. ℞. the foure remollitiues. ana. *M*. j. seede of *Carthamum* ℥. j of anise, fenell, and *careum*. ana. ℥. iij. and make a decoction of ℔. j. and in the straining dissolue *hiera simplex*, or *benedicta*, or *diaphenicon*, or *electuarium de succo*, or *electuarium indi maioris*. ℥. ß. of clarified honie, or iuyce of squill. ℥. j. or common salt. ℥. ij. or salt gemme. ℈. j. or ℥. ß. Manie do ad to clisters ℥. j. of the iuyce of beetes, which doe moue and grieue the belly, or iuyce of beetes and colewortes. ana. ℥. ß. of common salt. ℥. ij. or ℥. j. which bite and gnaw the bellie, or lesse, but the iust weight must be as you coniecture to be easie or hard for the sicke. Also such a clyster expulsing the detestable facultie or matter, may verie well be made onely of honie, or hony with iuyce of *squilla*, or other things decoct. And if that the vertue expulsiue be astonied & dull through the hardnesse of the ordure, then make a clyster partly of mollificatiues, & partly of expulsiues aforsaid. Clisters which auoid humors are made so, that they varie according as the humours differ. For when the humour is grosse and cold, euill disposing the bowels, let it be made thus: ℞. the foure remollitiues. ana. *M*. j. cammomil, the tops of dill, origan, calamint, sothernwood. ana. *M*. ß. anise, *careum*, comin, ameos, seseleos. ana. ℥ ß. berries of lawrell, seed of rewe. ana. ℥. ij. make a decoction. In the straining dissolue *catholicon*, and *diaphenicon*. ana. ℥. ß. or *diaphenicon*, or *benedicta*. ℥. vj. or of both. ℥. ß. of red sugar, and *mel anthor*. ana. ℥. iij. or ℥. ß. oyle of dill and cam-

A Clyster mollificatiue.

A Clyster prouoking & making voyde the violence astonied.

A clyster auoyding humours.

cammomill.ana.quar. ß. or oyle of rewe. ℥. j. oyle of dill. ℥. ij. or oyle of lillies ℥ ij. make a cliſter. If ventoſitie be preſent, adde calmatiues, if paine be preſent, take a medicine releaſing griefe by prouoking ſleepe, as hereafter ſhall appeare by examples. If a cholericke & gnawing humor muſt be brought out with a cliſter, then let the cliſter be made of ſuch things as will auoyd that humour, and mixe it partly with ſuch helpes as doe ceaſe inflammation, as thus. ℞. mallowes, biſmallowes, violets, pellitorie of the wall, endiue, ſuccorie, lettuce, purſlaine. ana. M. j. and if there be ſo much neede of coldneſſe, take the foure great cold ſeeds bruſed. ana. ℥. iij. or ℥. ß. of whole barley. p. j. make a decoction of one pound. In the ſtraining diſſolue *caſia fiſtula* and common ſugar. ana. ℥. j. the white of one egge or two, oyle of roſes, or of violets, or common oile quar. j. make a cliſter. If ſuch a paſſion cometh of a melancholicke humour, make it thus. ℞. the foure mollificatiues, the leaues of bugloſſe and borage, the tops of dill, *lupuli*, and fumitorie. ana. M. j. melilot and cammomill. ana. M. j. ſeede of *charthamum*, and polipodie of the oke. ana. ℥. j. anniſe, and fennell. ana. ℥. ß. make a decoction. In the ſtraining diſſolue *hiera ruffi*, which is not in vſe, or *confectio hamech*. ℥. ß. or *catholicon*. ℥. j. red ſugar, or *mel roſarum*, or violets. ℥ j. oile of dill, lillies, and violets. ana. ℥. j. make a cliſter. ℞. mallowes, biſmallowes, pellitorie of the wall, organie, calamint, cammomill, the tops of dill. ana. M. j. anniſe, *careum*, comin and fennell. ana. ℥. ß. or ℥. vj. of lawrell berries. ℥. iij. or ℥. ß. ſeede of rewe. ℥. ij. or iij. and make a decoction. In the ſtraining diſſolue *benedicta*, or *diaphenicon*, or *electuarium indi maioris* which we do not vſe here. ℥. ß. confection of lawrell berries. ℥. iij. or ℥. ß. red ſugar. ℥. j. oile of dill, cammomill and rewe. ana. ℥. j. make a cliſter. Into theſe cliſters which put away ventoſities, oile of nuts is wholeſome to put in, and alſo (as Galen ſaith) *vinum maluaticum cretenſe* may well be mixed with ſuch a cliſter as is aforeſaid. The ſignes of ventoſities and winde contained in the bowels, be often farting and noiſe in the guttes, becauſe it chaunceth as often as burbles are broken in the bowels. Bowels wherein be burbles (as Galene teacheth *Particula 2. Aphoriſm. ſtrangulati nondũ mortui &c.*) be cauſed of aire ſhut and encloſed with the humour. Cliſters to ceaſe paines are made many wayes, for if the cauſe be a hote gnawing humour, the example is ſhewed afore by cold things, where he intreateth of a cliſter to auoyde humours; if the paine be of a cold cauſe, take the ſame that is giuen againſt ventoſitie laſt before; if the paine doe come of moe cauſes, make a cliſter of manie of thoſe things, which are meete for the cauſes: and when the cauſe of the paine is not knowne, make it thus; ℞. floures of cammomill, melilot, the toppes of dill, ana. pug. ij. make a decoction in milke. In the ſtraining diſſolue therein white ſugar, becauſe the red is byting and pricking. ℥. j. ß. whites of egges. ij. oyle of dill and cammomill. ana. quar ß. and make a cliſter. Or thus, ℞. oyle of cammomill, dill and violets. ana. ℥. iij. caſt it in with a cliſter, and when we want ſuch oyle, we make it of quar. iij. or ℔. j. of oyle oliue. ℞. milke ſodden quar. iij. or ℔. j. *amylum ſiue amydum*, halfe a dramme, or a dramme at the moſt, gumme arabibique, or Tragacanth, or both, a litle burnt. ana. halfe a dramme, or a dramme, or two drammes, bole armoniacke, and *Sanguis draconis*. ana. ℥. ij. oyle of roſes and cammomill. ana. one ounce and a halfe: make

A cliſter to put & driue away ventoſities.

A cliſter to ceaſe paines.

A cliſter reſtraining.

A clyster profitable against a hote humour gnawing in the bowels.

a clyster. ℞. the iuyces of plantaine, *Arnogloſſa*, (that is) a kinde of plantaine, knotgraſſe and purſlaine: let theſe iuyces be cleanſed either by ſeething or reſidence, take of all theſe, or of one of theſe as much as ſufficeth for a clyſter, adding of the powder aforeſaid, and with thoſe oyles make a clyſter. Note, that when there is need, then you may make clyſters of thoſe herbes ſodden, or of the waters diſtilled out of them, adding roſe water, as: ℞. the water of *Arnogloſſa*, of plantaine, of roſes, of purſlaine, of knotgraſſe, as much as ſufficeth, and diſſolue ſome of the aforeſaid things therein. It is to be noted that ſometime there are put into the afore ſayed decoctions, ſeedes and fruites that be ſlypticke to make hard, and to binde, ſo that they lacke ſharpneſſe, becauſe elſe they would pricke, prouoke and expulſe, therefore we can mixe together the ſeedes of mirte, ſorrell, of purſlaine, plantaine, cypreſſe, *cauda equina*, horſetaile, and ſuch like. Moreouer, note, that oile muſt neuer be put into clyſters, if the bowels be vlcerate as they be in *Dyſenteria*, (which is a fluxe in the bodie) yet many do neglect that, not knowing that oyle is an enemie to vlcers, (as *Galen* intreateth *tertio & quarto Methodi.*) Truely wine is a ſpeciall friend.

A clyster to ſcoure and cleanſe vlcers in the guttes.

the creame or curde of a hare or of a goate, in weight ℥. iij. *Sorbus*, proynes, medlars, quinces. ana. ℥.ij. more or leſſe do reſtraine and binde. ℞. of whole barley p. ij. of red roſes and cammomill, and of plantaine if paine be preſent. ana. p. j. make a decoction. In the ſtrayning diſſolue therein *Mel roſatum*. ℥.j. the white of one egge or two, make a clyſter. Such a clyſter is to be giuen alwayes befor clyſters reſtrayning, binding and conſolidating, by meanes wherof the thing is made prompt and eaſie. A clyſter conſolidating is made when

A clyster consolidating (that is) making soūd of vlcers.

the filthineſſe of the bowels is not purged and tryed out, becauſe that is deadly: and therefore there needeth no clyſter, but that prognoſtication is ſufficient. ℞. of the iuyce of plantaine, *Arnogloſſa*, and purſlaine. ana. ounces three: of bole armoniacke, *Sanguis Draconis*, and *Amylum*. ana. dramme one and a halfe: or the tallow of a male or female Goate one dramme or one ounce and a halfe, and make a clyſter. And becauſe goates tallow cannot well diſſolue, but almoſt alwayes it congealeth and hardeneth together in the bowelles of the ſick. Therefore it may be and ought to be diſſolued with a litle oyle of roſes, and then it need not be feared for vlcers. Alſo ointments conſolidating (as is *vnguentum album*) ſometime are made liquid and mixed, and ſpecially, when the vlcers be nigh, or in the great guttes. Sometime in the ſteade of iuyces may clyſters be made of milke verie well for his whey portion, which doth reſtraine and conſolidate. Oftentimes both in theſe and in reſtrayning clyſters, the whites of egges hard ſodden are diſſolued. And thus finiſheth the making and vſe of clyſters or Enema.

CHAP. V.

Of making Syrupes.

A Syrupe is of medicines, a iuyce with ſugar or honie molten therein, decoct and boyled vnto the meaſure of that ſugar. Practitioners do put a double

double vnderstanding in sirupes, (that is) *simplex*, which is called vsuall, and *compositum*, which is called magistrall. Simples or vsuals be these, syrupes of violets, of roses, of endiue, of nenuphar, of mayden haire, of wormewood, of mynts, *Oximel squilliticum*, syrupe of eupatorie, of *Epithimum*, and of *byzantijs*. They are called simples, as well because they consist in one simple medicine, as also because they are ordained for one sickneſſe and one vse. *Syrupus compositus* which is called magistrall, is compounded of diuerse medicines, being good for sundrie diseases, as in example: if any man compound together syrupe of wormwood and stæchados being taken in euen portion or quantitie, there would come thereof a sirupe good for the stomach, because of the wormwood, and good for the head because of the stæchados. A Syrupe is good and profitable to digest humours before a purgation, that they may the easier and better obey the purgation. Therefore they are vsed of many Phisitions to be giuen before medicines, although we haue not read that old practitioners did obserue it, but they did commit the digestion of humours wholly to nature. Looke the comment. *Aphorism. 9. Lib. 2.* when anie man will purge the bodie it behoueth to make it flowing. Truely *Hyppocrates* would do thus, saying, that the concoct and digest matter ought to be healed & moued, and not the crude and raw matter. And *Galen ad Glauconem libro primo*, speaking of the cure of *Tertiana Notha*, would not haue wormewood to be giuen till the seuenth day. Therefore it doth appeare for a truth, that syrupes ought rather to be giuen for the humours left after a purgation, then for their digestion and coction. But many do obserue and vse, that humours being grosse and clammie, and viscous, may by syrupes that do attenuate, cut, and deuide, be preparate and made easie to auoyding and purging, they call this digesting of humors. Cold and cleauing humours are preparate with syrupes that be hote, cutting and scouring, as to digest rheumie matter, such as is a feuer Quotidian, and to prepare it to the purging. ℞. the fiue rootes apperitiue, made cleane and tempered in vineger foure houres .ana. ℥.ß. or ℥.iij. or the tyndes of the fiue roots, origan, calamynt, hysope, betonie, and germander, ana. *M.* ß. of anniſe and fennell. ana. ℥. ß. of raysons the stones pulled out, ℥.iij. both the stæchados. ana. p.j. make a decoction. In the strayning, dissolue of good honie quartes. iij. of white sugar. ℥.iiij. make a syrupe perfectly sodden. Minister three spoonfull with double as much of water of liquorice, or with ptysan, or with water of raysins or anniſe. Humours that be moueable and thin, must be preparate to the auoyding and purging by syrupes that do make thicke and let the mouing, which humours if they be caried to the wayes of expulsion, or be kept & contained in the wayes and conduites by which an apt and readie expulsion may be made of them, then they may be auoided without any preparatiue. But if those humours be restrained and kept out of the places aforesayed, then they shall be rectified and remedied with colde syrupes, the making whereof doth followe.

A syrupe digesting of rheumy matter.

A syrupe against thinne and moueable humours.

A syrupe to make humors grosse and thicke.

℞. syrupes of purcelaine, sorrell, endiue, nenupharis, of rybes, of barberies, of *agresta*, of quinces, of roses, take of one of these or mo. ℥.vj. minister it with double as much of well water sodden: there may also conueniently be made a iulep in this wise. ℞. syrupes of roses, purslaine and sorrell. ana. ℥.j. ß. or

℥.ij. water of roses, *Arnoglossa*, succorie or endiue, or purslaine, or sorrell ana. ℥.ij. water sodden or burnt, specially if fluxe of the bellie be present. ℥.vj. make a iulep clarified, and aromatized with ℥.ij. of cinamon elect. Furthermore if those humours do not make and cause fluxe of the bellie, but being inflamed do begin a feauer, then neither syrupes stipticke nor waters are to be vsed, but rather cold syrupes lacking stipticitie, as be syrupes of endiue, purslaine, violets, of *nymphea* called water lillies, of maidenhaire. But if we do suppose that there ought to be a greater extinguishing and quenching, that the rotten matter may be driuen out the more easily, we do vse colde sharpe syrupes, as be *Syrupus acetosus simplex*, which is put in both causes, as well hote as cold. Also *oxisaccharum simplex*, and *Syrupus de acetositate citri*, and of lymons, which if the fluxe *diarrhea* be present, being raised and caused of such hote humours, then syrupes that be acetose and sharpe are not to be ministred, because they excoriate, rase, and slay, but syrupes of ribes, barberies, quinces, and iuyce of sorrell may be suffered and giuen, because they haue but meane sharpnesse and acetositie. But against hote humours, make potions or syrupes magistrall in this wise. ℞. Endiue that is young, or new set, and not growen long, wash it not, *adiantum*, maidenhaire, succorie, purslaine, lettuce, singreen, scarioll, plantaine, of all, or of some of them two or three. ana. M. ij. the foure great cold seedes. ana. ℥.iij. the roote of succorie, the roote of sorrell, of gramen and nightshade (that is) the lesse morrell, called *Solatrum*. ana. halfe an ounce, or ℥.iij. make a decoctiō, to which may be added the iuyce of the herbs afore written, cleansed so much, and halfe so much, or halfe as much more as the third part of the decoction. In one pound of the straining dissolue sugar taberzet. ℥.vj. of wine of pomegranates ℥.j.ß. of vineger. ℥.ß. make a syrupe clarified and aromatised with ℈.ij. of white saunders, or red, or both. ana. ℈.j. But if thou wilt make the sirupe perfectly concoct and sodden, adde to sugar, and let it be sodden to the perfection that it may be kept. The vse and ministration must be with double as much of some liquor as water sodden, water of liquorace, or the water of some of the herbes aforesaied distilled, yet I do not much praise and allow the vse of distilled waters. But if the sirupe be not perfectly boiled (as is shewed in the first example) it must be giuen by it selfe, and without the administration of any thing *else*, neither shall the iuyces be put in, which should be put in, in a sirupe perfectly sodden. Like formes and vses may be made of sirupes, rubifying or digesting cold matter. Sirupe of *Epithimum*, sirupe of fumitorie, which is made two waies: one way is of the only decoction or iuyce of fumitorie, and then it is *Sirupus de fumiterre simplex*: another way is according to the description of *Mesue*, and such a sirupe hath mirabolanes, *Cassia*, and many other things: which sirupe is called compound, for that cause, sirupe of bugloss, sirupe of borage, sirupe of harts-tongue, which openeth and looseth the stoppings of the spleene, and sirupe of violets, because it moisteneth verie much.

Note.

A sirupe for melancholy humors.

The simple medicines wherewith these sirupes are compounded be these: Borage and bugloss, fumitorie, *lupulus*, *Epithimum* and such like, that do helpe and aide the digestion of such an humor. Out of the aforesaid things may be made sirupes, potions, and Iuleps, decoct and boyled to the satisfying of these

intentions

intentions and meanings. Oftentimes there be made ſirupes laxatiue for the purging and auoiding of matter that is rheumie and filthie, and alſo melancholike matter, when long continuing diſeaſes be bred of them, partly to the digeſtion of raw matter or humors, and partly to the auoiding and purging of humors, which be rotten or halfe rotten, as is in long feuers.

℞. the roote of *Apium*, fennell and percely ſcraped and made cleane. ana. ℥.iij. of hyſope, origan and calamint. ana. *M*.ß. of ſeede of *Carthamum*. ℥ iij. greene polipodie of the oke. ℥. ij. of anniſe, fennell, and dill. ana. ℥.j ß. of liquorice ſcraped. ℥.iij. of raiſons, the ſtones pulled out. ℥.ß. of the three cordiall floures. ana. p.j. make a decoction ſtrained to ℔.j.or ℔.j. ß. in the which infuſe new trochiskes of agaricke. ℥.j. ß. leaues of ſeane clenſed. ℥. ij. after ten houres make a ſtraining, wringing it ſtrongly, whereto adde ſirupe of violets, *ſyrupi de Bizantijs*, and white ſugar. ana. ℥.iiij. make a ſirupe perfectly ſodden and aromizate with. ℥.j. of cinnamon elect, and with one ſirupe. ℈. j. *Chiloaloes*. The droſſe of this ſirupe by meanes of the things that are put into it, may be ℥.j. ß. which alſo the fourth or fifth day, may be giuen with double as much of hydromell (that is) water and honie ſodden together, or *aqua muiſa*, or of ſome other decoction. By like meanes may the laxatiues entring into this preſent ſyrupe be encreaſed or diminiſhed by reaſon of the quantitie making of the ſirupe, for this preſent ſyrupe is ordained for 6. or 7. or mo doſes, therfore the forme & faſhion of the proportions being kept, it may be made for 1. 2. 3. or mo doſes. Moreouer by like reaſon, a ſirupe laxatiue is made: for matter cholericke and filthie (as one would ſay) vitelline, the which cauſeth feuers hard to be eradicate and taken away.

A ſirupe laxatiue againſt reumie matters and feuers Nothæ.

℞. the roots of *Apium*, and of fennell cleanſed and ſcraped and tempered in vineger one nights ſpace. ana. ℥ ß. of hyſope, mayden haire, *Adiantum*, *Politricum*, ſome call it wall-ferne, harts-tongue, endiue, ſuccorie. ana. *M*.ß. or *M*.j. the 4. great cold ſeedes bruſed. ana. ℥.ij. or ℥.iij. Raiſons the ſtones pulled out. ℥.ß. the three cordial floures. ana. p.j. make a decoctiõ in the which infuſe agaricke newly made in trochiskes. ℥. vj. the leaues of ſeane made cleane ℥.j. in the ſtraining diſſolue ſirupe of maydenhaire and violets. ana. ℥ iij. of white ſugar. ℥. iiij. make a ſirupe perfectly boiled, putting in the end of the ſtrayning of it. ℥.ß. of rewbarbe elect infuſed as it ought to be, which thing after it be ſtrained, let it boyle on a ſoft fire without flame or ſmoke vnto the perfection of the decoction: the doſe of it is. ℥.ij. or ℥.j.ß. with double as much of the decoction of endiue, and ſuccorie, or liquorice, or with double as much of whey made of goates milke. This ſirupe is for fiue or ſixe doſes. And if the firſt doſe will not ſatiſfie your intent, then you muſt diſſolue ſomwhat therein that hath power to purge the humour that thou wouldeſt haue brought out: as in example. ℞. of the ſirupes aforeſaid. ℥.j.ß. of whey made of goates milke. ℥.iij. make a doſe. And if thereof do not follow the effect that you looke for, adde thereto either of *caſia fiſtula*. ℥.ß. or of *diaprunis laxatiue*. ℥.j. or ℥.ij. or *diapleniacon*. ℥.j. ß. or alſo ſome rewbarbe. You may alſo do the ſame in the example of the ſirupe made to auoid rheume.

A ſirupe laxatiue againſt filthie cholerik matter.

℞. of the iuyces of *lupuli* (that i) hops, and of fumitorie, but it is vnpleaſant, of bugloſſe, of borage, and of ſweet apples clenſed. ana. ℥.ij. or iij. let them be

A ſirupe againſt melancholie.

twise clensed eyther by decoction and clarifying, or by residence of greene polipodie of the oke ℥.ij. or. ℥.iij. of fat Tamarindes. ℥.j. *Epithimum Cretensis* put in the ende of the decoction. ℥.ij. of *adiantum*, harts-tongue and the three cordiall floures. ana. p. j. make a decoction strayned to quarts. iij. in the which infuse the leaues of sene made cleane. ℥.iij. make a strayning, and mixe it with the aforesayd iuyces: afterward adde therto, syrupe of violets. ℥ vj. syrupes of bugloss, and sugar raberzet. ana. ℥. iij. make a syrupe perfectly sodden, and aromatizate with ℥.j. of cinnamon, and ℈.j of white ginger scraped. The dose is two ounces with water of bugloss, or hoppes, or fumitorie, or whey made of milke. And thus much of making syrupes.

CHAP. VI.
Of making Iuleps.

A Iulep doeth not much differ from a syrupe, but that it is lesse boyled then a syrupe is, and because also it is made without the permixtion of any other decoction with it, as syrupes are wont to haue when they are made. Iuleps are made either of water of infusion or distillation, or else of the iuyce of some simple medicine, as thus. ℞. of the water of infusion of roses, or the water of infusion of violets. ℥. v. suger. ℥. iiij. boyle it easily and make a Iulep: minister it with twise or thrise as much of sodden water made cold againe. Or thus, ℞. water of roses ℥. viij. of suger. ℥.iiij. boyle them easily and make a Iulep. Or thus: ℞. the iuyce of roses, or the iuyce of violets. ℥ vj. suger. ℥. iiij. boyle them easily and make a Iulep. Likewise Iuleps may be made of other things, that do either make warme or hote, or that do open and loose, or that do restraine and binde. But yet Physitions commonly doe call a syrupe, dissolued in sodden water, a Iulep: saying, ℞. syrupe of roses, or the syrupe of violets, or syrupe of mayden haire, or of any other syrupe. ℥. iij. of sodden water. ℔. ß. mixe them together, and make a Iulep.

CHAP. VII.
Of Dolis, siue Potio.

Dolis, otherwise called *Potus* or *Potio*, is a medicine laxatiue dissolued in some kinde of liquor and giuen in drinke. There be of this many differences, because of the diuersitie of humours that they voyde and purge. The simple medicines do purge and bring foorth rheume or flewme, as be these, Agaricke, Turbyth, *Carthamus*, *colocynthis*, and other often sought out by *Mesua*. The compounds be *Diaphœnicon*, *in forma opiatæ*, *Diacarthami* in the forme of lozenges, *Electuarium de Citro*, *Electuarium Indum maius & minus*, *Benedicta*, and *Hiera simplex*, *Hiera composita*, and such like. But these be compounded, not that they auoide onely one humour alone, but being mixed with another humour, as choler mixt with fleume or melancholie. Medicines are ministred in diuerse formes and fashions. As first in the forme of a Potion, for one onely Dose, or for one time, in the forme of a bole, whereof shall be spoken hereafter, in the forme of an electuarie liquide, as *opiatæ*, whole in forme, as lo-

zenges

zenges, in the forme of syrupes or Iuleppes. Also in the forme of powder and pilles. ℞. *diaphœnicon* .ʒ. ß. or .ʒ. vj if the sicke be strong, dissolue it with water of the decoction of liquorice, rayſons and anniſe, as much as ſufficeth. Make a doſe with ſyrupe of violettes .ʒ. vj. or ʒ. j. or diſſolue it with common ſtrayning, and make a doſe, or diſſolue it with hydromell, or diſſolue it with certaine diſtilled waters, as waters of hoppes, Bugloſſe, ſuccorie, or ſuch like, or diſſolue it with the decoction or broath of a chicken, or with the whey of milke, or thus: ℞. the three cordiall flowres .ana. one handfull, of proynes damaſcene, *Inubarum* and *Sebeſten* .ana. foure in number, liquorice ſcraped ʒ. j. ß. aniſe ʒ. j. make a decoction ſtrayned for one doſe: in the which diſſolue *Diaphœnicon* .ʒ. ß. or. ʒ. vj. ſyrupe of violettes ʒ. j. and make a doſe. If you will adde to it another electuarie laxatiue, take of one a quantitie away, and adde to as much of another, as where it is ſayde, take of *Diaphœnicon* drammes. vj. you may ſay, take of *Diaphœnicon* and *Carthamum* .ana. three drammes and ſo likewiſe of other. *The forme of a potion.*

℞. Rayſons the ſtones pulled out .ʒ. ß. ſeede of *Carthamum* and polypodie of the oke .ana. ʒ. ß. or. ʒ. vj. of anniſe, fennell, and liquorice ſcraped .ana. ʒ. j. ß. leaues of hyſope, ʒ. j. make a decoction, in the which infuſe Agaricke newly trochiſcate .ʒ. j. or .ϑ. iiij. or. ʒ. j. ß. In the ſtrayning diſſolue *Diacarthamum*, or *diaphœnicon*, or *Benedicta* .ʒ. iiij. or ℥ ß. ſyrupe of violettes. ʒ. j. and make a doſe. Theſe things auoide choler: iuyce of roſes, violets, Tamarindes, manna, *diagredion*, (that is,) ſcammonie preparate, *Pſillium*, rewbarbe and myrabolanes. *Caſia fiſtula* purgeth as well choler as rheume, iuyce of roſes and Ireos do bring foorth thinne choler and yeallow water. Compounds to auoide choler are theſe, *Electuarium de ſuccoroſarum*, *diaprunis laxatiuum*, *diaprunis ſimplex*, trochiskes of violets which be ſeldome in vſe. *The forme of a potion or doſe, whoſe decoctiõ doth auoide certaine rheume and fleume. Simples to auoide choler. Compounds.*

℞. of fat Tamarinds ʒ. j. the three cordiall flowres .ana. p. ß. liquorice ſcraped. ʒ. j. ß. of prunes damaſcene, number. vj. make a decoction in a litle quantitie of water, in the which let the Tamarindes be ſtrongly wrung out. In the ſtrayning diſſolue *Caſia fiſtula* that is new. ʒ. j. or. ʒ. x. make a doſe. In the like decoction you may diſſolue. ʒ. ß. or. ʒ. vj. of *diaprunis ſimplex* with ʒ. j. ß. or ʒ. ij. of *diaprunis* laxatiue. If it be feared that *diagredion* will do hurt, and if the ſicke be rich, in the ſtead of *Diaprunis* laxatiue may be diſſolued. ʒ. j. or. ϑ. iiij. or ʒ. j. ß. of rewbarbe. Take heed and note, that ſuch a potion is good in cholericke feuers, and in thoſe feuers, in which the frenſie is feared, and truly it is excellent good, for by it is eſchued the auerſion, and alſo the refrigeration and cooling. In the ſtead of this preſent decoction and colature, medicines laxatiue may be diſſolued in a common decoction, or with water of fruites, or with hydromell, or with waters diſtilled, either with endiue, ſuccorie, hoppes, or with the broath of a chicken, or with the whey of milke. ℞. rayſons the ſtones picked out. ʒ. iij. liquorice ſcraped, and anniſe ſeeds .ana. ʒ. j. proynes damaſcene. number. vj. Tamarindes. ʒ. ß. the three cordiall flowres, ſuccorie, young ſet endiue. ana. M. j. make a decoction boiled for one doſe, in the which diſſolue new *Caſia fiſtula*. ʒ. j. or. ʒ. vj. after the ſtrayning, infuſe ʒ. j. or. ϑ. iiij. or ʒ. j ß. of rewbarb electas it ought to be, of ſyrupe of violets. ʒ ß. or ℥ ʒ. j. make a doſe. Giue in the morning before dinner 5. or 6. houres, on that day he is left *The forme of a potion loſing and reſoluing choler. The forme of a common doſe in the beginning of cholericke feuers eſpecially in tertian feuers.*

afflicted. If choler be mixed with fleume, by reason of that mixture, let such things as do loosen choler, and such things as dissolue rheume be mixed together. Spikenard which is wont alwayes to be ioyned with rewbarbe, is vnpleasant to the bellie, for it looseneth oppilations and stopping vehemently. Also it prouoketh vomit, and in women with child, it prouoketh menstruis strongly. Therefore many do thinke that it ought not to be mixed with rubarbe in medicines, that are giuen to women with childe, or to those which be apt to vomite. For that cause if it be mixed 3. or 4. graines are sufficient for. ℥.j. of rubarbe. For delicate persons which do abhorre all medicines, make a dose vnder the forme of a sirupe for two or three times, or for one dose after this sort, specially for Tertians exquisite and deintie. ℞. endiue young set, and succory. ana. *M.* ß. the three cordiall floures. ana. p. ß. liquorice scraped. ℥. j. ß. proynes damascene vj. in number, fat Tamarindes. ℥. 6. annise. ℥. ß. make a decoction boyled to. ℥. iij. or else you may make a decoction for one dose, in which dissolue sirupe of violets, and endiue. ana. ℥. vj. or. ℥. ß. of white sugar. ℥. j. the wringing and strayning of ℥. ij. of rubarbe elect, infused as it ought to be without spikenard, make a long sirupe, that is as it were in the forme of an *Apozema* (which is a decoction so called of the Greekes and vsed of them in stead of our sirupes.) Let it be boyled vpon the coles without any smoke long time together, wringing the rubarbe strongly, being bound in a peece of linnen cloth, clarifie it, and aromizate it, and make a dose of. ℥. j. ß. it may be multiplied for two or three doses (the proportion of all being kept and obserued.) But if you will make a sirupe to last long, seeth it to the perfection, and of that sirupe minister. ℥. j. ß. or. ℥. ij. with whey of milk, or with the decoction that serueth for thy purpose. Also you may adde some Scene in the in fusion, specially if you thinke choler adust doth raigne, or if you desire a more full and quicke effect of the medicine. ℞. of young set endiue, of succorie, of *Adiantum*, and of harts-tongue. ana. *M.* j. the foure great cold seeds. ana. ℥. iij. the seed of *Carthamum*. ℥. j ß. polipodie of the oke. ℥. ij. fat Tamarindes. ℥. j. ß. seede of endiue, scarioll, and liquorice scraped. ana. ℥. ij. of raisons the stones plucked out. ℥. ij. proynes damascene. 12. in number, the three cordiall flowres. ana. p. j. make a decoction of. ℔. j. or. ℥ viij. in the which infuse the leaues of scene cleansed. ℥ j ß agaricke newly trochischate. ℥. j. In the straining of the decoction dissolue sirupe of violets, and maydenhaire sirupe. ana. ℥ iij. white sugar. ℥. ij. make a sirupe boyled vpon a leate fire, without smoke, putting into it the strayning of. ℥. vj. of rubarbe elect, infused as it ought to be, make a sirupe perfectly boiled and aromatizate with. ℥. ß of cinamon, and ℈. ij. of red saunders, reserue it in an earthen or glassen vessell. The dose of the aforesaied sirupe shall be the fourth part of it (that is to say. ℥. ij.) the which may be dissolued with whey of goates milke, or water of the decoction of the common colature, or with the waters of the decoctions of distillations of succory or endiue. But *Igorreus* doth not allow distilled waters. And if the aforesaied dose do not sufficiently moue the bellie and cause it to be soluble enough: an infusion may conueniently be added to the second dose. ℈. ij. or. ℥. j. of rubarbe elect, or some *Diaprunis laxatiue*, or *Electuarium de succo rosarum*, as in exampl. ℞. of the aforesaid sirupe. ℥. ij. the strayning of two scruples of rubarbe elect, or *Diaprunis laxatiue*. ℥. j ß. or ℥. ij. of

A dose vnder the forme of a sirupe for delicate folke.

A dose against bastardly feuers, especially Tertians.

℥ ij. of whey made of milke. ℥ .ij. or as much as is sufficient, and make a dose. It is to be noted that the aforesaid sirupe ought rather to be giuen and ministred to those that haue *Tertianæ Nothæ* (that is bastardly Tertian feuers) rather then to those that haue feuers exquisite daintie, and lawfull, for these be of fewer fits, and be ended in a short time. The other be long and of more fits, so that they remaine many times and often from one Equinoctiall to another. To this also the Tertians that be exquisite and pure do come, and are caused of sincere and good choler: and the feuers *Nothæ* and bastardly do come of filthie and vile choler. Here note also that *Carthamus* and *Agaricke* which do auoid and purge reume, the leaues of Scene which do purge melancholie, and also rewbarbe, which doth purge choler, may be put together to the aforesaid sirupe, whereby the matter that causeth feuers *Nothæ* of long continuance is auoided and purged. Also note, that in one day, or in the third or fourth day, one dose ought to be giuen, but more dayes must be let passe according to the doctrine of *Auicen de Cura Tertianarum Notharum*. These do purge melancholie: Hoppes, fumitorie, *Epithimum Cretensis*, polipodie of the oke, the leaues of scene, *lapis lazuli*, *myrabolani nigri* or *Indi*, *lapis armenius*, blacke hellebore, and a thousand other are to be sought out of *Mesua*. The compounds that do purge melancholie be, *Catholicon* or *Diacatholicon*, *diasenæ*, *Catharticon imperiale*, *Hiera Rufi*, *Confectio Hamech*, *pilulæ de fumitoria*, pilles of *lapis lazulus*, pilles of the fiue kinds of myrabolanes, of *Epithimum*, of hellebore pilles, whereof the dose is ℥ j. We can or do seldome vse the other compound medicines, for the bitternesse that they haue in taste: all electuaries (except *Catholicon*) be euill in tasting, & therefore they are confect and made in forme of potions. ℞. fumitorie, and the tops of hops. ana. *M*. j. ß. the three cordiall flowres. ana. p. j. of raisons, the stones picked out. ℥. iij. or ℥. ß. of greene polipodie of the oke. ℥. iij. of *cuscuta*, & *Epithimum*. ana. ℥. iij. of anise & liquorise scraped. ana. ℥. j. ß. make a decoctiō, in which infuse the leaues of Scene made cleane. ℥. ij. or. ℥ .iij. In the strayning of the decoction, dissolue *diacatholicon*. ℥. j. or. ℥ .x. sirupe of violets. ℥. j. make a dose. In this dose sirupe of violets, and the cordiall floures are put in, that they may temperate the dryenesse of Scene and *Epithimum*. If we will more diligently purge melancholie, we do put in *hierapicra rufi*, whose dose is. ℥. ß. in which Hellebore is entred, which is not in vse at Paris. Or else take *confectio hamech*. ℥. ß. the which is exceeding bitter, for the plentie of *coloquintida* that is therein. Remember and note, that medicines losening and purging choler, or rather melancholie, may conueniently be dissolued with the whey of goates milke, or with the water of the decoction or infusion of the things aforesaid, putting in the dose before written as in example: ℞. of all those or of part of those good things which be written in the dose aforesayed, afterward make a decoction in the whey of goates milke, and in the decoction infuse the leaues of Scene, &c. And with some of the aforesaid electuaries confect and make a dose, according to the nature and strength of the sicke person: or thus. ℞. the leaues of Scene made cleane. ℥. iij. infuse them in the whey of goates milke all one night, and in the strayning of the decoction dissolue *Catholicon*. ℥. j. or. ℥. x. or. ℥. i. ß. and make a potion. Note that *Epithimum* doeth sustaine and maintaine a decoction: and therefore we may write thus. ℞. *Epithimum cretensis*. ℥. j.

Simples to purge the melancholike humour.

The forme of a dose against melancholie.

let it boyle with whey of goates milke, afterward straine it, and wring it out strongly, and with ℥.j. of syrupe of violets make a dose, which if it seeme not to be sufficient, adde to it some *cathelicon*. Galene doth counsell to take this potion, *lib.* 13. *Therapeut.* in which place he considereth, that cankers, and all melancholicke diseases ought to be taken heed of before hand, & to be eschued: but he putteth in but ℥. iiij. which drammes do shew to be of none effect, because (as I thinke) we haue not the good *epithimum*, and therefore we take an ounce for the quantitie, whereby the working of it may be the quicker and the better. All authours do follow this sentence, which in their bookes of practises or abridgements haue remembred this against the *Elephantia*, which is cõmonly called the Leprie, and is now made for the cure of *Elephantiasis*. Manie do thinke and iudge, that the decoction of an old cocke is verie good & wholsome for diseases growen and begun, as well of melancholie, as also of reume and fleume. The chiefe vse of it is against the paines of the cholicke, caused of reume, and partly of wind, and also against diseases of the breast, as difficultie in breathing, and moreouer against diseases of the ioynts caused of cold matter. It is prepared and made against the cholicke, caused partly of reume, and partly of ventositie and winde. It is thus, as followeth. ℞. of hyssope, calamint, ana. *M.* j. raisins the stones picked out. ℥. j. ß. of anise, fenell, and *carui*. ana. ℥. vj. of the seed of *carthamum*. ℥. ij. of greene polipodie of the oke. ℥. j ß. the three cordiall flowers. ana. p. j. of the flowers of cammomill. p. ß. and make a decoction, putting all together into the bellie of an old cocke preparate as it ought to be, infuse in the ende of the decoction, the leaues of senna made cleane. ℥. ij. ß. of agaricke newly trochiscate. ℥. x. make a decoction of two pound, and reserue it to your vse. ℞. of the aforesaid decoction. ℥. iiij. syrupe of violets. ℥. j. ß. make a dose. Note that if the sicke person be strong and stubburne, there may be put in the dissoluing some *diaphenicon*, as ℥. j. ß. or ℥. ij. or as much *benedicta*. Take heede also: for agaricke (as many do thinke and iudge) is suspected, and thought to be hurtful to those that haue the cholicke: because that if the substance of it be throwne in with a clyster, the lightnesse of his substance cleauing to the guttes, doth pricke them and grieue them, and doth prouoke a fluxe also, and oftentimes doth cause one to desire to sit long on the siege, because that it hath vertue and power to draw downe humours from the farre partes of the bodie, and therefore *Democritus* (as *Mesua* doth witnesse) called it *Medicinam familiæ*, the medicine of his familie or houshold. Therefore it may not well be giuen to those that haue paine in the bowels, because it maketh a fluxe, that would not be except that caused it, and therefore I counsell in such cases, to take away agaricke. Furthermore note, that cammomill may aptly and well be put into these decoctions, although the vse of it is rare, and seldome seene among Phisitions, yet it is manifest, that the onely decoction of it in the broth of a chicken or capon, is excellent profitable against all inward griefes, and specially for those which haue the cholicke and the frenesie, (as manie haue proued it, to the great preseruation of their health.) The water of the distillation of cammomill is ministred for the same purpose, but yet the decoction thereof is of more & better effect then the distillation of it. The bitternesse of the decoction may be mitigated with sugar,

The decoction of an old cocke.

gar, if it be for delicate persons. Also the decoction of a cocke may conueniently bee giuen for diseases in the breast and of *dispuras*, if medicines pectorall be decoct with it: as, ℞. of hysope, of *Enula campana*, of each, the third part of a handfull, of Sauorie the fourth part of a handfull, horshoofe, called *vngula caballina*, which is an herbe called of some, little clote, whereof you may take a good handfull; seede of *Carthamum*, and greene polipodie of the oke. ana. ℥. ij. of anise and liquorice scraped. ana. ℥. ß. rootes of ireos, and rootes of *Enula*. ana. ℥. iij. or ℥. ß. of fat figges not putrified foure or sixe in number, of fat dates, the skinnes and filmes taken away, foure in number, of Iuiubes and sebesten. ana. twelue in number, of raisins the stones picked out. ℥. j. the three cordiall flowers. ana. p. j. make a decoction in the bellie of an old cocke, that is hunted, preparate and dressed as it ought to be, putting into it at the ende, of Agaricke and of the leaues of senna, as much as you thinke will bee sufficient for your purpose: but note, that here agaricke may conueniently be vsed and ministred. There are other medicines also which be made against all superfluities in other formes (that is to say) in the forme of liquide electuaries: that is, *ad formam opiatæ*: or in forme whole, that is, like an electuarie made in lozenges or tables.

CHAP. VIII.

Of making Bolus.

BOLVS in English is called a morsell. It is a medicine laxatiue, in forme and fashion it is meanely whole, and it is swallowed by little gobbets. It is made of diuerse things, by reason of auoyding and purging diuerse humours: but the plainest and simplest way of making it, is of *Medulla*, *Casia fistula*, newe drawne out of a fat cane or reede, sixe drammes or an ounce, of sugar so much as sufficeth: and make a bole. But if it be feared that *Casia* will doe hurt, as if great paine be in the bowelles, whereby manie times is prouoked swounding, as some do that haue but weake and tender bowelles: to such *Casia* is not to be ministred, neither by bole nor by clysters. And for that cause the sicke person must be asked howe he feeleth him selfe before *Casia* be ministred vnto him. Truely manie authours doe thinke that this hurt which *Casia* may bring, may be taken away, if there be added to it some graines of barberies, or sugar roset: for they are of this minde, that through their stipticitie the bellie and the bowelles are strengthened, and the paine impedite and letted, which *Casia* doeth cause by his clammines and mollifying softnesse. There be others that do mixe some laxatiue with *Casia*, that it may quicken the slownesse of his operation, and that it descending may the sooner slide away and be auoyded. Boles chiefly are thus ordained and made, being verie profitable remedies against the diseases of the reynes. ℞. *medulla casiæ fistulæ* newly drawne ℥. j. or ℥. x. the graines, that is, the kernels, of barberies, ℈. ß. and with sugar roset make a bole. Other do adde ℈. iii. or ℥. i. or ℥. ii. of *diaprunis laxatiue*, or *electuarium de succo rosarum*: as in example following. ℞. *medulæ casiæ fistulæ* newly drawne. ℥. vi. of *diaprunis laxatiue* ℥. ii. of sugar roset

tabulate as much as sufficeth, make a bole. Note that many, because of the ventositie which casia doeth ingender in the bowels, they adde to the bole powder of anise. ℈.j.or ʒ ß. which auaileth much ℞. *casiæ fistulæ* newly drawn out of a fat cane or reede ʒ.iij or. ℥ j. the soft matter of fat *Tamarindes*. ʒ j.ß. of chosen rewbarbe. ʒ.ß.or ℈.ij.or ʒ.j.sugar as much as suffiseth, make a bole. If the sicke person be poore, in steed of rewbarbe, make a bole with. ʒ ß. or ʒ. vj. of *casia*, and ʒ.ij. of *diaprunis laxatiuæ*, and with sugar. ℞. *catholicon*. ʒ.j. or ʒ. x. and with white sugar make a bole: or thus, ℞. *catholicon*. ℥ ß. or ʒ. vi. of *confectio Hamech*. ʒ. j or ʒ. j. ß. and with sugar make a bole.

The forme of a bole purging choler.

The forme of a bole against melancholie.

CHAP. IX.

Of making Pilles.

PILLES are ministred for the auoyding of euerie humour: vidz. against reume or fleume raigning, and also against *Cholera Natha*, which is vile and filthie choler hauing dominion in man. *Pilulæ aggregatiuæ* after the description of Mesua, *de agarico, de rhubarbaro stomachicæ, de hiera simplici, de hiera composita*, which respecteth the head. *Coccie* or *cocchiæ*, which is so called of *granis cocci*, and not of the head, as some thinke. *Pillulæ aureæ, Elephanginæ, sine quibus, de Hermodactilis maior & minor, de Serapina, de Sarcocolla.* Truely the foure kinds of pilles last recited, are most appropriate and agreeing against corrupt and stinking humors: of the which vertue also be *Arthreticæ maiores & minores* when reume raigneth, but these when choler raigneth in the diseases of the ioynts: then also the pilles of *Hermodactilis maior* and *minor* are dedicated & ministred. Pilles that do onely voyd pure choler and purge it, there are a thousand to be found, but many of them haue more respect to the auoyding of filthie and bastardly choler, or that which is greatly mixt with reume: as, *Pillulæ de Rheubarbaro, de Hiera simplici, Aggregatiuæ, de Agarico, Ante cibum, Imperiales.* In a maner the chiefe dose of pilles is one dramme and a halfe, of which make nine pilles, and with some conuenient syrupe, as syrupe of Endiue, syrupe of maidenhaire, syrupe of stæchados, or also with *Oximel* or *Hydromel*, or with some other licour.

CHAP. X.

Of making Apozema.

AN *Apozema* is a decoction of medicines gently made for the concoction and digestion of humours, or for preparation of them, and sometime for euacuation and purging. It may be made diuerse, and for diuerse intents and purposes: as to make hote and to make cold, to make moist, and to make drie, to loosen and open, to restraine and binde, to attenuate and make thinne, to make grosse and thicke, to prouoke menstruis and vrine. Of medicines particular and conuenient, and of their rootes, fruicts, seeds, (and other, as it shall seeme meete and expedient for your purpose.) In effect an *Apozema* doth not differ from a syrupe, but in boyling: for syrupes are wont to be boyled long,

and

and to the perfection, but an *Apozema* is boyled easily and litle. Therefore syrupes may be long kept, and Apozemes may be kept but a few daies. ℞. of succorie, endiue, *Cuscuta* and *Adiantum*, ana. *M*.ß, of the roots of sorrell, and of gramen. ana. ℥.ß. the foure great cold seeds made cleane ana. ℥.j. of the three cordiall flowres .ana. p.j. make a decoction of .lb.ß. In the strayning dissolue syrupe of violers, or *Syrupus acetosus*, or syrupe of limmons, or also white sugar. ℥. iij. and make an *Apozema*, clarifie it, and aromatizate it with ℈.ij. or. ℥.j. of cinnamon elect for two doses. Likewise *Apozema* may be made against other humors, the matter and effect whereof must be sought out of the head of the syrupes. Note that in the confection and making of *Apozema*: for. ℥. ij. or at the most for ℥.iij. of the decoction it is sufficient to adde .℥. j. of sugar or syrupe. Also there be made Apozemes laxatiue, as there be syrupes laxatiue, adding to laxatiue things in that decoction, or infusing them in it after the decoction is made. Looke in the title of syrupes for the example, for they be like them, (this onely excepted as we said before) that an *Apozema* after the dissoluing of the sugar or syrupe in it, ought not to be boyled any longer.

The forme of an Apozeme against cholericke humors.

CHAP. XI.

Of making Mulsio.

MVLSIO is made of seeds cleansed or of fruites, or of both sometime to quench the thirst, and the inflammation of the breast and loungs, and against diseases of the reines and the bladder, or against *Ischuria* (that is) retention and withholding of vrine, and for the strangurie, (that is) the voyding of humours by causing the vrine to issue out by droppes with burning in the yard. ℞. of the foure great cold seeds & new cleane .ana. ℥. iij. or .℥.ß. of sweet almonds blanched in cold water. ℥. j. beate all together in a stone morter with well water first sodden, and make a decoction of .lb. j. and reserue it and keepe it in a glassen vessell. The aforesaid *Mulsio* is good against the burning of the vrine, or the strangurie, if ℥.iiij. or vj. be giuen in the morning three or foure houres before dinner, and two or three houres before supper, the same quantitie of the premisses, or a litle lesse with one Lozenge of *Diatragacanthum frigidum*, in which are put in the aforesayed seedes, and gummes, and many other things. But if in the aforesayed cases we thinke that there be greater need of infrigidation and cooling: mixe with your *Mulsio* the seedes of purcelaine, of lettuce, and of white poppie. But in the diseases of the breast, adde to new pine apples, sweete almonds, and fresh figges that be not putrified, with one Lozenge of *Electuarium Diatri simplicis*, or *Diatris Solomonis*, let it be ministred straight way without delay. Also with the aforesaid *Mulsio*, there may conueniently be mixed some quantitie of Sugar, or some syrupe apt and meet for the purpose: (as *Ruellius* was wont to make against the filthie matter, and corrupt bloud in the vrine of man:) as thus: ℞. the seed of white poppie and the foure great cold seedes, or sweete almonds ana. ℥.ß. stampe all these in a morter with as much water of the decoction of liquorice as sufficeth. In the strayning dissolue of syrupe of violets, of maydenhaire, and of mirtles, ana. ℥.j.

The forme of Mulsio.

make a *Mulsio* for two times, and let the grieued person take it in the morning foure houres before dinner.

CHAP. XII.

Of making Powders.

A powder to helpe digestion.

A Powder is made of seedes, rootes and minerals powdred and beaten finely, and sugar put to them that they may be the more pleasant. Powders be ministred for many causes and intents, whereof their most common ministration is after meate to helpe digestion, or to stoppe and keepe downe vapors which ascend and are caried vp into the braine, or else for both causes as it often chanceth. ℞. the seedes of annise, and fennell .ana. ℥. j. the seede of citron, cinnamon, liquorice, and roses .ana. one scruple, of chosen pearles and the scraping of yuorie. ana. ℥. ß. of sugar rosate as much as sufficeth: make a fine powder, whereof minister after meate one spoonefull: and looke what powder is so made to stoppe and keepe downe vapours, euen the same is good to helpe digestion: as is this that followeth. ℞. Coriander preparate. ℥. j. ß. the scraping of yuorie, red corall, the horne of a Hart burned .ana. ℈. j. of cinnamon .℈. ß. of sugar rosate as much as sufficeth: make a powder which may be giuen after meate. Also they are good for many other things, as for wormes in children, for binding in the bellie, and for strength, and against the plague comming of the owne proper matter. These powders are to be ministred before meate, some alone, some with wine or vpon tostes of bread wet in wine. Sometime they are giuen for the corroboration and strengthening of all vertues, in malignant feuers, and in great imbecilitie and weakenesse of strength ℞. the scraping of an vnicornes horne graines foure, fiue, or sixe; the scraping of yuorie, of chosen pearles, and of Harts horne .ana. graines sixe, seede of citron, and *Carduus Benedictus*. ana. gra. 4., and make a fine powder, which may be giuen with conuenient liquour, as with white wine, distillation restoratiue, water of Scabious, of Bugloss, or of some other such like. And such powders for the most parte are ministred about mid-night, or early in the morning. There may also be made powders laxatiue (as is) Diascene, and Diaturbith, and the powder of *Electuarium Diacarthami*, to the which ought to be added three times, or foure times as much sugar, and they may be ministred being dissolued in the decoction of a chicken, or of liquorice or of pryan. But yet these powders are seldome vsed among practitioners.

CHAP. XIII.

Of Electuaries, and Conserues: Of Lozenges, and Manus Christi.

An Electuarie is ordained and made two wayes, (that is) either liquide, as in *Forma opiatæ*, or whole as in tables or lozenges, or in fashion four square, and long which they call *manus Christi*. Electuaries truly are ministred to corroborate

roborate and ſtrengthen, and for that cauſe they be called *Tonica*, as affording ſtrength to the members (that is to ſay) they roborate and ſtrengthen the vertues naturall, vitall, and animall. If they be confect and made to ſtrengthen the naturall faculties and vertues, then they muſt be adminiſtred to a faſting ſtomack. If the vertue digeſtiue be weake through coldneſſe, miniſter them after meate. But if any matter ariſe through moiſtneſſe, then miniſter one houre or two before meate, that they may alter the temperature, and drie vp the vnwholſome ſubſtance. But if the vertue vitall requireth ſtrengthening, you may miniſter them verie well in a manner at all houres. But if you intend to ſtrengthen the vertue animall, you may conueniently miniſter in the houre of ſleepe or about midnight. The formes of electuaries are in this order as followeth, and firſt, of a liquide electuarie which is profitable to ſtrengthen the naturall vertue when the ſubſtance of the belly is made feeble by coldneſſe & moiſtneſſe. ℞. of the powder of *Electuarium Aromatici maioris* (which Gabriel deſcribeth) ℥.ij. powder of *Electuarium Aromaticum Diacalaminthi*. ℥.j. of Diatrion piperon. ℈.ij. of *Conſerua Anthos* (that is) of flowres of roſemarie, and of Roſes, ana. ℥.ß. of ſugar taberzet ℥.j ß. of ſyrupe of mintes as much as ſufficeth, make a liquide electuarie in *Forma Opiate*, and miniſter it before dinner or breakfaſt an houre or an houre and halfe, or two houres: the doſe is. ℥.ß. or rather ℥.ij. *Electuarium Aromaticum Roſatum*, being miniſtred faſting taketh away all corrupt and rotten humidities, and being miniſtred after meate, it ſtrengthneth the vertue digeſtiue. Now followeth the forme of a whole or hard Electuarie made in Lozenges, or faſhioned like *Manus Chriſti*, againſt hote diſtemper of the liuer, and againſt obſtructions of the ſame, as thus, ℞. of the powder of *Tria Sandalorum*. ℥.ij. the powder of *Diarrhodon Abbatis*. ℥.j of Conſerues of ſuccorie and roſes. ana. ℥.j. ß. of ſugar taberzet or white ſugar diſſolued in water of ſuccorie, or endiue, as much as ſufficeth, make an Electuarie in Lozenges of the weight of ℥. ij. or. ℥ ij. ß. or. ℥. iij. miniſter one before meate. Many times conſerues are not put in, but onely powders. The Apothecaries are wont for euerie draghme of powder, to put to. ℥.j. of ſugar. But if you will make the Electuarie more ſtrong, you may well take a draghme and a halfe of powder, for ℥.j. of ſugar. If the ſtomach be troubled with the preſence of Melancholie abounding & flowing to it, either through the vice of the liuer that multiplieth it, or by diſeaſes of the ſpleene, as be ſtoppings which hinder the receipt therof: then make an hard Electuarie, or in *Forma Opiate* with things following, as in example. ℞. of the powder of *Electuarium lætificans Galeni*. ℥. iij. the powder of *Electuarium Diamargariton calidum*. ℥.j. the powders of the Electuaries of *Aromatibus*, or of *Gemmis*, or *Dirmuſchi dulcis*, or *Diambræ* may be put in, ſeing that they haue the ſame vertue: of conſerues of bugloſſe, and Borage, and Violets. ana ℥.j. ß. the barke of Citron ſeaſoned. ℥.j. of as much white ſugar diſſolued in water of Bugloſſe or Borage as ſufficeth: make an Electuarie in Lozenges, or in litle gobbets, or like *Manus Chriſti*: in weight ℥.iij. or. ℥.ß. And if you will make it in the forme of a liquide Electuarie, put to it twiſe or thriſe as much more of the conſerues, and ſome powder of white ſugar, or ſugar roſate (that is to ſay). ℥.ij. as is ſhewed in the example aforeſaid, with ſome ſyrupe hauing reſpect to the melancholike humor (as is) ſyrupe

An Electuarie ſtrengthening the naturall vertue.

An Electuarie againſt hote diſtempure of the liuer.

An Electuarie againſt Melancholie.

of Bugloſſe, of Borage, of roſes, of Hartes-tongue, of *Epithimum*, of Fumitorie, of which adde to as much as ſufficeth: my meaning is, that it may be in a liquide forme.

An electuarie for the ſtrong ſtopping of the liuer or the ſpleene, wherein there is danger of the dropſie, or in the breeding of *Cachexia*, (that is) a ſpice of conſumption: ſuch an Electurie (I ſay) is made of the powders of the Electuaries *Diagalanga*, *Diatucmerii*, *Diacapparu*, *Dialacce*, and of conſerues, which if you will commixe together, conſerues of ſuccorie may conueniently be mixed with them. Note alſo that electuaries be made of Trochiskes, or of powder of Trochiskes, hauing reſpect to the diſeaſe, as in a hote cauſe take *Trochiſchi Diarrhodon*, Trochiskes of *Carolus*, Trochiskes of Bole armoniacke, of *Terra ſigillata* (ſpecially if we would reſtraine or bind) Trochiskes of *Camphora*, if we would ſtop the fluxe of bloud. But if we would open or looſen the obſtructions of the liuer or ſpleene, we muſt bring this to paſſe with Trochiskes of rewbarbe, or of *Capparis*. Electuaries reſpecting the vertue vitall, if it be aggrieued with cold, may be made of *Electarium Diambræ*, *Diamuſci dulcis*, *Electuarium de Gemmis*, and *Aromaticum nardinum*, *Aromaticum muſcatum*, *Aromaticum Roſatum*, *maior Gabrielis*, *Lætificans Galeni* or *Raſis*, *Electuarium Concialitoris*, of Alkermes confection and making. Conſerues for the ſame intent be theſe: Conſerues of Roſes, Bugloſſe, Borage, Anthos, barkes of Citron, ginger condite, orenges condite, and other of that ſort. If the vertue vitall be wearied, and laboureth of heate, take the Electuarie *Roſata nouella*, *Electuarium trium Sandalorum*, and *Diarrhodon abbatis*, *Diamargaritonfrigidum*, and Trochiskes of *Camphora*, vſe them often. Theſe be the Conſerues that be good, Conſerues of Roſes, of Violers, of Bugloſſe, and of borage, and alſo of *Nymphæ* or *Nenuphar* (that is) water lillies. If the cough be preſent, and if the humour contained in the breaſt be hote, flowing and thinne, if you will cauſe it to auoid and come forth, miniſter *Diatragacanthum frigidum*: if the humour be clammiſh and thicke, miniſter *Diatragacanthum calidum*, and *Diatris ſimplex*, or *Diatris Sulomonis*. And if there be ſuſpition of venemous ſubſtance, then with the powders of Electuaries colde or hote, which doe reſiſt poyſon, wee doe commixe maces, and muske, *Zedoaria*, ſaffron, Cinamon, and *Xiloaloes* in colde cauſes. But in hote cauſes there may conueniently be mixed pearles, corall, criſtall, roſes and *Camphora*. In cauſes mingled one with another either hote or colde, by a certaine propertie, theſe doe corroborate and ſtrengthen, and defend, pearles, ſeede of Citron, roote of Tormentill, *Tunici* and *Dictamus*, the bone of the Hartes heart one in number, or if you will, weigh it. ℈.j. or ʒ.ß. as in this example following againſt a peſtilentiall feauer. ℞. the powder of the Electuarie of *Diamargaritonfrigidum*. ʒ.j ß. or white ſhining pearles elect and powdred in a marble morter. ℈.j. of *Camphora*. Gr.ij. or elſe Trochiskes of *camphora*. ℈. or. ℈ ß. the rootes of *Dictamus*, of Tormentill, and of *Tunici*, and the barkes of Citron. aña. ℈.j. of Conſerues of Bugloſſe, Borage, *Nymphæ*, and Roſes, take of theſe, either one, two, or three, or all, to the quantitie of two or three dragmes: of white ſugar diſſolued in water of Roſes, or of Bugloſſe, or Borage as much as ſufficeth, make an Electuarie in Lozenges, or make a liquide Electuarie in the forme aforeſaid. ℞. the three kindes of ſaunders, and *Diarrhodon*

An electuraie for the vertue vitall.

An electuarie againſt a peſtilent feuer.

rhodon Abbatis. ana. ℈.j. the bone of the Hartes heart one in number, ſugar *roſate tabulate*, or white ſugar diſſolued in roſe water as much as ſufficeth, make an Electuarie, gild it with leaues of pure golde in weight ℥. ß. Alſo there be made Electuaries laxatiue againſt all ſuperfluities and diſeaſes, that together with the purging we may alſo ſtrengthen, as in example, againſt long diſeaſes comming of rheume, or of ſome clammiſh humour breeding the cough. ℞. *Caſſia* that is new .℥.ij. ß. *Diacarthami.*℥.vj. new *Penidios*, and *Diatris ſimplex*. ana. ℥. ß. of conſerues of violets .℥. iij. of ſweete aniſe powdred, and powder of liquorice. ana. ℥.ß. ſyrupe of violets as much as ſufficeth: make a liquide Electuarie, in *forma Opiate*. The doſe is. ℥. j. or .℥.x. or at the moſt .℥.j. ß. the which may be miniſtred an houre, or an houre and a halfe, ſwallowing it, or he may take it foure houres before dinner, becauſe it may not conueniently be giuen a litle before meate, becauſe of the *Diacarthamum* which hath *Diagredium* in it. Alſo you may diſſolue it in the broth of a chicken, or in ptyſan, or in a common pectorall decoction, and make a potion, and miniſter it foure or fiue houres before meate. And this note, that you muſt appoint the wayes and meanes of the miniſtration of Phyſicke, according as you ſee the nature and condition of the ſicke perſon. Such Electuaries which may be brought into a powder, are made in Lozenges or Boles of laxatiue medicines that be pleaſant in taſte, the forme and faſhion whereof may be knowne in taking *Diacarthamum*, and *Electuarium de Succo Roſarum*, , after which faſhion you may make other verie meete and ſeruing for your purpoſe.

An Electuarie for the vertue animall, in a hot cauſe.

An Electuaria againſt diſeaſes of the breſt, and againſt the cough.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of making Conditum, and Conſerua.

CONDITA be made as Electuaries be made, to ſtrengthen the might and the primitiue and worthieſt members. They rather haue reſpect to the ſubſtance and matter of breathing, then to the beautie and ſoundneſſe of the fleſh. But foraſmuch as the weakeneſſe of ſtrength, cauſeth ſores and diſeaſes to grow in their inſtruments, therefore it is miniſtred to them that begin to recouer and waxe ſtrong. ℞. *Conſerua Anthos* (that is) of roſemarie, conſerue of Borage, Bugloſſe, maidenhaire, and ſuccorie. ana. ℥.ij. the barke of citron condite. ℥.j. ß. the powder of *Electuarium pliriſarcoticon*, the powder of *Electuarium ducis*, *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, and *Triaſandali*. ana. ℥.ß. the leaues of golde in number vj. of white ſugar as much as ſufficeth, make a *Conditum*. Of the ſame powders of Electuaries is made a whole and a hard *conditum*, as thus. ℞. the powder of *Electuarium pliriſarcoticon*, the powder of *Dianthos*, the powder of *Ducis*, *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, and *Triaſandali*. ana. ℈.ij. conſerues of roſes and ſuccorie. ana. ℥.j.ß. white ſugar diſſolued in roſe water as much as ſufficeth, make an Electuarie in lozenges or morſels like vnto *manus chriſti*, of the weight of .℥.ij. In like proportion may condites or Electuaries be made to ſtrengthen all kind of vertues: as in example. If onely the vertue vitall be weake, then take Electuaries and conſerues either hot or cold, hauing reſpect to the vertue, according as the owne diſtempure or the cauſe of it deſireth: now there followeth

A conditum to ſtrengthen all vertues and powers.

Hote Electuaries respecting the vertues vitall.

Cold Electuaries.

Condites respecting the vertue vitall.

Hote Electuaries for the vertue animall.

Hot conserues.

Hote Electuaries for the vertue natural.

Hote conserues respecting the vertue natural.

Cold Electu.

Cold conserues.

A Conditum against the hot distemper of all kindes of veines.

Another for the same distemper.

these hote Electuaries hauing respect to the vertue vitall: as *Electuarium de gemmis, Diamargariton calidum, Diamuscum amarum, Diamuscum dulce, de Gemmis, laetificans Galeni.* Cold Electuaries, *Electuarium Diamargariton frigidum, Diarrhodon Abbatis* which be temperate, *Tria sandali.* Conserues respecting both the distempures (that is) hote and colde: as *Conserua Rosarum, Boraginis, Bugloſſæ, Violarum.* Cold conserues, *Conserua Nymphæa, Violarum.* Hote *Condita* respecting the vertue vitall, as *cortex citri conditus,* which may be ministred in both causes, *confectio de cinamomo, confectio de Xiloaloe, confectio Alkeruces,* which is common to the Physitions: of *Montispessulari,* ginger condite, peares condite, apples condite, and so of other. Hote Electuaries for the vertue animall be these: *Pliri-sarcoticon, dianthos, Diamuscum dulce* and *amarum, Mithridatum* and *Triacle,* which be *opiatæ* (that is) liquid. Hot conserues respecting the vertue animall be these, *conserua Anthos, Acori,, Rosarum,* which is temperate, almost all *Opiatæ* (that is) liquid things, as *Mithridatum, Triacle,* and *aurea Alexandrina.* Hote Electuaries for the vertue naturall be these, *Diacalaminthum, Diacuminum, Diatrion pipereon, Aromaticũ rosatum maioris* (which Gabriel describeth) *Diarrhodon Abbatis,* which is temperate, and necessarie in both causes, *Diairis Salomonis,* or *simplex Dialacca,* and *Diacucurma,* the which are good against opilations in the liuer, and against the dropsie. Hote conserues respecting mightily the vertue naturall, be these: *Conserua Eringiorum, conserua Satyrij, Zinziber conditum, cortex citri conditus,* meate of quinces condite, peares condite, and such like. Cold Electuaries be these: *Tria sandali, Diatragacanthum frigidum, Diarrhodon Abbatis, Diamargariton frigidum.* Cold conserues be these: *Conserua Violarum, cichoreæ, Nymphæ. &c.*

℞. The powder of *Electuarium trium sandalorum.* ℥.ij. the powder of *Diamargariton frigidum,* and *Diarrhodon Abbatis* .ana. ℈.ij. conserues of succorie, & violets. ana. ℥ j.ß. white sugar dissolued in water of endiue, or succorie, or roses as much as sufficeth. Make a condite in lozenges in weight. ℥.ij.or.℥.iij.or thus: ℞. conserues of succorie, of violets, of *Nymphæa,* and of Bugloſſe .ana ℥ ij. ß. conserue of Roses. ℥.j.ß. powder of *Tria sandali,* and of *Diamargariton frigidum.* ana. ℈.iiij. the leaues of gold. viij. numb. white sugar asmuch as sufficeth, make a condite: the dose is one siluer spoonefull. Many in these condites, where there is suspection of some venemous matter: as in pestilent feauers, or in swounding, they do adde to the seed of citron, the seed of *Carduus Benedictus,* the roote of *Dictamus* and Tormentill. And for rich folke of the scraping of Vnicornes horne (although there is no author that maketh mention of it) but onely the opinion of the common people: as in example, in the aforesayd *conditum* take away some portion of the aforesayd Electuaries (that is to say) the third or fourth part, and then let it be in this order as followeth. ℞. of the seed of *Carduus Benedictus,* of the seed of Citron, of the root of *Dictamus* and Torn entill. ana. ℈. j. or. ℥ ß. two or three of these may be added. Furthermore Trochiskes are added to Electuaries and condites, as in example: to stoppe the fluxe, take Trochiskes or *Diacorallus, Diarrhodon,* of *Terra sigillata,* of bole Armoniacke, and of *curabe.* And to keepe the temperature of the heart, take Trochiskes of *Camphora,* of the which take as much in quantitie, as the powders of the Electuaries be, when there is no sugar put into them.

CHAP.

CHAP. XV.

Of making Pasta Regia or Mazapane.

PASTA *Regia* is a confection, so called by the Physitions of late time, which is specially ordained for diseases of the breast, or to driue away the causes of leaneneſſe: the forme and making whereof doth follow, being verie effectuall against both the causes: (that is) the diseases of the breſt, and the lungs, and against leaneneſſe: as thus, ℞. sweete almonds blanched. ℥. iij. of new pines cleansed, and tempered tenne houres in water of Scabious, or of *Enula Campana*, or in some other meete for this purpose. ℥ ß. of *Pistacium*, (that is) a kind of nuttes, let them be new, cleansed, and tempered one day in some of the aforesayed waters. ℥. j. *Amylum*, *Diatragacanthum*, and of gumme Arabicke. ana. ℥. ß. of the meate of dates, prunes damascene, and sebesten, and raisons, one or else more of these to the quantitie of one ounce, white sugar dissolued in well water, or in rose water, or in water of *Enula* as much as sufficeth, make a *Passa Regia*, and cut it in fashion like a wafer, or else make it in litle gobbets. Also sometime the great cold seeds (the barks being picked off) are put into them.

CHAP. XVI.

Of making a Lohoch or Ecligma.

A LOHOCH or *Ecligma* is a medicine that must not be eaten or chewed, but it must melt in the mouth, and distill downe to the stomach by litle and litle. It is good against diseases of the breast and the loungs, (as is) *Dispneas*, *Apneas*, short and hard breathings, sighings, and coughes whether it commeth by heaping of matter together, or by falling downe of some moist substance (as be catarres, and rhumes, which chance oftentimes.) ℞. *Electuarium Diairis Salomonis*, and *Diairis simplex*. ana. ℥. vj. Lohoch *de pino*. ℥. j. conserue of *Enula campana*. ℥ ß. *Oxymel Scilliticum* as much as sufficeth. Make a Lohoch and let the sicke vse it with a liquorice sticke, licking or swallowing a litle at once. If there be greater need of detersion and scouring then there is of insision and cutting, you must augment & increase the quantitie of the scouring receipts, and in stead of *Oximel Scilliticum* put to syrupe of liquorice, or of Horehound called *Prassium*, or of iuiubes, or else of hysope: many do thinke syrupe of hysope to be absterſiue, onely for the saying of *Auicene*, which (*Mesua* declareth) is vnlike to be true. Lohoch *Compositum*, Lohoch *de Pino*, Lohoch *de caulibus sanum* and *expertum*, Lohoch de *Scilla*, these may conueniently be ministred by themselues. But when a feuer is present (as in the Pleurisie) then to auoide and bring out from the breast, the materiall cause that floweth, and partly for the matter that is alreadie flowne, we may make a Lohoch after this sorte and fashion. ℞. of *Electuarium diatragacanthi frigidi*. ℥. x. new penidies, and white pilles. ana. ℥ iij. syrupes of violets, or of Iuiubes, or of both as much as sufficeth, make a Lohoch and vse it with a liquorice sticke, swallowing it by litle and litle. If the matter be partly flowed, and partly flowing, you shall make a Lohoch to correct both after this fashion. ℞. *Electuarium Diairis simplex*. ℥. j. *Diatragacanthum frigidum*. ℥. vj. new penidies, ℥. iij. syrupe of Iuiubes,

A Lohoch against rheume congeled together, clammish, hard & thicke.

A Lohoch in the beginning of the pleurisie where the matter floweth.

of Iuiubes, or Hysope, euen as you thinke good, the more to enforce the matter now flowed or flowing, and make a Lohoch. A Lohoch also may be made against defluxions and flowings of humours that be hote and sharpe, or gnawing, causing the cough: that the heate and gnawing of the humour may be stopped, and also that the thinnesse and subtilitie thereof may be made thicke and grosse, and the partes to the which the fluxe commeth being subiect and obedient, they may be made safe from any nocument or hurt (as in example). ℞. *Electuarium Diatragacanthi frigidi* ℥ j. Bole armoniack washed in rose water ℥ ij. Trochiskes of *Terra sigillata* ℈ ij. syrupe of poppy as much as sufficeth and make a Lohoch. In stead of *Diatragacanthum* may be taken *Diapapauer*, or of each a like quantitie. Also Trochiskes of *Carabe* in the which is put some *opium* may be added to them, if there be no cause that *opium* be suspected to do hurt. These Lohoches are giuen against the Prisicke in the houre of sleepe, *Electuarium Diapaueris*, *Lohoch* of poppie. All the pilles of *Mesua* for this vse against diseases of Catarre and Rheume, may be mixed & giuen the same houres, and for the same intent.

CHAP. XVII.

Of making Balneum, and Semicupium.

BALNEVM is a baine: the vse whereof was common and often among olde practitioners, but now it is rare and seldome, and not at all vsed almost, except it be in certaine diseases, as in an vniuersall gowte, in the palsey and in consuming feuers. But against the gowt and the palsey naturall baines are conuenient, in the which, although there be penurie and lacke of things, yet we may make things artificially, and cunningly prepared with boyling together in water, herbes, rootes, seedes, flowres, and also many mettalles, as it shall seeme requisite for the disease. But Semicupium, which in Latine is called *Incessum*, is a particular Bath, which is applyed for paines of the nefresie, for the cholicke, and for the Iliacke, so that they come not by reason of an impostume. It is profitable against diseases of the belly and wombe, for it is a conuenient aide and defence to prouoke menstruis, and to amend the distempure of the wombe. Now followeth the forme of Semicupium, when we would in the Nefreticke disease, haue the pores and passages of the bodie enlarged and made soft and plyant, and also to cease the paine, as thus. ℞. the rootes of *Althea* ℥ iiij. the leaues of *malua*, *Bismalua*, and *Parietarie*, the flowres of cammomill and melilote, the toppes of dill .ana. *M.* ij. of origan, calamint, betonie & sothernwood. ana. *M.* j. seeds of flaxe and fennell. ana. ℥ ij. of leane bran ℔ iiij. boile all these in a bag in sufficient water, for a Semicupium. Note also that one that hath the Nefresie may enter a Bathe before he hath receiued a Clyster. If the paine of the cholicke or the Nefresie seeme to come of much ventositie, or of a cold humour, which seemeth to haue neede of calefaction, and attenuation or thinnesse with incision and cutting, make a Semicupium thus. ℞. origan, calamint, toppes of dill, and of cammomill. ana. *M.* iiij fenugrecke, carawayes, anise and fennell .ana. ℥ ij. laurell berries ℥ ß. And if there be more sicknesses and causes wrapped in with the aforesayed griefes

The forme of Semicupium.

Aliud Semicupium.

griefes, you may adde to such medicines as be meete for your purpose, as if there be any neede of mollifying and making soft, the leaues of *Malue*, *Bismalue*, *Paritarie*, and violets will worke that effect. If you iudge it necessarie to make incision, or to open the pores and passages of the bodie, adde to, of the roote of spinach, *Bruscus* and *Apium*, knit them in a litle bagge and seeth them for a Semicupium. Likewise to prouoke menstruis, make *Incessus* or *Semicupia*, putting in medicines meete and apt to prouoke menstruis, as Mugwort, Sauien, Horehound, Nex, Cypresse and Iuniper berries, of all these there may be put in two handfulles.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Epithema or Fotus.

EPITHEMA is a medicine ordained to lay to the heart or liuer to coole it: and *Fotus* is a medicine norishing or keeping warme. They are made for many intents & purposes, but chiefly to correct the hot distemper of the liuer, the making wherof is this as ensueth. ℞. the waters of endiue, succory, roses, & petymorrell and nightshade. ana. ℥ iij. of vineger. ℥ j. the powder of *Electuarium trisandali*. ℥ ij. or ℥ j. ß. mixe them for an Epitheme of the liuer with a felt, or a peece of linnen or wollen cloth, or a spunge infused in the aforesaid liquor, and layd against the liuer before meate an houre or an houre and halfe. Also there is made for the same purpose the like decoction of the herbs, as is of the aforesaid waters. If there be stoppings of the liuer, together with his hote distemper, make an Epitheme after this sort. ℞. succorie, both the roote and the herbe, young set endiue, agrimonie (which is) eupatorie. ana. *M*. j. flowres of succorie. p. j. the foure great cold seeds, and litle cold seed. ana. ℥ ß. of cipresse ℥ ij. of lupines ℥ iij. all the saunders. ana. ℥ j. of squinant. ℥ ß. the toppes of wormewood. *M*. ß. make a litle bagge, and boyle it in foure parts of water, and one of wine, and a litle vineger, with one onely great heate in an earthen vessell, and make a fomentation in the manner aforesayed, such an Epitheme is verie good for diseases depending vpon opilation or stopping, and misfortune comming by opilation and stopping, as is a fluxe, and for him that is diseased in the liuer, and for those diseases for the most part which come and goe by courses. Also it is good against consumptions, which cause distempures and stoppings of the liuer. Moreouer against the beginnings of knobbes and kernelles, to which (if they be come forth) there must be applyed mollificatiues, and things that do loosen and vnbinde. Also there be Epithemes that be made for many purposes of the stomach: first to strengthen the stomach that it receiue not the superfluities comming from other places, & then the Epitheme is made of stipticke things. Secondly to correct and amend the distempure of the stomach: And thirdly they serue to cease the paines that are caused by the nature and condition of that griefe: ministring duely to the contrarie of the matter as the cause shall require. The making of the first intent, that the stomach may be deliuered from flowings of humours to it, and may be preserued safely, that it shall not suffer inflammation, or course of euill humours. ℞. red roses. p. ij. of Arnoglossa and plantaine. ana. *M*. ß. the tops of wormwood

Epitheme.

M.j. the third part, all the saunders. ana.℥.ij. red corall.℥.iiij. put all these in a litle bagge, and make a decoction in sufficient quantitie of water with a litle vineger, to which may be added a litle rheneish wine and make a fomentation. Corall (although it be *Achymum*) yet it is not put into the decoction without great cause, for it profiteth naturally against all diseases of the stomach, and therefore it ought rather to be beaten into powder. Epithemes for all other intentes and purposes may be described by particular and proper medicines, after the forme of the late described Epitheme. There be Epithemes good for the stomach made of oile, as oyle of roses, cammomill, wormwood, masticke and mirtles. Note that in all Epithemes, for what intent soeuer they be ministred, you must mixe some thing with them that may preserue and keepe the essence and strength of the member, that the Epitheme is layd to, as *Galen* commaundeth and teacheth in many places, to be obserued and done likewise in medicines taken inwardly. But *Epithema* and *Fotus* be all one, yet some do make a difference, saying that *Epithema* is onely that, which is made of distilled waters and powders mixed together: and *Fotus* is a more generall thing, which is made of the decoction of any kind of herbes and roots.

CHAP. XIX.

Of making Sacculus.

SACCVLVS *videlicet*, a litle bagge. It is ministred for the same causes that *Fotus* be vsed for. It is made of herbes, flowres, seedes, and other such like things. They be layed to either drie, or else wet in some liquour. The drie be chiefly made of seedes and herbes: the wet must first be pressed before it be laid to the place. ℞. *milij vstulati*.p.iiij. of *orobum*, (which some think to be tares) and of leane branne.ana.p.ij. flowres of cammomill, and the tops of dill.ana.p.j. of commin and caraway.ana.℥.ij. of laurell berries.℥.iij. make thereof two litle bags, and sew them in, into two linnen clothes of a competent bignesse, and bast them throughly. Let them be so bigge that they may couer the belly and let one after another be layed hote to the bellie againe and againe. Now followeth the forme of a moist bagge for the digesting, mollifying and dissoluing of raw humors as thus: ℞. the flowres of cammomill.p.ij. the tops of dill, melilote and origan.ana.p.j. fenugreeke and flaxe seed.ana.℥.j. the leaues of *malue*, *bismalue*, and violets.ana. M.ß. make a litle bagge, or make two bags, and boyle them in water or in cowes milke, and of the decoction make a fomentation with a spunge, or a felt, or wollen clothes, or two bagges, let them be layed to the grieued places one after another. According to this forme, you may make & apply bags, partly of things that can mollifie, and partly of things that can remoue and discusse, and lay them to knobbes, kernelles, and hardnesse of the flesh. But if the person be strong, take other remollitiues, or discussiues, euen as you shall find the matter, that causeth the hardnes to require.

A drie bagge against the windy cholicke or Timpanites.

A moist bagge.

CHAP. XX.

Of making Scutum.

SCVTVM in English is a target or buckler. *Scuta* are ministred to the stomach, and made for the same causes that ointments & Epithemes be. They

are

are often made of the drie powder of medicines, to correct some distempure of the stomach, and to adde strenth to it. Furthermore they serue in steed of ointments or emplaisters, when the patients do refuse and abhorre them for their tediousnesse. ℞. mints, maioram and wormewood dried, ana. p. j. or ℥. j. ß. of cloues, galingale, and Xiloaloes, ana. ℈. ij. of comin and red corall, ana. ℥. j. make a powder, wherewith make a *Scutum* with a little cotton, sewed in betweene two little clothes, with stitchings betweene, & bands as it ought to be, let it be bound to the stomach. Powders to *Scutum* ought not to be past an ounce and a halfe at the most, manie times an ounce or sixe drammes is enough.

A Scutum against the cold disseпure of the stomach, with rentositie and other substance.

CHAP. XXI.

Of making a Cataplasme.

CATAPLASMA is a plaister, &c. *Cataplasmata* be made of herbes, rootes, seedes, and meale sodden in water or milke, with some greace or oyle added to them as the matter requireth. *Cataplasmata* be made for diuerse intents, sometime to cease paines, sometime to resolue and vnbind, sometime to make ripe, sometime to mollifie or make soft, somtime to consume, & somtime to drie vp humours and vapours. In commixed affects and causes, diuerse intents and purposes are mixed together in *cataplasma*, as remollitiues with discussiues, and discussiues with such things as cease paine, as the example following shall declare. And first of the forme of a Cataplasme for the cure of *ædema* (which is a botch of flegmatick matter, or an impostem without grief,) in the which euill it is necessarie to haue remollition with discussion, or (as they say) resoluing, loosening and ceassing of paine, as thus, ℞. the leaues of *malua*, *bismalua*, and violets, ana. *M*. j. or *M*. ß. the roote of *Althea*, the roote of white lillies, & the roote of ireos, that is, floure de luce. ana. ℥. ß. or ℥ j. floures of cammomill, melilot, and tops of dill, ana. p. j. seede of flaxe, and of fenugreeke, or rather, meale of flaxe seede, meale of fenugreeke, and meale of barley, ana. ℥. ß. or ℥. j. or you may measure it by litle handfuls, comin. ℥. j. laurell berries, ℥. ij. saffron. ℈. j. or ℥. ß. of duckes greace, goose greace, the marrow of calues shaneks, fresh butter, oile of lillies, and oile of ireos. ana as much as sufficeth; make a Cataplasme. In this plaister are contained three intents and purposes: that is, mollifying, dissoluing, and ceassing of paine, as may be knowne by the matter contained in it. The quantitie of mollificatiues ought to be most, if there be greatest neede of mollifying, and the quantitie of dissoluers ought to be most, if there neede to be great dissoluing, and so likewise of ceassing of paine. Therefore in the beginning of *Oedema*, as also in the beginning of euery abscession or course of ill humors, you must commixe together with mollificatiues some repercussiue remedie, wherwith the member may be comforted. In the beginning of the augmenting, take most remollitiues, and fewest discussiues. In the end of the augmenting and state of the disease, take of both a like much. In the declination, take and apply onely dissoluers and loosenors. In the making of this present plaister, you must put into it no stipticke thing: but if you do put in anie, put it in at the beginning of the flowing of the humour. But what medicines they be that haue stipticke vertue, and

which do comfort the member, and also which do mollifie, and dissolue, you must seeke them in the tables of Authors, as *Arnoldus* and *Sauanerolla*, and such like. Also there be plaisters made without oyle or greace, as is that common thing of crummes of bread steeped in cowes milke, & a litle sodden together, with whites of egges, oftentimes mixed with a litle saffron, as tenne or twelue chiues. And this Cataplasme we often vse for the cure of the gowt.

CHAP. XXII.
Of making Emplastrum.

EMPLAISTERS are ordained & made for diuerse purposes, and the making of them is common as well to Physitions as Chyrurgians. They are made of gummes, oiles, greace, and drie medicines, commixed with some sufficient quantitie of waxe, or without waxe, if that the materiales can thicken, and gather together of themselues. Emplaisters are applied to all parts of the bodie, but chiefly to the stomach, for the same cause that ointments, Cataplasmes, and *Scuta* are ordained. Now followeth the forme of an Emplaister for the stomach when it is afflicted with a cold distemper, by reason of the flowing of some cold substance, as thus. ℞. *Ceratũ stomachi cõfortatiuũ Galeni*. ℥.ij. of galingale, cloues, and red coral, ana ℥.ß of wax dissolued, braied altogether in a mortar with oile of masticke, or of wormwood as much as sufficeth. Commixe them and make a plaister spred vpon leather like a buckler with a double linnen cloth, well stitched and basted as it ought to be. Also an Emplaister may be made of simples for the aforesaied intents, in this manner. ℞. pure *Lapidanum*. ℥. vj. masticke. ℥.ij. frankencense. ℥.j. coriander preparate, red corall, drie mintes and galingale, ana. ℈.ij. *Xiloaloes*, and maces. ana. ℥.j. turpentine. ℥.ij. waxe dissolued with oile of spikenard, or wormwood, or masticke, or roses, or of two or three of these as much as sufficeth. Make it in a lumpe together, spread it vpon leather, and make it like a *Scutum* of double linnen with stitches and bandes, and lay it to the stomach as it is requisite. Warne the Apothecarie to dissolue the gummes with wine and oile, afterward let him commixe the rest without the vse of any fire. *Ceratum stomachi confortatiuum Galeni* is made of roses, wormewood, masticke, spikenard, waxe and oile of roses. In hote causes and cholericke vomites, you may likewise make *Scuta* of cold simples, as in mirtles, coriander, coral, mastick, which is temperat, *Psidiæ*, *balaustia*, also oiles, as of roses, mirtles, quinces, and of mastick. There are made Emplaisters for the liuer, for the alaying of euerie distempure of it, to loosen the obstructions thereof, and to strengthen it also, as in this example following. ℞. *Ceratum sandalinum*. ℥.ij. meate of quinces. ℥.j. of masticke. ℥.ß. of coral. ℥.j. of waxe dissolued with oyle of roses as much as sufficeth. Make it in a lumpe, and spread it vpon leather, like a Moone when she is beginning to encrease, with a double linnen cloth, and with bandes, as it ought to be, and apply it to the liuer. Emplaisters also are made to cease paines, and partly to ripen Apostemes, and partly to resolue them, as in example. ℞. *Muscilaginis*, of the seede of *Althea*, fenugrecke, and seed of flaxe. ana. ℥. iij. barley meale. ℥. iiij. oile of white lillies, and the fatnesse of a henne. ana. ℥. ij. ß. butter, ℥.j. saffron. ℈.j.

A plaister for the hote distempure of the liuer.

the

the whites of egges in number ij. boyle the *Muscilagine* with a soft fire, and with the meale, and put in the whites of egges in the end. It doth soften and ripen all Apostemes congealed of a hote and colde matter, and it ceaseth their paine, in what part soeuer of the bodie they be resident. If you will appropriate this Emplaister to all kinds of colde Apostemes, but adde to it *Ammoniacum, Bdellium, sterax liquida.* ana. ℥ij. and it will worke maruellous and profitable effect.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of making Vnguents.

VNGVENTA in English oyntments: And those which appertaine vnto Physitions, are made to lenifie and assuage paine, to represse flowes, and assigne alteration and chaunging, to mollifie and dissolue knobbes and kernels, specially in the liuer, in the spleene, and in the stomach. The vertue of ointmentes for other purposes and for other members belongeth to surgerie, the forme and making whereof is to be sought out of the Antidotaries. The forme of an oyntment to mitigate the paine of the stomach chased of cold, or by the presence of some such like substance, is in this manner. ℞. oile of mastick, spike and wormwood ana. ℥ ß. cloues, *Xiloaloes*, maces, and *Calamus Aromaticus*. ana. ℈.j. *gallia muschata*. ℥.j. or ℥.j. ℈. if he be rich, because of the deare-nesse thereof, of new wake as much as sufficeth, make an ointment for the stomach, and a *Scutum* with cotten, and with bands, as it ought to be, and lay it vpon the stomach after the annointing. *An ointment for the stomach*

But to cease the paine in the stomach comming of a hote cause, as of the flowing of cholet, which often chanceth in feuers, vse this ointment. ℞. oile of roses ℥.j. oile of mirtils, or else of quinces. ℥ ß. white sanders and red ana. ℈.ij. or ℥.ß. new waxe washed in endiue water, or in rose water asmuch as sufficeth, and make an ointment for the stomach. Also make a *Scutum* of cotten, and apply it to the stomach after the annointing. In ointments we do exceed or passe the quantitie of ℥.j. It is also to be noted, that some do wash oiles with the iuyce or the water of distillation of cold herbes in a hote cause, or in hote iuices in a colde cause or disease. Moreouer note, that many do thinke, that there should be no ointment or remedie applyed to the stomach without galingale, neither to the heart without mace or saffron, neither to the braine without *Spica Arabica*, nor to the liuer without *Spodium*, or sanders, or wormwood, or other such like things, thinking verily, the nature of the member to be preserued with restrainers, but yet not alwaies in the fore named medicines. For that law and method is to be kept in all causes of contrarietie, which should be broken in medicines, if galingale were added to the aforesaid medicine, because galingale is hote. For truely the nature of the stomach is strengthened sufficiently by the commixing together of stipticke things which are put into the aforesaid ointment, because truly they be temperat in heat, as it appeareth by their nature. *Aliud.*

Now followeth an ointment very profitable for hardnesse and knobbs of the liuer or splene, wherewith these two members are most in danger, in this forme. ℞. the roots of *Althea*, and the roots of white lillies, ana. ℥j. leaues of *Malue, Bismalue*, & violets ana. M.j. of the flowres of cammomill, melilote, and the tops of dill ana. M. ß. meale of fo- *Vnguentum.*

of flax seed ana. ℥.j. gumme ammoniaci, called *Serapini*. ℥.j. *Bdellium* that is soft and whitish ℥.ß. turpentine ℥.iij. gumme of pine tree ℥.ß. *Storax liquida*. ℥.ij. or ℥.iij. the marrowe of calues or Hartes-shankes, if you can get it, hennes greace, and duckes greace, oyles of sweet almonds and of Ireos ana. ℥.j. ß. or ana. as much as sufficeth. Dissolue the gummes with wine and a litle vineger, and to the aforesaid oiles, adde to new waxe as much as sufficeth, then afterward take the said greaces and powders, or meales, or herbes first sodden and brayed, and mixe them altogether, and make an ointment: in this sayd oyntment there be more things that doe mollifie, then there be that dissolue, because the matter of scirrhous knobs doth chiefly require the same. If you will minister the aforesaid ointment for the hardnesse of the liuer, you may adde to it of the braunches of wormwood, of roses, of squinance, or of spikenard to preserue the strength and nature of the member. If you will minister it to the spleene, you may mixe with it some *Tamariscus* barke, the roote of capers, or such like. If you minister to the hardnesse of the stomach, adde to wormwood, red roses, *Calamus aromaticus*, mintes and galingale.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of making a Liniment.

LINIMENTVM is an ointment that is soft and liquid, which hath in it little waxe or none at all. It is also made for the same vse that ointments be made for. The forme of a liniment to cease paine, (as in the pleurisie) is after this manner. ℞. oile of cammomill, and capons greace ana. ℥. ß. fresh new butter without salt. ℥.ij. a litle waxe washed, and make a Liniment.

CHAP. XXV.

Of making Frontale.

FRONTALE or *Splenium*, be plaisters made to apply to the forehead, either to cease paine in the fore part of the head, or to cause and prouoke sleepe, or to cease paine in the head caused of a hot distemper, as it oftentimes chanceth in feuers. Against cold causes make a *Frontale* (as *Galen* teacheth) of red roses steeped and soked in vineger, laid betweene two linnen clothes, of three fingers breadth, and in length from one eare to another: or make it for the same intent, after this fashion. ℞ red roses p.j. ß. flowres of water lillies and violets ana. p.j. betonie and melilote ana. p. ß. put all betweene two fine linnen clothes, (if the patient be rich) or betweene two course linnen clothes if he be poore: and make a *Frontale* well sewed (as it ought to be) for the forehead, and the temples: if you will prouoke sleepe, adde to the aforesaid *Frontale*, the leaues of lettuce, or of new white poppie, or of *mandragoras* in the places & times, that you may haue it, but there is but small store of these colde things. At all times you may put in the seedes of white poppie, or the barkes of the heades of white poppie, or lettuce seed, or hanbane seede, as in example. ℞. flowres of water lillies, violets, and melilote ana. p.j. flowres of lettuce, or white poppie ana. the 3. part of *M*.j. or of each of them *M*.j.ß. seed of white poppie ℥.ij.

℥.ij. lettuce seed, dill seed, and white henbane seed. ana. ℥.ß. bray all together and make a *Frontale* betweene the course or fine linnen clothes well sewed and basted in right order. To the former *Frontale* melilote and dill seed is added to comfort the braine, that it be nor hurt with cold things. In the diseases called *Cephalalgia* comming of a cold cause, make *Frontalia* of hote herbs and flowres, as sage, rosemarie, cammomill, betonie, briony, melilote and such like. *Frontalia* before they be layed to the forehead, are wont to haue some liquor powred vpon them, or to be ayred with some vapour, as in example. ℞ the waters of roses, betonie and balme, ana. ℥.j. of vineger. ℥.ß. commix them, and of the aforesayed waters, powre a litle portion vppon a burning tyle, or some such like thing, and hold the aforesaid *Frontale* ouer the steeme & smoke of the sayd waters. The forehead is oftentimes annointed with many ointments seruing for the same vse and purpose, that *Frontalia* do serue for, as in a hote cause, *vnguentum populeon, rubea trochischata* dissolued in water is verie meet for this purpose, & yet it is seldome in vse with them at Paris. Many Physitions in the old time, in a cold cause did annoint with *Mithridatum* and *Aurea Alexandrina*, and such like. In all causes (saith *Galen* 12. *libro Therapeutices*) you may conuenientlie annoint with *Oxyrrhodinum*, which is made of oyle of roses, and sixe times so much vineger, as in example: ℞ oyle of roses. ℥.j. vineger. ℥.ij. commixe them, stirring them in a plate: or else thus in hotter causes, when as without foresight the frensie will breed, then we commixe cold things, as thus. ℞ oile of roses. ℥.j. oyle of nenuphar. ℥.ß. oyle of poppie. ℥.iij. iuyce of *Solatrum*, or lettuce, or white poppie, water of roses and of vineger. ana. halfe an ounce, commixe them together, stirring them verie long in some peece of plate; and annoint the fore part of the head therewith, yea all the head, if there be inflammation of the braine.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of making Cucufa, and Semicucufa.

CVCVFA is made for the cure of the cuill called *Cephalgie*, which is a paine in the head comming of cold, and many times also to stop reume, as in example. ℞ *Sampsucu*, (that is) marioram, rosemarie, stechados both of Araby, and yealow. ana. p.j. of redde roses. p.j. drie citron barkes, graines of Alkermes. ana. ℥.iij. maces, long pepper, quibibes and cloues. ana. ℥.ß. Make a powder, and make a *Cucufa* betweene two fine linnen clothes, with a litle cotten basted betweene, or with flax, or scarlet scraped, and giue it according to the measure. And if the paine lyeth most in the fore part of the head, put most of the powders or spices in that place: likewise if it be in the hinder part, do so also, and if the *Cephalgia* be in all parts of the head, then commix them equally. But it is called *Semicucufa*, when we prouide but for one part of the head. If we will stoppe reumes, then we mixe with it stipticke things, or we make a *Cucufa* onely of stipticke things, either cold or hote, as the cause requireth. Therefore we make a *Cucufa* with *milium* burned, or not burned, mirtles, cipresse nuts, and *sandaracha* (commonly called vernice) *viz.* yealow oker, the barke of frankensence, and such like stipticke things.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of making Suffitus.

Suffitus (in English a perfuming) is made of drie things, to stop distillations which fall from the braine into the lower partes, and it is made of restraining medicines, as thus for example. R. red roses. p. j. masticke. ℥ ß. vernice, that is, yellow oker. ℥ j. mixe them, and make a perfuming for the head; or thus, R. *Milium*. p. j. red roses. p. ß. of vernice and *Olibanum*. ana. ℥ ß. Commixe them and make a perfume for the head. Note that when the distillation falleth to the loungs, and thereof commeth spittle, then take no perfume by the mouth, because it shorteneth the breath, and letteth the spitting, and maketh the humoure grosse & thicke: but you must perfume the couering of the head, or else perfume some wobly and apply it to the head.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of making Collirium.

Collirium is a medicine that is ministred in a liquid forme to heale the eyes. Wherefore, because there be diuerse euils in the eyes, the Collyries are made of diuerse fashions: for you must vse one kind in the beginning of *Ophthalmia*, and another in the state of it, and another in the declination thereof, as it is also commonly vsed in the inflammations of other members. Therfore in the beginning you must make it of cold and stipticke repercussiues, as the whites of egges, the sappe of quince seed, and *Psyllium*, and other things of like vertue: minister them alone, or else let them be first dissolued with conuenient waters, and afterward applyed, as in this example following: R. the white of one egge, and stirre it with rose water, or plantaine water, or with water of balme, or with all these waters, make a Collirie, and put into the eye that is pained. Or thus: R. the sappe of quince seede drawne out with plantaine water, or rose water. ℥ j. and mixe them with the white of an egge, and stir it a long time with a spater, and make a *Collirium*. But if there be no paine nor rednesse in the eyes, but a certaine vncleanesse which ought to be dried vp, then it is good to make Collyries of tutty preparate, and of Aloes washed, & of *lapis calaminaris*, & other such like things, which ought to be taken with some conuenient licour, except it rather liketh you better to put into the eye the powders of them: for so they dry vp and wipe away the filthinesse the cleaner.

A Collirium in the beginning of Ophthalmia.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of making Nasale or Errhinum.

NASALE and *Errhinum* be medicines which be cast into the nose for many causes and intents, as to stoppe bleeding at the nose, to prouoke sneesings, to cause child-birth, or to bring forth the Secundine which is retained within after the birth, and furthermore it purgeth the braine. It may be made many wayes, as in drie powders, which must be snuffed or blowne vp into the nose, or it may be made liquide, and then you must annoint the nostrilles within, or you may make it whole & hard, and then it must be put vp into the nose. R. the haires that be in a Hares belly p. ß. the saw-dust, or rinde of willow.

A Nasale to stanch bleeding at the Nose.

willow. p. ß. bole armoniacke and *Sanguis Draconis* powdred, ana. ℥. j. cut the haires very ſmal and mixe them all together, and blow them vp into the noſe, or diſſolue them al with ſome ſtipticke water, or with the iuice of ſome hearb, or with the white of an egge, and adde to them alſo (if you pleaſe) *Balauſtia*, or the rindes of pomegranates, or *Acacia*, all powdred, and with a linnen cloath, make a *Naſale*, and dip it in the aforeſaid medicines, and put it into the noſe. *A Naſale to prouoke ſneeſing.* Sneefings are prouoked by dry powders, ſnuffed or blowne into the Noſe, which be ſharpe and biting, as be theſe, pepper, pellitory, ſtauiſacre, and root of floure deluce powdred. You may commixe the ſaid things with ſome liquor, annoint the noſethils, or take cloth or ſilke wound vp together, and dippe it in the aforeſaid liquor, and put it into one noſethrill, or into both.

CHAP. XXX.
Of making Apophlegmatiſmus.

APOPHLEGMATISMVS is a medicine which cauſeth one to vomite vp fleume: it prouoketh reume out of the braine into the mouth, & it is good to purge the braine. Maſticke is commonly vſed in this caſe, which being long holden in the mouth and chewed, it bringeth forth reume and fleume. Alſo Sage leaues holden in the mouth doe likewiſe purge reume by the mouth. Alſo make *Noduli* of pellitory, pepper, ſtauiſacre, roote of Ireos, and *Panax*, and hold them in the mouth. Furthermore make gargariſmes of the ſame medicines. Alſo there are ointments made of the ſame things, wherewith the roofe of the mouth muſt be annointed, for they by reaſon of their heat and tartneſſe, doe draw fleume and reume into the mouth.

CHAP. XXXI.
Of making Diſtillations Reſtoratiue.

DISTILLATIONS be made to ſuſtaine ſtrength and might, when the ſicke is ſo weake, that he cannot digeſt any hard nouriſhment. Diſtillations are of a mixed kind, (that is to ſay) they are partly food, and partly medicines. They are made for many intents and purpoſes: for ſome be made to reſtraine, as in the fluxe of the belly, ſome to alter or change, as when they are miniſtred for feauers to refrigerate, or in cold diſeaſes to make hote: and ſome doe reſiſt poyſon and malignant humors, as in peſtilent feauers, and they are made after this manner. ℞. conſerues of ſuccory, of roſes, of *Simphytum* (that is) cumfrey, of *Cornelus*, of *Mira*, and of quinces, ana. ℥. ij. powder of Electuaries, *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, and *Tria Sandali*, ana. ℥. ij. trochiskes of *Carabe*, of Barberies, and of *Terra ſigillata*, ana. ℥. ß. of red corall, and *Lapis hæmatitis*, ana. ℥. j. water of the decoction of one capon or of two, altered with plantaine, knot graſſe, moleyne lettuce, ſeede of Barberies, *Sumach*, and *Omphacium*. ℔. viij. put all together in a Lembecke with the fleſh of two chickens, or of two partriches, or of two turtle doues, or of one capon, or of mo of theſe, and with the crummes of one white loafe, or of two wet in roſe water, and make a diſtillation in *balneo Mariæ* with a ſoft fire. ℞. of the aforeſaid diſtillation. ℔ ß. iuice of pomgranats. ℥. j. or ℥. j. ß. ſugar roſet. ℥. ij. cinnamon elect. ℥. ſtraine them (as *Hippocrates* *A diſtillation reſtoratiue reſtraining.* *Another.*

teacheth) through a sieue, and let the sicke vse it euery houre. But if you will make a distillation to haue a cooling vertue, alwaies obserue the same order and portion that is spoken of before, and for the restraining conserues, adde to such as do coole, as conserues of water lillies, of violets, of roses, succory, and balme, and likewise cold Electuaries, as *Diamargariton frigidum*, and Trochiskes of *Camphora*, also alter the decoction of the flesh with lettuce, sorrell, purcelaine, scarioll, and such like. Moreouer you shall make a distillation restoratiue against malignant and pestilent feauers in this sort, ℞. conserues of violets, water lillies, balme, borage, and bugloss. ana. ℥.ij. barke of citron condite. ℥.j. roote of *Dictamus* and Tormentill, roote of *Angelica*, and roote of gentian. ana. ℥. ß. powder of *Electuarium Diamargariton frigidum*, all the Sanders, bole Armoniacke, trochiskes of *Camphora*, wood of Aloes. ana. ℥ij. scraping of yuory, and harts horne, maces, cinnamon, cloues, and seed of *Carduus benedictus*. ana. ℥. j. of old Triacle. ℥.iij. the water of the decoction of two chickens, or of capons altered with sorrell, scabious, lettuce, borage, bugloss, quar.iij. put all together in a glassen Limbecke, with the flesh of some thinges, and with the crummes of two white loaues infused in white wine, and make a distillation with a lente and soft fire, in conuenient order as is requisit; or thus. ℞. of the foresayd distillation ℔.ß. *Syrupus de acetositate Citri*. ℥.ij. commixe them together, and let the sicke vse it euery houre.

A distillation restoratiue cooling.

Against malignant & pestilent feauers.

Another.

The end of the seuenth Booke.

THE

THE VIII. BOOKE OF COMPOVND MEDICINES.

The Preface.

We haue found by experience, that notable men in times past which haue become famous in the practise & exercise of Phisicke and Chyrurgery, haue bestowed chiefe care and great diligence to store vppe for their vse (as treasures) certaine peculiar remedies for euery hard malady, both to encrease and preserue the worthinesse and renownednes of their good name, by the prosperous successe of their labours. The which remedies, although euery of them prouided to be made at home, and tooke them for secrets, yet notwithstanding in space of time and number of yeares, either by death, or entreaty, or for money, or through change, or other manifold meanes, they haue bene made knowen and published. Whereuppon others the rather minding the publicke vtility of men, thought good to gather together the dispersed compositions of medicines then euery where knowen, and endeuoured them selues to transfer out of the most famous authors, the best and most receipts into their bookes of Phisicke. And by these means truely did Seribonius Largus, Actuarius, Nicolaus Nerepsus, *and* Nicolaus Præpositus, *make their workes. By this industry it could not but come to passe, that out of diuerse authors many receiptes not much vnlike were taken tending to one end, as syrupes of like effect, and many medicines of* Aloe, *nor fewer of* Scammonie *or* Colocynthide, *or* Turpetho, *all which differ onely in way of composition, or for the variety of certaine simples. And softning and scouring Electuaries, also there be many, whose chiefest force is of* Aerugo, *and which differ by a sole change of other simples, as is granted to euery authors iudgement. So then many things haue bene heaped together, the most part whereof haue bene to no vse. It were much better in euery kind, to choose out*

the best, the other vnprofitable and vnnecessary omitted. But euen in this heaping together of remedies, many diseases remaine voide of all helpe, for the which no fit remedies were inuented: for that diligent care which many haue to gather together euery where medicins (after a sort an imitator and follower of practicke) without choise or method had, doth apply neither fit remedies, nor medicines to the diseases, nor to the sensible griefe ioyned to the sickneſſe, or to their causes, neither doth set downe the kindes of remedies according to the diuersity of diseases: neither at any time weyeth what euery composition hath, either profitable or to no vse, neither pleasant or vnsauory, but receiueth and alloweth for the most part such receipts as haue bene vsed of vnlearned men, commonly without regard of iudgement. And many of those likewise diuerse haue peruerted and depraued, euery man according to his iudgement, so that now there remaineth scantly any certaine kinde or trade of composition for Apothecaries, and that part of Phisicke (as it is not ratified and established) which is most necessary for the cure of diseases: & whereas many haue iudged well of the reformation of that part, I haue done mine endeuour, that the composition of medicines might be set downe in writing according to art, as the simples haue bin in the bookes before. And whatsoeuer of them were profitable and easie for practise, might keepe their old forme: and whatsoeuer were amisse, by vpright iudgement might be brought to better perfection, so that nothing were neither redounding or wanting, necessary to take away the diseases affection incident thereto and cause thereof. Therefore I doe not take out all the compositions vsuall in old writers, but the best only: and oftentimes I put to new, to fill my worke with all kind of medicines, and I cut off many, which contained vnder those, make a confused heap: I haue kept their common names, but yet not with the same simples and dosis euery where, for as much as certaine in many thinges were to bee changed, to make the receipts more fit and pleasaunt for the cure of the malady: and at length, to doe the Apothecaries pleasure, I haue sorted and set in one place the sirupes, in an other the Electuaries, in an other the potions, and whatsoeuer else in their proper place, out of which they may bee easily taken againe, and applied to the practise and vse of curing.

Of

Of Sirupes.

Syrupus acidus simplex: that is, the sharpe simple sirupe, doth prepare all humours, as well hot as cold, and with a certaine force doth attenuate them, doth withholde or restraine the corruption, doth mitigate the heate of choler, and asswage the burning of agues and thirst, setteth at liberty, and scoureth the passages through the body obstructed, and doth piercingly enter into all partes, as also after a purgation it moueth sweat and vrine. ℞. *aquæ purissimæ*. ℔. iiij. *Sacchari albi*. ℔. v. Boile them so long as they cast out some or skumme, and to the consumption of halfe the water: and then poure to them *Aceti vini albi*. ℔. iij. Boile them then againe to the thicknesse of a syrupe.

In Syrupum acidum Scholia Guil. Plantij.

THe barbarous titles and names, doe apparauntly argue, that Sirupes and Iuleps and many other as well simple as compound medicines, were the inuentions of the Arabians. But many yeares before them, the old Grecians had of the same matter, and for the same vse their *Apozemata*, (that is, decoction of water and herbes) in stead of sirupes, which because they were fitly applied, as well to prepare the bodies as humours to purging, were of them termed *propotismata*, as if you would say, potiõs before purging, because that according to the direct order of curing, they make a way for purging medicins. So *Galen* in *mulso*, that is, wine and hony sodden together, and *Oximelite*, that is, hony, vineger, and water boiled together, doth incoct *Origanum*, hyssope, peniroyall, and calamint, to the preparing of the body to be purged. And if he be an author of credite, *Archigenes*, *Antonius Musa*, and many other auncient Phisitions did make such like sweete confections of potions for sicke folke of the iuice of cicory, dill, flouredeluce, and celidony, and such like herbes, tempred together with wine and hony by decoction, for diuerse diseases of the liuer and other parts affected. And *Dioscorides* did boile the rootes, leaues, and toppes of plantes, and did straine the liquor boiled, and then minisled it either alone, or else sweetned with *mulsa* or hony, or to bring it out of knowledge did decoct it to the thicknesse of hony. So that these three *Apozema*, *Syrupus*, and *Iulepus*, differ onely in the manner of conditure, that is, making them pleasaunt to the taste. For in *Apozemate*, because that vppon occasion sodainely and out of hand, for the most part it is ordained to be disseuered into three or foure parts, to bring it to a seasonable sweetenesse, it shall be sufficient if he take the third part of sugar or hony, or somewhat more then the third part of sugar, in respect of the strained decoction and purified iuice. But the sirupes, to the intent they may be longer kept, require a perfect coction and therefore it is meete to haue so much, or very litle lesse sugar or hony, as there is of the strained decoction or purified iuice. But because the iulep is more thinner, penetrating and pleasaunt then the two before, it shall be sufficient enough if it haue the sixth part of sugar, or in stead thereof the like quantity of a conuenient sirupe, so that there be somewhat more then two parts of the sugar, in respect of the decoction prepared, or distilled waters. To all these potions made of decoctions and the iuice of plants, and frutes, sugar, and hony

be mingled, not onely for their preseruation, or for their sweetenesse and pleasauntnesse in taste and sauour, but also for the proper force of hony and sugar, which they impart vppon these decoctions. For sith these two be almost daily vsed, and familiar vnto vs, not onely for sauce, but also as meates, both waies the potions to which these shall bee mingled, doe quicken and stirre vppe the naturall strength, astonied, or dulled and languishing in the sickenesse, and doe comfort the naturall heate, which alone doth concoct and mitigate diseases, and by extenuating grosse matter, scouring slimy, and making a riddaunce of obstruction, they cause easie purgations: and these faculties come to the decoctions or potions of the sugar and hony, which decoctions notwithstanding of them selues doe much auaile to diuerse vses, the commodities whereof I will declare in describing eache of them, by obseruing that order which both the trade of compounding doeth require, and the methode of curing doth prescribe. For simple is by nature before the compound, and the right order of ministring medicines well, beareth by order one thing to be propounded and to bee vsed before an other. We beginne this Booke of more simple medicines, and of such as by direct order of curing are vsed before others, minding to obserue the same order in all this booke, beginning with the sharpe simple syrupe; for in this place we speake not of *Apozemata* and Iuleps, but onely of such as are kept a long time of Apothecaries; and further, *Apozemata* agreeing to the diseases of euery part, haue bene handled before. And although *Condita*, commonly called conserues, and of herbes and fruites certaine well seasoned iuices, called of the Grecians ἀπόχυλα, be more simple then syrupes, and therefore might seeme the rather to be spoken of before, yet becausse for the most part they be ordained after purgations, to the keeping or getting of the strength of the partes, therefore my minde was to deferre them to another place, the methode of curing so requiring: and syrupes were inuented to haue in a readines so oft as occasion chaunceth, becausse that herbes and other rootes, and frutes alwaies be not ready at hand, and sometime when they be at hand, necessity so vrgeth, that there is no leysure to make of them *Apozemata*, and Iuleps. In the first place the composition of syrupes is set downe, which are fit to prepare humours for purging, then after, such as be meet to purge the remnants of the parts, and to keepe or preserue their strength. And this generally of syrupes. Particularly the sharpe simple syrupe was not to be made only of vineger and sugar, as other sharpe syrupes bee, but also of water, to mitigate the strength and sharpnesse of vineger. Heed must be taken that in stead of white vineger, distilled be not put in, which being most sharpe doth pierce and pinch the other parts to no small annoyance of the receiuer. Heed likewise must be taken that no more quantity of vineger be put in: for this measure was thought meet and equall. But if any suspect the sharpnesse of the vineger (least through his piercing cold bodies of tender constitution, as children and women, and in women chiefly, their wombe should bee harmed, for according to *Hippocrates*, vineger is noisome to the wombe) they may when they vse it by mixture of some sweete or distilled water, or some meet decoction, make the syrupe more delaied, or in stead of that vse *Oxy. saccharo*, a syrupe of vineger and sugar. The

sharpe

sharpe compound syrupe is not here described, least I should burthen the Apothecaries with vaine losse, for by putting to a portion of syrupes to rootes, it will be a compound seruing for the same vse. This was my purpose, to propound the best compositions of all other to euery chiefe kinde of disease, and cause that nothing should be wanting of remedy. But to heape together a vain friuolous heape of medicines euery where, after the fashion which doe fill vnconsiderately papers, with vnknowen and vnapproued remedies, I thought it too much a burthen for Apothecaries, and a worke not plaine, but full of confusion for students.

Syrupus è succo limonum.

THe sirupe of the iuice of Limons, doth lesse then the sharpe sirupe extenuate and pierce, and yet the vehemency of choler and heat of the bodie and thirst, it more asswageth and doth more restraine the corruption of hoate feuers, and the malady of pestilent agues, it defendeth likewise the strength of the mouth of the stomach, and heart, and principall partes, it expelleth lothesomnesse, vomiting, defection of the minde, and swouning for feebleneesse, peculiarly it purgeth the kidneis, and prouoketh vrine. ℞. *succi Limonum* purified, and going through a wollen streiner without compulsion freely. ℔.vij. *sacchari albi* fined. ℔. v. Boile these with a soft fire into a syrupe.

PLANTIVS.

Syrupe of Limons of the sharpnes of orenges or citrõs, of tart pomgranats, of *auramus*, of vnripe grapes, of the iuice of sorrell, of the iuice of barberies and of *ribes*, & al other tart or sharpe sirupes be made of iuices, which either by setling or by streining be made more cleare and pure. And to the iuices is added like quantity of sugar or somewat lesse without mixture of any water, because the sharpe tartnes of the sirupe, is nothing noisome but pleasant, & comfortable to the heart, and it should be delaied likewise with lesse sugar (as in luleps) if the iuices could be long preserued. There be some which purify the iuices by setting, or by setling them in the heat of the sun, and fining them with the foming whites of egs, or else only by wringing them out lightly, as in wine comming of the grapes before they be presséd, called in latine *vinum protopum*. And then with fined sugar. i. boiled with the like quantity of water, & after clarified, and at the last concocted to a Iulep, mixing by little and little the one with the other, they stir thẽ with a spatter vntill they come together, & become as one, or they boile it a litle with sugar throughly and wel sod, or els with the best sugar, such as the *maderanũ* is, they boile it so long, vntill the sugar be melted and dissolued altogether. And hereof the sirupe of the iuice of Limons, of Citrons, the sharpe simple sirupe, and the rosate lulep become very white. As for the simple sirupe of pomegranats, barberies, of *ribes*, of red vineger to keepe the finenes of their natural colour, must not so long for mixture sake be beaten together with a pestel. And this order of cõposition in the iuices, chiefly of tart frutes taketh place, for other iuices of herbs, of roots, &c. require more perparatiõ to the making of a sirupe, for they must be boiled twise, once by thẽselues almost to the consumption of the 3. part, after when they haue beene purified with streining & setling, they must be concocted with the best sugar to a sirupe otherwise they doe soone corrupt and become filthy. The sirupes that follow

made of sharpe iuices are in force like the former, as the sirupe of the Tart, iuice of Citrons, the sirupe of sharpe pomegranates, the sirupe of *Aurantijs*, the sirupe of *Omphacio*. i. vnripe grapes, the sirupe of the iuice of sorrell. But peculiarly the sirupe of sharpe citrons doeth quench the heate of a ague, and restraineth the corruption and malady thereof. The sirupe of pomegranates doth corroborant the stomach, and the chiefe entrals of a man, as the splene, the liuer, the loong, &c. it restraineth vomiting and mitigateth swouning. The sirupe (*de Aurantijs*) doth more comfort the heart, and is more pleasant. The sirupe (*de Omphacio*) doth more quench thirst. The syrupe of the iuice of sorrell doth allay choler and open obstruction. The sirupe of *Rines* is more sweete in tast and more astringent. The way or order of making them all is alike, for if the iuice of euery one of them purged, a litle lesse sugar must be dissolued, and these two put in a tinne vessell, must be set on the fire, and boiled by little and little to a sirupe.

Oxysaccharum simplex.

Oxysaccharum simplex, hath a mixed nature or force, both to attenuate, to abate, to dull, to corroborate or comfort, and is good against a diuerse mixture of humours, and vnstable agues arising thereof. ℞. *Succi mali punici acidi.* i. sowre pomegranates. ℥. viij. *Aceti.* ℥. iiij. *Sacchari albi & puri.* ℔. j. Boile them to the thickenesse of a sirupe.

Plantius.

Oxysaccharum hath the same vertue that the sowre sirupe hath, but not in like force, sauing it excelleth to comfort and roborate, and therefore the vse thereof is more safer in diseases chaunceing in sommer and tender bodies, then of the sharp sirupe. Least so great variety of sirupes should be retianed in vain, I omit, *Oxysaccharum compositum*, *Oximeli compositum*, and *Oxymeli Scyllitieum*. i. made of *Scylla*, for when they are thought good to be vsed, the Phisition may make and prescribe them speedily and fitly, *Oxysacchari.* ℥. j. *sirupi maioris è radicibus.* ℥. ij. *vel sirupi adianti.* ℥. j. ß.

Oxymeli simplex.

Oxymeli simplex, doth extenuate grosse humours, and doth scoure out slimy matter, doth open old obstructions, doth expell from the chest thicke matter, and is good against *Asthma*. i. obstructions of the lungs with fleume, whereof ariseth shortnesse of winde, and rebellious agues. ℞. *aquæ purissimæ, mellis optimi*, ana. ℔. iiij. Boile them vntill with exhaling halfe the water bee consumed, and then poure in of *Aceti Acerrimi*. i. very sharpe vineger ℔ ij. and let them be boiled againe by euaporation to a meet consistaunce. That which is made more liquide, hath *aquæ purissimæ.* ℔. j. *mellis optimi.* ℥. iiij. *aceti.* ℥. j. ß. Let these be boiled by soming out easily their corruption.

Oximeli Scyllyticum.

Oxymeli Scyllyticum, doeth more forceably attenuate grosse matter, and is good for all things we haue spoken of, and it is made of vineger of *Scylla*, which

which is put to hony boyled and clarified by foming and sodde as the other, both become compound by putting to double portion of the sirupe *è radicibus maioris*.

PLANTIVS.

We haue lesse vse of *Oximell*, that is, sweete vineger, then the auncient Phisitions had le, who then hadde not inuented the sharpe sirupe, which (the power of cleansing onely excepted wherein hony excelleth) sugar hath other vertues not much inferior to *Oximell*, and besides other effectes, is very good against agues. But sweet vineger which euery where is in vse in Apothecaries shoppes, is very vnsauery, whether it be full of the too much grosnesse, comming of ouer seething thereof, or of the too much sharpentesse which is not so much qualified and dulled with the mixture of our hony as of sugar. For although you delay and dissolue that thicke *Oximell*, with sweete water, or some set decoction, yet you shall neuer make it so pleasaunt to drinke as the sowre sirupe. That which is made of many more thinner for present occasions, and is called *Oxymell Galeni*, is more pearcing into euery part, and more pleasaunt. For whereas for the little boiling it doth not thicken, but the thinnesse of the water is therein retained, which the thinnesse of the vineger doth further, and all the filthinesse of the hony partly by skumming, partly by clarifying is taken away: therefore it becommeth most thinne and most cleare, especially if it haue bene made with white vineger and white hony: and with the little sharpenesse of vineger, it becommeth nothing vnpleasaunt to the taster but it is found by experience, that by too much vse, & too great a draught, thereof, the stomach is annoied chiefly in those, whose mouth of the stomach is by nature feeling and sensible. Wherefore there is no safe vse thereof in agues, whether you make it sowrer or sweeter. Choose good hony which is betwixt thicke and thinne, most sweete and sharpe in taste, and therewith making a sweet taste and biting the tongue (as it were) with pulling, in colour pale or somewhat red and cleare, most fragrant and new, and which taken out and handled, for his cammy humour is not disseuered or pulled into parts, heauy in weight or ponderous. Wherefore that which is in the bottome of the vessell is better then that which swimmeth aboue, and it doth cast vp litle skum in boiling. But in our daies there hath bene brought the white and sweeteſt hony, and *aromaticke* indeede most liquide and fluent, and making a white and hard crust vpon it out of *Lusitania*, and *Gedano* to Andwerpe, hony as good as either the *Attick* or *Siculum*: but they counterfaite that hony (as many other things else) and forge another in stead thereof, by often washing and whiting; which deceit of theirs you may easilie find out by the vnsweetnes of smelling, and vnsauornesse of tasting, then next this both in goodnesse and in colour, is the *Narbonense* hony, and in those regions also our country hony, that which commeth out of the combes freely, and is commonly called Virgine hony, is best. The worser hony by boyling is made better, and the vse of the skummed is alwaies fitter, except by long abiding in the stomach it swell it, and become vehement hote and augment choler. Hony is good for children that haue no wormes, and for old men, for it causeth order and state, and stirreth vp and preserueth naturall heat, it prolongeth old age, and is euill for choleticke and young men, because it is easily turned to choler.

Syrupus è Cichorio.

Syrupus è Cichorio doth coole moderately, doth comfort all the *viscera*, that is, principall partes within, as the heart, liuer, and loong, with an easie binding, and doth set at liberty the obstructions of the liuer, and other parts by scouring and opening, it doth quench choler, and maketh it meete for purgation, in the beginning of hot pestilent and vehement feuers, it is meete and holesome. ℞. *totius intubi agrestis*, i. of the whole Cichory. ℥. iiij. *radicum oxalides graminis, & asparagi*, bruised. ana. ℥ ij. *dichenis, eupatorij, intubi satini*, commonly called Endiue, *seriole, ciceritæ, lactucæ, satinæ & agrestis, adianti albi, adianti nigri, adianti simplicis, saxifragi, luporum cassutæ*. ana. *M.* j. Boile them in x. ℔. of water, vntill it come to vj. in the streined decoction, dissolue *sacchari albissimi*. ℔. vj. and boile all these together to a clarified sirupe.

Plantivs.

Whereas the sirupe of *Cichory*, of the description of *Nicolaus Florentinus* is oft in vse, and both their sirupes do consist of a confused heape of simples as well cold as hote without order, and of reubarbe, that it is hard to tell to what vse they may be applied: not without good reason, the description is here chãged & framed to those ends which be here expressed in the title, to the which neither of the other can be applied for the hot rootes. If it be desired to be somewhat tart or sharpe, there may be mixed to it the third part of *acetosus sirupus*, or *oxy. saccharum*, or if it must be somewhat hotter, or more piercing, as against many diseases heaped together, so much or halfso much of the sirupe of roots, if reubarbe must bee at any time put to it, it rather seemeth meet to be put thereto in, at the time of vsing then making therof, because the vertue of reubarbe to purge, both by boiling & long keeping, vanisheth away, and this sirupe made rather for preparation then purgation, and there is more strength of roborating in reubarbe, then that well doth agree to a preparatiue potion. But neither in the time of ministring reubarb can cõmodiously be intermixed, *viz.* the grosnesse of the sirupe hindring the operation of purging, either by making it very like or else none at all: and for the same thicknesse the sirupe it selfe is not so effectual for those purposes, for which it was described, as if it were dissolued and made more sweeter with some conuenient decoction, therfore they worke not for any commodity of the sicke, but onely of losse which to euery pound of the sirupe doe employ ℥. j. of Rewbarbe, and do not only double and triple, but also mixe by measure foure or sixe times so much, contrary to the credite of all bookes which for euery pound do bid and will only ℥. iiij. to be mingled. And they also be farre wide which doe affirme that this sirupe must be made of the only iuice of Cichory, no otherwise then the sirupe of the iuice of Citrin, for although therein they haue the trueth, when they account a heape of compound simples contrary one to an other, to be reiected in the composition of medicines, and therefore do refuse the compositions of *Ghuilhel. placenti & Nicola. floren.* of Cichory as contrary, and made rashly, and without reason, yet notwithstanding the composition of the iuice of Cichory must not take place in stead of them, when as it cannot truely be ordained for that vse, to the which the sirupe of Cichory by experience is found to auaile, for whether

whether when choler muſt bee prepared to purgation or the ſtopping of the liuer and other parts muſt be opened or you haue occaſion to coole, and moderatly roborate, as in the beginning of vehement and peſtilent agues; which of theſe I pray you can this ſirupe doe or bring to paſſe, which firſt by much and long beating and hard ſtraining is made thicker, and then after by it ſelfe boiled to the conſumption of the 3. part, and after concocted with ſugar to the groſneſſe of a ſirupe, by euaporation hath almoſt loſt all the vertue, as much almoſt becommed as meere ſugar? It is farre otherwiſe in the decoction and iuice of fruites, eſpecially ſharpe, as the iuice of Orenges, Citrons, Limons, Pomegranates, and ſuch like, for they ſhed their whole force vppon ſirupes, whereas neither by preſſing their tenuity, neither by concoction, they leeſe their faculty, as we haue noted in other places aboue. And decoctiõs becauſe they haue the force of many ſimples, and for the water be more thin and fluxible doe not thicken, and leeſe their vertue in boyling: whereupon the ſirupes conſiſting of theſe decoctions, be more meet and amiable to prepare the body to purging, but they which be made of their iuices after purgation (the body being now open pliant) be better adiudged to thoſe vſes, (which I thinke) doth repeate in deſcribing euery one of them.

Syrupus Intubi domeſtici.

Syrupus Intubi domeſtici, doth allay choler, doth coole the liuer, and purge and ſtrengthen it, and cureth the iaundies & diſeaſes comming of the obſtructions of the liuer, very commodious after purgations: and when the matter of an ague and other diſeaſes is after a ſort well and throughly digeſted, ℞. *Endiuiæ recentis, ſeriolæ, lachenis, lactucæ, agrimonij, cicerbitæ, hieracij*. ana. *M*. j. ß. *quatuor ſeminum frigidorum maiorum*. ana. ℥ j. *ſandali albi & rubri, contuſarum roſarum rubrarum* ana. ℥. ij. Boile them in viij. pound of water to the halfe, to the ſtrained liquor put of white ſugar iiij. pound. Seeth them together all againe, and skum and fine them as they boile, adde therto of the iuice of Endiue purged by ſetling ℔. j. afterward of the pure iuice of pomegranats without dregs ℥. iiij. Boile them all together to the hight of a ſirupe.

Plantivs.

The Author thought this ſirupe of Endiue meete to be made and retained, although it were the inuention of an vncertaine Author, becauſe it ſeemed to be deſcribed vpon good ground of reaſon, and therefore will be more effectuall, then if it were made of the ſole iuice of Endiue, as many would haue it. After the body be purged, it auaileth all the diſeaſes of the liuer, and to purge the reſidents of cholericke malladies, and chiefely neceſſary for the ſcab and the itch.

Syrupus Byzantinus.

Syrupus Byzantinus hath a mixed vertue both to addreſſe and purge the liuer and ſplene, and that after purgation. For the yellow and blacke laundies, and the remnants of agues eſpecially good. ℞. *Succi intubi ſatini & apij*. ana. ℔. ij. *ſucci lupi ſalictarij & bugloſſi*. ana. ℔. j. In ſeething cleanſe them till they waxe cleare, and make a ſirupe with iij. pound of ſugar.

PLANTIVS.

The Interpreter of *Mesua* denieth the vse of the sirupe *Byzantine* in agues, before the seuenth day, for commonly immediatly at the beginning of compoũd agues, the Phisitions vse *Syrupus aceto sus simplex*, with the decoction of fennell, and the third part of hony *rosat*, but after purgation, because it mightely scoureth the relickes of the diseases *Hepatick* and *Splenaticke*. This sirupe *Byzantinus* is good to cure all maladies of both the forenamed intrals, which be hard to be dissolued and rebellious to be cured, as the blacke and yellow iaundies, especially by putting thereto sirupe *è radicibus*, the compound is omitted because it doth deprane the force of the simple, and hath too much vineger.

Syrupus Scolopendrij.

Syrupus Scolopendrij doth extenuate, mollifie, and make fluent, grosse, and earthy melancholy, it openeth the stopping of the splene, and doth abate the swelling thereof, and is speciall good for melancholy quartanes, and continuall agues. ℞. *Polipodi è quercu, radicum vtriusque bugloss. corticis radicum capparis, corticum thamarisci, singu.* ℥ ij. *scolopendrij veri. M.* iij. *lupi salictarij, cassuthæ, capilli veneris, melissophilli, singulo. M.* ij. *Coquantur in aquæ.* ℔ ix. vntill there remaine v. put to the strcined decoction of white sugar. ℔ iiij. Boile them to a fined and cleare sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Syrupus Scolopendrij, the author here to this place hath referred well and for great vse made, because there was no sirupe of the old Phisitions description meete to prepare earthy and massie melancholy. The true harts tongue is *Asplenium Dioscorides, & officinarum ceterache.*

Syrupus è radicibus.

Syrupus è radicibus doth scoure, extenuate, and prepare slimy and grosse fleume, it openeth the obstructions of the liuer, and all the other entrals, it asswageth swellings, taketh away the euill colour of virgines, prouoketh vrine, and doth quite make an end of agues hardly dissolued and olde diseases. ℞. *radicum apij, fœniculi, ruscí & asparagi.* ana. ℥. iiij. *radicum capparis & rubiæ*, ana. ℥ ij. *Coquantur in* ℔. x. *hydromelytis diluti*, that is, dissolued vntill they become to ℔. vj. *& cum sacchari* ℔. v. make a cleare sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas there be confected of rootes two sirupes, one of the two rootes pearcely and fennell, he omitted of set purpose as nothing effectuall and easie to be come by, if neede require, and thought meete to retaine the other as of greater vertue: To which he hath vppon good consideration added the rootes of *Capparis & rubiæ*, that it might be more effectuall for diuerse vses. He omitteth vineger, because for the most part it is desired without it, and if need require, a portion of the sharpe sirupe may easily by prescript be mingled thereto, and somewhat likewise it may be temperated with the mixture of other sirupes.

Syrupus

Syrupus Adiantinus.

Syrupus Adiantinus doth with a moderate heat easily and gently deuide and scoure all humours alike, in what part of the body soeuer they be agreeable to euery disease beginning, euery nature, age, region, and women with childe. ℞. *Adianti albi. M.* iij. *Adianti nigri, adianti simplicis, saxifragi, betonicæ, pimpimellæ, asplenij.* ana. *M.* ij. *Coquantur in aquæ.* ℔. viij. vntill they consume to v. And in the pressed decoction, dissolue or melt *sacchari albi* ℔. iiij. *mellis optimi expurgati.* ℔. ß.

PLANTIVS.

Sith there is no artificiall description extant of maidenhaire, there is commodiously intermingled amongst the other which is compoũd of chosen simples auailing altogether to diuers effects by their temperature. Wherfore this sirupe of all other for his manifold and diuerse vse, is of most operation, *polichrestus*. i. very good for the diseases of all parts, especially of the breast, the liuer, the splene, the kidneis, and al diseases of the wombe in all ages & natures. And the prerogatiue also therof is such, that it doth make soluble whosoeuer vseth it any space, and it doth not only prepare humors, but also purge them when they be prepared, and especially grosse fleum and choler, as certaine new Phisitions and we also haue obserued in practise oftentimes: the which effect likewise the decoction *omnium adiantorum*, but especially the white hath, although contrariwise *Dios.* teacheth that it bindeth, but they which doe mingle either raisons or liquorice *cum adiantis* into the sirupe, do restraine the large & ample nature there for diuers vses to some peculiar effect, and by mixture doe dull the force therof in extenuating and scouring. They should therfore more fitly make this sirupe of the sole decoction of *adiantinorum* which might be reserued as a common matter for euery kinde of griefe, and then the might apply it as need required to the diseases of this or that part. As for example, to the breast affected with raisons and liquorice decocted, for the liuer with the decoction of *agrimony* or *cichory*, for the splene *asplenij aut tamarasci*, for the kidneis such things as prouoke vrine and breake the stone, for so by a fit and meet decoction, the common nature of the sirupe may likewise be applied to some one part, and his strength augmented with the sole sirupe described is very much effectual. These compositions of sirupes haue bene meet to prepare bodies to purgation: now we must teach what sirupes be good to purge the relickes of euery part.

Syrupus è stœcade.

Syrupus è stœcade is good against the cold diseases of the braine, and nerues or sinewes, as *Paralysis*, the palsey, *Epilepsia*, the falling euill, *Conuulsio*, the crampe, *tremori*. i. quaking and distilling out of the head when it lieth. ℞. *florum stœcados.* ℥. iiij. *thymi, calamynthes, origani.* ana. *M.* j ß. *saluiæ, betonicæ, florum roriſmarini.* an. ℥. ß *seminis rutæ, peonæ, fœniculi* an. ℥ iij. Boile thẽ in x ℔. of water till the halfe be consumed: when the decoction is strained, boile it againe with hony & sugar, of ech ij. pound, and condite it with cinnamon, ginger, *calamus aromaticus*

of each ℥. ij. which being bound vp in a course cloth with open threds, must be hanged in the sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Syrupus è stœcade, because it was not good in working for the head, he hath not without cause put other certaine things, as sage, betony, rosemary, the seedes of rue, piony, and fennell, very profitable for sundry diseases of the braine and sinewes, otherwise I see not wherefore this sirupe ought much to be applied or ordained for the diseases of the braine, sith *stœcados* which is the chiefe in this discription, and is as it were the *basis*, that is, the ground of the sirupe, is rather *hepatica*, that is, good for the liuer, or *splenica*, that is, good for the splene, then *cephalica*, that is, good for the head, for it is chiefly commended for the stopping of all the intrals, the which with his thinne and hot substance, it doth easily open and with the other somwhat astringing earthy quality, doth corroborate all the inward parts. If you want *Calamus aromaticus* for to make it sweete in taste, in stead thereof may be vsed *nux muschata*, which hath singular force to comfort the braine.

Syrupus rosarum succarum.

THe sirupe of dry Roses doeth mitigate the hotte diseases of the braine, it asswageth the thirst, strengthneth the stomacke, causeth sleepe, and stayeth thinne defluxions, ℞. *aquæ simplicis.* ℔. iiij. in the which being made blood warme, soke xxiiij. houres red roses dried ℔. j and after this be strained, dissolue therein white sugar ℔. ij. this done, boile them to the substaunce of a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Certaine Phisitions thincke good to renue the infusion of dry roses twise or thrise, to the intent as they suppose, the force of the sirupe might bee augmented: whereas notwithstanding one onely infusion is for that purpose as effectuall, for in three infusions it is necessary that great store of water be vsed, as for a pound of roses, viij. pound of water, otherwise with manifold maceration the water will either be drunke vp, or with forcible straining will become too thicke, and as for the vertue and strength of the roses, the sirupe will as much draw and drinke vp, by one infusion as by many, as it chaunceth by salt when it is dissolued in water. This sirupe is anaileable in euery fluxe of the belly, and it is of like operation in comforting and strengthning the partes of the body, in agglutinating vlcers, and in mundifying them mildely, both by it selfe, and also ministred with other things.

Syrupus Nymphæa.

THis sirupe of *Nymphæa* mitigateth the heate of the head, frensies, & watchings, procureth sleepe, and lastly asswageth the sharpenesse of distillations, ℞. *florum Nymphæa recentium.* ℔. ß. *florum violarum* ℥. ij. *foliorum lactucæ. M.* ij. *semi lactucæ.* ℥. ß. Adde these before the boiling, *portulacæ.* ℥ ß. *& cucurbitæ.* Boile them in iiij. pound of water till one be consumed, and when it is strained, put thereto of distilled rose water ℔. ß. white sugar ℔. iij. and boile them to a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

PLANTIVS.

The simple sirupe of *Nimphea* is omitted as nothing commodious, and as for the compound sirupe, according to the description of *Franciscius Pedemontanus*, by reason of sundry seedes, vineger, and the iuice of pomegranates, it is nothing conuenient nor commodious to worke these thinges, for which it is required. Wherefore vpon good occasion, here is described another very easie and profitable to those vses which are compounded in the inscription. The floures of that *Nimphea* which hath yellow floures and white root, is to be preferred in the composition of this sirupe.

Syrupus de papauere.

SYrupe of poppy hath the same vertue that *Nimphea* hath, but peculiarly it staieth a grieuous cough and such distillation as doe exasperate the iawes and throte, ℞. *capitum papaueris albi* not throughly riped and new. ℥. viij. *Capitum papaueris nigri recentium.* ℥. vj. *Aquæ cœlestis.* ℔. iiij. Boile them to the consumption of halfe, and put thereinto *Sacchari & penidiorum.* ana. ℥. viij. Boile them to the consistance of a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

In the simple sirupe of Poppy, there be foure heades of the blacke poppy put in, because it cannot so safely be vsed as the white: as for the compound sirupe of poppy, hauing many lenitiue things, it is therefore omitted and not put in practise, because when necessity requireth it may easily be prepared, by putting to this sirupe, of the sirupe of *imbebino* or *violacco*.

Diacodion.

Diacodion as it procureth sleepe, so it abandoneth the distillations of the braine whithersoeuer it presseth, it staieth the disentery and other fluxe of the belly. ℞. *Capita papaueris albi* meanely great and meanely ripe *numero* xij. *Aquæ cœlestis.* ℔. ij. Boile them to the third part, and when it is strained, put thereto of the best *Sapa*, that is, new wine. ℥. iiij. boiled to the third part, *mellis optimi.* ℥. ij. Boile all these together, put in the end of the decoction, *rosarum rubrarum, valanstiorum, acatiæ, rois culinari tritorum.* ana. ℥. ij. *seminis portulacæ coralli albi & rubri.* ana. ℥. j.

PLANTIVS.

Diacodion is brought into a better fourme, seruing to stay distilations by reiecting certaine vnnecessary and vnpleasant things, *Dios.* to the same purpose boileth the heads of poppy alone in water, to the consumption of halfe, and putting thereto hony and the iuice of *Hypocistis*, hee reduceth it to the consistance of an *oxlegma*. As for the heads of the poppy, they must neither be too greene, nor through drinesse too much voide of iuice, but when they beginne through a greene kinde of ripenesse to rattle, they must be gathered for this composition. Whereuppon they be tearmed of the Grecians Κεφάλια & Κεφάλια,

that is, the whiskling heades of the poppy, for that this compoſition through too much thickneſſe may be vnpleaſant to ſome: when it is to be taken, it may be delaied with the decoction of barley, or ſome other thing of like conueniency: and alſo if ſleepe muſt bee procured or daunger be imminent of a ſharpe and thinne fluxion of exaſperation both, to ſtay and aſſwage that, you may lawfully augment the force of *diacodion* with a freſh decoction of the ſeeds of poppy, or with the thicke iuice ſtrained out of the decoction of barley. Neither is it to bee dredleſt harme ſhould betide to the body by poppy, notwithſtanding it be recorded by authors to be cold in the fourth degree, ſith that ſundry nations do vſe with meats after the faſhion of herbes the tender ſprings of poppy, and doe feede of an oile preſſed out of the ſeeds thereof: and in preparing dainties, they ſprinckle the ſeeds thereof vpon tarts and cakes made to pleaſe the taſt without any annoyaunce or heauineſſe through ſleepe. And in ſuch like order the Ægyptians vſe to make the taſte pleaſaunt, *Oleum ſeſaminum & ſeſamum* and *petronius*, grounding vppon that cuſtome vſed in the latine tong, for an eloquent and pleaſaunt oration compoſition of wordes, All his ſayings and doings are as it were ſprinckled with poppy and *Seſamus*, for both the liquor of poppy, called in Greeke *Opium*, and the iuice wrung out of the leaues, and heades tearmed in Greeke *meconium* conſiſt not of an vniforme, but of manifold ſubſtance, one watery and very cold, another airy temperate, the third hote, bitter, and ſweet ſmelling. The firſt is more apparant in greene and tender poppies, the two laſt in dry. As for the *opium* or rather *meconium* which is brought to vſe, it is altogether counterfaite, and through a ſecrete quality is noiſome, and therefore in no caſe to be vſed, though it be neuer ſo artificially corrected. For whereas *opium* is by great labour in like quantity confected of the milke of the ſeedes of wilde poppy and *meconium*, without any trouble is abundantly preſſed out of the leaues. The factors which ſeek after gaine and lucre, may eaſily counterfaite *opium*, or in ſtead thereof bring out of *Apulia* and *Spaine*, *meconium*.

Syrupus violarum.

THe compound ſirupe of violets doth mitigate a ſharpe diſtillation, doeth aſſwage horſeneſſe, grieuous cough and roughnes of the arteries, the pluriſie, and doth quench thirſt. ℞. *florum violarum recentium.* ℥. ij. *Seminis Cydoniorum, & maluæ.* ana. ℥. j. *Zeziphæ, mixaria.* ana. ℥. x. *decocti cucurbitæ vel ſeminis eius.* ℔. v. Boile them to the halfe, and with ℔. ij. of ſugar, compound them to a ſirupe.

PLANTIVS.

In this compound ſirupe there is nothing chaunged, becauſe hee thought it compounded artificially, ſeruing commodiouſly by ſmoothing, cooling, moiſtening, againſt all the heate and roughneſſe of the arteries, as alſo it appeaſeth the vehement burning of the vrine, and the vehement torments of the raines, for the herbe and leaues of the violet boiled, haue a piping faculty in them, the ſeede is good to purge choler in ſuch wiſe as reubarbe doeth: in the midſt of the flowre there is a thing ſomewhat yellowiſh, which is recorded

to

to be helpefull for the *Anguia* and the *Epilepsia* in children if it be drunke with water. The flowre of violet and a simple sirupe made of it, by infusion once or twise, doeth mitigate, asswage, and scoure, and therefore is very necessary in a Pleurisie, and bringeth vnder blacke burnt choler, and the noysome vapours arising thereof, and thereby doth set at quiet the *Symptomata* arising thereof, namely, the headach, watchings, and dreaming, and expelleth the heauinesse of the heart, it temperateth hotter and drier medicines by mitigating them commodiously. Whereas then these qualities be singular, the sirupe confected of the infusion of fresh violettes, may bee iustly registred amongst the sirupes seruing to many vses. This infusion wrung out of pleasaunt or well smelling violettes dried somewhat in the shadow as it behoueth, and soaked in luke warme water, if it be boiled to the consistency of a sirupe, may be kept the continuance of a yeare and more without any filth or corruption, to the vses tofore repeated, and is to be taken both before & after purgation. As for those which reiterate the soaking of the violettes and roses nine times in the confection of the sirupe of violets and roses, they labor in vaine, for they cannot become lesse effectuall in working, though they vse (at the most) infusion but foure times, as wee will declare to Apothecaries in the forme of making medicines. As for the sirupe of liquorice, it seemeth nothing commodious, because it is of little vertue, and for that it is contained in the sirupe of hysope; and such great variety of sirupes bringeth rather confusion then commodity to students.

Syrupus Zizyphorum.

Syrupus Ziziphorũ, accomplisheth the same which the sirupe of violets doth, but with more efficacy: both of thé are conuenient in the beginning of the disease. ℞. *Ziziphorum nume.* lx. *mixtaria nume.* xx. *florum violarum, adianthi albi, hordei à cortice liberi, glycyrrhizæ.* ana. ℥. vj. *semi. malue, cydoniorum, semi. papaueris albi, melonum & lactucæ, tragacanthæ.* ana. ℥. iij. The seedes of *cydoniorum*, of mallowes, and tragacanth bound vp in a course cloth, must be boiled with the rest in. ℔. v. of water, to the consumption of halfe with. ℔. ij. of white sugar to the substance of a sirupe.

Syrupus de Hyssopo.

Syrupus de Hyssopo by a gentle and light mitigation, doeth purge and aridde the breast and lungs of all hot and cold maladies, doth concoct the spittle or fleame, and maketh it more easie to be auoided, by attenuating and scouring it. And lastly, is good as well for the aggreeuances, as approaching or inclination of *peripneumonia à pluritis.* ℞. *Hyssopi arefacti.* ℥. j. ß. *radicum polypodij quercini, feniculi, glycyrrhizæ, semi. carthami.* ana. ℥. j. *hordei expurgati, adianthi albi.* ana. ℥. ß. *passularum purgatarum.* ℥. j. ß. *ficus siccis, palmulas pingues.* ana. x. *nume.* Boile them in. ℔. vj. of water to the consumption of halfe, and boile the strained iuice thereof into a sirupe, with a pound and a halfe of hony and *sacchari.* ℔. j. ß. make a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

The deſcription of the ſirupe of hyſope, remaineth vnuaried, ſaue that in ſtead of the roote of ſmallage, there is ſubſtituted the roote of *polypodii*, and for the roote of percely, the ſeed of garden ſaffron, which be much more fitte and commodious. Certaine mitigatiues be abſtracted which be ſufficient enough in the ſirupe of violettes and *iuiubes*, the rather to make the force of the ſirupe more ſcouring.

Syrupus de praſſio.

SYrupe of horehound cutteth mightily, attenuateth, ſcoureth, and purgeth the diſeaſes of the breaſt and the liuer, it is excellent good againſt inueterate diſeaſes of groſſe and ſlimy fleume, as for *aſthma*, *tuſſis vetus*, *empyrema*, and alſo is auaileable for *peripneumonia* and *pleuritis*, already inclined. ℞. *Praſſii albi recentis*. ℥. ij *glycyrrhizæ*, *polipodii quercini*, *radicum apii & fœniculi*. ana. ℥. ß. *adyanthi albi*, *hyſſopi*, *origani*, *calaminthæ*, *ſtœues*, *ſatureiæ*, *tuſſilaginis*. an. ℥. vj. *ſemi. amiſi*, *& bombacis*. ana. ℥ iij. *vuarum paſſarum expurgatarum*. ℥. ij *ficus paſſas pingues*. x. *nume*. Boile them in viij. pound of *Hydromel* delaied, to the conſumption of the halfe, boile the ſtrained iuice into a ſirupe with hony ℔. ij. and whit ſugar. ℔. ij. Seaſen and ſweeten it with an ounce of the powder of the roote of the Florentine Flowredeluce.

PLANTIVS.

The ſirupe of horehound ſeemed confuſed of ſo great a mixture of lenitiue, ſcouring, and cutting ſimples, that it was difficile to declare to what vſe it ſerued, which may be alſo affirmed of many other ſirupes, whichbee g athered out of diuerſe Authors without any methode or reaſon. Wherefore ſith before hath bene propunded the ſirupe of violets and *iuiubes*, for moiſtning and ſufficient lenitiue, and the ſirupe of hyſope for ſcouring moderately, cutting and purging the diſeaſes of the breaſt, the Author thought it neceſſary vppon good ground, to annect this ſirupe of Horehound being of a very good deuiding and ſcouring faculty, thereby the rather to cure extreame and rooted diſeaſes, which notwithſtanding who ſo will, may temper with the mixture of the other.

Syrupus Symphriti.

SYrupus *Symphriti*, doth purge mildely and eaſily the quitture and filthineſſe of conſuming and vlcerated lungs, without feare of any iſſue out of bloud, and doth alſo corroborate the lungs. ℞. *radicum & cymarum ſymphriti maioris & minoris*. ana. *M*. iij. *roſarum rubrarum*, *betonicæ*, *plantaginis*, *pimpinellæ*, *poligoni*, *ſcabioſæ*, *tuſſilaginis*. ana. M. ij. All being bruiſed freſhe, you muſt ſtreane out a iuice, which muſt be boiled and skummed to. ℔. iij. and make a ſirupe thereof by putting thereto of white ſugar. ℔. ij. ß.

PLANTIVS.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas there was no ſirupe yet extant at any time, or ſet out in vſe for the conſumed and purulent lungs: in ſo great ſcarcity this profitable ſirupe of Cumfrey was vppon good ground of Art here to be placed.

Syrupus è ſucco Bugloſſi.

SYrupe of the iuice of Bugloſſe, doth eſpecially comfort and chere the hart, and maketh a riddaunce of the quiuering and ſwowning thereof, and is very good for melancholy and mad perſons. ℞. *Succi Bugloſſi defæcati*, that is, purified. ℔. iij. *Sacchari albi*. ij. Boile them to the conſiſtaunce of a ſirupe. The ſirupe of the iuice of garden Bugloſſe, of the iuice of violettes, of the iuice of Peaches, be all cordyall and are made all one way.

PLANTIVS.

Nothing was to be changed either in the ſirupe of wild or garden Bugloſſe, or in the ſirupe of the iuice of violettes, or in the iuice of Peaches, or of the barke of Orenges, but there was great occaſion to adde the ſirupe of Balmenint, becauſe there was none in vſe which did make a riddance of the diſeaſes of the heart, and take awaye the annoyaunce of peſtilent and of venimous diſeaſes.

Syrupus è cortico Cytrij.

THe ſirupe of the barke of the Orenge, doeth reuiue and exhilarate the heart being heauy, and the trembling thereof of any cold cauſe, and drieth away ſorrow. ℞. *Corticum cytriorum malorum recentium*, infuſed or prepared in. ℔ j. of water. Boile them in vj. ℔. of water till iiij. be conſumed, and with iij. ℔. of white ſugar, make a ſirupe, and condite it with Gr. vj. of muske.

Syrupus Meliſſophylli.

SYrupe of Balmemynt is of all other the beſt, for the trembling and ouercaſting of the heart, and of a peculiar power, it abateth the malignity of peſtilent and venimous diſeaſes, and maketh a riddance thereof. ℞. *radicum dictamni, pentaphilli, betonicæ, doronici romani*. ana. ℥. ß. *foliorum meliſſophylli, ſteues, & merſus, florum Bugloſſi vtriuſque & roriſmarini*. ana. *M*. j. *Semi. oxalydis, cytrij mali, feniculi, attractilidis*, that is, *cardui benedicti & ocymi*. ana. ℥ iij. Boile them in. ℔. iiij. of water, to the conſumption of halfe, and being ſtrained, put thereto. ℔. ij. of white ſugar, of the iuice of balme and roſe water. an. ℔. ß. Boile all this into a ſirupe, condited of Cinnamon and red Saunders. ana. ℥. ß.

Syrupus è menta.

SYrupe of Mint doth heat the ſtomach moderatly, and doth corroborate it with an eaſy adſtriction, it helpeth concoction, abateth lothſomnes, vomit, chincough, and lyentery. ℞. *Succi cydoniorum dulcium, ſucci cydoniorum acidodulcium*, that is, tarty-ſweet, *ſucci granatorum acidorum, ſucci granatorum acidodulcium*. ana. ℔. j ß. Mixe theſe togeither and infuſe. ℔. j ß. of dry mint in them xxiiij.

houres, of red roſes. ℥. ij. Boile them to the halfe, and when they bee ſtrained, put to them. ℔. iiij. of white ſugar, and to condite the ſirupe, boile ℥. iij. of *gallia moſchata* bound in a cloth.

PLANTIVS.

In the greater ſirupe of Mint, nothing was to be varied, neither was the other leſſe ſirupe to be ſet downe, for that it is comprehended vnder the greater, and in the ſirupe of wormewood nothing is to be changed.

Syrupus Abſinthij.

THe ſirupe of wormewood either purgeth or conſumeth the relickes in the ſtomach, and doth recouer a chearfull colour, and get a ſtomach to thoſe that be recouered of a diſeaſe: it riddeth the liuer of weaknes, & expelleth the iaundies. Laſtly it corroborateth all the inſtruments of concoction. ℞. *abſinthij roma.* ℔. ß. *roſarum rubrarum.* ℥. ij. *ſpicæ nardi.* ℥. iij. Bruſe them and infuſe them xxiiij. houres in old & well ſmelling white wine, and the iuice of quincepeares ℔. ij. ß. Boile them with a lent fire to the conſumption of the halfe, then boile them againe with. ℔. ij. of white ſugar to the thickneſſe of a ſirupe.

Cydoniorum Miba, that is, the iuice decocted to thickneſſe.

Cydoniorum Miba, doth roborate the ſtomach and the liuer, furthereth concoction, procureth appetite, ſtaieth vomit and lientery. ℞. *ſucci cydoniorum defecati* ℔. vj. Boile it with a lent fire to the conſumption of the half, by foming little and little, then poure in of olde and good red wine. ℔. iij. and boile them againe to the thickneſſe of hony, condite it with one dramme and a halfe of cinamon, of cloues, and ginger. ana. ℈. ij.

PLANTIVS.

This *Miba cydoniorum* is a meane betwixt the ſimple and the compound, and hath the vertue of them both.

Syrupus mirtinus, that is, of the mirtle.

Syrupus mirtinus corroborateth the ſtomach and the intrals, ſtaieth an old iſſue of the belly, all eruption of bloud, and euery diſtillation of the braine. ℞. *Baccarum mirti.* ℥. ij. ß *ſantali albi, rhois culinarij, balauſtiorum, baccarum oxiantæ, roſarum rubrarum.* ana. ℥. j. ß. *meſpilorum.* ℥ ß. Bruſe them all, and boile them in viij ℔. of water to the third part, and to the ſtrained decoction, put of the iuice of quince peares and pomegranates. ana. ℔. ij. ſugar. ℔. v. Boile them together according to Art.

PLANTIVS.

Syrupus mirtinus retaineth the old compoſition: and the ſirupe *Byzantinus*, for that after purgation, it ſcoureth all the relickes of the hepatike diſeaſes, may commodiouſly be referred to this place.

Syrupus

Syrupus fumariæ.

SYrupe of Fumitory, ſcoureth from bloud, ſalt and exuſt humours, it taketh away itch, skabbe, tetters, leproſie, and all the diſeaſes of the skin, aſſwageth maligne and fiſtulous vlcers, the canker and Elephantiaſis. ℞. *Endiuiæ, Abſinthij roma. lupuli, caſſuthæ, Scalopendrij veri.* ana. *M.* j. *Epithimi.* ℥. j. ß. Boile them in ℔. iiij of water to the conſumption of halfe, and put to the ſtrained decoction, of the purified iuice of Fumitory. ℔. j. ß. *Succi vtriuſq; Bugloſſi.* ana. ℔. ß. *Sacchari albi.* ℔. iiij. Boile this ſirupe to a good ſubſtaunce.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas there be many deſcriptions of the ſirupe of Fumitory, there ſeemeth none more fitter or more eaſy to be practiſed then this to purge impure bloud. The ſirupe of the iuice of both the Bugloſſes, of the iuice of violets, and the ſirupe of balmemint do alſo appertaine to the ſplene.

Syrupus è malis odoriferis.

THe ſirupe of mellow apples, abateth the noyſome vapours of melancholy, pacifieth and aſſwageth feare, ſorrowe, and madneſſe, and exhilarateth the patient. ℞. *Succi malorum acidodulcium, & fragrantium.* ℔. iiij. *Succorum violarum, bugloſſi domeſtici & ſilueſtris, aquæ roſarum ſtillatitiæ.* ana. ℔. j. Boile them together, skumme them and ſtraine them, and adde thereto white ſugar. ℔. vj. boile them vnto a ſirupe.

PLANTIVS.

It were riduculous to haue the ſirupe of apples onely made thereof, without addition of other iuices ſeruing for melancholy or blacke choler.

Syrupus Althææ.

THe ſirupe of the water mallow, doth cleanſe mildly and gently the groſſe obſtructing fleume of the kidneis, the ſlimy and purulent quitture, and their ſandy grauell without ſenſible heate: further it aſſwageth the inſenſible heate of the vrine. ℞. *Radicum althææ.* ℥. ij. *Cicerum rubr.* ℥. j. *paſſarum vuarum expurgatarum, radicum graminis & aſparagi, glycyrrhizæ mundatæ.* ana. ℥. ß. *Cymarum,* that is the tender croppes, *Altheæ, maluæ, helxines, pimpinellæ, plantaginis, adianti vtriuſque.* ana. M. j. *quatuor ſeminum frigidorum maiorum & minorum.* ana. ℥. iij. Boile them in vj. ℔. of water till ℔. ij. be conſumed, and with ℔. iiij. of ſugar make it a ſirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas the ſirupe of water mallowes was tofore neuer deſcribed, and yet according to euery mans opinion there is great vſe thereof, it could not more commodiouſly be made for the vſes for which it is propounded.

Syrupus Raphani.

THe ſirupe of Radiſh, doth more forcibly ſcoure the kidneis and the bladder, breaketh the ſtone, forceth out grauell, and prouoketh vrine ſup-

preſſed. ℞. *raphani domeſtici & ſylueſtris.* ana. ℥.j. *radicum ſaxifragi, ruſci, leuiſtici, Eryngij, auonis, petroſelini, fœniculi.* ana. ℥. ß. *foliorum beionicæ, pimpinellæ, pulegij, cymarum vrticæ, naſturtij, crithmi, caltytrichi.* ana *M.* j. *fructus halycacabi, ziziphi.* ana. *numer.* xx. *ſemi. oxymi, bardanæ, petroſelini macedonici, ſeſelios, carui, dauci, lutheſtermi, corticum radicis lauri.* ana. ℥. ij. *vuarum paſſarum expurgatarum, glycyrrhizæ.* ana. ℥. vj. Boile them in a decent order in x. ℔. of water, till the conſumption of foure, of the which with ſugar. ℔. iij. purified hony. ℔. ij. a cleare ſirupe muſt be made, conduit it with cinnamon. ℥. j. and *nux muſchata.* ℥. ß.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas no ſirupe is founde deſcribed to breake the ſtone and expell grauell, this ſirupe of Radiſh is ſubſtituted to great vſe, which is aptly and conueniently compounded of theſe ſimples, which haue great faculty to breake the ſtone, with an intermixture of other lenitiue and ſcouring things.

Syrupus Artemiſiæ.

THe ſirupe of Mugwort doth prouoke mightely the ſuppreſſed floures, or auoyding more ſparingly, which alſo the ſirupe of *Adiambum* doeth but more mildely, this ſirupe aſſwageth the ſtrangling and ouercaſting of the wombe. ℞. *Artemiſiæ M.* ij. *radicum iridis, bellenij, rubiæ, peoniæ, leuiſtici, fœniculi.* ana. ℥ ß. *pulegij, origani, calaminthes, nepetæ, mehiſſophilli, ſambinæ, ſambuci, hiſſopi, praſij, chamedrios, camepitheos, hiperici, parthenij, betonicæ.* ana. *M.* j. *ſemi. aniſi, petroſelini, fœniculi, oxymi, dauci, rutæ nigellæ.* ana. ℥ iij. Bruſe them and infuſe them foure and twenty houres in eight pound of *Hydromel* till three bee conſumed, and then after boile it with ſugar ℔. v. into a ſirupe, condite it with. ℥. j. of cinnamon and ℥. iij. of *ſpicæ.*

PLANTIVS.

Whereas in the ſirupe of Mugwort without conſideration confounded, many things nothing apt for diſeaſes of the wombe were contained, and ſundry things which could not be gotte, or whoſe ſtrength by boiling waſted, the author cut off ſuch ſimples as vnneceſſary and vnprofitable, leauing onely the chiefeſt and beſt.

Purging receiptes.

MEdicines preſcribed for purgations of humours, although they be made in diuerſe formes, yet it is much better then to reduce all into one place, orderly beginning at thoſe which bee moſt gentle.

Electuarium è prunis

THe Electuary of prunes is maruellous lenitiue, mollifying the coſtiue belly, purging mildely and gently ſundry humours, very commodious in extreame

treame heat of weather, and to all ages in burning of agues and thirſt. ℞. *radicum altheæ, polypodij è quercu, paſſarum expurgatarum*, ana. ℥.ij. *glycyrrhizæ mundatæ, ſemi. cniſi.* ana. ℥ j. *maluæ, violæ, helxines, mercurialis*, ana. *M.* ij. Boile them in ten pound of water to the remnant of vj. In halfe of the ſtrained decoction boile 1weet prunes, *iuiubes, ſebeſten*, ana. *nume.* xx. *ficus paſſe pingues nume.* x. Then let the pulpe paſſe through a ſiue. In the other halfe of the ſtrained decoction, boile *foliorum ſennæ mundatorum.* ℔. j. ß. & this being ſtrained, mixe it with the pulpe with *ſacchari & mellis exſpumati.* ana. ℔. ß. then boile them to the conſiſtance of an Electuary, ſprinckling in the end *cinamomi tenuiſſimè triti.* ℥. j. *zinziberis.* ℥. iij. The Doſe is ℥. j. the whole compoſition is ℔. iij. The Doſes be about xxviij. or xxx. The ſolid Electuary of prunes hath the ſame vertue ℞ *pruna dulcia nume.* x, *maluæ, violæ, mercurialis, helxines.* ana. *M.* j. *polipodij è quercu, ſemi. carthami, radicis altheæ, paſſarum purgatarum, glycyrrhizæ.* ana. ℥ ß. *foliorum ſennæ mundatorum.* ℥. x. Boile them in v. ℔. of water till ij. remaine, then preſſe it in a preſſe, put *ſacchari rubri.* ℔. j ß. Boile them againe with a lente fire to the conſiſtaunce of a ſolide Electuary, in the end ſprinckling powder *aromatici electuarij roſati maioris.* ana. ℥. iij. make *tabellæ* in weight. ℥. ß. The whole compoſition is about ℥. xx. the Doſes be about xxx. Compound both theſe Electuaries together, and it will more forcibly purge from the furtheſt parts of the body all humors eſpecially both the chollers in this order. ℞. *Electuarij è prunis ſimplicis & recentis, & adhuc calentis.* In the which diſſolue *diagredij.* ℥. iij. The Doſe is from ℥. iij. to ℥ ß. In one pound of the compoſition, the Doſes be about xxxij.

Solide Electuary.

Plantij ſcholia in purgantes compoſitiones.

AS the ſirupes of the compoſitions of purging medicins be taken out euery where without all Art, and put in bookes of Phiſicke, ſo that you may find two, three, or mo of like effect, nothing aptly applied to the cure of diſeaſes: whereof it is that the Author vppon good conſideration, hath very much altered the compoſitions of purging medicins, the rather thereby to afford a conuenient and commodious receipt for euery malady. How much thoſe receipts which he hath ſet downe, retaining the auncient names of antiquity, do differ from the ancient receipts? for how much they be more auaileable for the propoſed diſeaſes, euery man may vnderſtand by eſtimation had of the faculty of the ſimples. For wheras *Diaprunis* both ſimple and compound deſcribed *à Nicolo.* ſhould greatly haue refrigerated and beene appliable vnto agues, it containeth many vehement hote *Aromates*, which alſo in the compound doth exaſperate the ſharpneſſe of ſcammony.

Catholicum ſimplex.

CAtholicum ſimplex doth deduce and purge frō euery part of the body mildely and gently all humors alike, nothing noyſome eyther to children, olde folke, or women with child, whether with an ague or without an ague. ℞. *radicum hellenij, bugloſſi, cichorij, altheæ, polipodij quercini, ſemi. cnici contuſorum.* ana. ℥ ij. *ſtœcados, hiſſopi, meliſſophilli, eupatorij veri, aſplenij, betonicæ, artemiſiæ*, ana. *M.* ij. *ruarum paſſarum expurgatarum.* ℥. iij. *quatuor ſemi. frigidorum maiorum, ſemi. aniſi,*

glycyrrhyzæ. ana. ℥. iij. Boile all these according to art in x. ℔. of *Hydromel* till vij. be remanent, in the strained decoction macerate vij. houres *foliorum sennæ mundatorum.* ℔. j. ß. *Agarici albi.* ℔. ß. *Zinziberis.* ℥. j. Boile them a little in the pressed liquor, dissolue of the pulpe of *sebestens.* ℔. ß. *Foliorum sennæ mundatorum tenuissime tritorum.* ℥. iiij. *Syrupi infusionis rosarum pallidarum.* ℔. j. *mellis optimi expumati.* ℔. ij. Boile them with a lente fire to the thicknesse of hony, in sparging in the end, *rheibarbari electi, cinamomi electi.* ana. ℥. j. *Sandali citrini.* ℥. j. *nucis muschatæ.* ℥. ij. the dose is. ℥. j. the whole composition is. ℔. iiij. the doses bee about 50. This may be truely tearmed *Catholicum*, that is, vniuersall, for that it containeth medicines purging all humors and very agreeable, especially for all the inward parts purging mildly and gently, it doth draw either nothing or very little from the extreame partes. But the greater *Catholicum* doeth worke that effect forcibly and mightily, the composition whereof consisteth of all kinde of medicines, which draw as well from the nigher as further celles aptly confused and represſed. In the auncient *Catholicum*, the reubarbe is not fitly boiled, neither the *cassia* which is put in with the *thamaryndes*, and almost corrupteth the whole composition.

Catholicum maius.

Catholicum maius doth also draw all the humors vniuersally, and that more forcibly, not onely from the places nigh, but also farther off, without disturbaunce of the body or losse of strength. ℞. *quatuor semi. frigidorum maiorum mundatorum, semi. papaueris albi.* ana. ℥. j. *tragacanthæ.* ℥. iij. *rosarum rubrarum, santali citrini, cinamomi.* ana. ℥. ij. *Zinziberis.* ℥. j. *rheibarbari selecti, dyadacrydij.* ana. ℥. ß. *agarici, turpethi.* ana. ℥. vj. *sacchari albi, soluti in aquæ rosarum*, in the which ℥. ij. of the leaues of *sene* hath bene incocted. ℔. j. let tables bee compounded of weight. ℥. iij. the dose is one table, the whole composition is ℔. j. ß. the doses be about 50.

Syrupus infusionis rosarum pallidarum.

SYrupe of infusion of white roses, doth easily draw from the principallest intrals thin choler & scirrhous humors, conuenient in easie diseases for children, for old folke, and such as be enfeebled. ℞. *aquæ infusionis rosarum pallidarum.* ℔. ß. *Sacchari expurgati.* ℔. iiij. Boile them with a lent fire to the thicknesse of a sirupe. Soke ℔. ij *rosarum pallidarum recentium in* ℔. vj. of Tepide water twelue houres and couer the vessell, and in stead of this likewise, substitute other fresh roses and these cast away, put in the water other new roses, the third, fourth, eight, or ninth time, vntill the liquor haue imbibed much strength of the roses, in the which the sugar must be dissolued. Neither truely the sirupe of bruised roses, or of their iuice, will be so effectuall as this. There is also made a sirupe, which draweth and purgeth likewise choler and water, and killeth wormes, of the floures of the Peach macerated in water, as I haue told you before.

PLANTIVS.

The sirupe *rosarum pallidarum*, the Electuary of the iuice of roses and *dyacydonion*,

nion, keepe their old order of compoſition without any manifeſt mutation, but in the Electuary of *diacarthamus*: for that the adiection of *mannæ granatæ, mellis roſati*, and *ſacchari geminati* preuerted the perfect order of compoſition, the way of making it in this place is vpon good conſideration omitted.

Electuarium è ſucco roſarum.

Electuarium è ſucco roſarum doth draw forcibly from places far diſtaunt, choler, thinne and aquous humors, very commodious and eaſie to be vſed of thoſe which be troubled with the gout, in caſe they haue not a vehemēt ague. ℞. *Succi roſarum ſiccarum recentium, ſacchari albi*. an. ℔. j. ß. Boile them into a ſolid Electuary with a lente fire, and in the end ſprinckle *trium ſantalorum, maſtiches, cinamomi exquiſitè tritorum*. ana. ʒ. ij. *dyadagerydij*. ʒ. j. ß. *caphuræ*. ∋. ß. make tables in weight. ʒ. ij. ß. The Doſe is one table, the whole compoſition is xxij. ʒ. The Doſe is about 70.

Dyacydonion.

Dyacydonion worketh the ſame that the Electuary of the iuice of roſes doth, but more moderately and eaſily. ℞. *Pulpæ cydonyorum expurgatæ coctæ & cribre tranſmiſſæ*. ℔. j. ß. *Succi cydonyorum*. ℔. ß. *Sacchari albiſſimi*. ℔. ij. Boile them to the thickeneſſe of hony, ſprinkling in the end *cinamomi triti*. ʒ. j. *zinziberis, maceris, charophillorum*. ana. ʒ. ij *dyadacrydij*. ʒ. ij. The Doſe is from ʒ. iij. to ʒ ß. the whole compoſition is ℔. iiij. the Doſes be about 90.

Electuarium dyacnicu.

Electuarium dyacnicu, doth draw and purge from the furtheſt places, *phelgme* and ſcirrhus, & alſo choler, and is eſpecially good for paine of the heade, ſinewes and ioyntes. ℞. *Pulueris electuarij dyatraganthæ frigidi medullæ, ſemi. cnici, hermodactyllorum*. ana. ʒ. ß. *roſarum rubrarum, ſuccigłycyrrizæ, cinamomi*. ana. ʒ. ij. *turpethi*. ʒ. j. *dyadacrydij*. ʒ. ß. *ſacchari albi, aquæ roſarum ſoluti*. ℔. j. make tables thereof the weight of ʒ. iij. ß. the Doſe is one table.

Diaphœnicon.

Diaphœnicon doth mildly purge choler, crude, and ſlimy fleume, agreeable and conuenient in compound and continuall agues, and diſeaſes ariſing of crudity, and alſo for the cholericke and flatulent paine. ℞. *pulpæ palmularum mundatarum* boiled in *Hydromel*, and fined in a ſiue, *penidiorum recentium*. an. ℔. ß. *amigdalarum expurgatarum*. ʒ. iiij. ß. when they be bruſed and mingled altogether, put into them *mellis expumati*. ℔. ij. Boile them a little, and then ſprinkle, *zinziberis, piperis, maceris, cinamomi, foliorum rutæ ſiccorum, ſemi. fœniculi & dauci*. ana. ʒ. ij. *turpethi tenuiſſimè triti*. ʒ. iiij. *dyadacrydij*. ʒ. ß. The Doſe is from ʒ. iij. to ʒ. ß. the whole compoſition is about ℔. iiij. the Doſes about 130.

PLANTIVS.

In *Diaphœnicon, palmulæ* be rightly ſoaked and boiled in *Hydromel*, for that the

ancient infusion which was prescribed to be done three daies in vineger, procureth a horrible sauor, many things also be subtracted, as the seed of louage, *pinei nuclei, galanga, xylaloe*, for that there were many of the same faculty and operation, and the quantity of dates, peny daies, and other gentle medicines is augmented, that thereby the whole composition might become more pleasant and easie to be vsed.

Benedicta.

Benedicta, draweth forth grosse and flegmaticke humors, and also schirrous from any part, it reuelleth the matter of the stone, and displaceth the stones themselues, abateth paine of the reines, is very good for cold natures, and in cold weather. ℞. *turbith.* ℥.x. *diadacrydi, hermodactyllorum, cesarum rubra*, ana. ℥.v. *chariophillorum, zinziberis, saxifragi, semi. apij, salis gemmei, galangæ, maceris, carui, fœniculi, zeiri orum. asparagi & rusci, semi. milij solis, quatuor semi. frigidorum maiorum glycyrrhizæ.* ana. ℥.j. *mellis optimi expumati.* ℔ j.ß. confect them according to Art. The Dose is from ℥.iij. to ℥ ß the whole composition is almost. ℔.ij. the Doses be about 50.

PLANTIVS.

The Author hath vppon good occasion subtracted out of *Benedicta*, because it was too hot, and could not be easily & safely vsed in an ague, *spicam nardi, macropiper, cardamonum & crocum*, and hath placed in stead of those the foure greater cold seedes and liquorice.

Confectio hamech.

Confectio hamech purgeth blacke choler, and burnt choler, and salt fleum, it is a peculiar remedy for the leprosie, the cancre, the tetter, the *Elephantiasis & psora*. ℞. *corticis myrabolanorum cytrinorum.* ℥. ij. *ceuularum, & nigrarum violarum, colocynthidis, polypodij quercini.* ana. ℥.j.ß. *absinthij, thimi.* an. ℥.ß. *anisi, fœniculi, rosarum rubra.* ana. ℥.iij. Bruse them all and soake them in whey ℔.ij. then boile them to a pound, rubbe them in your hand and wring them. To the strained decoction adde the iuice of fumitory, the pulpe of prunes and raisons, ana. ℔.ß. *sacchari albi, mellis expumati.* ana. ℔.j. Boile them to the thicknesse of hony, sprincling in the end *agarici, sennæ tritorum.* ana. ℥.ij. *rheibarbari triti.* ℥ j.ß. *epithimi.* ℥.j. *diadacrydii.* ℥.vj. *cinamomi.* ℥.ß. *zinziberis.* ℥.ij *semi. fœniculi & anisi, spicæ nardi.* ana. ℥.j. The Dose is from ℥.iij. to halfe an ounce, the whole composition is ℔.iij. and ℥.viij. The Doses be about 80.

PLANTIVS.

In the confection of *Hamech*, the *mirabolanes* be twise put into one effect, first in the decoction, and after brused, reubarb leeseth his strength and vertue being boiled, *Cassia, manna & thamaryndus* being boiled, do turne to putrefaction. The force of *scammony* being boiled wasteth, and is not with facility mixed with others. Wherefore the author hath set downe a much more conuenient, commodious and easie to be vsed: this composition of all other is the best, and the most safest, for that in them the sharpenes and feruency of *turbith & scammony*, is notably well abated, either by the mixture of the pulpe of prunes or raisons,

or

or by *hermodactilis* and *amygdalis*, or with roses and their iuice, or *myrobalanes*. There be other receipts extant not so safe to be vsed: as *Electuarium indam vtriusque*, *electuarium elechof*, *electuarium de psillio*, *diaturbith*. In the which the sharpnes of *scammony*, and other stronger medicins is litle abated, yea rather by the mixture of the other hote things is quickned. Further, they containe nothing, or are of power to worke nothing which here described, other receipts doe not bring to passe with successe. Wherefore to take away the causes of all affectes, these receipts be availeable enough.

Hiera simplex.

Hiera simplex by purging choler and fleume from the stomach, intrals, *hypochondrium*, and mesintery veines impacted, and attridding forcibly and mightily of redundancy, doeth mildly helpe all diseases proceeding of crudity and obstruction of veines. ℞. *cinammomi*, *maceris*, *asari*, *spicæ nardi*, *ȝr ci*, *masticbes* ana. ℥. vj. *aloes non lotæ*. ℥. 100 or ℔. j. ß. *mellis optimi expumati*. ℔. iiij. confect them according to Art, the powder alone is ministred from. ℥. ij. to ℥ iij. but being receiued in hony from ℥. j. to ℥ j. ß.

Hiera diacolocynthidos.

Hiera diacolocynthides which hath beene in stead of all other described of the ancient Phisitions, by purging safely and gently all grosse and viscous humours, especially blacke choler and citrin waters, it is especiall good against the palsey, quiuering, crampe, gout, and inueterate diseases of the nerues, and also for the dropsie. Secondly, for melancholy, *mania*, *epilepsie*, scabbe, leprosy, maligne vlcer, cancre, and *Elephantiasis* which diseases do expugne gentle medicines. ℞. *sæcados*, *marubii*, *chamedryos*, *hyperici*, *scyllæ assatæ*, *polii*, *calamynthes montanæ*, *cinamomi*, *spicæ nardi*, *epithimi*, *polypodii quercini aridi*, *quatuor seminum frigidorum maiorum mundatorum*. ana. ℥. j. ß. *pulpæ colocynthidis*, *scamonii*, *hellebori nigri præparatorum*. ana ℥. ij. *Euphorbii præparati*, *aloes*, *myrrhæ*, *ammoniaci*, *oppoponacis*, *sagapeni*, *castorei*. ana. ℥. j. *mellis cosli in succo cydoniorum & expumati*. ℔. j. ℥. iij. thereof are ministred *colocynthis*, *scammony*, blacke *hellebore* and *euphorbe*, being brused, must be rubbed with oile of sweet almondes, and then are two daies to be soaked in a muscelage of *tragacanthum* and *gumme arabicke* depromed out of rose water, till they haue drunke vp the muscelage.

Plantivs.

The ancient composition of *Hiera simplex* is retained, and nothing is altered thereof, sauing *xylobalsan*, which we cannot come vnto. Many compositions do consist of stronger simples, some of *scammony*, as *Electuarium de prunis*, *dyacydonion & electuarium è succo rosarum*. Others beside be compounded of *Turbith*, as *Diaphænicon*: others be confected of *hermodactylos*, beside the two former, that is, *turbith* & *Scammony*, as *Dyaphænicon* and *Benedicta*: others admit to their composition *Colocynthis*, as the confection of *Hamech*: others likewise doe further take to their composition, *Helleborum nigri*, *& Euphorbium*: as *Hiera Colocynthidos*, which is a peculiar remedy of certaine diseases, but no vsuall. Hereby then

it may be gathered, that there is no simple purging medicine practised or put in vse, of which there is not some receipt extant, so that for such purpose more are not requisite.

Hydragogum minus.

Hydragogum minus, drawing out the water of dropsie sicke persons mildelie without agreeuaunce, may be safely vsed both of children, old folke, infeebled persons, and women with childe, whether they be agrieued with an ague or without an ague. ℞. *succi rosarum pallidarum.* ℔. ß. *sacchari albi, mellis optimi.* ana. ℥. xv. Boile them till they cast a fome and become thicke, and then put into them, *succi radicis ebuli.* ℔. j. *prasij sicci, sem. feniculi triti.* ana. ℥. ij. *acimorum ebuli & sambuci.* ana. ℥. ij. *cinammi.* ℥. vj. *maceris, galangæ.* ana. ℥. iij. Boile them with a lente fire to the thickneſſe of hony. ℥. ß. thereof is miniſtred in whay of milke, decoction of barley or of raiſons. It will be more effectuall by putting thereunto of the iuice of wilde Cucumber, ℥. ß. of the roote of wilde Cucumber dried and bruſed. ℥. vj. or of the iuice of the root of our flowerdeluce. ℔. ß.

Hydragogum maius.

Hydragogum maius of Laur. mightely expelling water. ℞. *ſeri lactis.* ℔. ij *ſacchari albi, carnis cydoniorum ex aceto coctorum.* ana. ℥. x. *mannæ calabrinæ.* ℥. v. Boile them with a lente fire to the thickneſſe of hony, when they be ready to be taken off the fire, put into them of the leaues of Laureolle prepared in vineger, and oile of ſweete almondes. ℥ ij. it is miniſtred in the Doſe of ℥. ß. the manner of preparing it is in this wiſe. *Foliorum laureolæ.* ℥. ij macerate them foure and twenty houres in vineger of pomegranats or purcelane, boile them ſoftly, ſtraine them, dry them, and bruſe them, and then put into them of roſe water. ℔. ß. of the oile of ſweete Almonds. ℥. ß. Boile them againe vntill the water be conſumed, and the water mixed with the oile remaining, is to be added to the conſumption.

Plantivs.

That there ſhould be nothing wanting in theſe receipts, in the laſt place he hath adioyned to the precedent receipts, certaine compoſitions to expell the water, notwithſtanding more ſtronger ſimples ſpecially *ſcammoni & euphorbium* doe purge, yet the author his meaning was to haue ſome peculiar receipts extant of ſuch ſimples as haue a proper and accuſtomable vertue againſt ſuch redundancy of water, the one whereof is more gentle in working, the other of the leaues Laureole is more forcible in operation, which leaues tofore haue not beene applied to the compoſition of any thing: any man may make conieture by the mixture of the ſimples, how fitly ſuch kind of compoſitions be applied to the expelling of ſuch water.

Vnguentum latheride.

Vnguentum latheride ſoftneth and prouoketh the body, and draweth out vehemently the water of hydropicall perſons, aſſwageth the ſwelling or diſtention

ſtention of the outward parts of the body, betwixt the nauell and the priuites called *Abdomen*, all which redundancy it doeth ſcoure downeward from the womb, if the nauell and the lower part of the body, and the part about the priuities and the thighs be therewith annointed, and it arriddeth all ſuch matter vpward by vomit, if the ſtomach therewith be madefied. ℞. *Succi lathoridis* ℔ß. ß. *ſuccì èſulæ.* ℥iij. In the which diſſolue *radicis ciclamini.* ℥ij. *ſcammoni.* ℥ß. ß. *granorum vecini & latheridis expurgatorum.* an. ℥j. ß. *Se. feniculi, rutæ, anethi, baccarum lauri,* an. ℥j. Bruſe them al, and macerate thẽ a day in the iuice; after that take *aſſungiæ.* ℥viij. & *ceræ.* ℥iiij. liquefie them, and diſſolue all the reſt in them by little and litle, and boile them with a lente fire vntill the conſumption of the whole water, and vntill they all become to the temperature of an ointment. If the ſame matter be boiled in. ℥ xv. of oile, to the conſumption of the liquor, thẽ ſtrained oile will retain the ſame vertue. If either gumme *armoniacke*, or waxe, be concorporated with the ſame ointment to the conſiſteney of an emplaſter, that wil cauſe iſſue of the water, being laid vppon the belly, but not ſo forcibly.

Electuarium diaſarum.

Electuarium diaſarum doth by vomite expell all kind of humours about the ſtomacke and midriffe, not by a continuall inſult, but hauing intermiſſion ſafely, & with facility to bee vſed both of aged perſons & of women with child. ℞. *Syrupi menthæ & violarum.* ℥ viij. Boile them to the thickeneſſe of hony, after they haue boiled (draw away the fire) inſperſe in *radicis peponis arefactì, Semi. raphani & vrticæ* macerated in roſe water, dried and pownded. ana ℥j. *radicis aſari, contritæ & cretæ.* ℥ ij. *Cinamomi, ſemi. fæniculi,* ana. ℥. iij. confect them to a liquide Electuary, and let. ℥. iij thereof be miniſtred either out of barley water, *mulſa,* or whey of milke.

PLANTIVS.

The Author ſeemed much to haue furthered Phiſick by theſe laſt receipts, eſpecially by that which is allotted to procure vomite, for that in no Author there was any extant wherewith we might ſafely purge the humours vpward. Whereas notwithſtanding that kinde of euacuation is moſt neceſſary to the curing of any diſeaſes. Whereas tofore we haue applied Electuaries both liquide and conſiſtent: ſo now let vs referre pils to all kinde of cauſes and diſeaſes. *Pillulæ è hiera ſimplici* bee confected with. ℥. j. of powder tempred *cum melle roſato.*

Pillulæ ſtomachicæ.

Pillulæ ſtomachicæ, which taken before meate, purge the ſtomach, help concoction, cary the meate downe, and doe mildely purge. ℞. *Aloes.* ℥. vj. *maſtiches, roſarum rubrarum.* ana. ℥. ij. make them coherent with *ſyrupo roſato*, or *Abſynthij.*

PLANTIVS.

Whereas there be vj. deſcriptions extant of the pils of the ſtomach, all (this

onely receipt excepted) doe hurt the ſtomach, and can not conueniently bee vſed before meat, becaule they retaine in their confection *Scammony* and *Turbith*, wherwith the whole body (but eſpecially the ſtomach) is much agrieued.

Pillulæ ruffi.

Pillulæ ruffi, which be tearmed alſo *Pillulæ communes* being often vſed, helpe concoction, and doe not ſuffer any putrefaction of the meate, do preſerue the humours and body from corruption, whereuppon they do much auaile againſt the peſtiferous ague. ℞. *Aloes optimæ.* ℥. ij. *mirrhæ electæ, croci ſinceri.* ana. ℥. j. mixe them with *Aromaticke* wine.

Plantivs.

Taking by little and little, and as it were coaugmenting compoſitions from pilles, which conſiſt of ſole *Aloe*, after he addeth other vnto them which conſiſt of *Aloe* and *reubarbe*, and immediatly ſuch as do conſiſt of *Aloe* and *Agarick*, then ſuch as be confected of *agaricke*, *aloe*, and *reubarbe*. And of thoſe he compoundeth other of *Agaricke*, *reubarbe*, *aloe*, and *ſenna*: to which in fine he hath annexed *Pillulas ſine quibus*, in the which beſide the foure precedent, the vertue and infuſion of *Scammony* rather then the ſubſtaunce is contained. In confection whereof he hath witholden a portion of *myrabolanes*, for that the portion thereof being retained, there would bee ſome redoundancy, eſpecially with other ſo many aſtringent ſimples.

Pillulæ aſſaieret.

Pillulæ aſſaieret for that they containe more *Aloe*, then *Hieræ*, be more effectuall in working. ℞. *Pulueris hieræ ſimplicis.* ℥. ſ. *aloes.* ℥ iij. or according to *Valerius Cordus.* ℥. ij To whom I rather encline, *maſtiches, myrabolanorum, cytriorum.* ana. ℥. ß. reduce them to a maſſe with ſirupe of *ſtœcados.*

Pillulæ de Eupatorio.

Pillulæ de Eupatorio do purge choler mildely, and doe aridde the liuer of ſtuffing, and corroborat it, and are to be had in more price then the pils which be deſcribed to be made of reubarbe. ℞. *Succi Eupatorij, ſucci abſinthij, myrabolani, citrio.* ana. ℥. ij. *rheubarbari electi.* ℥. iij ß. *maſtiches.* ℥. j. *croci.* ℥. ß. *aloes.* ℥. v. *Succi endiuiæ*, in quantity ſufficient to incorporate them.

Pillulæ maſtichinæ.

Pillulæ maſtichinæ, for that they containe *Agaricke*, doe more forcibly purge choler and groſſe fleume, then they which conſiſt of ſole *Aloes*. ℞. *maſtiches.* ℥. ij. *aloes.* ℥. iiij. *agarici trochiſcati, pulueris hieræ ſimplicis.* ana. ℥ j. ß. Incorporate them with Malmeſey, *Pillulæ ex tribus* be confected of the ſame ſimples by addition of *reubarbari ſelecti.* ℥. ij. *cinamomi.* ℥. ß. and incorporate them with ſirupe of Cichory.

Pillulæ

Pillulæ imperiales.

Pillulæ imperiales do mildely and moderatly purge out of the intralles all humours, and therewithall comfort and ſtrengthen them, ridde them of obſtruction, and helpe the concoction of all parts, ſeruiceable to nouriſhment. ℞. *Aloes optimæ.* ℥ij. *rheubarbari electi.* ℥j. ß. *agarici trochiſcati, foliorum ſennæ mundatorum.* ana. ℥j. *cinamomi.* ʒ iij. *zinziberis.* ʒij. *nucis muſchatæ, caryophillorum, ſpicæ nardi, maſtiches.* an. ʒj. moiſten it with the ſirupe of violets, and bring them into a maſſe.

Pillulæ ſine quibus eſſe nolo.

Pillulæ ſine quibus eſſe nolo, doe draw choler, fleume, and melancholy out of all partes of the body, but eſpecially out of the head, eies and ſences, they aſſwage ſuffuſions of the eies, and preſerue ſight, they take away paine & noiſe of the eares. ℞. *Aloes optimæ.* ʒ. xiiij. *myrabolano. cytri. chebularum indarum, beibarbari, maſtiches, abſinthij, roſarum, violarum, ſennæ, agarici, caſſiathæ.* ana. ʒj *ſcammony.* ʒ. vj. ß. Diſſolue the *Scammony* in the iuice of fennell, as much as will ſuffice, and ſtraine it through a cloth, and with the ſame iuice incorporate the fine powders.

Pillulæ è fumaria.

Pillulæ è fumaria doe extract bilious, ſalt, and ſharpe humours, and doe correct what ſo is vicious or vnſeemely in the skinne. ℞. *myrabol. cytri. chebul. & inda.* ana. ʒ. v. *dyadacrydij.* ʒ. v. *aloes.* ʒ vij. When all theſe be bruſed, imbrue them in the iuice of Fumitory, and permit them to dry three times, and in fine bring them to a maſſe.

Pillulæ Aureæ.

Pillulæ Aureæ be more effectuall in working then *Pillulæ è fumaria,* for *colocynthis* which they containe: they ſcoure the heade, ſences, but eſpecially the eies, and recouer the quickneſſe of ſight, they expell bilious, and alſo flegmaticke humours. ℞. *aloes, dyadacridij.* ana. ʒ. v. *roſarum rubra. ſem. apij.* ana. ʒ ij. ß. *Sem. aniſi & fœniculi, maſtiches.* ana. ʒ. j. ß. *croci, pulpæ colocynthidos.* ana. ʒ. j. *muſcilaginis, gummi tragacanthæ.* q. ß. and confect thereof a maſſe.

Pillulæ de agarico.

Pillulæ de agarico doe mightily draw choler and ſlimy humours, from all the partes of the body, but eſpecially from the head and breaſt, peculiarly ſtanding in ſtead againſt diſtillations and *Aſthma.* ℞. *agarici, maſtiches.* ana. ʒ. iij. *radicis iridis, praſcij.* ana. ʒ. j. *turbithi.* ʒ. v. *pulueris hieræ picræ.* ʒ. ß. *pulpæ colocynthidis, ſarcocollæ.* ana. ʒ. ij. *mirrhæ.* ʒ. j. *ſapæ quan. ſuff.* the rather to reduce them to a conſiſtent ſubſtance.

PLANTIVS.

In the pilles of *Agaricke,* there be orderly diſpoſed all ſuch excellent ſimples

as auaile to draw out of the body grosse fleame, as well from the nigh parts as from the parts farre distant, in confecting whereof, the Author thought good to alter nothing.

Pillulæ cocchiæ.

Pillulæ cocchiæ, doe from all parts of the body purge choler, but grosse fleame more effectually, yet peculiarly out of the braune and nerues, whose diseases especially they doe cure. ℞. *Pulue. hieræ simp.* ʒ.x. *pulpæ colocinthidu.* ʒ. iij. ϑ. j. *diacridij.* ʒ. ij. ß. *turpethi, stæcados*, ana. ʒ. v. and confect a masse of those with sirupe of *stæcados*.

Plantivs.

Pillulæ cocchiæ notwithstanding they doe forcibly purge choler and fleume, yet they doe not purge all humours at once, as those pilles which be tearmed *Polycrestæ*, and commonly *aggregatiuæ maiores*. The composition whereof differeth nothing from the auncient receipt, sauing for respect of the Dose certaine simples be altered. The confection of those pilles is much more conuenient then *pillularum de octo rebus*, or then the pilles of fiue kinds of *myrabolanes*, which notwithstanding containe the same simples. The description therefore of those pilles in this place, seeme vppon good occasion to be omitted, for that they seeme to be contained vnder those, as *Pillulæ de Euphorbio* be comprehended vnder *Pillulæ de Hermodactilis*.

Pillulæ ex hermodactilis.

Pillulæ ex Hermodactilis, doe draw out grosse & scirrhous humors mightily frō the furthest parts, especially from the ioyntes, most agreeable in colde diseases of the braine, nerues, and ioyntes. ℞. *Hermodactilorum, aloes, myrabolano. cytri. turpethi, colocinthidis, bdellij mollis, sagapeni.* ana. ʒ. vj. *Castorei, sarcocollæ, opoponacis, semi. rutæ agrestis & apij.* ana. ʒ. iij. *croci.* ʒ. j. ß. *Succi brassicæ quan. suff.* to the confection of a masse.

Plantivs.

Pillulæ ex Hermodactilis doe retaine the ancient composition, and be of them selues more effectuall against the inueterate diseases of the ioynts, then those which be tearmed *arthriticæ*, and more safely to bee vsed then those which bee called *Fælidæ*, or with the cōfected *de opoponaco, de sagapeno*, or *de sarcocolla*, so that it were needeleſſe to set downe their receipts.

Pillulæ polycrestæ.

Pillulæ polycrestæ bee very auaileable against all diseases of the head, the stomach, the liuer, and other sundry compound diseases of the other intrals, for it draweth out of these partes fleame and both the cholers. ℞. *mirabolano. cytri, rheibarbari.* ana. ʒ. ß. *succi eupatorij, succi absinthij, mirabolano. chebulorum & indorum,*

Indorum, agarici, colocinthidis, polipodij, ana. ℥.ij. *dyadacridij, turpethi*, aloës, ana. ℥. vij. *Masticches, rosarum rubrarum, Salis gemmei, epithimi, anisi, zinziberis.* ana. ℥.j confect them with syrupe of roses: they be ministred from ℈.ij. to ℥.j.

Pillulæ è lapide Cyaneo.

Pillulæ è lapide Cyaneo, do excellently purge blacke choler and phlegme, especiall good against *Melancholia*, sadnesse and madnesse: against the canker: *Elephantiasis* and blacke morphew. ℞. *lapidis cyanei abluti.* ℥.vj. *Epithimi, polypodij*, ana. ℥. viij. *diadacridii, hellebori nigri, Salis indi* .ana. ℥.ij ß. *agarici*, ℥. viij. *Caryophillorum, anisi*, ana. ℥.ij. *pulueris hieræ picræ simplicis.* ℥.xv. and confect a masse of them with the iuyce of endiue or succorie.

Plantivs.

Pilulæ è lapide Cyaneo for the blacke helebore vsed, be more practised then *Pillulæ indæ*, which containe also hellebore: wherfore he hath described those, omitting others, and for that they be more effectuall against melancholike diseases then *pillulæ de lapide armeno*, for that occasion he omitteth them.

Pillulæ è Thymelea.

Pillulæ è Thymelea do mightily draw out of the bodie scirrhous humors, and water of hydropical persons. ℞. *foliorum thymeleæ exciccatorum & aceto maceratorum* ℥ v. *myrabolano. flauorum.* ℥.ß. *myrabolanorum cepulorum.* ℥.iij. *mannæ & thamarindorum* dissolued in water of succorie so much as sufficeth for the forme of pilles.

Plantivs.

Nothing is altered in *pillulis è Thymelea*, and to them is added certaine, aptly confected of *Esula*, and which are verie effectuall to draw out water. I suppose he omitted aswell *Pillulas lucis maiores* as *minores*, for that they be confusedly made of a great and vnnecessarie heape of simples, and for that *Pillulæ sine quibus* be effectuall enough for the eyes hauing any affect.

Pillulæ ex Esula.

Pillulæ ex Esula do purge from the wombe the dropsie-sicke water with great aggrieuance, and therefore agree onely to strong bodies, and then onely when they be free from agues. ℞. *Corticis radicis, esulæ minoru* macerated in vineger xxiiij. houres, and in the iuyce of purslaine ℥.ij. *grana recini* purged and brused xj. *myrabolanorum cytrinorum.* ℥.j.ß. *camedrios, chamepiteos, Spicæ nardi, cinamomi.* ana. ℈.ij bruse them all finely and incorporate them in ℥.j. of tragacanth dissolued in rosewater, and so reduce them to a masse. They be ministred in the dose of ℈.ij.

Pillulæ è Cynogloſſo.

Pillulæ è Cynogloſſo were not prouided to purge, but to stay distillations;

whether they issue to the breast and lungs with a cough, or into the teeth or elsewhere. ℞. *mirrhæ*. ʒ. vj. *thuris masculi*. ʒ. v. *opij*, *hyosciami semi. radicis cynogloſſi aridæ*. ana. ʒ. ß. *croci*, *castorei*. ana. ʒ. j. ß. and confect a masse thereof with distilled rose water. They be ministred from. ϑ. j. to ʒ. ß.

PLANTIVS.

Very fitly is *Castoreum* added *Pillulis è cynogloſſo*, which with saffron hath a singular vertue to correct the malignity of *Opium*, which tofore in this receipt hath bene inconsiderately omitted.

Pillulæ astrologiæ.

PIllulæ astrologiæ hauing great power to deuide and scour, are very auaileable against *Epilepsia*, *paralisis*, *asthma*, and veterated cough, the beginning of *Scirrhus* in the liuer and reines; *Nephritis*, suppressing of the floures, it expelleth the childe and seconds, they be more meete in winter, and for moist natures when the bodies be purged. ℞. *Radicis astrologiæ rotundæ* ʒ. j. *radicis gentianæ*, *mirrhæ electæ*. ana. ʒ. iij. *aloes*, *cinamomi*. ana. ʒ. ß. *zinziberis*. ʒ. j. when they be all exquisitely powned, put in new oile of sweete almondes. It is ministred in Dose. ʒ. j. ß. and the broth in which they be dilayed is all at once to be supped.

PLANTIVS.

Pillulæ astrologiæ be last of all, commodiously added to the rest, and bee excellently described, because they haue great opening vertue. They may bee made in such forme that they may bee drunke, but because they bee very bitter, they be more easily deuoured in the fourme of *Catapotium*.

Of Antidotaries: And first of such as bee made in a solide forme, by taking where- of the principall partes of the body be comforted and strengthened.

Dianthon.

DIanthon doth comfort the infeebled braine, doth stay the distillations thereof, doth mitigate excessiue melancholy, and extreme sadnesse, it taketh away quawlming and ouercasting of the hart. ℞. *foliorum rorismarini*. ʒ. ß. *rosarum*, *violarum*, *glicirrhizæ*. ana. ʒ. iij. *cariophillorum*, *spicæ nardi*, *nucis muschatæ*, *galangæ*, *cinamomi*, *zinziberis*, *maceris*, *ligni aloes*, *cardomomi*, *anisi*, *sem. anethi*. ana. ϑ. ij. *Sacchari albi aquæ saluiæ vel betonicæ soluti*. ℔. j. ß. make thereof an Electuary in tables.

Electuarium pleres archonticon.

ELectuarium pleres archonticon, doth maruellously comfort and strengthen the braine, quicken the sences, recouer the decaied memory, and is very commodious

modious for such as haue the falling euill, and difficulty of breathing, it comforteth such as bee sadde, or annoied with *melancholia*, or disturbed with idleneſſe of the braine, it reſtoreth and recouereth such as be consumed through some long sickneſſe. ℞. *Cinamomi, cariophillorum, ligni aloes, galange, ſpicæ nardi, nucis muſcatæ, zinziberis, ſpodij, ſcænanthi, cyperi, roſarum, violarum.* ana. ℥. j. *folij aut maceris, glycirrhizæ, maſtiches, ſtiracis, calaminthæ, ſampſuci, balſamicæ, oxymi, cardamomi, macropiperis, myrtillorum, corticum mali cytrij.* ana. ℥. ß. & Gr. vj. *margaritarum ſplendidarum, been albi & rubri, coralij, ſerici combuſti.* ana. Gr. xviij. *moſchi* Gr. vj. *Caphuræ.* Gr. iiij. *ſacchari albi aqua meliſſæ ſoluti.* x. or xij. times so much.

PLANTIVS.

That Antidotaries be ordained to comfort and ſtrengthen the parts principall: therefore he doth very fitly inſtitute their compoſitions, according to the order of the parts of the body, beginning at thoſe which be good for the braine, and after annexing such as be meete for the breaſt and other parts.

Diatragacanthum frigidum.

Diatragacanthum frigidum is very cõmodious in all diſtempures of the lungs, and breaſt, and is good for the *peripneumonia* and pluriſie, a conſumption and hote cough with an ague. Laſtly for the roughneſſe and ſharpneſſe of the iawes and arteries. ℞. *Gummi tragacanthi albiſſimi.* ℥. j. *Gummi arab.* ℥. v. *amili.* ℥. ij. *glicyrrhizæ, ſem. papaueris albi, quatuor ſem. frigido. maio. corticis liberorum.* ana. ℥. j. *Caphuræ.* Gr. v. *penidiorum.* ℥. j. ß. *Sacchari albiſſimi aqua violarum ſoluti.* ℔. j. Make thereof an Electuary in *Teſſeras.*

PLANTIVS.

Diatragacanthum is good for cold diſeaſes, and hath the vertue of another compoſition tearmed *Diapapauer*, which therefore was here vpon good occaſion omitted.

Diaireos ſimplex.

Diaireos ſimplex doth by a milde attenuation arid the breaſt and lungs of all diſtempures, and maketh more eaſie vttering of ſpittle, meete for hoate diſeaſes increaſing, and ſuch cold diſeales as be not extreme. ℞. *Radicis iridis florentini.* ℥. j. *Pulueris Electuarij diatragacanthi frigidi, ſacchari candi.* ana. ℥. ß. *ſacchari albiſſ. hyſſopi aqua ſoluti.* ℥. viij. Compound thereof a ſolide Electuary.

Electuarium Diaireos compoſitum.

Electuarium diaireos compoſitum, auaileth much in hote diſeaſes beginning to bracke, and in inueterate cold diſeaſes, as the cough, *Aſthma*, and hoarſeneſſe. ℞. *radicis iridis.* ℥. ß. *pulegii, hyſſopi, glicirrhizæ.* ana. ℥. iij. *tragacanthæ, amigdalarum amararum, pinearum, cinamomi, zinziberis, piperis.* ana. ℥. j. ß. *ſemi. lini, althææ & fenigraci.* ana. ℥. ij. *ſacchari albiſſi. aqua tuſſilaginis ſoluti.* ℔. j. or ℥. xiiij.

PLANTIVS.

The compound electuarie of *diaireos* is here placed in steed of *diatragacanthum calidum* and *diapenidion*, and therefore they cannot here be put in but in vaine, and to the losse and hinderance of the Apothecaries. In this composition the Author did for *caricis, passulis, palmulis & styraco*, which were vnmeete for this composition, ordaine *seminis lini, altheæ & fenugræci*, which do preuaile exceedingly in inueterate distempures of the breast.

Diacalaminthes.

Diacalaminthes doth attenuate rebellious & inueterate distempures of the breast and loungs, and the grosse and viscous humours in these parts. It doth scoure and cast out the same, dispatch winde, furthereth concoction and distribution of the aliment, and in fine, prouoketh the floures, vrine & sweat. ℞. *Calaminthes montanæ, pulegii, petroselini, seselios, origani.* ana. ℥ ij. *seminis apii, Cymarum, thymi.* ana. ℥ ß. *leuistici, piperis.* ana. ℥ j. *Sacchari albissimi, aquæ violarum aut rosarum soluti.* ℔ ij. ß. make an Electuarie.

PLANTIVS.

In this composition of *Diacalaminthes*, *origanum* seemeth verie aptly added. In the other simples the Author hath imitated Galens composition, and the weights and doses, saue onely in louage and in pepper: for the Author taketh of louage halfe so much, and of pepper the sixt part of so much as Galen did, for that the whole composition is but the fourth part of that which is described of Galene in the fourth booke *de tuenda valetudine*. And whereas in other Electuaries before described, which were gentle and not vnpleasant either in tast or taking, he receiued and tempered the powders with sixe or eight times so much sugar. In this composition truly which is verie hote and vnpleasant to be taken, he hath allotted a doses of twelue times so much. Further this composition of *Diacalaminthes* may stand of these which be termed *diahyssopus* and *diaprassus*, which may by good right grow out of vse as vnnecessarie, least the multitude should be troublesome.

Diamargaritonfrigidum.

Diamargaritonfrigidum asswageth the burning heate of agues, fortifieth & comforteth the heart, and preserueth it from an infectious contagion, deliuereth the affected from quawlming and swowning, and lastly abandoneth sorow. ℞. *quatuor seminum frigidorum maiorum mundatorum, seminis portulacæ & papaueris albi, seminis endiuiæ, oxalidis & citrii, trium santalorum, ligni aloes, zinziberis, rosarum rubrarum, florum nymphææ, buglossi, violarum, baccarum mirti, ossis de corde cerui, eboris, doronici Romani, cinnamomi.* ana. ℥ j. *corallii albi & rubri.* ana. ℥ ß. *margaritarum splendidarum.* ℥ iij. *ambaris, caphuræ.* ana. gr. vj. *moschi.* gr. ij. *Sacchari albi, aquæ buglossi vel rosarum soluti.* ℔ ij.

PLAN-

PLANTIVS.

The rather that this Electuary *Diamargariton* might become more excellent and effectual, the Author hereof ouer and abaue the vulgar description, hath added (being made of an vncertaine Author) the seedes of endiue and sorrell, *cytrij ebur, os è corde cerui, doronicum romanum*, and *cinnamomum*: all which be apparantly good for the heart. There be diuerse Phisitions which haue put into this Electuary, certaine portions of precious stones, but yet to no vse, for that all what so is comprehended in the Electuary *de gemmis*, which at any time may commodiously be mixed in the description therof, this Electuary containeth, except a fewe hote Aromates and many colde simples, the rather to make a more safe vse thereof.

Electuarium de gemmis.

Electuarium de gemmis, doth excellently comfort and strengthen the heart, and preserueth it in agues from maligne and, pestilent putrefaction, doeth release the affected of quawlming, beating of the heart, and voluntary sadnes. ℞. *Margaritarum splendidarum*, ℥ j. ß. *saphiri, hyacinthi, Sardij*, that is, *corneolæ, granatorum, smaragdi*. ana. ℈. ij. & Gr. v. *Zedoariæ, doronici, corticum cytrij mali maceris, seocymi cariophillati*. ana. ʒ. j. *corallij rubri, succini, eboris*. ana. ℈. ij. ß. *Been albi, been rubri, cariophyllorum, Zinziberis, piperis longi, spicæ indicæ, folij croci, cardamomi maioris*. ana. ʒ. ß. *trochiscorum diarrhodon, ligni aloes*. ʒ. ij. ß. *cinamomi, galangæ*. ana. ℈. ij. Gr. v. *foliorum auri, foliorum argenti*. an. ℈. j. *ambræ*. ʒ. j. *moschi*. Gr. xv. *sacchari albi aquæ rosarum soluti*. ℥. xx. which is eight times as much as the rest of the receipt.

PLANTIVS.

Electuarium è gemmis, comprehendeth almost all the kindes of the hote Aromates, and they bee not much dulled or restrained with the fragments of the precious stones. Therefore it were much better to take from this Electuarie, some part of the Aromates, especially *Been album, & rubrum, cardomomi maioris, piper longum & folium* which seldome can be gotten.

Electuarium diambræ.

Electuarium diambræ, comforteth and fortifieth the hart, the braine, and the principall parts, and quickeneth the naturell heate in old folkes, chiefely in feebled persons and cold natures, it doth not onely further the concoction of alimentes, but also of cold humours, and it driueth away all the coldnesse of the body and of the wombe, and therefore it is good for conception. ℞. *cinamomi, doronici Ro. cariophyllorum, maceris, nucis muschatæ, folij, galangæ*. ana. ℥. iij. *spicæ nardi, cardamomi maioris & minoris*. ana. ʒ. j. *Zinziberis*. ʒ. j. ß. *santali citrini, ligni aloes, piperis longi*. ana. ʒ. ij. *ambaris*. ʒ. j. *moschi*. ʒ. ß. euery ounce of the powder is receiued and mixed with. ℔ j. of sugar dissolued in rose water.

PLANTIVS.

Diambra seemeth to consist of all kinde of Aromates generally heaped and confused without any choise, as *diacyminum* and *dianison*, *diacinamomum*, *diazinziber*, *diatrion pipereon*, *diaxiloaloes*, *diamargariton calidum*, *diamoscu dulce*, & *diamoscu amarum*. All which be vehemently hoate consisting of hoate simples no whit represſed, so that all these seeme to be of like power and effect. Wherefore the Author omitting the rest, hath here placed the onely composition of *Diambræ*, which may supply the want of the rest, least the student in Phisicke should bee ouercharged with multitude, and the Apothecary sustaine great losse. But in this composition which is vehemently hoate, as the rest be in my opinion, it were best to take out of the receipt both the *cardomomum* and the long pepper, and to substitute in stead thereof *rosarum rubra*. ℥. iij. for otherwise it can scarcely be vsed in hoate natures, when the weather is hoate and in other hoate seasons, in agues and hoate diseases, and the excessiue heate also of these simples hath beene occasion, that the vse thereof hath beene vnpleasant, and that it hath waxen out of vse as vnprofitable, euen as *Diatrion pipereon Galeni*, and *Diacalaminthes*. The Author thereof perceiuing this, hath vpon good occasion commaunded, that the powders should bee tempred in twelue times so much sugar, thereby minding to make it more pleasant to the receiuer.

Puluis cordiacus.

PVluis cordiacus, doth maruellously comfort and fortifie the heart, and preserue it from contagion in a pestilent constitution, and may be safely taken in a burning ague, and in hote weather, for that it is of a moderate heate. ℞. *Radicum tormentillæ, dictamni, tunicis & scabiosæ, se. acetosæ endiuiæ, coriandri præparati, se. citrij, rutæ, cardui benedicti.* ana. ℥. j. *trium santalorum, been albi, been rubri, doronici* ℞. *ligni aloes, zedoariæ, cinamomi, cardamomi, macris, croci, rosarum rubra. florum bugloſſi viriusque, florum nimphæa.* ana. ℈. ij. *rasuræ eboris, spodij*, that is, *eboris vsti, ossis è corde cerui, coralij albi, coralij rubri, succini, margaritarum splendidarum, smaragdi, hyacinthi, granati.* ana. ℈. j. *sericicrudi torrefacti, boli armeni, terræ lemniæ.* ana. ℥. ß. *caphuræ, moschi, ambaris.* ana gra. vj. reduce them to powder and make thereof tables, with eight times so much sugar dissolued in rose water.

Aromaticum rosarum maius.

ARomaticum rosarum maius, comforteth the stomach with a moderate heat, and furthereth the concoction of all the intrales, correcteth crudity, consumeth vnnecessary humours, dispatcheth winde, and is most meete for such as stand in state of recouery of a sickneſſe. ℞. *rosarum rubra.* ℥. xv. *glicirrhizæ rasæ.* ℥. vij. *ligni aloes, santali citrini.* an. ℥. iij. *cinamomi electi, macris, cariophillorum.* ana. ℥. ij. ß. *gummi arabi, tragacanthæ.* ana. ℥. ij. ℈. ij. *nucis muschatæ, cardamomi, galangæ.* ana. ℥. j. *spicæ nardi, ambræ.* ana. ℥. ij. *moschi.* ℈. j. and make tables with eight times so much sugar.

PLANTIVS.

PLANTIVS.

The vsuall composition of *aromaticum rosarum* the Author liked of.

Electuarium diarrhodon abbatis.

E*Lectuarium diarrhodon abbatis*, mitigateth the heate of the stomach and midriffe, & yet notwithstanding furthereth their concoction, asswageth paine, and dispatcheth winde. ℞. *rosarum rubrarum.* ℥. j. ß. *santali albi & rubri.* ana. ℥. ij. ß. *tragacanthæ, gummi arabici, eboris vsti.* ana. ℈. ij. *mastiches, spicæ nardi, cardamomi, succi, glicirrhizæ, croci, xyloaloes, cariophillorum, gallæ muschatæ, anisi, feniculi, semi. ocymi, acimorum berberis, sem. scariolæ, protulacæ & papaueris albi, quatuor semi. frigido. maiorum, rheibarbari electi, cinamomi.* ana. ℈. j. *margaritarum, ossis è corde cerui.* ana. ℈. ß. *Camphoræ.* gr. vij. *moschi.* gr. iiij. make thereof tables with eight times so much sugar dissolued in rose water.

PLANTIVS.

From the Electuary of *Diarrhodon*, the Author hath subtracted *asarum*, for that it doeth ouercome the stomacke, notwithstanding it bee pownded lightly: and sugar candy likewise for that it hath no more efficacy or vertue then white sugar. The Electuary of *Diagalangæ*, notwithstanding it be commended of many against the crudity of the stomacke, yet it is not in vse for the excessiue heate; in place whereof if neede so require may bee substituted *Diambras* or *Diacalaminthes.*

Electuarium diatrion santalon.

E*Lectuarium diatrion santalon*, correcteth the hoate intempure of the liuer, and arriddeth it of the remnantes of obstructing matter, cureth the iaundies, it comforteth the liuer and stomach. ℞. *trium santalorum, albi, rubri, & citrini, rosarum rubra.* ana. ℥. iij. *rheibarbari electi, eboris vsti, succi glicirrhizæ, semi. portulacæ.* ana. ℥. ij. *gummi arabici, tragacanthæ, quatuor semi. frigido. maio. mundatorum, sem. intubi.* ana. ℥. j. ß. *camphoræ.* ℈. j. and eight times so much white sugar dissolued in rose water.

PLANTIVS.

Amilum is subtracted and exempted from the Electuary *Diatrion santalon*, as vnnecessary, neither is the Electuary *Diacucubi* here repeated amongst the Electuaries, notwithstanding it be commended of diuerse against cold affectes, and obstructions of the liuer, for that it hath no more effect then this Electuary *Diatrion santalorum.*

Diacrocu.

D*Iacrocu* which is also commonly tearmed *Diacucurma*, dissolueth inueterat affectes of the liuer and splene, and maketh quite ariddance of rebellious obstructions, and a hard tumour lately begunne. And lastly, it cureth ill habite of the body proceeding thereof, and the originall matter of the dropsie. ℞. *croci, asari, petroselini, macedoni. dauci, anisi, semi. apij.* ana. ℥. ß. *rheibarbari, meu, spicæ nardi.* ana. ℥. vj. *costi, mirrhæ, cassiæ lignea, scænanthi, carpobalsami,*

radicis rubei, succi absinthij, succi eupatorij arefacti, olei balsami. ana. ℥. ij. *calami aromatici, cinamomi.* ana. ℥. j. ß *scordij, scolopendrij, succi glycirrhizæ.* ana. ℥. ij. and ten times so much white sugar dissoued in Endiue water.

PLANTIVS.

Diacrocu containeth certaine rare simples and hard to bee commed by, as *Cassia lignea, carpobalsamum,* and *opobalsamum,* which notwithstanding if they be omitted, the receipt shall bee as effectuall to the purpose, wherefore it is instituted.

Dialacca maior.

Dialacca maior is more effectuall then *diacrocu,* against inueterate obstructions of the liuer and splene, against an euill habite, and the beginning of a dropsie. ℞. *Laccæ præparatæ, rheibarbari.* ana. ℥. iij. *spicæ indicæ, masticches, stirpium scœnanthi, absinthij roma. succi eupatorij, mesuæ, sabinæ, amigdal. amararum, costi, myrrhæ, rubeæ, sem. opij, ammeos, feniculi & anisi, asari, aristolochiæ longæ, aristolothiæ rotundæ, gentianæ, croci, cinamomi, hyssopi, cassiæ lignea, summitatum, scœnanthij, bdellij.* ana ℥. j. ß. *piperis, zinziberis.* ana. ℥. j. *sacchari albi* twelue times so much.

PLANTIVS.

Electuarium dialaccæ maior. plires archonticon, and the exhilarating Electuarie, do retaine the old order of composition, for that they seeme to be most fitte for such affectes as they be ordained for.

Electuarium exhilarans.

Electuarium exhilarans, the exhilarating Electuary is falsely ascribed vnto *Galen,* it driueth away sadnesse, melancholy, and euill cogitations, it quickeneth all the spirites, it helpeth concoction, augmenteth naturall heate, and preserueth the receiuer from hoarenesse of haires. ℞. *Florum ocymi cariophillati, croci, zedoariæ, xilobalsami, aut ligni aloes, cariophillorum, corticum citrij mali, galangæ, maceris, nucis muschatæ, styracis, calaminthæ.* ana. ℥. ij. ß. *anisi, scobis eboris, thimi, epithimi.* ana. ℥. j. *caphuræ, moschi, ambaris, margaritarum splendidarum, ossis è corde cerui.* ana. ℥. ß. *foliorum auri & argenti.* ana. ℈. ß. of white sugar eight times so much.

Electuarium diaspermaton.

Electuarium diaspermaton refrigerating and comforting the kidneis, and the conduites of the vrine and seede, doth mildly purge them from all corruption of humours. ℞. *Quatuor semi. frigido. maio. & mino. sem. asparagi, pimpinellæ, ocimi, & petroselinii, granorum helicacabi.* ana. ℥. ij. *milij solis, succi, glycirrhizæ.* ana. ℥. iij. *cinamomi, maceris.* ana. ℥. ij. *sacchari albi* eight times so much, dissolued in the water of marish mallow.

Electuarium

Electuarium λιθων θροπτικον.

Electuarium λιθων θροπτικον, that is, *lithon thropticon*, asswageth the paines of the lungs, displaceth the grauell of the kidneis and bladder, easeth the paine of the kidneis, and redresseth the restraint of the vrine, and wasteth and breaketh the stone by little and little. ℞. *Spicæ nardi, zinziberis, cinamomi, melanopiperis, cardomomi, cariophillorum, maceris.* ana. ℥. ß. *costi, glycirrhizæ, cyperi, tragacanthæ, chamedrios.* ana. ℈. ij. *sem. apij, ammeos, asparagi, ocimi, vrticæ, cytrii mali, saxifragi, pimpinellæ, cardui dauci, feniculi, ruſci, petroſelini, macedoni bardanæ & ſeſelios, aſari.* ana. ℥. j. *lapidis ſpongiæ, lapidis lincus, lapidis cancri, & lapidis iudaici.* ana. ℥. j. ß. *ſanguinis hircini præparati.* ℥. j. ß. make thereof a powder, and temper it with ten times so much white sugar, dissolued in water of Betony, but when extremity of paine forceth, and the vrine is restrained, the sole powder is ministred, *ex passo cretico*, from ℈. ij. to ℥. j.

Plantivs.

Electuarium diaſpermaton we haue read, described for many and sundry diseases, this notwithstanding which is very aptly compounded vnder the same name, seemeth to auaile much against the heate of the kidneis, the scalding of the vrine, and other affectes to which it is assigned. These simples bee withdrawen and expuncted out of that Electuary, which they terme *Lithon dridhon*, which in no place be found sincere and pure, and other astringing be added in their stead which doe hinder the breaking of the stone, and the displaying of the sand: sundry seedes and many stones, and the prepared bloud of the Goat is added, all which haue a singular power and force against the stone, and against all the *Symptomata* which arise thereof, and if in any respect the heat be feared, it may be tempred with *Diaſpermaton*.

Electuarium diacalaminthes compoſitum.

Electuarium diacalaminthes compoſitum, doth mightily prouoke the flours, and all purgations of the wombe. ℞. *Pulueris electuarij diacalaminthes ſimplicis,* ℥ ß. *foliorum praſij, ſampſuci, meliſſophylli, artemiſiæ, ſabinæ aridorum.* ana. ℥. j. *cyperi, ſem. rutæ & rubiæ, maceris, cinamomi.* an. ℈. ij. and twelue times so much of white sugar, dissolued in the water of Feuerfew or Pillitory of the wall.

Plantivs.

The compound Electuary of *Diacalaminthes*, seemeth fitly added in the last place to the other Electuaries, for that there was no other meete receipt extant to purge the corruption of the wombe.

Of moist Antidotaries.

ANtidotus analeptica recouerth all the powers of the body infeebled and wasted, it taketh away the griping of the heart, and the quawlming and swowning, it restoreth the body extenuated either by profusion of bloud, or by any excessiue euacuation, it helpeth such as be consumed and wasted, for that it humecterh, nourisheth, strengtheneth, and comforteth. ℞ *rosarum rubrarum, glicirrhizæ.* an. ℥. ij. gr. v. *gummi arabici & tragacanthæ.* ana. ℥. ij & ℈. ij. *santali albi & rubri.* ana. ℥. j. & ℈. j. *succi glicirrhizæ, amyli, sem. papaueris albi, protulacæ, lactucæ & seriolæ.* ana. ℥. iij. *quatuor seminum frigidorum maiorum, sem. cydoniorum, sem. maluæ, sem. bomberu, sem. violarum strobilorum, pistaciorum recentium, amigdalarum dulcium, pulpæ sebestен.* ana. ℥. ij. *cariophillorum, spodij, cinamomi.* ana. ℥. j. *croci.* Gr. v. *penidiorum.* ℥. ß. when they be all pownd, temper them with sirupe of violets.

PLANTIVS.

In the antidotary analepticke, which they tearme *resumptiuam*, the Author thought good to alter nothing besides the order of the simples, and that for the graines of Berberies, *pistacia*, be put in the receipt.

Antidotus diasaterion.

ANtidotus *diasaterion*, augmenteth the genitall seede, procureth a lust to Venerie, and doth as it were quicken and reuiue the dull desire thereto: and it is a singular help and comfort against the imbecillity of the kidneis and spermaticke vessels, whereby it auaileth much for procreation of children. ℞. *radicis saterij recentis & solidæ, radicis pastinacæ satinæ, radicis eringij, nucis indicæ, strobilorum, pistaciorum.* ana. ℥. j. ß. *cariophillorum, zinziberis, anisi, sem. eruca, linguæ auis quæ semen est fraxini.* ana. ℥. v. *cinamomi, candarum scincorum, sem. bulbi.* ana. ℥. ij. ß. *moschi,* Gr. v. *mellis optimi despumati.* ℔. iij. The rootes being bruised are boiled in hony, and tempred, and after *nux indica, strobuli* and *pistacia* being brused are also put to them, and the other simples in the end being exquisitely pownded.

PLANTIVS.

There be three compositions set downe of *diasaterion*, but this is the most effectuall of all, and therefore may stand in stead of all the rest.

Antidotus è cocco baphico seu grano infectorio.

ANtidotus *è cocco baphico seu grano infectorio*, which the Arabians terme *kermes*, cheareth the heart, and driueth away sorrow comming without occasion,

it

it restraineth and brideleth *melancholia* and *mania*, and recouereth the rauished spirites and powers of the body. ℞. *succi malorum fragrantium, aquæ rosarum.* aña. ℔. ij. *In quibus macera horis.* xxiiij. *serici staminis crudi.* ℔. j. Let it boile easily and then streine it, and in the streined liquor, boile *granorum infectoriorum.* ℥. ij. the decoction then will become red, in the which dissolue *sacchari albi.* ℔. j. ß. Boile them then againe till the thickneſſe of hony, in the end put in *ambræ crudæ contuſæ.* ℥. ß. and when it is liquified or melted, sprinckle in these powders, *ligni aloes crudi, cinamomi.* an. ℥. vj. *lapidis cyanei loti & præparati.* ℥. j. ß. *margaritarum non perforatarum.* ℥. ij. *foliorum auri purissimi.* ℥. j. *moschi.* ℈. j.

PLANTIVS.

Antidotus è cocco baphico, tearmed *confectio alkermes*, cannot be safely prepared with silke already died, and as they tearme it *Karmesino*, for that such kinde of silke vsually is not died without Gaule, Alume, and Arsenicke, which is altogether venimous, therefore this way of composition is much better.

Antidotus è baccis lauri.

Antidotus è baccis lauri, doth mightily dissipate winde through heat and tenuity, and is especiall good as well for paine in the great guttes as in the small. ℞. *foliorum rutæ.* ℥. x. *ammeos, cumini, nigellæ, lebistici seminis, origani, cari, amigdalarum amararum, piperis longi, mentastri, dauci, acori, baccarum lauri, castorei.* ana. ℥. ij. *sagapeni.* ℥. ß. *opoponacis.* ℥. iij. *mellis optimi expumati.* ℔. j. ß.

Philonium.

Philonium ministred with *Opium* after sixe monethes, doeth take away vehement and grieuous paines, either in the great guttes or in the kidneis, or in *splena*, prouoketh sleepe, staieth distillation, asswageth cough, and restraineth spitting of bloud. ℞. *croci.* ℥. v. *pirothri, euphorbij, spicæ nardi, mirrhæ, castorij.* ana. ℥. j. *piperis albi, hiosciami.* ana. ℥. xx. *opij.* ℥. x. *mellis optimi expumati.* ℔. ij. the Dose hereof is from. ℈. j. to ℥. j.

PLANTIVS.

The Author hath preferred aboue the rest this description of *Philonium* approued both by authority of *Galen*, and by experience, for that this Alume is sufficient to lay vehement torments, and yet notwithstanding the Author following *Mesue* hath put in mirrhe and castorie (neither of which *Galen* improueth) that the mixture might the rather be the safer, for that they haue a peculiar vertue to correct *Opium*. If the manner of composition in this receipt be considered, the weight of *Opium* is almost twise so much as in *Philonio Romano*. The greater *Philonium* which they tearme *Romanum* (for that it hath but halfe the weight of *Opium*) may bee ministred in a double Dose, namely from ℈. ii. to ℥. j.

Antidotus tearmed requies.

ANtidotus tearmed *Requies* without *Opium*, doth allay the extreme heate of burning feauers, asswageth thirst, represseth madnesse, procureth sleepe, and causeth ease. ℞. *rosarum, violarum.* ana. ℥. iij. *corticum radicum mandragoræ, seminus hyoscyami albi, & papaueris albi, seminus seriolæ, lactucæ, portulacæ & psillij, nucis muschatæ, cinamomi electi.* ana. ℥ j. ß. *trium santalorum, spodij, tragacanthæ,* ana. ʒ ij. *mellis optimi expumati triplum.*

PLANTIVS.

ANtidotus tearmed *requies*, hath lesse *opium* then anie kinde of *philonium* or of *opiatum*: yet it cooleth mightily through the mixture of other simples which be almost all cold, notwithstanding the vse thereof is scarcely safe, for that the *opium* is not sufficiently corrected by mixture of hote simples. But if the composition be proued without *opium*, truly it doth not a litle auayle to asswage the burning heate of agues and dottage, thirst, and whatsoeuer *symptomata* doe proceed of the feauerous heate. The other compositions of *philonia* are to be abandoned as nothing necessarie, as both the antidotarie *diacolibanum* and *athanasia*, and *musa ænea*, *requies cum opio*, *trifera magna*, and *Esdiæ magna*, of what author soeuer it was inuented. For such compositions as haue *opium*, if they be ordained to asswage paine, *philonium* described by this author may supply the want. But if it be ordained either to strengthen the principall partes, or to expell poyson and many other sundrie diseases, *triphera magna*, *Esdiæ magna*, *aurea Alexandrina* and *Athanasia*, *theriace* and *mithridatum* may therefore stand in their steed. The confection *Anacardina* is also omitted, being flat contrarie to those which I haue repeated. For notwithstanding it be commended for many diseases, yet for the great exuperant heate thereof it is verie dangerous, for that it doth speedily inflame the spirits and humours, and forthwith doth procure an ague.

Theriace Diatessaron.

THeriace *Diatessaron* is excellent good against Epilepsie, conuulsion, palsey, crudities of the stomach, ill habite, dropsie, and other cold diseases. Further it auayleth much against venime receiued, against the byting of virulent beasts, and a pestilent constitution. ℞. *radicis gentianæ, baccarum lauri, mirrhæ, aristolochiæ rotundæ.* ana. ℥. ij. and when they be verie seriously powned, receiue and mixe with *mellis optimi expumati.* ℔. ij.

Theriace Andromachi senioris.

THeriace *Andromachi senioris* preuayleth against the stinging of poysonous beasts, it helpeth the falling euill, the apoplexie, the resolution of the bodie, *Cephalalgia*, *Asthma*, *hæmaptois*, aggrieuance in the stomach, iaundies, dropsie, paines of the kidneyes, cholicke, gowt, melancholicke and lunatick men: and lastly the leprosie, it expelleth the floures & a dead child: it maruellously comforteth and fortifieth the heart, the braine, the liuer, the stomach, and the

the whole bodie, and preſerueth it from a peſtilent contagion. ℞. *trochiſcorum ſcilliticorum.* ℥.vj. *trochiſcorum theriacorum, magmatis hædycroi, piperis longi, opij* ana. ℥.iij. *roſarum rubrarum, ſeminis napi ſylueſtris, ſcordij, opobalſami, cinamomi, Agarici* ana. ℥.j. ß. *mirrhæ, coſti, croci, caſſiæ lignea, nardi indicæ, ſcænanthi, thuris maſculi, piperis albi & nigri, dictamni, marrubij, rheibarbarij, ſtæchadis, ſemi. petroſelini macedo. calamites, terebinthinæ, Zinziberis, radicis pentaphylli.* ana. ℥. vj. *polij montani, chamapiteos, ſtyracis calamitæ, mei, amomi, nardi celticæ, ſigilli lemnij, phuponticiſ chmedrios, foliorum malabatri aut macir, chalcidis toſtæ* (which may be commodiouſly pretermitted) *radicis gentianæ, aniſi, ſucci hypociſchidis, carpobalſami, gummi Arabici ſplendidi, ſemi. fœniculi, cardomomi minoris, ſeſelios, acaciæ, balaſtios, ſem hyperici, ammeos.* ana. ℥. ß. *caſtorei, ariſtolochiæ longæ, ſentenus, ſemi. dauci, bituminis Iudaici, opoponacis, centaurij minoris, Galbani*, ana. ℥. ij. *mellis optimi expumati triplum, id eſt.* ℔. xiiij. ℥ iij. *Vini optimi odorati* ſo much as ſhall ſuffice to diſſolue the liquors and iuyces. The greateſt doſe is ℈. iiij. or ℥. ß. for ℈. j. of the powder, or ℈. iiij. of the compoſition containe gra. j. of *opium*.

Plantivs.

The Author hath therefore imitated the compoſition of triacle ſet foorth by Andromachus ſenior, in an Elegiacall verſe, for that neither the number nor the weight of ſimples can in verſe be eaſily changed. Certaine Authors afterward framed this receipt in other order of ſimples, and peraduenture more conuenient: to the which alſo they added ſothernwood & gladine, and altered the doſes of certaine ſimples, and therefore their receipt is not to be accounted ſo certaine. Wherefore without all controuerſie we are to inſiſt to this deſcription only. Whereas the Author doth admoniſh vs of *chalcitide id eſt*, vſt vitrioll not to be put in this compoſition, therein imitating Valerius Cordus, that ſeemeth vene conuenient, for whereas that medicine, eſpecially being burnt, is maruellous cauſticke, *eſcharoticum*, and hurtfull to the intrailes, and hath bene experienced nothing to auaile for any externall diſeaſe, there is no cauſe why with ſo great inconuenience and vnpleaſauntneſſe of taſt, it ſhould be admitted into this compoſition. For if it be (as ſome men thinke) therefore added to make the compoſition blacke, it ought not for colour ſake, by taſte and operation ſo much annoy the bodie. Finally by taking it away, the whole receipt will be more commodious, leſſe ſharpe and hote, and will become more pleaſant to the receiuer.

Mitridatum.

Mitridatum doth nigheſt reſemble the power of triacle, and is vſed againſt the ſame diſeaſes with a great deale more facilitie & leſſe extremitie of heate, according vnto the deſcription of *Andromachus* allowed of *Galen*, and other auncient Phyſitions. ℞. *myrrhæ, nardi.* ana. ℥.j. ℈.ß. *croci, Cinamomi, ſcordij, Zinziberis*, ana. ℥. vij. ß. *Opij.* ℥. iiij. graines. xxv. *ſtyracis, Seſelios, abrotani, libanotidis* .ana. ℥.x. *Caſtorij.* ℥.vj. ℈.ß. *ſcænanthi, polij, coſti, piperis longi, ſemi. dauci ſcænanthi, Galbani, terebinthinæ* .ana. ℥.vj. ß. *piperis albi*, ℥. v. ℈.j. *petroſelini, ſeminis nardi celticæ: ſeminis fœniculi, folii Indi aut maceris, gentianæ roſarum ſiccarum, mei athamantici* .ana. .℥ .iiij. *caſſiæ lignea*, ℥.v.ß. *Thuris* ℥.vj. ℈.j.

succi hypociſtidis. ℥.vj. gr.xv. *acori aut calami aromatici, phu, pontici, ſagapeni, fructus balſami, hyperici, iridis, acaciæ, gummi, cardamomi, pelicini*, that is, ana. ℥. ij. *terræ lemniæ, lumborum ſcinci, cypheos, opoponacis.* ana. ℥. vj. *thlaſpij.* ℥. vj. ℈. ij. *aniſi, hiſſopi, chamepiteos.* ana. ℥. iij. *opobalſami, ariſtolochiæ rotundæ, marrubij.* ana. ℥. j. *mellis optimi expumati.* ℔. vij. ß.

PLANTIVS.

There bee foure ſundry and very diuerſe compoſitions of *Mithridatum* extant, one (and that the greateſt) is the inuention of *Nicolaus Mirepſus*, deſcribed by *Nicolaus Præpoſitus*, and vſed of all Apothecaries euery where, which euery man doth daily experience to be very effectuall againſt maligne and peſtilent agues, venime, vomites, crudities, lienteries, and many other diſeaſes, and whatſoeuer firſt Author or inuentor it had, it is now euery where much practiſed. The ſecond is of *Democritus* an auncient Greeke Author, practiſed of *Auicenna*, and ſet out in the Apothecarie Booke of *Nicolaus Præpoſitus*, which as it is found to bee both in compoſition and in vſe, more facile then the other: ſo in vertue it is no whit inferior to the ſame, but rather more excellent and effectuall againſt all maligne and contagious diſeaſes. The third was diſcribed by *Andromachus*, and the fourth which *Galen* and *Aetius* & other Greeke Authors tooke out of the workes of *Antipater* and *Cleophantus* auncient Phiſitions. The two later be not much vnlike, for they conſiſt of the ſame ſimples, notwithſtanding placed in diuerſe order, whoſe Doſes doe differ in a certaine few halfe ſcruples onely, ſo that they two may ſeeme fitly to be applied to the ſame vſe, yet notwithſtanding, becauſe this laſt is ſomewhat more copious compounded of 52. ſimples, and corrected and approued according to the diligent iudgement of *Galen*, is is to bee eſteemed the beſt of the reſt, and moſt effectuall againſt the diſeaſes tofore repeated. Wherefore the Author hath repeated this onely, becauſe he would haue it vſed onely of all Phiſitions, and therefore he hath altred the order of the ſimples reducing into one place all ſuch as were of one Doſe, that thereby the Apothecaries might haue leſſe labour in compounding and confecting the receipt.

De Trochiſcis, ſeu Paſtillis.

Trochiſci è vipera.

Trochiſci è vipera, which vſed in the compoſition of the great Triacle, the fleſh of choſen and prepared vipers is boyled in pure water, with greene dill and ſalt from the bones, then being taken out it is grinded on a marble ſtone, and it is ſprinckled by little and little, with like weight of crummes of wheaten breade dried, pouring in in the meane time (if neede ſo require) the owne broth of the vipers, and a little *opobalſami aut ſuccidanei*, whereof *Trochiſces* be made the weight of ℥. j. and bee diligently dried in the ſhadow.

Trochiſci

Trochiſci ſcillitici.

Trochiſci ſcillitici be referred to the ſame compoſition of Triacle. ℞. *Medullæ ſcyllæ aſſatæ.* ℔. j. *farinæ erui.* ℥. viij. and being well bruiſed they be tempred into *Trochiſces*, and be dried in the ſhadow.

Trochiſci hedricoi.

Trochiſci hedricoi be likewiſe applied to the compoſition of Triacle. ℞. *mari aut balſamitæ, amaraci, aſari, aſpalathi calami odorati aut galangæ, phu, pontici, xylobalſami, opobalſami, aut ſuccidaneorum, cinamomi, coſti.* ana. ℥. iij. *mirrhæ, folij, nardi, indicæ, croci, caſſiæ.* ana. ℥. vj. *amomi.* ℥. xij. *maſtiches.* ℥. j. ſo much wine of the beſt as ſufficeth to the making of *Trochiſces.*

Trochiſci cypheos.

Trochiſci cypheos be requiſite to the compoſition of Mithridate. ℞. *pulpæ vuarum paſſarum, terebinthinæ coctæ, mirrhæ, ſcenanthi.* ana. ℥. j. ß. *calami aromatici.* ℥. ix. *cinamomi.* ℥. ß. *bdellij, anicis*, that is, *blattæ byzanthij, ſpicæ nardi, caſſiæ lignæ, cyperi, arcenthidum*, that is, *baccarum iuniperi.* ana. ℥. iij. *aſpalathi.* ℥. ij. ß. *croci.* ℥. j. *mellis expumati & vini optimi.* ana. ſo much as is ſufficient to the tempering of *Trochiſces.*

Plantivs, *in Trochiſcos.*

There is no alteration made of the Trochiſces which bee commended by the iudgement of all Authors, as auaileable to the great compoſition, leaſt that in the alteration of them there ſhould be ſomwhat changed in the greater compoſition which be by vſe approued.

Trochiſci è capparibus.

Trochiſci è capparibus doth take away the hardneſſe of the ſplene, groſſe melancholy, and diſſipateth winde. ℞. *corticum radicum capparis, ſemi. agri.* ana. ℥. vj. *amoniaci.* ℥. ß. *ſemi. nigellæ, calamitæ, ſucci eupatorij, amigdalarum amararum, foliorum rutæ, ariſtolochiæ rotundæ, ſem. naſturtij.* ana. ℥. ij. *cyperi, ſcolopendrij*, that is, *ceterachi.* ana. ℥. j. receiue and temper the powders in *ammoniacum* diſſolued in vineger and make thereof Trochiſches.

Plantivs.

Trochiſci è capparibus bee very wiſely deſcribed, and yet notwithſtanding, if you adde vnto them *Gummi laccæ ſeu caucami & rubei tinctorum*, ana. ℥. j. they ſhall become more effectuall, neither be other Trochiſces of *Lacca* to bee admitted for this purpoſe, for that theſe of Capars be ſufficient enough againſt obſtructions, and inueterate diſeaſes of the ſplene.

Trochiſchi de Eupatorio.

Trochiſchi de Eupatorio do diſſolue the obſtructions and tumours of the liuer eſpecially, & doth cure daylie agues ariſing therof, the iaundies, and beginning of dropſie. ℞. *mannæ electæ, ſucci Eupatorii* ana. ℥. j. *roſarum* ℥ ß. *ſpodii* ℥. iij. ß. *ſpicæ nardi indicæ* ℥ iij. *rheibarbari, aſari, aniſi* ana. ℥ ij. ß. and being all receiued and tempered with the iuyce of agrimonie and *Manna* are to made into Trochiskes.

PLANTIVS.

Trochiſchi ex Eupatorio, be ſubſtituted alſo in the ſtead of Trochiskes of rewbarbe and wormwood, for that they be of great affinitie and like vertue.

Trochiſchi Alkakengi ſeu Halycacabi.

Trochiſchi Alkakengi ſeu halycacabi, do mitigat the exulceratiõs of the kidnies & bladder, difficultie of vrine ariſing of thoſe parts, and piſſing of bloud. ℞. *Baccarum halycacabi* ℥. iij. *ſem. cytrulli, melonum & cucurbitæ mundatorum*, ana. ℥. iij. ß. *boli armeni, gummi Arabi, thuris, ſanguinis draconis, papaueris albi, amigdalarum amararum, ſucci glycyrrhizæ, tragacanthæ, amili, ſtrobylorum*, ana. ℥. vj. *ſemi. apii, ſuccini, terræ lemniæ, ſem. hyoſciami, opii* ana, ℥. ij. and with the iuyce of winter cherries, make Trochiskes of theſe ſimples. There be other Trochiskes without *opium* compounded like vnto theſe.

Trochiſchi è Myrrha.

Trochiſchi è myrrha, do mightily bring downe the flowres, and do cure the diſeaſes ariſing of their ſuppreſſiõ, & laſtly do expell the ſecõds or a dead childe. ℞. *Myrrhæ* ℥ iij. *lupinorum* ℥. v. *foliorum rutæ, mentaſtri, pulegii, cumini, rubeæ, aſſæ fœtidæ, ſagapeni, opoponacis* ana. ℥. ij. and of theſe be made Trochiskes with the iuyce of mugwort.

Trochiſchi è terra Lemnia.

Trochiſchi è terra Lemnia do ſtay courſing and outragious humors; eſpecially being thinne, do reſtraine the exceſſiue flux of the bellie inwardly taken, and being outwardly applyed, they doe ſuppreſſe profuſion of bloud, iſſuing either out of the noſe, or wombe, or hemerhoides, or any other part.

℞. *ſanguinis draconis, gummi Arab. Aſſali, ſpodii, acaciæ, hypociſchidos, lapidis hæmatitæ, balauſtiorum, boli armeni, terræ lemniæ, coralli rubri, ſuccini* ana. ℥. ij. *margaritarum, tragacanthæ, papaueris nigri* ana. ℥. j. ß. *ſeminis portulacæ toſti, cornu cerui vſti, thuris, nucum cupreſſi, croci* ana ℥. ij. and confect Trochiskes thereof with the iuyce of diſtilled water of plantaine.

PLANTIVS.

Trochiſchi è ramich be ſubtracted of the Trochiskes of *terra lemnia*, for that they

they comprehend the greateſt parte of them. Theſe Trochiskes *è terra lemnia* comprehend great ſtore of aſtringing and cooling ſimples, that therefore other aſtringing compoſitions be not requiſite. And ſith this receipt is of all other moſt effectuall and leaſt dangerous, all the other be ſuppreſſed, as *trochiſci ramich, trochiſci Diarrhodon, trochiſci oxyacantha, trochiſci è ſuccino ſeu carabe, & trochiſchi è ſpodio*, for that the compoſition of all thoſe is nothing apt nor neceſſarie. The Trochisches of *Diarrhodon* which do conſiſt of roſes, *Spodion*, redde and white ſaunders, of ſaffron and Camphire may ſupplie the place of theſe, eſpecially if they ſeeme to be vnpleaſant in taſte.

Trochiſci è Caphura.

Trochiſci è Caphura do aſſwage the heate of burning agues, the feruencie of bloud and choler, the inflammation and hote intempure of the intrailes, and whatſoeuer thirſt ariſeth thereof. ℞. *Roſarum rubrarum* ℥.ß *ſpodij, Glycyrrhiræ* .ana. ℥.ij. *quatuor ſeminum frigidorum maiorum, Tragacanthæ, gummi arabi, croci, Spicæ nardi, indicæ*. ana. ℥.j. *ſantali citrini*. ℥. ij. ß. *Ligni aloes, cardamomi, amyli, caphuræ* .ana. ℈. ij. *ſacchari albiſſ. mannæ electæ* .ana. ℥. iij. *muſcilaginis, ſſilij*, depromed out of roſewater, as much as ſufficeth to make Trochiskes.

Trochiſci Galliæ Moſchatæ.

Trochiſci Galliæ Moſchatæ do maruellouſly corroborate the hart, the braine, and the other intrailes, and doe giue a good ſmell to the mouth and the reſt of the bodie. ℞. *Ligni aloes crudi* ℥. v. *ambræ* ℥. iij. *moſchi*, ℥.j. *muſcilaginis tragacanthæ*, made in roſe water, ſo much as ſufficeth for trochiskes.

Trochiſci aliptæ Muſchatæ.

Trochiſci aliptæ moſchatæ haue the ſame effect, either inwardly receiued, or by ſuffumigation, and further ariddeth the bodie of difficultie of breathing. ℞. *Ladani puriſſimi* ℥. iij. *Styracis calaminthæ* ℥.j.ß. *ſtyracis rubræ* ℥.j. *ligni aloes* ℥.ij. *ambræ*, ℥.j. *caphuræ*. ℥.ß. *moſchi*, ℈.ß. and diſtilled roſe water, as much as need requireth.

Trochiſci Bechichi albi.

Trochiſci Bechichi albi, which be alſo termed *Pillulæ albæ*, do mitigate a ſharpe diſtillation, and do aſſwage hoarſneſſe and continuall cough. ℞. *Sacchari albiſſimi* ℔.j. *ſacchari candi, penidiorum* ℥.iiij. *radicis iridis florentini* ℥.ij. *amyli* ℥.j. ß. the muſcilage of tragacanth made in roſe water, ſo much as ſufficeth to the conformation of Trochiskes.

Trochiſci Narcotici.

Trochiſci Narcotici being ſafely applied, do aſſwage the paine of the head & teeth, do procure ſleepe in the burning of feauers, do extinguiſh *Eryſipelas*

and inflammations, and being dissolued in other medicines do mitigate the paine of all the externall parts. ℞. *Gummi arabici & tragacanthæ, amyli*, ana. ℥.ß. *ceruſæ lotæ aqua roſarum*. ℥.vj. *ſtyracis calamintæ, mirrhæ, caſtorij, opij Sapa ſoluti*, ana. ℈.iiij *croci*. ℥.ß and when they be all bruſed they are to be receiued and mingled with the muſcilage of fleewort taken out of roſe water, and thereof confect Trochiskes.

PLANTIVS.

The Author hath brought in to the order of Trochiskes in this laſt place, *Narcoticos trochiſcos* againſt extreame torments: the compoſition whereof is verie apt, and the vſe verie neceſſarie, and the rather, becauſe there be none extant which can ſerue for that purpoſe.

De Ecligmatis & Conditis.

Ecligma è pineis nucleis.

Ecligma è Pineis nucleis do extenuate and deterge groſſe humors of the breſt and lungs, verie conuenient and commodious againſt *Aſthma*, difficultie of breathing & inueterate coughes. ℞. *Nucleorum pineorum recentium*. ℥.30. *pulpæ palmularum*. ℥ xxxv. *amigdalarum dulcium & amararum, abellanarum aſſatarum, tragacanthæ, gummi arabici, Glycyrrhizæ, amyli, capilli veneris, iridis florentini*. ana. ℥ iiij. *pulpæ paſſularum, butyri recentis, ſacchari albiſſimi*. ana. ℥.iij. *mellis albi expumati*. ℔. iij. *fiat Ecligma*. A wholeſome and approued Ecligme more effectuall then the former againſt the ſame diſeaſes. ℞. *Cinamomi, Hyſſopi, glycirrhizæ*. ana. ℥. ß. *Reripha, & mixaria*. ana. xxx. *numero: Vuarum paſſarum purgatarum, ficuum aridarum, palmularum pinguium*. ana ℥. ij. *fenugræci*. ℥.v. *capilli veneris*. M. j. *ſem. anniſi, fœniculi & lini, radicis iridis, foliorum calaminthæ*. ana. ℥.ß. boile them all in ℔.iiij. of water to the conſumption of two, and boile againe the ſtreined iuyce with ℔.ij. *fenidiorum* to the thickneſſe of hony, and then put in *pinearum expurgatarum*. ℥.v. *amigdalarum dulcium mundatarum, Glycyrrhizæ, tragacanthæ, gummi arabi, amyli*. ana. ℥.iij. *iridis*. ℥.ij.

Ecligma è Scylla.

Ecligma è ſcylla auaileth againſt the ſame diſeaſes. ℞. *Succi ſeu mucoris ſcyllæ & mellis optimi expumati*. ana. ℔.j. boile thé to the conſiſtence of an ecligme.

Ecligma ad aſthma.

Ecligma ad aſthma is an Ecligme which of all other before propounded is [illegible] effectuall againſt *aſthma*. ℞. *Scyllæ aſſatæ*. ℥.ß. *radicis iridis, hyſſopi, [illegible] cubij*. ana. ℥.j. *myrrhæ, croci*. ana. ℥.ß with ſufficient quantitie of hony let the compound Ecligme of *Scylla* be confected.

Many ſimples be condited with ſugar, that they may the longer continue with

with their full vertue, whereof some be whole, some be bruſed: ſuch as be whole be boyled in thrice ſo much ſugar vntill the whole moiſture conſumed, there remaineth the perfect conſiſtencie of a ſyrupe, as for example: *Acorus* is condited againſt the cold diſeaſes of the braines and nerues, and to recouer their ſtrength.

Zinziber is condited againſt the cruditie of the ſtomach and ſlimie fleame in the loungs.

The roote of Bugloſſe is condited againſt the palpitation of the heart and quaulming.

Peaches, fragrant apples, the rinde of the citrine be condited againſt *Cardialgia*, and *Melancholia*.

Quince peares, and *Diacydonion*, and peares, be condited to ſtrengthen & corroborate the ſtomach.

Wallnuttes, *mirabolani, emblici & Cepuli*, and nutmegs being condited, do further the concoction of the ſtomach, do get an appetite and encreaſe ſtrength.

Cheries and the ſlippes of endiue, purſlane and lettuce condited, do refrigerate, aſſwage thirſt, and procure appetite.

Berberies and Ceruiſes being condited, do alay thirſt and the feruencie of choler, and reſtraine fluxe of the wombe.

Saterion and *Eringium* condited, do encreaſe the ſeed, and ſtirre vp a deſire to carnalitie, and further conception.

Conſeruæ.

BVT ſuch as cannot well be boyled, let them be bruſed and mixed with twice ſo much ſugar, and ſo be ſet in the ſunne and conſerued, and retaine the name of compounded ſugar, as Ioſacchar, Rhodoſacchar. But of all other kindes of compound ſugar, theſe ought eſpecially to be in a readineſſe. Sugar of roſemarie, of the flowres of ſage, of the flowres of Betonie, and of ſtœchados, of the flowres of Piony, for that they be eſpeciall good againſt the colde diſeaſes of the braine and nerues, to comfort and ſtrengthen them againſt the Epilepſie and Apoplexie.

The ſugar of the flowres of flowredeluce, of maidenhaire, and of the roote of Enula, doth mildly purge the breaſt, and eaſe the lungs.

The ſugar of Comferie doth ſtay ſpitting of bloud.

The ſugar of violets, and the flowres of Bugloſſe doth refrigerate and chere the heart.

Sugar of roſes ſtrengtheneth the ſtomach, ſtayeth diſtillations and reſtraineth eruption of bloud.

Sugar of the flowres of Cichorie cooleth the liuer, and openeth the obſtructions thereof.

Further, there be ſundrie medicinable iuyces reſerued to vſe, whereof ſome be ſimple and pure, others mixed with ſugar, which for that by boyling they come to the thickneſſe of *ſapa*, be therefore termed of the Arabians *robuo*, that is, *ſapales*. Theſe iuyces being ſtrained, be permitted to ſettle vntill they waxe cleare, and then the purer portion thereof is boiled to the thickneſſe of hony, and then is ſet in the ſunne, and ſo is kept. If ſugar be therewith to be mingled, it muſt be in weight halfe ſo much as the iuyce is.

Succus è nucibus.

Succus è nucibus, termed *Dyacaryon*, auaileth againſt ſharpe diſtillations and *angina*, and hath of the iuyce of young wallnuts ℔.iiij. *mellis optimi* ℔.ij. and be boiled to the thickneſſe of honie.

Succus è moris.

Succus è Moris termed *Dyamoron*, is good againſt the fretting vlcers of the mouth and iawes, and ſharpe diſtillations. ℞. *Succi mororum domeſticorum* ℔ ß. *ſucci mororum rubri, mellis optimi expumati* .ana. ℔.j. *ſapæ* ℥.iij. boile them to the conſiſtencie of hony.

The iuyce of wilde plumbes be boyled vntill they become thicke, and then they be vſed in ſtead of *Acacia*.

Of Medicines applyed outwardlie, and firſt of Oyles.

Oleum Roſarum.

Oleum Roſarum doth quench inflammations and burning in the ſtomach, it doth ſtrengthen, thicken, and ſtay fluxes. ℞. *Gummarum roſarum rubrarum recentium* bereft of the prickes, and bruſed, *ſucci roſarum* ana. ℔. j. macerate them in ℔. v. of *Oleum Omphacinum* which is without ſalt, in a veſſell of glaſſe cloſely ſhut, then ſet them ſeuen daies in the ſun, after boile them three houres in a double veſſell, and the leaues being ſtrained and caſt away, put in new, & change them twiſe or thriſe: in fine the leaues being againe ſtrained and caſt away, ſet it in the ſun, and boile it in a double veſſell vntill the iuyce be conſumed. If you want *oleum omphacinum* without ſalt, the common oile muſt be often times ſtirred and waſhed in the iuyce of ſowre grapes.

Oleum Violarum.

Oleum violarum quencheth heate, abateth hote inflammations, eaſeth the pleuriticke, and aſſwageth the diſeaſes of the lungs and breſt: it is made of common oile being old, or of oile of almonds being new and vnſauorie, or which at the leaſt is waſhed with cold water, then freſh purple violets be put into the oile in a veſſell well couered, and be ſet to ſun vntill ten daies, and euerie third day, the violets be changed, and in the end drie violets be put in.

Oleum Nymphæ.

Oleum Nymphæ doth more refrigerate, and doth eſpecially aſſwage the heat of the

of the kidneyes, bladder, and head; mitigateth madneſſe, procureth ſleepe: it is made as oile of violets, of the white flowres of water lillies macerated in laued oile, but it is ſet in the ſunne twenty daies: in the which ſpace the flowres be chaunged thrice.

Oleum Papaueris.

Oleum Papaueris worketh the ſame effectes that *Oleum Nimpheæ* doth, but more effectually and properly, it appeaſeth paine of the head, madneſſe, and procureth ſleepe. The flowres, leaues, and heads of white poppie being bruſed, be macerated in laued oile, and it is made as *oleum Nympheæ*, yet it may be mildly in a double veſſell: there be which do preſſe out the oile of the ſeeds of poppie, as out of almonds.

Oleum Hyoſcyami albi.

Oleum Hyoſcyami albi is prepared in like order as oile of poppie, both by maceration and expreſſion, and is as effectuall as oile of poppie for all the repeated purpoſes.

Oleum Mandragoræ ſimplex.

Oleum Mandragoræ ſimplex doth more apparantly refrigerate, aſſwageth paine proceeding of inflamation & procureth ſleep, it is confected of the apples of mãdrag bruſed & macerated in oile, & eaſily boiled as *oleum Nympheæ*.

Oleum Mandragoræ compoſitum.

Oleum Mandragoræ compoſitum, doth of all other moſt effectually refrigerate, and doth aſſwage the paines comming of inflammation, and other aggrieuances whatſoeuer: being annointed it doth mitigate the ach of the head, and freneſie, and put to the noſtrilles, forthwith it procureth ſleepe. ℞. *Olei*. ℔ ij. ß. *Succi pomorum mandragoræ*. ℥ iij. *Succi hyoſcyami albi*. ℥ ij. *ſucci capitum papaueris albi*. ℥ iij. *ſucci violarum, ſucci cicutæ tenerrimæ*. ana. ℥ j. *Opii, ſtyracis, calaminthæ*. ana. ℥ ß. all which muſt be mixed together, and ſtand in the ſunne ten dayes, and after be boiled in a double veſſell vntill the iuyce be conſumed: in the end the oyle muſt be ſtrained and ſet vp vntill need require.

Oleum Melinum, quod & Cydoniorum.

Oleum Melinum, quod & Cydoniorum refrigerateth, aſtringeth, is verie good for the ſtomach, intrailes and liuer being feebled, for that by annointing it reſtraineth vomite, laske and ſweate. ℞. *Cydoniorum cum cortice & ſemine tuſorum, ſucci Cydoniorum*. ana. ℔ ß mingle them in a veſſell of glaſſe, and powre in of *Oleum omphacinum*. ℔ j. ß. ſet them in the ſunne fifteene dayes, then boile them foure houres in a double veſſell, and the quince peare being ſtrained, other freſh are likewiſe to be incocted the ſecond time, and alſo the third time vntill the humour be wholly conſumed. In fine preſſe out the oile and keepe it to your vſe.

Oleum myrtinum.

Oleum myrtinum refrigerateth, astringeth and comforteth, but properly the heart, stomacke, braine and nerues, it is madeas *Milium* of the berries & leaues of Mirtle, by adding the iuice also when they cānot be come by.

Oleum Mastichinum.

Oleum mastichinum, doth by astriction corroborate the braine, sinewes, stomach and liuer, very commdious againſt Lientery, vomit, and crudity. ℞. *mastiches*, ℥. iij. *aquæ rosarum*. ℥. iiij. *olei omphacini vel rosacei*. ℔. j. Boile them in a double vessell to the consumption of the water. Wine in stead of rose water is put in, when as the wearinesse or the vnlustinesse of the sinewes is to bee asswaged.

Oleum menthæ.

Oleum menthæ doth by annointing corroborate the stomach & other parts, furthereth concoction with a moderate heate, and it is confected in this wise. The leaues of sowen Mintes bruised with the iuice be macerated in oile of *Omphacinum*, set in the sunne, boiled, and oftentimes chaunged as hath beene shewed in the oile of roses.

Oleum Absinthij.

Oleum Absinthij doth moderately calefie and corroborate, doeth further concoction, procure appetite, open obstructions, kill wormes. The tops and leaues of wormewood bee bruised and macerated in *Oleo omphacino*, and it is absolued as oile of Mint.

Oleum chamemelinum.

Oleum chamemelinum, doth with an easie obstruction corroborat the sinews and membranes, and doth excellently asswage paine. ℞. *Foliorũ chamemeli recentium & tuforum*. ℔. j. infuse and macerate them in sweete mature oile, and let them stand in the sunne twenty of the Canicular daies, and straining and casting away the leaues, reserue the oile.

Oleum liliorum.

Oleum Liliorum asswageth the paine of the breast, stomacke, wombe, kidnyes, bladder, and sinewes, and doth ease and concoct them. ℞. *Florum Liliorum alborum integrorum*, casting onely away the yellow filaments. ℔. j. macerate them in sweete and mature oile, and set them in the sunne twenty daies. There is also another compound oile made hereof more effectuall to all the purposes which I haue tofore repeated, which receiueth *mastiches, calami aromatici, costi, olei pirethri, carpobalsami*. ana. ℥. j. *cariophiliorum & cinamomi*. ana. ℥. ß. *croci*. ℥. iij. Bruse them all and macerate them in water foure and twenty houres. After let them boile a little, and being taken from the fire, powre in of sweete oile. ℔. ij. of the leaues of lillies. ℥. viij. set them forty daies in the sunne, then straine out the oile and keepe it to your vse.

Oleum

Oleum leucoij lentei.

Oleum Leucoi lentei, asswageth the paines of the breast, kidneis, sinewes, and iointes. ℞. *Florum leucoii.* ℔. j. macerated in ℔. j. ß. of sweete oile, set in the sunne tenne daies, changing the floures thrise, and the oile expressed is kept, by putting thereto if you thinke good. ℥. ij. of the dry floures.

Oleum iasminum.

Oleum iasminum worketh the same effect which *Leucoij* did, but more forciblie. Further it is an especiall mollifying and lenitiue oile, it is made as the oile of Lillies was of the flowres of Iasmine.

Oleum anethinum.

Oleum anethinum doth moderatly calefie and digest, asswageth pain of the head, and ache of the sinewes, procureth sleepe, it is made of the leaues of dill, which be macerated in sufficient quantity of sweete oile, and set in the sunne one day, or concocted in a double vessell, and the oile being strained from the leaues is reserued.

Oleum amigdalarum dulcium.

Oleum amigdalarum dulcium, doth mitigate paine, comfort the exasperated partes, especially the lungs and kidneis, it mollifieth dry and hard matter, and is very meete for such as haue the Hecticke feuer, and bee consumed: it is made in this wise; Sweete Almondes being diligently purged, be much bruised, and then there is powred vppon them a little rosewater; after put into a vessell, they are kept and fostered as it were in hote water, that they may become somewhat hote. Lastly put in a little bagge, they are pressed in a presse vntill the oile issue out.

Oleum lumbricorum.

Oleum lumbricorum doth mollifie with a moderate heat, and asswage paine, very conuenient for such as be bruised, and haue paine in the ioynts. ℞. *Lumbricorum terrestrium lotorum & præparatorum.* ℔. ß. *vini albi.* ℥. ij. *olei dulcis.* ℔. ij. Boile them to the consumption of the wine, and the washing of the wormes, then straine the oile and reserue it to your vse.

Oleum Irinum.

Oleum Irinũ doth concoct, extenuate, and dissolue, it asswageth pain of the liuer, wombe, & ioints, it concocteth likewise the offending matter of the lungs and breast. ℞. *radicum iridis tunsarum.* ℔. ß. *florum integrorũ.* ℔. j. *decocti*, or if

you wish to haue it work more effectually, take of the iuyce of another floure-deluce .℔.j. *Olei dulcis* ℔.ij.ß. boile them in a double vessell till the water euaporate: and straining the rootes and leaues preserue the oile.

Oleum Rutaceum.

Oleum Rutaceum calefieth and attenuateth grosse humours, dissipateth winde more forcibly then dill, it auaileth against the cholicke, palsey, crampe, and coldnesse of the wombe and bladder. ℞. *foliorum rutæ modicè succorum, succi eiusdem* .ana. ℔. ß. macerate them three dayes in ℔. iiij. of sweete oile: boyle them in a double vessell vntill the iuyce be consumed, and then straining the rew, change it 3. or 4. times: in fine reserue the oile expressed.

Oleum è Amigdalarum amararum.

Oleum Amigdalarum amararum doth mightily attenuate and diuide, doeth dissipate winde, especially the noise of the eares, aud openeth the obstructions of the liuer and other intrailes by attenuating and deterging, it mollifyeth hardnesse but especially of the sinewes, it is confected of bitter almonds dried and purged, brused and calefied in hote boyling water, and pressed in a presse vntill the oile come out.

Oleum è Capparibus.

Oleum è Capparibus by extenuation and detersion doth dissolue euerie hardnesse and obstruction, but especially of the spleene, it asswageth the aggrieuances, and easeth euerie disease of the same. ℞. *Corticis radicum tamarisci, foliorum tamarisci, sem. agni, scolopendrii seu asplenii, Cyperi* .ana. ℥.ij. *aceti, vini optimi* .ana. ℥. ij. *Olei maturi* .℔ j. boyle them in a double vessell to the consumption of the wine and vineger: then straine the oile and store it.

Oleum Nardinum.

Oleum Nardinum doeth calefie, attenuate, digest and strengthen, and as well the simple as the compound doth redresse the cold and flatulent diseases of the braine, stomacke, liuer, spleene, kidneis, bladder and wombe. ℞. *Spicæ nardi* .℥.iij. *vini optimi, aquæ rosaceæ* .an. ℥.ij. ß. *Olei dulcis* .℔.j.ß. boile them three houres in a double vessell with no verie quicke fire vntill the wine and the water do euaporate.

Oleum Nardinum compositum.

Oleum Nardinum compositum. ℞. *Spicæ nardi* .℥.iij. *sampsuchi* .℥ ij. *Xiloaloes, Enulæ, folii aut maceris, Calami aromatici aut galangæ, foliorum tauri, Cyperi, sicnanthi, cardamomi*. ana. ℥.j. ß. these being brused powre into them *vini, aquæ rosaceæ* .ana. ℔. j. *Olei dulcis* .℔.v. macerate them foure and twentie houres, and then boyle them in a double vessell sixe houres, stirring it now and then vntill the wine and water be consumed.

Oleum

Oleum laurinum.

Oleum laurinum is hote and extenuating, doeth dissipate the winde of the stomach, the cholicke, and dissolueth cold diseases of the head, intrailes, wombe, kidneyes and ioynts. The ripe berries of Laurell be brused and boyled a good space in water, and the salt that swimmeth aboue the strained decoction when it is cooled, must be gathered together and stored vp for oyle.

Oleum vulpinum.

Oleum vulpinum attenuateth and somewhat digesteth, it auaileth against the goute and all paines of the ioynts at all times of the sickneſſe. Boyle a foxe vncased, and vnboyled cut into little gobbets, and in like portion of fountaine and sea or salt water, and when it is boyled to the halfe, put in *Salis* ℥ iij. *olei veteris puri.* ℔.iiij. *thymi, anethi, origani.* ana. ℔.ß. Boile them till one ioynt fall from another, and till the consumption of the water, and then presse out the oyle.

Oleum è Scorpionibus.

Oleum è Scorpionibus doth so forcibly extenuate, that being annointed vpon the loynes, it is thought to breake and disturbe the stone of the kidneyes, and being annointed vpon the share, or on the peritoneum, or iniected into the bladder. ℞. *radicis aristolochiæ rotundæ, gentianæ, cyperi, corticum radicum capparis.* ana ℥.j. Bruse them al & macerate them in. ℔.j.ß. of oyle of bitter almonds, and set them to sunne twentie dayes: then boyle them in a double vessell with a lent fire. In the end put in xv. Scorpions, and set them in the sunne againe xxx. dayes, then straine the oile and keepe it to your vse.

Oleum Terebinthinæ.

Oleum Terebinthinæ is hote and extenuating, and more penetrating then turpentine it selfe. Wherefore it doeth mollifie and extenuate hard tumors, and doth take away cold diseases of the nerues & ioynts, and notwithstanding comfort and strengthen them. ℞. *Terebinthinæ lucidæ.* ℔. iiij. put it in a cucurbite of glasse, and set it in sand, and by making a fire vnder it, by alchymie, first you shall distill out the water, secondly a moist cleare oyle, and lastly a yellow oyle.

Oleum recinium.

Oleum recinium, which they call *Oleum de Kerra*, doth mightily extenuate and digest, and therfore doth dissipate the paine and noise of the eares, doth scoure the issuing vlcers of the head, and aridd'eth the bodie of *Psora, Lepra*, and grisly scarres, and ministred in a clyster, it bringeth out wormes & water: it is made thus. ℞. The seedes of the greater spurge being brused, oile is pressed out of them in such force and maner as out of almonds.

Oleum balaninum.

Oleum balaninum doth dissolue paine and noise of the eares, doeth washe away the speckles, pimpels, spottes, and blacke scarres, prouoketh the belly, and procureth vomite; it is made of *Balanum miretsica*, which the Arabians call *Been*, and it is bruised, calefied, and oile is pressed out of the same in such wise as out of Almondes.

Oleum è castoreo.

Oleum è castoreo auaileth much against the cold diseases of the nerues and braine, against deafenesse and noise of the eares, and the extreme coldnesse of agues. ℞. *castorij in aqua vitæ soluti*, ℥. j. *olei*. ℔ j. Boile them in a double vessell till the consumption of the third part.

Oleum euphorbij simplex.

Oleum euphorbij simplex worketh the same effect, but more forcibly, and put into the nosethrils, it bringeth downe fleame. ℞. *Euphorbij*. ℥. ß. *leucoij lentei, vini oderiferi*. an. ℥. v. Boile them to the consumption of the wine.

Oleum de lateribus.

Oleum de lateribus which is also tearmed the Philosophers oile, doth calefie, penetrate, and mollifie hard matter, resolue and dissipate colde humours, and easeth the Crampe, epilepsie, palsey, the goute, and all cold affects of the iointes and nerues; the making thereof is in this wise. Breake an old red tile stone to litle peeces, burne those in hot coales, vntill they become altogether as hote as fire, then take them out and extinguishe them in cleare old oile, and let them so continue vntill they bee replenished with oile, after take them out of the oile, and bruse them into fine powder, and put the powder in a cucurbit of glasse: distill an oile thereof according to art, and store it to your vse.

Petroleum.

Petroleum, that is, naturall oile of stones, is extreme hoate and extenuating, penetrating, drying, and digesting, it consumeth cold water whatsoeuer in any part of the body, it dissolueth the Epilepsie, palsey, crampe, paine of the sinewes and iointes, of the splene, kidneis, bladder, and all cold affectes of the womb. This oile commeth not by art but by nature, and in many places it issueth out of stones and rockes.

Plantivs in Olea.

The Author imitating the vsuall and auncient composition of oiles, thought good to alter nothing in them, neither was there any such necessity to alter them for pleasure of the affected, for that they bee outwardlie applied; hee made choise and hath sette downe the moste effectuall oiles against all kinde of causes and diseases, with omitting the other which

were

were of litle vertue, or seemed vnnecessarie: for he accounteth *Oleum Nimphæ citrinæ* superuacuous, for that it is contained vnder the other, and *Oleum populeum*, for that vnguentum *populeum* is of greater vertue: and he omitteth likewise the oile of the other mandrag, *Oleum costiuum*, *oleum de piperibus*, and *Oleum maiorani*, and *Irinum compositum*, for that there be many other sufficient extant, which may be vsed with more facilitie and yet haue a greater power to calefie, attenuate and digest.

Vnguentum Galeni refrigerans.

VNguentum *Galeni refrigerans* is effectuall against *phlegmonaes*, *Erysipelata* and tetters, and against euerie hote intempure. ℞. *Ceræ albæ* ℥.viij. *Olei rosati* ℔.j. and when they be molten in a double vessel, powre them into another, and by powring cold water by litle and litle, and now and then changing are to be tempered a good space: in the end, the strained iuyce of houseleeke or of morrell is powred and tempered therewith, especially if it be applied to affects not exulcerated, or else vineger affused, if the skinne continue hot and not exulcerated.

PLANTIVS, *in Vnguenta.*

Notwithstanding *Galen* his refrigerating oyntment according to the vsual description hath neither the iuyce of nightshade, nor houseleeke, yet by adiection of them it becommeth effectuall against the affectes which require refrigeration.

Vnguentum Rosarum.

VNGVENTVM *Rosarum* is applyed vnto the same affectes, but truely it is not of such efficacie. The making thereof is in this wise. Swines greace purified from the membranes must be washed nine times in hote water, and as oft in cold water, then like weight of redde roses brused must be mingled therewith, and so must stand seuen daies to putrifie; then melt the greace with a lent fire and straine it: and againe macerating so much of brused roses seuen dayes, infusing together halfe of the iuyce of roses, and oile of almondes sixe parts, then againe boile them with a lent fire vntill the whole iuyce be sucked vppe.

Vnguentum Populeum.

VNguentum *populeum* asswageth phlegmones, burning of agues, feruent heat of the head & kidneis, and annointed vpon the temples procureth sleepe. ℞. *Germinarum populi recentium* ℔.j. macerated in ℔.iij. of fresh swines greace prepared vntill all the simples w̄ in order do followe may in summer be come by. ℞. *Foliorum papaueris rubri*, *foliorum mandragoræ*, *foliorum hyosciami*, *cymarum rutæ tenerrimarū*, *solani*, *lactucæ*, *semperviui*, *maioris & minoris bardanæ*, *violæ*, *vmbilici*, *veneris*, ana. ℥.iij bruse them and mixe them with the greace and the buds of the

poplar, and after ten dayes infuse ℔. j. of rosewater. Boyle them with a lent fire, vntill the water and whole liquor be consumed, then straine it, and presse it, and if neede so require, boyle it againe vntill it come to the temperament of an ointment.

Vnguentum album.

VNguentum *album* refrigerating and mildly astringing, doth assuage inflammation and exustions, and doth allay the heate of scabbes and itch, and all out-breakings of choler. ℞ *ceruſæ.* ℥. iiij. *lytargiri.* ℥. ij. lay them in rosewater a good space, then cast away the rosewater, and put them in a morter, and then by litle and litle poure into them so much rose oile as they can drinke vp, continually stirring and tempering them vntill they appeare in forme of an ointment: in conclusion adde thereunto a little white vineger, and ℥. j. ß. of camphire.

Plantivs.

This kinde of white ointment which is here described, is alone sufficient in steed of those which be termed *vnguentum de lythargira, vnguentum nutritum, vnguentum de ceruſa crudum, & vnguentum de ceruſa coctum*, which is tearmed also *Emplaſtrum de ceruſa*: for this one ointment containeth the vertue of them all.

Vnguentum aſtringens.

VNguentum *aſtringens*, the astringing ointment bringeth together the open parts of the bodie, doth compact the conduites and poares, doth intercept and driue backe fluxes, restraineth the going out of the mother, of the wombe, of the *anus*, and of the gut, and being applied doth stay issue of blood. ℞ *gallæ immaturæ, nucum cupreſſi, baccarum myrti, balauſtiorum, mollis corii corticum glandium, acaciæ, rhois, maſtiches.* ana. ℥. j. Bruse them all exquisitely, and macerate them about foure dayes in the iuyce of vnripe medlers *& ſorborum immaturorum.* Then dry them with a lent fire, and confect thereof an ointment with ℔. j. of oyle of roses often laued in allume water, and ℥. iiij. of white waxe.

Plantivs.

This astringent ointment for that it is verie forcible, and easie to be come by, it is to be vsed *pro vnguento comitiſſæ* or any other astringing ointment.

Vnguentum diacalcyteos.

VNguentum *diacalcyteos* which they terme *Palmeum*, doth stay all fluxes lately begunne, and doth resolue such as be inueterate, doth agglutinate maligne vlcers *& dyſepulotica.* ℞. *adipis ſuillæ r centis ſine ſale & fibris.* ℔. ij. *olei veteris, lythargiri cereti & triti.* ana. ℔. iij. *calcitidis læuigatæ.* ℥. iiij. The greace and the oyle be molten with a lent fire, and the Litharge and Vitriol must be then cast vpon them, stirring it continually with three greene boughs *Palmæ aut*

ſalicis

saltem mirti, sorbi or *mespilini*, and when it is come to the thickneſſe of a cerate, the tender boughes (cut in peeces) muſt be put in by little and little as it is in boyling. Then boyle it againe vntill it ſtaine not the fingers, & become to the conſiſtencie of an emplaiſter.

PLANTIVS.

Vnguentum diacalciteos (according to this deſcription of Galen) is to be vſed inſteed of thoſe foure which *Meſues* hath deſcribed, two vnder the title of *vnguentum diaphenicon*, and the other two vnder the title of *vnguentum palmeum*.

Vnguentum diapompholygos.

VNguentum *diapompholygos* refrigerateth, aſtringeth, and reſtringeth fluxe, filleth hollow vlcers, and bringeth maligne vlcers to a ſcarre. ℞. *Olei roſacei* ℥. x. *ſucci ſolatri.* ℥. xiiij. *bulliant ad ſucci conſumptionem. Adde ceræ albæ.* ℥. v. *ceruſæ lotæ.* ℥. ij. *plumbi vſti & loti, pompholigis, thuris.* ana. ℥. j. *coquantur in vnguenti formam.*

Vnguentum rubrum exſiccans.

VNguentum *rubrum exſiccans*, the red drying ointment worketh the ſame effect. ℞. *Olei roſarum.* ℔. j. *ceræ albæ.* ℥. v. *liquatis inſperge lapidis calaminaris, terræ lemniæ exquiſitè tritorum.* ana. ℥. iiij. *Lythargiri, ceruſæ.* ana. ℥. iij. *caphuræ.* ℥. j. boile them into an ointment.

Vnguentum dialtheos.

VNguentum *dialtheos* is of a moderate calefying, mollifying, humectiue and lenitiue vertue. ℞. *altheæ radicum recentium & contuſarum.* ℔. ij. *ſeminis lini & fenugræci contuſorum.* ana. ℔. j. *macerentur in aquæ.* ℔. viij. *deinde leniter coquãtur, & exprimatur muſcilago de hac.* ℔. ij. *& olei.* ℔. iiij. *bulliant dum muſcilago ſit abſumpta: tum adde ceræ.* ℔. ß. *reſinæ.* ℔. ß. *terebinthinæ.* ℥. ij. *percoquantur in vnguenti craſſitiem.*

PLANTIVS.

Vnguentum dialtheos ſimplex is here deſcribed, for that the cõpound through *Colophonium, Galbanum and Gummi hederæ*, was too filthie, and there were other receipts extant of a more diſſoluing vertue.

Vnguentum reſumptiuum.

VNguentum *reſumptiuum dictum*, hath great power mildly to mollifie without anie manifeſt heate, and therefore may be ſafely applyed to ſuch as haue *Aſthma* or *Hecticam feb. em*, a conſumption, Pleuriſie, or an ague. ℞. *ſeminis lini, altheæ & fenugræci, gummi Arabici, tragacanthæ.* ana. ℥. ij. *macerentur & bulliant in* ℔. ß. *aquæ roſarum.* Straine out the muſcilage, and therein diſſolue *adipis ſuilli, gallinæ, anſeris & anatis.* ana. ℥. ij. *æſipi.* ℥. ß. *olei violarum, chamemeli &*

amigdalarum dulcium. ana. ℥. ij. *medulla vituli, butiri recentis, cerae albae.* ana. lib. ß. *coquaptur in vnguentum.*

PLANTIVS.

This ointment which is entituled *resumptiuum*, is described so excellently well, that it is preferred before all the other which be compounded either to mollifie, asswage, or to relaxe. For neither the ointment *diadipibus*, neither the double pectorall vnguent, & *vnguentum philagrij*, neither anie other hath bene at any time inuented more excellent to mollifie, & to the fore repeated purposes.

Vnguentum Agrippae.

VNguentum *Agrippae* doth not only mollifie, but also mightely attenuate and deuide and dissipate *ædemata corporis*, cureth inueterate affectes of the sinewes, easeth paine of the kidneyes, and by annointing prouoketh the bellie, and thereby helpeth the dropsie-sicke. ℞. *radicis brioniae.* ℔. ij. *radicum cucumeris agrestis.* ℔. j. *scyllae.* ℔. ß. *radicis ireos recentis.* ℥. iij. *radicum filicis & ebuli, tribuli marini.* ana. ℥. ij. *tunsa omnia recentia macerentur diebus sex vel octo in olei veteris non rancidi.* lib. iiij. *parum deinde feruefiant, & in expresso olei cerae citrinae.* ℥. xv. *liquefiant in vnguento consistentiam.*

PLANTIVS.

The Authour doth vpon good occasion admonish, that in the oyntment of *Agrippa* all the simples should be fresh, and that they must not be boyled much. For notwithstanding being crude, they haue a mollifying and attenuating vertue, yet by boyling that vertue perisheth and is lost: wherfore the Author did in another place verie wisely commaund, that no especiall effectuall cataplasme should be confected to mollifie scirrhous and hard matters of these rootes bruised, and crude with greace and waxe.

Vnguentum Aregon.

VNguentum *Aregon*, that is, the helping ointment, doth mightely extenuate and digest, and is verie commodious against cold affects of the bodie, but specially of the sinewes, and is very conuenient against conuulsion, resolution, paine of the loungs, ioynts and great guts. ℞. *rorismarini, maioranae, radicis iuari, serpilli, rutae, radicu cucumeris agrestis.* ana. ℥. iiij. ß. *foliorum lauri, saluiae, sabinae, pulicariae maioris & minoris, radicis brionie.* ana. ℥. iij. *laureolae.* ℥. ix. *foliorum cucumeris, agrestis & nopitae.* ana. ℔. ß. *omnia Maio mense collecta & expurgata tundantur recentia, & macerentur diebus septem in olei optimi.* ℔. vj. *affusa aqua vitae* ℔. j. *deinde coquantur dum contabescant & absumpta sit aqua, oleum percolatur in quo cerae.* ℥. xvj. *liquantur & adipis vrsini, olei laurini.* ana. ℥. iij. *olei moschelini.* ℥. ß. *petrolei.* ℥. j. *butyri.* ℥. iiij. *agitando hi pulueres inspergantur mastiches, olibani.* ana. ℥ vij. *pirethri, euphorbij, zinziberis, piperis.* ana. ℥. j. *omnia vnguenti forma coeant.*

Vnguentum

Vnguentum merciatum magnum.

VNguentum merciatum magnum is especially good against colde affectes of the braine, finewes and iointes, against quiuering, conuulsion, palsey, and the goute, and is effectuall to mollifie hard tumours especially of the splene. ℞. *ceræ albæ.* ℔. j. *olei.* ℔ iiij. *roris marini, foliorum lauri.* ana. ℥. iiij. *tamarisci.* ℥. iij. *rutæ.* ℥. iij. ß. *ebuli, sauinæ, balsamitæ,* that is, *menthæ aquaticæ, ocymi, salinæ, folij, calaminthes, artemisiæ, helleny, betonicæ, acanthæ, quæ est orsa branchina, asparagulæ quæ est aparinæ anemones quæ herba venti dicitur, pimpinellæ, agrimonij, absinthij, florum minoris, qui & herba paralisis, costi herbæ hortensis, quæ herba dicitur sanctæ Mariæ, cimarum sampsuci, semperuiui minoris quod Crassula appellatur, millefolij, semperuiui maioris, chamedrios, plantaginis seu quinque nerui, centauri minoris, fragrariæ, quinque folii, tetrahit, id est, herbæ iudaicæ.* ana. ℥. ij. ℥. ij. *radicis albæ, cumini, mirrhæ* ana. ℥. j. ß. *fænugræci.* ℥. vj. *butyri.* ℥. v. *semi. vrticæ, violarum & papaueris rubri, mentæ astri, seu mentæ agrestis, mentæ satinæ, oxylapati, polytrichi, cardiobatani, id est, cardui benedicti, periclementi, id est, caprifolii, seu matris syluæ, maratri, herbæ moschatæ, quæ est prima geranii species, trifolii acetosi, quod alelnya dicitur, scolopendrii, quod est ceterach, crispulæ, id est buphthalini, caphoratæ herbæ, id est abrotani, styracis, medullæ ceruinæ.* ana. ℥. ij. *adipis vrsini, adipis gallinacei, mastiches.* ana. ℥. ß. *thuris.* ℥. ij. *olei nardini.* ℥. j. The herbes must be gathered in the moneth of May, and being fresh and greene, must be bruised and macerated seuen daies in the best fragrant wine, and the eight day they must be boiled together, vntill the halfe be consumed, and then the oile must be powred in, then they must bee againe boiled vntill the herbes be wasted and the wine wholly consumed. After straine and presse out the oyle, in which (calefied againe) put, in the order prescribed, *styrax, butirum, adipes, mastiche, thus, oleum nardinum & cera,* and when they are dissolued with continuall stirring, take them off the fire, and keepe to your vse the ointment then concrete.

Plantivs.

Of *vnguentum Merciatum* there be three descriptions described in other authors truly not verie necessarie against the cold affects of the sinewes & other parts, sith that *vnguentum Aregon* tofore described is effectuall enough against them: but whosoeuer desireth to haue this *vnguentum Merciatum*, let him follow this description taken out of *Nicolaus Mirepsus* and corrected.

Vnguentum Basilicum minus.

VNguentum Basilicum minus which the auncient Physitions tearmed *Tetrapharmacum*, doth calefie, humect and mitigate paine, procureth atter, and is verie commodious against increasing Phlegmons. ℞. *resinæ, picis, ceræ.* ana. ℔. ß. and oile as much as sufficeth.

Vnguentum basilicum magnum.

VNguentum *Basilicum magnum* worketh the same effect, and doth purifie and fill vlcers. ℞. *ceræ albæ, resinæ, seui vaccini, picis, terebinthinæ, olibani, mirrhæ,* ana. ℥. j. *olei quod satis est.*

PLANTIVS.

The Authour thought good to alter nothing in these ointments, namely *vnguento basilico, aureo, Apostolorum, AEgyptiaco & emulato,* but he corrected the vncertaine & depraued doses of the simples in *vnguento citrino*; and he thought good to put in more *radicis dracuntij* (which hath great vertue against the propounded affects of the skinne) then of *ceruse*, or of any other simple. And in the order of composition he hath expressed a certaine maner of putting in the oringes or citrines, whose pulpe & iuyce is no lesse commodious against those malignities of the skinne, yea rather much more better then the rinde.

Vnguentum aureum.

VNguentum *aureum* doth mildly deterge wounds, agglutinate & safely cure them. ℞. *ceræ citrinæ.* ℔. ß. *thuris, masticbes,* ana. ℥. j. *olei non rancidi.* ℔. ij. ß. *terebinthinæ.* ℥. ij. *resinæ, colophoni.* ana. ℥. j. ß. *croci.* ℥. j. the waxe is melted in oyle, and the other simples being exquisitely bruised be put in to them.

Vnguentum Apostolorum.

VNguentum *Apostolorum* doth by detersion purge wounds and rebellious vlcers, and also fistulaes, wasteth fungious and dead flesh, & in steed thereof restoreth new. ℞. *terebinthinæ, ceræ albæ, ammoniaci.* ana. ℥. xiiij. *opoponacis, floris æris.* ana. ℥. ij. *aristolochiæ rotundæ, thuris masculi, bdellij.* ana. ℥. vj. *mirrhæ, galbani,* ana. ℥. iiij. *b. thargiri.* ℥. ix. *olei si æstas fuerit.* ℔. ij. *si byems.* ℔. iij. *bdellium, ammoniacum, opoponax* and *Galbanum* macerated in vineger, and dissolued with the other bruised simples to liquefied oyle and waxe, and boyled and stirred into the forme of an ointment.

Vnguentum AEgyptiacum.

VNguentum *AEgyptiacum* doth more forcibly exterge then *vnguentum Apostolorum,* in veterate and fistulous vlcers doth exiccate and eate out (not without feeling of paine) excrescent and dead flesh. ℞. *æruginis.* ℥. j. *mellis optimi.* ℥. xiiij. *aceti fortis.* ℥. vij. all these be boyled together vntill the ointment become thicke and of purple colour.

Vnguentum ex Enula.

VNguentum *ex Enula*, which is called *Enulatum*, is maruellous effectuall against the itch or scabbes, either drie or moist, and also against other filthinesse of the skinne. ℞. *radicis enulæ ex aceto coctæ, tusæ & cretæ* ℔. j. *axungiæ porci*

porci, olei. ana. ℥. iij. *ceræ nouæ.* ℥. j. *argenti viui extincti, terebinthinæ lotæ.* ana. ℥. ij. *salis vulgaris bene tritæ.* ℥ ß. the waxe and the greaſe be liquefied in oyle, and to them is added *Enula*, and after quicke ſiluer and ſalt, and laſt turpentine. It ſhalbe with more ſafetie vſed, if in ſteed of quicke ſiluer, of the iuyce of fumitorie and lymons. ana ℥. j. be put in, and both of them muſt be had ſeuerall.

Vnguentum Citrinum.

VNguentum *Citrinum*, or more truly *Citreum*, doth repreſſe pimples ſhooting out of the skinne, eſpecially in the face, either by meane of choler or of ſalt fleame, and doth exterge ſpeckles, tetters, blewneſſe, filthie ſcarres, and redneſſe of the eyes. ℞. *Boracis.* ℥. ij. *Camphoræ.* ℥. j. *Corallij albi.* ℥. ß. *Amianti, id eſt, aluminis plumoſi, vmbilici marini ſeu bellirici, tragacanthæ, amyli. cryſtalli, euthali, dentali, eluriæ albi, nitri.* ana. ℥. ij. *ceruſæ ex radice draconiȝ factæ.* ℥ j. *ceruſæ vulgares.* ℥. vj. *adipis ſuillj recentis, ſalis expertis & puri.* ℔. ß. *ſeui caprini.* ℥. j ß *adipis gallinacei.* ℥. j. Liquefie the fattes in a double veſſell, then macerate in them and with a lent fire boile two orenges cut in ſmall peeces, ſtraine the fat, and then iniect thereto all the other ſimples finely bruſed, and temper them with a ſplatter. Laſt of all let the *borax* & camphire finely bruſed be ſtrewed in, and after it hath boyled and become thicke, ſtore it to your vſe.

Of Emplaiſters.

EMplaſtrum *Diachylon ſimplex* doth mollifie the hard tumours of the liuer, ſpleene and externall partes, and likewiſe diſſolueth and by little and little diſſipateth anie ſcirrhous matter, if it be applied in the beginning. ℞. *Mucilaginum ſeminis fenugræcj, ſeminis lini, radicis althææ.* ana ℔. j. *olei veteris puri.* ℔. iij. *lythargiri purgati atque triti.* ℔. j. ß. The lytarge muſt be diſſolued in a morter with oyle by little and little, vntil they be exquiſitely mixed. Then boile them with a lent fire, and temper them ſtill with a ſplatter vntill they become thicke. After put in to them leaſurely the muſcilages depromed, and boyle them to the ſubſtance of an emplaiſter, and if neede ſo require, that it ſhould be more forcible in working, for euery pound of ſimples put in ℥. j. of the roote of floure deluce powned.

Emplaſtrum Diachylon magnum.

EMplaſtrum *Diachylon magnum* is more effectuall for all and euerie the affects tofore repeated, for that it conſiſteth of more mollifying and digeſting ſimples. ℞. *Lythargiri puri triti & creti.* ℔. j *olei irini, chamemelini & anethini.* ana. ℥. viij. *muſcilaginum ſeminis lini, ſenugraci, ficuum pinguium & vuarum paſſarum, ſuccorum dis & ſcillæ, eſpi. icathiocollæ.* ana. ℥. xij ß. *terebinthinæ.* ℥ iij. *reſinæ pini, ceræ citrinæ.* ana. ℥ ij reduce them all to an emplaiſter in like order as hath bene deſcribed in the ſimple.

Emplastrum è Mucilaginibus.

Emplastrum è Mucilaginibus doth also mightely mollifie and digest hard tumours, it doth ripen an abscesse of humours, and when it is burst, it scoureth the quitture and arture. ℞. *Mucilaginum seminis lini, althææ, fenugræci, & mediani, corticis vlm.* ana ℥. iiij. ß. *decorum chamæmili, liliorum & anethi.* ana. ℥. j. *ammoniaci, galbani, opopanacis, sagapeni.* ana. ℥ ß. *cerei.* ℥. ij. *terebinthinæ.* ℥. ij. *ceræ nouæ.* ℥. xx. make an emplaister in order before prescribed.

Plantivs in emplastra.

The auncient Physitions haue described many mollifying emplaisters, and foure of these they intituled vnder the name of *Diachylon*, whereof these two be the best And as for this emplaister of the mucilages it worketh more forcibly against all the foresaid affects then that which is ascribed vnto the sonne of *Zacharie*, wherefore the Author thought it not good to mention that.

Emplastrum è Meliloto.

Emplastrum è Meliloto doth mightily mollifie also and digest, and mitigateth paine, and is verie conuenient in hard tumours of the stomacke, breast, and splene, and the outretching *hypochondria*. ℞. *Meliloti.* ℥. vj *foliorum chamæmili, seminis fenugræci, radicis althææ, baccarum lauri, absinthij, sampsuci.* ana. ℥. iij. *cardamomi, ciperi, irios, spicæ nardi, ammeos, cassiæ lignææ, seminis. pij, anisi.* ana. ℥. ij. ß. *ammoniaci.* ℥. x. *styracis, bdellij*, ana. ℥. v. *terebinthinæ.* ℥. j. ß. *ficus pingues.* xij. *sem. vrsini, resinæ.* ana. ℥. ij. ß. *ceræ.* ℥. vj. *olei maiorani & nardini*, so much as sufficeth, make thereof an emplaister, liquefie the goates suet, the rosin and the waxe in oyle, and put into them *ficus pingues tritas & cretas*, then *ammoniacum* and *bdellium* dissolued in vineger, and lastly the powders of the other simples searced.

Plantivs.

Emplastrum è meliloto, è baccis lauri, ceroneum, and *oxicroceum* seeme to be sufficient against all affectes and paines which require digestion and resolution, so that other be not necessarie, namely, neither *emplastrum è sinapi*, nor *varia emplastra è fermento*, nor *emplastrum ex allijs*, nor the emplaister which is imputed to *Aristarchus*.

Emplastrum è baccis lauri.

Emplastrum è baccis lauri doth maruellously asswage the torments of the stomacke, midriffe, intrailes, wombe, bladder and other partes, especially taking their originall of anie cold cause or of winde. ℞. *Thuris, mastiches, myrrhæ*, ana. ℥ j. *baccarum lauri.* ℥. ij. *ciperi, costi.* ana. ℥ ß. *mellis colati* so much as sufficeth to thicken them. And some there be that suppose it a maruellous emplaister for the dropsie if the dose of Ciperus be ℥. j. ß. and lib. ß. of dried goates doung be put thereto.

Emplastrum

Emplastrum Ceroneum.

EMplastrum Ceroneum doth mollifie the hardneſſe of the ſplene, doth releaſe the cold affects of the wombe, and eaſeth the paines of the breaſt and ſhoulders proceeding of cold. ℞. *picis nauali colati, ceræ.* ana. ℥. ij. ℥. iij. *ſagapeni.* ℥. ij. *ammoniaci, terebinthinæ, colophonij, croci.* ana. ℥. j. ℥. iij. *aloes, thuris, mirrhæ.* ana. ℥ j. *opoponacis, ſtyracis, galbani, maſtiches, aluminis, fenugræci, ſtyracis rubri, bdellij.* ana. ℥. iij. *lytharg iri.* ℥ j. ß. & the emplaiſter muſt be made in this wiſe; *Sagapenum ammoniacum, opoponax, galbanum, & pix* muſt be liqueſied in wine and ſtrained, then put too the *colophoniam colatam, deinde ſtyracem, maſtichon, thus, mirrhum, bdellium, crita cretáque.* Forthwith iniect turpentine, allume, lytharge, and fenugreeke. The emplaiſter which is made of this, is put into cold water, and wrought with the hands, by addition of the powder of aloes and ſaffron, alwayes annointing your hands with oyle of laurell, and thereof concinnate *magdaleæ.*

Emplastrum Oxicroceum.

EMplastrum Oxicroceum doth mollifie and diſſipate alſo euerie kind of hardneſſe, doth aſſwage and driue away the paine of the ioynts, and the paine about the membranes of the bones. ℞. *Ceræ, picis nauali, croci, colophoniæ* ana. ℥. iiij. *terebinthinæ, ammoniaci, galbani, mirrhæ, thuris, maſtiches.* ana. ℥. j. ℥. iij. *galbanum* and *ammoniacum* muſt be liqueſied and ſtrained in vineger, then the pitch muſt be ſtrained and put thereto: after that the waxe, forthwith *colophonia* and the turpentine, a little while after the maſticke and the mirrhe. The emplaiſter being decocted muſt be put in cold water, and being ſtrained out, muſt be wrought with powder of ſaffron, annointing your hand with oyle.

Emplastrum de Ianna.

EMplastrum de Ianna is maruellous effectuall in wounds and greene vlcers, it pacifieth an inflammation, it detergeth, agglutinateth and incarnateth, and alſo cicatrizeth. ℞. *Succorum apij, plantaginis & betonicæ, ceræ, picis, reſinæ, terebinthinæ.* ana ℔. ß. Let three of the ſimples be concocted in the iuyces, ſtirring them eaſily to the conſumption of the iuyces, then take them off the fire, and put thereto *terebinthina.*

Emplastrum gratia Dei.

EMplastrum gratia Dei conſiſteth almoſt of the ſame ſimples, and ſerueth to the ſame vſe. ℞. *Terebinthinæ.* ℔ ß. *reſinæ.* ℔. j. *ceræ albæ.* ℥. iiij. *maſtiches.* ℥. j. *betonicæ, borbenæ, pimpinellæ recentium.* ana. *M.* j. Bruſe the herbes, & boyle them in white wine till they conſume. Then ſtraine out the liquor, in which concoct the waxe, roſin and maſticke to an apt conſiſtencie of an emplaiſter, and when they are taken off the fire, mingle with them the turpentine.

Emplastrum diuinum.

EMplastrum diuinum is farre better againſt maligne vlcers, for it detergeth and conſumeth quitture and corruption, and ingendreth new fleſh, and

bringeth them to an ascarre. ℞. *Galbani, mirrhæ* ana ℥. j ℥. ij *ammoniaci.* ℥. iij. ℥. iij. *opopanacis, mastiches, aristolochiæ longæ, aruginis.* ana. ℥. j. *lytharg iri, olei communis.* ana. ℔. ß. *cereæ neue.* ℥. viij. *thuris.* ℥. j. ℥ j. *bdellij.* ℥. ij. *magneti.* ℥ iij. The lytharge by stirring is mingled with the oyle after it is boyled, vntill it become thicke. Then the waxe cut in small peeces is added, which being liquefied is taken off the fire, and forthwith be iniected *galbanum, ammoniacum, opoponax* and *bdellium* dissolued in vineger and wine, boyled and strained after the powder *mirrhæ, mastiches, thuris, aristolochiæ rotundæ & magnetis* is sprinckled in: in fine, *pulvis aruginis*, least that if it should be boyled anie long space the emplaister become red.

Plantivs in emplastrvm divinvm.

These emplaisters *de Ianua, gratia Dei, & Diuinũ* which be described against wounds and vlcers, be also sufficient enough, so that it were vnnecessarie in this place to repeate anie other. For *emplastrum Oribasij duplex & emplastrum Apostolorũ* be all comprehended vnder this Diuine emplaister, all which serue for the same purpose, but yet with lesse efficacie.

Emplastrum ad Herniam.

Emplastrum ad Herniam. ℞. *Gallarum, nucum cupressi ysilij, balaustiorum, acatia, seminis plantaginis, seminis psilij, seminis nasturtij, cupulavum glandium, fabarum torrefactarum, aristolochiæ longæ & rotundæ, mirtillorum.* ana. ℥. ß. Bring all these to powder, and macerate them foure dayes in vineger of roses, then torrefie and drie them.

Aliud.

Emplastrum aliud ad Herniam. ℞. *consolidæ majoris & minoris, caudæ equinæ, glasti, solsequij, radicis serpentariæ regalis & silicis.* ana. ℥. j. *thuris, mirrhæ, aloes, mastiches, mummiæ.* ana. ℥ ij. *boli armenæ lotæ in aceto, lapidis calaminaris preparati, lytharg. auri, sanguinis draconis.* ana. ℥. iij. *picis nauallis.* ℔ ij. *terebinthinæ,* ℥. vj. or as much as sufficeth to make an emplaister.

Plantivs.

There be omitted here also other emplaisters astringing and correborating the stomacke, kidneyes and wombe, which be not in vse, and in steed whereof certaine other receipts be vsually ordained for present necessitie, so that this number of emplaisters and compositions seemeth enough both to store the Apothecaries shop, and to cure the chiefe kindes of diseases, causes and symptomates, neither was it necessarie to stuffe this Medicamentarie booke with vnusuall and vnnecessarie compositions, which can not but vainely be repeated to make vp a confused number. And as for such compositions as auaile to their peculiar effects (because they be seldome put in vse) be described as conuenient and peculiar to the diseases and partes in the proper curation of euerie part and disease.

The end of the eight Booke.

A GENERAL TABLE OF ALL THE PRINCIPAL MATTERS CONTAINED IN THIS VOLVME.

The Table of the first Booke.

Chap.		Fol.
1.	Of paine in the head.	1
2.	Of headach caused of heate.	2
3.	Of headach caused of cold.	5
4.	Of headach caused of drineſſe and moiſtneſſe.	6
5.	Of headach caused of bloud.	7
6.	Of headach caused of choler.	8.9
7.	Of headach caused of ſteame.	10
8.	Of headach caused of windineſſe.	11
9.	Of headach caused of the ſtomach.	12.13
10.	Of headach caused of drunkennes.	13.14
11.	Of headach caused of feauers.	14.15
12.	Of headach caused of old paine inueterate in the head.	15
13.	Of headach called the Migrime.	17
14.	Of giddineſſe in the head called Vertigo	18.19.
15.	Of the Freneſie.	21
16.	Of the Lethargie.	24.25.
17.	Of the loſſe of memorie.	26.27
18.	Of dead ſleepe called Carus or Subeth.	29
19.	Of congelation or taking.	29
20.	Of profound ſleepe called Sopor or Coma	30.31.
21.	Of the loſſe both of mouing and ſenſe, called Apoplexie.	31.32
22.	Of the Palſey in halfe the bodie.	33.34
23.	Of the Palſey in one member only.	38.39
24.	Of the falling ſickneſſe.	40.41
25.	Of the Crampe.	42.43
26.	Of the Mare.	43
27.	Of Madneſſe.	44.45
28.	Of Melancholie.	45.46
29.	Againſt trembling and ſhaking, called Tremor.	48.49
30.	A Treatiſe of the worthines of the eyes.	49.50.
31.	Of the Cataract, what it is, and how to helpe it.	51.52
32.	Of the three kindes of Cataracts vncurable.	53
33.	Of diſeaſes which chaunce to the eyes, by bloud, choler, ſteame and melancholy, and their cures.	53
Ead.	The making of an excellent water called a Collirium.	Eadem
34.	Of Pannicles.	54.55
35.	Of the maladies in the eye proceeding of choler.	57
36.	Of the infirmities of the eye caused of melancholie.	58.59
37.	Of diſeaſes happening to the eyes by outward cauſes, as by blowes with ſtickes, ſtaues or ſtones.	60
38.	Of diſeaſes which come by skipping in of ſtones or chips by chaunce into the eyes.	61.
39.	Of paine in the eares.	62
40.	Of ſound or noiſe in the eares.	63
41.	Of deafneſſe and ſlow hearing.	64
42.	Of Impoſtumes breeding in the eares.	65.
43	Of vlcers in the noſe.	66
44.	Of bleeding at the noſe.	66.67
45.	Of diſtillation, reume, and hoarceneſſe.	68.
46.	Of paine in the teeth.	70
47.	Of teeth that be blacke and looſe.	71
48.	Of vlcers in the mouth.	71
49.	Of a ſtinking mouth.	72

The Table of the second Booke.

Chap.	Fol.
1. Against inflammation of the Columella.	74
2. Of a loose Columella.	75
3. Of inflammation of the tonsils.	76
4. Of malignant vlcers of the tonsils.	77
5. Of the Squinancie.	78
6. Of the Cough.	80
7. Of the Asthma.	82
8. Of the Pleurisie.	83 84
9. Of the Inflammation of the lungs.	85.86
10. Of spitting of bloud.	87.88
11. Of spitting of matter.	90
12. Of the Ptisicke.	91.92
13. Of panting of the heart.	93
14. Of Swouning.	95.96
15. Of lacke of milke.	98
16. Of abundance of milke.	99
17. Of milke that is curded in the breasties of women	100
18. Of inflammation of the paps in women.	101.

The Table of the third Booke.

Chap.	Fol.
1. Of weakenesse of the stomacke.	101.102
2. Of yelling and vomiting.	104
3. Of immoderate thirst.	105
4. Of paine in the stomacke.	106
5. Of inflammation of the stomacke.	107
6. Of abhorring of meate.	108
7. Of a doglike appetite.	110
8. Of great famine.	112
9. Of euill digestion.	113
10. Of windinesse of the stomacke.	115
11. Of yelking or hicket.	117
12. Of Choler.	119
13. Of the fluxe Diarrhœa.	120,121
14. Of the fluxe Lienteria.	123
15. Of the fluxe Disenteria.	125
16. Of Tenasmus.	127
17. Of the Cholicke.	129
18. Of Iliaca passio.	132
19. Of wormes.	134
20. Of the Hemorhoides.	137
21. Of the falling out of the tuell.	139
22. Of clestes of the fundament.	140
23. Of the weakenesse of the liuer.	ead.
24. Of the obstructions of the liuer.	143
25. Of inflammation of the liuer.	144
26. Of distemture of the spleene.	147
27. Of the inflammation of the spleene.	149
28. Of hardnesse of the spleene.	150
29. Of obstructions of the spleene.	151
30. Of the Iaundies.	eadem
31. Of the euill state of the bodie.	154
32. Of the Dropsie.	155
33. Of the dropsie Anasarca.	157
34. Of the dropsie Ascites.	159
35. Of the dropsie Timpanites.	ead.
36. Of the veines that send forth bloudie vrine.	160
37. Of inflammation of the reines.	161
38. Of the stone in the reines.	163
39. Of vnmeasurable pissing.	167
40. Against vlcers of the reines.	168
41. Of the stone in the bladder.	170
42. Of bloud broken out of the bladder, or curded in it.	ead.
43. Of inflammation of the bladder.	173
44. Of vlcers of the bladder, and in the necke of the same.	173
45. Of the Strangurie.	175
46. Of difficultie of pissing.	176
47. Of stopping of the vrine.	177
48. Of exulceration of the priuie members.	178.
49. Of the continuall standing of the yard.	179.
50. Of shedding of sperme or seede.	180
51. Of losse of carnall copulation.	182

52. Against

Chap.	Fol.
52. *Against burstings or ruptures.*	183
53. *Of stopping of Menstrues.*	185
54. *Of flowing of menstrues.*	189
55. *Of womans fluxe.*	190
56. *Of strangling of the wombe.*	191
57. *Of falling out of the wombe.*	194
58. *Of the Mole in the matrice.*	195
59. *Of inflammation of the wombe.*	198
60. *Of windinesse in the wombe.*	198
61. *Of exulceration of the wombe.*	199
62. *Of straightnesse of the matrice.*	200
63. *To take away barrennesse.*	201
64. *Of sore trauell in child-birth.*	204
65. *Of the Sciatica.*	205
66. *Of the Goute in the feete and ioyntes.*	210.

The Table of the fourth Booke.

Chap.	Fol.
1. A Nexposition of Feauers.	215
A table of Feauers.	219
2. *Of one day Feauer.*	220
3. *Of a Diarie lasting moe dayes.*	224
4. *Of a rotten Feauer called Synochus.*	226
5. *Against continuall Feauers.*	228
6. *Of a burning Feauer.*	230
7. *Of a pure intermitting Tertian.*	232
8. *Against a Bastardly Tertian.*	236
9. *Of a Quartaine Feauer.*	238
10. *Of a Quotidian Feauer.*	241
11. *Of a Feauer Ethicke.*	242
12. *Of a Hemetrica Feauer.*	245
13. *Of the Pestilence.*	246

The Table of the fifth Booke.

Chap.	Fol.
1. WHat swellings happen besides nature, commonly called Apostema.	255
2. *Of the differences of those tumours which happen besides nature.* 257. *From whence the difference of tumours aboue nature.* 258. *of hote humours. ead. of cold humours. ead. Tumores complicati, one euill seemeth to haue affinitie with the other. ead. of the chiefe tumours that are caused of flowing of humors.* 259. *What tumours do associate Phlegmon. eadem. of Erysipelatose tumores. ead. of Testudo and Talpa.* 260. *of Scirrhi tumores & Cancer. ead. of Lepra.* 261. *Foure kinds of Impetigo. ead. of white pustules.* 265	
3. *Of the causes of tumours aboue nature appearing vniuersally on the out side of the bodie.*	265
4. *Of the signes of tumours besides nature generally appearing, together with the iudgements thereof.* 269. *Foure kindes or times of tumours besides nature.* 270 *Signes of putrefaction.* 271. *What abscessions may easily be digested.*	273
5. *The common order of curing of tumours. ead. Foure things to be considered chiefly in the nature of affected members.* 274 *The finding out of the causes, the beginning of the cure of tumours aboue nature.* 275. *The common ingendring of euerie Phlegmone, ead. Cases in which we may not vse repelling or repressing remedies.* 276.	
6. *Of Abscessions generally.* 278. *The best order of curing is declared three wayes.* 279.	
7. *Of a true Phlegmone, and of other tumours ingendred of bloud.* 282. *foure differences of tumors caused of blond. ead*	
8. *Of the causes, signes, and iudgements of Phlegmone.*	283

Chap. Fol.

9. The order of curing Phlegmone caused of the defluxion of humours affecting the outward parts of the bodie. 284. Foure intentions in the cure of Phlegmone. 285

10. Of a Carbuncle and a Cancre. 292

11. Of the cure of a Carbuncle. 294

12. Of Gangrena and Sphacelus. 297

13. Of the cure of Gangrena. 299

14. Of Erysipelas and other tumours caused of choler. 302

15. Of the signes and tokens of a true Erysipelas. 304

16. Of the cure of Erysipelas. 305

17. Of tumours which do associate Erysipelas, as Herpes both Miliaris and Exedens, which are called of the late Chyrurgians, cholericke pushes. 309

18. Of the euils called Formicæ, and of other differences of Verrucæ. 314

19. The iudgements and cure of Verrucæ. 315.

Chap. Fol.

20. Of Oedema and other cold, flegmaticke, and flatuous tumours. 317

21. Of the cure of Oedema caused of a flegmaticke humour flowing into some member. 319

22. Of Tumours aboue nature, which the Latins call Inflations, but they are commonly called windie Apostemes. 323

23. Of a tumour caused of a thin substance, which they call Aquosum apostema, that is, a wateriſh Apostеme. 327

24. Of the diseases called Glandulæ, Nodi, and Strumæ, together with other Abscessions, which they call Phlegmaticæ excrescentiæ. 330

25. Of hard and scirrhous tumours, engendred of Melancholie. 346

26. Of a Cancerous tumour, which they commonly call Cancer Apostematosus. 354.

The Table of the sixth Booke.

Chap. Fol.

1. OF the diuerse names of Morbus Gallicus, and where it had beginning. 361

2. Of the signes thereof. 362

3. Of the causes of the breaking out of Pustules. 364

4. Of the cure of Morbus Gallicus. 366

5. Of Fumigations. ead.

6. Of purging of Morbus Gallicus. 367

7. Of the preparation of humours. ead.

8. Of the certaine and true medicine for the disease. 368

9. What sort of that wood is to be chosen best for this purpose. eadem.

10. Of the decoction of Guaicum. 369

11. Of the making of the compound decoction of this wood. 370

12. Of the Time conuenient to giue this decoction. 372

13. Of the Place where this decoction is to

Chap. Fol.

be giuen. eadem

14. What quantitie of the decoction is to be taken at once. eadem.

15. How many dayes this decoction is to be receiued. 373

16. Of the time of giuing this decoction, and things to be obserued therein. ead.

17. Of things to be eschued of him that receiueth this decoction. ead.

18. Of things to be corrected, or symptomates to be oppugned in this cure. 374

19. Of Excrements. 375

20. Of Diet to be obserued in this cure. 376

21. Of the roote of China. ead.

22. Of the way of making the decoction of the roote of China. 377

23. Of the election of China. ead.

24. Of another maner of making the decoction with Salsa and the wood, and without the wood, and sometime with the barke

Chap. Fol.

barke. eadem.
25. Of other faculties or vertues which this Salsa hath. 379
26. Of Suffumigations which some practitioners vse. ead.
27. Of the maner of perfuming the whole bodie. 380
28. Of the Symptomata which sometime happen in this way of curing. 381
29. Of Suffumigations made of a matter benigne and harmelesse. ead.
30. Of making Suffumigations. ead.
31. Of the Cure by annointing with quicke siluer. 382
32. To correct the symptomata which happen in the mouth in this way of curing. 383.
33. Of the diuerse compositions of ointments which be vsed in this way of curing. 384
34. Of Precipitati giuen by the mouth. ead.

The Table of the seuenth Booke.

Chap. Fol.

1. OF Suppositaries. 386
2. Of making Nodulus. 387
3. Of making Pessaries. ead.
4. Of Cliſters or Enema. 388
5. Of making Stupes. 390
6. Of making Iuleps. 394
7. Of Dola siue Potio. ead.
8. Of making Bolus. 399
9. Of making Pilles. 400
10. Of making Apozema. ead.
11. Of making Mulsa. 401
12. Of making Powders. 402
13. Of Electuaries and Conserues, of Lozenges and Manus Christi. ead.
14. Of making Conditum & Conserua. 405
15. Of making Pasta Regia or Mazapane. 407.
16. Of making a Lohoch or Ecligma. ead.
17. Of making Balneum, and Semicupium. 408.
18. Of Epithema or Fotus. 409
19. Of making Sacculus. 410
20. Of making Scutum. ead.
21. Of making a Cataplasme. 411
22. Of making Emplastrum. 412
23. Of making vnguenta. 413
24. Of making a Liniment. 414
25. Of making Frontale. ead.
26. Of making Cucusa and Semicucusa. 415
27. Of making Suffitus. 416
28. Of making Collirium. ead.
29. Of making Nasale, or Errhinum. ead.
30. Of making Apophlegmatismus. 417
31. Of making Distillations restoratiue. ead.

The Table of the eight Booke.

Of Syrupes.

SYrupus Acetus simplex. 421
Syrupus è succo limonum. 423
Oxisaccharum simplex. 424
Oxymel simplex. ead.
Oxymel scilliticum. ead.
Syrupus è Cichorio. 426
Syrupus Intubi domestici. 427
Syrupus Bizantinus. ead.
Syrupus Scolopendrij. 428
Syrupus è radicibus. ead.
Syrupus Adianthus. 429
Syrupus è Stachade. ead.
Syrupus rosarum siccarum. 430
Syrupus Nymphea. ead.
Syrupus de Papauere. 431
Diacodion. ead.
Syrupus Violarum. 432
Syrupus Iuxibborum. 433
Syrupus de Hyssopo. ead.

Syrupus de Prassio. 434
Syrupus Symphitri. ead.
Syrupus è succo Buglossi. 435
Syrupus è cortice Citrij. ead.
Syrupus Melissophylli. ead.
Syrupus è Menta. ead.
Syrupus Absynthij. 436
Cydoniorum miba, that is, the iuyce decocted to thickneſſe. ead.
Syrupus Mirtinus. ead.
Syrupus Fumarie. 437
Syrupus è malis odoriferis. ead.
Syrupus Althee. ead.
Syrupus Raphani. ead.
Syrupus Artemisiæ. 438

Of Purging receipts.

Electuarium è Prunis. 438
Catholicum ſimplex. 439
Catholicum maius. 440
Syrupus infusionis roſarum pallidarū. ead.
Electuarium è ſucco roſarum. 441
Diacydonion. ead.
Electuarium Diacuicu. ead.
Diaphœnicon. ead.
Benedicta. 442
Confectio Hamech. ead.
Hiera ſimplex. 443
Hiera Diacolocynthidos. ead.
Hydragogum minus. 444
Hydragogum maius. ead.
Vnguentum Latheridæ. ead.
Electuarium Diaſarum. 445
Pillulæ Stomachicæ. ead.
Pillulæ Ruffi. 446
Pillulæ Aſſaieret. ead.
Pillulæ de Eupatorio. ead.
Pillulæ Maſtichinæ. ead.
Pillulæ Imperiales. 447
Pillulæ ſine quibus eſſe nolo. ead.
Pillulæ è Fumaria. ead.
Pillulæ Aureæ. ead.
Pillulæ de Agarico. ead.
Pillulæ Cochiæ. 448
Pillulæ ex Hermodactilis. ead.
Pillulæ Polycreſtæ. ead.
Pillulæ de lapide Cyanco. 449
Pillulæ de Thymelea. ead.
Pillulæ ex Eſula. ead.
Pillulæ è Cynogloſſo. ead.
Pillulæ Aſtrologiæ. 450
Pillulæ ſerosolymitanæ. p. 51. lib. 1

Of drie Antidotaries.

Dianthon. 450
Electuarium plures archonticon. ead.
Diatragacanthum frigidum. 451
Diaireos ſimplex. ead.
Electuarium Diaireos compoſitum. ead.
Diacalaminthes. 452
Diamargariton frigidum. ead.
Electuarium de Gemmis. 453
Electuarium Diambræ. ead.
Pulvis Cordiacus. 454
Aromaticum roſarum maius. ead.
Electuarium Diarrhodon abbatis. 455
Electuarium Diatrion ſantalon. ead.
Diacrocu. eadem
Dialacca maior. 466
Electuarium exhilarans. ead.
Electuarium Diaſpermaton. ead.
Electuarium λιθων προπλικον. 457
Electuarium diacalaminthes compoſitū. ead
Diaolibanū ſolutiuum. p. 52. lib. 1

Of moiſt Antidotaries.

Antidotus Analeptica. 458
Antidotus Diaſaterion. ead.
Antidotus è cocco Baphico, ſeu grano infectorio. ead.
Antidotus è baccis Lauri. 459
Philonium. ead.
Antidotus tearmed Kequies. 460
Theriace Diateſſaron. ead.
Theriace Andromachi ſenioris. ead.
Mitridatum. 461

De Trochiſcis ſeu Paſtillis.

Trochiſci è Vipera. 462
Trochiſci Scillitici. 463

Trochiſci

pulvis benedictus. pag. 54. lib. 1
pulvis Nabetus. p. 56. l. 1.

Trochisci Cypheos. ead.
Trochisci è Capparibus. ead.
Trochisci de Eupatorio. 464
Trochisci Alkakengi sive Halycacabi. ead.
Trochisci è Myrrha. ead.
Trochisci è Terra lemnia. ead.
Trochisci è Caphura. 465
Trochisci Gallia muschata. ead.
Trochisci Aliptæ muschatæ. ead.
Trochisci Bechici albi. ead.
Trochisci Narcotici. ead.

De Ecligmatis & Conditis.

Ecligma è pineis nucibus. 466
Ecligma è Scylla. ead.
Ecligma ad Asthma. ead.
Certaine Condites. 467
Of Conserues. ead.

Of Oyles,

Oleum Rosarum. 468
Oleum Violarum. ead.
Oleum Nymphææ. ead.
Oleum Papaueris. 469
Oleum Hyosciami albi. ead.
Oleum Mandragoræ simplex. ead.
Oleum Mandragoræ compositum. ead.
Oleum Melinum, quod & Cydoniorum. ead.
Oleum Mirtinum. 470
Oleum Mastichinum. ead.
Oleum Menthæ. ead.
Oleum Absinthij. ead.
Oleum Chamamelinum. ead.
Oleum Liliorum. ead.
Oleum Leucoij Lentei. 471
Oleum Iasminum. ead.
Oleum Anethinum. ead.
Oleum Amigdalarum dulcium. ead.
Oleum Lumbricorum. ead.
Oleum Irinum. ead.
Oleum Rutaceum. 472
Oleum Amigdalarum amararum. ead.
Oleum è Capparibus. ead.
Oleum Nardinum. ead.
Oleum Nardinum compositum. ead.
Oleum Laurinum. 473
Oleum Vulpinum. ead.
Oleum è Scorpionibus. ead.
Oleum Terebinthinæ. ead.
Oleum Recinium. ead.
Oleum Balauinum. 474
Oleum è Castoreo. ead.
Oleum Euphorbij simplex. ead.
Oleum de lateribus. ead.
Petroleum. ead.
Vnguentum Galeni refrigerans. 475
Vnguentum Rosarum. ead.
Vnguentum Populeum. ead.
Vnguentum album. 476
Vnguentum astringens. ead.
Vnguentum Diacalcitees. ead.
Vnguentum Diatomphalygon. 477
Vnguentum rubrum exsiccans. ead.
Vnguentum Dialtheos. ead.
Vnguentum Resumptiuum. ead.
Vnguentum Agrippæ. 478
Vnguentum Aregon. ead.
Vnguentum Mercuriatum magnum. 479
Vnguentum Basilicum minus. ead.
Vnguentum Basilicum magnum. 480
Vnguentum Aureum. ead.
Vnguentum Apostolorum. ead.
Vnguentum Ægyptiacum. ead.
Vnguentum ex Enula. ead.
Vnguentum Citrinum. 481

Of Emplaisters.

Emplastrum Diachylon simplex. 481
Emplastrum Diachylon magnum. ead.
Emplastrum muscilaginis. 482
Emplastrum è Mastiche. ead.
Emplastrum è baccis lauri. ead.
Emplastrum Ceroneum. 483
Emplastrum Oxicroceum. ead.
Emplastrum de Ianna. ead.
Emplastrum Gratia Dei. ead.
Emplastrum Diuinum. ead.
Emplastrum ad Herniam. 484
Aliud ad Herniam. ead.

FINIS.

unguentū Alaopistrum, fol. 55.
unguentū suabre. fol. 59.